

Edu^{STAR} eBOOK

中教育星电子图书馆

中教育星

电子图书馆

EBOOK



英语语法大全（上）

EduStar

中教育星软件股份有限公司

序

- 本书分为两部，前部是英语词法，是八类词个别的研究。后部是英语句法，是八类词综合的研究。

- 本书注重实用，不谈语法历史，也不谈语法理论，重点全在一般人比较关心的英语法规。

- 本书对象是中高水准英语读者。

- 本书内容，简单地说，向外力求广阔，向内力求细腻，向下力求深入。

- 本书内容虽力求丰富，但解释方法，力求简单明了，使读者不觉深奥复杂。

- 本书在有些地方提出了很少有人注意的题目（例如‘体’），对某单词的特别解释（例如‘感情’形容词），和对四十七种句型的观点，可能会得到读者的留意。

- 本书例句，尽量避免难字，而且尽量简短，能把语法说明，便即止步。

- 本书例句甚多，因例句越多，用法越明。但同类的呆板例句太多也是无益。必须有新的因素不断加入，例句才能使读者灵活运用，随机应变。

- 本书末尾，附有很详细的索引，使读者能在一万条目中找到他要找的问题，而答案不论躲在书中任何角落，他都能快速寻到它。

- 最后，温霖女士，在过去多年，曾帮忙记录文稿。吕少芳女士，从开始直到今日，曾帮忙记录与做电脑操作，使本书早日完成。在此向两位表示深切的谢意。

- 疏忽与错误，必然难免，望读者批评与指正。

张道真
温志达

第一单元 句子、单词、短语及从句

I . 句子

1 语法主要研究句子中词与词间的关系。一个句子可以陈述一个事实，如：We are happy . Lee is learning English . 也可提出问题，如：Are you happy ? Is he learning English ? 也可提出请求或发出命令，如：Let's learn English . Be quiet ! , 也可表示惊叹情绪，如：How happy we are ! How well she dances !

根据上述 4 种作用，句子可以分为 1) 陈述句、2) 疑问句、3) 祈使句及 4) 感叹句。

2 在一般情况下，句子由 2 部分组成：

主语（某人或某物）+ 谓语（做某事或是什么）

The man + wrote . 那人写作。

The old man sitting there + is my uncle . 坐在那里的老人是我叔叔。

The old man you met + seems very kind . 你碰到的那个老人似乎很善良。

The news + astonished me . 这消息使我吃惊。

The strange news + greatly astonished me . 这条奇特的新闻使我大为吃惊。

The strange news received last night + was a rumour . 昨天晚上收到的消息是谣言。

The strange news which we received last night + proves false . 昨天晚上我们收到的奇怪消息原来是假的。

．词类

3 在英语语法中主要把词分为 8 大类：

1．名词：表示人、物或地方等，如：John，teacher；table，pen；London；beauty．

2．代词：用来代替名词，以避免重复某个名词，如：I，you，it，that，those，them．

3．形容词：用来修饰或限制某个（些）名词，如：good（man），white（paper），every（book），much（water），（John is）honest，（He seems）lazy．被修饰或限制的名词，叫做主体词（head-word）。

4．动词：表示行为或状态，如：speak，read，go，think，is，seem．

5．介词：表示它后面的名词（或代词）跟它前面的动词、另一名词或形容词的关系。这些名词（或代词）称为介词的宾语。

介词宾语和介词构成介词短语。

He went to school．（介词 to 把名词 school 和动词 went 联系起来）

He stood by me．

He asked for it．

The book on the desk is mine．（介词 on 把名词 book 和另一名词 desk 联系起来）

He lives in a house on the mountain．他住在山上的一幢房子里。

The bridge across this river is built by a Frenchman．河上的桥是一位法国人修建的。

He is sure of it．他对此很有把握。（of 联系 it 和 sure．）

It is good for you．这对你有好处。

He is angry with Mary．他生玛丽的气。

6．副词：修饰或限制动词、形容词或其他副词，乃至介词、连词及整个句子。

He walked slowly．他走得很慢。

He did it carefully．他干得很仔细。

He is a very kind man．他是一个非常善良的人。

John is truly honest．约翰的确很诚实。

He arrived too late．他到得太晚了。

He walked rather slowly．他走得相当慢。

He sat far behind me．他坐在我后面挺远的地方。

He arrived exactly at seven．他在 7 点整到达。

He will come probably after we take lunch．他可能在我们吃饭之后到达。

He loves her just because she is pretty．他爱她只是因为她漂亮。

Luckily，he got back his money．幸好他把钱要回来了。

Historically，China is a great nation．从历史上看中国是个伟大的国家。

7．连词：用来连接词、词组（短语）或句子，如：and，but，or，

so ; 或把一个句子和一动词或名词联系起来 , 如 : when , because , as , though , that .

He visited Hong Kong and Singapore . (连词 and 把 Hong Kong 和 Singapore 连接起来) 他访问了香港和新加坡。

She is pretty but cruel . 她很漂亮却很残忍。

He does exercise in class or at home . 他在课堂上或是在家里做练习。 (or 把 in class 和 at home 两个短语连接起来)

She sat by me , reading novels but turning her eyes to children about her from time to time . 她坐在我身旁看小说 , 但不时把眼睛转向她周围的孩子。

He works hard , so he will succeed . 他很努力 , 所以他会成功。 (so 把 he works hard 和 he will succeed 连接起来)

He says this and that , but he does not mean them . 他说这说那 , 但这些都不是他的真心话。

He was writing when it was raining . 下雨时他正在写作。 (when 把动词 was raining 和 he was writing 连接起来)

He became a beggar because he had been a gambler . 他成了乞丐因为他爱赌博。

He went to school though he was sick . 他虽病了 , 但他仍然上学。

The news that the enemy had surrendered soon reached us . 不久传来了敌人投降的消息。

8 . 感叹词 : 用来表示说话时的感情 , 如 Oh ! , Alas ! , My ! 上面只是对 8 大词类粗略的解释。另外冠词、数词也可算作两个词类 , 冠词只有 a , an , the 3 个字 , 数词可归入形容词中。

. 词类的确定

4 代词、介词、连词及感叹词比其他词类更易确定，因为每类仅几十个词。在多数情况下，无需看上下文即可确定 he 为代词，a - gainst 为介词，because 为连词，oh 为感叹词。确定一个词的词类是掌握语法的第一步。为了确定每个词的词类，我们必须了解一个词在一个特定句子中的特定作用。同样一个词在两个或更多的句子中，可以有两个或更多不同的作用，因而就可属于两个或更多词类，如：

You must answer me . (动词)

Give me an answer . (名词)

He went down . (副词)

He went down the ladder . (介词)

That is the right way . (形容词)

He has guessed it right . (副词)

He drank cold water . (形容词)

He caught a cold . (名词)

When did he do it ? (副词)

I was ill when he called . (连词)

5 一个词有时略加改变即可转为另一词类，如：

He is honest . (形容词)

I doubt his honesty . (名词)

He is a very proud businessman . (形容词)

He spoke proudly to everyone . (副词)

You have hurt his pride . (名词)

He is a fool . (名词)

You are talking with a foolish fellow . (形容词)

He has done it foolishly . (副词)

. 短语

6 作用和一个词相似的一组词（多数由两个以上的词组成）可称作短语。起名词作用的短语称为名词短语；起形容词作用的短语称为形容词短语；起副词作用的短语可称为副词短语；由此类推。

The King of Terror (名词短语) will come sooner or later .

比较：Death (名词) will come sooner or later .

He is a man of wealth . (形容词短语)

比较：He is a wealthy (形容词) man .

He speaks English with fluency . (副词短语)

= He speaks English fluently . (副词)

He is fond of (动词短语) books .

= He likes (动词) books .

He stood in front of (介词短语) a tree .

= He stood before (介词) a tree .

Let me know in case (连词短语) he is ill .

= Let me know if (连词) he is ill .

但有时不可能找到与每个短语意思相等的单词。同时还有一些其他短语，如分词短语、不定式短语、动名词短语，在句子中有着不同的句法作用。分词短语可起形容词或副词的作用；不定式短语可起形容词、副词或名词的作用；动名词短语主要起名词的作用。介词短语可以起形容词或副词的作用。

. 成语

7 一个词组有时可作为一个整体来使用，有其特别的意思，与一个单词相近，可称为习用语 (Set Phrase) 或成语 (Idiom)。它的意思已不完全是所包含各词原来的意思，如 blue blood 不是表示“蓝色的血液”，而是指“贵族血统”，keep a good house 不是表示“有好房子”，而是表示“善于款待客人”。另外，它包含的词不能随便改动，如 take care of (照顾) 不能改为 take a care of, give care of, 或 do care of。又如 look after (照看) 不能改为 look behind 或 watch af - ter。又如 lose heart (灰心) 不能改为 miss heart, lose a heart。如作这样改动，意思就会改变或变得没有意义。

· 分句

8 词组是比单词较大的单位。分句又是比词组更大的单位。分句是一个“大”句子中包含的一个“小”句子，有它自己的主语及谓语。它多由一个连词所引带或连接。下面第一个例句：

I know that you are all right 是一个“大”句子，you are all right 是包含在“大”句子中的“小”句子，由连词 that 引带。

I know that you are all right .

He will come though it rains .

I was dining when he came .

How he did it was unknown .

The house where I live is small .

9 如果有两个或更多“小”句子由 and , but , or , so 这类并列连词连接，这个“大”句子就称为并列句 (Compound Sentence)， “小”句子就称为分句 (Coordinate Clause)。例如：

I walked along , and he followed me .

I talked to him , but he wouldn't listen to me .

I must work , or I shall be starved , but I am so ill .

She loves me , so I love her , but John loves her , too .

10 如果分句起形容词的作用，修饰一名词或代词，这种分句就称为形容词从句（或定语从句），句子的其他部分称为主句 (Main Clause 或 Principal Clause)。例如：

I know the man who killed the woman . (形容词从句，修饰 man , I know the man 为主句)

He entered the room where many of his friends were waiting .

(He entered the room 为主句，where 引带的为形容词从句，从句修饰 room)

如果从句起副词的作用，修饰句子中的另一动词，这种分句称为副词从句（或状语从句），句子的另一部分称为主句。

He stayed at home because he was ill . (副词从句，修饰 stayed , He stayed at home 为主句)

He will come here if it doesn't rain . (副词从句，修饰动词 come , He will come here 为主句)

如果整个分句起名词的作用（用作主语、宾语、表语或同位语），这种从句称名词从句。

That he has resigned (主语从句) is true .

I know that he is honest . (宾语从句，作动词 know 的宾语)

That depends on how he did it . (宾语从句，作介词 on 的宾语)

11 形容词从句、副词从句、名词从句，统称为从属句 (Subordinate Clauses)，简称从句。通常它都由从属连词 (Subordinate Con - junctions) 引带。凡包含从句的句子都称为复合句 (Complex Sentences)。

12 不包含从句或分句的句子称为简单句 (Simple Sentences)，如 John came yesterday . He does not know anything about her death .

．其他术语

13 字句 (Expressions) 可能指一个词，一个短语，一个分句或整个句子。

词组 (Combinations) 像是短语，但是并不表达词类，如 It would seem, Such...as, in order that .

名词短语和名词从句都起名词的作用，可称为名词等同语 (Noun - Equivalents)。同样，形容词短语及形容词从句也可称为形容词等同语 (Adjective - Equivalents)，副词短语及副词从句可称为副词等同语 (Adverb - Equivalents)。

还有一些其他语法术语，如“单数” (Singular) 可指“单数”或“单数的词”；“阳性” (Masculine) 可以指“阳性”或“阳性的词”。“所有格” (Possessive) 可指“所有格”或“所有格的词”；“疑问词” (Interrogative) 可指“疑问代词” (Interrogative Pro - noun) 或“疑问副词” (Interrogative Adverb)。又如“关系词” (Relative) 可指“关系代词” (Relative Pronoun) 或“关系副词” (Relative Adverb)。

第二单元 名词

. 名词的定义

14 名词是人、动物、事物、地方、状态、品质或动作的名称。它可以表示具体的东西，也可表示抽象的东西。下面斜体字都是名词：

John is my friend . My children love their teachers . (人)

The dog is running after a rat . (动物)

This school is good . Broadway is a street in New York City . (地方)

My pencil is lost . The window of this house is pretty . (东西)

Poverty is a big problem . Everyone seeks happiness . (状态)

His bravery is well - known . I enjoy the beauty of this mountain . (品质)

His arrival was on Sunday . His judgment is not correct . (动作)

. 名词的单复数

A . 复数构成法

1 . 规则的复数形式

15 构成法 :一个名词如果表示一个或一样东西 ,它取单数形式 ,如 pen , dog , tree , fact , church , kiss .如果表示两个或更多这类东西 , 则需用名词的复数形式 , 如 pens , dogs , trees , facts , churches , kisses . 构成名词复数 , 大多数是在单数形式后加-s 或-es , 有下面 6 种情况 :

a . 在单数形式后直接加-s :

girl	girls	hat	hats
neck	necks	tree	trees
pencil	pencils	kind	kinds

b . 如单数名词以 s , x , sh , ch 或 z 结尾 , 需在后面加-es :

kiss	kisses	church	churches
fox	foxes	match	matches
tax	taxes	watch	watches
dish	dishes	branch	branches
brush	brushes	buzz	buzzes

c . 以 y 结尾的词 , 变 y 为 i , 再加-es :

lady	ladies	army	armies
baby	babies	story	stories
soliloquy	soliloquies	colloquy	colloquies

如果 y 前还有一个元音字母 , 则直接加-s :

day	days	key	keys
boy	boys	monkey	monkeys

d . 以 o 结尾的词 , 多数加-s :

demo	demos	inferno	infernos
kilo	kilos	tempo	tempos
cello	cellos	memo	memos
banjo	banjos	octavo	octavos
piano	pianos	canto	cantos
dynamo	dynamos	tobacco	tobaccos
solo	solos	photo	photos
cameo	cameos	ratio	ratios

以“元音字母+o”结尾的词 , 一概加-s : curios , rodeos , bamboos , tattoos , ...

但有少数以 o 结尾的词后需加-es :

echo , echoes ; embargo , embargoes ; jingo , jingoes ; torpedo , torpedoes ; veto , vetoes ; hero , heroes ; negro , negroes ; potato , potatoes ; mosquito , mosquitoes ; go , goes ; no , nos ; motto , mottoes .

其他以 o 结尾的词 , 一般既可加-s , 也可加-es :

zero , zeros , zeroes ; halo , halos , haloes ; mango , mangos , mangoes 此外还有 motto , tornado , volcano , cargo , buffalo , commando .

e . 以 f 或 fe 结尾的词 , 多数直接加-s :

chief	chiefs	reef	reefs
-------	--------	------	-------

cliff	cliffs	cuff	cuffs
roof	roofs	fife	fifes
belief	beliefs	safe	safes
gulf	gulfs	strife	strifes

但有几个名词，需变 f 为 v，再加 es：

elf	elves	leaf	leaves
calf	calves	thief	thieves
shelf	shelves	loaf	loaves
half	halves	life	lives
self	selves	wife	wives
wolf	wolves	knife	knives

有个别名词，可加-s 或-es：

hoof	hoofs, hooves	wharf	wharfs, wharves
scarf	scarfs, scarves	dwarf	dwarfs, dwarves

dwarves

beef	beefs, beeves	staff	staffs, staves
------	---------------	-------	----------------

16 词尾读音：-s 或-es 可读作[s]，[iz]或[z]：

a. 在清辅音 (Voiceless Consonant) 后读 [s]，如：

cups[kʌps], shapes[ˈMeɪps], hats[hætʃs], dates[deɪts], dochs [dɒks], lakes[leɪks], monarchs[ˈmɒnɪks], fifes[ˈfaɪfs], roofs [ruːfs], laughs[ˈlɑːfs], coughs[kɒfs], pho-tographs[ˈfɒtəɡrɑːfs].

在 th 后多数读 [s]，如：cloths[klɒθs], month[ˈmɒnθs], myths[ˈmɪθs]。但在少数情况下也读 [z]，如：

path[pɑːθ], paths[pɑːθz]
oath[əʊθ], oaths[əʊθz]
mouth[maʊθ], mouths[maʊθz]
wreath[ˈrɪːθ], wreaths[ˈrɪːθz]
bath[bɑːθ], baths[bɑːθz]

th 前有长元音或双元音时读作：youths[juːθz], truths[truːθz], sheaths[ˈʃiːθz]。

b. 在 s, z, M, tM, DN 等音后读 [iz]：

kisses[ˈkɪsɪz] foxes[ˈfɒksɪz]
dishes[ˈdɪʃɪz] churches[ˈtʃɜːtʃɪz]
languages[ˈlɪŋɡwɪdʒɪz] roses[ˈrəʊzɪz]

c. 在其他情况下均读 [z]，如：

dogs[dɒgz], pens[penz], boys[bɔɪz], girls[ɡɜːlz], names[neɪmz], cities[ˈsɪtɪz], ways[weɪz]。

2. 不规则的复数形式

17 有些名词有不规则的复数形式：

a. 把单数形式稍加变化，成为复数形式：

单数	复数	单数	复数
man	men	foot	feet
alderman	aldermen	foot	foots (= dregs)
woman	women	goose	geese

countrywoman	countrywomen	goose	gooses (= iron)
mouse	mice	tooth	teeth
dormouse	dormice	child	children
louse	lice	ox	oxen

b. 把单数形式用作复数形式 (即单复同形) :

1) sheep, deer, swine, fish, cod, salmon, trout, 但在表示不同种类时可加-s、又如 fox, hare, tiger, bear, heron 等单数形式, 是猎人用语。

2) dozen, score (20), head (头数), stone (14 磅重量), brace, stand, series, species, craft, foot, sail, change, horse.

例如: two dozen of these, a hundred species of fish, all kinds of craft, 20 head of cattle, six hundred, ten stone.

(但要说 hundreds of, thousands of years.)

3) corps, abatis, chamois, rendezvous, faux pas, chassis, patois. 这些词为法语词, 单数时 s 不读音, 用作复数时 s 读作 [z]。

4) data, errata, phenomena, stamina, strata. 这些词为拉丁语, 原为复数形式, 也可用作单数。

5) Chinese, Japanese, Burmese, Vietnamese, Swiss, Sioux. 这些表示一些国家的人民, 也是单复同形。

3. 外来语的复数形式

18 许多名词原系外来词, 特别是一些科学上的术语, 仍沿用原来的复数形式。但其中有些已采用英语词尾-s 或-es。在口语中带-s 或-es 词尾的复数形式用得较多。-s 或-es 词尾可以加在原来的单数形式后, 但不可加在原来的复数形式后:

拉丁语:

——单数: bacillus [b+'sil+s], locus ['l+k+s], alumnus, nucleus, camulus, stimulus; cactus(es), syllabus(es), radius(es), octopus(es), fungus(es), terminus(es), colossus(es), incubus(es), genius(es), magus(es), narcissus(es), hippopotamus(es), focus(es)

复数: bacilli [b+'silai], loci ['l+sai], alumni...; cacti, orcactuses, radii or radiuses, octopi or octopuses...

——单数: datum ['deit+m], stratum, erratum, referendum, spectrum, auditorium, bacterium, ovum, symposium, agendum, addendum; maximum(s), minimum(s), millenium(s), gymnasium(s), curriculum(s), medium(s), memorandum(s), decorum(s), momentum(s), compendium(s), effluvium(s), sanatorium(s), aquarium(s), encomium(s), serum(s), stadium(s), honorarium(s), emporium(s)

复数: data ['deit+], strata, errata...; maxima or maxims, minima or minimums, curricula or curriculums...

——单数: vertebra ['v#:tibr+], larva, nebula, lacuna; antenna(s), formula(s), retina(s), uvula(s), drachma(s), penumbra(s)

复数：vertebrae ['v#:tibri:] , larvae... ; antennae 或 anten-nas , formulae 或 formulas...

—单数：index ['indeks] (es) , apex (es) , vortex (es) , appendix (es) , matrix (es) , helix (es) , calyx (es)

复数：indices ['indis:z] 或 indexes ['indeksi:z] , apices 或 apexes ; appendices 或 appendixes...

希腊语：

—单数：oasis [o'ersis] , antithesis , analysis , basis , nemesis , parenthesis , synthesis , thesis , metamorphosis , ellipsis , hypothesis , crisis , pelvis

复数：oases [o'ersis] , antitheses , analyses...

——单数：phenomenon , automaton (s) , criterion

复数：phenomena , automata 或 automatons , criteria

法语：

——单数：beau [b+] , chateau , corps ; adieu (s) , bureau (s) , tableau (s) , trousseau (s) , portmanteau (s)

复数：beaux [b+uz] , flambeaux , chateaux , corps , adieux 或 adieus...

意大利语、希伯莱语等：

——单数：bandit (s) , libretto (s) , soprano (s) , dilettante (s) , vir-tuoso (s) , tempo (s)

复数：banditti 或 bandits , libretti 或 librettos , soprani 或 so- pranos...

——单数：cherub (s) , seraph (s)

复数：cherubim 或 cherubs , seraphim 或 seraphs

——单数：bolshevik (s)

复数：bolsheveki 或 bolsheviks

——单数：vietcong ; yen , sen ; renminbi (= yuan) , liang

复数：vietcong ; yen , sen ; renminbi (= yuan) , liang

19 但下面词已完全变成英国字，只加-s 或-es 就可以构成复数形式：

a . sinus , prospectus , crocus , chorus , circus , bonus , census , re-bus , omnibus . (es)

b . villa , area , arena , era , idea , dogma , encyclopaedia , sonata , viola , vista . (s)

c . album , asylum , museum , premium , nostrum , geranium . (s)

4 . 其他复数形式

20 下面是一些值得注意的特殊复数形式：

a . 某些词、字母、数目字、斜体词、缩略语的复数形式：

before , before's ; perhaps , perhaps's ; s , s's ; p , p's 9 , 9's ; 6 , 6's ; 765 , 765's Tribune , Tribunes ; liang , liangs ; Macbeth , Macbeths M . P . , M . P . s ; lou , lous ; D . D . ; D . D . s ; Bro . , Bros . ; Prof . ; Profs . ; Dr . , Drs . ; S . Peter , SS . Peter and Paul . P , PP . (= pages) ; l . , ll . (= lines) ; n . , nn . (= nouns) . in . = inch (es) ; ft . = foot , feet ; m = mile (s) ; m . = metre

(s) ; t . = ton (s) ; oz . = ounce (s) ; lb . = pound (s) ; gm . = gram (s) ; \$ =dollar (s) ; £ =pound (s) ; sec . = second (s) ; h . = hour (s) ; w . =watt (s) ; v . =volt (s) ; cal . =calorie (s)

b . 专有名词及人名的复数形式 :

Mary : Marys , Maries ; Cato : Catos , Catoes ; Charles : Charles' , Charleses
January : Januarys , Januaryies 带头衔的人名可有两种复数形式 (同一人名同一头衔) :

Miss Anderson : Misses Anderson (较文气的说法) 或 Miss Andersons (口语体的说法)

the Ladies Huntington 或 the Lady Huntingtons

the Messrs . Smith 或 the Mr . Smiths

the Doctors Smith 或 the Doctor Smiths .

the John S . Blacks , Jr . 或 the John S . Black , Jrs .

the children Johnson 或 the Johnson children

有些只有一种复数形式 (人名不同但头衔相同) :

Messrs . (或 Professors , Presidents , Fathers , Drs . , Lieu-tenants) Smith and Brown

但是 : Mr . , Mrs . and the Misses Watanabe ; Professor and Miss Lee (人名相同但头衔不同)

c . 合成词的复数形式 :

如合成词中的第一个字是名词或更重要 , -s 词尾就加在它上面 :

1) commanders - in - chief , fathers - in - law , editors - in - chief , coats - of - mail , maids - of - all - work , tenants - at - will , men - at - arms , men - of - war , bills of fare , quarters of an hour

2) courts martial , poets laureate , postmasters general , heirs apparent , knights errant , prices current , letters patent , (在通俗语言中也可说 court - martials , knight - errants , etc .)

3) lookers - on , standers - by , passers - by , hangers - on

4) lyings - in , settings - up , layings - out , goings - on

5) carriages - and - four , coaches - and - six

6) brides - to - be

其他合成词几乎全都把 -s 词尾加在最后 :

brother - officers , firing squads , slide - rules , cutthroats , look - outs , grownups , cure-alls , forget-me-nots , fly-by-nights , merry - go - rounds , nc'er - do - wells , go - betweenes , stay - at - homes ; good-for-nothings , three-year-olds ; whisky-and-so-das ; something elses

但下面类型的合成词 , 前后两个字都用复数形式 :

man servant , men servants , man saint , men saints ; womansinger , women singers ; woman writer , women writers ; gen- tleman-farmer , gentlemen-farmers ; clergyman-poet , clergy men - poets ; Lord (s) Justices ; Lord (s) Cardinals ; Knight (s) Templars

d . 有类别作用的名词所有格可有两种复数形式 (参看 124) :

printer's errors 或 printers' errors ; bird's nests , 或 birds'

nests , peacock's feathers , 或 peacocks' feathers

有时两种形式的意思不同，如：

crow's nests (桅顶望台) , crows' nests (乌鸦巢) ; bull's eyes
(靶心) , bulls' eyes (公牛的眼睛)

B. 单复数形式的意义

21 1. 绝大多数复数形式的意义和单数形式相同, 只有数量上的差别, 如: I have a house.

He has many houses.

I am a teacher.

We are teachers of an elementary school.

2. 但有些名词只有复数形式有意义, 单数形式不存在, 如: tidings, news, oats, trousers, mathematics, bowels, dregs, summons

3. 另有许多名词, 特别是不可数名词, 只有单数形式有意义, 只能用于单数形式, 如:

ink, pork, paste, soil, lumber, haste, quiet, thunder, might, wisdom, courage, hunger

4. 有些名词的单数形式和复数形式意思不同, 如:

单数形式	复数形式
iron 铁	irons 锁练
sand 沙	sands 沙地
air 空气	airs 神情
salt 盐	salts 泻盐
ground 地	grounds 房子周围的院子
force 力量	forces 武装部队
advice 劝告, 忠言	advices 通知
return 返回	returns 利润
good 好处	goods 商品
compass 罗盘	compasses 两脚规
vesper 傍晚	vespers 晚祷
paper 纸	papers 报纸, 文件
writing 文件	writings 著作

5. 有些名词, 有两个复数, 因而有两个意思:

单数形式	复数形式 1	复数形式 2
a. brother	brothers (兄弟)	brethren (同组织的成员)
genius	geniuses (天才)	genii (精灵)
penny	pennies (便士, 指铜币)	pence (指价值)
staff	staves (乐谱记号)	staffs (棒)
die	dies (铸模)	dice (骰子)
cloth	cloths (布块)	clothes (衣服)
Englishman	Englishmen (个别英国人)	the English (英国人总称)
formula	formulas (例规)	formulae (公式)
medium	mediums (巫师)	media (传媒)
	单个的复数	总称
b. shot	shots	shot
cannon	cannons	cannon (大炮)
fish	fishes	fish (鱼)

heathen heathens . heathen (异教徒)

6 . 有些名词的复数形式除了表示原意外 , 还可有其他意思 , 如 arm 的复数形式 arms , 除了表示 “ 手臂 ” 外 , 还可表示 “ 武器 ” :

单数形式 复数形式 (本意外的其他意思)

arm 手臂 arms 武器 , 军备

colour 颜色 colours 旗帜

custom 风俗 customs 海关

circumstance 情况 circumstances 环境 , 处境

desert 沙漠 deserts 应得的报偿 (应)

effect 效果 effects 用品

letter 信 , 字母 letters 文学

list 表 lists 角斗场

manner 方式 manners 礼貌

minute 分钟 minutes 会议记录

part 部分 parts 才干

premise 前提 premises 房屋建筑

quarter 四分之一 quarters 居住区

scale 刻度 scales 天平 , 磅秤

spectacle 景象 spectacles 眼镜

term 学期 terms 条件

7 . 有些名词 , 特别是具有可数与不可数两种性质的 , 复数形式的意义要少一些 :

单数形式 复数形式

light 光线 , 亮光 , 灯 lights 灯

powder 粉子 , 药粉 , 火药 powders 药粉

practice 作法 , 练习 , 开业 practices 作法

people 人 , 民族 , 人民 peoples 民族

matter 物质 , 内容 , 问题 , 事情 matters 情况 , 问题

sight 视力 , 景象 sights 景象

. 名词的种类

22 名词有下面 5 种：

1. 普通名词：一些人、物、地的通称，如：teacher, dog, city, river, church, book

2. 专有名词：某个人、地方、动物或东西特有的名称，如：Con-fucius（孔子），John, Blackie（狗名），London, Mississippi, St. Paul's, Bible, New York Times. 专有名词第一个字母要大写。

3. 集体名词：某类人、动物或东西的集体名称，如：mankind, family, army, company, flock, pack, swarm, furniture

4. 物质名词：一种物质（常无固定形状）的名称，如：sugar, gold, rice, air, oil, oxygen, perfume

5. 抽象名词：一种品质、状态或动作或抽象概念的名称，如：goodness, hardness, poverty, quiet, arrival, destruction 按照上述定义，cow 为普通名词，Lucky（母牛名）为专有名词，herd 为集体名词，beef 为物质名词，patience 为抽象名词。同样，warship 是普通名词，the Elizabeth（船名）为专有名词，fleet 为集体名词，iron 为物质名词，speed 为抽象名词。

. 可数名词与不可数名词

A . 定义

23 名词分可数名词与不可数名词。

1 . 凡属前面可加不定冠词 a (an) 或其相应代词 (如 another , one , every , each) 并能用于复数形式的为可数名词 , 如 :

(a) boy , (another) book , (every) house , (each) day

2 . 不能加 a 或其相应代词 , 也不能用于复数形式的为不可数名词 , 如 : beef , oil , bravery , information , poverty

3 . 可数名词和不可数名词 , 前面都可加定冠词 the , 或 this , that , some , any , no 这类代词 , 如 :

(the) waiter , (this) oil , (that) idea , (no) information , (her) courage

这时 , 可数名词前不必加不定冠词 a 或变为复数。

4 . 有些名词总是用作可数名词的 , 如 : leg , dog , pen . 有些名词总是用作不可数名词 , 如 : pork , gold , honesty . 有些则有时用作可数名词 , 有时用作不可数名词 , 如 :

It is made of glass . (不可数)

He held a glass . (可数)

Revolution destroyed the old system . (不可数)

There broke out a revolution . (可数)

有时名词总是用于复数形式 , 因此总是可数名词 , 如 : bow-els , barracks , assets .

B . 与 5 类名词的关系

24 区分 5 类名词对决定一个名词是可数还是不可数有极其重要的意义。字典中常用 C 代表可数(Countable) ,用 U 代表不可数(Uncountable)。

1 . 大多数普通名词为可数名词 , 如 : a chair , another car , dogs .

2 . 多数集体名词也是可数名词 , 如 : (a) family , (each) class , (all) parties , (different) nations .

3 . 专有名词 , 多数作不可数名词 , 如 : London , China , Ham-bet , Neptune ; 但有些为可数名词 , 如 Communists , English-men .

4 . 物质名词一般不可数 , 如 : milk , gold , coffee , beer . 但有些可用作可数名词 , 表示特殊意义 , 如 : an ice-cream (一份冰淇淋) , a light rain (一阵小雨) 。

5 . 多数的抽象名词既可作不可数名词 , 也可作可数名词 (这时意思有些变化) , 如 :

不可数

beauty 美

disappointment 失望

knowledge 知识

agreement 同意

可数

a beauty 美人

a disappointment 失望的事

a knowledge (对.....的) 了解

an agreement 协议

C . 普通名词和物质名词

25 不过一个名词的可数与不可数问题最终还是靠习惯决定，习惯用法是自然形成的，不能靠简单的条文来推断。虽说表示可数的东西为可数名词，否则为不可数名词，但总有些特殊情况。在表示定形之物时，物质名词也可用作可数名词，在强调某种特性时，普通名词也可变成不可数名词。

1 . 气体名称通常作不可数名词，如：oxygen(氧气)，hydrogen(氢气)。但 odour(气味)，flavor(味道)，cloud(云) 是可数名词；而 fire 则既可作不可数名词，也可作可数名词。

2 . 液体名称一般为不可数名词，如：milk, water；但 beverage(饮料)，cocktail(鸡尾酒) 为可数名词，而 juice(汁)、sauce(调味液)、liquor(酒) 既可作可数名词，也可作不可数名词。

3 . 药品名称通常不可数，如：codeine；但 antibiotic(抗生素)，insecticide(杀虫剂)，vitamin(维生素) 都是可数的。

4 . 植物中有些的名称既作可数名词，也可作不可数名词，如：

可数	不可数
a fir 冷杉树	fir 冷杉木
a pine 松树	pine 松木
a pepper 青椒	pepper 胡椒粉

5 . 表示天气的名词多作不可数名词，如：lightning(闪电)，thunder(雷)，snow，但有些为可数名词，如：comet(彗星)，sunbeam(阳光)，ray(光线)。有些可用作两类，如：mist(浓雾)，dew(露水)，rain。

6 . 表示动物的名词一般为可数名词，如：monkey, elephant, shrimp(虾)，但有些可用于两类情况，如：

可数	不可数
a chicken 鸡	chicken 鸡肉
a duck 鸭	duck 鸭肉
a fish 鱼	fish 鱼(肉)

7 . 物质名词一般不可数，如：iron, plaster(石膏)，mercury(水银)。有些两者都可以，如：chalk(粉笔)，brick(砖)，coal(煤)。

D . 集体名词

26 有个别集体名词可用作不可数名词 ,如 : police(警察总称) , cattle (牲口) , produce(农产品) , vegetation(植物) , clothing(衣服) , furniture (家具) , pottery (陶器) 。

E . 抽象名词

27 1 . 在一万个抽象名词中约有 72% (约 7 200 字) 常常或有时既作不可数名词 , 又作可数名词 , 如 : belief , beliefs ; birth , births ; hope , hopes ; fear , fears .

2 . 约有 12% (约 1200 字) 只能用作不可数名词 , 如 : abundance , astonishment , conduct , cooperation , envy , ease , fever , harm , honesty , intellect , neglect , obedience , prose , revenge .

3 . 约有 13% (约 1300 字) 只能用作可数名词 , 如 : answer , award , bribe (贿赂) , boast (夸口) , case (情况) , cry (叫声) , quarrel (争吵) , trick (诡计) , scream (尖叫) , knock (敲击) , mistake , example , epoch (时代) , event (事件) , episode (插曲) , earthquake (地震) .

4 . 约有 3% (约 300 字) 在用于特定意义时常用复数形式 , 如 : riches (财富) , effects (用品) , thanks (感谢) , manners (礼貌) , rituals (宗教仪式) , nerves (神经紧张) , wishes (祝愿) , morals (品德) , excesses (过分行动) , doings (行为) , miseries (苦难经历) , sufferings (种种苦难) .

· 名词的性

A . 定义

28 1 .表示男性人或雄性动物的名词 ,属于阳性(Masculine Gen-der) ,
如 boy , hero , man-servant , lion , stallion (雄马) 。

2 .表示女性的人或雌性动物的名词 ,属于阴性(Feminine Gen-der) ,
如 girl , heroine , maid-servant , lioness , mare (母马) 。

3 .可表示两性的名词属于普通性 (Common Gender) , 如 teacher ,
child , student , friend 。

4 .表示无生命东西的名词 ,属于中性 (Neutral Gender) ,如 bank ,
sand , house , day , honor 。

B . 人的性

1 . 阳性与阴性

29 表示人的名词可以 5 种方式构成阴性名词：

a . 在阳性名词后加词尾-ess：

阳性：heir ,priest ,poet ,giant ,host ,god ,jew ,count ,baron , prince ,peer ,patron ,steward ,shepherd ,prophet ,seer ,author , tutor ,tailor ,baker ,viscount ,brewer ,manager ,archer ,quaker (有些表示动物的名词也如此，如 lion , leopard , panther)

阴性：heiress ,priestess ,poetess ,等等 (但 Goddess , princess 例外)

b . 把阳性名词的-ter 或-tor 改为-tress：

阳性：hunter , tempter , songster , painter , waiter , porter , mister , enchanter , founder , arbiter ; traitor , sculptor actor , elector , conductor , editor , preceptor , bene-fac tor , director , inheritor , protector , instructor , ances-tor , doctor , monitor , translator

阴性：huntress , temptress , traitress , sculptress , 等等。c . 把阳性名词的词尾-rer 或-ror 改为-ress：

阳性：adventurer , adulterer , launderer , murderer , sorcerer , caterer , procurer , emperor

阴性：adventuress , adulteress , 等等。

d . 在阳性名词后加上外来的阴性词尾：

阳性：director , proprietor , administrator , executor , testa-tor , prosecutor , inheritor , arbitrator , mediator , spec-tator , dictator ; beau , fiancé , hero , czar (或 tsar , tzar) , don , signor , sultan

阴性：testatrix , prosecutrix , diuctrix , executrix , propri-etrix , (但-tress 更常用) belle , fiancée , heroine , zara-rina , donna , signora , sultana

以上阴性名词有些现在已很少用。

e . 用另一词表示阴性：

阳性	阴性	阳性	阴性
abbot	abbess	man	woman
bachelor	maid , spinster marchioness		marquis
bridegroom	bride	monk (friar)	nun
brother	sister	master	mistress
butler	housekeeper	Master	Miss
chef , cook	cook	Monsieur	Madame
duke	duchess	Mr .	Mrs .
Englishman	Englishwoman	negro	negress
father	mother	nephew	niece
footman	maid	sire	dam , dame

gentleman	lady	sloven	slut
grandfather	grandmother	son	daughter
Herr	Frau	swain	npmph , wench
husband	wife	tutor	governess
Irishman	Irishwoman	uncle	aunt
king	queen	votary	votaress
kinsman	kinswoman	warder	wardress
lad (boy)	lass (girl)	widower	widow
landlord	landlady	wizard	witch
lord	lady	youth	young girl

2 . 普通性

30 普通性的名词很多，如：

student ,pupil ,baby ,infant ,orphan ,servant ,relation ,cousin ,
friend ,enemy ,professor ,doctor ,governor ,lover ,teacher ,judge ,
barber ,secretary ,worker ,Greek ,Japanese ,Turk ,fel-low ,devil ,
pedant , reader , player , comer , novelist , pianist , at-tendant ,
correspondent , etc .

其中许多是两性名词的通词，如：

person = man or woman	spouse = husband or wife
parent = father or mother	sovereign = king or queen =emperor or empress
child = boy or girl	monarch = sovereign
child = son or daughter	aristocrat = lord or lady
betrothed = fiancé or fiancée	employer = master or mis- tress

relative = kinsman or kins-woman

有些词虽属普通性，如 shoemaker , merchant , soldier , 实际上通常指男性。另一些普通性名词，如 nurse , cook , dressmaker , 在现实生活中多指女性。因此 he 或 she 都可用来代表这类名词。普通性名词可根据习惯及使用场合来决定它们的性。为了表示这类词到底指男性或女性，可以在它们前面加一表示性别的词，如：

male baby	female baby	gentleman	lady friend
		friend	
male cousin	female cousin	man-servant	maid-servant
boy student	girl student	gentleman	lady teacher
		teacher	
boy friend	girl friend	gentleman	lady reader
		reader	
boy reporter	girl reporter	male editor	woman editor
menfolk (s)	womenfolk (s)	male scientist	woman

scientist

有些合成词，可用后面的词表示性别，如： orphan-boy
orphan-girl washerman washerwoman

milkman milkwoman tradesman tradeswoman
horseman horsewoman office boy office girl

近年来有趋势用普通性的名词代表两性，如 fire fighter（消防队员），members of Congress（国会议员），business people（商人），student，doctor，poet。而避免用 fireman，congressman 等。-ess 结尾的词（如 poetess）有些已不多用，以防认为歧视妇女。

C . 动物的性

31 表示动物的名词可以下表表示，顺便也列出其叫声及居住地。带括号的阳性名词指被阉割的动物：

普通性	阳性	阴性	幼畜	肉	叫声	居住地
ass	jack-ass	jenny-ass	—	—	—	bray stable
—	he-ass	she - ass	—	—	—	—
bear	he-bear	she-bear	—	—	grunt	cave
—	—	—	—	—	growl	—
bee	drone	queen-bee	—	—	—	drone hive
—	—	—	buzz	apiary	—	—
cat	he-cat	she-cat	kitten	—	mew	—
—	tomcat	—	—	—	purr	—
cattle	bull	cow	calf	beef	bellow	bullpen
—	(bullock)	—	(steer)	veal	moo	—
—	cow-shed	—	—	—	—	—
—	(ox)	—	heifer	—	low	—
deer	stog	hind	fawn	venison	bellow	covert
—	hart	—	—	—	thicket	—
dog	dog	bitch	puppy	dog	bark	kenne
—	—	—	—	meat	growl	doghouse
—	—	—	—	—	snarl	—
duck	drake	duck	duckling	duck	quack	duckpen
elephant	—	bull -	cow - calf	—	trumpet	—
—	elephant	elephant	—	—	—	—
fowl	cock	hen	chicken	chicken	crow	roost
—	chanticleer	—	chick	—	chicken -	—
—	rooster	—	cockerel	—	cackle	house
—	—	—	—	—	—	—
fox	fox	vixen	cub	—	bark	hole
—	dog-fox	bitch - fox	—	—	—	— burrow
—	he - fox	she-fox	—	—	—	—
goat	he-goat	she-goat	kid	goat's	bleat	—
—	billygoat	—	nannygoat	—	meat	— —
goose	gander	goose	gosling	goose	quack	—
—	goosepen	—	—	—	—	—
horse	stallion	mare	foal	horse-	neigh	stable
—	(gelding)	—	—	meat	—	—
—	—	—	filly	—	whinny	—
—	stallion	—	colt	—	—	—
lion	lion	lioness	lion - cub	—	roar	den
—	—	—	—	—	growl	lair
monkey	he-monkey	—	she-monkey	—	—	chatter —
—	—	—	—	—	gibber	—

peafowl		peacock	peahen	peachick	—	cry	—
pheasant		cock-	hen-	—	—	crow	nest
—	pheasant	pheasant	—	—	—	—	—
pig	boar	sow	piglet	port	snort	sty	
—	(hog)	—	—	—	grunt	—	
—	—	—	—	—	squeal	—	
rabbit	buck -	doe -	—	rabbit	squeal	burrow	
—	rabbit	rabbit	—	—	—	warren	
seal	bull	cow	pup	—	bark	—	
sheep	ram	ewe	lamb	mutton	bleat	fold	
—	(wether)	—	—	—	baa	—	
sparrow		cock-	hen -	sparrow	—	chirp	nest
—	sparrow	—	—	—	—	—	
tiger	tiger	tigress	tiger -	cub	—	roar	den
—	—	—	—	—	growl	lair	
turkey	turkey-	turkey-	—	turkey	gobble	—	
—	cock	hen	—	—	—	—	

大动物，如 giraffe (长颈鹿)，hippo (河马)，whale (鲸鱼)，rhino (犀牛) 的幼畜都可称作 calf。食肉动物，如 wolf, fox, bear, shark 的幼畜可称作 cub。小的毛皮动物，如 rabbit, fox, weaver (河狸) 的幼畜可称为 kit。鸟类的幼禽可称作 chick 或 fledgling。鱼苗称为 fry。所有动物的幼畜 (禽) 都可称作 baby, youngling。幼猪称为 cygnet，幼鹰称为 eaglet，幼兔称为 leveret，小袋鼠称为 joey。(关于动物群体的名称见 526 节)

其他动物名称均属普通性，前面可加 male 或 female 来表示其性别。It 可用来指两种性别的动物，不过也可用 he 或 she。

D . 事物的性

32 下面名词均属中性名词，若是单数，可用 it 代表：

无生命的东西	pen , ear , water , paper
植物	pine , rose , cabbage , branch
小动物	mosquito , dragonfly , bug
抽象名词	colour , hardness , strength , honesty
集体名词	family , army , company , forest

下面名词虽为中性，但其单数形式可用 she , her , hers 代表：飞机、汽车、轮船、小船、火车，机车的名称；机器、枪炮、发动机的名称；国家名称。

有些抽象名词可以人格化，开头字母可大写。如果表示伟大、力量、暴力，通常作为男性看待，可用 he , his 代表其单数形式。如果指美丽、温柔或低下，常看作女性，其单数形式可用 she , her , hers 代表，如：

作男性看待 : June , Summer , Sun , Day , Mountain , Thunder , Hurricane , Ocean , Death , War , Revenge , Anger , Despair , Murder

作女性看待 : Spring , Moon , Nature , Night ; Peace , Hope , Liberty , Truth , Mercy , Victory , Art , Science , Soul

．名词的作用

33 名词在句子中起重要作用，了解它的作用对掌握句子至关重要。它在句子中有 15 种作用，如作主语、宾语、表语等。它是句子中最为重要的词。它可以用作：

1．主语 (Subject)：

Mother went to the market . John has called on me . A big ship is coming here . Some goods will arrive tomorrow .

表示“谁……”或“什么……”，亦即动作的执行者。一般都放在句首。

2．宾语 (Object)：

He has a dog . John may help Mary . John can cross this dangerous river . She should do the job for you .

表示动作的承受者，通常放在及物动词后面。

3．间接宾语 (Indirect Object) 和直接宾语 (Direct Object)

She gave John a fan . The teacher told children stories .

He bought his brother apples . She cooked her husband a big fish .

双宾动词 (Dative Verb) 后有两个宾语：指人的间接宾语，如：John , children；指物的直接宾语，如 fan , stories。

4．主语的补语 (Subjective Complement)：

Miss Lee is a nurse . Mary has become a teacher . Lee remains a bachelor . The ruins have been a palace .

表示主语是谁，成为什么。主语和补语通常指同一个人或同样东西。句子的动词多为系动词 (Link Verbs)。补语多放在系动词后面。

5．宾语的补语 (Objective Complement)：

I consider the world a school . They elected my uncle president . I found Lee a coward . I will keep the matter a secret .

对宾语作补充说明，表示它成为什么，被认为如何等等。它和宾语有密切关系，通常紧跟在宾语后面。与之相对，说明主语是谁或成为什么，称为主语的补语。主语的补语和宾语的补语都对另一名词作进一步说明。试比较下面句子：

主语的补语

The world is a school

宾语的补语

I consider the world a

school .

My uncle became president . They elected my uncle president .

6．第 1 类用法中动词后没有宾语或补语，这种动词称为不及物动词 (Intransitive Verbs)。第 2 类用法中的动词有宾语，这种动词称为及物动词 (Transitive Verbs)。第 3 类用法中动词有两个宾语，这种动词称为双宾动词 (Dative Verbs)。第 4 类用法中，动词后有一个补语，这种动词称为系动词 (Linking Verbs 或 Link - verbs)。第 5 类用法中宾语后还有一个补语，这种动词称为宾补动词 (Factitive Verbs)。这些名称有助于说明动词的性质及所要求的结构，值得注意。

7．介词的宾语 (Prepositional Object)：

He went to school . John spoke for his boss . On Sunday he told me the news . In a word , he has done his best .

表示与介词有关的东西，和介词表示一个较完整的意思。这种宾语一般紧跟在介词后面，它和介词一起构成介词短语。

8 . 状语 (Adverbial) :

The cannon roared (at) each minute . He will come (on) next week . He has walked (for) five miles . It is (for) six inches long .

用来修饰动词或形容词，表示长度、时间等，在多数情况下前面还有修饰语，如：(each) minute , (next) week . 有时也可单独用作状语，如：It lasted hours . He'll be back Mon-day .

这种名词通常表示时间（长度）、距离、重量、价格等。由于看起来有些像宾语，有人也称它为状宾语 (Adverbial Objec - tive)。

9 . 呼语 (Vocative) :

John , come here . Come here , John . You may , John , come here any time . O Sea , stop roaring ! Shall I die or live , my Lord ?

是对讲话对象的直接称呼，如上面的 John , Sea 和 Lord . 呼语可放在句首，句子中间或末尾。

10 . 感叹语 (Exclamation) :

Poor John ! He failed again . He failed again , poor John ! Fire ! Be quick ! Mother ! There she comes !

可用作感叹语，如上面的 John , Fire , Mother , 它有独立作用，与后面部分有时并无直接关系。

11 . 同位语 (Appositive) :

My friend John is a strange man . This is Mr . Lee , head - master of A . B . High School . He bought many things : books , stamps and pictures . He does not like that city—the den of all evils .

表示前面名词或代词究竟指什么，或对前面的名词或代词作补充说明，如上面的 John , head master , books , stamps and pictures 以及 den 都分别对 friend , Mr . Lee , things , city 作进一步说明。

12 . 定语 (Attributive) :

They lives in a country house . They are at the harvest festival . He often visits a night - club . He held an oil lamp . I know a silversmith . He read a newspaper .

用来修饰后面另一名词，或与另一名词构成合成词，如上面的 country , harvest 等。

13 . 所有格形式的定语 :

This is John's car . He is the headmaster's secretary .

The dog's leg is wounded . He is a fortune's favourite .

表示“……的”，即后面名词表示的东西属于谁。

14 . 动名词逻辑上的主语 :

They thought Tom's going there a mistake . He suggested my son's going abroad . Mary's getting married will be announced next week .

表示动名词（如 going , getting）的执行者。

15 . 分词逻辑上的主语 :

John being ill , his brother went in his place .

The sun having set , we went home .

She sat there , her head bent low .

He came into the room , his face covered with sweat .

表示这是谁的情况，如 John 生病，太阳落山等。

16 . (和 for 连用) 不定式逻辑上的主语：

For Lee to learn English is necessary . They stood aside for the boss to enter . Is there anything for the clerk to do ? This is not a book for children to read .

17 . 最后 3 类有共同之处。动名词、分词和不定式不是谓语，本来不应有主语，但从意义上说，所表示的动作也有执行者，因此可以有逻辑上的主语 (Logical Subject) ，也有人称作意义上的主语 (Sense Subject) 。

． 名词的位置

34 名词的位置一般根据它的作用来决定。主语一般在谓语的前面，宾语在及物动词的后面等等。这些从上面的例句中可以看出。但有时有一些特殊情况，值得初学者注意。

例如作主语的名词和谓语之间有时可插入其他成分，如定语（1）、状语（2）或插入语（3）。

The man came to see me yesterday . (原句)

The man (1) from Africa came to see me yesterday .

The man (1) who had done business in Africa came to see me yesterday . The man (2) secretly came to see me yesterday .

The man , (2) as he had something to tell me , came to see me yesterday .

The man , (3) you know , came to see me yesterday . 又如及物动词和宾语之间也可插入状语（1）、定语（2）或插入语（3）：

I like the food of this country . (原句)

I like (1) very much the food of this country .

I like , (1) as you do , the food of this country .

I like (2) all kinds of food of this country .

I like , (3) of course , the food of this country .

其他作用的名词也有类似情况。

另外，为了强调、对比等需要，名词可以放在特殊位置，如：1．主语放在谓语后面：

In the village live only old men .

Into the city gate came many peasants .

2．宾语放在谓语前面：

Wealth he loves , but knowledge he hates . (为了强调)

Water he gives to the hungry , and bread he gives to the thirsty . (表示对比)

All the people in all the world , he calls fools . (宾语太长)

3．补语放在动词前面：

Fools are all those young boys ! (为了强调)

． 名词的格

35 根据在句中的作用，名词可以分为3种情况，称为“格”，即：1．主格，由主格的代词（I，we，he，she等）代表：谓语的主语：John（He）came．

分词的意义上的主语：The weather（It）being so cold，we didn't want to go out．

补语：The visitor is John（he）．

呼语：Come here，John（you）．

2．所有格，由物主代词（my，our，his，her等）代表：定语：I like John's（his）car．

动名词意义上的主语：John's（His）coming will be wel - come．

3．宾格，由宾格的代词（me，us，him，her等）代表：及物动词宾语：I know Mary（her）．

双宾动词的间接宾语：He gave Jane（her）some money．双宾动词的直接宾语：She offered me a seat．

宾补动词的宾语：I thought Tom（him）a nice man．宾补动词的补语：They call her Lily．

介词的宾语：This car belongs to Tom（him）．

不定式意义上的主语：For Henry（him）to do it is good．用作同位语的名词和前面名词的格相同：

Mr．Lee，a friend of mine，is a nice fellow．（同为主格）Many people know Mr．Lee，my friend．（同为宾格）

．一个名词和另一名词在数上的一致性

36 在某些句子中，一个名词和句中另一名词有数上的一致性，如：Jim is a friend of mine. (Jim 和 friend 同为单数) 但在某些习惯用法中却有时违反这种一致性，如：

Joe is no longer friends with me.

You have the head of ten persons. 这里 be friends with 为习用语，head 有抽象意义，因此句子是对的。这里再举一些类似的句子（里面黑体词为主要名词，斜体词为其他名词）：

主要名词为单数的情况

His room is all books and bottles.

The area is mainly marshes. My family is mostly scholars.

Jim made faces at me. He made friends with Greg.

Ann waited for buses. I like to work in hospitals.

It affected the life of many workers.

What's the surname of those two brothers?

主要名词为复数的情况

These TVs are a new product. Dogs are a good topic.

Women have an eye for fashion. Some people use their left hand.

Most houses have a fire - escape. Many families keep a dog. The graduates were awarded a diploma.

We eat with a good appetite. We fought tooth and nail to get it.

但在指某些具体情况时后面名词要用复数：

The boys washed their faces. All kept their breaths. Some protestors burned themselves to death.

在指一般性情况时后面名词用单数：

Roosters have a comb. Dogs have a sharp ear. Some Asians eat with their hand, not with chopsticks. 有时用单数是为了避免误解：

All members signed their name. Young people should choose their partner carefully. Many cast a vote for Ida. Husbands should care for their wife.

不可数名词只能用单数，在某些习惯用语中也如此：

Few houses have furniture. They showed honesty. These two children were forced into marriage.

They will measure their strength. They will put life into the task.

．词与词之间的多种关系

37 一个句子中的词和另外的词归纳起来有下面 12 种关系：

1. 主语和谓语的关系；
2. 意义上的主语与非谓语动词（即动名词、分词及不定式）的关系；
3. 及物动词与宾语的关系；
4. 双宾动词与其间接宾语及直接宾语的关系；
5. 系动词和主语补语的关系；
6. 宾补动词和其宾语及补语的关系；
7. 被修饰词与修饰语的关系；
8. 名词与其同位语的关系；
9. 介词与其宾语的关系；
10. 并列连词与所连接的两个并列成分之间的关系；
11. 从属连词，与它引起的从句，与句子其他部分的 3 方关系；
12. 独立成分。

38 现在我们研究一下上面所讲的 12 个问题：

1) 上面涉及 27 种句子成分，也就是词在句子中的 27 种不同的语法作用。在 1、2、3、5、7、8、9 类中各包含两个成分，在 4、6、10、11 中各包含 3 个成分。在第 12 类中只有一个成分。

2) 任何一个词在句子中必须至少担任一个句子成分，起一种句法作用。

3) 没有一个词在句子中是完全孤立的，它必然和句子中另一个词或另一些词有某种关系。上面清楚说明了这种关系。如果有一个词是谓语动词，必然在某处有它的主语。如果某一词为及物动词，必然在某处有它的宾语。总之，句子成分从不单独存在。在 1、2、3、5、8、9 六类组合中各有两个成分有这种相互关系。

4) 在 4、6、10、11 四类组合中，有 3 个成分之间存在相互关系。只要有双宾动词，必然同时也要有间接宾语及直接宾格。反过来也一样，只要有间接宾语，在近处也一定有双宾动词及直接宾语。如果有一并列连词，必然会有两个并列成分，一个在它前面，一个在它后面。

5) 必须指出，在 27 种句子成分中，独立成分是唯一与句子其他部分没有关系的成分，如：

John (呼语), may I have a talk with you?

Let me kiss you, my dearest one. (呼语)

Oh (感叹语)! What are you bringing to me?

My God! (感叹语) Did I tell you to do so?

All the world, it seems (插入语), is dismal and gloomy.

6) 一个句子必须具有主语及谓语，除此之外，还可以有一个非谓语动词及其意义上的主语，3、4、5、6 类句子中的动词可以是谓语动词或非谓语动词，如：

I (主语) have (谓语动词) no doubt about John's (意义上的主语) winning (非谓语动词) the game (非谓语动词的宾语) .

He (主语) does not earn (谓语动词) enough for his son (意义上的主语) to spend (非谓语动词) .

The sun (意义上的主语) having set (非谓语动词), the farmers (主语) went (谓语动词) home .

7) 被修饰的词若为名词，其修饰语多为形容词，如：

He is a rich (修饰语) man (被修饰词) .

He has a bad (修饰语) habit (被修饰词) .

被修饰语若为动词、形容词、副词、介词短语、连词乃至是整个句子，其修饰语多为副词，如：

He works (被修饰动词) hard (修饰语副词) .

It is very (修饰语副词) easy (被修饰形容词) .

He progressed extremely (修饰语副词) slowly (被修饰副词) .

8) 每个成分的位置多如前面所列位置。主语通常放在谓语动词前面。宾语一般放在及物动词后面。介词常常放在其宾语的前面。但有时也有例外情况，如：

There were (谓语动词) many people (主语) there .

Fish (宾语) John rarely eats (及物动词) .

This (直接宾语) you can give (双宾动词) him (间接宾语) tomorrow .

Gone (主语的补语) are (系动词) Mary's happy years (主语) !

至于 7, 11, 12 三类中成分却无一定位置。

9) 每个成分不仅可以是单词，也可以是短语，如：

John (单词作主语) came (单词作谓语) yesterday (单词作状语) .

Singapore Elementary School (短语作主语) will be opening (短语作谓语) next week (短语作状语) .

He likes (单词作谓语) coffee (单词作宾语) .

He is fond of (短语作谓语) swimming in the river (短语作宾语) .

He is (系动词) angry (单词作补语) .

He is out of temper (短语作补语) .

He said nothing about (介词) his family (单词作宾语) .

He said nothing with regard to (短语介词) what to do (短语作宾语) .

有些成分还可用从句表示，如：

That he plays the violin very well (从句作主语) is (系动词) absolutely true .

I know (单词作谓语) that he plays the violin very well (从句作宾语) .

I asked (单词作谓语) John (间接宾语) why he did not go to college (从句作直接宾语) .

He is a man (单词作被修饰语) who knows himself (从句作修饰语) .

10) 一个词或一个短语有时在句中可有两种作用，即可担任两个成分，如：

A young doctor called on me . (doctor 是谓语动词 called 的主语，又是一个被修饰的词，其修饰语为 young)

He is a man of few words . (man 是系动词后的补语，它又是被修饰词，其修饰语为 of few words)

Writing essays is not easy . (writing 是句子的主语，又是宾语)

essays 前的及物动词)

第三单元 代词

. 引论

39 代词是用来代替名词以避免重复的词，如：

John was in love with Mary . When Mary was seriously ill , Johnwaited on Mary morning ,noon and night .John was so anxiousabout Mary's health . But Mary recovered quickly .

在这些句子中，Mary 和 John 重复过多，若使用代词句子就好得多：

John was in love with Mary . When she was seriously ill , hewaited on her morning ,noon and night He was so anxiousabout her health But she recovered quickly .

40 从实用观点，代词可以分为 5 类：

- 1) 人称代词 (Personal Pronouns) , 如 : I , me , my , mine ;
- 2) 疑问代词 (Interrogative Pronouns) , 如 : who , which , what ;
- 3) 指示代词 (Demonstrative Pronouns) , 如 : this , those , that ;
- 4) 不定代词 (Indefinite Pronouns) , 如 : some , any , all ;
- 5) 关系代词 (Relative Pronouns) , 如 : who , which , that .

本章中主要讨论人称代词。其他代词将在以后讨论。例如，疑问代词将和疑问副词、疑问形容词一起讨论，因为它们有许多相似之处。同样的关系代词将和关系副词、关系形容词一起讨论。

· 人称代词

A . 人称代词的分类

41 人称代词有 3 种人称和 2 个数。I 用来代表说话的人，可说是第一人称；you 表示谈话的对象，可说是第二人称；he, she, it 表示所谈的人或物，为第三人称。I, you (你), he, she, it 为单数。we, you (你们), they 为复数。

42 每个人称代词，不管是单数还是复数，都有 5 种形式：

1) 如果是主语，要用主格形式 (I, she, it 等)：

I saw her. She saw me. It astonished them.

2) 如果是宾语，要用宾格形式 (me, her, it 等)：

She saw me. I saw her. They looked at it.

3) 如果是表示所有，要用所有格形式 (my, her, its 等)：

This is my house. Mary brought her umbrella. The dog wagged its tail.

在这种代词前可加 own 来加以强调，表示某人自己的，而非任何别人的。

This is my own (=my, and not any other's) house. Mary brought her own umbrella.

4) 如果所有格 (物主) 代词所修饰的名词刚刚提到过，可以用其绝对形式 (mine, hers, its 等)，以避免重复前面的名词，它的意思等于“物主代词+前面刚提过的名词”：

That is Mary's house, and this is mine (=my house).

I left my umbrella at home, but Mary brought hers (=her umbrella) with her.

5) 如果宾语和主语表示同一人或物，可用自身代词的形式 (或称反身代词) (myself, herself, itself 等)：

I hate myself. She looks at herself in the mirror.

The matter speaks for itself. (本身就可说明问题)

这种自身代词也可用来强调前面的名词或代词，这时可称为强调或自身代词：

I myself (=I, and nobody else) will do it. Mary herself made the dress. Confucius himself (=Even Confucius) was not without faults. I have never seen my father himself.

43 下面表格列出了人称代词的 3 种人称、2 个数、4 个性及 5 种形式：

人称	性	数	主格	宾格	所有格 (物主)	所有格 (绝对形式)	自身代词
1	普通	单	I	me	my (own)	mine	myself
		复	we	us	our (own)	ours	ourselves
2	普通	单	you	you	your (own)	yours	yourself
		复	you	you	your (own)	yours	yourselves
(古形式)		单	thou	thee	thy (own)	thine	thyself
		复	ye	you	your (own)	yours	yourselves
3	阳	单	he	him	his (own)	his	himself
		复	they	them	their (own)	theirs	themselves
	阴	单	she	her	her (own)	hers	herself
		复	they	them	their (own)	theirs	themselves
	中	单	it	it	its (own)	its	itself
		复	they	them	their (own)	theirs	themselves

B. 人称代词的用法

44 下面各节将讨论人称代词的某些特别用法。

1. 主格人称代词

a. 泛指一般人：

1) We (指一般人, 也包括讲话的人) do not see our own faults.

2) You (=one, 指一般人) cannot do two things at a time.

You must (or should, ought to) keep quiet in such a place.
(可和 must 等词连用, 也指一般人, 但欠客气。)

You all (or people, folks, fellows, guys, men) (指大家) will be invited.

3) He who or He that (= Any person who) works hard will succeed. (较文气的用法)

She who or She that marries a fortune marries misery. (较文气的用法)

Those who or Those that (=People who) know foreign languages have a better chance.

注意：这些代词也可指某些特定的人，如：

Those who attended the party said it was successful.

4) They (=People, 可译为“人们”，不包括讲话的人及听话的人) say, 'Time is money.'

They speak French in Switzerland. (在瑞士人们讲法语。这样说可避免用被动结构 French is spoken in Switzerland.)

We were not able to cross the bridge, for they (=some people) were repairing it. 注意：them 不能这样泛用。

b. “And (Or) + 代词”结构：

1) You and I have done our best. (你我已经尽了力了。这里 our 包括了对方)

He and I have done our best.

You and he have done your best. (your 中也包含了他在内)

2) You, she, and I (you 在前, I 放在最后) ...

You, Mr. Lee and I...

Either he or I...

Neither you nor he...

We, you, and they (we 在前 they 在后) ...

We, you and Mr. Lee...

Both we and you...

Either we or they...

Neither you nor they...

3) I and you will be punished. (在指不利的事情时, I 可放前面)

He or you are responsible.

4) He and his wife had a good time.

(但需说: Ladies and gentlemen, have a good time!) 2. 物主

代词（所有格代词）

45 下面句子表明了物主代词各种不同意思：

a. 1) He looked at his watch (= the watch owned or used by him). (表示所有关系，即属于他)

也可表示作者、拟定者等：

I read his novel (= the novel he bought or wrote.)

How about your plan (= the plan you made) ?

The book has lost its cover (= the cover as a part of it) .

I do not doubt his honesty (= the honesty as one of his qualities) .

2) I read his statement . (what he stated) (用在一个表示动作的名词前，说明是谁的动作)

He waited for my arrival . (I arrived .)

We must work hard until our death . (We die .)

3) He hastened to my assistance . (I was assisted .) (用在表示动作的名词前，表示动作的对象)

She wished to see him before his execution . (He was executed .)

The house was on fire just after its completion .

(It was completed .)

His destruction (or His murder , His appointment) is something one can expect . (He is destroyed , is murdered , etc .)

4) The army lost its commander (= the man that commanded it) . (用在 - er 和 - or 结尾的名词前，表示 “ 干某事的人 ”)

He spoke to his visitor (= the man who visited him) , his teacher (= the man who taught him) , my electors (= the men who elected me) .

5) Have you ever seen his portrait (or image , statue , likeness , picture) (= the portrait representing him , or the portrait made by him , etc .) ? (用在表示图画、塑像等的名词前，表示 “ 画的是谁 ” 等等，也可指 “ 谁的作品 ”)

6) Her loss is a pity . (She lost something , or she is lost .) (用在某些表动作的名词前，可有主动、被动两种意义。即 “ 丢失某物 ” 或 “ 被丢失 ”)

His love is unselfish . (He loves someone , or is loved by someone .)

His training is strict . (He trains others , or is trained .)

His treatment is unjust . (He treats others , or is treated .)

7) Your interpretation of it is correct . (You interpret it .) (在表示动作的名词后若跟有 of 引起的短语，则表示主动关系。)

His treatment of others is unjust . (He treats others .)

Her love of mice is unusual . (She loves mice .)

8) Where are your heroes now ? (这里 your 带有鄙视的味道，即 “ 你所谓的 ”)

I hate your politicians .

For quarrelling, your women are without equal.

9) He raised his (not the) hands. (用在表示身体部位等的名词前。这时译为汉语时,代词常不译出。)

She rubbed her (not the) eyes. (她揉了揉眼睛。)

They held their breath. (他们屏住呼吸。)

He talked in his sleep. (他说梦话。)

John found his way to his hotel. (约翰找到了回旅馆的路。)

He took off his hat. (他把帽子摘下。)

The room had its window broken. (房间的窗户破了。)

b. 用 the 代替物主代词的情况:

1) 表示说话人客观态度。

"The leg must be cut off," said the doctor. The father is too busy and the son is fooling around.

2) 表示动物身体的一部分:

The bird spread the (or its) wings.

The (or Their) fur may be brown or white.

3) 当一名词和一介词连用时,表示身体的一部分(这时不宜用物主代词):

He struck me on the shoulder. (不要说 my shoulder)

He caught John by the collar (不要说 his collar)

You wounded Mary in the arm.

He led the cow by the horn.

Death stared him in the face.

He looked me straight between the eyes.

He kissed her on the forehead.

偶尔也有例外情况,如:

Don't drag the desk by its legs.

4) 用在某些习用语中:

He is armed to the (不要说 his) teeth.

He turned the cold shoulder to (= neglected) me.

(Cf. He turned his back on me, a deaf ear to me.)

He talked himself red in the face.

He is down in the mouth (= sad, dejected).

This advertisement strikes the eye (= is attractive).

He got it (or caught it) (= received drubbing) in the neck.

I know where the shoe pinches (= where the trouble is).

We attacked the enemy in the rear (= from the back).

She gave her baby the breast (= fed him with milk from the teat).

I have said the last word.

He gave the last finish to the work.

I showed him the door (= required him to leave because he was unwelcome).

c. 物主代词被省略的情况:

在某些词组中物主代词可用可不用,意思不变:

I felt at (my) ease .

I lost (my) patience .

He took (his) leave .

He is always behind (his) time (= late) .

有时可用可不用，但意思不同：

He kept (= looked after) house .

He kept (= was confined to) the house .

I shall live here for life (= for ever) .

I shall remember him for my life (which he has saved) .

It is worth your while (= financially profitable) .

It is worth while (= beneficial in a general sense) .

d . 在下面情况下物主代词不可省略：

This is a picture of my drawing (= drawn by me) .

I have seen a house of his building (= built by him) .

I will treat you to fish of my own cooking (= cooked by myself) .

e . 在和 some , most , all 等词连用时，根据包括谁来决定用什么代词：

Some (or Most , All , None) of us have done their (when the speaker is not included) best , our (when the speaker is included) best .

Some (or Most , All , None) of you have done their (or your) best .

Each one (or Everyone , Somebody , Nobody) has done his (or , his or her , their) best . (最好说 All of them , Some of them , None of them have done their best .)

f . My ! (= My God !) What do I see ?

g . 在某些习惯用法中，of me , of him 这类结构比用物主代词时更多：

She will be the death of me (instead of be my death) (= kill me) .

This business may be the ruin of him (instead of be his ruin) (= ruin him) .

I can' t for the life of me (also can' t for my life) (= can never) understand a woman . 但是—I ran for my life .

I can' t for the soul of me (= I can never) do anything .

I hate the sight of her (= to see her) . 但是—She lost her sight (= her power of seeing) .

I can see every part of him , every inch of him , the whole of him .

I' ve never seen the like of it (= anything so strange) .

I' ve never seen the like of him .

The situation is , on the face (of it) (= as it appears) , very peaceful .

Under cover of it (of the plot) , he can cheat many people .

At the end of it (of the party) , we left for home .

In spite of him we continued our journey .

Instead of her , John came . (She did not come .) 但是—John works in her stead (= for her in some position) .

We looked in front of us .

Someone stood at the back of (= behind) him . 但是—

Someone stood at his back (= supported him) .

The second play of his (如后面有定语从句 , 这样说比 His second play 要好一点) that was presented met with suc - cess .

My (= My God) ! What do I see ?

3 . One's own 的用法

46 One's own 有许多用法 , 如 :

a . 作定语 :

Attend to your own (= your , but not any other's) business .

I gave him my own share .

Is this car yours? It is mine . It is my own (car) .

She wants to do it in her own way (or manner , fashion) .

b . 和 of 连用 :

He has a car (or a store , a servant) of his own . (比 his own car , store , or servant 更强调)

The village has a school of its own .

He spends plenty of money not of his own .

This small book is a world of his own .

c . 表示 “ 甚至…… ” :

He can't write his own name .

His own mother cannot recognize him . He has changed a lot .

He never cares about his own (= even his) sons .

d . 用于某些成语 :

For my (own) part , I can't say anything .

He did it of his own accord (or of his own free will) (= voluntarily) .

He tried to keep his own counsel (= keep reticent 不谈自己的想法) .

4 . 物主代词的绝对形式

47 物主代词绝对形式的用法可以从下面例句中看出 :

a . This is my book ; it is mine (= my book) . Those are your books ; they are yours (= your books) . Mine is red and yours are blue .

The victory is ours .

b . Mine is a red book . (= My book is a red one .)

Theirs is an old system . (= Their system is an old one .)

Yours is a happy family .

c . I have received yours (= your letter) of June 20 .

I hope you and yours (= your family and friends) are all well .

Neither I nor mine can go .

Yours (= your duty) is to obey . 或 It is yours to obey .

Yours(= your right) is to get the money back . 或 it is yours to get the money back .

He doesn't know the difference between mine and thine (= the laws of property) .

d . Yours truly (or faithfully , devotedly , cordially , ever , affectionately , respectfully) ; (Very or Most) truly (or faithfully , etc .) .

(用在书信末尾的套语)

e . Your and my book = yours and my book = your book and mine (第三种说法最好) .

His and my interest = his interest and mine (后面说法较好) .

Yours and your uncle's opinion = your opinion and your uncle's (后面说法较好) .

She studied at his and my school (= one school) .

She studied at his school and mine (= two schools) .

f . I saw a friend of yours (不能说 a your friend 或 your a friend) .

注 : 物主代词不能和指示代词连着用 , 而应放到 of 引起的短语中 :

Look at those children of yours . (不能说 those your children , 或 your those children)

This heart of mine will love you always .

Have you read any books of mine ?

This is no business of yours . What business is it , of yours ?

g . I will invite three friends of mine . (I have only three friends , or more than three .)

I will invite three of my friends . (I have more than three friends .)

h . What of yours will you give him ? I will give him nothing (or none , all , everything , anything , something) of mine .

i . This is money (物质名词) of mine . These are books (可数名词复数形式) of mine . (of mine 比 my 更强调一些)

j . The books of mine (若跟有定语从句 , 这种说法比 my books 好) which you borrowed are by Dickens .

The house of hers which you rent is too old .

k . This is a picture of her (= 她的画像) , a picture of hers (= 属她所有的图片) , her picture (= a picture of her or others) .

l . I want to see my friend (对方知道的某个特定的朋友) my friends (特定的一些朋友) .

I want to see a friend of mine (你不知道的某一个朋友) , some friends of mine (你不知道的某些朋友) .

m . lady mine = my lady ; husband mine = my husband ;

fair Helen mine = my fair Helen ; mine ear = my ear , thine eyes = your eyes ; mine host = my host .

(是一些比较文气的说法。)

5. 用主格还是用宾格的问题

48 a. 在下面这类句子中,在较文气的语言中用主格,在口语中用宾格:

It is he (or him) . The victims are we (or us) . That can't be she (or her) .

It seems to be he (or him) .

He is better than she (or her) .

It was I (or me) who broke the window?

Nobody but (or except) him (古语: he) came .

The thief is thought (or supposed) to be he (or him) .

I was many times taken to be he (or him) .

Happiness is not for such as I (or me) .

They saw the same thing as we (or us) .

Nobody thinks of the murderer being he (or him) .

The murderer being he (or him) , the police should arrest him . (但是: He being the murderer , the police should arrest him .)

No one , other than he (or him) , saw the accident .

He should take the responsibility rather than I (or me) . we shall talk it over , we (or us) two .

b. 在下面句子中,口语用主格,但宾格则更普遍:

Between you and me (I) , John is not trustworthy .

Let you and me (I) do something .

This is not the place for you or me (I) to work .

c. 两种格都可用,但意思不同:

He loves her more than (he loves) me .

He loves her more than I (love her) .

I treat Mary as kindly as (I treat) him .

I treat Mary as kindly as he (treats Mary) .

He spoke to John , but not me (= not to me) .

He spoke to John , but not I (= I did not speak to him) .

He criticizes everybody and even (criticizes) her .

He criticizes everybody and even she (criticizes everybody) .

d. 在下面句子中用宾格更好一点:

1) I thought (or supposed) the winner to be him .

(作宾语的补语)

(但是: I thought or supposed that the winner was he .)

Let us be them that suffer .

He looks upon me as (being) him .

I remember the man as (being) him whom I met years ago .

He imagined the thief to be me . He imagined me to be the thief .

They thought these Japanese to be us Koreans . (但: These Japanese were thought to be we Koreans .)

2) Speak to John , him that is your only friend . (同位语)

Do you know Lee , him of the club?

Let's you and me wait here .

Let us go , you and me .

3) ' You stole it . ' ' Me ? '

What could I do ? Me , a helpless woman !

' Do you love her ? ' ' Me love her ! ? '

Dear me ! Merry me ! Woe me ! Gracious me ! Ah me !

4) It is her that I saw . (通常在作补语时 , 用什么格取决于句子主语 , 但在这里受后面从句的影响 , 作及物动词 saw 的宾语 , 因而用宾格)

It is him that I have offended .

It was them that I must deal with .

It is him that I spoke to .

e . 在口语中 , 在下面这类句子中两种格可以同时用 :

He that loves me , I love him . (通常说法 : I love him who loves me .)

He who has the courage , let him do it . (通常说法 : Let him do it who has the courage .)

She , who has encouraged me , I will try to help her .

f . 其他情况 :

People such as he should be happy . (但 : People like him should be happy .)

Nobody talks as he does . (但 : Nobody talks like him .)

Everyone except him was punished . (但 : Everyone was punished , but not he .)

6 . 自身代词

49 a . 当某人或某物既是动作的执行者又是动作的承受者时 , 可用自身代词作宾语 , 表示动作的承受者。这样用时 , 这种代词也称为反身代词 (Reflexive Pronouns) 。动作的执行者可以由主语或宾语表示 :

1) 主语为动作的执行者 :

He (performer) praised himself (the receiver) .

(这里自身代词用作动词的宾语)

Mary devotes herself to music .

John gave himself a punishment .

They think themselves clever .

She looked at herself . (动作承受者的自身代词在这里作介词的宾语)

You can see for yourself .

The children take care of themselves .

The murderer became afraid of himself .

有些由自身代词构成的介词短语有其特殊的意义 :

Simplicity is in itself (= independently)

a form of beauty . It will grow of itself (= naturally) .

He apologized of himself (= voluntarily) .

They did the exercise by themselves (= without aid) .

The machine works by itself (= automatically) .

用自身代词作补语 :

He is not himself (= well , or his usual self) .

You don't look yourself .

India is herself .

2) 宾语为动作的执行者 :

I advise him (执行者) to defend himself (不能说 him) .

(动作的承受者为不定式 to defend 的宾语)

(但是 : I asked him to defend me . 不是 myself)

You cannot ask a person to criticize himself .

I found John thinking himself (作现在分词的宾语) important .

I heard her reproaching herself .

I prevented my son from indulging himself (作动名词 indulging 的宾语) in wine .

The doctor brought Jim to himself (作介词 to 的宾语) .

3) 动作的执行者由物主代词或名词所有格表示 :

I advised our (执行者) defending ourselves (作动名词 defending 的宾语)

I heard of John's poisoning himself .

4) 动作的执行者由 one's 或 for one 表示 :

Sacrificing oneself (作动名词 sacrificing 的宾语) is a noble action .

(在 sacrificing 前 one's 省略掉)

It is hard to know oneself (作不定式 to know 的宾语)

(在 to know 前 for one 省略掉) .

50 b. 自身代词还可在口语中用来代替普通的人称代词(如 I , me , she , her 等) , 使意思更加清楚 :

My sister and myself (= I) did not go . (构成并列主语)

Neither myself (= I) nor my husband has been invited .

Myself and wife have both been invited .

Yourself and your associates should be here by ten .

He is as old as myself (= I) . (用在表示比较的从句中)

He is older than myself (= I) .

Why did he not ask yourself (= you) ? (作宾语)

The thief was himself (= him) . (作补语)

I do it for yourselves (= plural you) . (作介词的宾语)

This is for self (= myself)

and friend (= my friend) .

Nobody but myself (= me) saw the robbery .

Men like ourselves (= us) must work hard .

Who suffers most ? Himself . (用在省略句中)

Myself will go . (这类句子很少见 , 甚至是错误的 , 自身代词一般不能作主语 , 应当说 : I myself will go .)

51 c. 如果用在介词短语中表示位置 , 可以用 me , him , her 等 , 而不

宜用自身代词：

I look above me (not myself) .
Let me have good men about me (not myself) .
I talked about myself . (这时介词短语不是说明位置)
We have good friends among us .
He drew me after him .
He closed the door after him .
He stretched his hands before him .
She brought her child with her .
He kept a dog with him .
They divided the property among them .
He pulled the desk toward him .
The book has pictures in it .
This village has several roads to it .

52 d . 自身代词还可用来对前面的名词或代词加以强调。省掉它全句的意思不受太大的影响，这是和反身代词不同的地方。这样用时也可称作强调代词 (Emphasizing Pronouns) 。

1) 强调代词的意义在不同情况下可有不同意思：

John himself (= and nobody else) designed the house .

John himself (= without help) did the exercise .

The writer himself (= Even the writer) does not understand what he writes .

Even the mother herself (or The very mother herself) cannot recognize him .

I don' t like philosophy myself . (= Personally 或 So far as I am concerned , I don' t like philosophy .)

2) 强调代词可以强调各个位置的成分：

John himself , but not his wife , will come .

(这里强调主语 John)

She loves John himself , not his wealth .

(这里强调用作宾语的 John)

It is time for poor John himself to learn cooking . (这里强调作介词宾语的 John)

The thief is John himself . (这里强调用作补语的 John)

3) 在强调主语时，它可以放在不同位置，紧跟在主语之后的情况最多：

John himself has told Mary .

John has himself told Mary .

John has told Mary himself .

以上三句意思差不多，但下面这句的意思不同：

John has told Mary herself .

4) 有时用来强调宾语或补语，这类句子虽然不错，但很少见：

She loves him himself , not his wealth . (少见)

That depends on her herself . (少见)

The thieves are not we , but they themselves . (少见)

但下面两句是常见的 :

She loves him ; 或 She loves himself .

7 . It 的用法

53 It 有许多不同的用法 , 主要有下面几种情况 , 最常用的是 :

a . 指前面提到的东西 :

1) He bought a book and gave it to me . (代表前面的中性名词 , 这类情况最多)

2) He has a baby , he loves it (or him or her) . (It 可以代表 baby)

He has got a pig , he has kept it five months . (It 可代表动物)

Providence ? It is always hidden . (It 可以指 “ 上苍 ”)

(但 God 要用 He 和 Him 代表 , 如 : All comes from God and must go back to Him again .)

Nothing (或 Everything) is lost , is it ? (或 isn't it) ?

3) He tried to get up , but found it impossible . (指句子前面某部分表示的意思)

He learns music , and it will take him many years .

I must say something , but it is impossible .

4) He arrived yesterday , but nobody knows it . (代表前面整个句子 , 但在这种情况下用 that 更好一些。)

John hates children , and it is strange .

That she knows him and they have been schoolmates , it is a fact .

5) He is an idiot , and he looks it (or that) (= an idiot) .

(It 用在系动词 look 后面时 , 可指前面出现的一个名词或形容词。)

They are strong and should be it (= strong) .

54 b . 指句子后部的东西 :

It 也常代表句子后部的某些词、短语或从句。可用作主语 , 也可用作宾补动词的宾语 :

用作主语 :

1) It was shocking , that accident . (代表名词)

It is a vicious animal , that dog of yours . (代表名词)

2) It seems impolite to talk loud . (代表不定式短语)

It takes about four years to understand grammar . (代表不定式短语)

A bloodier crime than this (长宾语提前) it's hard to imagine . (代表不定式短语)

3) It is wonderful , swimming in summer . (代表动名词) (较少见)

4) It astonished her that you should suddenly disappear . (代表名词性从句)

It puzzles me why you did not let me know . (代表名词性从句)

作宾补动词的宾语 :

5) I suppose it wrong to tell lies . (代表后面的不定式短语)

6) He thinks it foolish to learn music . (代表后面的不定式短语)

I think it impossible that he should ill - treat her . (代表后面的名词从句)

I suppose it mysterious how he got rich . (代表后面的名词从句)

It is...that...结构：用来对句子的某部分加以强调：

7) It is he that has brought me up with a true love .

(通常说 He brought me up with a true love . 如对这个句子的主语 he 加以强调，可用上面这种结构。)

It is me that he has brought up with a true love .

(对原句的宾语 me 加以强调)

It is with a true love that he has brought me up .

(对原句的介词短语加以强调)

It was after my parents died that he brought me up with a true love .

(原句为 He brought me up with a true love after my parents died , 上面结构是对原句的状语从句加以强调。)

试比较下面句子：

It is ten days since I arrived .

It was ten days ago that (or when) I arrived .

It was in China where (or that) we met .

55 c . It 也可用来

1) 作主语，表示天气、时间或距离：

a) It was fine (cold , cloudy ; rained , froze , snowed , threatened to rain , was blowing hard , lightened and thundered) .

b) It was ten o'clock (still early , getting dark , time to go , Sunday , spring morning , too long , three years now , long long ago) .

c) It is too (or so) far (two miles away , within 300 meters of the bridge , far far away , a long way , instead of far)

2) 作宾语，不代表什么东西，只给句子某种特色，有一些俚语的味道：

a) 作动词的宾语：

He footed it through the muddy road (hiked it , ran it , walked it to the town ; lorded it over them , duked it , bossed it ; roughed it , pigged it ; fought it out , battled it , had it out with Mary ; took it out of (or on) John , gave it (hot) to her ; will catch it , had it in the face ; brazened it out , braved it out ; chanced it) .

“ Go it ! ” cheered the audience . You are coming (or going) it (too) strong . Don't draw it strong , draw it mild .

He had it his own way , would have it that I was wrong . As (ill) luck would have it , her brother died . As he put it . “ No money , no talk . ” Take it easy . As I take it , he knows nothing .

Hang it all ! Deuce take it ! Damn it ! Dash it ! Both - er it !

b) 作介词 of 或 for 的宾语 :

He had a hard time of it , made a jolly life of it , had the best (the worst) of it . He made a revenge of it . What a dinner I have of it ! He made a bolt for it , had to run for it . Though he had done nothing , he was in for it . He was hard put to it .

3) 作主语 , 代表作主语的另一人称代词 , 常和系动词和 with 引出的短语连用 :

It is well with her . (比较 : She is well .)

It is all over (or up) with us .

It is always so with children . (比较 : Children are always like that .)

It fared well with me . How is it with your family ?

It seems to be the case with women .

4) 其他情况 :

a) “ Who is it ? ” “ It is me . It cannot be John . ” ‘ Is this Mr . Huntington ? ’ ‘ It is . ’ (It 用来表示一个身份尚不明确的人 , 译为汉语时常不译出 , 如上面句子可译为 “ 是谁 ? ” “ 是我。 ” “ 不可能是 John。 ” “ 是的。 ”)

b) What a pretty girl it is ! (用在感叹句中 , 表示亲密。) 多漂亮的姑娘呀 !

What an ass it is ! (用在感叹句中 , 表示鄙视。) 真是个大笨蛋 !

c) It says in the Bible (or the newspapers) that... (说 the Bible says... 更好)

d) He is really ‘ it ’ (= a stupid fellow , or an important person) .

She is really ‘ it ’ (= a sexy girl) .

That is it (= Something I want to know) .

That is about it (= nearly the case) . That must be it . 56
d . 在某些情况下 it 可以省略不用。

1) 作宾语时省略 :

I don't know what it is , but I'll find out . “ Who has come ?
I don't know .

“ How is it done ? ” “ They will show . ”

I say . I can't say .

I will try . I will not give up .

“ I don't understand . ” “ I will explain ! ”

I don't hear . I don't notice .

You can ask him .

I can't tell .

I forget . I don't remember , because I don't mind .

You will see . Nobody can deny .

I cannot refuse , I must accept .

2) 作主语时省略 :

(It) Seems easy .

(It) Sounds funny .

(It) Doesn't matter . (It) Looks like we are okay , but...

(It is) My mistake . (It is 常被省略)

(It is) Very kind of you to see me .

8 . 用名词代替代词的情况

57 名词有时也可用来代表第一、第二或第三人称的代词，来表示某些特定的意义。为了同样目的也可用特别的代词代表普通的代词。

a . 一种情况是用名词或名词短语代替第一人称的 I 或 We :

1) The present writer is glad to say he happened to have brought his camera with him when the accident took place . (= I am glad to say I happened to have brought my camera with me when the accident took place .)

(这里用 the present writer 代替 I , 使报导显得更客观 , 仿佛是第三者所见情况 , 这时全文要自始至终从第三者的角度叙述 , 要用 he , his 等代词代替 I , my 等代词。)

2) The undersigned is a forty-year-old Chinese . (用在署名的文件中)

3) your (humble or obedient) servant .

(为信末套语 , 在英国用得较多。)

4) One (or A man , A body , An individual , A woman , A girl , A person) is not so foolish as to do that . (用这些代词代表 I , 显得更客观 , 动词很少用过去时态。意思接近 “ 谁也不会这样干。 ”)

5) What can a fellow (or a chap , the old boy , the old man , this baby , yours truly , yours respectfully) do ? (玩笑语)

Tell a body (= me) .

6) Caesar is listening . (高傲的说法)

Let him come and see Dr . Lee .

Why don't you let your uncle know ? (对下辈的说法)

7) They ignored present company (= us , who are here now) .

有时可用 we 代替 I , 如 :

8) We (国王在公告中对自己的称呼) are satisfied with their services .

It seems to us he has done his best .

We have read it ourself (not : ourselves) .

9) We (指编者或作者) have tried to express the public opinion . (社论中用 we)

10) 口语中谦逊的说法 :

Let us (= me) have a look . Where could we (= I) get it ?

58 b . 有些名词或名词短语可用来代替第二人称的 you :

1) Your Majesty (or Your Highness , Your Excellency , Your Worship , Your Reverence) is (not : are) so kind . (表示尊敬)

2) I shall never forget what Dr . Lee has done for me . (表示尊敬)

3) What is my darling doing ? My dear girl is getting tired ,

isn't she? (亲昵的说法)

4) What is the woman doing? The woman must be crazy. (鄙夷的说法)

5) My dear friend (or Uncle, You fool), I don't understand you. (用作呼语)

6) My dear friend (or My good man) is mistaken. (表示亲密或讥讽)

7) Someone call (not: calls) a taxi. One stay (not: stays) here. (命令)

有些代词有特别的意思, 如:

8) Poor girl! What is it crying for? (对孩子的亲密说法)

9) How are we today? We are leaving, aren't we? (父母对孩子的说法)

10) What is he (or she) doing now? (表示亲切)

59 c. 有些名词或名词短语可用来代替第三人称的代词, 表示特殊的意义:

1) His (or Her) Majesty (=The king, The queen) will approve it.

His (Royal) Highness (=The Prince) will consider the matter.

His Excellency (=The Ambassador, The Governor) has started for France.

2) The fool must be crazy. The beast will answer for it. (辱骂语)

3) May He (=God) be with you.

May She (=the Virgin Mary) be with us.

4) He (= what he writes) is much read today.

Few read her (=what she writes) in these years.

5) Our hero decided to try. Our young John became angry.

(这样说以引起读者的兴趣或注意)

另外, she 或 her 有时可用来代替船只、电车、汽车、管道、引擎、手表、工具、项链及任何讲话人极感兴趣的東西。

9. 似乎多余的人称代词

60 在口语中有时会用一个似乎多余的代词, 放在另一名词的前面或后面。在书面语中这种用法应当避免, 例如下面的这些情况:

a. 一个名词 (或其他东西) 后面多余的代词:

1) 作主语:

Charles Darwin (名词), he is a scientist. (正常说法是: Charles Darwin is a scientist.)

Vicious circle, what does it mean? (正常的说法是: What does 'vicious circle' mean?)

Some of us, we had to wait many years.

We 'll have us a real fine trip.

To work until midnight (不定式短语), it would certainly dishearten him.

That you should suddenly disappear (名词从句) , it worried her .

2) 作宾语 :

a) Charles Darwin (名词) , I have often heard about him . (正常说法是 : I have often heard about Charles Darwin .)

The man (名词 , 后面跟一个定语从句) who writes this book , I know him very well . (正常说法是 : I know very well the man who writes this book .)

These scientists in charge of the work , I find them very young men .

b) To do the same thing every day (不定式短语) , he finds it unbearable .

c) He (主格代词 , 后面跟一个定语从句) that loves me , I love him . (正常说法是 : I love him who loves me .)

He who has the courage , let him do it .

She , who has helped me , I will try to help her .

d) Whoever (关系副词) I love , him I love truly . (这是极为文气的说法 , 注意多余代词的位置。)

(正常说法是 : I love truly whoever I love .)

Whoever you trust , him you should beware of .

What he has won , that he will keep .

Whoever did that , them I shall reward .

Whatever is said in the Bible , that I believe .

b . 一个名词 (或其他东西) 后面的多余代词 :

He is a great scientist , Charles Darwin . (正常说法是 : Charles Darwin is a great scientist .)

It is a wonderful invention , the electric lamp .

She talked to us , the head nurse .

She is no stranger to us , not your aunt .

注 : 在 It is easy to learn English 和 It is natural that they got married 及其他类似的句子中 , it 是必要的 , 不可省的 , 而不是多余的。

另外注意 , 代词一般用在它所代替的名词后面 , 位置不能对调。但在下面这类句子中 , 代词可以放在它所代替名词的前面 , 两者的位置可以互换 :

On his birthday (状语) , John (主语) invited friends to dine . (= On John's... , he invited...)

As no one looks after her (宾语) , Ida ran wild .

When he was a child (状语从句) Lincoln (主语) studied hard . (= When Lincoln... , he studied...)

As none loved him (宾语) , the boy became hardhearted . (= as none loved the boy , he became hardhearted .)

第四单元 形容词

. 形容词的用法及位置

A . 作定语的用法

61 形容词有 5 种用法, 10 个位置。

1. 形容词作定语时通常放在它所修饰的名词前面, 被修饰名词可称为主体词 (Head-word), 形容词和主体词结合起来, 表示一个单一的意思:

I like good students .

He lives in an old house .

62 2. 在某些特殊的组合中, 形容词可放在主体词的后面:

He is the Consul General (or Notary Public) .

He showed his letters patent in the court martial as proof positive . (法律语言, 多从法语中借用)

It is the greatest book imaginable (or the largest hospital available) . He is the richest man alive . (形容词最高级 + 名词 + 形容词)

He came on Monday last , and will come again on Monday next . Customs here are similar to customs there . The part inside has much to do with the part above (名词 + 作定语用的表示位置的副词)

He has nothing pleasant to say to you . He wants everything good . Something terrible will happen . Anybody present knows him to be a liar . (合成代词 + 形容词)

I like any boy both honest and intelligent . We arrived at a place dirty , gloomy and desolate . (名词 + 形容词)

John is the only boy dear to his mother (or a servant faithful to his master , a businessman greedy for money) . (名词 + 形容词 + 介词 + 名词)

He was Alexander the Great (or Richard the Lion-Hearted) . (专有名词 + the + 形容词)

Marriage is a matter hard to handle . I know of a man ready to help us . Is this the time suitable to say anything? (名词 + 形容词 + 不定式)

He drove along a path two meters wide . He lives in a house eight stories high . A boy about five years old is playing in the garden . (名词 + 数词 + 名词 + 形容词)

He is a boy taller than you (or as tall as you) . (名词 + 形容词比较级 + than + 名词) 或 (名词 + as + 形容词 + as + 名词)

There slept a man with his eyes open . Look at the dog with its ears erect . (with + 名词 + 形容词)

B . 作补语（表语）的用法

63 3 . 和名词一样，形容词也可用在系动词后作补语（表语），修饰主语或说明主语的情况：

You are hungry . John is honest . Father seems sad . Mary looks old . I feel tired . Lee remains ill . She is growing fat .

如果形容词需要强调而主语又有较长的修饰语，形容词可放在系动词及主语的前面：

Gone are the days when my heart was young and gay .

Happy is he who is satisfied with what he has .

如形容词前还有 how 修饰，也可放在前面：

How old is he ? （疑问句）

How strong is his country ?

How funny he is ! （Not : is he ? ）（感叹句）

How rich this country is !

64 4 . 和名词一样，形容词也可用在宾补动词后作宾语的补语，对宾语加以修饰或说明：

They make me angry . I thought it easy . He likes his coffee hot . They left their son ignorant . They called his works great . Mother keeps the floor clean . They find John honest .

如果宾语很长，形容词也可放在动词后面（紧跟动词）：

Mother keeps clean the floor , the furniture and everything .

He set free all the prisoners in the village .

He left vacant all the rooms of his hotel .

C . 解释性用法

65 5 . 有些形容词，常和别的词结合，对主语进行解释，它和主语间常用逗号隔开（这时它带有状语的作用，说明为什么有这种情况）：

Sad and tired , John wandered about . (=John was sad and tired , and thus he wandered about .)

Young , rich and pretty . Mary has many boy friends . (=Mary is young , rich and pretty . and so she has many boy friends .)

Angry with me , he complained all day .

Ashamed of his uncle , John refused to mention him .

Unable to reply , she pretended not to hear me .

Ready to fight them , he stood unmoved .

Three hundred miles long , the road is the longest one in this country . (=The road is three hundred miles long , and it is the longest one in this country .)

Ninety years old grandma is still healthy . (=Grandma is ninety years old , yet she is still healthy .)

Penniless (used singly) , he sold his watch .

66 6 . 解释性的形容词，也可放在主语后面，这时强调性较弱，它前后都有逗号把它和句子的其他部分隔开：

John , sad and tired , wandered about .

Mary , young , rich , and pretty , has many boy friends .

The road , three hundred miles long , is the longest in the country .

67 7 . 这种形容词放在句末时强调性最强，这时句子的谓语大多为不及物动词，表示一个动作。如果句子短，前面可以不加逗号：

John wandered about sad and tired . (=John wandered about , and was sad and tired .)

He approached , careless of danger .

He struggled and struggled , unable to get up . John fell down unconscious .

He sat there silent and sad .

68 8 . 解释性形容词一般对主语进行解释，偶尔也用来说明宾语：

He placed me , dirty and damp , beside the king .

They took John , half dead , to the hospital .

D . 作独立成分

69 9 . 形容词可用在句首，起独立成分的作用，和句子的任何其他词都没有联系，只对整个句子作某种说明，多和一些其他词结合使用，单独用时较少：

First , we need money ; second , we need courage .

True , he has married twice .

He has no job . Worse , he is ill .

Sad to say , I cannot trust a woman any more .

Needless to say , he is the worst man in this city .

Curious to relate , she loves a poor man like me .

Contrary to the popular opinion , a very strong man often dies young .

Most wonderful of all , he began to repent .

Most important of all , one should know oneself .

Best of all , he is extremely patient .

E . 作感叹语

70 10 . 形容词有时用作感叹语 , 表示一时的情绪 :

Stupid ! He must be crazy .

Very good ! Do it again .

Right ! So what is wrong ?

Wonderful ! Wonderful !

Shocking ! I have never seen such a thing .

How dangerous !

F. 只作表语和只作定语

71 有些形容词只能用作表语，不能在名词前作定语，这类形容词可称为表语形容词，如：ill, well, content, unable, sorry, glad, mindful, exempt, bound (for), bent (on), afraid, ashamed, asleep, awake, away, aware, alike, alive, alert, averse, agape, astir, ablame, afloat, afire (还有其他以 a- 开始的词)。

正确用法：

He is alone.

I saw him alone.

The old man, alone on the island, looked like a beast.

Alone on the island, the old man looked like a beast.

He wandered about sad and alone.

错句：

He is an alone man. (应用 lonely 或 lonesome)

The alone woman has lived here many years. (lonely) 若在名词前作定语，可改用其他形容词，如可以用 sick 代替 ill，以 happy 代替 glad, frightened 代替 afraid, 以 contented 代替 content。有个别这类词可作定语，但意思有变化，如：

what a sorry (可悲的) situation!

This is a glad (令人高兴的) day for us.

72 另一方面，有些形容词只能用作定语，不能用作表语，如：

left, right, inner, outer, upper, hinder, utter, former, elder, eldest, major, minor, latter, lesser, wooden, earthen, woolen, brazen, golden, ashen, leaden, flaxen

His elder brother is fifteen. (正确)

His brother is elder. (错误)

His left hand is wounded. (正确)

His wounded hand is left. (错误)

He has a wooden house. (正确)

His house is wooden. (错误)

The figure is golden. (错误)

The pot is earthen. (错误)

但在用于引伸意义时，有些这类形容词可以这样用，如：

His future looks golden. (正确)

His face is ashen. (正确)

. 两类形容词

A . 描绘性形容词

73 从实用角度考虑, 形容词可以分为描绘性和限定性两大类。

1. 绝大多数形容词都是描绘性的, 前节所列形容词都属于这一类。它们可能表示有关人的品质, 如 Shakespearean ,Dar-winian ,Marxian , Herculean , 也表示某些东西的特点, 如 Biblical , solar , celestial , 可与地名有关, 如 Japanese , Ro-man , Parisian , 也可与某种材料有关, 如 brazen , airy , earthen , 可指外观, 如 long , colorful , square , 也可指性质, 如 strong , harmful , lasting , 或指情绪, 如 angry , sad , charmed 等等。

2. 它们可以放在多种位置: a) 名词前面, b) 名词后面, c) 系动词后面作补语, d) 宾语后面作宾语的补语及前章所列的其他 6 个位置, 如:

a) A good dictionary is necessary .

b) A dictionary good for children is necessary .

c) This dictionary is good .

d) He finds the dictionary good .

3. 它们大多数可用于比较级, 如:

strong ,stronger ,strongest ;long ,longer ,longest ;beautiful , more beautiful ,most beautiful ;depressing ,more depressing ,most depressing

4. 它们多数都不能用作名词或代词, 除非加上某种词尾, 如: 形容词——happy , honest , long , strong , sad , hungry , poor

名词——happiness ,honesty ,length ,strength ,sadness ,hunger , poverty

有少数形容词可以用作名词:

He is a good (形容词) man .

He never does good (名词) .

He lives an evil (形容词) life .

He returns good for evil (名词) .

He always goes the right (形容词) way .

He does not know the difference between right (名词) and wrong .

He lives in a very dark (形容词) room .

He never goes out after dark (名词) .

He felt cold (形容词) .

He shivered with cold (名词) .

5. 描绘性形容词都放在限定性形容词后面, 用来修饰同一名词, 如 all rich men , any red dress

6. 它们对名词的单复数问题不产生影响, 如 fat boys , wise boys , kind - hearted boys

B. 限定性形容词

74 另一类称为限定性形容词。

1. 这类形容词数量不多，仅仅有几十个。但它们用得很多，也很重要。它们可以表示数量，如 much, little, 也可表示数目，如 many, numerous, few, five. 最重要的是，它们可以表示“哪个？”，如：this, that, all, any, some, every, either, both, the, a, 这些也可称为指不词 (demonstratives)。

2. 它们只能用在名词前面，不能用于其他位置，如：

Some dictionaries are very useful .

He has a car .

John has no children .

You may ask me any question .

但有少数例外情况，例如有些可作表语或补语：

His faults are very few, and mine are very many. His money is too much, and mine is too little. He is fifteen.

有少数这类词常可用作补语，但这时它们是代词而不是形容词，如：

That is all 中的 all, My advice is this 中的 this 以及 Such is my purpose 中的 such。

3. 这类形容词一般不能用于比较级，只有少数表示数量的形容词可有比较级和最高级，如：many (or much), more, most; few, fewer, fewest; little, less, least

4. 它们大多可以用作代词或名词，只有少数除外（如：no, a, the, every）：

Much has been said .

Seven were killed .

John's is better than mine (不能用 my) .

Mine is the red one .

Both of them are ill .

Don't say that .

5. 如果和描绘性形容词同时用来修饰一个名词，它们都放在描绘性形容词前面：

He has many good friends. (不能说 good many friends)

He knows some such honest northern people. (不能说 honest northern some such people)

6. 它们决定后面所修饰名词的单复数。这个问题下节将详细讨论。

．限定性形容词与名词单复数的关系

75 限定性形容词，或称限定词 (Determinatives)，对它所修饰的名词 (主体词) 起某种限定的作用，即决定在 3 种情况中属于哪一种：

a) 可数名词——单数，b) 可数名词——复数，还是 c) 不可数名词。换句话说，它必须与主体词在是否可数，及是单数还是复数上一致。某一特定的限定词，其主体词只能是单数可数名词，如 this book；另一限定词只能和一复数可数名词一起用，如 these books；再一种限定词只能用来修饰不可数名词，如 much ink。第四种可以和任何名词连用，如 some book, some books, some ink。

76 有些词组起着限定词的作用，如：a number of, lots of, a great deal of，它们和单一的形容词作用一样。例如在 a number of students 中，a number of 修饰名词 (主体词) students，意思接近 some。如果机械地把 number 看作主体词，把 of students 看作定语，就会理解错误。

77 1. 下面这些单数可数限定词或限定词型的短语 (简称 SCD) a, one, each, every, either, neither, such a, many a, another, a certain, a single or half a 都只能用在单数可数名词 (简称 SCN) 前面。简言之，SCD 用在 SCN 前面：[S=singular C=countable D=determinative, N=noun]

He has a car. (正确)

He has a cars. (错误)

He has a money. (错误)

A certain gentleman came. (正确)

A certain gentlemen came. (错误)

He has not a single ink. (错误)

I have never seen such an animal. (正确)

I have never seen such an animals. (错误)

Such a water is not good for us. (错误)

78 2. 单数可数限定词 (简称 SCD) 或不可数限定词 (简称 UD) 或起同样作用的短语，如：this, that, a kind (or sort, type, class, form, make, style, brand, breed, species) of 可用在单数可数名词 (SCN) 或不可数名词 (UN) 前面。简言之，SCD, UD 用在 SCN, UN 前面。[U=un-countable]

This book is enjoyable.

This weather is enjoyable.

This books are enjoyable. (错误)

That car is mine.

That milk is sour.

That cars are mine. (错误)

This is a kind of bat.

There is a sort of gas called oxygen.

A Pekinese is a species of dogs. (少见)

79 3. 通用限定词 (简称 GD) 或类似短语 the, some, any, no, what, his (or John's, etc.), the same, the very, all the, part (or

half , most) many kinds (or sorts , types , etc .) of 等 , 可用在任何名词的单数或复数 (简称为 GN) 前面。简言之 , GD 用在 GN 前面。

[G = general]

He has no car .

He has no cars .

He has no money and no humour .

The same gentleman came .

The same gentlemen came .

He has not the same ambition as you have .

What house do you want ?

What houses do you want ?

What bread do you want ?

What education do you want ?

80 4 . 不可数限定词 (简称 UD) 或类似短语 much , little , a little , not a little , a good (or great) deal of , a large (or small) amount of , a bit of , a touch of , a trace of 等 , 可用在不可数名词 (简称 UN) 前面。简言之 , UD 用在 UN 前面。 [P = plural]

He has a little money and a little humour .

We need a good deal of ammunition and a good deal of encouragement .

He has a large amount of property but a small amount of joy of life .

There is a touch of salt and sarcasm in his writing .

包含有 quantity 在内的短语只能用在物质名词前面 :

A large quantity of beer is produced .

We consume great quantities of food every year .

另外某些短语只能用在抽象名词前面 :

There is a shade of meaning in it .

He has a spice of humour and malice .

There is an element of risk in this enterprise .

I find a streak (or tinge , flavour , hint , suggestion) of truth in his remarks .

We must be armed with a great measure (or a high degree) of courage .

81 5 . 复数可数限定词 (简称 PCD) 或类似短语 few , a few , not a few , only few , but few , several , a couple (of) , various , divers , sundry , an assortment of ; two (or three , etc .) , all , certain , other , those , these , both , many , numerous , frequent , a great many , a good many , a number of , great numbers of , most , the majority of , the generality of ; dozens (or hundreds , thousands , tens of thousand) of 等 , 只能用在复数可数名词 (简称 PCN) 前面。简言之 , PCD 用在 PCN 前面。 [P = plural]

He has a few dollars .

He has a few dollar . (错误)

He has a few money . (错误)

He has a few strength . (错误) Most students dislike algebra .

Most student dislike algebra . (错误)

Most fruit juice is full of vitamins . (错误)

I want other dictionaries .

I want other dictionary . (错误)

I want other bread . (错误)

82 6 .复数可数限定词(PCD)或不可数限定词(UD)及其类似短语 such , enough , a lot of , lots of , plenty (of) , a variety of , (an) abundance of 等 , 只能用在复数可数名词 (PCN) 或不可数名词 (UN) 前面。简言之 , PCD , UD 用在 PCN , UN 前面。

He has lots of animals .

He has lots of paper and ink .

He has lots of animal . (错误)

I like such houses .

I like such tea .

I like such house . (错误)

又如 :

an infinity of oranges (of sunshine)

a world of trees (of trouble)

a wealth of illustrations (experience)

a sight of people (of money)

a wilderness of roofs (of furniture)

an ocean of faces (of yellow sand)

a minimum of words used to create a maximum of effect oceans of coconuts (of money)

tons of books (of money)

83 7 . 反过来说 , 单数可数名词前面只能有 77 , 78 , 79 节所列的这类限定词 :

He has dog . (错误)

He has good dog . (错误)

He has very good dog . (错误)

He has a dog . (正确)

He has another dog . (正确)

He has another good dog . (正确)

Person has come . (错误)

Important person has come . (错误)

What person has come ? (正确)

What important person has come ? (正确)

84 8 . 单数可数名词前不可用 80 , 81 , 82 节中所列限定词 : He has much book . (错误)

He has certain book . (错误)

He has such book . (错误)

He has many books . (正确)

He has a certain book . (正确)

He has such a book . (正确)

85 在限定性形容词和它的主体词之间可以插入一个描绘性形容词，不影响上述规律：

He has many dogs . (正确)

He has many pretty dogs . (仍然正确)

He listened to some stories . (正确)

We listened to some exciting love stories . (仍然正确)

He has wife . (错误)

He has pretty wife . (仍然错误)

He has very pretty wife . (仍然错误)

He has very pretty young wife . (仍然错误)

· 表示“激起情绪”和“感到情绪”的形容词

86 表示情绪的形容词值得特别注意。有些纯粹是形容词，如 angry, fearful, familiar。另一些是由动词加词尾-ing 或-ed 构成的，称为现在分词或过去分词。这类形容词有些是表示“激起某种情绪”的，有些表示“感到某种情绪”的。shameful 表示“使人感到羞耻”，如：Such a son is shameful. 主语 son 并不感到羞耻。但 ashamed 却不同，它表示“感到羞耻”如：My son is ashamed. 同样，the interesting children 表示“使人感兴趣的孩子们”，而 the interested children 表示“感兴趣的孩子们”。因此我们可以把 shameful, interesting 这类形容词称为“激起情绪”的形容词 (Adjectives of Exciting)，而把 ashamed, interested 这类形容词称为“感到情绪”的形容词 (Adjectives of Feeling)。

和“激起情绪”的形容词连用的名词多指东西，指人时较少。我们常说 shocking rumours, tiresome work, painful experience. 只在少数情况下和表示人的名词连用，如 tiresome fellows。

和“感到情绪”的形容词连用的名词多指人（或指有情绪的动物），而不指物。我们可以说 a frightened bird, the astonished stranger, the annoyed girl, 而不能说 a frightened story, (应说 a frightening story), the astonished news (应说 the astonishing news)。但这类形容词可修饰人格化的东西，能有感受力的东西，如 the troubled face, her sad eyes, John's determined mouth, the angry sea, the melancholy moon。

87 英语中有很多对形容词，都和某种情绪有关，如 delightful, delighted; satisfactory, satisfied。其中有一个表示“激起某种感情”，如 delightful, satisfactory；另一个表示“感到某种感情”，如 delighted, satisfied。这两种形容词不仅用在名词前面作定语，还可放在其他位置，作补语等。

下面例句仅表示在系动词后的用法：

激起情绪的形容词	感到情绪的形容词
It is painful .	He is pained .
pleasant .	pleased .
tiresome .	tired .
delightful .	delighted .
satisfactory .	satisfied .
frightful .	frightened .
reminiscent (of	something) . reminded (of it) .
forgettable .	forgetful .

有些“激起情绪”的形容词以-ing 结尾，而“感到情绪”的形容词以-ed 结尾：

激起情绪	感到情绪
It is amusing .	He is amused .
interesting .	interested .
shocking .	shocked .

astonishing .	astonished .
disgusting .	disgusted .
annoying .	annoyed .
gratifying .	gratified .
perplexing .	perplexed .
charming .	charmed .
fascinating .	fascinated .

有些形容词既可表示“激起情绪”，又可表示“感到情绪”：激起情绪 感到情绪

It is curious .	He is curious .
comfortable .	comfortable .
fearful .	fearful .
joyful .	joyful .
doubtful .	doubtful .
suspicious .	suspicious .
clear to him .	clear about it .
familiar to him .	familiar with it .

. 冠词

88 冠词 the 和 a、an 是最重要也是最复杂的形容词。以 man 一个词为例，就有下面几种选择：man, a man, men, the men 和 the man，其中牵涉到是否用冠词及用哪个冠词问题。除了用冠词，还有不用冠词的问题，以及名词的可数与否的问题。

冠词总是放在名词前面，若这个名词有形容词修饰，冠词通常放在形容词前面，若形容词前还有副词，则冠词需放在副词前面，如：

This is a car—a good car—a very good car.

He can answer the question—the difficult question—the most difficult question.

但若形容词为 such, many 或 what, 冠词 a 应放在它后面，如：

I never met such a man.

He has lived here many a year.

What a beautiful park it is!

如果形容词为 all, both, half, double 或 twice, 冠词 the 必须放在它后面：

All the guests have come.

Both the brothers study Spanish.

I bought it at half the price (double the price).

(但是：He has waited half an hour or a half hour).

如果所用副词为 so, how, as, too, quite, rather 或 no less, 冠词 a 就放在副词所修饰的形容词后面及被修饰名词的前面：

It is so (or too) big a dog.

How big a dog it is!

It is as big a dog as yours.

It is no less big a dog than yours. (=It is as big a dog as yours.)

It is quite (or rather) big a dog (or a quite big or a rather big dog).

如果 a 后面紧跟的词以元音（不指元音字母）开头，例如在 apple, egg, uncle, idle fellow, old man 或 hour [au+], M.A. [em ei], 8 [eit], L beam [el bi:m], H frame [eitM freim] 前，就要用 an 代替 a。如果后面的词以辅音开头，即使是元音字母，也只能用 a，不能用 an，如 useful [ju:sful], European [ju+r+ pi+n], one [w)n]。又，用 a 还是 an，取决于紧跟它的词，而不取决于形容词后的名词。如在 an old teacher 中，用 an 是由紧跟它的 old 决定的，而不是由名词 teacher 决定的；在 an awfully hot climate 中，用 an 是由于紧跟它的副词 awfully 以元音开头，而不由 climate 决定。

A . 冠词与可数名词

- 89 1 . 冠词 a 有泛指作用 , 可和单数可数名词连用 , 隐约地表示 “ 任何一个 (即随便哪一个) ” :

A dog is intelligent .

I like a child . A big family is hard to support .

- 90 2 . 复数可数名词也有泛指作用 , 隐约地表示 “ 所有的 ” :

Dogs are intelligent .

I like children .

Big families are hard to support .

- 91 3 . 冠词 the 可与单数可数名词连用 , 表示 “ 一类 ” 东西 , 而不指哪一个。

The dog is intelligent .

I play the piano .

The palm grows in many countries .

Tomatoes are good for the liver .

以上 3 种用法是很相近的。

- 92 4 . A 还有 “ 一个 ” 或 “ 某个 ” 的意思 , 可以和单数可数名词连用 :

A dog is coming .

I see a child .

I have to maintain a family .

He is a teacher .

They call him a fool .

- 93 5 . 复数名词 , 如表示 “ 几个 ” , 或 “ 某几个 ” , 前面需加 some 这类词 (由此也可以看作是一种冠词) :

Some children are playing there .

I met some friends on the street .

There are some large schools in New York .

I bought some novels .

I have some pictures .

在某些特殊情况下 , some 必须省略 :

Children , but not grown - ups , are playing there . (表示对比)

- I meet either friends or relatives on the street .

I bought both novels and newspapers .

- Children are playing there because they have nothing else to do . (注意力在其他方面 , 而不在孩子的数目上)

I often meet friends at this time and at this place .

I bought novels to give to my girlfriend .

There are children in this park . (大量的)

Hats are sold in this shop .

They are children . (作补语)

These people are great scientists .

I found the demonstrators children .

- 94 6 . The 有特指的作用 , 可用在单数可数名词前 , 隐约表示 “ 那个 ” ,

这时所指是那个人或东西是很清楚的：

I bought a house yesterday afternoon . The house is across the river . (指新买的房子)

I want to see the boss . (你知道 the boss 指谁)

What is the price of this pencil ?

Open the window , please . (当然是指这个房间的窗子)

The government does not allow gambling .

The enemy was defeated .

The moon is rising .

95 7 . The 也可和复数可数名词连用，隐约地表示“那些”，这时指那些人或东西也是很清楚的：

I bought several houses yesterday . The houses are across the river .

I met some nice people at the party . It seems I had seen the gentlemen somewhere .

Open the windows , please .

Where are the children ? 96 8 . The 也有表示集体的作用，用在复数可数名词前，隐约地表示“所有（那些）……”：

They are the teachers of our school .

The cities of this country are dirty .

Have you ever seen the Seven Wonders ?

The members of the club are Indians .

B. 冠词与不可数名词

97 9. 不可数名词, 既不能加 a, 又不能用于复数形式:

He has a money. (错)

Thailand produces much rices. (错)

You need an advice. (错)

Informations are important in war. (错)

98 10. 不加冠词的不可数名词, 泛指这类东西, 隐约表示“任何数量的.....”, “任何程度的.....”:

I am fond of milk.

Air is important to animals.

Honesty is the best policy.

John hates darkness.

99 11. 如果表示有限数量或某种程度, 不可数名词前可加 some, 表示“一些.....”“一定程度的.....”:

I offered him some tea.

Some sugar is to be sprinkled over the cake.

He has got some experience from the job.

Some consideration of the matter is necessary.

在某些特殊情况下, 如 93 节所列情况, some 必须省略:

I offered him tea, not coffee. (表示对比) I offered him both tea and coffee.

I offered him tea because he liked it. (注意力在其他方面)

This country produces tea. (大量的)

Rice is produced in Thailand.

This is tea. (补语)

100 12. 特指的 the 可用在不可数名词前限定其意义, 隐约地表示“这”或“那”:

I offered him the tea which I made.

The sugar produced here is excellent.

He has obtained the experience of an expert.

The bread has been eaten up. (你知道指哪块面包)

Please pass me the salt.

C . 冠词与专有名词

101 13 . 下面这类专有名词不加 a 也不加 the , 也不能用于复数形式 :

continent—Asia	country—Japan
province—Guangdong	state—California
county—Henrico County	harbour—Pearl Harbour
island—Rhode Island	hill—Bacon Hill
mount Mount—Everest	cape—Cape Comorin
lake—Lake Geneva	bridge—Westminster Bridge
park—Hyde Park	street—Fifth Avenue
square—Times Square	person—William Shakespeare
domestic animal—Bobo	deity—Jupiter
day—Monday	planet—Jupiter
festival—Labour Day	month—February

102 14 . 下面各类专有名词前需加 the :

republic—the French Republic	railway—the Trans
state—the Irish Free State	Siberian Railway
empire—the British Empire	river—the Mekong
kingdom—the United Kingdom	(River)
peninsula—the Indian	plateau—the Tibetan
Peninsula	Plateau
ocean—the Pacific (Ocean)	basin—the Yangzi
	Basin
sea—the Japanese Sea	valley—the Rhine
	Valley
canal—the Suez (Canal)	desert—the Gobi
	Desert

pole—the North Pole

“普通名词+of+专有名词”这类词组前均需加 the :

the Cape of Good Hope	the House of Representatives
the Strait of Gibraltar	the Ministry of Foreign Affairs
the City of New York	the Society of Natural History

103 15 . 复数专有名词前都加 the :

the Himalayas the Great Lakes
the Rocky Mountains the Stuarts
the United States the Philippines

104 上面讲的是冠词的一般用法 , 一些特殊用法将在专门谈冠词的书中处理。在形容词的题目下 , 还有 3 个项目 , 即量词与数词、比较级及指示词。由于它们牵涉到代词和副词 , 将和它们一起讨论。

· 名词所有格

105 所有格指名词加上“'”，如 dog's, John's, teachers'。它们虽然由名词构成，却完全和形容词差不多。因此在本书中未列在名词一章中讨论，而放在形容词这一章中，作为一种特殊的形容词来考虑。

A . 所有格构成法

106 1 . 单数名词所有格一般在后面加 “ 's ” 构成 :

the boy's dog , the gentleman's hat , my father's friend , Smith's kindness , one day's trip 以-s 结尾的名词 , 构成的方法一样 :

the hostess's sons , the boss's secretary , Chambers's readers , St . James's Palace , King Charles's reign

以-es 结尾的古代人名 , 仅在后面加 “ ' ” :

Ceres's rites , Xerxes ' fleet , Achilles's wrath

以-is , -es , -us 结尾的古代人名 , 仅在后面加 “ ' ” , 但也可加 “ 's ” :

Adonis ' bane , Venus ' image , Judas ' betrayal , Atlas's daughter

以-ce , 或-ss ' 结尾 , 后面跟有 sake 的词 , 仅加 “ ' ” :

for appearance' (or conscience ' , goodness ' , righteousness ')
sake

107 2 . 复数名词后一般仅加 “ ' ” :

My parents ' friends were all rich .

The dogs ' eyes look fierce .

又如 : the prisoners's camp , that wasps ' nest , a fools ' paradise , her girls's school (单数主体词) ; seven prisoners ' camps , those writers's styles (多数主体词)

例外情况 : children's , men's , women's (这些是不规则的复数形式)

108 3 . 短语或其他词组 , 在最后面加 “ 's ” :

the king of England's crown , my son - in - law's house , the President - elect's speech , Alexanders the Great's conquest (头衔) (不要说 the King's of England crown , my son's - inlaw house)

his brother George's wife , Mr . Wang the headmaster's decision (同位语) , (不要说 his brother's George's wife , Mr . Wang's the headmaster decision)

(They borrowed) each other's books ; some (or no , every) one's affair , somebody else's affair . (指示性代词)

The man you introduced me to's wife (is a teacher of English) . (I forget) what is his name's address . (包含从句的结构)

如果两个名词代表两个人 , 则有以下情况 :

Wang's and Lee's houses=Wang's house and Lee's . (各有一栋房子)

the seller's and buyer's rights

Wang and Lee's house (共有的房子)

the students and teachers interest

her and her brother's friends (不好) =her friends and her brother's (较好) =hers and her brother's friends (文气) =her friends and those of her brothers (最好)

Mary's baby's face (不好) =the face of Mary's baby (较好)

John's friend's business (不好) = the business of the friend
of John (较好) = the business of John's friend (最好)

B . 名词所有格所指东西

109 名词所有格中的名词可以指各种东西。最常见的是：

1. 指人：

His Highness's health , my brother's job , John's desk

110 2. 其次是指动物，尤其是较大的，具有人的某些特点的动物：

the dog's tail , the horse's neighing , the lion's mane

111 13. 也可指人格化的庄严的地方、集体或东西：

地方：the world's future , the country's good , the earth's surface , the city's population . the State's history , the globe's centre , India's policy , London's life , Honolulu's All Way Yacht Harbor

集体：the university's students , her sex's right , the Conservative's opinion , the church's doctrine , our bank's investments , the University of California's Music School

自然界的某些东西：the sun's rays , the mountain's brow , the ocean's roar , the river's bank , nature's work , the wind's sighing , the moon's rising

具有特别意思的某些事物（具体的或抽象事物）：

the brain's function , the book's importance , the car's history , the treaty's signing , a word's structure , Death's door , fortune's smile , duty's call , life's struggle , wisdom's ways , science's influence , the mind's development

注：其他代表无生命东西的名词，不宜加所有格词尾“'s” ,

而应用 of 引出的短语来表示所有关系，如：不能说 the book's cover 或 the tables' legs , 只能说 the cover of the book 或 the legs of the tables . 在有些情况下可用更简单的形式，如 book cover 或 table legs.

112 4. 表示时间、距离、价值、重量：

时间：two years' time , three months' duration , (a) seven years' war , (a) three days' absence , his five minutes' walk , a moment's notice , a good night's rest , today's news , yesterday's lessons , last week's meeting , our next month's journey , the week's (or year's) end

距离：a cable's length , a stone's throw , a needle's point , a hand's span , a hair's breadth , the razor's edge , (a) thirty miles' march , (a) two hours' walk (or flight , drive , ride , sail)

价值：a dollar's worth (of apples) , thirty pounds' value

重量：a pound's weight , two tons' weight

113 5. 表示家、商店、机构，主体词常省略，如：

1) 家（住处）：

my uncle's , Mr . Eliot's , the shoe - maker's , Wang's , Schuman's

2) 商店：

the grocer's , the tobacconist's , the carpenter's , the florist's , a large photographer's , a well-managed baker's , three

grocers' (that are full of customers) , Dr . Lee's , Robinson's (or Robinsons , Robinson Ltd .) ; Palmer's (or Palmer Company , Palmer's the book sellers) , Wallis' (or Wallis , Wallis's—Name in - s has 3 forms)

3) 机构 :

St . Andrew's (Church) , St . James's (Palace) , St . Paul's (Cathedral) , St . John's (College) , Warner's (Cinema) , St . Paul's (Hospital) , St . Mary's (Abbey) (Institutions)

114 6 . 表示船只 :

the ship's captain (or cook , doctor , cabin) , the boat's crew (or head) , the vessel's course (or departure)

115 7 . 在某些习用语中有名词所有格 :

out of harm's way , in his mind's eye , to his heart's content (or desire , delight) , for form's (or god's , mercy's , brevity's , pity's , shame's , art's , her sake , his father's son (= he) , everyone's mother's son (= everyone) .

116 8 . 其他情况 :

Mary's letter (=the letter FROM Mary)

Japan's history (= the history CONCERNING Japan)

Justice's battle (=the battle FOR justice)

Paris's painters (=the painters IN Paris)

Queen's College (=the College CALLED Queen)

Mary's party (=the party GIVEN by Mary)

John's dinner (= the dinner ENJOYED by John)

Charles's defeat (= the defeat EXPERIENCED by Charles)

C . 名词所有格后主体词所指东西

117 名词所有格后的主体词可以表示各种不同的东西：

1 . 人或某动物所有的东西：

the boy's pencil , John's workers , Uncle's dog , my sister's old friend , the animal's master , the dog's wife

118 2 . 某人创造的东西或某动物制作的东西（某人或某动物由名词所有格表示，以下各节均如此）：

Shaw's plays , Disney's film , Webster's dictionary , Schubert's serenade , Shakespeare's Hamlet , Dickens's David Copperfield , Charles Chaplain's City Lights , John's exercise , Mary's cakes , the printer's error , a bird's nest , bee's wax

119 3 . 某人使用的东西：

beginner's lessons , a judge's wig , ladies' dress , children's hospital , the women's weekly（比较 a lunatic asylum , a cow house , a mouse trap）

120 4 . 某人或某动物具有的东西（如身体的一部分等），也可指某物的一部分：

John's face , my father's legs , the scientist's brain , the dog's eyes , goat's meat , the lion's heart

He is at his wit's (or life's , journey's) end . He has English at his fingers' ends (or tips) . He lives near the town's end (or the water's edge , the wood's edge , the city's centre , the hill's foot , the river's head , the mountain's top , the river's mouth , the mountain's side) . They are at sword's points .

121 5 . 某人或某动物的某个（些）特点或状态：

John's folly , Mary's kindness , my dog's ability , the pig's laziness , Lee's attitude , aunt's bad luck（所含主体词多由形容词演变而来，如 folly 由 foolish 变来，kindness 由 kind 变来等等）

122 6 . 某人或某动物的动作（由名词或动名词表示）：

John's appearance (or decision , statement , progress , death , imagination , thought , arriving , jumping , sleeping)（主体词多由不及物动词转变而来，如 appearance 和 decision 分别由 appear , decide 变来）

123 7 . 某人或某动物承受的动作：

John killed Charles , and everyone worried about John's punishment (=the fact that John will be punished) .

John's loss (or treatment , murder , praise , education)（主体词多由及物动词转变而来，如：loss , treatment 分别由 lose , treat 转变而来）

Help 及其同义词也可以这样用，表示“承受的动作”：

He came (or hurried , ran , rushed) to Mary's help (or aid , defence , assistance , rescue) .

这类主体词也可表示某人或某动物的动作：

John says he must punish Charles , and we worry about John's punishment .

如果表示一个无生命东西承受的动作 , 前面只能用 its 或 their , 而不能用名词所有格 :

I have delivered the money , and John has received it . Its delivery and its receipt (not : the money's receipt) was witnessed by three persons .

承受的动作也可用动名词的被动形式表示 :

John's being punished (or being murdered , being praised) was true .

D. 名词所有格的特指与类别的作用

124 如果所有格中的名词表示某一特定的人、动物和其他特定的东西，这个所有格即有特指的作用 (Specifying)：

my father's house, John's dog, London's population, yesterday's lessons (可以指出是“谁的”或“哪个的”)

如果表示某类人或东西，它就具有表类别的作用 (Classifying)：

the doctor's degree, a fool's errand, printer's ink, the traveler's check, a driver's license, collector's items, Mother's Day, the bull's eye, a snail's pace, a cat's paw, death's door, sheep's eyes, their dog's life, a good night's rest (这时无法指出是“谁的”或“哪个的”)

特指的名词所有格和类别的名词所有格，其名词都可有复数形式：

my parents' friends, those children's habit, my relatives' houses; the prisoners' camp, a fools' paradise, her girls' school, the thieves' den, two thieves' dens

这两类名词所有格的重音有所不同：

特指的名词所有格

Jón's dóg

fáther's hóuse

Lónon's populátion

类别的名词所有格

prínter's ink

dóctor's degree

búll's eye

125 特指的名词所有格不像类别的名词所有格那样和主体名词有紧密的联系，类别的名词所有格常和其主体词构成一个词组。

在某些情况下，表类别的名词所有格和主体词由连字号 (-) 连接起来，甚至写成一个字，有些甚至有特别的意思：

craftsman tradeswoman

salesman ratsbane

townsman coxcomb (虚荣的人)

crow's - nest (船桅顶上的平台)

cat's - paw (供别人使用的工具，爪牙)

bull's - eye (靶心)

monk's - hood (一种植物的名称)

126 特指的名词所有格大多可由介词 of 引起的短语代替，而类别的名词所有格却大多不宜用 of 引起的短语代替：

her mother's friend = the friend of her mother

the dog's legs = the legs of the dog

his thirty years' work = his work of thirty years

the ten minutes' silence = the silence of ten minutes

但是：

her mother's heart (慈母心肠) 不能用 the heart of her mother 代替；our dog's life (猪狗般的生活) 也不能由 the life of our dog 代替；the doctor's degree (博士学位) 也不宜由 the degree of the doctor 代替。

127 特指的名词所有格前的形容词 (限定性或描绘性的) 都修饰该名词

所有格，而类别的名词所有格前的形容词，却修饰主体词，或者说，修饰由名词所有格和主体词构成的整个短语：

特指的名词所有格	主体词
this horse's	eyes
those animals	strength
a child's	toys
several little girls'	laughing and shouting
every year's	travelling expenses
the previous night's	conversation
the bright sun's	glancing rays
noisy and dirty Liverpool's industry	形容词 类别的名词所有格 (+主体词)

those	child's tricks
a	world's fair
his	snake's tongue
the	snail's pace
that	student's life
his	gentleman's manners
some	nun's garments
his	child's eagerness
his	convincing preacher's tone
three	expert ship's carpenters
a very spacious	men's reading - room
the scorching	summer's sun (Scorching does not modify summer .)
many small	women's wards
that haughty	mayor's wife

在少数情况下，形容词修饰后面名词所有格，并与之构成习用语：

an	old wives' tale (an 修饰 tale , old 修饰 wives)
my	seven years' service
the	happy New Year's Eve (happy 修饰 Eve , 而 New 修饰 year)
her weary	old maid's smile
those terrible	madman's smiles

128 类别的名词所有格更多说明品质，因此有时可用形容词代替：a devil's (=devilish) trick

his woman's (=womanish)	heart
my fool's (=foolish)	errand
the snail's (=slow)	pace
a giant's (=great)	stride
a moment's (=momentary)	delusion

129 有些名词所有格可以理解为特指的，也可理解为类别的：

Her mother's heart (=the heart of her mother) (特指) is unkind.
Her mother's (=kind) heart (表类别) would not abandon me.

He lives in a gentleman's house (=the house belonging to a gentleman) . (特指)

He lives in a gentleman's house (=a house suitable for a gentleman) . (表类别)

This beginner's books (=The books of this beginner) (特指) are only two .

These beginner's (=elementary) books (表类别) are very easy .

E. 名词所有格的位置

130 根据在句中的位置，名词所有格可分为 5 类。

131 1. 放在主体词（即它所修饰的名词）前的名词所有格称为前置名词所有格（Pre-Possessives）。可以是特指的，也可以表类别。前面涉及到的例子几乎全属这类。

132 2. 有些名词所有格所修饰的主体词省略掉（因为这个主体词刚刚提过或即将提到），可称为独立名词所有格（Absolute Possessives）：

My son is in England and John's is in Germany.（因为 son 字刚刚提到，省略以避免重复。）

Mary's lessons are harder than Helen's.

A boy's character is different from a girl's (or that of a girl).

The dog's manner seems better than the cat's (or that of the cat).

John's books are difficult. Mary's (or those of Mary) are easy.

John's is a good house.（省略的词有时在后面出现）（较文气的用法）

Hitler's was a policy to conquer the world.

I prefer John's to Mary's handwriting.

133 3. 表示房子、商店或建筑物等主体词可以省掉，名词所有格单独用，这时称为地点名词所有格（Local Possessives）：

I went to Uncle's before I stayed at John's.（房子）

I bought it at a grocer's (or the tobacconist's, a large photographer's).（商店）

I went to St. Andrew's (church), St. James's (Palace), Warner's (Cinema) and some other places.（建筑物）

Harrod's (or Longman's) is (or are) near at hand.（商店名称可看作单数，也可看作复数。）

134 4. 放在主体词及 of 后的名词所有格称为后置名词所有格（Post-Possessives）。在主体词前有限定性形容词修饰时，常可这样用：

this friend of John's

that good dog of Mary's

any (great) work of Shakespeare's

all (strong) men of William's

no (serious) fault of the doctor's such (short) legs of this animal's

Which book of my brother's?
sister's?

What mistakes of my

three daughters of my dog's

so many tricks of this horse's

a son of John's (常见)

the son of John's (少见)

(good) books of Mary's (少见)

(good) wine of my uncle's (少见)

注：这时名词所有格中的名词必须指某一特定的人，主体词不能是

专有名词。

这类用法常常表示“一部分”，如：this friend of John's 可以暗含 John 还有别的朋友；three daughters of Mary's 说明 Mary 的女儿不止 3 个。但有时并无此种含义，如：this Hamlet of Shakespeare's 并不表示莎士比亚写了两本或更多的《哈姆雷特》。上下文可以表明是否有这种含义。

一般说来，John's son 比 the son of John's 好，因为更简练，但 John's most intelligent son 似乎不如 the most intelligent son of John's 好，John's books for children 似乎不及 the books of John's for children。主体词若有一个短语和从句修饰，用后置名词所有格似乎比用前置名词所有格好。

另一方面，在下面类型的用法中，“of+普通格名词”

要比“of+后置名词所有格”好：

a good friend of my father (不是 father's) (没有表示“一部分”的意图)

that play of Shakespeare (不是 Shakespeare's) (没有表示部分的意图)

a friend of my brother (不是 brother's), Dr. Johnson. (这时 of 的宾语后跟有一组同位语)

this friend of John's brother (不是 brother's) (这时前面还有一个名词所有格)

some friends of my sister (不是 sister's) who knows the Mayor (这时后面跟有一个从句)

every friend of my brother and (or) my sister (这时后面跟有一个由 and 或 of 引起的短语)

all friends of my family (这时宾语为一集体名词)

135 5. 放在系动词后，以主语为主体词的名词所有格称为主语名词所有格 (Predicate Possessives)。

This house is my aunt's. (aunt's=aunt's house)

Everything is God's.

His manner cannot be a gentleman's.

名词所有格间或放在 It is 后及一个不定式之前，表示特权或义务，这是一个比较文气的用法，平常用得很少：

It is John's (obligation) to pay the rent.

It is John's (privilege) to use the house.

It will be Mary's to cook and obey.

It is man's to work and suffer.

It will be children's to enjoy what their parents have accomplished.

F. 所有格还是普通格？

136 前面谈到名词所有格可有特指和类别两种作用。为了避免误解，一些类别的名词所有格可以去掉“'s”，成为普通名词。

名词所有格在指人时，偶尔把“'s”去掉：

her angel air	his baby face
a pirate ship	the non-partisan view
a Peter Pan ride	that bachelor life
the sick (作名词) ward	the retired (作名词) list
a mother heart	scientist eyes

指动物时，省掉“'s”时更多一些：

the rabbit hole	an eagle eye
his serpent tongue	that lion heart
the tortoise gait	the eagle noise

若指无生命东西，通常都可省掉：

a country dance	the space ship
our village church	the morning hours
the bed-foot (or-head)	the pin-point
a newspaper office	the kitchen door
the finger-end	the boat-head

137 类别的名词所有格，如名词为复数，其“'”有时可以省略：

the ladies'waiting room=the ladies waiting room
the savings'bank=the savings bank
the servants'hall=the servants hall

138 特指的名词所有格和普通格名词间意义上的差别不难看出：

this idiot's wife	this idiot wife
his girl's friend	his girl friend
her mother's tongue	her mother tongue

139 在表示地方的专有名词词组中，用法不很统一。在以人名开头的这类地名中，有些用名词所有格，有些用普通格名词：

St. Paul's Cathedral	Buckingham Palace
Lincoln's inn	Magdalen College
Pompey's Theatre	Carneigie Hall
Mary's Beauty Shop	Bering Strait
Gray's Harbour	Victoria Station
Drake's Island	Hyde Park
Pike's Peak	Lincoln Library

但若人名前有冠词 the，就只能用普通格名词：

the Hudson River
the Huntington Library
the Washington Monument
the Johnson House
the Higgins Company
the Garric Theatre

the Albert Hall

如地名不是用人名开始，都用普通格：

Pearl Harbor

Petticoat Lane

Waterloo Bridge

Nanking Road

如名词所有格中名词为复数形式，“'s”通常都不加：

All Souls College

the United States Navy

140 如果前面名词表示一段时间，而且是特指性的，可以用所有格形式，但这多见于书面语：

autumn's sunshine

December's snow

Friday's party

the morning's meeting

如果名词是表类别的，用普通格时更多些：

an autumn holiday

my morning lesson

every January night

her night attire

如果名词表示一段时间，两种形式都可以用：

a seven months'child

a seven months child

the five years'struggle

the five years struggle

如果名词表示一个时间单位，则只能用所有格形式：

an hour's notice

a moment's hesitation

下面三种形式意思差不多：

a trade union=a trade's union=a trades union

woman suffrage=woman's suffrage=women's suffrage

G. 用 of 短语还是用名词所有格？

141 应当说 John's pictures 还是 pictures of John? 说 the fly's wings 还是 the wings of the fly? 对这个问题下面将详细讨论。为了方便，我们把 John's, of John, fly's, of fly 通通称作修饰语 (Modifiers)，把 pictures 和 wings 称作主体词。

142 如修饰语有下面情况，用介词短语比用名词所有格好：

a. 表示无生命东西：the window of the house (不能说 the house's window)，the colour of the car, the leaves of the tree, the price of glory

b. 表示较低级动物：the head of the ant (不是 the ant's head)，the wings of the fly, the habit of the snail

c. 在科学论著或客观叙述中，表示家畜或家养的动物：The ears of the dog can hear what we can't hear.

d. 表示时间：the sunshine of autumn, the debate of Sunday, the breakfast of that morning. (Autumn's sunshine, Sunday's debate (在书面语中用得更多些))

e. 集体名词：the capital of the firm (比 the firm's capital 好)，a member of this society, some students of this class

f. “the+形容词”：the misfortune of the blind (不能说 the blind's misfortune)，the future of the young, the mystery of the unknown, the uprising of the oppressed

g. 复数名词：the car of my brothers, the books of his teachers (my brothers' car 和 his teachers' books 比较文气，但表类别的名词所有格却很常见，如：a women's magazine, men's dress, a thieves' den.)

h. 一系列名字：a friend of John, Richard and William, the policy of England or the U. S.

i. 指示代词：the inside of this (or that)，the opinion of all (or some, both)，the house of each, the good of all, the tragedy of both (但可说 somebody's task, anyone's duty, nobody's business, another's view, one's habit)

j. 代词并表示鄙视：the air of him, the gait of her, the faces of them, the pride of you (His air, her gait 等不表示鄙视)

k. 带冠词 a 的名词：the eyes of a child (比 a child's eyes 好)，the love of a girl, children of a poor mother (可参阅 112, 124 节)

l. 有名词所有格修饰的名词：a friend of Mary's uncle (不要说 a Mary's uncle's friend)，the picture of John's dog

m. 跟有定语的名词：the daughter of a millionaire coming from Paris, the situation of the youngest member of the Kim family, the death of John who has been a banker for twenty years, the son of Mr. Johnson, manager of America Company

n. 受到强调的名词：the works of Dickens (更强调于 Dickens's works 中之 Dickens)，the rise and fall of the Roman Empire

o. 为主体词 (表示动作的名词) 意义上的宾语:

I don't like the sight of (=to see) John (作意义上的宾语). (John's sight=John的视力)

I don't like the look of (=to look at) him.

The thought of (=To consider) this matter makes me shudder.

She will be the death of (=kill) William.

如主体词有下面情况, 用介词短语比用名词所有格好:

p. 表示画像之类东西:

the portrait (or that effigy, any likeness, no image, every bust) of (=representing) Hitler (Hitler's portrait=the portrait belonging to or drawn by Hitler)

q. 表示承受对象的动作: John's denial of his crime (John denies his crime); Mary's love of dogs; William's murder of a rich man (William murders a rich man); a rich man's murder of William (a rich man murders William).

r. 用来表示 x x x 一部分: a son (可能不止一个儿子) of Dr. Whitestone's; followers (可能指追随者中的一部分) of Mr. Kim's. (Dr. Whitestone's son=his only son or the particular son you know; Mr. Kim's followers=all his followers)

s. 前面有一限定词:

a (good) friend of John, some (interesting) books of Mary, any (great) play of Shakespeare, ten (exciting) stories of Maupassant (比 a John's (good) friend, Mary's some interesting books, etc. 要好一些)

143 如果主体词有以下情况, 用名词所有格比用 of 短语好:

a. 跟有一个同位语: the boy's teacher, Miss Shaw (the teacher of the boy, Miss Shaw); my teacher's book, Romeo and Juliet

b. 跟有自己的修饰语: Johnson's statement about his firm, Tolstoy's novels that are still read today

c. 为一系列名词: John's wife and children, Mary's praise or rebuke

d. 受到强调: that gentleman's manners, his son's great success, (I request) John's pardon (or excuse). (在 the manners of that gentleman 中, manners 不受强调。)

如果修饰语有下述情况, 用名词所有格也比用 of 短语好:

e. 为一表动作名词之意义上主语, 该名词后又跟有 of 短语:

John's (意义上的主语) treatment (表动作名词) of the servant (意义上的宾语) (John treats the servant), the city's opinion of the mayor, Mary's praise of John, the student's summary of the story, John's opening of his new store

f. 为一表动作名词之意义上主语或宾语, 而该名词后又不跟 of 短语: John's treatment (John treats others or others treat John); Mary's praise; David's support (or murder, promotion, judgment, condemnation)

H . 其他介词短语

144 有时其他不表示部分关系的介词短语可用来代替名词所有格或 of 短语：

He is a favourite with young people . (多用在系动词后代替 young people's favourite , a favourite of young people) .

It is a habit with my aunt .

That has been a principle with our party .

John's murder by Dick (=Dick's murder of John) is not true .

Her treatment by her husband (=Her husband's treatment of her) is rather cruel .

Novels by Dickens are wonderful .

This decision on the part of (=by) Mother is wise .

This is not a fault on the part of Uncle Lee .

John's sympathy for poor people is sincere .

在表示同情或喜欢的名词后 , for 可用来代替 of :

He has a liking for children .

His compassion (or fondness , pity , passion , love , esteem , anxiety , affection) for Mary is rather excessive .

His craving (or desire , relish) for novelty is well-known .

His opposition (or dislike , enmity , antipathy , objection , repugnance , menace) to Mary is untrue . (to 可用来代替 of , 表示反对关系。)

He is son (or brother , cousin) to John . (在没有修饰语的名词后 , to 可表示亲属及人与人的关系。)

He is secretary (or apprentice , guide , servant , physician , interpreter) to our boss .

但在 enemy , stranger , prey 这类名词前常有 a 或 no :

He is an (or no) enemy (or foe , friend) to justice .

He is a (or no) stranger (or party , accessory) to this affair .

He fell a victim (or prey , slave) to love , died a martyr to love .

(比较 : He became the victim , prey , or slave of love .)

to 也可用在前面带有 an 或 no 表示荣辱的名词后 :

He is a (or no) credit (or discredit , honor , disgrace , blessing , curse , boon , calamity , ornament , stain , burden) to his family (or mankind) .

To 可用在同位语后面 :

John , son (同位语) to Mr . Smith ; Mrs . Lo , secretary , to Dr . Ho ; this card , a freeticket to the show .

I . 结束语

145 在本单元结束时有一个问题也许值得谈一谈。根据有关名词及形容词所作的讨论，一个名词可以至少有 5 种方式来修饰另一名词。其中有些是正确的，有些是错误的，有些只是在特定的上下文中是正确的，我们必须选择正确的形式。例如：

the worldly people

the world's people

the world people

the people of the world

the people of the world's

the Vietnamese war

the Vietnam's war

the Vietnam war

the war of Vietnam

the war of Vietnam's

Shakespearean Sonnets

Shakespeare's Sonnets

Shakespeare Sonnets

sonnets of Shakespeare

sonnets of Shakespeare's

a philosophical problem

a philosophy's problem

a philosophy problem

a problem of philosophy

a problem of philosophy's some childish things

some children's things

some children things

some things of children

some things of children's

大家可以根据前面的讨论试作选择。

第五单元 副词

. 副词的一般特点

146 副词是一个可以修饰 a . 动词 , b . 形容词 , c . 另一副词 , d . 介词 , e . 连词 , 或 f . 整个句子的词。(黑体词为被修饰词)

a . He arrived late . He studies hard .

b . He is very honest . He has a rather difficult problem .

c . He arrived too late . He studies very hard .

d . He started long after me . She sat just behind John .

e . He arrived long after I did . She fell ill just because she worked too hard .

f . Luckily he succeeded . Economically , Africa is underdeveloped .

147 副词放在以下位置 :a .放在所修饰词前面 ,b .紧跟所修饰词 ,c .放在最前头 , d . 放在最后头 :

a . It is fairly easy . He often came here .

b . John will come soon . Wait here please .

c . Yesterday John's father suddenly came here . Outside . people from the village were quarrelling .

d . He went to a village far away from the city yesterday .

He has told me all about this matter before .

148 根据词义 , 副词可以分为下面几类 : a . 时间副词 , b . 地点副词 , c . 方式副词 , d . 程度副词 , 及 e . (不)肯定副词 :

a . He did yesterday . He was frequently failed .

b . John sleeps here . Mary went abroad . Let us climb up .

c . He slept soundly . He ran fast . We waited patiently .

d . He is extremely cruel . John walked too fast .

e . Certainly he will return . He will probably let me know .

149 副词和形容词一样可有等级。a . 单音节词 , 以加 -er 和 -est 的方式构成比较级及最高级 , b . 以 -ly 结尾的副词 , 以加 more 和 most 的方式构成比较级和最高级。c . 还有少数不规则的比较形式 :

原级	比较级	最高级
a . near	nearer	nearest
fast	faster	fastest
b . quickly	more quickly	most quickly
steadily	more steadily	most steadily
cleverly	more cleverly	most cleverly
c . ill , badly		worse worst
well	better	best
far	farther	farthest
much	more	most
little	less	least

. 副词的用法

A . 副词的普通用法

150 1 . 几乎所有副词可以用来修饰动词 :

He died here . (地点)

He died yesterday . (时间)

He died suddenly (方式)

He nearly (程度) died .

He has probably (肯定性) died .

151 2 . 程度副词可用来修饰下面的词 : a . 形容词 , b . 另一副词 , c . 间或修饰动词 :

a . He is rather silly . The house is very dark . He has an extremely difficult problem .

b . He ran much faster than I . He speaks English fluently enough . He works too hard .

c . He loves her very much . I little know that she is his sister .
方式副词也可用来表示程度 , 修饰形容词 (d) 或副词 (e) :

d . He is dreadfully sad . Mary is remarkably simple . She is lamentably poor . He is comfortably warm .

e . He ran tolerably fast . He writes immeasurably better than I . We have waited terribly long . He read incredibly fast .

注 : 出于语音上的考虑 , 副词及所修饰的副词不能同时都以 -ly 结尾 , 避免说 He works terribly slowly . (但可说 He's terribly slow .)

152 3 . 表示 a . 程度 , b . 时间 , 或 c . 地点的副词可以用来修饰介词 :

a . He is much against my proposal .

He failed entirely through his own fault .

He arrived exactly at five o'clock .

he sat just behind me .

b . He came soon after noon .

He left long before the war .

c . He lives far beyond that pagoda .

He stood close beside me .

It is near (or hard) by the bridge .

153 4 . 表示 a . 程度 , 或 b . 时间的副词可用来修饰连词 :

a . He fell ill partly because he worked too hard .

He met her exactly when she was angry .

b . He got married long before he was graduated .

He died soon after he got sick .

154 5 . 表示 a . 肯定程度 , 及 b . 方式的副词可以用来修饰整个句子 :

a . He will surely succeed .

Surely he will succeed .

He will probably come .

We must positively get the license .

Yes , I can . No . I can't .

b . Happily , he was pardoned .

Luckily , he has tried his best and succeeded .

B . 副词的特殊用法

155 6 . 少数副词可用来修饰名词。在这样用时 , 它们通常放在所修饰名词的前面 :

He is quite a hero (=quite heroic) .

He is regarded as rather a fool (=rather foolish) .

He is almost a child (=almost childish) .

Only Wang studied English last year . (No other students studied .)

Wang studied only English last year . (not any other language)

(Even 和 almost 的作用和 only 相同)

156 有些副词 (多为地点副词) 在修饰名词时 , 可以看作一个压缩的形容词从句 (即定语从句) :

He waited at the bridge there (=that lay there) .

He looked at the lamp above .

His life abroad (=which was spent abroad) was hard .

The then king (=king that reigned then) was cruel .

The above statement is false .

The up train (=train that goes up) comes at seven .

He went to a far country .

157 副词有时用在两个名词当中 :

Latin words , namely technical terms , often keep their original plural form .

Mr friends , especially Mary , are very young .

158 有时副词出现在 with 和一名词中间 :

He came here with sometimes his son , sometimes his daughter .

He tried again with scarcely a hope of success .

The room was out of order , with here books , there papers .

We talked in the house , with frequently roarings of guns coming from afar .

159 7 . When , where , why 和 how 可用来引起问句 , 也可同时用作副词和连词 , 也就是说 , 用作 “ 关系副词 ” (Relative Adverbs) :

When did you get married ? When shall we fight no more ?

Where did you first see her ? Where could I find a job ?

Why do apples fall from the trees ? Why can't we live longer ?

How can you do that ? How can I stay single ?

I still remember the day when I got married . Tell me the month when you leave .

This is the place where he died . The school where he studies is not far away .

I do not know the reason why he said that . The cause why he was killed is unknown .

This is (the way) how they make money . This is always the manner (how) you treat me .

. 副词构成法

160 1. 有些副词为简单副词 (不带词尾) :

often, out, quite, soon, home, back, there, thus, seldom, ever

161 2. 有些副词, 特别是地点副词及时间副词, 常常以加词尾的方式构成 :

-ly (=every) : yearly, monthly, daily, fortnightly

-ward(s) (=toward) : backward(s), leftward(s), upward(s), homeward(s), eastward(s), onward(s), inward(s)

-wise, -ways : lengthwise, clockwise, likewise, otherwise ;
always, lengthways, sideways-long : headlong-ling(s) : sideling(s)

-s : upstairs, outdoors, sometimes, nowadays, needs 或在一些单音节词前加词头或其他简单字 :

a- : along, away, abroad, apart, aside, adraft, aloud, ashore, across, above

be- : before, below, beneath, besides

介词 : inside, overboard, uphill, beforehand, today

there- : therein (=in that), thereafter, thereby, thereof, therewith, ect. (陈旧用法)

here- : herein (=in this), hereafter, hereby, hereof, herewith, etc. (陈旧用法)

where- : wherein (=in what or which), whereon, whereby, whereof, wherewith, ect. (陈旧用法)

162 3. 绝大多数副词都由形容词以下述 3 种方式构成 :

a. 大多数方式副词, 都在形容词后加 -ly 构成。注意拼法 :

形容词	副词	形容词	副词
glad	gladly	mournful	mournfully
happy	happily	heavy	heavily
jolly	jollily	silly	sillily
shy	shyly	dry	dryly
due	duly	true	truly
able	ably	probable	probably
dull	dully	full	fully
vile	vilely	sole	solely
despotic	despotically	idiomatic	idiomatically
public	publicly (例外情况)		
ill-natured	ill-naturedly	kind-hearted	kind-heartedly
provoking	provokingly	charming	charmingly
faltering	falteringly	lingering	lingeringly (书面语)
mistaken	mistakenly	hidden	hiddenly
marked	markedly	undisguised	undisguisedly

(书面语)

但是: friendly(形容词)—in a friendly way; manly(形容词)—in a manly manner; kingly(形容词)—in a kingly manner.

和形容词一样,以-ingly或-edly结尾的副词,也有激起感情及感受情绪的差别,但用得比较少,如:

激起情绪

感受情绪

He speaks amusingly

We listen amusedly.

The flowers bloom delightfully. We watch them delightedly.

He behaves disgustingly.

We left disgustedly.

The fight goes on excitingly. We look on excitedly.

b. 有少数副词和形容词形式相同:

He came in the late afternoon. (形容词)

He arrived late. (副词)

He has waited for a long time. (形容词)

He has waited so long. (副词)

另一些与形容词同形的副词有:

early, fast, far, near, well, ill, high, low, much, little, only, enough, hard, straight, right, wrong, left, east, west

在口语中有些形容词直接用作副词:

It is mighty good.

I am dead tired.

The soup is precious hot.

He is terrible rude.

c. 有些单音节形容词有两个副词形式,一个带-ly,一个不带,意思不相同:

We must buy cheap (=at a low price). We got off cheaply (=easily).

He lives high (=luxuriously). He spoke highly (=well) of me.

He came near. He nearly (=almost) died.

He played foul. He was foully murdered.

I love Mary most. They are mostly crazy.

163 4. 有少数副词与指示代词同形:

He has some (=about) fifty pounds.

It something (=somewhat) astonished me.

I care nothing (=not at all) for your threat.

Can you wait any (=in any way) more? I can't wait anymore.

I slept none (=never). I passed the night none too comfortably.

Is it that (=so) easy?

He is all (=entirely) alone.

164 在下面有关指示词、疑问词、比较级、数词、量词及关系词各单元,还将对副词作进一步探讨。

第六单元 指示词

1. 引言

165 此后四个单元，我们将讨论一些可用作代词、形容词及副词，而有某些共同语法特点的词。例如 which 是代词，whose 是形容词，where 为副词，但都有关系词的共同特点。又如 larg - er 为形容词，sooner 为副词，这两个词都具有比较级的共同特点。我们首先研究一组具有指示特点的词，如 this，another，every，称为指示词（Demonstratives）；然后讨论构成问句的词，如 who，why，whose，称为疑问词（Interrogatives）；接着处理表示“较.....”及“最.....”的一类词，如 larger，soonest，faster，称为比较级（Comparatives）及最高级（Superlatives）；再谈谈数词（Numericals）及量词（Quantitatives），如 five，dozen，much；最后研究同时具有连词和代词（副词、形容词）作用的一组词，称为关系词（Relatives），如 which，that，where。

. 指示词的一般特点

166 1. 指示词可以是单数也可以是复数，可以用作代词，也可用作形容词。有些指示词，如：this, that, 用作代词时是单数，用作形容词时，后面跟单数可数名词（简称 SCN）或是跟不可数名词（简称 UN）。另一些，如 there, those, 用作代词时为复数，用作形容词时后面跟复数名词。另外，如 any, 两种情况都可以。下表中 ink 代表不可数名词（UN），pen 代表单数可数名词（SCN），pens 代表复数可数名词（PCN）。这个表可说明一个特定的指示词是单数（SD）还是复数（PD），后面跟不可数名词还是单数可数名词：

SD (+ SCN or UN)	PD (+ PCN)
this (pen , ink)	these (pens)
that (pen , ink)	those (pens)
some (pen , ink)	some (pens)
the same (pen , ink)	the same (pens)
such (a pen , ink)	such (pens)
no pen , no ink	no pens
none (X) (=无适当的词)	none (X)
any (pen , ink)	any (pens)
all (the pen , the ink)	all (the pens)
every pen	X
X	both (pens)
either (pen)	X
neither (pen)	X
one (X)	ones (X)
another (pen)	other pens , others
a certain pen	certain pens

在左边，例如 this 是单数指示词。它可用作单数代词，如：This is good. 或跟一个单数可数名词或不可数名词，如：This book is good. 或 This milk is good. 在 this 的右边为 these，它的意思与 this 差不多，但是一个复数指示词。These 可用作复数代词，如：These are good. 或用作形容词，后面跟一个复数名词，如：These books are good. 该表也说明 some, the same, such, any 既可作单数，也可作复数，又说明 no, every, (a) certain 不能用作代词，只能用作形容词，this, that, some, such, no, any 及 all 可以跟一个不可数名词。

167 2. 有些指示词表示“一个”，有些表示“两个”，有些表示“多个”。

所以有必要弄清每一指示词可表示共有多少东西或多少人：

数量	指示词
three or more	all
two or more	these , those , some , same , such , other (s) , certain
one only	this , that , some (body) , same , such a , another , a certain , one

two onlyboth
zeronone , no
one of the three or more ...any , every
one of the twoeither , neither
one of the two or moreeach

168 3 . 大多数指示词也可用作副词。

除了 such , every , same , certain , one 以外 , 所有指示词都偶尔可用作副词 , 如 : He has some (=about) fifty good novels . The fish is that (=so) large ? I don't believe .

169 4 . 有些指示词可与连词一起用 , 如 :

either...or , both...and , neither...nor

Both John and David are stupid . This job is neither easy nor difficult .

170 5 . 单数可数名词一般须要加指示词。

单数可数名词前一般要加一个冠词 a 或 the ; 物主代词或名词所有格 , 如 your , John's ; 或单数指示词 , 如 this , that , one , every , any , each , some , no , either , neither , another , a certain , such a , 或 the same .

下面句子都是错的 , 因为名词前面未加上这类词 :

He saw house .

He has pretty dog .

He kept very lovely horse .

Good fountain pen is necessary .

Honest and faithful friend is better than anything .

171 6 . 指示词后跟着一个 of 短语时的情况 :

指示代词 (a) 及指示形容词 (b) 后都可跟一个 of 引出的短语 :

(a) all of them some of them

each of my friends either of his hands

none of your nonsense every one of those people

(b) no friend of mine any plan of David's

these houses of my aunt's that dog of yours

every plan of his such friends of mine

172 “ 指示词+of-短语 ” , 如 each of us , most of them , 可以放在系动词 be 或是助动词后面 , 甚至为了强调放在句子末尾 , 仿佛一个状语似的 :

They are most of them foolish .

Those children will every one grow very quickly .

We should both of us advise him .

Teachers must none of them show impatience .

They are foolish , most of them .

We should advise him , both of us .

在用 all , both , each 时 , of-短语可以省略 , all , both , each 的作用就像副词 :

They will all come here . (Or : They all came here .)

The students must each do the exercise . (Or : The studentseach...)

We shall both study astronomy . (Or : We both...)

173 7. 合成的指示词

下面代词及副词为合成词，它们不可分写成两个字，如 some body , no thing .

代词：

someone	anyone	everyone	noone (or no one)
somebody	anybody	everybody	nobody
something	anything	everything	nothing

副词：

somewhere (someplace—美国用法) , somehow (someway—美国用法) , sometimes , sometime , someday , somewhat

anywhere (anyplace—美国用法) , anyhow (anyway) , any - time (美国用法)

everywhere (everyplace—美国用法)

nowhere (noplac—美国用法) , nohow (不规范)

Someone , anyone 和 everyone 只表示人。如果后面跟有 of 引起的短语，这类词的两部分必须分开写，这时可指人也可指物：

Any one of us has done his best .

Some one of his dogs is lovely indeed .

Every one of the books I have read is interesting .

但：None (不要说 No one) of the members came .

174 上面所列表示人的代词，一般都作单数看待，可以用 he , his , him 代替。但在现代口语中，人们更倾向于用 they , their , them 代替，以避免涉及性别问题：

Someone (or Somebody) will do it although they know it is dangerous .

Anyone (or Anybody) can speak Chinese if they have learned it some years .

Everyone (or Everybody , Every[member]) expressed their views .

No one (or Nobody) is willing to criticize themselves .

175 8. In , at 或 on 的省略

在表示时间的状语中，指示形容词前的 at , in , on 等介词

常常被省略掉，虽然在某些情况下也可以不省：

He came one afternoon , every month , the other day , each noon , the same week . (不要说 on one afternoon , in every month , at each noon . 但可说 on Sunday afternoon , in a rainy month , at noon)

He slept all day .

He will repent it some day .

You can come any Sunday .

I played tennis this (or that) morning .

He died (on) the following day , (on) the morning when it rained hard , (in) the year when the war broke out , (at) the moment he

received the news .

He came last night , and will come again next week .

What time did he come ?

The , last , next , what 都可看作指示词 :

I saw him (on the) last voyage . (可当作时间) 。

We were classmates (in) that term .

I will speak to him (at) the first chance .

Nothing can be done (in) this weather .

They watch him (at) every step .

176 指示词和否定词一起使用时需要小心。下面都是否定词 : no , nothing , nobody , no one , no where , never , seldom , none , not , scarcely , hardly , neither , nor , little , few . 这类词在和指示词一起用时 , 可能对 (简写为 R) , 也可能不对 (简写为 W) 。在正确使用时 , 可表示完全否定 (TN) 或部分否定 (PN) 。 [R = right , W = wrong , TN = total negative , PN = partial negative]

177 Nobody in England cannot speak English . (重复否定) (W)

Everybody in England can speak English . (R)

Nothing in this garden is not pretty . (W)

Everything in this garden is pretty . (R)

但是 :

He did it not without regret , not without shame . (R)

No-one is unselfish . (虽然重复否定 , 但有一个否定词是由否定前缀或后缀构成) (R)

None of them are dis tasteful . (R)

He is not homeless . (R)

I do not know that he has not come home . (每个从句中只有一个否定词) (R)

I can never understand why Mary said nothing about her wrongs . (R)

I shall criticize nobody , neither at present nor in future . (后面的否定词重复前面的否定词是为了强调) (R)

I can never say anything , not even for myself . (R)

He doesn't see nothing . (= He sees nothing) (俚语) (R)

He can never say nothing . (= He can never say anything .) (R)

178 I do not like both of them . (= I like only one of them .) (PN)

I like neither of them . (= I don't like those two persons .) (TN)

All of them are not honest . (= Only some of them are honest .) (PN)

Not all of them are honest . (较上句强) (PN)

None of them are honest . (TN)

I cannot see any of them . (Not...any) (TN)

Any of them cannot see me . (Any...not) (W)

None of them can see me . (TN)

179 以副词 (状语) 从句结尾的否定句可能有两种意思。哪个是正确意思得由上下文来决定 :

I haven't played the violin for ten years .

=For ten years I haven't played the violin .

Or = I have played the violin , but not for ten years .

I didn't sleep all night .

=All night I didn't sleep .

Or = I did sleep , but not all night .

He wasn't well - groomed when she suddenly dropped in .

=When she suddenly dropped in , he wasn't well-groomed .

Or=He was well - groomed , but not when she suddenly dropped in .

I don't love him because he is rich .

=Because he is rich , I don't love him .

or = I do love him , but not because he is rich .

. 指示词的用法

A . This , That , These , Those

1 . This , These , That , Those 作代词的用法

180 “What is this (指近处的东西)?” “It's an apple.” (在回答时不要再重复 this)

“What is that (指远处的东西)?” “It (不要说 That) is a pear.” (对比)

“What are these (this 的复数形式)?” “They (不要说 These) are horses .

“What are those (that 的复数形式)?” “They are donkeys .”

“What is this , and what is that ?” “This is an apple and that is a pear .” (对比)

181 A beggar came , and he (不能说 this 或 that) asked for money .
(除了下面情况外从不用 this 或 that 代表人)

This is Mr . Tanaka . This is Mr . Sasaki . (介绍见面)

Hello , is that Jane ? (英国说法) Hello , is this Jane ? (美国说法) (电话用语)

Stop crying and that (or there) is a good boy !

Those who (为 he who 或 one who 的复数形式) come are my friends .

Those (=The people) there (or coming here) are Jews .

(He is) Handsome boy , that ! (为了强调而重复)

182 This 和 that 可以指具体的东西 : He gave me one dollar , and this (more emphatic than it) was all he had .

183 This 和 that 也可表示抽象的东西 :

He talked of freedom , justice and all that .

也可指品质 :

I like a man (or men) like this (or that) , such a man (or men) as this (or that) .

184 还可和某些介词连用 , 有特定的意思 :

At this (=Seeing or hearing this) , he became angry . With this (=So saying) , he left .

Upon this (=And then) , he shook his head .

After this (=After this incident , this time) , he became more careful .

Since that (=Since that time) , I have never met any friend . 185

偶有下面用法 :

Get out of this (=this place) . (少见)

He must have arrived by this (=this time) . (少见) 186 也可表示某些事物 :

He knows this , that and the other (matter) .

Some believe in this , some believe in that .

I don't say anything against Mr . this or Mrs . That . These came for paper , those for pens , others for ink . 187 也可指前面刚提到的东西 :

He has good intention , but that (指前句表示的内容) is not enough .

I will learn music , I know this (= learning music) is not easy . 188
有时和 and 连用 :

You must do it , and that (= and you must do it) immediately (or at once) .

He decides to be a doctor and that (= and he decides to be a doctor) after he gets married .

He has many good dogs and these (= and he has) very small ones .

He is a doctor and a well - known one at that (而且又是一个有名的医生) .

He has a car , and a very large car at that .

He knows nothing except music , and very little at that .

People were killed and thousands of them at that .

189 That 可以代表前面所提的东西 , 而 this 代表即将谈的东西 :

To be or not to be , that is a question . (that 指 to be or not to be .)

“ You can depend on me . ” That was what he said .

This is a question : to go or to stay ? (this 指 to go or to stay)

What I can say is this : You can depend on me .

Coffee , cigars and liquor : these are my friends .

190 在某些词组中 , that 比 this 用得更多 :

That is because you don't know yourself .

That is why you failed . That is how I made it . So (or And) that's that .

That's all . That will do .) That's a good boy . What of that ?

That is (to say) . For all that . And that . And all that .

191 That 和 those 还有下面这些特殊用法 :

He has that (= He has something) in his character which puzzles me . (书面语)

There was that (= There was something) in his way of speaking .

He saw that (= something) in her face which made him afraid .

There is that (= There is someone) who knows the secret . (少见)

There were those (= people) who said “ no ” . (这样用时较多)

He knew those who were opposed to him .

192 This 有时用来表示 “ 后者 ” , that 表示 “ 前者 ” :

The gun is more important than the pen . This (= The latter , The pen) cannot do without that (= the former , the gun) .

English and Chinese are our school subjects . This seems harder than that .

We study English , Chinese , geography , history and mathematics . This last (= or This latter) is the hardest .

193 That 和 those 若跟有介词短语, 可用来代表前面提的东西, 以避免重复, 等于“the+前面那个名词”:

The novel by Dickens is better than that (=the novel) by Wells. (that 代表“the+noun”)

The novels by Dickens are better than those by Wells.

The door of his house is like that of a church.

The ears of a rabbit are longer than those of a cat.

This house is larger than that of my younger brother.

The greatest tragedy is that (=the tragedy) of a miser.

John's name is below those of Mary and James.

That 和 those 后面有时跟有一个作定语的分词短语或从句:

This house is larger than that (=the one 在口语中用得更多一些) standing on the other side, located on the corner. (that+分词)

This road is the same as those (用 the ones 更好) leading to the Capital.

This house is better than that (用 the one 更好) I saw yesterday. (That+从句)

194 That 有时用来代表前面提到的动作:

“Did he learn music?” “Yes, he did sometimes, or Yes, he did that sometimes.” (that 代表 learn music)

“Will his mother punish him?” “She won't.” or “That she won't.” (that 代替 punish him)

“He will punish them.” “That he will (=So he will = He will).”

He has eaten it, that he has.

195 That 有时用来代替前面的补语, 比 go 更为确定:

He is my friend, that (=my friend) he is.

Dishonest? Yes, he is that (=dishonest).

He is a fool. He looks that. I find him that, and everybody calls him that.

John is selfish, cunning and cruel, but his brother is not all that. You know he cannot be that.

2. This, These, That, Those 作形容词的用法

196 这几个指示词都可用作形容词, 修饰后面的名词:

These four pretty gold rings are hers. (this, these, that, those 通常放在其他形容词前面)

This Shakespeare's last work is called ‘The Tempest’.

That fiftieth year of service was truly long.

197 有时和 very 连用, 表示强调:

You shall be punished this very hour. (比 this hour 更强调)

That very accident cost him his life.

This very house is what I have been looking for.

They were ready to kill him, but he decided to see those very people.

198 有时和 there , here 一起用, there , here 要放在名词后面:

Do you see that man there (不要说 that there man) .

This lady here (不要说 this here lady) is pretty .

199 This 和 that 可以同时用, 中间用 and 或 or 连接, 表示随随便便, 东一下, 西一下:

Don't run this way and that way . (不要瞎跑。)

He falls in love with this girl and that . (一会儿爱上这个, 一会儿爱上那个)

He falls in love with this or that girl .

The child broke this thing or that . (一会儿打破这, 一会儿打破那)

This , that , or the other (or anothe) (=Some or other) reader will agree with the author of this book . (总有读者赞同)

有时表示对比 (有的.....有的) :

Many guests came : this one alone , that one with his wife , and another one with three or four friends .

200 有时表示数量 :

He needs a million dollars to do it , but half this money (=half a million dollars) is enough for me .

Some rooms have sixty students in them ; others have half that number (=thirty) .

It is three feet , but twice this length (=six feet) would be better .

201 有时表示“我(们)的”:

This (=My , Our) city has eight high schools in it . (本市)

This country has to import a lot of rice . (本国)

These eyes have seen it .

Reply as soon as you receive this letter .

The principal of this school is sixty years old .

202 有时表示某种情绪:

Forget that matter . (鄙视)

Look at that son of yours . (兴趣)

Don't mention those days again . (遗憾)

O those eyes ! O that silvery voice ! (赞美)

Who is this Lilian Wang ? (看不起)

I am sick of these artists . (鄙视)

203 用在时间词组中, 表示特定的意义:

Be gone this minute (=at once) .

He has won for this once (=at least on this occasion) .

They must have arrived by this time .

You shouldn't say such foolish things at these (late) years (or at your great age) .

204 可以和 month 一起用:

I am (or was) busy this month (or these months) , in the pre

- sent month (or in the present months) , in the month (or in the months) .

I was (or shall be) busy that month (or those months) .

205 可以和 hour 和 day 连用 :

We have been miserable to this hour (or day , year) , and from this hour (forward) we shall be happy .

I shall see you one of these days .

206 可以和 week ,day 等词连用 ,表示“以后(前)的..... ” :I left Hong Kong this day week (or month , year) (=this daylast week , etc .) (英国用法)

I shall leave Hong Kong this day week (or month , year) (= this day next week , etc .) (英国用法)

I saw her this time twelve - month (or three years) .

I shall see her this day next month .

207 注意下面两个句子的差别 :

I did not see him this morning (or this spring) . (说话时已不是早晨或春天)

I have not seen him this morning (or this spring) . (说话时仍是早晨或春天)

208 注意下面句子中 this , these 的用法 :

I haven't seen her (for) this long time . (好久没见到她)

I haven't seen her this half year . (半年没见到她了)

I haven't seen her (for) this five months . (有 5 个月没见到她了)

I haven't seen her these five months past (or back , since) .

I shan't see her this half year . (会有半年见不到她了)

I shan't see her these five months . (会有 5 个月见不到她了)

I shan't see her (for) these five months to come .

但下面的说法更普遍一些 :

I haven't seen her for the last two days .

I shan't see her for the next five months .

209 下面句子也值得注意 :

I have read it this week (or month , year) . (这周 , 这个月 , 今年读过 , 时间未完但已读完。)

I shall read it this week (or month , year) . (时间已开始 , 但未读)

I am reading it this week (给个礼拜读它) 210 This 和 that 可以和 much 连用 , 表示 “ 这么多而已 ” , “ 那么多而已 ” :

I know (or want , will say , admit , have) this much (or that much) (只知 , 只要...这一些而已)

That much I know .

This much is true .

He is right in that much .

This much (=that he...years) is certain that he has lived in India

five years .

211 下面句子是不规范的，虽然有人这样说：

Them (= Those) boys won't agree .

One of them (= those) houses is on fire .

3 . This , That 可用作副词，修饰形容词等。

212 My boy is not this (= so) tall .

It is about this large .

I have never been this sick .

He cannot earn that (= so) much .

Is he all that silly ?

How could he finish it that fast ?

Do you think that (= so) ?

B . One

1 . One 作代词的用法

213 One 只能用作可数名词, 可用来表示一个人、一棵树、一盏灯等等, 不能指水、空气、羡慕、勇气等。

214 One 可泛指“一个人”: One (=A person) must obey one's (美国用法 his) parents .

One always thinks oneself (美国用法 himself) wise .

(比较: Everyone thinks himself wise[不可说 oneself wise] . No one thinks himself foolish [不可说 oneself fool - ish] .)

One 还可有一个定语短语或从句修饰它:

He is one (=a person) true to everybody .

One in a good humour pleases people about him .

You cannot dissuade one charmed by a woman .

He is not one to tell lies .

One who loves others loves himself .

间或后面可跟一个形容词:

He lay there like one dead (or mad, possessed) .

偶有下面用法:

He is one (=a rare sort of man) .

在表示人时, one 不能用于复数形式。

215 有时 one 可用来代表刚刚提到的一种人, 或这种人中的一个:

If there is any saint, I have seen one (=a saint) .

Your brother is not a miser, but you are one (=a miser) .

也可指物, 表示其中的一个:

There are houses for sale, and you can buy one (=one house, not houses) .

You have no dictionary? I can lend you one .

不能代表复数的人或物, 这时需用 some 代替:

If there are any saints, I have seen some (=some saints) . (泛指指的 one 的复数形式为 some)

There are houses for sale, and you can buy some .

216 和其他指示词不同, one 和 ones 前面可加形容词, 这时 one (s) 可称为替代词 (Prop-Word)。这样用时, 可读作 [+n] 和 [+uz]:

A good book is different from a bad one (=a bad book) .

An honest businessman fares better than a cunning one (=a cunning businessman) .

Honest businessmen fare better than cunning ones .

(作替代词时不用 some, 而用 ones 表示复数)

但在替代词 ones 前可加 some:

Here are apples. You can take a ripe one (or some ripe ones) .

它只能用来代替可数名词, 有时可有多种说法:

Is this an apple? I have never seen such a one (or so large a one) .

We should adopt a wise policy instead of a foolish policy . (普通说法)

We should adopt a wise policy instead of a foolish one . (口语中用法)

We should adopt a wise instead of a foolish policy . (书面语用法)

I prefer red roses to white (书面语) 或 to white ones . (口语体)

He has good books and bad (ones) 或 a good (book) and a badbook .

Wooden houses are not so strong as stone ones . (one 也用在作定语的名词后面)

My house is a four-story one .

She is a pretty girl , and a country one .

I like all novels , especially nineteen-century ones .

但不能用来代替不可数名词 :

I drink red wine and white (wine) . (不能说 white one)

He calls on me in fair weather or foul (weather) . (不能说 foul one)

You can judge his public conduct by his private (conduct) .

I like black tea and green .

下面词组有其特别的意思 :

Your little ones (=children) . My dear one (=darling) .

The Holy One (=God) . The Evil One (=The Devil) .

217 One 前面可加形容词 , 却不能加名词所有格 , 或加某些指示词。下面的说法都是错误的 :

my friend's one , my (own) one , either one , neither one ; both ones , all ones , five ones

但可说 : my friend's , or my friend's large one ; mine , or my own , or my (own) large one ; either , or either large one , either long one , either wounded one

也可说 : each (one) , another (one) , any (one) , the third (one) , which (one or ones) , whatever (one or ones) , this (one) , that (one) , these (ones) , those (ones)

218 和其他指示词一样 , one 和 ones 也可跟各种定语 :

A good book is one (=a book) for the benefit of its readers (one written in blood and tears , one which pleases and teaches) .

After the death of his servant , he employed one (=a servant) skillful in cooking , recommended by Lee .

His faults are mainly ones (=faults) of negligence .

These five years are ones (=years) of political unrest .

219 One 前可加 the , 表示一个特定的人或东西 (即 “ 那一个…… ”) :

I have five brothers . The one (=The brother) in China is the eldest .

“ Which car do you like best ? ” “ The one on the left side . ”

“The one lying by the tree.” “The one you see.”

I drew my chair to the one (=the chair) in which my uncle was sitting.

My house is near to the one belonging to Major Wang.

Of all jobs, I like the ones (=the jobs) done for the benefit of children.

Good students are always the ones (=the students) working hard.

注：the one 和 the ones 是口语中的用法，在书面语中可用 that 和 those 代替。

220 在用 one 作主语时，要注意动词用哪种形式：

One of the greatest rivers in the world is (不是 are) the Yang-tze.

He is one of the best engineers that are (不是 is) working in this factory.

He is one of the best engineers, who is (不是 are) expert in building bridges. (who 前有逗号，这时指的是 one 而不是指 engineers。)

They are some of (不能说 ones of) the best engineers I know.

They are among (=some of) the best engineers I know.

221 由 one 构成的代词都是单数：

Someone is coming. (某一个人)

No one knows it. No one of them can do it. (两者重音不同)

Anyone can make it. Everyone seems happy.

Some one of us is absent today. (指某一个人)

Some one of the chairs is too old.

None of these is (or are) interesting.

Every one of those lawyers is rich.

Any one of the streets is dirty.

2. One 作形容词的用法

222 One 常可与一名词连用，表示时间，这时常不加介词：I saw him one morning (or afternoon, evening). (但：I saw him on a spring morning, on a July evening.)

I saw him one day.

I shall see him some (or one) day.

有时可用在人名前表示“某一个”：

I was introduced to one Doctor Johnson.

I met one Mr. Lee (or a Mr. Lee) (=a certain person).

C. Other, Else

223 Other 可有几种形式：

Another (单数 形容词) student is coming.

Another (单数代词) is coming.

Other (复数形容词) students are coming.

Others (复数代词) are coming.

1. Other 作代词的用法

224 Another 是单数形式，表示“另一个”，或“再一个”：To talk is one thing, to practise is another (=a different thing).

I want another (=one more).

He is a fool, and you are another (=also a fool).

225 Another 可表示“第一个”，others 表示“另一些(另外几个)”：

One of his seven brothers is in Hongkong and another (=a second) is in Singapore. (未提其他兄弟)

One of his seven brothers is in Hongkong, and others (=two to five) are in Singapore.

Some men say this, others (or some) say that. Still others say something else.

One man says this, another says that, and what do many others say?

Others 或 other 前面若加 the, 就表示“所有其他的”或“另外那个”：

I have four dogs. (The) One is white, and the others (=three) are black. (All the rest are black.)

We have English and mathematics. The one (=The former=English) seems easier than the other (=the latter=mathematics).

I have two cats. One is large, and the other (不能说 another) is small.

One of my brothers is in Hongkong, and the others (=all the rest) are in Singapore.

Some (or Four) of the students are diligent, and the others are lazy. (只有两类学生)

Another 有时和 third, fourth 等词一起用：

He has four children: One is blind, another (or a second) is deaf, a third is lame, the fourth is dumb.

226 Or other 常可和另一代词或名词一起用，有多种意思：

Somebody or other (=This, that or another man) must do it.
(总要有人干，不管是谁。)

Some one of us or other will do it. (我们中总会有人干的。)

You must do something or other (=at least one thing, no matter what it is). (你总得有点行动。)

He does some evil or other. (他干过这样那样的坏事。)

We shall die some time or other, some day or other (=sooner

or later 迟早), somewhere or other. (在某个地方死掉)

You must finish the work somehow or other. (以某种方式干完)

Even if you have done nothing wrong, you will be punished for one or other (of the) reasons. (总会有理由受惩罚)

The staff members may leave the office by one or other (of the) doors. (随便从哪个门离开)

The two students sang one after the other (=alternately).

227 One after another 可以表示“轮番”或“一个接一个地”:

When a man walks, he moves his arms to and fro, and lifts one leg after the other.

The ships passed one after another (=One ship passed after another).

Her four sons were killed in war one after another.

228 Each other 表示“相互”:

The boy and the girl loved each other. (=He loved her and she loved him.)

The five brothers fight one another (or each other).

229 Other than 常可用在否定句中,表示“除了.....不.....”:

He can do no other (thing) (=do no otherwise) than laugh.
(He cannot but laugh.)

Don't give him other than what he wants. (=Don't give him things that he doesn't want.)

He could not be other than a tyrant. (=He must be one.)

It is something other than genuine (=not genuine).

I cannot speak to him other (or otherwise) than angrily.

(比较: Nobody says she is otherwise than (=not) pretty.)

2. Other 作形容词的用法

230 和 every 连用,表示“每.....一次”:

We have grammar every other day (=every second day).

Women sat on every other chair.

Every other tree was cut down.

Use another pen (rather) than this. (=Use another, but don't use this.)

231 Than 也可和 other 一起用,表示“只.....不.....”:

He uses no other pens (or no pens other) than this. (=He uses only this.)

Come in other months (rather) than in February. (但: Come in any month except in February.)

He went to other places (or places other) than the pub.

3. Else 用作副词

232 Else 从不用作代词,只作副词,意思是“还有.....(其他).....”,这时不再用 other:

a. 常和疑问词一起使用:

What else (不能说 Other what) do you want?

Who else has seen it ?

Which else do you like ?

When else (=At what other time) can you accompany me ?

How else (=In what other way) can you help me ?

b . 和一些合成代词一起用 :

Someone else (=some other person) has seen it .

He saw something else (=some other thing) than what she showed him .

He has to make a living somewhere else (=in some other place) .

He saw nobody else (=no other person) and nothing else . (=no other thing) than an old man and his hut .

Everybody else spoke ill of him , but he cared about his profit and ignored everything else .

He hates anybody else and anything else He loves money alone .

There is little else to enjoy , not much else to see . There are only a few monkeys in this park .

D . Some

1 . Some 作形容词的用法

233 Some 表示“某个(些)”或“一些”：

He needs some (=I don't know exactly what) book . (单数普通名词)

He needs some (=I don't know how many) books . (复数普通名词)

He needs some (=I don't know how much) money . (物质名词)

He needs some (=I don't know what degree of) help . (抽象名词)

Some 可和几类名词一起用,表示几种意思。No 和 any 的用法也相似：

He needs no book (no books, no money, no help) . He does not need any book (any books, any money, any help) .

234 一个名词如果表示任何数量的东西,或不考虑数量,前面可以不加 some :

I like apples and tea (=any apples and any tea) .

Apples (or Tea) are (or is) an important product .

要表示一定数量的东西时,名词前面需加 some :

Please give me some tea .

The water contains some salt .

He has some money .

I have bought (or brought) some apples home .

I met some friends on the street .

He knows some businessmen .

I saw some cities of this country .

如指“大量的……”,名词前也不加 some :

There is water in this well .

There are apples in the tree .

但: There is some water in the glass . (少量的)

Some apples were placed on the table .

在表示对比时,名词前也不加 some :

He bought tea, milk, and coffee .

I drink tea, I don't drink coffee .

但: I should like to drink some tea .

Would you like to have some milk? 在用作表(补)语时,名词前不必加 some :

This is milk .

They became students .

但: There is some milk . (作主语)

There are some students .

Some students are coming .

注意点在别处时,名词前也不加 some :

I read novels for amusement .

I gave her chocolate in order to please her .

但 : I am reading some novels .

I gave her some chocolate .

235 可和复数名词一起用 , 表示 “ 某些 ” :

Some men are honest ; some malicious ; some prudent .

Some men are honest ; others are not .

236 Some 可以表示 “ 相当数量或程度的 ” :

I have waited for some (=a long) time .

He has some (=not a few) dollars in his pocket .

He did it with some (=great) difficulty .

He is some (=a wonderful) scholar .

That is some (=an important) case .

That seems to be some war .

There is something (worthy of notice) in his remark .

Is he (a) somebody (=a person worthy of notice) ? No , he is
(a) nobody (=a man unworthy of notice) .

He is something in our city .

I have a something (=a small gift) for you .

237 Some 也可表示 “ 一定程度的 ” :

He is something (or somewhat) of a doctor . (=He has some ability
as a doctor .)

It is something (or somewhat) of a salvation (or a blessing)
with me . (=It is , in some degree , a salvation or a blessing with
me .)

I think him something of an engineer .

He has gone through something of a crisis .

比较 : He is nothing of (=not) a doctor , but much of (=quite)
a quack .

238 Some 可以和 time (s) 构成合成词 , 或一起使用 , 意思各有不同 :

“ How often does he go to the movies ? ” “ He goes sometimes
(有时) , about twice a month . ”

“ When did he go ? ” “ He went sometime (=at some time) last
month , and will go again sometime soon . ”

“ How long did he watch the movies ? ” “ He watched the movies
(for) some time , less than an hour , and then left the house . ”

239 Something , somebody 可表示某个说不出确切名字的东西或人 :

Mr . Something will come . (I forget his name .)

You ask John something to come ?

You can eat bananas , pineapples , cakes , bread , or something
(like that) (=or something which I don't know exactly) .
(诸如此类的东西)

I met John , Wang and somebody . (和一些别人)

可代替一个形容词 :

He is selfish , cunning and something . (等等)

可代替一个副词 :

I put the umbrella in the corner or somewhere. (或是什么别的地方)

也可代替一个谓语或动词:

He quarrelled with his brother or something (like that) (=or did something of the same sort).

2. Some 作代词的用法

240 在用作代词时,可以说省略了一个名词(以避免重复):

“Would you have any milk?” “I would like to have some (=some milk).”

There are many streets in this city, but some (=some streets) are narrow and dirty.

3. Some 作副词的用法

241 Some 可用作副词,表示“大约”,“左右”:

It is some five o'clock (about five o'clock).

He comes some once a week (about once a week).

He has some (=about) fifteen children.

He is some (=somewhat) better now.

He has some hundred (=about one hundred) books.

He has some hundreds of (=two, or three, or four, ...hundred) books.

He has walked some mile (=about one mile). (作形容词)

He has come some half a dozen times.

I slept some (=a little) last night. (美国用法)

242 Something 也可用作副词,表示“在某种程度上”:

He is something (=somewhat) dreadful.

This is something easier than that.

It something astonished me.

He stood something behind me.

He is something taller than you.

He died something less than a week ago.

243 试比较下列句子:

—“Do you want a dog?” “I want one (泛指,单数).”

“But I do not want any (泛指,单数,否定).”

—“Do you want any dogs?” “I want some (泛指,复数).”

“But I do not want any (泛指,复数,否定).”

—“Do you want that dog (or his dog)?” “I want it (特指,单数).” “But I don't want it.”

—“Do you want those dogs (or his dogs)?” “I want them (特指,复数).” “But I don't want them.”

—Do you love a dog (or dogs)? I love it (or them) (=any dog, all dogs) (泛指). (不说 one 或 ones)

—I have no dictionary, and I should like to buy one, because it (作主语) is useful to me.

—I have no dictionaries and I should like to buy some because

they (作主语) are useful to me .

—Here are some apples . You can take a ripe one (单数 , 前面有形容词) , but there are not many ripe ones (复数 , 前面有形容词) to choose .

E . Each

Each 作形容词、代词或副词

224 Each 指两个或更多人或东西中的一个，逐一加以考虑：

He spoke to all the students . (集体)

He spoke to every student (=所有同学毫无例外，比 all 意思更强) .

He spoke to each student . (逐一地)

245 Each 可指两者中的一个或更多中的一个：

Each (or Either) (不能说 Every one) of his hands held a book . (He held two books) .

Each (or Every) (不能说 Either) student was doing his exercise . (There were more than two students .)

246 下面 5 句话意思基本上相同：

Each student must have a text-book .

Each of the students must have a text-book .

The students must each (of them) have text-books .

The students each must have text-books .

Wang , Chen , Lee and Lu must each have text-books .

247 Each 可指每个各自的情况：

The apples cost twenty cents each . (=The apples each cost twenty cents .)

The twenty robbers had each a gun .

The students came with each a book in their hands .

248 Each 可以用来指宾语，也可用来指主语：

We gave the beggars two dollars each (=for each beggar) . (Every beggar got two dollars .)

We each (=Each of us) gave the beggars two dollars . (Each of us gave two .)

249 如果各自有不同情况，则不能用 each，而需用 respective (ly)：

John and David paid respective sums of \$ 250 and \$ 300 .

John and David live respectively in A Street and B Street . (John lives in A Street , and David in B) .
250 Each other 还可用作宾语或用于所有格，但不能用作主语：They (Two or more persons) loved each other (or one another) .

They stared at each other (宾语) .

They respect each other's (所有格) fathers .

They clasped each other's hands .

They know each other's thought .

We know what each other (主语) likes . (错句)

但 each 可用作主语：

Each of us knows what the other (s) like (s) . (正确)
Each (or They each) loved the other . (=They loved each other .)

Each stared at the other . (=They stared at each other .)

Each respects the other's father . (=They respect each other's fathers .)

The sisters should each of them love the other .

F . Any

1 . Any 作形容词的用法

- 251 Any 可用来修饰任何类的名词，表示“任何……”：
I don't want any friend any friends any money any assistance .
- 252 在肯定句中，any 有很强的意思（不管哪个）：
Any child could do that .
Anything may be said among friends .
Control your temper at any cost .
You can read any book you like . 有时还可和另一词一起用，对 any 的意思作进一步强调：
You can study any subject whatever .
Any man alive is better than this rascal .
I can meet any circumstances , however difficult .
He loves her more than any girl on earth .
Any mortal man may make a mistake .
Any slightest trouble will make me sleepless .
Any monarch , however great , will die .
Any thing , however trivial , is useful .
Any person , however evil , can be a good man .
- 253 Any 有时表示“极大”，“极好”，“极坏”之类意思：
There is any amount of rice in Thailand .
There came any number of children .
There is any liquor in this restaurant .
You can find any scholar in this city .
There was any gangster in the teahouse .
- 254 Any 常常可用来强调一个否定词或一个否定概念：
I do not like any child .（否定词可以是副词）
He can hardly see anything .
He seldom (=not often) talks with any girl .
Nobody said anything .（否定词为形容词）
Few men know any science in Africa .（Not many men know...）
I find it difficult (=not easy) to do any business .
He ceased to send me any money .（He no more sent...）（否定词为动词）
Were forbidden to use any slang .（We are not allowed to...）
I am prevented from making any mistakes .
I am too sad to do anything (=so sad that I cannot do anything) .
He is unable to say anything .（否定由词头表示）
He is fearless of any danger .（否定由词尾表示）
He Passed the exam without any difficulty .（否定由介词表示）
Only Mary (=Nobody else) can cook any food .（否定意义由其他词表示）

In this capital alone (=In no other places) can one find any hotel .

This is the best book any man can write . (Nobody can write any better .)

That is all any one can say . (Nobody can say any more .)

255 Any 常常用在一般疑问句 (即可以 yes , no 回答的疑问句) 中 , 加在名词前作为问句的重心 :

Do you read any newspaper ? (问句的重心在 newspaper)

Do you read the newspaper of any foreign country ?

Has anyone read the newspaper of today ?

Will you give me any information ?

Can any one help him out of his trouble ?

Can you help any one out of his trouble ?

Can you help him out of any trouble ?

I ask whether you read any newspaper . (=I ask , “ Do you read any newspaper ? ”) (一般问句可以变为名词从句 , 由 whether 或 if 引起。)

I ask whether any one can help him out of his trouble .

I didn't know if (=whether) you could help him out of any trouble . 256 Any 还常常用在条件从句或短语中 :

If you want any novels , I will lend you some .

Take this gun with you in case any accident should happen .

No man who (=if he) has any ability will be discouraged .

I should be glad to see (=if I could see) any old friend .

257 还有一些词意思几乎和 any 相同 , 但带有感情色彩 :

One cannot do a blessed thing . (否定句)

Don't tell it to living mortal .

You can't let mortal man see it .

I have not the least idea .

Can you do an earthly thing ? (一般问句)

Could you get the slightest help from him ?

Have you the faintest hope ?

258 一般问句中 , 有时也可用 some , 这时有较肯定的意义 :

Will you have any coffee ? (一般情况 , 问是否要咖啡。)

Will you have some coffee ? (希望你喝点咖啡。)

Would you do anything for me ? (不知你是否愿意。)

Would you do something for me ? (想你会帮忙的。)

259 在否定句中使用 any 要小心 , 不要在否定词前用 :

He does not like any girl . (not—any) (正确 R)

Any girl does not like him . (any—not) (错句 , W)

No girl likes him . (R)

The patient has hardly eaten any food . (hardly—any) (R)

Any food hardly interests the patient . (any—hardly) (W)

Hardly any food interests the patient . (R)

2. Any 作代词的用法

260 Any 用作代词时，等于把后面的名词省略：

He has lots of cars and servants, but I have not any (=any cars and servants) .

I can see many, many stars, but can you see any (=any stars) ?

He will spend all his money, if he has any .

Mistakes in grammar are unavoidable, but few of my students commit any .

Can any (=any worker) of the workers believe what his boss says?

Can any (=any persons) believe it?

I can't say any (=anything) more .

3. Any 作副词的用法

261 Any 可以用作副词，表示程度，可用在否定句、一般问句、条件句或一些其他情况：

He didn't run any (=in any way) faster than you . (否定句)

I cannot help you any .

He never slept any .

Is he any better? (一般问句)

“Is he any worse for his poverty?” “No, he is nothing worse .”

If I were to wait any longer, I should be late . (条件句)

He is not a scientist any more than I . (=I am not a scientist, nor is he .)

Is he any less cruel than a tyrant? (=He is as cruel as a tyrant .)

He is anything between 20 and 30 . (大致在 20—30 岁之间)

You can do it anyhow (=in any way) . (anyhow 为副词)

He does his work anyhow (=carelessly) .

I will write anyhow (=anyway, in any case) .

You can eat anywhere (=in any place .)

He is anywhere between 30 and 50 (or from 30 to 50) .

G . No , Not , None

1 . No 作形容词用法

262 No 可以修饰各种类型的名词 :

He has no (=not any) wife , no friends , no money , no hope .

263 当主语为两个由 no 修饰的名词时 , 动词用单数形式 :

No TV and no radio is (不是 are) necessary for me . (但 : A TV and a radio are necessary .)

No boy and no girl is admitted .

264 No 和 not 都可构成否定句 , 但意思有些差别 :

There is no person , not a (较强调) person , not a single (最强调) person in the house .

No (or Not a , Not a single) customer came .

I have no (or not a , not a single) house in this area .

Not a drop of rain has fallen . (“ Not a+可数名词+of+不可数名词 ” 是比较强调的形式)

No morsel of food has he eaten .

He does not know a word of English .

I have not got a wink of sleep .

He has no patience at all , no patience whatever (or whatso-ever) , not the least patience . (这是另一些强调的否定形式)

He has no ghost of (=not) an idea about love . There is no more milk . (用 no 时较文气)

There is not any more milk . (not any 是口语化说法)

I want nothing to eat .

I don't want anything to eat .

He can find his keys no where .

He can not find his keys anywhere .

I think of him as no friend of mine .

I do not think of him as any friend of mine .

He sent it to nobody .

He did not send it to anybody .

He is in no position to help you .

He is not in any position to help you .

Say it no more .

Don't say it any more .

265 在简短回答中 , no 比 not any 更好一些 :

Where is he going? Nowhere . (比 not anywhere 更好)

What did he say? Nothing . (比 not anything 更好)

Who knows it? Nobody .

Which of the two is right? Neither .

How many (or much) do you want? None .

266 No 也可用在某些类型的句子中 , 有比较强调的意义 :

There is no comparison between the two . (= It is impossible to make any comparison between the two .)

There is no arguing with him . (= It is impossible to argue with him .)

There is no denying that the earth is round .

No talking in class . (= One should not talk in class .)

No smoking here . No chance (or No way , No dice , No ded) . (= Impossible .)

No admittance except on business .

No dogs (or No children) are allowed .

267 可以和 or 一起用 , 表示 “ 不管.....还是..... ” :

Success or no success (= whether I shall succeed or not) , I will try .

Rain or no rain (= whether it rains or not) , come tomorrow .

Be ready , rumour or no rumour (= whether it is a rumour or not) .

King or no king (= whether he is a king or not) , he must give us freedom .

(上面的 no success 也可改为 not , no rain 也可改为 none .)

2 . No 作副词的用法

268 No 可用在简短回答中 :

Do you see it ? No (= I don't see it) .

Don't you see it ? No (= I don't see it) .

Don't you see it ? Yes (= I see it) .

Hasn't he come ? No (= He hasn't come) .

Hasn't he come ? Yes (= He has come) .

May I smoke ? Yes (= You may) .

Would you mind my smoking ? No (= I wouldn't mind = You may smoke) .

269 No 也常常用在比较级前 :

He is no richer than (= as poor as) me .

比较 : He is not richer than me . (Both are rich .)

He has no more than (= as little as) five dollars .

He owes me no less than (= as much as) a thousand dollars .

He is no better a scholar than a schoolboy (= as ignorant as a schoolboy) .

She sings no better than (= as poorly as) a crow .

He is no less attacked by his friends than by his enemies .

No fewer than a hundred persons were present .

He can no more drive a car than I can fly (= He cannot drive a car just as I cannot fly) .

I can do no less (or no more) than (= cannot but) laugh .

270 No 可以和 more 连用 , 意思接近 neither (也不) :

Nobody can do it , no more can I (不是 I can) . (= I can do it no more than anybody . = Nobody can do it , neither can I .)

He did not tremble , no more did I . (=I trembled no more than he .)

John is not silly , no more is Mary .

271 No otherwise 也是一个短语 , 表示 “ 只是 ” , “ 不会其他 ” :

He is no otherwise afraid than (=only afraid) of his lessons .

He does no otherwise than (=nothing but) eat and sleep .

He will become a beggar , and no otherwise (= definitely) .

272 Whether... or no 和 whether or not 意思差不多 , 多用在名词从句中 :

I do not know whether he is well again or no (or or not) .

I will inquire whether he will come or no .

I do not know whether or no (or not) he is well again .

I will inquire whether or no he will come .

It is a question of whether he likes it or no .

Whether or no (or not) he will agree is unknown .

You should not be angry whether you are right or no (or or not) . (Whether...or no 在这里引出的是一个表示让步的状语从句)

You should not be angry whether or no (or not) you are right .

273 Nothng 可以用作副词 , 表示 “ 一点也不 ” , “ 绝不 ” :

I care (or think) nothing (or little) about it .

He is nothing discouraged .

This helps us nothing (= never helps us , concerns us nothing) .

This is nothing less than (=equal to) robbery .

It is nothing easier .

This is nothing (like) (=not at all) so easy as that .

(比较 Nobody else is anything (like) (= in any way) so honest as he .)

Nothing much has been said .

Nothing very much has happened .

He is nothing better than before .

3 . Not 作副词的用法

274 Not 可和谓语动词连用 , 表示否定 , 前面需有 can , may , must , shall , will , do 这类助动词 :

He cannot come . He will not understand . You should not tell a lie . You must not do that .

They not know . John not saw it . (错句)

They do not know . John did not see it . (正确)

I know not . Fear not . (陈旧说法)

275 在表示对比时 , 有些部分中的 not 前可以不带助动词 :

He found the country not peaceful , but turbulent . (对比)

They did not find the country peaceful . (不作对比)

He came not on Sunday , but on Monday . (对比) He did not come on Sunday . (不作对比)

He is attacked not only from outside , but also from inside .

在修饰谓语后的另一动词时 , not 可直接使用 , 不带助动词 :

He came not to borrow . (修饰 to borrow)

比较 : He did not come to borrow . (not 修饰整个谓语)

We gathered not to discuss money matter .

He decided not to say anything .

在 not 后面跟有 a , the least , the slightest 等词时 , 无需加助动词 :

He lost not a moment .

He said (or answered) not a word .

Not a rat stirred .

He took not the least notice of your remarks .

He paid not the slightest attention to her .

He had not the smallest doubt .

I uttered not a single syllable .

He paused not once for breath .

The incident mattered not a bit .

He hesitated not a moment (= never hesitated) .

There is not a hint (or glimmer) of hope , not a suggestion (or suspicion) of wind , not a flicker of courage . not an ounce of justice .

276 Not 和 have , will 等助动词可以构成两种否定结构 , 有时意思不尽相同 :

She hasn't done it . (= I deny that she has done it .)

She's not done it . (= I assert that she has not done it .)

He won't be happy . (= I deny that he will be happy .)

He'll not be happy . (I assert that he will not be happy .)

277 Not 可在反义问句中构成附加问句 (Tag Question) , 前面部分为肯定句时 , 后面才可用否定的附加问句。

You understand , don't you ? (助动词 + not + 代词)

比较 : You don't understand , do you ? (前面为否定句时 , 后面为 “ 助动词 + 代词 ” [肯定的附加问句。])

Mary will come , won't she ? (前面为肯定句 , 后面为 “ 助动词 + not + 代词 ” , 这时表示她可能会来。)

Mary won't come , will she ? (前面为否定句 , 后面为 “ 助动词 + 代词 ” , 表示她可能不来。)

John can see it , can't he ?

John can hardly see it , can he ?

278 有时可用 not 引起短语 , 代表整个句子 :

“ Is he angry ? Not at all (= He is not at all angry) .

“ What is the girl like ? ” “ Not pretty . ”

“ Is he happy ? ” “ Not exactly (or Not really) . ”

“ Has he arrived ? Probably not (= He has probably not arrived) . ”

“Has Lee made any mistake?” “Certainly not.”

比较：“Is he angry?” “No.” (No 也可起同样作用，可以单独使用，not 却不能单独使用。)

279 有时 not 可代表一个否定的名词从句：

“Is he ill?” “I suppose not (=that he is not ill).”

“Can he come tomorrow?” “I think not (= that he cannot come tomorrow).”

I hope not. I should imagine not. I am afraid not. It seems not.

比较：“Is he ill?” “I suppose so (=that he is ill).”

“Can he come tomorrow?” “I think so (= that he can come to-morrow).”

280 在否定回答中，not 有时放在主语前面：

“Are you angry with him?” “Not I.” (= I am not angry with him.)

“Will it rain?” “Not it.”

“I think you can do it.” “Not we (or us).”

“Do you love her?” “Not I (or me).” (口语中多用 us 或 me)

281 否定句有时为了强调加以重复，这时可把 not 放在主语前面，把其他部分省略：

He will never resign, not he.

John can't marry a widow, not he.

282 在重复的否定句中，not 后面可能跟副词，状语短语或从句：

He will not come, not tomorrow.

He will never give up gambling, not until his death (or not until he dies).

He did not work, not in the afternoon (or not when he felt tired).

He hardly works, neither at night nor in the daytime.

283 Not that... but that... 可用来引起两个并列的句子，表示“不是……而是……”：

Not that (= It is not true that) he wants to help me, but that (=but it is true that) he needs my help.

Not that I intended to kill anyone, but that I must defend myself.

284 Not 还可构成一些强调的否定短语：

She is not a bit (or a jot, a whit) silly.

I am not at all (or in the least) happy.

She is not nearly so pretty as her sister. He will not for the world accept the bribe.

Greg can not ever (=never) learn.

I cannot believe it for one moment.

Do not on any account get angry.

They do not care a fig (or a straw, a jot, a bean, a but -

ton) .

He did not regret a tittle (or a rop, a rush) .

She did not worry a bit (or a scrap, a pin) .

The child did not flinch a hair .

This medicine does not cure my son a doit (or a farthing) .

We will not retreat an inch .

It is not worth a damn (or a cent, a darn, a curse, two hoots) .

注: fig, straw, hoot 这类词大多可以互换使用。

285 有些 not 引出的短语有肯定的意思:

He is not a little (=very much) surprised .

He has not a few (=many) houses .

He has done it not without (=with) reason .

Not infrequently (=Very often) did he quarrel with her .

Not once or twice (=Many times) has he made mistakes .

The trip takes nowhere near (or nothing like) (=much less than) ten days .

Is it worth anything like (=as much as) 14 dollars?

286 一个否定句, 由于说话人重读的不同, 有时可有不同的意思:

Máry didn't study English with Professor White .

(Somebody else did, but not Mary .)

Mary didn't stúdy English with Professor White .

(She merely talked about it, but didn't study it .)

Mary didn't study English with Professor White .

(She studied French, but not English .)

Mary didn't study English with Professor White .

(She did study English, but with another professor .)

287 Not 在句中的位置有时比较灵活, 在带有宾语从句之类结构的从句中, not 可放在前面, 也可放在后面:

I do not think (or say) that he is right . (否定意义较缓和, 用得比较多)

I think (or say) that he is not right . (否定意义更强些)

It did not seem that he knew Japanese . (使用更普遍些)

It seemed he did not know Japanese .

He does not seem to know it . (比 He seems not to know it . 用得更多些)

下面句子似乎更自然一些:

He did not happen to see John .

He did not come to see me .

I don't believe (or suppose, reckon) he can get over the difficulty . I don't expect (or imagine) that he can live again .

但应说: I hope he will not get ill again .

288 No 和 not 都可构成否定句, 但有时两者意义不尽相同:

He is not a scholar (or genius, millionaire) . (He may be an ordinary man .)

He is no scholar (or genius ,millionaire) . (= He is illiterate , dull or poor .) (名词前加 no 有时表示相反的意义)

He is not a match for you .

He is no match for you . (= He is certainly not a match for you . 比上句更强调一些)

This is no time for quarrelling . This is no place for girls .

It is no joke , no trifle (=very serious) .

I like a man of no common (=a very peculiar) type , a politician of no little (=very much) humour .

下面句子都表示肯定意义 , 甚至积极意义。

To my no little astonishment , he suddenly died .

To the no small delight of my brother . I won the game . I know no few politicians .

I am no little pleased .

It added no little (=much) to his pride .

He talked no little .

He is no little of a diplomat .

No few (=Many) of them were puzzled .

No few friends speak ill of him .

4 . None 作代词的用法

289 None 可用来代替各类名词 :

Something is better than none (=nothing) .

We seek peace but find none (=no peace) .

Have you any money? No , I have none (=no money) .

Have you any dictionaries? I have none (=no dictionaries) .

None (指人) came yesterday .

None (指事物) can be done .

No one (仅仅指人) said that .

290 有时有下面用法 :

Gold and silver I have none . (=I have no gold and silver .)
(较文气说法)

Friends I have none in the city . Coffee? There is none left .

Friends there are none to help me .

Inn for travellers there is none .

291 None 常可和 of 短语连用 , 在句中起多种作用 :

None (作主语) of us understand his purpose

I see none (作及物动词的宾语) of them .

Speak to none (作介词的宾语) of the girls .

Is she a nurse? She is none (作补语) of those things .

292 None 可以和 but 或 other than 连用 :

None but (=No one except) a genius can write it .

I have spoken to none but (= nobody except) you .

The murderer is none other than (=none but) John .

293 在以 none of 和复数可数名词作主语时 , 动词可用复数形式或单

数形式：

None of our friends are (or is) in Hongkong. (但不可说 All of our friends are not in Hongkong.)

None of them are (or is) honest. (不可说 All of them are not honest.)

294 也可用 none of 短语表示强调：

He is none of our friends (=by no means a friend of ours). He is none of your rascals. (=He is not one of your rascals.)

This is none of your business.

He shall be none of my son. (= He shall never be my son.)
You can do none of this.

I have given him none of my help.

(I will have) None of your impudence (or your jokes)! He is none of the richest (= not at all rich, very poor).

His family is none of the happiest (=very unhappy).

His pronunciation is none of the clearest.

His temper is none of the best.

5. None 作副词的用法

295 “none + the+比较级+ for 或 because”可表示“并不因此就，……一些”：

He is none the happier for his wealth (= He is still unhappy in spite of his wealth).

He is none the happier because he is wealthy. (比较：He is still unhappy, although he is wealthy.)

The book is none the more interesting for its illustrations.

She looks none the less pretty (=none the homelier) because of her simple dress.

比较：He is all the happier for his wealth. (=He is happier because of his wealth.)

He is all the happier because he is wealthy. (=He is happier because he is wealthy.)

We passed our holiday none too (=not very) gaily (=very unhappily).

296 None 可以和 too 或 so 一起用，表示 not very：

They love each other none too well.

It is none too easy (=very difficult).

She is none so (=not very) pretty.

He is none so kind.

297 None 偶尔用来修饰动词，但很少见：

I slept none (=never slept) last night.

We have stopped none (=have never stopped).

6. Not, No, None 的结合使用

298 “一个否定句+and+否定谓语”可表示“只要……就……”：

One cannot see her and not love her. (= One can't but love

her when one sees her .)

You must not be employed here and do nothing . (= You must do something when you are employed here .)

Nobody will read it and not be moved . (= Everybody will be moved when he reads it .)

“ 问句+and+否定谓语 ” 可表示 “ 只要.....能不.....? ” :

Can you do it and not be criticized? (=Can you not be criticized when you do it?)

Can anybody see her and not be charmed? (=Can't anybody be charmed when he sees her?)

299 “ 否定主语+谓语+but+谓语 ” 可用来表示 “ 不.....而是..... ” 或 “ 只有.....才..... ” :

Nobody may enter but must (=but one must) stay outside .

(在 but 后面的从句中 , nobody 在语法上是主语 , 在概念上 one 是主语。)

None of them may criticize their government , but must (=but they must) keep silent .

No rule can make one wise , but should (= but it should) be wisely observed .

Neither stayed at home , but (= but either) fooled around .

Few were shocked at the news , but (= but many) remained indifferent .

300 在口语中有时有人作重复否定 , 实际上只有一个否定意思 , 这是不规范语言 :

Nobody never went there . (=Nobody went there .)

I can't do nothing . (= I can do nothing .)

He never spoke with no foreigner . (= He never spoke with any foreigner .)

There was no man , no horse , no tree , no nothing .

Nobody hardly (=Almost nobody) knows it .

It don't do you no good . But don't you worry none (=Don't worry) .

在非正式场合用的口语中 , 有时会用一个多余的 not :

I wonder whether I shouldn't (=should) take a chance .

I shouldn't be surprised if he didn't tell (=told) you a lie .

I doubt whether he can't (=can) pay the debt .

301 对问题如何作肯定或否定的回答是一个有意思的问题 , 特别是当里面包含有 any , either , ever , at all , yet , far , long , many , much 这类词时。这类词通常用在否定、疑问及条件 (从) 句中 , 很少用在肯定句中 , 这时就要用其他词代替它们 :

A . Can he find it anywhere?

B . He can find it somewhere .

C No , he can't find it anywhere(or : No , he can find it nowhere) .

A . Did you ever play tennis? Did you play tennis at all?

B . I sometimes played it . I played it in a way .

C . But i didn't ever play (= never played) it . I didn't play it at all .

A . Did he fool around any more (or any longer) ?

B . He still fooled around .

C . No , he didn't fool around any more (or any longer) .

A . I can't go , but can't you go either ?

B . If you can go , I can go too .

C . If you can't go , I can't go either .

A . Has he done his homework yet ?

B . He has done it already .

C . I think he has not done it yet .

A . Did anyone steal anything any more ?

B . Someone still stole something .

C . No , no-one stole anything any more .

A . Did he go far to meet her ? Had she waited long ?

B . Yes , he went a long way and she had waited a long time .

A . I have not many friends , and not much time to spend .

B . But your husband has a great many friends , and plenty of time to spend among girls .

H. Such

1. Such 作形容词的用法

302 Such 可用来修饰各类的名词，表示“这样的”：

I do not want such a book, (such books, such coffee, such assistance.)

I like this book (=this one book), this dog (=this one dog).

I like such a book (=any book like this), such a dog (=any dog like this).

303 Such 前面可用其他指示词或数词，但不可用“指示词+of”

或“数词+of”这类结构，不能说 some of such books, all of such people:

I want some such books.

There is no such book. (不能说 none of such books, 但可说 There isn't such a book. 有人说 There is no such a book. 但这是不规范的。)

All such books should be burned up.

Have you ever met any such man? (不可说 any such a man)

Every such person is good for the community.

I need three such novels.

Few (or Many) such dogs are on sale.

304 Such 可用在感叹句中：

They have had such a good time (=so good a time)! (=What a good time they have had!)

I have such a difficult job (= so difficult a job)!

You are such a fool! (=What a fool you are!)

It is such fun! Such excitement!

I saw such a big tiger! Such big tigers!

I saw so big a tiger!

305 Such 常可和 as 引起的形容词从句一道用来修饰一个名词，这时 as 起一个关系词的作用，接近 who, that 等。如果不用 as，就不宜用 such：

Avoid such people as are selfish.

(但：Avoid those people who are selfish.)

Read such books as you can understand easily.

(但：Read those books which you can understand easily.)

Such a time as we had will be no more.

I have to maintain my family with such (= such little) wages as I get.

Such 有时可放在所修饰名词的后面：

I cannot find a book such as I want. He is not a man such as I admire.

As 有时引起一个状语从句：

Come at such hours as (=when) you are free.

He treated me in such ways as (=as) he treated a dog.

306 Such 有时用在后面分句中，对前面分句加以解释，说明原因，两个分句间用逗号隔开，后面分句比较强调：

He spent all his money, he is such a fool .

The bus arrived before dawn, it had run at such a speed .

Even the dog gasped, we had such bad weather .

Such 后面要跟名词，若跟形容词，则不用 such 而用 so：

He spent all his money, he is so foolish .

The bus arrived before dawn, it had run so fast .

Even the dog gasped, the weather was so bad .

前面句子也可改为下面形式，这时第 2 部分是一个表示程度或结果的状态从句，修饰形容词 such，比较强调，句子中间不加逗号：

The bus had run at such a speed that it arrived before dawn .

We had such bad weather that even the dog gasped .

He is such a fool that he spent all his money .

同样可说：

He is so foolish that he spent all his money .

The bus had run so fast that, etc .

The weather was so bad that etc .

307 Such as 有时可跟名词，表示“（像）……这样的”：Avoid people such as John and Dick .

Read books such as War and Peace .

A time such as this comes only once .

Such 有时放在名词前面，as 放在另一些名词的前面：

Such (=Such poor) things as bananas and sweet potatoes were his daily food .

Such men as Napoleon and Bismarck are rare .

在 as 后面可以用代词：

Such men as they (口语中可用 them) are rare .

I like people such as them (or they) .

Such as 和 like 的意思相近，但 as 是连词，like 是介词：

Men (不要说 The men, Such men) like Napoleon and Bis - marck are rare .

Such a man as Napoleon is rare .

A man like him (不要说 he) is rare . (但可说 Such a man as he)

Men (不要说 The men) such as Napoleon (or he) are rare .

A man such as (=Such a man as) Napoleon is rare .

308 Such...as 还可引起一个表示程度的状语从句，表示“那样……以致”：

I am not such a fool as to believe that . (=I am not such a fool that I believe that .)

This dog is such a vicious beast as to frighten every visitor .

309 Such 有时可修饰一个名词，来避免说出到底是谁，是什么，可译为“某某……”：

What if such a man doesn't live in such a place?

Such and such (形容词) a plan should be followed for such and such reasons . (and 也可用 or 代替)

He told me about such a one (or Mr . such - a - one) (代词)

I told Mr . so - and - so (人名) to come to House No . so - and - so (数目) , and in case so - and - so (=事件) (代词) happened , he should act so - and - so (or thus and thus) (副词) 。

It costs me so-and-so .

He came in the year so - and - so .

Look at so - and - so (or what - do - you - call - him , what's - his - name) .

2 . Such 作代词的用法

310 Such 可以用作补语 , 表示 “ 如此、这样 ” :

Such is the fact . (情况就是这样。)

(在 This is the fact . 中 this 是主语。)

Such is my belief .

Such were my friends . Such they were .

Such is life .

Such 也可用作宾语、主语等 , 这时可以说它是一个形容词 , 把主体词省略了 (这是比较文气的说法) :

I have five dogs and I will send you such (=such dogs) as you like best .

He may think ill of me , but such (a thing) is not my consideration .

Such (people) as (=Those who) respect others will be respected . But I can't find such (people) here .

Such as have a lot of money have a lot of friends .

If you are a good cook , show yourself such (=one) .

If you need assistants , you can have such (=some) .

He is not a doctor , but he may think himself such .

He wants a laboratory , and makes his small room such .

311 在和 such 连用时 , as 可引起一个定语从句 , 修饰代词 such :

His eloquence is such (=such eloquence) as everyone admires .

The height of the mountain is such (=such height) as makes one dizzy .

As 后面有时可跟一个不定式作定语 :

His ability is such as to astonish you . (=His ability is such a - bility as astonishes you .)

Your problem is not such as to cause despair . (=Your problem is not such a problem as may cause despair .)

His manner is such as to attract girls .

The use of a bicycle is not such as to replace a motorcar .

Such 作形容词时也有同样用法 :

He is not such a selfish man as to betray his friends .

It is such an effective method as to increase the production .

312 Such 有时和 that 引出的从句连用，表示程度（that 从句为表程度的状语从句）：

His eloquence is such that everyone admires it .

The height of the mountain is such that it makes one dizzy .

Such is his eloquence that everyone admires it .

Such is the height of the mountain that it makes one dizzy .

Such (= So great) is his patience that he has kept silent for 20 years about his wrong .

Such was her beauty that the king himself would kneel down before her .

313 Such as it is (was) 也可引出一个状语从句：

My knowledge , such as it is (=though it is poor) , has taken me many years to obtain .

I inherited this house , such as it was , from my grandfather .

This man , such as he is , is trustworthy .

314 Such as 可用来引出名词，表示“例如”：

I have some English books , such as vanity Fair .

（不要说 such as Vanity Fair , etc. , 即在 such as 后不要用 etc. 或.....）

也可用于 and (or) some such... , 表示“诸如此类的.....”：

I have Vanity Fair and suchlike (or and some such) books . (在口语中也可说 and such...)

把所有内容都列举出时不要用 such as , 而要用其他方式：

He knows four languages , that is (或 viz. , : , i.e. , name - ly) (不要说 such as) , Chinese , Japanese , German and Eng - lish .

315 I am your friend and as such (= as your friend) I must advise you .
Most witty men think themselves agreeable as such (= as witty men) .

The school has ceased to be as such .

A gentleman wants to be treated as such (= as a gentleman) .

A name , as such (= in itself) , means nothing .

I do not oppose the plan as such .

I . The same

1.The same 作形容词的用法

316 The same 表示“同一个”，“一样”：

We all attend the same school .

We all belong to one and the same . (or the very same) group .

Wealth or poverty is (all) the same to me .

We are the same age , the same sex , the same taste .

The city looks the same as before (or as usual) .

Poor John remains the same as ten years ago . 317 Quite , much

等词可以减弱 the same 的意思：

They are quite (or much , just) (= almost) the same .

318 That (this) same 可用来表示鄙视：

I dislike that same John . (我讨厌约翰那个家伙。)

What is the use of this same tool ? (这玩意儿有什么用？)

319 The same 常可与 as 引出的从句一起用，表示“和……同（一）样的”：

I live in the same house as he (lives in) .

She got the same salary as a man (got) .

This house is the same as yours (is) .

He gave the same love to his daughter as (he gave love) to his sons .

The same opportunity awaits you as (it awaits) anybody else .

He gave the same answer as (he gave) before .

有时和 that 或 where 引出的从句一起用，表示“同一个”：

I live in the (very) same house that he lives in .

I live in the (very) same house where he lives .

I live in the (or this , that) (very) same house where he lives .

320 The same 还可和 with 引出的短语一道用，意思和 the same...as 差不多：

I live in the same house as he .

I live in the same house with him .

This is the same watch as I lost .

This is the same watch with the one I lost .

He died at the same age as John .

He died at the same age with John . 2 . The same 作代词的用法

法

321 The same 可用作代词，表示“同样的事情（话）”等：

Everybody would say the same , and do the same .

322 The 在商业或法律用语中还可代表前面刚提到的东西：

I bought a used car and sold (the) same (= it) the following day .

We checked the report and found same (= it) correct .

Though our customers are different in taste , we try to satisfy same (= them) .

323 在口语中 the same 可代表对方问句中的东西：

“Are you Dr . A ? ” “ The same (=I am Dr . A) . ”

“ A happy New Year ! ” “ (The) Same to you ! ”

“ I worry about AIDS . ” “ Same here (=Me too) . ”

3 . The same 作副词的用法

324 The Same 也可用作副词，表示“同样（地）”：

Things go on just the same (=in the same way) .

I like pretty things the same as anybody else .

Everyone feels the same , thinks the same , acts the same .

325 All the same 表示“尽管……仍然”：

She is not pretty , but I love her all the same (=nevertheless) .

He is a nice fellow . All the same (=In spite of all that) ,
I can - not employ him .

I am still alive . All the same , this accident has cost me dear .

326 Same as 可表示 just as (正像) ：

He has to work same as (=just as) everyone else . (口语中用法)

I will do same as I am told .

J . Every

327 Every 只能用作形容词，表示“每一个”：

Every man has his weak side .

All men have their weak side . (all 意思弱一些，也用得少一些。)

They watched his every movement .

Her every wish was sacred to him .

Everyone must work . Everyone is respected in this country .

Every one of you must work . I respect every one of your family . (不能写 everyone of)

Every one of you must do his (不要说 your) best . (但可说 You must do your best .)

Not every cat is black . (=Some cats are black , some are not .)

He does not know everything . (=He only knows something .)

328 注意 every 和 any 的差别：

Though he knows everything , he cannot teach you everything (or all things) he knows ; but he can teach you anything (one out of many , no matter which) you suggest .

329 Every 可和 of you (us , them) 一起用作同位语：

We must study science , every one of us (=all without exception) .

They will be punished , every one of them .

These rotten apples must be thrown away , every one of them .

Be brave , every one of you .

330 Every 有时可和 any , each , all 等结合使用，表示特别强调：

I wish to read any and every good book .

I wish to visit each and every good place .

The library is open every day and all day . (every day 和 all day 意思不同)

I have brought my books , my paper , my pens , and my everything .

331 And everything 可表示“等一切 ”：

We wore new shoes , new socks , new trousers , and new everything .

She is so young , so pretty , so rich , so clever , and so everything .

He is selfish , cunning , cruel and everything (or and all those things , and many other things) .

332 “ every+可数名词+of ” 也是比较强调的说法：

I have read every word (不要说 all the words) of your letter . (=I have read your letter very carefully .)

Children enjoy every minute (不要说 all the minutes) of New Year's Day . (=Children enjoy New Year's Day very much .)

He makes the best use of every single cent of his savings .
Every drop of his blood boiled .

Every grain of rice is the sweat of peasants .

333 Every 可用在抽象名词前，表示“极大的”这类意思：

I have every reason to say that .

I wish you every success !

Every prospect of victory is in sight .

He will give me every (possible , imaginable) assistance
(or chance , convenience) . There is every hope (or possibility)
of winning .

I have every confidence in him .

334 Every 可和另一些词连用，表示：“每（隔）……”：

He came every third day (or every three days , or once in
every three days) .

He came every sixth week (or every six weeks) .

He came every other day (or every second day , on alternate days) .

Our bus passed a small town almost every three miles .

Two apples in (or out of) every ten were rotten .

Five students out of every hundred were the best .

We stopped between each two miles (and the other) , between each
ten minutes (and the other) , to take a rest .

K . All

1 . All 作形容词的用法

335 All 可作形容词，修饰各类名词，表示“所有的”或“整个”：

All (=The whole number of) insects are clever .

All (=The whole extent of) the city is crowded .

All (=All the members of) the family are in tears .

All (=The whole quantity of) the milk was spilt .

All the hard work is mine .

All (=Every part of) Africa (=The whole of Africa) is to be developed .

All (=Every) kind (or manner) of people lived here .

336 All 可用在某些指示词、数词和代词前面：

All such boys should be spanked .

All you people are idiots .

All five (children) ran away .

All (of) the school is quiet .

All (of) those (or these) students come from Iran .

All (of) his life was spent in the city .

All the angles of a triangle (taken together) are 180 degrees .

All the angles of a triangle are less than 180 degrees . (= Each angle is .)

All this (or All that) is madness .

I know all those places . (总起来考虑)

I know every one (每一个) of those places . (分开考虑)

I can remember all (特指，全部) the stories I have read .

I can remember any (泛指任何一个) stories I will read .

All our children 过去可能表示“我们大家的孩子”，现在表示“我们所有的孩子”。

337 Of (out of) all... 可用来表示惊奇或厌恶，可译为“在这么多……中偏偏(最)”：

They chose John of (or out of) all the members . (Though they might choose any other better member , they chose John particularly .)

The accident happened on New Year's Day of all days (or of all others) . (The accident , though it might happen on any other day of the year , did happen on New Year's Day .)

This shop of all shops (=Only this shop) sold coffins .

Did you , of all things (in the world) , love a playboy?

It is , of all things , my aversion .

He , of all persons , did such a silly thing .

I feared his temper of all things (=particularly) . He bought this silly book of all others .

This (particular) day of all days (or all others) is his birth - day .

This is something of all others to be condemned.

338 All 有时可和一抽象名词一起用,表示“极大的”这类意思(可参阅 333 节):

She appeared in all her (=her greatest possible) splendour.

The flowers are blooming in all their beauty.

The storm came in all its fury.

He spoke with all (=the utmost possible) humility.

He sent it with all speed.

He will take all care of you.

339 可以和复数可数名词一起用,表示“一切的”,“所有的”:

We watched all his movements

All his wishes(possible,imaginable,conceivable)will be satisfied.

All my efforts came to nothing.

All his remarks are worth listening to.

也可和单数可数名词一起用,表示“任何”:

It is beyond all (=any) doubt, all controversy, all question.

It is contrary to all rule, all precedent.

He hates all criticism, denies all error, renounces all connection, refuses all praise.

也可和复数名词这样用:

I'll do it at all hours, in all weathers, and at all costs.

还可和 for 或 with 连用,表示“尽管”:

For all that (or For all the world, For all their opposition) (=In spite of all that), he went on with his plan. With all his wealth, he cannot escape death.

340 All 可构成一些成语,表示“聚精会神地……”等:

She is all eyes and all ears.

She is all attention, all astonishment, all heart. (=She is very attentive, very astonished, very earnest.)

341 All 有时表示“唯一的”,“仅仅是”等:

That is all the (=the only) property I have.

All the news I learn is this.

All the dictionaries this shop sells are Webster's. Life is not all (=mere) pleasure.

All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.

342 All 可以和表示时间的名词连用,表示“整个……”,这时介词 in, on, at 常常不用:

He studied all day, all night.

He studied all (the) spring, all (the) week.

He studied all the day long, all the year round.

I worked all night long.

2.All 作代词的用法

343 All 用来代表人,这时为复数代词,表示“所有的人”:

All have come .

All must die .

Good luck to all .

All present are villagers .

在表示“一切”时为单数代词（有时有较灵活译法）：

All is silent .

All is lost . All is well . All is ready .

All was confusion . He has seen all (= the whole thing , everything) .

You must give up all you have got .

Is that all ? (= Is there anything else ?)

That is all . (= There is no more .)

You have a little headache , that is all (= no other problem) .

I don't like woman , that's all (= don't ask me why) .

Music is my all (= all I have or value) .

He is ready to sacrifice his all , his little all , that all .

When all is done (= After all) , he remained a fool .

When all is said , we have done something .

All said and done (= After all) , money is money .

344 All 可用在人称代词后作同位语，表示“……全”，“一切……”，“所有的人”等：

We all can help you .

They all saw it .

It all means nothing .

This all (or All this) is true .

They will all come .

It is all false .

It is all nonsense .

I saw it all .

I know them all .

He gave books , paper , and pencils to us all .

They were very merry all . (较少见)

比较：Gentlemen all ! My happy children all ! (仅作呼语)

有时 all 后面可跟两个同位语：

They like all us country girls (or all us seven) .

All we Japanese students are interested in it .

345 有时和 and 连用，表示“和……一切”，“等等这类东西”：

He loved his sons , daughters , servants and all (= and every person or thing connected) . (参阅 331 节)

He interferes in this and that and all .

He sold his house , furniture , and all .

He studied chemistry , botany , geology and all that (= and everything like that) .

346 Of all 常可和一个最高级词连用，表示“在所有……中最……”：

It is the largest of all .

Wang is the best student of all .

有时相当于状语，表示“最最……”：

He loves her most of all (= above all , more than anybody else .)

He likes wine least of all . (最不喜欢)

He came first of all . (最先)

He knows me best of all . (最)

After all 可作状语，表示“毕竟”，“到底”这类意思。

After all (=After all is said and done) , it does not matter much .

After all , we are mere mortals .

At all 可用在否定句、疑问句及条件从句中加强语气：

I do not know it at all (=in the least) . (一点也不知道)

Do you know it at all (=in any way) ? (真知道吗？)

If you know it at all , keep it a secret . (如果真地知道……)

All in all 可表示“一切的一切”，“所有问题”等：

She is all in all (=everything , the most important thing , the dearest thing) to him . Love is the all in all of my life .

Take it all in all (=When everything is considered) , education is very important .

Once for all 表示“一次就完”，“一劳永逸”等：

Take the money once for all (=once for all times) .

Speak to him once for all .

In all 表示“总共”：

The school has five hundred students in all (=all told) .

For good and all 表示“长久地（离开）”：

I shall leave Hongkong for good and all (=permanently) .

347 All 还可构成某些合成词：

God is the All - Creator , All - Giver , All - Maker , All - Seer .

He is all - seeing , all - knowing .

3 . All 作副词的用法

348 副词 all 可以修饰形容词、副词或介词，不能修饰动词，表示“全都”，“完全”等：

Success or failure is all (=entirely , quite) the same to me .
(修饰形容词)

We are all ready .

I am all wet .

It is all useless .

It is all one (=all the same) to me .

His face is all aflame .

His legs are all swollen .

It is all right .

He is all astonished .

He walked all too fast . (修饰副词) He died all too soon .

He settled the problem all alone .

Your remark is all very fine , all very well .

He died all for her . (修饰介词)

The rumour spread all through (or all over) the city .

I am all for freedom .

They were all for starting today .

He talked with me all along the way .

The patient got up all of a sudden (or all at once) .

I am all in perspiration .

“ all the+比较级 ” 用来加强语气 , 表示 “ 更加..... ” :

She looked all the prettier for her pretty dress .

He ran all the faster because he had been trained .

349 All but 可用来修饰谓语等 , 表示 “ 差点..... ” , “ 几乎 ” :

He all but (=almost) fail .

He all but died .

He is all but drowned .

He is all but certain of her death .

He has studied agriculture all but 30 years .

350 All 还可和形容词一道构成合成词 :

The King was supposed to be all-powerful , all-wise , all - ven-
- erable .

This love is all-important , all - embracing .

L . Both

351 Both 可作形容词，也可用作代词，表示“两个……都”：

There were three (or more) persons . All were my friends .

There were two persons . Both (=These two persons) were my friends .

I like all his relatives ; I like both his parents .

How many do you want ? I want two .

Which of the two do you want ? I want both (=one and also the other) .

Our head has ears on both sides , or an ear on each side .

352 下面九个句子意思都差不多：

Both sons study law .

Both the sons study law .

Both his sons study law .

Both these (or those) sons study law .

Both of the sons study law .

Both of them study law .

His sons will both study law .

His sons both study law .

They both study law .

Both our children 现在的意思是“我们的两个孩子”，而过去可以表示“我们两人的孩子”。

353 Both...and...可说是一个并列连词，连接两个平行或同等的东西，表示“……和……全”或“既……又”等：

Both the cat and the dog ran away . (名词+and+名词)

Both his hands and his feet were tied up .

The book was written in both Chinese and English , for both boys and girls . (名词+and+名词)

The book was written both in Chinese and in English , both for boys and for girls . (介词短语+and+介词短语)

She is both rich and intelligent . (形容词+and+形容词)

She both listened and wrote . (动词+and+动词)

Both boys , (and) girls , (and) , men and women are invited .

Both 间或放在后面：

The cat and the dog both ran away . (少见)

The book was written in Chinese and English both .

354 Either 可用作形容词或代词，作用和 any 差不多，但指“两者中的一个”：

Here are three (or more) dictionaries. You can choose any (=one out of three or more).

Here are two dictionaries. You can choose either (one or the other).

355 Any 可用在肯定句、疑问句、否定句及条件从句中：

Any Chinese can hold chopsticks. (肯定句)

Either of my hands can hold chopsticks. (肯定句)

Do you know any of his four brothers? (疑问句)

Do you know either of his parents? (疑问句)

I do not know any of them (=I know none of them). (否定句)

I do not know either of them. (=I know neither of them.)

(否定句)

If I see any of them, I will speak to him. (条件句)

If I see either of them, I will speak to him. (条件句)

356 Either 还可表示“两(边)”，“两(头)”等：

A soldier stood on either (=one AND the other, each) side of the door. (Two soldiers stood at the door.)

At either end of the desk is a drawer. (The desk has two drawers, one drawer at each end.)

His hands rested on either side of her shoulders.

357 Either...or 也是并列连词，可连接两个平行的东西，表示“既可.....又可.....”这类意思：

You may take either this or that. (可参阅 353 节)(连接两个代词)

You may use either your right hand or your left hand. (连接两个名词)

You can write either in English or in Chinese. (连接两个介词短语)

One must be either diligent or clever. (连接两个形容词) 间或可连接两样以上的东西：

You may take either food, (or) clothes, or money.

358 Either...or 还可表示“要么.....要么”这类意思：

Either you or he is wrong. (用 :Either you are wrong, or he is. 更好)

Either he or you are wrong.

Either you or I am wrong.

359 Either 还可用作副词，表示“也不”：

I do not like it, and he does not either. (not also)

I do not like this or that (either).

He is not clever or handsome (either).

John or Henry (either) has done it .

N . Neither

360 Neither 的用法和 none 相似，是 either 的否定形式，只用来指两个人或物中的一个，可用作形容词或代词，表示“（两者中）谁也不”或“（两者中）哪个也不”：

Here are seven dictionaries , but you can borrow none of them .

Here are two dictionaries , but you can borrow neither (=not the one nor the other) of them .

None of his five brothers know it . (不可说 Any of his five brothers does not know it .)

Neither of his parents knows it. (不可说 Either of his parents does not know it .)

Neither subject is easy . (不可说 Either subject is not 等 .)

361 Neither...nor 也是并列连词，连接两个平行的人或东西，表示“既不.....又不”或“既不.....也不”：

He spoke neither to John nor to Mary .

偶尔可用来谈三个人或三样东西：

Neither you , nor he , nor I am wrong. (Neither you are wrong , nor he , nor I . 更好一些)

He is neither rich , (nor) wise , (nor) handsome , (nor) healthy .

He can neither read nor (不可说 or) write .

He cannot either read or (不可用 nor) write .

He cannot read , nor write . (注意要加逗号)

Neither 也可用作副词，表示“也不.....”，这时要用倒装语序：

She will not do it , neither (用 nor 更好) will he . (不可说 He will not do it too .)

He is not wrong , neither are you .

If you don't smoke , neither do I .

第七单元疑问词

362 疑问词可以是代词，如 what , which , who , whom , 也可以是形容词，如 what , which , whose , 也可以是副词，如 when , where , how , why . 它们一般都放在问句或从句的开头。

. 疑问词作代词、形容词、副词的用法

A . Who , Whom , Whose

363 Who 可用作主语、补语、宾语：

Who (作主语) is (or are) wise ? Who care (or cares) ?

Who (作补语) are they ? Who is he ? (=What is his name ?)

Who (=Which) is right , you or I ?

Who (作动词宾语 , 比用 whom 时更多) do you see ? Who are you teaching ?

Who (作介词宾语 , 比用 whom 更多) is this letter from ? Whom must she speak to ?

但紧跟在介词或动词后面时只能用 whom :

To whom (不用 : To who) must she speak ? “ I saw Ada . ”

“ You saw whom (不用 : who) ? ”

I could speak to whom . (放在句末为了加强语气)

Whose (为所有格 , 作形容词 , 作定语) book is this ? Whose book are you reading ?

Whose (作所有格的独立形式 , 作代词 , 作补语) is this ? Whose are those houses ?

Whose (作主语) are (or is) lost ? Whose is red ?

Whose (作宾语) are you using ? Whose will you borrow ?

B . What

364 What 可用作主语（这时作单数看待）、补语、宾语、介词宾语或定语：

What(作主语)astonished you ? What has(不用 :have)hap - pened ?

What (作补语) is the difference ? What is this man ? (=What is his job and character ?)

What (作动词宾语) do you want ?

I know what (=I have an idea) .

I will tell you what (=something) .

He keeps dogs , cats , birds and what not (or and what all , and what have you) (=and the like) .

He knows what is what (=what is good , useful or impor - tant) .

What (作介词宾语) are you looking at ? (也可说 At what are you looking ? 但较文气)

What can I depend on ? (或说 On what can I depend ?)

What do you follow me for ? (或说 For what [=Why] do you follow me ?) (这类介词可放在句末，也可放在句首。)

I must give the boy what-for (=punishment) .

What's new ? (打招呼用语)

At what time (or In what respect , By what means , In what circumstances) did you defeat him ? (作定语，这类介词只能放在句首，不能放在句末，不可说 What time did you defeat him at ?)

What is an elephant like ? (问是什么样子)

“ Roy Chen divorced Joy Lee . ” “ What ? ” (=Say it again , 这时说 Pardon ? 更好些)

What (=Which) subject in your school do you like best ?

What of (or about) (=What news is there about) your business ? (问情况如何)

What about (=What would you say) some more drinks ? (提出建议)

What if (=What will or would happen if) he knows the secret ?

What though (=What will or would happen though) he failed ?

“ You will lose all you have gained . ” “ What then ? ” (那又怎么样 ?)

“ You love Lily ? ” “ So what ? ” or “ Well , What of it ? ” (那怎么啦 ?)

What do you say to his project ? (对他的建议你有什么想法 ?)

What do you think of this demonstration ?

What is the point (=What is the meaning) of asking me such questions ?

What is behind (=What is hidden behind) this change of policy ?

Did you see Mr . what - d' - you - call - him (用来代替一个想不起来的名字) ?

Dr . what's - his - name says I am all right .

I will speak to Miss what - d' - you - call - her .

Could you lend me what - d' - you - call - it ?

He came from what's-its-name state .

C . Which

365 Which 可用作主语、宾语、介词宾语或定语：

Which (of these) (作主语) interests you? (What of all interests you?) (which 指有限数量东西中的一个, what 却不受限制。)

Which (作动词宾语) do you want? Which (of these) do you like best?

Which (作介词宾语) are you looking at? Which can we do without?

Which (作定语) sister is the more intelligent?

D . Where

366 Where 只能用作地点副词，表示“到哪里”或“在哪里”：

Where (=To what place) is he going , running , driving ?

Where (=At what place) is he staying , learning , playing ?

“ Why don't you go ? ” “ Go where ? ”

E . When

367 When 可用作时间副词，表示“什么时候”：

When can I see you again?

When will he begin the work?

When did you arrive?

When will he go again?

F . How

368 How 为方式副词，表示“如何”，“怎样”：

How can I do it?

How (=In what way) will you settle the problem?

How do you make it?

How do you call it? (=What do you call it?)

How about the game? (引起话题)

How (or What) about (=What would you say to) a cup of tea?

How do you like (or feel about) this war film?

How's life (or everything, it going, Auntie)? How're things?

(问候语)

“How do you do?” — “How do you do?” (初次见面时套语，英国说法)

How's your new car? (=How do you like it?)

What's your new car like? (Please describe it.)

How come (= Why is it that) everybody looks at you?

Everything has changed. How so? How is it that you still remember her?

G . What

369 What 可用作副词，表示“到什么程度”：

What (=How much) (as intensive adverb) do I care eventhough I am poor ?

What does this small thing matter? — It matters much . What matters this small thing?

What does it signify whether he is rich or poor ? — It signifies little .

· 疑问词在各种问句中的用法

A . 在强调疑问句中的用法

370 在对一个问句的某部分进行强调时可用强调疑问句：

Who is it that teaches you to smoke? (通常说 Who teaches you to smoke?)

What is it that you are doing? (通常说 What are you doing?)
Which is it that you want?

Where was it that he learned to curse?

When was it that I ever said so?

How was it that he learned the secret?

Why is it that you should abandon her?

B. 在带情绪疑问句中的用法

371 在表示不耐烦情绪时, what 后面可加 ever 或其他东西, 下列句子越往下表示的情绪越强烈:

Whoever (或 Who ever) said so? (这是谁说的?)

Whatever (or What ever) did you say? (你到底说的是什么?)

What on earth (or in the creation, in the world, under the sun) did you say? (你他妈的到底说了些什么?)

Which in the name of reason (or fortune, common sense) do you decide to choose? (你究竟打算选哪一个?)

What in heaven's name (or in the name of wonder, in thunder) have you done? (你他妈的究竟干了些什么?)

What earthly thing are you doing now? (你这会儿到底在干什么?)

Where the devil (or the dickens, the deuce) is he going? (他妈的他想到哪里去?)

When the hell will you pay me? (你他妈的到底什么时候还我钱?)

Why the blazes are you so late? (你他妈的怎么来得这么晚?)

What the plague (or the mischief) are you talking about? (你他妈的说些什么屁话?)

What a plague is he doing? (他妈的他到底在干什么?)

这类句子很难译为汉语, 上面译文只是想给大家一点启发, 不一定合适。

C. 在形式疑问句中的用法

372 有些问句只是对别人说话的反应，并不要求回答，也无法回答：

Who can fly in the air? (=Nobody can fly in the air.) (谁能飞呀?)

Who cares? (=Nobody cares.) (谁管啦?)

What else would you say? (=You will say nothing else.) (你还能说些什么?)

What subject does he understand? (=He does not understand any subject.) (他懂什么?)

What subject does he not understand? (=He understands every subject.) (他什么不懂?)

Why do you do this? (=You should not do this.) (你怎能这样干?)

Why don't you do this? (=You should do this.) (那你怎么不干?)

Where didn't I see her smile? (=I did see her smile everywhere.) (她在哪儿不笑?)

How can I do it? (=I can never do it.) (我哪干得了?)

Will he surrender? (=He will not surrender.) (他会投降?)

Can the blind see? (=The blind cannot see.) (瞎子还能看东西?)

Shall I forget it? (=I shall not forget it.) (这事我会忘吗?)

Must I kowtow to him? (=I need not.) (我还得给他磕头?)

D . 在要求作确切回答的问句中之用法

373 有些问句中可插入 exactly ,precisely 之类副词 ,要求确切回答 :

Exactly what do you want ? What exactly do you want to say ?

Precisely where are you going ? Where precisely has he seen
it ?

Just how do you get it ?

Just which did he like best ?

Just who has come ?

E . 在带插入语问句中的用法

374 有些问句中可插入 do you think , do you guess 之类插入语 , 这时后面部分要用陈述句语序 :

What do you think we should (不要说 should we) do ? (=What , in your opinion , should we do ?)

Where did they tell you he was going ?

Which do you guess is the better ?

How do you say we can settle the problem ?

When we should build a schoolhouse , did they suggest ?

F . 在双重疑问句中的用法

375 有时一个问句中有两个疑问点，需用两个疑问词：

What book was written by what author in prison?

Who abandoned whom after they got married?

How many people eat how much rice every year? Where did they buy it from whom? (更好：Where did they buy it and from whom?)

G . 在追问式疑问句中的用法

376 当对方说一句话，某一部分没听清楚，要求把这部分重说一遍时，可把疑问词放在后面：

“ He studied ceramics . ”

“ He studied what ? ” (用陈述句语序)

“ My aunt depends upon a foreigner for her living . ” “ She depends upon whom ? ”

“ Upon whom ? ”

“ John has two million and five hundred thousand dollars in the bank . ”

“ He has how many dollars ? ”

“ You can try this method whenever you think it useful . ”

“ I what ? ”

“ I can what ? ”

“ Try what ? ”

“ This method what ? ”

“ My cat likes eating melon seeds . ”

“ What likes eating ? ”

“ What eating ? ”

“ What melon seeds ? ”

“ What eating what ? ”

“ I will talk with none of them . ”

“ Which of them ? ”

“ I like to watch the dragon-boat race . ” “ Which race ? ”

H. 在省略疑问句中的用法

377 当对方说一句话，需了解更多情况时，有时可用省略疑问句，把对方话中已用的词省略掉：

“Go quickly.”

“Where to?” (=Where shall I go quickly to?)

“Open it.”

“What with?” (=What shall I open it with?)

“Send it at once.”

“Who to?”

“I am thinking.”

“What about?”

“He is married.”

“Who to?”

“I study cooking.”

“What for?”

这类问句常由“疑问词+介词”构成。

· 疑问词在感叹句中的用法

378 某些疑问词可用来开始一个感叹句（一般用陈述句语序）：

1) How 后面可跟形容词、副词或动词：

How beautiful the poem is! (how+形容词+主语+动词)

How funny he looks!

How peaceful he found country life! How much work he has to do! (how+形容词+名词主语+动词)

有时感叹句中可用助动词，像问句一样放在主语前面：

How many beautiful poems did he write!

How large a kingdom did he rule!

但不加助动词时更多一些：

How fast he ran! (how+副词+主语+动词)

How hard John works!

偶尔又可用一个助动词：

How long can he stay below the water!

How fast did he run!

有时副词可以省略，让听者自己想像：

How (fast, desperately, clumsily, etc.) he ran!

有时直接修饰动词：

How we work!

How we enjoyed ourselves!

How many times did I not warn you!

2) What 后主要跟一带修饰语的名词：

What a beautiful poem I am reading!

What a great project it is!

有时感叹句中也可用一助动词，像问句放在主语前：

What a beautiful poem am I reading!

What a happy life is there in the country!

名词前有时可有一个表数量的短语：

What a great number of books we saw in the library!

What an immense amount of money they spend!

What a piece of work is man 或 man is)!

有时后面直接跟一个名词：

What (=How many) years I have spent in learning English!

What (=How important) information he has given me!

What (=How good, How exciting, etc.) stories he hasn't told me! (这里否定句实际是肯定的意思)

What 有时在句中作补语：

What (=How great) was his agony of suddenly losing his wife!

What was her surprise when she saw him becoming a pirate!

一般疑问句有时也可用作感叹句：

Isn't she angry! Hasn't she grown wild! (否定句，英国说法)

Am I a fool ! Is it a trick ! (肯定句 , 美国用法)

．疑问词在各种名词从句中的用法

397 1. 疑问词可以用来引出多种名词从句

What he is doing (名词从句作主语) is a mystery .

I know where he has been (作动词的宾语) .

My question is who will marry a poor man like me (补语从句) .

He told me which subject he likes best (作双宾动词的直接宾语) .

He is doubtful how the work can be finished this week . (作 “ be+形容词 ” 结构的宾语 , 这种结构相当于一个及物动词。)

I am not sure who will take over a task that will please very few people .

Their success depends upon what policy they are going to adopt and how they execute it . (作介词的宾语)

A problem arose as to who would succeed to the estate if their father , who was seriously ill , should die .

Just imagine what a pretty girl this country girl could be (感叹从句) if she were properly dressed .

He asked who the boy was . (动词 was 通常都放在主语 boy 的后面)

He asked who was the boy that spoke with Mary across the street . (如果主语及修饰语加起来太长 , was 可以放在主语前面。)

380 2. 疑问词还可用来引出一个强调式疑问句 (可参阅 370 节) :

My question is who it is that will marry a poor man like me .
(用 it is that 这种结构可对疑问词 who 加以强调)

We inquire when it is that we all shall have enough to eat , and when it is that we all can live together peacefully .

He told me one day which subject it is that he likes best , and which subject it is that he hates most .

That depends on what policy it is that he adopts .

381 3. 疑问词还可用来引出一个带插入语的疑问句 (这类句子带有鄙夷情绪) :

He has earned I do not know how much money .

(正常结构 : I don't know how much money he has earned .)

He waited for her I do not know how long .

She is going nobody knows where . (正常结构 : Nobody knows where she is going .)

He will return God knows when .

He is always busy with the devil knows what .

He has Heaven knows how many wives .

382 4. 也可用在有两个疑问词的名词从句中 :

I don't care who is married to whom .

I don't know who is who , and what is what .

It does not matter which belongs to which .

Nobody cares who has earned how much .

383 5 . 如果从句中主语显然跟有 may , must , ought to 或 can 这类情态动词 , 这类从句常可变为 “ 疑问词+不定式 ” 结构 :

What we ought to do (=What to do) is a problem .

He knew where he might live more peacefully (=Where to live more peacefully) .

Which course one must take (=which course to take) is obvious .

He taught me how one could be strong (=how to be strong) .

但有些这类从句不能改为 “ 疑问词 + 不定式 ” 结构 :

He told me how his brother fell in love with Mary .

I do not know what trick he is playing upon me .

反之 , “ 疑问词+不定式 ” 结构却可扩展为一个从句 :

He is not sure which bus to take (= which bus he must take) .

He worried about how to live on (=how he could live on) .

I do not know what to say (=what I should say) .

第八单元 比较级别

. 3 个比较级别

384 形容词大多可以比较，有 3 个比较级别 (Degrees of Comparison)。形容词的原来形式称为原级 (Positive Degree)：

This house is small .

He is a wise man .

I found this horse very fast .

表示一样东西或人比另一样东西或人“更……”的形容词，称为这个形容词的比较级 (Comparative Degree)，单音节形容词的比较级由该词加词尾-er 构成：

This house is smaller than yours . These houses are smaller than those .

He is a wiser man than his father .

I found this horse faster than that .

表示在 3 个或更多的东西或人中“最……”的形容词，称为这个形容词的最高级 (Superlative Degree)，单音节词以加-est 方式构成最高级：

This house is the smallest of all . These five houses are the smallest of all .

He is the wisest man in this city .

I found this horse fastest of all . I found these horses fastest of all .

385 双音节或多音节形容词，多以前面加 more 的方式构成比较级，以加 most 的方式构成最高级：

This house is beautiful . (原级)

He is a cunning man .

I found the horse very useful .

This house is more beautiful (比较级) than yours .

He is a more cunning man than his brother .

I found the horse more useful than that one .

This house is the most beautiful (最高级) of all .

He is the most cunning man I ever saw .

I found the horse the most useful of all .

386 还有一种比较方法，即往下比，表示“较不……”，“最不……”，这时可以分别在形容词前加 less 或 least。由 less 构成的比较级称为较低级 (Comparative of Inferiority)，以 least 构成的最高级称为最低级 (Superlative of Inferiority)：

This house is less beautiful (不如……美) than yours .

He is a less cunning man than his brother .

This house is the least beautiful (最不美) of all .

He is the least cunning man that I ever saw .

387 副词也可以同样方式进行比较：

John ran fast—faster than I—the fastest of all .

He writes carefully—more carefully than I—the most care -

fully in class .

· 无法比较的形容词与副词

388 大多数品质形容词都可进行比较，但某些形容词是绝对的，无法比较的。我们可以说 nearly perfect , quite empty , almost dead , 但不能说 more perfect , emptier , most dead , 也不能说 This is rounder than that . 下面是一些无法比较的形容词：

Absolute , chief , main , principal , complete , perfect , ideal , excellent , supreme , unanimous , universal , whole , full , final , entire , ultimate , utter , uttermost , omnipotent , everlasting , eternal , fundamental , basic , primary , first , preliminary , u-nique , sole , all - seeing , all - knowing (还有其他由 all-构成的合成词，以及形式上不是最高级而意义上都是最高级的形容词)

Homeless , harmless , fatherless , meaningless , illiterate , immortal , impossible , illegal , inevitable , invaluable , infinite , unendurable , unskilled , unripe (还有许多其他带有否定前缀或后缀的形容词，如由-less , ill - , in- , im - , un-等构成的形容词)

Contemporary , simultaneous , chaste , true , false , sufficient , equal , major , minor , dead , mortal , wooden , round , empty , void , sea-blue , etc .

Some , any , all , no , every (及其他指示形容词)

Monkey (例如 monkey business) , child (as in child care) , home (as in home work) (和许多其他可用作形容词的名词)

不过，像 monkeyish , homely 和 childish 这样的正规形容词可以比较。) 389 和某些形容词一样，某些副词也是不能比较的：

Now , yesterday , presently , eternally (时间)

Here , upward , down , away (地点)

Negatively , absolutely , universally , infinitely (及许多由不可比较形容词构成的副词) (方式)

390 有些似不能比的形容词，偶尔也有比较的形式，如 fuller , pur - er , more correct , more perfect , most ideal , most complete , lessequal , less empty , 甚至一些优秀作家也这样用。

· 比较级和最高级的构成法

A . 形容词

391 单音节形容词通常都以加-er 和-est 的方式构成其比较级和最高级：

但在加词尾时要注意：

1) 一般加-er, est：

tall	taller	tallest
bold	bolder	boldest
kind	kinder	kindest
great	greater	greatest

2) 以-e 结尾的词，只加-r 和-st：

large	larger	largest
wise	wiser	wisest
fine	finer	finest
white	whiter	whitest

3) “辅音字母+元音字母+辅音字母”（简称 CVC）构成的词，末尾字母要双写，再加-er 和-est：

hot	hotter	hottest
thin	thinner	thinnest
flat	flatter	flattest
big	bigger	biggest

392 下面单音节形容词，用加 more 和 most 构成比较级和最高级比加-er 和-est 的时候多：

real	just	full
like	right	French

393 下面形容词既可以加词尾的方式构成比较级和最高级，也可加 more, most 构成（如 truer, truest; more true, most true），但用加词尾方式构成时更多一些：

drunk	keen	calm	mild
glad	cross	plain	pale
frank	free	huge	vague
fond	scarce	prompt	sound

394 下述双音节形容词以加词尾方式构成比较级及最高级：

1) 以y 结尾的词，先变y 为 i，再加词尾，如 happy, happier, happiest：

happy	angry	dingy	naughty
likely	lucky	misty	stormy
lively	kingly	timely	beastly

这种形容词偶尔也可以加 more, most 的方式构成比较级和最高级，如 more misty, most misty; more lucky, most lucky。但有些只能以加词尾方式构成比较级及最高级，如 cleanly, kindly, lowly。

2) 以-er 结尾的词，如 tenderer, tenderest：

tender	bitter	clever (Eager, sober, slender 也
--------	--------	---------------------------------

可加 more, most 方式构成)

3) 以 -ow 结尾的词，如 shallower, shallowest：

yellow narrow hollow shallow

4) 以 -le 结尾的词, 如 simplef, simplest:

idle feeble subtle gentle
noble able supple

(Ample, humble, brittle, nimble, stable, agile, motile, senile, 等, 也可加 more, most)

5) 重音在第二音节的词, 如 polⁱter [p+l^áit+r], politest[p+l^áitist].

polⁱte sev^ére int^énse obsc^úre
prof^únd rem^óte divⁱne precⁱse

more or most antⁱque, grot^ésque, chin^ése; more or most a fr^áid, a w^áre, a l^óne, a lⁱke, a p^árt, cont^ént 及其他专门用作补语的形容词。

6) 下述形容词, 如 crueler, cruelest:

dismal cruel common stupid distinct
pleasant quiet profound civil exact

(所有这些形容词也可以加 more 和 most, 只有 cruel 除外。)

395 上面未提到的双音节词, 通常多加 more 和 most:

cautious more cautious most cautious
foolish more foolish most foolish
cheerful more cheerful most cheerful
active more active most active
charming more charming most charming
crooked more crooked most crooked
docile more docile most docile
constant more constant most constant

396 三音节或更多音节的词通常都加 more 和 most:

beautiful more beautiful most beautiful
affable more affable most affable
digestible more digestible most digestible
malignant more malignant most malignant

但加 -er 和 -est 的双音节形容词, 在加上 un- 这样否定前缀时, 仍保持加 -er, -est 的方式:

untidy untidier untidiest
unlucky unluckier unluckiest
unholy unholier unholiest
unhappy unhappier unhappiest
impolite impoliter impolitest
ignoble ignobler ignoblest

397 现在分词和过去分词 (起形容词作用的动词), 不管有多少音节, 都加 more 和 most:

现在分词 过去分词
interesting interested
astonishing astonished

discouraging discouraged

tiring tired

charming charmed

shocking shocked

398 以-ful, -ed, -ing, -able 及-id 结尾的词, 为了达到某种效果, 可以加-er, -est, 如 cheerfulest wretchedest, cunningest, damnablest, candidest, 但这是不规范的。

399 如果几个形容词修饰同一名词, 它们可以采取一种方式, 或全加-er, -est 或全加 more, most:

That is a bolder, sordider and horridier way.

He is the meanest, falsest, but cleverest fellow I ever have known.

He may be the most proud, most free, most energetic and most enterprising man in our city.

在这种情况下, 如果两种方式都用, 可以前面加-er, -est, 后面加 more, most:

He is the merriest, cleverest, most intelligent, most courageous of my friends.

有时只在第一个形容词前加 more, most, 后面形容词前都不再加什么:

He may be the most proud, free, and energetic (=most proud, most free and most energetic) man in the city.

The road is more rugged, muddy and hilly than any others.

400 总之, 上述规律一般是有效的, 但并不是十分严格的。它们可能受音韵、个人喜好及其他因素的影响。

401 还有一些形容词有不规则的比较形式:

good (well)	better	best
bad (ill, evil)	worse	worst
many (much)	more	most
little	less (lesser)	least
old	older (elder)	oldest (eldest)
late	later (latter)	latest (last)
far	farther (further)	farthest (furthest)
near	nearer	nearest (next)

402 下面主要表示空间的词, 只在后面加-er, 及加-most, 原级词除 hind 外都是副词。但这种比较级不能和 than 引起的从句一起用。比较级和最高级都只用在名词前作限制性形容词。

hind	hinder	hindmost
fore	former (过去的, 或前者)	foremost (最前的, 最早的, 最重要的)
in	inner	inmost (or innermost)
out	outer (更外的, 离中心较远的)	outmost (or outermost) (离里面或中心最远的)

out utter (极为) utmost (or uttermost) (最大的)

up upper upmost (or uppermost)

下面的词也表示空间，但不加 -est，而只在后面加 most，如

middle, middlemost; top, topmost; end, endmost:

top, bottom, front, back, head, left, right, centre, deep, north, northern

403 某些以 -or 结尾的词没有原级及最高级。其中五个已失去比较的意义 (1)；有九个和 to 引起的短语一起用，而不和 than 引起的从句一起用 (2)：

1) interior, exterior, ulterior, minor, major

The interior part is of major importance.

2) senior, junior, superior, inferior, anterior, posterior, prior, previous, subsequent

John is 5 years senior to Richard, but inferior to him in intelligence.

Prior (or Previous) to (=before) their marriage, they did not know each other.

404 合形成形容词大多在前面加 more 及 most：

foolhardy	more foolhardy	most foolhardy
-----------	----------------	----------------

short-sighted	more short-sighted	most short-sighted
---------------	--------------------	--------------------

home-sick	more home-sick	most home-sick
-----------	----------------	----------------

red-hot	more red-hot	most red-hot
---------	--------------	--------------

plain-spoken	more plain-spoken	most plain-spoken
--------------	-------------------	-------------------

far-fetched	more far-fetched	most far-fetched
-------------	------------------	------------------

public-spirited	more public-spirited	most public-spirited
-----------------	----------------------	----------------------

out-of-fashion	more out-of-fashion	most out-of-fashion
----------------	---------------------	---------------------

up-to-date	more up-to-date	most up-to-date
------------	-----------------	-----------------

但若第一个词是大家熟悉的单音节词，则 -er 或 -est 都加在这个词的前面。此外，最高级比比较级用得得多得多：

large-sized	larger-sized	largest-sized
-------------	--------------	---------------

kind-hearted	kinder-hearted	kindest-hearted
--------------	----------------	-----------------

dull-witted	duller-witted	dullest-witted
-------------	---------------	----------------

fine-looking	finer-looking	finest-looking
--------------	---------------	----------------

hard-working	harder-working	hardest-working
--------------	----------------	-----------------

long-lasting	longer-lasting	longest-lasting
--------------	----------------	-----------------

old-established	older-established	oldest-established
-----------------	-------------------	--------------------

long-cherished	longer-cherished	longest-cherished
----------------	------------------	-------------------

wide-read	wider-read	widest-read
-----------	------------	-------------

well-known	better-known	best-known
------------	--------------	------------

well-behaved	better-behaved	best-behaved
--------------	----------------	--------------

soft-spoken	softer-spoken	softest-spoken
-------------	---------------	----------------

B . 副词

405 单音节副词和单音节形容词一样，都以加-er，-est 的方式构成比较级和最高级：

soon	sooner	soonest			
long	longer	longest	low	lower	lowest
loud	louder	loudest			
hard	harder	hardest			

406 双音节副词，特别是以-ly 结尾的，大多加 more 和 most :wisely
more wisely most wisely

skilfully	more skilfully	most skilfully
suddenly	more suddenly	most suddenly
beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully

(例外情况 :seldom ,seldomer ,seldomest ;early ,earlier ,earliest ; often , oftener , oftenest)

407 在口语中，形容词的比较级有时可用作副词，尽管原级不能这样用：

He talks cleverer (=more cleverly) than I .
We must look closer (=more closely) to see all the details .
He explained it clearer (=more clearly) than I .
He ran quicker (more quickly) .
Please walk slower (=more slowly) .
He handles matters cleverer (=more cleverly) than you think .
He can write easier (=more easily) than I .
Easier said than done .
He talks the cleverest (=most cleverly) of all .
He explained it the clearest (=most clearly) of all .
I lived happiest (=most happily) in 1965 .

408 不规则副词有特殊的比较级及最高级：

near	nearer	nearest (next)
far	farther (further)	farthest (furthest)
	farthermore (fur - thermore)	farthermost (fur - thermost)
well	better	best
ill (badly)	worse	worst
much	more	most
little	less	least
late	later (latterly)	latest (last)

C . Less (or Least) + 形容词 (或副词)

409 Less 和 least 可加在各类音节的词前表示“较不.....”或“最不.....”，可称为较低级 (Lower Degree) 或最低级 (Lowest De - gree) :

原级	较低级	最低级
small	less small (=larger)	least small (=largest)
short	less short (=longer)	least short (= longest)
easy	less easy	least easy
beautiful	less beautiful	least beautiful
slowly	less slowly	least slowly
energetically		less energetically
	least energetically	

· 某些比较级与最高级的用法

410 某些不规则形容词和副词的比较级及最高级可能有原级所没有的特殊意义：

Elder 及 eldest 只用在表示兄弟姐妹及子女的名词前。

Older 及 oldest 可以和任何名词一起用，用于各种位置。Elder, eldest 及 older 和 oldest 的反义词为 younger 和 youngest：John is older than Richard.

His oldest house lies on the opposite side.

He is my elder brother (可说 older brother—美国用法)。

The eldest son died last year.

She is the elder of the two.

He is an elder (=old and respectable) statesman (特殊用法)。

411 Nearest 表示“最近的”，next 表示“紧挨着的”或“下一个”：

This is the nearest post-office to our school.

Who of you lives nearest to Mr. Lee?

He is my nearest (=dearest) relation.

It is a subject nearest to his heart.

He lives next to my house.

The next chapter is on music.

The next best thing to do is to wait and see.

He sat next to me (=by my side)。

He lives next door. I don't like people next door.

His reply is next door to (=almost) a refusal.

Come next Monday (下星期一)。

He came the next (= the following) Monday (之后的星期一)。

412 More, Most 的用法：

What is more (=more important), he is very ill.

Do it once more (=once again)。

I shall not go any more (=go no more)。

Life is getting more and more (越来越) difficult.

He has studied English ten years, more or less (大致)。

Most (= The majority of) students are not interested in mathematics.

These people are for the most part (=mostly, on the whole) ignorant and stubborn.

We have to make the most of (充分利用) what we have.

It is a most (=very) easy job.

413 Better, Best 的用法：

He sold the better (=greater) part of his estate.

He must speak with his better half (=wife)。(口语用法)

I know better than to (=am wise or experienced enough not to) hurt her feelings.

He says he is honest, but I know better (=I don't think so)。

I have been waiting for the best part of a day (=almost all day) .

414 Less 表示“比较少的”，可用在不可数名词前面或另一位置；

Lesser 表示“次要的”，只可用在可数名词前面：

He has less money and less confidence than his brother .

He has less trouble (but fewer troubles) than last year .

I have less chance (but fewer chances) than he .

We have less students (不规范用法) this year .

He is less than sixty .

Can I have a bit less noise ?

His salary is less than \$ 300 .

We have to choose the lesser evil of the two .

We have many lesser things to do .

He got a lesser share .

415 Farther 和 further 都表示距离（更远），但只有 further 可表示“进一步”，“更多的”：

It is dangerous to go farther (or further) .

There is a mirror at the farther (or further) end .

He went to the farther side of the river (or the road , the sea) .

Wait till further (不用 farther) notice .

Let us discuss it further (不用 farther) .

Further (=Furthermore) , we must have a guide .

We try to further (=promote) (作动词) research work .

416 Latter , Later , Latest , Last 的用法：

She learns shorthand and dancing , but the former (=short - hand)

seems harder to her than the latter (=dancing) .

He died in the latter (=second) half (or part) of this year .

Richard is waiting for his latter end (=death)

and he has been unhappy in his latter days (= the days before his death) .

Don't ask me . You'll learn it later (= afterwards) .

A month later they were divorced .

The latest (= most recent) news is bad .

The latest edition was published two years ago .

His last (= final) work was published in 1700 .

The last three years of his career were remarkable .

He came last (=previous) Monday (or on Monday last) .

I have received your last (=most recent) letter . (口语用法)

He spent his last (=only remaining) dollar .

Rebellion will be their last remedy .

I am the last man (=not the man) to cheat .

It is the last thing (=not the thing) I want to see .

Marriage is of the last (=utmost) importance to me .
Sure , this job is difficult in the last degree .

. 3 个级别总论

417 形容词和副词的比较，由于结构几乎相同，在这里将一起讨论：

John is as diligent (形容词) as Richard .

John works as diligently (副词) as Richard .

John is more diligent (形容词) than Richard .

John works more diligently (副词) than Richard .

John is the most diligent (形容词) of all .

John works the most diligently (副词) of all .

418 原级可以单独使用 1)，也可和 as 引出的从句一起用 2)，从句中如果意思明显，有时一部分词可以省略 3)，或是全部省略 4)：

1) He is honest . He treats people honestly .

2) He is not so honest + as he is intelligent .

3) He treats people as honestly + as his brother (treats people) .

4) I stand five foot , but he is not so tall (+ as I am tall) .

419 比较级 (包括前面加 less 的形容词或副词) 通常都和 than 引起的从句一起用 1)，如果意思明显，从句中一部分词可以省略 2)，或是全部省略 3)：

1) His brother speaks English better + than I speak Japanese .

2) His brother is less honest + than he (is honest) .

3) Nobody is more honest (+ than this man) . You cannot find anyone better (+ than this man) .

I have never been more hungry (+ than this time) .

420 最高级多和一个表示比较范围的词、短语或从句一起用，如果意思明显，这部分也可省略：

His brother is the most honest man today (or in this city , I ever saw) .

421 和普通的形容词和副词一样，比较级和最高级也可放在几个位置：

The businessman is a cleverer (限制性，放在名词前面) man than the peasant .

He is cleverer (作补语) than anyone else .

Cleverer (解释性定语) than anyone , he grew rich .

He is the cleverest man of all .

He is the cleverest in this area .

The cleverest in this area , he grew rich .

More quickly than one expected , he agreed .

422 比较级可有一个副词或副词短语修饰，表示程度或方式：

There is a yet harder problem . A still more dangerous enemy is lurking behind . He grew angrier still .

This is much (or far , greatly , decidedly , inconceivably , even , a lot , by far , a great deal , many times , seven times , slightly , somewhat , a little , a bit , little) better than that .

Too much reading makes me all the (= even) more stupid .

Take more rest and you'll get well all the sooner .

That is all the prettier this flower grows (= This flower can't grow prettier than that .) . (不规范用法)

That's all the colder it becomes (= It can't be colder .) . (不规范用法)

He is younger than I by four years .

This road is longer by fifty miles than that .

(比较 : His salary has increased by 20 dollars .)

最高级也可由一个表示程度或方式的副词或副词短语修饰 :

It is far (or much , a great deal , a good deal , far and away , by long chalks , out of sight , out and out , easily , naturally , incomparably) the best (or the most lucky) choice .

He is nearly (or almost , about , not quite) the cleverest man I know .

423 原级的形容词也可藉助其他词 , 表示某人或某物 1) “ 同样地 ” , 2) “ 更..... ” 或 3) “ 最..... ” :

1) We are equally poor . (= I am as poor as he .)

2) He is not so poor as I . (= I am poorer than he .)

3) Nobody is so poor as I . (= I am the poorest of all .)

比较级的形容词也可表示 1) “ 同样..... ” 或 2) “ 最..... ” :

1) She is no younger than (as old as) her husband .

2) He is older than anyone else (= the oldest) in the army .

最高级形容词也可表示原级的意思 :

He is none of the youngest (= old) .

. 同等程度表达法

424 同等程度（即“同样地……”）主要由“as+原级+as”表示。

第1个as为副词，意思和so差不多，表示“那样地”；第2个as起关系代词的作用1），或是用作连词2），3）：

1) He has as much money as he wants. (as引起的从句修饰名词money)

You can marry as good a wife as you like.

He accepted as many people as applied.

2) The king is as cruel as the queen is kind. (as引起的从句修饰副词as)

My house is as far from the school as yours is far from the church.

3) He speaks English as fluently as you speak Japanese. (as引起的从句修饰副词as)

Europeans eat bread as naturally as Asians eat rice.

They want war as eagerly as we want peace.

425 在as从句中，用于比较的词必须说出，与主句中的词重复的部分通常省略掉：

Mary is as tall as Lilian (is tall). (主句的主语 Mary 和从句的主语 Lilian 相比)

He is as patient as an ox (is patient).

He speaks German as fluently as any German (speaks it).

Rice is as important a food as wheat (is important).

I can help him as much as I should (help him). (助动词和助动词相比)

I do help him as much as I can.

Your idea is as fine as (it) can be (fine).

He writes English as easily as (he) reads it. (主要动词和主要动词比)

He works as happily as (he) plays (happily).

He is as silly as he looks (silly). (系动词和系动词相比)

He remains as much a playboy as he was (a playboy).

He speaks German as fluently as (he speaks) Japanese. (动词宾语和动词宾语相比)

He handles great things as easily as (he handles) small ones.

He is as brave as (he is) wise. (补语与补语相比)

He is as much a knave as (he is) a fool.

He is as happy now as (he was happy) before. (副词与副词相比)

He is as happy in this miserable condition as (he was happy) in his prosperous days. (副词短语和副词短语相比)

He looks after the puppies as carefully as (he looks) after his children. (介词短语与介词短语相比)

He is now as happy as (he was happy) when he just got married. (副词与副词状语相比)

It is as cold here as (it is) in Canada. (副词与副词短语相比。)

I will go as soon as (it is) possible. (as 从句无词相比)

He is as happy (now) as before. (有时主句中的明显部分也可以省略, 如 now。)

426 在意思清楚的情况下甚至整个 as 引出的从句都可省略:

He speaks English as fluently (as John) .

This might be as easy (as that) .

I could do as much (as he does) .

427 “助动词+主语”结构:

He can speak English as fluently as can anyone else. (当 as 从句中的谓语省略, 而两部分中的主语相比时, as 从句中的助动词可放在主语前面。)

John studies as patiently as does any other student in class .

428 “as+形容词+as+名词”结构

许多带 as...as 的说法已成为成语:

The night was as black as jet . He is as bold as a lion .

Proverbs are as good as gold .

She was as happy as a rose - tree in sunshine .

John is as deaf as a post .

有些带 as...as 的说法表示较高或极大程度:

The room is as clean as clean can be (=extremely clean) . This TV is as good as anything (or as any , as ever was seen , as you please , as you could wish) .

He is as clever as the devil (or as ever breathed , as possible) . 第一个 as 有时可以省略:

He is bold as a lion .

His friend , poor as a church mouse , sometimes goes hungry . 在把两个地方、时间和环境进行比较时, 第一个 as 可以省略: He can be (as) happy in the country as in the city . He is (as) poor as before .

He remains (as) lonesome with his wealth as without it .

429 As much as 及 not so much as 结构:

It is as much your fault as your wife's . (It is hers and yours , too .)

He is as much a cheat as a doctor . (He is both .)

He is not so much a doctor as a cheat . (He is more a cheat than a doctor .)

Politicians do not so much better the world as worsen it . He has as much as a hundred million dollars .

The building is as much as 300 feet high .

I have not so much as (=not even) a dollar .

He took it without so much as saying "Thank you" .

He would not so much as look at her .

Who would so much as look at her ?

It is as much as (=equal to) robbery .

I think (or guess , say , fear) as much (=so) .

430 As good as 结构 :

He is as good as (=virtually) dead .

I have as good as promise to promote him .

431 Might as well...as 结构 :

You might as well throw your money into the sea as lend it to a gambler . (Lending him money is like throwing it into the sea .)

She might as well love a post as love him . (He doesn't respond to her love .)

You might as well teach a bull to climb a tree as teach this un - ruly boy to behave

432 除了 as...as 结构 , 相同等级还可有其他一些表达方式。下面六句意思相仿 , 注意 younger 及 less 也可用来表示相似等级 :

John is as old as Richard .

John is no younger than Richard .

John is not any younger than Richard .

John is no less old than Richard .

John is not less old than Richard .

John and Richard are equally old .

433 No more than 及 Not any more than 结构 :

He knows no more mechanics than his grandmother (does) .

(=He knows as little mechanics as his grandmother .)

He does not know mechanics any more than his grandmoth - er .

A bat is no more a bird than a whale (is a bird) . (=A bat is not a bird , just as a whale is not a bird .)

A bat is not a bird any more than a whale .

Man can live no more in the water than fishes can live in the air .

Man cannot live in the water any more than fishes can live in the air .

Man cannot live in the water , nor can fishes live in the air .

He has no more than (=only) six dollars .

No more than ten students arrived .

424 No less than 结构 :

He knows no less mechanics than any engineer (does) . (= He knows as much mechanics as any engineer .)

A poor man is no less a citizen than a rich man . (=A poor man is as much a citizen as a rich man .)

You can speak to your boss no less than (= as much as) he can speak to you . (Both can .)

He has no less than (=as much as) six million dollars .

No less than (=As many as) a thousand people came .

He has not less than (=as much as) six million dollars .

It means no less than (= exactly) an insult . (名词)

We hope for nothing less than (=only) peace .

We hope for nothing more nor less than peace . (比上句意思更强些)

It is nothing more nor less than (=utterly) ridiculous ! (形容词)

He has six million dollars , no less (表示惊异) !

What are you studying ? “ Philosophy , no less (表示自豪) ! ”

435 No fewer than 结构 :

He has no fewer than (=as many as) five wives .

No fewer than a hundred men were wounded .

436 有时 to 可用来代替 as 或 than , 特别是在 equal , similar , e -
quivalent , proportional , comparable 等形容词后 :

This is similar (or equivalent) to that .

The payment is proportional to the work done .

The Persian poet Omar Khayyam is comparable to the Chinese poet
Li Bai .

· 较高程度表达法

437 对两个（或两组）人或东西加以比较，说明某一个特点比较高，主要用比较级表示。比较级原则上要和一个由 than 引出的从句一起用：

He speaks English better than I speak Chinese .

He loved his dogs more than you love your children .

438 和 as 引出的从句一样，than 引出的从句中，与前面重复的词通常省略，而只把相比部分说出（参阅 425 节）：

John can understand Chinese better than Richard (can understand Chinese) . (主句中的主语和从句中的主语相比)

John should understand Chinese better than he does (understand Chinese) . (助动词 should 和助动词 does 相比)

John can understand Chinese better than (John can) write (Chinese) . (主要动词和主要动词相比)

One had better lend than borrow .

I would rather die than injure a friend .

He would sooner play than work .

A friend is easier lost than found .

Experience is better bought than taught .

John can understand Chinese better than (John can understand) Japanese . (动词宾语和动词宾语相比)

He preferred to keep silent than (=liked to keep silent better than) to talk too much . (谓语动词后的不定式和另一不定式相比)

He came more to see her than (he came to) borrow any books .

John can understand Chinese better now than (John could understand Chinese) last year . (副词与副词短语相比)

Flies are easier caught with honey than (flies are caught) with vinegar . (副词短语与副词短语相比)

John is more (a) fool than (he is) (a) knave . (补语与补语相比)

It is more a lie than the truth .

John is more honest than (he is) silly .

He is more brave than wise .

He is more frightened than hurt .

439 如果意思明显，整个 than 引起的从句都可省略：

You should have come earlier (than you did) .

An honest man is always more successful (than a dishonest man) .

440 “助动词+主语”结构：

John can speak Chinese better than can Richard .

He works harder than does anyone else in this village .

He is a German as thoroughly as are you .

(可参阅第 427 节)

441 “比较级+名词+关系代词型的 than”结构：

He has a better car than (=than the car which) he had be

- fore . (than 在这里起关系代词的作用)

He has now better cars than (=than those that) belonged to him before .

He wants a more beautiful wife than (=than the wife whom) he married .

442 Than=Than what 的情况 :

She is older than (=than what) is supposed .

The situation is more serious than is expected .

He is more cunning than we believe (=than what we believe) .

He works harder than I expect .

443 Than 引出的从句省略的情况 :

Be more careful (than you were) .

I must work harder (than I did) .

The situation has become more serious .

名词前的比较级通常不需要 than 引出的从句 :

The bigger students sometimes bullied the smaller ones .

444 主体词 (即形容词后的名词) (如果读者清楚) 可以省略或用 one 或 ones 代替 :

The bigger boys stood and the smaller (boys) were seated .

The more intelligent students are fewer than the less intelligent (students) .

The more fortunate (people) should help the less fortunate (people) .

The stronger (people) oppress the weaker (people) .

The larger apples he gave to John , and the smaller ones he gave to Mary .

He sleeps in a larger room , his sister in a smaller one .

445 “ 越来越..... ” 可以用下面方式表示 :

The situation grew worse and worse .

The situation grew ever worse and worse (or worse and ever worse) .

The situation grew ever (or steadily) worse .

The situation grew worse every day (or each day , day by day , daily) .

The situation got worse constantly (or all the time) .

He ran faster each minute .

It rose higher and yet (or still) higher .

His speech became (ever) more and more eloquent .

She looks more and more beautiful every year .

She looks more beautiful and more intelligent . (代替 more and more beautiful and more and more intelligent)

She looks less and less beautiful (越来越不美) .

He became strong and stronger . (书面语)

His reputation sank low and lower .

My heart was beating quick and quicker .

It moved slowly and yet more slowly .

He drew near her , and more near .

Our hope grew faint and more faint .

She pressed closer and more near .

446 “比较级+ than+ can”结构：

He spent more money than he could earn . (=He spent much , but could not earn so much .)

She is prettier than I can imagine , than I could dream of , than I can tell .

He is more honest than (what) can be expected , than (what) I can expect .

He ate more than (what) was good for him . He meant more than (what) was said .

It is more than I can understand , than I can bear . (=I can - not understand it , cannot bear it .)

447 “more than+形容词 (或动词) ”结构：

He is more than honest (=extremely honest ; not only honest , but more than this) , more than pleased .

I am more than obliged to you .

He would more than (=would do more than) comfort you , or give you advice .

448 “否定词... , much (or still , even) less”结构，表示“更不用说.....”：

I do not accuse him of injustice , much less (do I accuse him) of cruelty . (much less 后跟一介词短语)

She is not interested in books , much less in mathematics .

He never respects his teachers , still less (does he respect) his friends . (still less 后跟一个宾语)

I never criticize anybody , even less my brothers .

John never studied , even less did Mary . (even less 后跟助动词及主语)

I cannot go , still less can you .

449 “all (or none) the+比较级+for (或 as , because , with) ”结构，表示“因.....反而更.....”：

Mary looks (all) the more beautiful for her simple dress . (=Mary looks (much) more beautiful just because she wears her simple dress .)

Mary looks none the less beautiful for her simple dress . (= Mary still looks beautiful , though she wears her simple dress .)

I love Lilian (all) the more deeply because she is quiet .

I hate Mary none the less (=I do not hate her the less) bitterly because she is beautiful .

He is the happier with his official position lost . (更快乐)

He is none the less happy with his official position lost . (仍然快乐)

He is very sad , and the more so (= and the sadder) because it is raining outside .

He is not happy and the less so (=and the less happy) because it is raining outside .

For this reason , he feels the happier .

As he is her only son , he must be the more obedient .

The durian has a bad smell , but I like it none the less (for its bad smell) . (表示原因的词 , 如果意思明显 , 可以省略。)

The book has many pictures in it . It should be the more interesting (for so many pictures) .

He chased the chicken , but it ran all the faster (because he chased it) .

The sky is cloudy and therefore the more depressing .

His death would make his family the poorer .

To chase it will frighten it the more .

450 “ the+比较级 , the+比较级 ” 结构 , 表示 “ 越是.....越是 ” :

The (在这里既作副词又作连词) larger the house is , the (作副词) more expensive it is . (房子越大越贵。)

The hotter the weather is , the more tired we feel .

The longer you know a person , the better you understand him .

The wealthier he became , the less satisfied he felt .

The more he became wealthy , the less he felt satisfied .

451 “ (主语+动词) + the+比较级 ” 结构中的主语及动词有时可省略 :

The sooner the better . (主语及动词省略)

The more the merrier .

More haste , less speed . (连 the 也省略掉)

452 “ no sooner had...than ” 表示 “ 一.....就..... ” :

No sooner had he left than it rained . (=As soon as he left , it rained .)

No sooner had she got married than she gave birth to a baby .

It was no sooner said than done . (=It was done as soon as it was said .)

453 某个品质的较高程度可有几种表示方法。下面 7 个句子意思基本上相同 , 注意 3—6 句中的 pretty 这样的原级可用来表示较高程度 :

Mary is prettier than Lilian .

Mary is the prettier of the two (=prettier than the other) .

(口语中也可说 the prettiest of the two=much prettier than the other . Who's prettiest , Mary or Lilian ?)

By the side of Lilian , Mary is pretty .

Mary is pretty in comparison (or as compared) with Lilian .

Lilian is not (quite , nearly , half) so pretty as Mary .

Lilian is not as pretty as Mary .

Lilian is less pretty (不是 prettier) than Mary .

. 最高等级表达法

A . 最高级形容词

454 在 3 个或更多人或东西中, 某种品质的最高程度通常都以最高级表示, 可用在名词前面作为限制性形容词, 或用在其他位置, 作为非限制性形容词。

1 . 限制性用法

455 在最高级用在名词前面时, 通常前面要加 the :

The highest mountain is in China .

He has the prettiest house in this village .

The m^{ost} (重读) exquisite watch comes from Switzerland .

The m^{ost} (重读) intelligent student in this class comes from the countryside .

456 如果前面不加 the, most 有特殊意思, 变作修饰名词的形容词, 表示“次数”, 而不是像上面例句中那样作修饰形容词的副词, 表示“最”:

M^{ost} exquisite watches (复数) come from Swetzerland .

M^{ost} intelligent students in this class come from the countryside .

457 如果前面加 a, most 表示“非常”, “极端”, “特别”等意思。这种表示极大程度, 而不进行“比较”的最高级, 称为绝对最高级 (Absolute Superlative), 和它相对, 表示最高程度并进行“比较”的称为相对最高级 (Relative Superlative) :

He is a most int^{el}ligent student .

He has a most ^{ex}quisite watch .

It is a most k^{ind} (不用 kindest) offer .

He leads a most h^{app}y (不用 happiest) life .

458 如果前面不加 a, 后面跟有一个复数名词或不可数名词, most (不重读) 仍然表示“非常”:

They are most int^{el}ligent students .

He has most ^{ex}quisite watches .

He eats most nutritious food .

Most difficult work has been assigned to me .

459 在复数名词及不可数名词前, -est 也和 most 一样, 可表示“非常”, “极为”这类意思:

It has existed since ^{ear}liest (=very early) (重读并拉长) days . (复数可数名词)

H^e received my gift with w^{ar}mest thanks .

He is a man of gr^{eat}est ability (不可数名词) .

I owe you d^{ee}pest gratitude .

There was cl^{ose}st intimacy between them .

460 甚至在加 the 时, 最高级有时也可表示“非常”, “极为”这类意思:

He spoke to me in the kindest (=very kind) terms .

He has the w^{or}st (=extremely bad) opinion about me .

He made the r^udest remark before her .

461 在指示性形容词后，最高级也可以是绝对的（即表示“非常”，“极为”等意思）：

His dearest son is always at hand .

Every smallest trouble will give her a big headache .

Some largest streets are being built .

No faintest hope is in sight .

462 用在名词前面，具有限制作用的相对最高级，不仅前面要加 the，而且常常跟有一个表示比较的范围的东西，它可以是单词 1），短语 2），从句 3）或是一个省略的成分 4）（这时比较的范围很明显）。跟有这类东西的最高级前必须加 the：

1) It is the best book imaginable (or available, conceivable, possible, known) . (形容词) (这时也可放在最高级及名词之间，如 best imaginable book .)

He is the most vicious villain alive (or living) .

2) It's the largest river in the world . (介词短语)

I spoke to the oldest member among us (or of all) .

That is the best game at the tea party .

I like to read Dickens, the greatest English novelist in the 19th century .

It may be the largest bridge ever built by man . (分词)

It is the largest bridge ever crossing the river .

John will be our youngest son to be taken to Paris . (不定式)

Shakespeare will be the most interesting subject for students to study .

3) I am driving the best car that I can get (or that man can make) . (从句)

He is the most honest man I ever know (or you have ever seen, the earth ever produced, there is) .

He is one of the greatest poets that have ever been born .

He is the only one of the greatest poets, that has written on this subject .

4) This is the best dictionary (that I know) . (表示相比范围的部分省略掉)

Where is the nearest post office (from here) ?

This largest street (in this city) was built years ago .

Let me tell you the happiest news (that we can get) .

463 最高级后面的名词（主体词）有时可省略，这时最高级前的 the 必须保留。

He read the book from the first page to the last (page) .

The eldest son is twenty, and the youngest (son) is ten .

464 后面跟有 of 引出的短语中包含有同一名词时，前面名词必须省略：

He is the best (member) of all members .

在用“最高级+but one”时，后面的名词必须省略，以避免重复：

He is the best student but one (student) . (=He is the second best student .)

465 在 “ the+最高级+of+复数名词 ” 这种结构中，最高级可以是绝对的，也可以是相对的：

She is the wisest (woman) of women (=an extremely wise woman) . (绝对)

She is the wisest (woman) of the women (=a woman wiser than the others) . (相对)

He lives in the quietest (place) of places (=an extremely quiet place) . (绝对)

He lives in the quietest (place) of the places (=a place quieter than the others) . (相对)

He usually eats at the Diamond , the most popular of restaurants , the largest of any restaurant .

It is the dirtiest of money .

He writes the most beautiful of poetry , the most original of novels .

He wishes me the best of health .

He is in the best of company .

I did it with the greatest of care .

466 在上面这类结构中，间或在 of 后重复前面形容词（用原级），表示强调：

He wrote her the tenderest of tender letters .

This is the strangest of strange cities .

He is the poorest of the poor , the most humble of the humble . He is the mightiest of the mighty , the wickedest of the wicked .

467 这类 “ of + the+最高级 ” 结构也可用作补语，表示 “ 非常 ” ， “ 极为 ” 等意思：

His dress is of the (very poor) . (绝对)

The street is of the (=extremely narrow) .

His reign is of the most powerful .

The wound is of the slightest .

468 最高级后的 people 常可省略，表示某类的人：

The most fortunate (people) never care about the most unfortunate (people) .

The strongest oppress the weakest .

The highest and the lowest have all been invited .

469 在个别词组中最高级的主体词常常省略：

We sell only the best (goods) .

The worst (luck) always comes to the poorest .

470 如果主体词为可数名词，也可用 one 或 ones 代替：

He keeps the largest fishes and throw away the smallest ones All his children go to school except the smallest one (=child) .

471 相对最高级形容词常可和介词构成一个短语，不仅主体词不出现，

连 the 有时也不出现：

At first , he did not believe me , but at last he regretted .

He has at least a million dollars , but spends at most twenty dollars a day .

He is at(the)worst a minister ,but at best a secondrate father .

I told him to return next Sunday at (the) latest , but he said he would return next month at (the) earliest .

472 最高级有时表示某人或某物处于“最……”状态，这时可说是一种自我比较。常见的这类用法是“及物动词+物主代词+最高级+(被省略的宾语)+副词短语(从句)”：

She sang her sweetest (song) last night . (=She sang better last night than she sang at any other time .)

She smiled her pleasantest when she heard the good news .

The noise reached its loudest (now) . (如果意思明显，副词或副词短语也可省略。)

The wind blew its fiercest(gale) in the eastern provinces . (= The wind blew more fiercely in the eastern provinces than it blew in any other place .)

I studied the hardest while I was at my country house .

Suddenly questioned , I stared my (very) hardest .

Having heard my remark , she laughed her heartiest .

注：在这种句子中很少用 most 构成最高级。

473 这种自我比较也常见于“系动词+at+物主代词+最高级+副词短语或从句”这类句子中：

She is at her most sorrowful today .

He is at his (very) happiest when he sees her .

John was at his most enthusiastic when he was praised . This artist is at his worst at the party .

Shakespeare is at his greatest in Hamlet .

如果意思明显，状语可以省略：

The hurricane is at its (or the) fiercest .

除了系动词，偶尔还可和其他动词一起用：

The moon shone at its brightest .

474 在这类结构中，主体词有时也可出现：

My fortunes are at their lowest ebb .

The village is now at its (or the) prettiest moment .

The party was at its height . (有最高级意义的名词)

The tide is at its full .

His career was then at its apex (or climax) .

I saw Mary at her gayest .

At his most angry , John will curse .

2. 非限制性用法

475 除了用在名词前面，最高级还可用在其他位置。如果前面有 the，则是相对最高级，否则就是相对最高级或绝对最高级：

John is the most intelligent(one) . (=John is more intelligent than the others .) (相对)

John is most intelligent . (=John is more intelligent than the others , or , John is very intelligent .) (相对或绝对) You are most kind . (绝对)

Russian is (the) most difficult .

John is (the) happiest .

This method seems (the) easiest and simplest .

First impressions are (the) deepest .

I find John(the)most intelligent Mary left John(the)happiest .

I tried to make the method (the) easiest and simplest . (The) Most intelligent , John passed the examination with honours .

(The) Easiest and simplest , this method will help increase the production of food .

476 最高级若跟有表示比较范围的成分 , 前面必须加 the :

This method seems the easiest in this area .

This river is the largest of all .

This girl was the most beautiful in her colleg days . This is the best I can do .

My wife is the most stubborn that a husband has ever handled .

477 非限制性最高级也可用于自我比较 :

She looked prettiest that evening (=prettier than evening than herself at any other time) .

(但 She looked the prettiest that evening=She looked prettier than any other girl that evening .)

Oysters are fattest in winter .

The sun is most beautiful at dawn .

The pagoda looks most impressive against the sun .

The river is deepest here .

间或也需加 the , 以避免把 most 理解为 “ 非常 ” :

This player is the most successful in the tragedy . I was the most proud when she agreed to marry me .

3 . 结束语

478 最高程度可有几种表示方法。下面 5 个句子意思几乎相同 :

John is the most intelligent of(or among)all the students .John is more intelligent than all the other students , (He's one of them .)

John is more intelligent than all the students . (He's not one of them .)

No (other) student is so intelligent as John .

John is as intelligent as any student .

注 : more intelligent 这样的比较级和 as (so) intelligent 这样的原级也可用来表示最高程度。

479 下面四句话意思基本上相同 :

Richard is one of the best students .

Richard is among (or one of) the best students .

Richard and Mary are among (不是 one of) the best students . (among 这个词可用在复数主语后面 , one of 却不能。)

Richard is better than most students .

Very few students are so good as Richard .

480 下面句子意思都一样 :

This is the longest river but one in this country .

This is the second longest river in this country .

This is the next longest river in this country .

This is the next to the longest river in this country .

B . 最高级副词

481 在下面句子中最高级都是相对的：

1) He loves her the most tenderly .

John did it the most skillfully .

She sang the most beautifully .

2) John ran the fastest and reached the goal the soonest . John was born the first .

She shouted the loudest , so I hated her the most . He did it the quickest , so I liked him the best . I like it the least .

Respect everybody—most of all your parents .

Do not cheat anybody—least of all your parents . I never smoke—least of all before women .

在上面句子中 the 可以省略。如果那样，第一类句子中的带 most 的最高级可以是相对的，也可以是绝对的。

第九单元 数词及量词

· 概说

482 量词 (Quantitatives) 和不可数名词一起用, 如 much (milk), little (courage); 数词 (Numericals) 和可数名词一起用, 如 many (houses), five (students)。在 more water 和 lots of danger 中, more 和 lots of 分别为量词, 而在 more people 和 lots of people 中, more 和 lots of 都是数词。量词、数词可以是一个词, 如 much, most, numerous, 也可以是一组词, 如 a great many, a lot of, a great number of, five bags of, ten pounds of, 这类词组大多数以 of 结尾, 可以用作形容词, 把 of 省略掉时可用作名词。

483 量词和数词都可以用作 1) 限制形容词, 2) 作补语用形容词, 3) 代词, 4) 名词, 量词甚至还可用作 5) 副词:

1) He has many friends. (在名词前作限制形容词)

Does he drink much water every day?

2) His friends are many. (在系动词后作补语形容词)

I find his demand too much for her. (在宾补动词后作宾语补语形容词)

3) I know few people, but he knows many. (代词 many=形容词 many+被省略的名词 people)

The work has been started, and much has been done. (代词 much=形容词 much+被省略的名词 work)

4) Many read for pleasure. (名词 many 不代表前面提的任何词, 而仅仅指人。只有数词可以这样用。)

Few are free from faults.

Much can be done. (名词 much 不代表前面提的任何词, 只能指读者很容易猜到的东西。只有量词可以这样用。)

I know little of life.

5) You should sleep more. (副词, 修饰动词)

It is more difficult. (修饰形容词)

He works less diligently than you. (修饰另一副词)

He is more in love with her than he seems. (修饰介词短语)
(只有量词可用作副词, 数词不能。)

484 当量词和数词用作代词和名词时, 它们仍具有形容词的特点, 前面可以有一个副词 (多为程度副词) 修饰它们:

Very few can understand this poem.

Not much has been said.

He is not satisfied with so little.

Only three have come.

I say as much.

He knows but little.

He wants much more.

I want a little less.

John can supply us with a great deal more.

485 Few (或 some, many, several, most) of the cities 和 few (或

some 等) cities 是不同的。前者表示整个数目中的一部分,而后者没有这种意义。同样, little (或 much, some, most) of the rice 和 little (或 much 等) rice 也是不同的。前者表示整个数量中的一部分。不过 little of danger, more of courage, the least of work 和 little danger, more courage, the least work 却有相同意思。抽象概念无法分成若干部分,加上 of 只是出于音韵上的考虑。

486 “be+量词+of”可表示各种程度的肯定与否定:

He is much of a scholar. (=He is quite a scholar.)

He is little (or nothing) of a doctor. (=He is hardly or not a doctor.)

John was a little of a liar. (=John was rather a liar.)

John was more of a businessman than a painter. (=He was rather a businessman than a painter.)

It is less of a school than a prison. (=It is rather a prison than a school.)

It is not so much a school as a prison. (意思与上句相同)

It is not enough of a good machine.

It is too much of a good thing.

(比较: You cannot have too much of a good thing.)

487 “see+量词+of”表示看见某人的频率:

I saw much of him. (=I often saw him.)

I saw little of him. (=I seldom saw him.)

I have seen much less of him this year.

Did you see a great deal of him?

I saw quite a lot of Mary.

I saw nothing of him.

I have seen enough of her.

This was the last I saw of him.

I have come to see the last of you.

It was the first I ever saw of Mary.

488 数词可以表示不定数目,如 many, few, a large number of;也可表示固定数目,如 seven, ten thousand and one, two thirds. 量词基本上表示不定数量,如 much, a large quantity of, a great deal of. 它们若含有数词,也可表示固定数量,如 five pounds of, six boxes of, two spoonfuls of. 下面我们将首先讨论不定数词和量词,然后讨论固定数词与量词。

. 不定数词和量词

A . Many

489 Many (= a large number of) 最常用在 1) 否定词 , 2) so , 3) too , 4) as 和 5) how 后面 :

1) He does not know many businessmen .

He has never been in many places .

2) He knows so many people .

3) You have made too many mistakes .

4) You can buy as many books as you like .

5) How many stars can you see ?

还可用在 6) 问句 , 7) whether 或 if 引出从句中 :

6) Has he many relatives ?

Does he meet many people ?

7) I doubt (wonder) whether he has many friends .

I doubt if he knows many people .

此外还用来 8) 修饰主语或 9) 充任主语 :

8) Many students come here during the vacation .

9) Many come here during the vacation .

也可用在 10) 副词短语 (状语) 中 :

10) He has done it for many years and in many ways .

在其他情况下通常要用

11) numerous , a great many , a large number of , lots of , a lot of 或 plenty of 代替 many :

11) He reads a lot of books , a whole lot of (more emphatic) newspapers .

He has a great many dogs and a good many cats .

John knows plenty of people and any number of VIPs .

不过在书面语中 , 12) many 可以自由使用 :

12) He reads many books . (书面语)

John knows many people . (书面语)

注 : much 的使用方法与 many 相近 , 只是意义不同。

490 Many 可用作限制形容词 , 表示 “ 许多 ” :

He has made five mistakes in as many (= five) sentences .

She has waited for him three days . They seem to be as many (= three) years .

There are as many minds as there are men .

The children on that tree are like so many (= like the same number of) monkeys .

He considered his enemies as so many friends .

He is always telling you so many (= such and such a number of) sons of his spend so many dollars a year .

You must remember so many gallons of water should be used with so many pounds of sugar .

A great many (= Very many) families in this city come from the

north .

He has waited many a day (=many days) . (书面语)

Many and many a child was (= Many , many children were) killed during the war .

也可用作补语 :

His friends are not many . (这样用时较少)

They are too many to enumerate .

John is one too many (=not needed) .

He is one too many (=or much) for (=stronger , cleverer than) me .

用作代词或名词 :

He bought apples yesterday and found so many rotten .

Oranges are sold at so many (= a certain number) for a dollar .

We have two forks too many .

You have given me three too many .

We shall need as many again (= as many more , twice as many) .

Should the many (=the multitude , the masses) work for the few ?

B . Few

491 Few 可用作限制形容词，表示“很少”：

He has very few (=not many , a small number of) friends .

Few , if any (=almost no) , students passed .

There are few or no honest men .

Are there many people in this village ? No , there are few (= or but[a]few , only few , precious few) (people) .

Are there any people ? Yes , there are a few (people) .

也可用作补语：

His friends are very few . (这样用时很少)

These opportunities are few and far between (=very rare) .

These trees were few and far between .

还可用作代词或名词：

Many students took the exam , but few passed .

Few or none of them are willing to help anyone .

This author has few readers , but is satisfied with the few (= these few readers) .

The judgement of the few (=the minority) is not always wrong .

Only the fortunate few (people) can visit this restaurant .

Few of these paintings are worth more than ten dollars .

C . A few

492 A few 可用作限制形容词，表示“几个”，“少数”：

Are there any streets in this village? No, there are none (=no streets), but there are a few paths.

Are there any streets in that village? Yes, there are a few (or some few) streets, but there are very few good ones.

A good few (=or Quite a few, Not a few, No few) adventurers died in adventure. (=A fair number of adventurers...)

“I like to read those few books.” “Which few books?”

“My father's few novels.”

There are only a few gangsters in this city, but the few gangsters have caused plenty of trouble.

The guns roared every few (=every several) minutes.

D . Much

493 Much 只能用来修饰不可数名词，表示“很多”，而 many 用来修饰可数名词，但两者的用法是差不多的（参阅 489 节）。much 常可用在 1) 否定句，2) so，3) too，4) as 和 5) how 后；还可用在 6) 问句，7) whether 和 if 引出的从句中，还可用来 8) 修饰主语，或 9) 充当主语，也可用在 10) 副词短语中。在其他情况下通常被 11) plenty of，a lot of 等代替，但在书面语中 12) 可自由使用。

- 1) He does not drink much coffee .
He never did much work .
- 2) He ate so much food .
- 3) You drink too much wine .
- 4) You can spend as much money as you may .
- 5) How much benefit can we get ?
- 6) Does he have much time ?
- 7) I doubt whether he has much time .
- 8) Much money and time has been spent .
- 9) Much has been spent .
- 10) This problem must be handled with much courage .
- 11) He has eaten plenty of bread .
- 12) We use much water to clean the house . (书面语)

494 Much 可用作限制形容词：

He would tell you again and again that he could earn so much
(= a certain amount of) money a month .

He looked on that liquor as so much poison .

To him , kindness toward his enemies is so much cruelty toward
his own friends .

Much good may it do you ! (放在句首有讥讽意味)

Much courage you have ! (= You are a coward !)

495 Much 可用作补语：

His desire is not much .

He is too much for (= stronger , cleverer than) me .

This book is too much for (= too difficult for) anyone .

496 Much 还可用作代词或名词：

Much of the sugar was spoiled .

How much is this a pound ? (= What is the price of this for each
pound ?)

The child drank water and much has been spilled .

I did not see much of her . (= I seldom saw her .)

He eats much , drinks much and earns much , too .

This much is enough . Cut that much off .

Too much is as bad as none at all .

The plan did not amount (or come) to much (= mean or produce
anything good) .

This is worth much (=valuable) .

There is much (= something good or uncommon) in it (or him) .

He made much of (= considered as important) this incident .

Don't make too much of trifles .

He thought much of (= esteemed) your friendship .

He thought too much of himself .

I can pay as much as (=as high a price as) a hundred pounds for it .

He drank as much as (= as much amount as) five bottles .

The building is as much as (= even) a hundred stories high . “ Don't cry , ” said I . It was as much as I could do to comfort her . (=I did all I could to comfort her .)

It was as much as she could do not to cry .

He suddenly became silent , which was as much as to say (= which seemed to say) , “ You can leave me now . ”

This is as much as saying that (=This is equal to saying that) he has not done his duty .

There was not so much as (= not even) a chair to sit on .

He never paid so much as a cent .

He left without so much as saying good - bye .

He has studied four years without so much as knowing his teachers' names .

I think (or believe , guess , expect , fear , say) as much (=so) .

I told her that much (=so) .

This much is certain , that he has done his best . (I am very certain of this , though not of the rest .)

So much for (= That is all that can be said or done about) this man (or the journey , his plan) .

Much he knows about sports ! (放在句首有讥讽味道)

497 Much 可用作副词 , 表示 “ 很多 ” , 在修饰动词时 , 前面常加 very , too , so , as 这类副词 :

He sleeps very much , and works very much .

You praise (or help , criticize , rely on) him too much .

I admire (or regret , prefer , like , enjoy , miss) it very much .
(这里可译为 “ 非常 ”)

He is so much astonished (or shocked , amused , charmed) .

(much 这里修饰过去分词 , so much 可译为 “ 那样 ” 。)

(但 : The story is very astonishing , very amusing , very charming .)

I love her as much as that (= so much) and she owes me as much as that , but...

I would not so much as (= not even) give a cent to help him .

He did not so much as glance at her . (他连看都不看她一眼。)

He smiled to me as much as to say (= seeming to say) , “ You

are wonderful . ”

He likes nothing as much as playing mahjong . (= He likes it most .)

Much as he liked it (= Though he liked it very much) , he said nothing .

Much as he loved her , he failed to do anything for her .

They are much taller than we . (修饰比较级的形容词)

This book is much more difficult .

This house is much the best of all . (修饰最高级的形容词)

She is much the most beautiful among them .

They are much afraid (or alone , alike , alive) . (修饰带有前缀 a- 的作补语的形容词)

He walks much faster than anyone else . (修饰比较级的副词)

Thirty men can build this large bridge in a hundred days , much more fifty men (主语相比) .

(= If thirty men can build this large bridge in a hundred days , fifty men can build it much more easily .)

Thirty men...days , much more repair (动词相比) it . (= If thirty men... days , they can repair it much more easily .)

Thirty men...days , much more a smaller one . (宾语相比)

(= If thirty men...days , they can build a smaller one much more easily .)

Thirty men...days , much more in two hundred days . (状语相比)
(= If thirty men... days , they can build it much more easily in two hundred days .)

Thirty men can NOT complete such a bridge in a hundred days , much less ten men , much less complete two , much less a larger bridge , and in only fifty days .

It is difficult for him to understand arithmetic , much more algebra . (more = more difficult)

It is NOT easy for him to understand arithmetic , much less algebra . (less = less easy)

Thirty men were unable to move the rock , much more (= more unable) ten men .

Thirty men were not able to move the rock , much less (= much less able) ten men .

They suddenly came , much to my surprise . (修饰介词短语)

They are much in love .

They talked much (= almost) in a similar way .

They are much (= almost) the same size .

He learns English much (= almost) as you do . (修饰介词)

He talks with his friends much as if he knew plenty .

注：在上述句子中副词 much 均不能由 very 代替；反之，very 修饰原级形容词及副词，也不能由 much 替换。

E . Little

498 Little 可用作限制形容词，修饰名词，表示“很少”：

The ship carried little (= not much , a small quantity or amount of) food and little water .

Little knowledge is dangerous .

He has but little (= very little) common sense .

There is but little hope .

I was in no little (=much) trouble .

There is little or no difference between them .

He has spent what little (=the little) money he had . (what little 后面必须跟一个形容词从句，如 he had .)

还可以作补语：

Little knowledge is not dangerous if one knows one's knowledge is very little .

Little as his success was , he was content . (as=though)

还可用作代词或名词：

Some have too much money , others have too little .

There is little to choose between them .

Little has changed since 1988 .

He does much but eats little .

He gave much but got little .

He has no confidence , and I have as little (=no confidence either) .

“He did not succeed . ” “I think (or believe , expect) as little (=not) . ”

With the little he had , he became prosperous in a few years .

From the(or what) little I saw(or learned) , he seemed unhappy .

I will do what little I can .

We need but little here below .

He raised our salary little by little (=by degrees) .

He made little of (=neglected) all obstacles .

He thought little of (=neglected) anybody and anything .

He saw little of life .

We know little or nothing of the snowman .

还用作副词：

We met very little (=rarely) . (修饰动词)

The child slept very little (= only slightly) .

He knows life too (or so , very) little .

How little this child fears the storm !

It matters very little .

They little (=do not) understand (or suspect , imagine , know , realize , expect , dream of , comprehend) it . (书面语) (Little 可放在表示“理解”等的动词前面)

He little cares about (or Little does he care about) what people say .

He is little richer than (= almost as poor as) before . (修饰比较级)

He is little better than (=almost as bad as) a murderer .

John's escape is little short of (=almost) a miracle .

He won little less than (=almost as much as) a million dollars .

F. A little

499 A little 表示“有一点”(肯定),而 little 表示“很少”(否定)。A little 可用作限制形容词,修饰名词:

“Have you much food to spare?” “No, I have little (=not much).”

“Have you any food to spare?” “Yes, I have a little (=some little, some) food.”

John can't do the job, as he has little experience, but Richard can, as he has a little experience.

也可用作代词或名词:

We were offered tea, and we drank a little.

A little is better than nothing.

He knows a little of everything.

He ate a little of each dish, but the little satisfied him.

From what little (=the little) I saw, he seemed honest.

He has done not a little (=much) for the community.

He has seen not a little of (=much of) the world.

We started in (or after) a little (=after a short while).

还可用作副词:

He has helped me a little. (修饰动词)

My foot can now move a little after the sprain.

He has helped me not a little (=much).

Wait a little (or for a little) (= for a short while.)

He was a little astonished, and even a little shocked. (修饰分词)

He stood there, not a little charmed (=very much charmed) with the scenery.

He was a little nervous. (修饰形容词)

He is a little better today.

That is a little too small. (修饰副词)

He arrived just a little before noon. (修饰介词短语)

G . More

500 More 表示“更多的”，可以和各类名词一起使用：

We need more (= a greater number of) trucks and workers (比现有的更多一些，或比别人的更多一些。)。(修饰普通名词)

We must get more (= a greater quantity of) oil and coal . (修饰物质名词)

We must attack the problem with more (= a greater degree of) skill and courage . (修饰抽象名词)

More 可用作限制形容词，修饰名词：

Do you want any more coal ? (修饰不可数名词)

I want no more (or some more , a little more , much more , a great deal more) coal .

Do you want any more workers ? (修饰可数名词)

I want no more (or some more , a few more , many more , a great number more , thirty more) workers .

He earned more and more money and lost more and more friends .

也可用作补语：

His assistants are more than nine (=ten , eleven or more) .

It is more than I can tell (or imagine , describe) (=It is difficult for me to tell , imagine or describe) .

It is neither more nor less than (=exactly) a big lie .

He is no more (=has died) .

What is more (=Furthermore) , we must have good workers besides enough capital . 还可用作代词或名词：

He paid more or less than (=about) ten thousand dollars .

He paid ten thousand dollars , more or less (=or so) .

He spent neither more nor less than (=exactly) a thousand .

He has more than (=over) a million .

He has more than enough (=too much) .

He has no more than (=only) one wife .

还可用作副词，表示“更(多)”：

I must work more-and sleep more , too . (修饰动词)

Don't make the same mistakes any more . (= make the same mistake no more .)

Try it once (or twice , three times , much , a little) more .

He is more diligent than I . (修饰形容词)

He seems more dead than alive (= rather dead than alive) .

He is more frightened than hurt .

He is more in love than he seems . (修饰介词短语)

H . Less , Lesser

501 Less 表示“较少的”，lesser 表示“较小的”：

He drinks less (= a smaller quantity of) liquor , smokes fewer (或 less—口语体) (= a smaller number of) cigarettes , and spends less money . So he has less (= a smaller degree of) trouble than anyone else . (用在物质、普通、抽象名词前)

I chose the lesser (= smaller) evil of the two .

Less 可用作限制形容词，修饰名词：

You have done it with less effort than he .

I wish I could spend less money this year .

也可用作代词或名词：

I can't take less than this amount .

I can't take a penny less .

He has little less than (= nearly) a thousand acres of land .

He will return in no less than (= as much as) an hour .

还可用作副词：

This is less easy than (= not so easy as) that . (修饰形容词)

He studied less carefully than his classmates . (修饰副词)

I . Most

502 Most 可表示“最多的”，“大多数（部分）”，“非常”或“最”：

This city has the most (=the greatest number of) people in all the world. (修饰普通名词)

This area produces the most (=the greatest quantity of) iron in the world. (修饰物质名词)

He has the most (=the greatest degree or amount of) ability among us. (修饰抽象名词)

Most (=the greater part of) (不用 The most) countrywomen are in good health. (修饰可数名词)

Most of my time has been wasted. (和不可数名词一起用)

I am most (=very, extremely) grateful to you. (和形容词一起用)

She looked most pale last night (=more pale last night than at any other time).

She looked the most beautiful at the party (=more beautiful than the others at the party).

可以用作限制形容词，修饰名词：

He has the most patience of all.

Which of them committed the most mistakes?

He gets the lowest salary but has the most work to do.

I know most politicians in this country.

Most people in this city are busy.

也可用作代词或名词：

Of the three brothers, the youngest eats most.

I must make the most of (=use the best advantage 充分利用) the opportunity (or my time, my life, my small income, this hut).

He is at (the very) most (=not more than) fifty years old.

It is at most a small fault (=not a serious fault).

That is the most (=all) I can do.

Most (=The great part) of these students are poor in mathematics. (=These students are most of them (or mostly or for the most part) poor in mathematics.

It rains most of the time in this season.

还可用作副词：

Gambling pleases him most. (修饰动词)

He slept most last night.

Marriage has troubled him most.

It is a most easy (=a very easy) job. (修饰形容词) (绝对)

It is the easiest job (=an easier job than any others). (相对)

He is a most strict (=a very strict) teacher.

He is the strictest teacher (=a stricter teacher than any

others) .

It is most (=very) kind of him to do that . (绝对)

He is the kindest man I know . (相对) I shall most (=very)
certainly help you . (修饰副词)

Most probably , it will rain this evening .

J . Least

503 Least 表示“最少的”，“最无关紧要的”：

Of them all , he has the least (= the smallest quantity of) money , the least (= the smallest amount of) ambition , and the fewest (= the smallest number of) friends .

可用作限制形容词，修饰名词：

He has the least knowledge of chemistry in class .

The least (= Even the least) error would spoil our secret plan . He got mad at the least thing .

也可用作补语：

His salary is the least in our office .

也可用作代词或名词：

The least you can do is to say “ sorry ” to her . (You can do more than say “ sorry ” .)

He is , to say the least of it (= not to say much) , a good husband and father . (He may be more than that .)

He has at (the very) least ten brothers . (possibly more)
You can at least try selling something .

He is not in the least (= not a bit) injured .

It does not matter in the least . (一点都没关系。)

还可用作副词：

He works hardest but is paid least . (修饰动词)

He is the least intelligent of us . (修饰形容词)

They can do it , most of all (= especially) John (= and John can do it most of all) .

They cannot do it , least of all John . (least of all 总用在否定句后)

They will wear a necktie , most of all a red one (= and will wear a red one most of all) .

Few will wear a necktie , least of all a red one .

He does not deserve the prize , nor do you , least of all do I .

We must never quarrel any more , least of all in such a public place .

I will not say anything , least of all against anyone .

K . Enough

504 Enough 表示“足够的”：

We have capital enough (=as much as is necessary) , workers enough (=as many as are necessary) and equipment enough (=as adequate as is necessary) (or enough capital , enough workers and enough equipment) .

可用作限制形容词，修饰名词：

We have enough friends for a big dancing party .

He has enough strength for any competition .

A thousand dollars is a sum enough for your travelling to the north .

He has enough money and to spare(=more money than enough) . (It may be desirable .)

比较：He has too much money . (It is undesirable .)

I have not enough time to say goodbye to all my relatives and friends . I have not enough confidence to propose to my girlfriend .

We have not enough land to produce enough food for ourselves .

也可用作补语：

Fifty dollars is quite enough for me .

Talking is not enough .

All the world is not enough for him to conquer .

You are enough to (=might) make me mad .

The wind is enough to blow off big trees .

也可用作代词或名词：

He seems to have enough .

Enough is as good as a feast .

He has enough to eat and wear .

(I have had) Enough of your imprudence !

Enough ! (=Do it no more ! Stop !)

还可用作副词（通常放在所修饰词后面）：

He has not slept enough (=slept to a satisfactory degree) . (修饰动词)

I can never thank you enough .

The eggs have been cooked enough .

The house is old enough (=rather old) . (修饰形容词)

The accident is strange enough .

He is old enough to understand life .

He is fool (=foolish) enough to marry such an old woman .

He is man (=manly) enough to confess his fault .

He is hero (=heroic) enough to give up drinking .

He received from her a kind letter enough (=kind enough letter , letter kind enough) . She has slept long enough . (修饰副词)

I have told you plainly enough .

Oddly (or Strangely , Curiously) enough (=Strange to say) ,
he has recovered from AIDS .

He will fail , sure enough (=certainly) .

L . 短语

505 像 a number of , lots of 这样表示不定数量的短语 , 已在限定形容词那一节谈到过。如果把 of 去掉 , 它们都可用作代词或名词 :

“ Has he any friend ? ” “ He has a great number . ”

“ He has plenty of money ” . “ Yes , he has plenty . ”

“ We need plenty of rice , but we have only a small quantity . ”

“ Is there any milk ? ” “ There is quite a lot . ”

Patience ? We have a great amount .

I have eaten a good deal . I have had plenty .

He knows a lot .

有少数表示数量的短语甚至可用作副词 :

This road is a good deal longer than that .

A lot you care ! (= You don't care a bit !)

下面是一些包含否定短语的句子 :

Few or no plants grow in the desert .

She finds little or no difficulty in learning Spanish . She seldom or never sees a dentist .

. 固定数词与量词

A . 固定数词

506 固定数词可以用作：1) 形容词，2) 名词，3) 代词，偶作 4) 副词：

1) He has four wives , who quarrel among them ten times a day .

A person has two eyes , two ears , but only one mouth , so he should look and listen twice more than speak .

2) On the thirteenth of this month , six died of pest , and twenty-three suffered from cholera .

In this accident , three were killed and fifteen were seriously wounded .

3) He has eaten two apples , and I have eaten three , but my youngest brother has eaten five .

Two heads are better than one , but too many hands spoil the broth .

4) First , press the button ; second , open the lid : third , unscrew the top .

In the first place , she is young ; in the second , she is rich ; in the third , she is pretty . So she can have anything she wants .

Think twice before you act .

1 . 基数词：多少个？

507 基数词的各种形式：

0 : nought (数学用语) , zero (一般说法) , cipher (指符号而不是指数目) , o (和 zero 一样 , 较不正式) , nil (球赛说法) , love (网球赛说法)

2 : two , a couple (of) (=two or a few) , a pair of , a brace of , a yoke of—a couple (of) days , three pair (s) of pants (or glasses) , two brace of rabbits (or horses) , four yoke of oxen , six couple (s) of rabbits

12 : a dozen—five dozen eggs , five dozen (s) of eggs , (many) dozens of eggs

13 : thirteen (不是 threeteen) , a baker's dozen (现少用)

15 : fifteen (不是 fiveteen)

20 : a score (of) —two score eggs , scores of eggs , many scores of eggs , three score years and ten (=seventy years)

40 : forty (不是 fourty) , four times ten (少用)

67 : sixty-seven (在以 -ty 结尾的数词后要加连字号 (-) , 再加个位数 , 如 twenty-one , forty - nine) (过去有 seven and sixty 这种形式 , 现在很少见。)

101 : one (or a) hundred and one (=a great many) —a hundred and one questions

144 : one (or a) hundred (and) forty - four , twelve dozen , a gross (of) (在百位数与十位数之间的 and 可以省略 , 特别是在美国。)

ten gross (of) buttons , some (or many) grosses of buttons

200 : two hundred , a couple of hundred (在 hundred 后不加 -s)

365 : three hundred (and) sixty - five

1001 : one (or a) thousand and one , a great many—a thousand and one worries

1600 : one thousand six hundred , sixteen hundred (1160 至 1900 之间的整数 , 我们常说 eleven hundred 等。)

6432 : six thousand four hundred (and) thirty - two , six four three two

4865372 : four million eight hundred (and) sixty - five thousand , three hundred (and) seventy - two

在 million , thousand , hundred 后都不加 -s。 hundred 后可加 and , 也可以不加。在 -ty 结尾的词和后面数词间应插入连字号 (-)。为了较快读出 , 在表示 million (如 4) 和 thousand (如 5) 的数字后要加逗号。在欧洲国家 , 有些加句号而不是加逗号。

3000000 : three million— three million workers , a population of three million

4000000000 : four thousand million (英式) , four billion (美式)

4000000000000 : four billion (英式)

43000000 : 43 million

5.4 billion or 5 4/10 billion : 5400000000 , (写出 billion 以避免写过长的数字)

508 带有基数词的各种表达法 :

1) A class of six (=six students) , a party of eight (=eight persons) (低于 10 的数字 , 最好用数词而不用阿拉伯字码表示。)

A family of 24 , a population of 3 million

2) Hundreds (or Thousands , Millions) of people live in this area . (在跟有 of 引出的短语 , 前面又没有固定数词时 , hundred , thousand 等词后要加 -s。)

Dozens (or Tens of thousands) of birds are flying .

Scores of huts have been built for the fire victims .

I earned some (or many) hundreds (or thousands , millions) . (但 : I earned several hundred [or thousand] .)

I spent three hundred (or thousand , million) of (一部分) my income .

Thousands upon thousands of poor people have no houses .

Hundreds and hundreds of guns are roaring .

3) He received letters by the hundred (or by hundreds) . (=He received hundreds of letters .)

She has suitors by the dozen (or by dozens) .

They were killed by the thousand (or by thousands) .

4) The guests came in twos (=two by two , two and two) . I count them in fives .

They came in singles , not in pairs .

5) 2, 4, 6, etc. , are even numbers (偶数) .

1, 3, 5, etc. , are odd numbers (奇数) .

6) 500 is a round number (整数) for 493, 495, 504, 507, etc. .

(整数可以阿拉伯字码表示, 如 500, 也可以数词表示, 如 five hundred .)

3000 is a round number for 3001, 3008, 2991, 2994, etc. .

7) Three years and seven days are three odd years .

He has \$ 508, or five hundred and odd dollars .

We have stayed here forty-odd days .

He has two hundred dollars odd .

He is a man of forty-something .

It is a three-pounds-plus watermelon .

8) He has about (or around, some, approximately) three thousand dollars . (不定数或约数最好用数词表示, 而不用阿拉伯字码, 除非数目过于复杂)

He has more or less than (or approximately, in the neighbourhood of) a hundred fifty acres of land .

There are roughly six thousand foreigners in this city .

He spent three hundred dollars or so (or or thereabout, or something like that) every month .

9) An estimated (or An average of) 1350 persons pass here every day .

His income is under (or below) 450 dollars a month .

You can't buy such a good TV for anything below 299 dollars .

This bridge is close to (or close on) 580 metres long .

This mountain is almost (or nearly) (=just a little less than) 10000 feet high .

One must fail upwards of (or over, above) (=more than) a hundred times before one can succeed once .

We work better than (=over) (不规范说法) ten hours a day .

This parcel weighs thirty grams odd (or and more) .

10) He will stay here a month or two (or a month or so, one or two months) .

He always has two or three hundred pounds in his pocket .

Friends need not be so many . Two - three (美国说法) good ones are enough .

He owns some thirty or forty houses in this city .

I saw her the last month or two .

We have made progress in this century or two .

There might be six, eight, ten doctors in this clinic .

509 还可以用在下面短语中:

11) He lost more than a hundred (=a hundred odd) dollars .

He lost more than one hundred (=two, three, or four hundred) dollars .

- 12) She has not more than two (=only two) children .
 She has no more than two (=only two) children . (表示惊异)
 She has not less than a million (=a million or more) pounds .
 She has a cool million (=no less than a million , as much as a million) dollars . (表示惊异)
 We have climbed a good (or full) five hundred feet .
 He is a good (=no less than) six feet tall .
 We have worked here thirty long (or old) years .
 13) He doesn't earn (= earns less than) three dollars a day .
 The road is not (= less than) 500 miles long .
 Your cup is not half full .
 I did not see five movies in a year .
 Rome is not built in a day (=built in many years) .
 He has not made mistakes once or twice (=made them many times) .
 14) I will stay in town (from) twenty to thirty days or (anywhere) between twenty and thirty days .
 15) He may be fined to the tune (or amount) of three hundred dollars .
 Sometimes we work anywhere up to twelve hours a day .
 16) There were 287 guests altogether (or in all , all told) .
 I paid 84 dollars in sum total (or a total of 84 dollars) .
 17) He studied medicine 22 years running (or on end , at a stretch , in a row) (=in succession) .
 I was never discouraged after seven successive (or straight) defeats .
 18) We three learn German .
 They (or These , Those , The) four learn Spanish .
 Three of the students learn German . (There are other students who don't learn German .)
 19) After receiving 28 five-dollar bills , I bought 54 fifteen-cent stamps and 8 one-pound packages of sugar . (如果两个数字碰到一起 , 又表示不同东西 , 较大或复杂数字用数码表示 , 较小、较简单数字用数词表示。)
 After receiving five 20-dollar bills , I bought eight 40-cent stamps and ten 18-oz . boxes of oats .
 20) The aforesaid Company borrowed from the aforesaid Bank Three Million Dollars (\$ 3000000) at Ten Percent (10 %) interest . (在法律文件中 , 尤其是涉及金钱或财产时 , 数字常常用两种方式重复表示。)
 21) Forty-five dollars will be the lowest price of such shoes . (在句子开头最好用数词而不用数码)

2 . 序数词：第几个？

510 序数词构成法：

- a . 基数词表示“多少”，序数词表示“第几”。序数词有两种构成

法：

1) 在基数词后加-th 构成序数词，但 one, two, three 除外 (one, first, two, second, three, third)。

2) 在名词后加基数词，如 Book 3, Room 237。这样用时基数词的意思已经改变。Four books 表示几本书，而 Book 4 (或 the fourth book) 只是指一本书。Room 320 只是指第 320 房间 (一个房间)。

1) 第一类序数词：

1st : first (不是 oneth)

2nd : second (不是 twoth)

3rd : third (不是 threeth)

4th : fourth

5th : fifth (不是 fiveth)

6th : sixth .

7th : seventh .

8th : eighth (不是 eighthth)

9th : ninth (不是 nineth)

10th : tenth

12th : twelfth (不是 twelveth)

20th : twentieth (不是 twentyth)

21st : twenty-first (不是 twenty-oneth)

22nd : twenty-second

30th : thirtieth

53rd : fifty-third

79th : seventy-ninth

5433rd : five thousand four hundred and thirty-third last :
coming after all others in order , opposed to first

2) 第二类序数词：

当一个基数词放在它所修饰的名词后面用作序数词时，这个基数词可以是罗马字码，如 I, II, III, 也可以是阿拉伯字码，如 6, 7, 10。罗马字码多作大写，用在比较正式场合，如在纪念碑上写日期，或给书面材料的某些部分编号，如 Act (第三幕), Article (第八款), Part (第五部分), Appendix (附录二)，还可给同名的帝王、主教等编号，如 Henry I, Henry II, Henry III, Louis I, Louis II, Louis III。下表对罗马字母 (Roman Numerals) 和阿拉伯字母 (Arabic Numerals) 作一对比：

Roman	Arabic	Roman	Arabic	Roman	Arabic
	1		14		57
	2		15		60
	3		16		62
()	4		17		80
	5		18		90
	6		19	C	98
	7		20	C	100
	8		21	CC	200

9	28	D	500
10	30	DCCC	800
11	36	M	1000
12	40	\overline{V}	5000
13	50	\overline{M}	1,000,000

MCMXXCII=M CM XXC II

$$=1000 + (1000-100) + (100-20) + 2=1982$$

511 b. 带第一类序数词的表达法：

1) I studied in the fourth-year class at a school on 24th Street. We usually met in the 6th room on the fourth floor. The only interesting lesson I learned last year was the 12th lesson in the fourth book of Literature, a story of the third world war in the 21st century. As I often played truant, I stood last in my class, but I didn't care.

2) He has four sons. One is lame, a second is blind, a third is dumb, the fourth is deaf. (可以用 one 表示第一个, 在最后一个前要加 the, 其他序数词前可加 a.)

3) The first (or last) six chapters are interesting. (比 six first or six last 好)

The next (or other) four chapters are very dull. (比 four next or four other 好)

4) He lives on the fourth floor in New York.

He lives on the third floor in London (相当于美国的 fourth floor).

We live on the first (or street) floor. (美式)

We live on the ground floor. (英式)

5) He sat at the last seat but one (or next to the last seat).

He is the second best (or the next best) student.

It is the second most beautiful poem, but not the first best one.

6) To be successful—firstly, you must be healthy; secondly, you must be sincere; thirdly, you must be

brave. (现在这样说比较少)

First, ...Second, ...Third, ... (这样说法较普通)

In the first place, ...In the second, ...For one thing, ...For another, ...For a third,

(在列举理由或事例时可这样说)

512 带第二类序数词的表达法：

7) Number (or No., no., #) 397: number three (hundred) ninety-seven, number three nine seven—I live at No. 397. The invoice is no. 397. My ticket is # 397.

I took bus No. 27 to the airport for flight No. 483. I entered gate No. 32 and took my place at seat No. 14.

Nobody takes care of you. Everybody has to take care of number

one (=oneself) .

This is number one (= the best) hotel in this city . The boss is number one (=most important) man around here .

8) I took a bus to the post office , and then I returned to my of-ice at 47 6th Street , Suite 405 .

We received from you Order No . 2824 for the Cooker Mod-el No . 0842 , and Check No . 1932 . (在商业文书中编号前面的名词通常都大写。 “No . ” 最好省略 , 如 Order 2824 , Invoice 5864。)

There are some special features in this history book . In Sec-tions 4-6 (or the 4th to 6th sections) of Chapter 5 (or the 5th ch .) , for example , we have Diagram 6 (or the 6th diag .) and Exercise 10 (or the 10th ex .) , which enable the readers to understand the subject better ; and Question 12 (or the 12th question) , which induces them to make a further study . (编号前的名词可以小写)

Today I read Luke 15-20 (=in the third Gospel , chapter 15—chapter 20) and John 6 16-40 (=in the fourth Gospel , chapter six , verse 16—verse 40) , and also Paul 15 36—18 28 .

9) In Part (or the fourth part) , Volume (or the second volume) of the History of England , there is Plate (or the tenth plate) which illustrates the costumes of the Eliza-bethan age and Table (or the ninth table) which lists the works of Shakespeare . But what interests me is the story of World War (or the Second World War) when Ed-ward (or Edward the Sixth) ruled Great Britain . (罗马字码前的名词应大写)

10) In the months February—June (or from February to June inclusive , from February through June(美国说法) , between January and July) (但不能说 from February—June , between February to June) , from 1950 to 1955 inclusive (or from 1950 through 1955 , in 1950-1955) , Lee lived in Peru .

Chapters 8 , 12 , 15 (or Chs . 8 , 12 , 15) are the most important parts of this book , especially paragraphs 4 - 8 (or pars . 4-8) on pages 220-238 (or pp . 220-238) , which say something nobody dare say .

If you buy \$ 50—\$ 500 (or fifty to five hundred dollars) (但不能写 \$ 50 - 500) worth of merchandice , we can allow 5%-20 % (or 5 to 20 percent) discount off list prices .

11) My address is 2457 24th .street , Room 3825 , San Fran- cisco , CA 94168 , Phone number is 1415-864-7318 . Ac-count number is 0504-203863 . (在这类编号中一概不加逗号 , 但有时中间可加连字号(-) 或留空。)

序数词在非正式文体中是用数码 (如 2nd , 6th) 写出 , 也可用文字 (如 second , sixth) 写到 tenth 为止。在正式文体中 , 是用数词写到 hundredth 为止 , 如 the fifth floor , the sixty-fifth anniversary.

3. 比例, 倍数, 乘方, 方根, 分数, 小数表示法

513 a. 比例:

There are in this city five Asians for one westerner .

He earned 700 dollars per month to Mary's 600 .

He spent 500 dollars as compared with Mary's 200 .

He spent 500 dollars as against Mary's 200 .

One in ten (or in a hundred) persons is unselfish ; such a person is in the minority .

One person in ten is unselfish .

Nine persons out of ten are selfish ; such persons are in the majority .

(Out) of these 45 stories , 40 are about love .

b. 倍数:

He got double (or twice) my pay .

You have paid three times the usual price . (thrice 很少用)

You are twice his age .

It is worth twice the value .

This house is ten times bigger than (or ten times as big as) that one .

This is as long again (or twice as long) as that .

This is half as long again as (or one and a half times longer than) that .

The price doubled (or tripled) in ten years (or between 1978 and 1988) .

Between 1979 and 1988 the output of coal rose by 250% .

Rice production in this year dropped 25 percent (or grew 1 . 3 - fold) .

Three times five is (or are) fifteen . Three multiplied by five is fifteen .

He did it once or twice (or twice or thrice , two or three times) (=occasionally) .

Think twice (=Think and think again) before you act .

c. 乘方, 方根:

10^5 : the fifth power of ten , ten raised to the fifth power , ten to the fifth

10^2 : ten square

10^3 : ten cube

$\sqrt{214}$: the square root of 214

$\sqrt[3]{214}$: the cube root of 214

$\sqrt[4]{214}$: the fourth root of 214

d. 分数:

$1/2$: half—half a day , half the distance , half your weight

$1/3$: a third—a third of a second , a third of the apple , a third

of the trouble

$1/4$: a quarter—a quarter of a mile , a quarter of the cost

$1/8$: one eighth—one eighth of the area , one eighth the area

$3/7$: three sevenths—three sevenths of the population , three sevenths the population , three sevenths of a mile

$58/94$: fifty-eight ninety-fourths , fifty-eight over nine-ty-four

$5/100$: 5% , five percent , five per cent—five percent dis-count

$360/820$: three hundred sixty over (or by) eight hundred twenty

$8\frac{3}{10}$: 8 - $3/10$, eight and three tenths

$1\frac{1}{4}$: 1 - $1/4$, one and a quarter—one and a quarter feet , one foot and

a quarter

He has waited five hours and a half (or five and a half hours) .

Three-tenths of forty is twelve .

This is half copper and half silver .

Let's divide it fifty-fifty (=equally) .

Let's cut the cake in half (or in halves , into halves , in two) .

e . 小数

16 . 104 : sixteen point (or decimal) one o four . (在多数欧洲国家 , 可用逗号代替小数点。)

0.32 : nought (or zero) point three two . (写出时最好加 o , 在口语中 nought 或 zero 可以省略。)

8 , 765.643 286 733 37 : (如果小数点后有许多位数 , 每三位数后可留一个空 , 而不宜加逗号。)

4 . 长度及重量表示法

514 a . 长度 :

The Mississippi River is 2350 miles long .

This redwood is as high as three hundred feet .

This room is ten feet wide (or in width) , twenty feet long (or in length) , nine feet high (or in height) .

The trunk is two feet thick (or in diameter) , six feet round (or in circumference) .

The sea is a thousand feet deep (or in depth) .

He stands five foot two (不要用 five feet two) .

What size pants do you wear ?

I have seen a lot after five thousand miles of journey (or five thousand miles' journey , five thousand miles jour-ney , a 5000-mile journey , a journey of five thousand miles) , but have learned very little .

It is a 30-mile-long pipe (or a pipe thirty miles long) .

The photo is 8 by 10 inches (or 8×10) .

The room is fifteen feet seven (inches) by twenty feet nine

(inches) (or 15 ft .7 in . × 20 ft .9 in . , 15 7 × 20 9) . (在非正式文体中可用 foot 代替 feet)

This house covers an area of 1800 square feet . Behind it is a yard of half an acre .

Four feet square is equal to sixteen square feet , but they may be different in shape .

Every day I drink two quarts of water and a quart of milk , and use about twenty gallons of water when I take a bath .

b . 重量 :

This letter weighs two ounces (or 2 oz .) .

Five pounds of apples doesn't cost two dollars .

What is the price of a thousand tons of coal ?

I bought six pounds'weight (or six pounds weight) of sugar .

This store sells five hundred weights (-s may be omitted) (or cwt .) of vegetables every day .

He weighs ten stone (没有 -s) (英制 : 1 stone = 14 pounds) .

5 . 时间表示法

515 a . 世纪 :

There have been two world wars in the twentieth century (= 1901 - 2000) .

In the early (or mid- , late) fifteenth century (= 1401 - 1500) , there emerged great navigators like Zheng He , Di-az and Columbus .

This year is 1993 , and the last century (= 100 years) was 1893 - 1992 .

Mohammed (A . D . 570 - 632) , born in Mecca , Arabia , was the founder of Islam . (A . D . 表示公元后 , 即耶稣出生后。在公元后 1—1000 年都可加 A . D . 再后就不要加了 , 不要说 A . D . 1087。)

Li Bai (700 - 762 A . D .) was a great Chinese poet . (A . D . 可加在年份后面)

Li Bai was a poet in the eighth century A . D . (A . D . 可加在某一世纪或时期后 , 但不能加在前面。)

Confucius (551 - 479 B . C .) is the first teacher of China .

(B . C . 表示 “ 公元前 ” , 是 Before Christ 的缩写形式 , 只能加在年份后面。)

注 : 1989 应读成 : nineteen (hundred) eighty-nine ;

A . D . 678 应读成 : A . D . Six (hundred) seventy-eight ;

430 B . C . 应读成 : four (hundred) thirty B . C .

b . 年代 :

They met again after ten years (or ten years' time , ten years time , a space of ten years , a decade) .

They got married after ten years of war (or [a] ten years' war , ten years war , the ten-year war , a war of ten years , a decade of war) .

He wrote his novels in the 1940s (or the 40 , the nineteen

forties , the forties , the fourth decade of the twentieth century)
(= 1940-1949) .

His works were published in the early (or mid- , late) six- ties
(=1960- '62 , '63- '66 , '67- '69) .

c . 日期 :

yesterday	the day before yesterday	3 days ago	a week ago today
was	was	was	was
14 July	13 July	12 July	8 July
tomorrow	the day after tomorrow	3 days from now	a week from today
is	is	is	is
16 July	17 July	18 July	22 July

This day week and today week=a week ago today or a 303 week
from today .

d . 年 , 月 , 日 :

He arrived in Japan on September 6 (or 6 September , September
6th , 6th September , September the sixth , the sixth[day]of
September) , 1978 . (美国最通用的形式为 September 6 , 1978 , 可缩
写为 Sept . 6 , 1978 , 甚至缩写成 09-06- ' 78 或 9-6-78。英国用 6
September 时较多 , 可缩写成 6 Sept . , 1978 ; 甚至缩写成 06-09- ' 78
或 6-9-78。在两个国家 , 连字号 (-) 都可以 “ / ” 代替 , 如 9/ 6/78。
但在口语中 -th , -st , -nd 这类词尾仍要读出。)

Mr . and Mrs . Dean Black request the honour of your pres-ence
at the marriage of their daughter Jan to Dr . Glen White on Sundny ,
the eighth day of July , A . D . (or in the year of our Lord) one
thousand nine hundred (or nineteen hundred) and seventy-nine . (在
严肃或法律文件中 , 日期有时要完整写出。)

“ What day of the month is today ? ” “ February the second . ”

“ What day of the week is today ? ” “ Wednesday . ”

e . 小时 :

4 00—four (o'clock) (钟点数后的 0 最好省掉 , 特别是在非正
式的材料中。冒号也可以句号代替 , 如 4.00。如果时间是四点整 , 我们
可以说 four o'clock 或只说 four。)

4 05—five (minutes) past four (英式) , five (minutes) af-ter
four (美式) , four five (普通说法) (分钟不到 10 分的 , 前面需加 0)

4 15—a quarter past four (英式) , a quarter after four (美
式) , four fifteen (普通说法)

4 50—ten (minutes) to five (英式) , ten (minutes) of (or before)
five (美式) , four fifty

4 45—a quarter to five (英式) , a quarter of (or before)
five (美式) , four forty - five

2 52—eight minutes to (or from) three (minutes 这词应说出, 只有在 five, ten, twenty, twenty-five 后不需说出。)

8 30 a.m.—eight thirty in the morning

4 15 p.m.—four fifteen in the afternoon

7 50 p.m.—seven fifty in the evening

11 05 p.m.—eleven five at night

12 10 p.m.—twelve ten at night

6 10 a.m.—six ten in the morning

12 noon (比 12 N. 好)

12 midnight (比 12 M. 好)

注:

1) “a.m.”或“p.m.”可以用“A.M.”或“P.M.”代替。在打电报时可用“A”或“P”代替“a.m.”或“p.m。”

2) 在一个句子中不要同时写“a.m.”“morning”或“p.m.”“afternoon (或“evening”, “night”), 如: at 11a.m. Tuesday morning, about 11 p.m. Sunday night.

下面是英国、美国、欧洲和美军中的时间表示法:

英国和美国	欧洲	美军	
12 midnight	24 ⁰⁰	2400	(twenty-four hundred-hours)
12 02 a.m.	0 ⁰²	0002	(oh oh oh two hours)
1 00 a.m.	1 ⁰⁰	0100	(oh one hundred)
1 20 a.m.	1 ²⁰	0120	(oh one twenty)
7 45 a.m.	7 ⁴⁵	0745	(oh seven forty-five)
12 noon	12 ⁰⁰	1200	(twelve hundred)
12 05 p.m.	12 ⁰⁵	1205	
1 20 p.m.	13 ²⁰	1320	
4 45 p.m.	16 ⁴⁵	1645	
9 00 p.m.	21 ⁰⁰	2100	
11 55 p.m.	23 ⁵⁵	2355	
12 midnight	24 ⁰⁰	2400	

f. 年龄:

He was twenty-four (years old). (twenty-four 可以用 24 代替)

He was twenty-four years of age.

He was aged twenty-four.

He was a boy of twenty-four (years of age).

He was a twenty-four-year-old boy. (记住 year 后不要加-s, old 前要加连字号。)

He is a twenty-four.

He died at (the age of) twenty-four, aged twenty-four, age twenty-four.

He was on the right[or wrong]side of forty (=below[or above]forty).

He was going on (=almost) 30 years old.

He is 5 years senior to (=older than) me .

He is my senior (=a person older than me) by 5 years .

He became rich in his sixties (=sixty to sixty-nine years of age) .

He became famous in his early (or middle , mid- , late) six-ties .

He learned Japanese in his teens (from thirteen through nine-teen) .

He lived to ninety . He died at the great (or advanced) age of ninety .

The baby is two months and three days old .

This baby died at six months .

She was a six-month-old baby .

This car is eight years old .

g . 有关时间的各种表达法 :

I have been living in this world for 24 years 7 months 18 days and 6 hours .

We have to work ten hours on end (or ten straight hours) (=ten hours without a break) .

The Great Wall of China has been in existence for 22 centuries .

I stayed home from the first to the last of September .

I had a two weeks' (or a fortnight 's[英式]) vacation .

We have a five-day week . (=We work five days a week .)

I received a three days' notice . (=I was told to move , re-sign or do something else within three days .)

I have paid the June 1980 rent .

Could you lend me the February 1 , 1976 issue of the magazine ?

He started out on the 4 30 train .

I take two pills three times a day , that is , six pills a day .

6 . 货币金额表示法

516 a . 英币 :

£ 14 : fourteen pounds (英镑符号 £ 放在钱数前面 , 但 pound 这个词放在钱数后面。)

37p : thirty-seven pence or p[pi:] (口语说法) (“ p ” 放在数目后面。 One penny , 但 two pence , 复数都说 pence .)

£ 78.61 : seventy-eight (pounds) , sixty-one (pence) (不能写成 £ 78.61p)

We bought two thousand pounds worth (or value) of tobacco (or tobacco of two thousand pounds value) .

This machine runs three hundred pounds and up . The best one may go as far as a thousand .

b . 美元 :

\$ 241 : two hundred forty-one dollars (美元符号 \$ 放在数字前 , 但 dollars 这个词放在数字后。)

83¢ : eighty-three cents (¢ 这个符号代表 cent , 放在数字后。)

\$ 241.83 :two hundred forty-one(dollars)eighty-three (cents)
(不能写成 \$ 241.83¢)

1/2 dollar : half a dollar (英式) , a half dollar (美式) , a half a dollar (口语用法)

Three fives : three five-dollar bills (or notes)

Four quarters , three dimes , six nickels and seven pen-nies :
four 25-cent pieces , three 10-cent pieces , six 5-cent pieces and
seven pennies ; one dollar and sixty-seven alto-gether ; dollar
sixty-seven altogether

I can buy it for only 60-80 cents (可以说 60¢-80¢) .

The price may be 15 , 20 or 25 dollars (可以写作 \$ 15 , \$ 20 or
\$ 25) , I'm not sure .

I owe you three thousand dollars (\$ 3000.00) . (在重要文
件中 , 钱数多以两种形式写出。)

Last month I opened a checking account at a bank .

My account number is 187-10435 . I made a deposit for \$ 865 ;
that is , \$ 200 in bills (or currency) . \$ 660 in checks , \$ 5
in coins . Five days later I made a withdraw-al for \$ 452.28 . I
made out the required check , writing this amount both in figures
and words .

c . 127 个国家的货币单位 :

货币单位表		
国家或地区	货币单位	单位 1/100
Afghanistan	afghani	pul
Albania	lek	gintar
Algeria	dinar	centime
Angola	escudo	centavo
Argentina	peso	centavo
Australia	dollar	cent
Austria	schilling	groschen
Bahamas	dollar	cent
Bengladesh	taka	paisa
Belgium	franc	centime
Bhutan	ngultrum	chhetrum
Bolivia	peso boliviano	centavo
Brazil	cruzeiro	centavo
Bulgaria	lev	stotinka
Burma	kyat	pya
Cambodia	riel	sen
Cameroon	franc	centime
Canada	dollar	cent
Central African	franc	centimeRep .
Ceylon	rupee	cent
Chad	franc	centime

Chile	escudo	centesimo
China	renminbi	fen
China (Taiwan)	dollar	cent
Colombia	peso	centavo
Congo	franc	centime
Costa Rica	colon	centimo
Cuba	peso	centavo
Cyprus	pound	mil
Czechoslovakia	koruna	haler
Denmark	krone	ore
Dominice	peso	centavo
Ecuador	sucre	centavo
Egypt	pound	piaster
El Salvador	colon	centavo
Ethiopia	dollar	cent
Finland	markka	penni
France	franc	centime
Gabon	franc	centime
Gambia	dalasi	butut
Germany	mark	pfennig
Ghana	cedi	pesewa
Greece	drachma	lepton
Guatemala	quetzal	centavo
Guinea	franc	centime
Haiti	gourde	centime
Honduras	lempira	centavo
Hongkong	dollar	cent
Hungary	forint	fillér
Iceland	króna	eyrir
India	rupee	paisa
Indonesia	rupiah	sen
Iran	rial	dinar
Iraq	dinar	fils
Ireland	pound	penny
Israel	pound	agora
Italy	lira	centesimo
Ivory Coast	franc	centime
Jamaica	dollar	cent
Japan	yen	sen
Jordan	dinar	fils
Kenya	shilling	cent
Korea (North)	won	chon
Korea (South)	won	chon
Kuwait	dinar	fils

Laos	kip	at
Lebanon	pound	piaster
Liberia	dollar	cent
Libya	dinar	millieme
Luxembourg	franc	centime
Malaysia	dollar	cent
Malta	pound	penny
Mauritania	ouguiya	khom
Mexico	peso	centavo
Monaco	franc	centime
Mongolia	tugrik	mongo
Morocco	dirham	franc
Mozambique	escudo	centavo
Nepal	rupee	pice
Netherlands	guilder	cent
New Zealand	dollar	cent
Nicaragua	cordoba	centavo
Niger	franc	centime
Nigeria	naira	kobo
Norway	krone	ore
Oman	rial	paisa
Pakistan	rupee	paisa
Panama	Balboa	centesimo
Paraguay	guarani	centimo
Peru	sol	centavo
Philippines	peso	centavo
Poland	zloty	grosz
Portugal	escudo	centavo
Rhodesia	dollar	cent
Romania	leu	ban
Russia	ruble	kopeck
Saudi Arabia	riyal	qursh
Senegal	franc	centime
Singapore	dollar	cent
Somalia	shilling	cent
South Africa	rand	cent
Spain	peseta	centimo
Sudan	pound	piaster
Swaziland	lilangeni	cent
Sweden	krona	ore
Switzerland	franc	rappen
Syria	pound	piaster
Tanzania	shilling	cent
Thailand	baht	satang

Togo	franc	centime
Tonga	pa'anga	seniti
Tunisia	dinar	millime
Turkey	lira	piaster
Uganda	shilling	cent
United Kingdom	pound	penny
United States	dollar	cent
Upper Volta	franc	centime
Uruguay	peso	centesimo
Venezuela	bolivar	centimo
Vietnam	dong	xu
Western Samoa	tala	sene
Yemen	dinar	fils
(People's Rep .)		
Yemen	riyal	bugshah
(Arab Rep .)		
Yugoslavia (Bosnia)	dinar	para
Zaire	Zaire	likuta
Zambia	Kwacha	ngwee

7 . 有关身体的说法

517 I stand five foot two (or 5 2) and weigh 120 lb . I have a tem - perature of 98.6 degrees (or 98.6 °) F . My blood pressure is 120 / 80 . Doctor says I'm O K . So is my wife but she seems stronger than me . She is 35 - 23 - 35 (35 inches round the bosom , 23 round the waist , 35 round the buttocks) . Her curves are not too bad .

8 . 城市生活情况

518 A month ago my wife and I moved to San Francisco (which has a population of seven hundred thousand) because its climate is temperate throughout the year . It was December when I moved in . The average temperature was 61 F . The precipitation was 7.5 inches . The wind velocity was 5.6 miles per hour . The sunshine was 44 percent of the possible amount .

We lived five blocks away from Coit Tower , at 2437 Bell Street , Apt . (or #) 407 . The monthly rent was \$ 450 . The number of my telephone was (1 - 415) - 486-7324 . The first month I moved in , I paid \$ 6.50 for 2400 gallons of water we had used , \$ 8.46 for 32 thermos of natural gas and \$ 13.97 for 332 kilowatt - hours of electricity . We used 100 watt light - bulbs . Our car had a 90 - horse - power engine , and it got 15 miles per gallon of gas (or gasoline) (美式) (英式 : petrol) . We usually drove at 50 miles per hour (or mph) .

9 . 学校情况

519 In the United States school begins in September . The first (or fall) semester ends in February , The spring semester begins

between February and March and ends in June . The vacation begins in mid-June and ends in early September . Besides , there will be two weeks holiday during Christmas time .

Primary school usually includes G1 , G2 , G3 (G=Grade) and sometimes kindergarten .

Junior high school includes G7 , G8 and sometimes G9 .

Senior high school includes G10 - G12 .

Elementary (or Grade) school includes G1 - G8 .

Secondary school includes junior and senior high , G7 - G12 .

A full - time college student must take a minimum of twelve credit units per semester . One hundred twenty credit units are required for the bachelor's degree .

10 . 选票情况

520 If 25 votes are cast FOR a motion or a candidate , and 15 votes are cast AGAINST it or him , then the winning group which gets 25 votes has a Majority

of five (that is , five more than half of the total votes) ($= 25 - \frac{25+15}{2}$) .

If :	Mr . A	Mr . B	Mr . C	Total
gets	180 votes	gets 100	gets 20	300

Then : Mr . A has a Majority of 60 (sixty more than the total of all the other votes) ($= 180 - [100 + 20]$) .

And he has a plurality of 80 (eighty more than the votes his closest opponent gets) ($= 180 - 100$) .

B . 某些数词的特殊用法

521 1 . All , both ; (one) half , a (or one) quarter , a (or one) third ; double , six times .

以上数词有 4 种方式与其他词结合使用。

1) 数词+特指限定词 (+描绘形容词) +名词 :

all the (or those , these , my brother's , his) children

both my younger sisters

half these rotten apples

a quarter his price

one third his salary

a twentieth the Chinese population

double the hours

treble that volume

quadruple those streets

six times your number

2) 数词+名词从句 :

all he knows (noun clause)

half I own

double what I pay

six times what we can do

3) 数词+of+特指限定词 (+描绘形容词) +名词 :

all of the (or those , these , my brother's , his) children

both of my younger sisters

half of these rotten apples

4) 数词+of+代词 :

all of them

both of us

half of you

one third of them

quadruple of us

double of which

six times of whom

522 2 . Dozen , score , hundred , thousand , million .

以上数词有 8 种方式和其他词结合使用。

1) 固定或不定数词+单数数词 (+描绘形容词) +名词 :

two (or nine , a , half a , some , a few , several , many) + hundred

+ (good) + apples

six dozen small buttons

a score people

half a thousand students

a few million Japanese

several hundred English books

many thousand visitors

2) 固定或不定数词+单数数词+of+固定限定词(+描绘形容词)+名词:

two(or nine , a , half a , some , a few , several , many) hundred of the (or those , these , John's , his) (good) books

three dozen of the knives

a score of these people

half a thousand of my workers

some millions (用复数) of the American students

several dozen of Mary's friends

many hundred of those trees

3) 固定或不定数词+单数数词+of+代词:

two(or nine , a , half a , some , a few , several , many) hundred of them

three dozen of them

half a thousand of us

some millions (plural) of them

several dozen of them

4) 不定数词+复数数词+(描绘形容词)+名词:

some(or a few , several , or many) hundreds of(wounded) soldiers

some dozens of teachers

dozens of children

a few scores of times

several thousands of large buildings

many millions of Indian women

thousands of birds

tens(or hundreds) of thousands(or millions) of American dollars

5) 固定数词+单数数词:

A (or One , Half a , Two , Three , Nine) hundred were killed . (hundred = hundred of them)

Six dozen were thrown away . (six dozen=six dozen rotten apples or other things the reader knows)

Half a score came .

Three thousand have been spent .

Nine million were starved .

6) 不定数词+复数数词:

A few , (or Several , or Many) hundreds were killed .

A few scores were lost .

Dozens were rotten .

Several scores have been sold .

Thousands applied .

He spent millions a night .

7) Some (=about one) +单数数词:

Some hundred came .

Some dozen were rotten .

Some score were thrown away .

Some thousand came .

Some million were spent .

8) Some (= several) +复数数词 :

Some hundreds came .

Some dozens were rotten .

C . 集体数词

523 有一类数词，叫作集体数词。它是一种形容词短语，多由“数词+集体名词+of”构成，表示一组人、动物或东西，如：

Three parties of travellers arrived here today .There are several litters of pigs . 就像在 a number of students 中，a number of 修饰 students，又像在 a score of watermelons 中，a score of 修饰 watermelons 一样，three parties of 这一数词短语修饰后面的名词 travellers，而 several litters of 修饰后面的名词 pigs。这种用法和东方人（至少中国人）的思路是一致的。这种以 of 结尾的短语，和用 of 开始的短语（如 three bags of the travellers 和 a hundred families of this village）是完全不同的。后面这种修饰前面的名词，如 of the travellers 修饰 bags，of this village 修饰 a hundred families。在 three parties of travellers 中，travellers 是最重要的词，而在 three bags of the travellers 中，bags 是最重要的词。（不过，如果以“名词+of+名词”作主语，谓语动词几乎总是和 of 前面的名词在数上一致，如：A litter of pigs is... , Three litters of pigs are...）

524 这种形容词短语，如果把 of 去掉，还可用作代词：

He has seven pairs of shoes , and I have only one pair .

Three bunches of grapes are growing on the vine , and seven bunches more will come out soon .

525 下面是这种集体数词的例子，可用来修饰一些特定的名词，其中 a (an) 在必要时可以换作任何其他数词，如：three , eleven , a hundred（如 three bands of robbers , many classes of students）：

1. 和表示人的名词一起用：

an army of children , workers , troops , beggars

a band of patriots , robbers , fugitives , revellers

a batch of recruits , prisoners

a body of troops , unemployed men

a bunch of green-horns , never-do - wells

a class of students

a colony of artists , Italians

a company of actors , acrobats , magicians , soldiers , police
- men

a gang of thieves , ruffians , politicians , conspirators

a handful of people , robbers , rebels

a host of students , barbarians

a knot of friends , students

a new lot of students

a pack of thieves , fools , rascals , knaves , liars

a panel of experts

a parcel of servants , fools

a party of guests , visitors

a school of thinkers , artists

a team of players
a troop of fighters , soldiers
a troupe of actors , acrobats , magicians

526 2 . 和表示动物的名词一起用 :

an army of herring , frogs , caterpillars
a band of jays
a bevy of quails , roes , larks
a brood of mice , chickens , hens , pheasants
a cluster of cats
a colony of gulls , ants , rabbits , seals
a den of foxes , wolves
a drove of sheep , cattle , swine , asses (while moving along in
a body)
an earth of foxes , badgers
a flight of swallows , pigeons , doves , any birds while flying
a flock of sheep , goats , camels , lions , rabbits , geese , spar
- rows , parrots , pigeons , birds in general
a herd of cattle , oxen , goats , horses , asses , deer , buf- faloes ,
bucks , antelopes , other hoofed animals ; ele - phants , wolves ,
giraffes , whales , seals , swans
a hive of bees
a host of sparrows , locusts
a kennel of dogs
a knot of toads
a litter of pigs , puppies , cubs , whelps
a muster of peacocks
a nest of mice , rabbits
a pack of monkeys , hounds , wolves , dogs
a pride of lions , peacocks
a school of fish , whales , other aquatic animals
a shoal of mackerel , perch , herring , fishes in general
a stable of horses
a swarm of insects , bees , flies , eels , locusts , gnats
a team of oxen , horses
a tribe of monkeys
a troop of monkeys , lions , kangaroos

527 3 . 和表示事物的名词一起用 :

a batch of letters , loaves , munitions
a block of buildings , shops
a bunch of keys , grapes , celery , carrots
a chain of mountains
a clump of briars , bushes , trees
a cluster of stars , grapes
a collection of books , stamps , curios , relics

a constellation of stars
a display (or show) of fireworks
a flight of stairs , steps , arrows
a galaxy of stars
a group of houses , villages , trees
a heap of ruins
a host of stars
a knot of rope , hair
a line of trees , cars , hills , words
a new lot of apples , shoes
a pack of cards , ice , cigarettes
a pair of stairs , steps , shoes , trousers , scissors
a park of artillery
a peal of bells
a pile of books , papers , bricks , stones
a range of steps , mountains , hills
a round of rations
a row of seats , rooms , cabbages
a series of books , stamps
a set of instruments , papers , books , dishes , dominoes , draughts ,
teeth , stairs , steps
a stack of books , rifles , chimneys
a stand of colours , arms
a stock of goods
a string of beads , pearls , bells , cars
a suit of clothes , underwear , overalls
a suite of rooms
a volley of shots

D . 固定量词

528 量词原来是表示不定数量的，但若加一个数词，就可以表示固定数量。固定量词采取“数词+可数名词+of”这种形式，是一种形容词短语，可用在不可数名词前面。在下面的句子中，two bottles of 修饰后面的名词 water，drunk 的宾语是 water（可参阅 523 节）：

I have drunk two bottles of water .

He carried a basket of rice .

He ate three loaves of bread , and still felt hungry .

这种短语如果把 of 去掉，就可用作代词或名词：

I have drunk three bottles of water and he has drunk only one bottle .

He has three loaves of bread , but he refuses to give even half a loaf to his brother .

529 这种量词都表示某类东西的一部分，它可以和不可数名词一起用：

1. 和物质名词一起用：

这时它里面包含一个表示单位的名词，有时这个名词还说明形状、特点等，如：three blocks of wood，这里 block 既说明数量，又说明大和硬。又如：two slices of bread，slice 还表明是平平的薄薄的一片状物。

下面是这类用法的例子：

He put two lumps of sugar into his coffee .

We have two crops of rice in a year .

A grain of rice means a drop of perspiration .

Two slices of bread are (or is) enough .

Five bolts of cloth have (or has) been sent by train .

下面还有一些这类用法的例子，在使用时，必要时可把 a (an) 换成其他数词：

an article of clothing , dress , furniture

a ball of snow , string , wool

a blade of grassa breath (or bit) of air

a block of ice , stone , wood

a cake of soap

a chip of glass , stone , wood

a chop of lamb

a clod of clay

a crop of barley , rice , wheat

a cube of cheese , apple , ice

an ear of barley , rice , wheat

a flake of dust

a fleck of dust

a grain of corn , rice , sand , salt

a gust of wind .

a head of cabbage , lettuce , celery

a heap of earth , rubbish , sand
a joint of beef , meat
a lump of clay , coal , lead , sugar
a morsel of bread , cake , meat
a peck of rice
a piece of cannon , chalk , furniture , luggage , paper
a rasher of bacon , ham
a roll of paper , film , cloth
a round of ammunition , shot
a round of beef , bread , butter
a scrap of paper
a sheath of corn , grain
a sheet of paper
a shower (sprinkle) of rain , sleet
a skein of silk , wool
a slice of bread , cake , meat
a sliver of cheese , fibre , wood
a speck of blood , dust , soot
a stack of grain , hay , wood
a strip of cloth , land , paper
a volley of shot

有时这类形容词短语含一个表动作的名词，表示这样动作的数量，
如：two feeds of fodder 表示“喂两次的饲料量”。其他如：

two nice cuts of meat five pinches of salt
three sips of brandy a whiff of odor , fresh air
two shots of powder a bite of meat , a draught of beer

530 2. 和抽象名词一起用：

修饰抽象名词的这类短语，也可包含一个固定量词，但不表明形状或特征，而只表示一件、一例，一阵，一股，等：

There have been ten cases of cholera this week .

He has given her three pieces of advice .

We felt very tired after two set of tennis .

下面是这类短语及其修饰的名词（a 可以换成其他数词）：

an act of foolishness , kindness , mercy , insanity

a barrage of editorials

an attack of rheumatism , malaria

a bit of news , advice

a bout of fighting , influenza (usually : a fencing bout , a drinking bout , a shooting bout , etc .)

a case of typhoid , murder

a chain of events , revolts

a display of affection , bad temper , drill

a fit of anger , madness , fever , coughing , rheumatism

a flicker of courage

a glimmer of hope
a gust of laughter , anger
a hint of hope
a host of ideas , problems , difficulties
an instance of dishonesty , loyalty
an item of news , expense , cost , crime , misery , slavery
a peal of laughter , thunder
a piece of advice , anecdote , evidence , expenditure , information , folly , news , music , service , statistics
a round of boxing-match , cards , golf , game , drinks , applause
a scrap of information , gossip
a salvo of applause
a show of force , firmness , temper , resistance , indifference
a shout of laughter
a sign of disease , civil war
a spell of bad weather , illness , work , leisure
a stroke of fortune , luck , paralysis , work
a suggestion of intrigue
a volley of laughter , oaths
引申短语 : a drop of comfort , a crumb of respect ; a gallon of kindness ; a grain of sarcasm ; an ounce of strength ; a scrap of courage ; a speck of comfort ; tons of evils ; heaps of worry ; loads of trouble

E . 固定数词与量词

531 1 . 包含有标准单位的短语 :

另一种形容词短语, 含有表示尺寸、重量、价值或时间的标准单位的名词。它们既可作数词, 也可作量词, 既可用在可数名词前面, 也可用在不可数名词前面 :

It takes a long time to build a hundred miles of road (用在可数名词前面) (长度) .

I walked across two feet of snow (用在不可数名词前) (深度) .

He has 100 acres of land (面积) .

He bought a pint of lentils (体积) .

Two liters of water is about 3 1/2 pints of it .

My family eat two pounds of apples every day (重量) .

Five grams of the powder is enough .

Ten dollars'worth of grapes was damaged (价值) .

Thirty years of service has been tiresome to him (时间) .

532 2 . 包含有容器名称的短语 :

这种短语包含一个容器的名称, 可用作数词, 也可用作量词 :

He has sold a hundred cartons of stockings .

He finished five glasses of beer and a bottle of whiskey .

He brought a tube of shaving cream and a sack of potatoes .

Have a cup of tea .

He gave me five tins (or cans) of tomato juice .

I want two bags (or bagfuls) of flour , and a case of oranges .

He ate only a mouthful of food .

Only a spoonful of the soup remains .

Three cartloads of wood have been sent to him .

Two packages of grapes were received .

第十单元关系词

533 关系代词为 who ,whom ,which ,that ,what ,as ,but ,than ,whoever ,whichever 及 whatever ; 关系形容词为 what , which , whose , whatever 及 whichever ; 关系副词为 where , when , why 及 how。这三类词统称为关系词 (Relatives) , 不管是形容词、代词还是副词 , 由于它们之间有许多共同之处 , 都放在一起讨论。

. 关系代词及形容词

A . 概说

1 . Who - Whom - Whose

534 先观察下面句子：

I met Lee , who (=and he) asked me to dinner .

She asked her friends , who (=and they) answered her coldly .

There came a friend of mine , who (=and he) had just arrived from Calcutta .

I spoke to Mary , who (=but she) pretended not to hear me .

在上面句子中 , who 是一个代词 , 代替前面的名词 (不管是单数还是复数 , 是阳性还是阴性) : Lee , friends 和 Mary 。它也是一个连词 , 把两个句子 , 不如说把主句和从句 , 连接起来。这样的代词称为关系代词 , 它代表的那个名词是它的先行词 (Antecedent) , 它所引起的从句 (“ who... dinner ” 及 “ who...coldly ”) 称为关系从句 (Relative Clauses) 。如果把句子换一种方式说 , 可改成以下不同的句子 :

Mr . Lee , who asked me out to dinner , took me to the nearest restaurant . (=Mr . Lee asked me out to dinner , and he took...)

His friends , who had tried to dissuade him from smoking , did not succeed . (=His friends had tried to dissuade him from smoking , but they did not succeed .)

535 Who , whom 和 whose 在关系从句中可分别用作主语、宾语和所有格 (形容词) , 但它们不受它们的先行词的格的影响。除了起名词及形容词的作用外 , 它们还起 and , but , for 或 so 这样连词的作用 :

I once met this man , who (=and he) told me a strange story .

(who 的格是由它在关系从句中的位置决定的 , 而不是由它的先行词 man 的格决定的 , man 是主句中及物动词 met 的宾语。)

At the party there was John , whom I had not seen for years (=and I had not seen him for years) . (在非正式英语中 , 可用 who 代替 whom。)

First came Mary , whom few of us had expected (=but few of us had expected her) .

He did not invite Mary , whom he disliked (=for、 he disliked her) .

He mentioned his brother in London , whom (作介词 after 的宾语) I presently inquired after .

I praised Mary , whose (=so her) mother was quite delighted but said nothing .

They blamed John , whose (=but his) fault was really slight .

John , whose fault was really slight , was not to blame . (=John's fault was really slight , so he was not to blame .)

536 但是关系从句中的谓语动词必须和先行词在人称和数上一致 :

This boy , who works very hard , will be rewarded .

John , who is busy , cannot go with us .

These boys , who work very hard , will be rewarded .

John and Mary , who are busy , cannot go with us .

You , who are his friend , understand him well .

I could not discuss this with you , who were too young to understand it .

She , who is his friend , understands him well .

I could not discuss this with my father , who was too serious to talk about it .

I , who am his friend , understand him well . (在口语中用 is)

She should believe in me , who am her husband .

537 关系从句几乎全都是 1) 陈述句, 很少是 2) 感叹句、3) 疑问句或 4) 祈使句 :

1) I criticised Lee , who immediately got angry and left .

My sister , whom you saw the other day , will get married tomorrow .

2) John (whom may God confound !) has turned traitor .

Everybody looked at Mary , by whom how many were enchanted !

3) John (whose offence could I overlook ?) did insult me at a party .

4) I have written to Kim , whom please apply to .

538 上面例句中的关系从句有并列性质, 为非限制性的 (Non-Restrictive), 因为关系代词连接的是两个同样重要的分句。但下面例句中的关系从句都是限制性的 (Restrictive), 因为它们起形容词的作用, 修饰先行词, 和先行词构成一个统一的意思。在非限制性关系从句和先行词之间, 如果写出来, 必须有一个逗号, 而在限制性关系从句和先行词之间, 写出来时, 一般没有逗号 (只有一些特殊的例外情况), 说出来时中间也没有停顿。非限制性关系从句在书面语中用得较多, 在口语中很少使用。

The teacher will punish students who are lazy (=lazy students) .

A man who only cares about himself (=A selfish man) will not succeed .

John is the only man whom I know (=my only acquaintance) in Hong Kong .

I know the man whose son is your student (=your student's father) .

The boy who broke the window is gone .

Where are now the marshals who have performed great exploits ?

539 在限制性关系从句中, whom 可以省略, 而且常常省略 :

Show me the fellow (whom) you met last week .

The girl (whom) you love is pretty .

The carpenter (whom) they are employing is my uncle .

John is married to a woman (whom) he does not know well .

注: 一个名词如果已明确何所指, 如 this house , Jane Lee , my father , Venice , 就不宜再有限制性关系从句。

2 . Which-Which-Whose

540 Who 代表人，which 则代表东西。which 后面的谓语动词，必须与先行词在数上一致。Which 可引起非限制性关系从句：

He set free the bird , which was a gift from his aunt .

He set free the birds , which were a gift from his aunt .

He set free the bird , which (=and it) looked at him doubt- fully .

He set free the bird , which (=but it) refused to leave him .

He set free the bird , which (=so it) flew away at once .

These houses , which face south , belong to John . (=These houses face south , and they belong to John .)

These houses , which face south , have no trees around . (... but they...)

These houses , which face south , are cool in summer and warm in winter . (...so they...)

541 Which 在关系从句中既可作主语，又可作宾语。Whose 作为所有格形容词，可以代表人，也可代表物：

He was reading a book , which (作为谓语动词 was 的主语) was about war , which (作为及物动词 bought 的宾语) he had bought from London , which (作为介词 in 的宾语) he was very much interested in , whose (=and its) (所有格形容词) cover bore the title of “ War ” .

He had a big palace , whose door (or the door of which , of which the door) was covered with gold leaf .

He wants to sell his house , which who will buy ? (关系从句很少是问句)

He wants to sue for a divorce , which God forbid ! (关系从句也很少是感叹句)

542 Which 引起的关系从句，如果是限制性的，同时 which 在从句中又用作宾语，which 就可以省略，也常常省略，whose (which 的所有格) 也可用在限制性关系从句中：

He has to study a subject which does not interest him (=an uninteresting subject) .

Philosophy is something which cannot be defined (=some- thing undefinable) .

The cars which are driving along before us are pretty .

He has to study a subject (which) he does not like .

Philosophy is something (which) I cannot understand .

The cars (which) you are looking at are my uncle's .

The house whose window is green belongs to John .

What is the name of the country whose population is the largest in the world ?

3 . That - That - Whose

543 That 既可代表东西，又可代表人，总是用于限制性关系从句中。如果在从句中作宾语，常常被省略掉。That 没有自己的所有格形式：

The boy that (=who) came here is John's son .

May I meet the lady that dances so gracefully?

(此处用 that 可能是出于礼貌。代表人时用 who 比用 that 要多得多。)

He is the poet that was and is to be (=of the past and the future) .

She is Mrs . Lee that is to be .

The child(that) (=whom) the woman looked after was suddenly missing . (作宾语时 , that 较 whom 要用得多得多。)

The child (that) his father had punished did the mischief again .

The news that (=which) (作主语) shocked all of us had come from Mary .

The news(that) (=which) (作宾语) I heard had come from Mary .

544 如果先行词前有某些形容词修饰 , that 比 who , whom 或 which 都用得多得多 :

He is the best (最高级) teacher that ever taught us .

The first (or last , only , next) man that came was Lee .

This is the very thing (that) I want .

This is the same watch (that) I lost .

He astonished all the women that were present . (但是 : All who came were in white .)

This house is all that is left of her life .

Any (or Every) student that is attentive and hard-working will be rewarded . No student that is careless and idle will pass the exam . (但 : Anyone , Everyone , No one , Anybody , Everybody , Somebody-who...)

There is much (or little , none) that can be said .

545 That 可以用来避免 “ who...who ” , “ which...which ” 这种结构 ; 而 who 和 which 也可用来避免 “ that...that ” 这种结构 :

Who (疑问词) that (不是 who) saw her did not like her ?

Which is the ship that (不是 which) starts for Hong Kong ?

I know that man (or those men) who (不是 that) came yesterday .

That thing (or Those things) which (不是 that) you don't know , you pretend to know .

546 当关系代词代表一个集体名词或代表人及物时 , 用 that 更好一些 :

She wants to join a team that consists of teenagers .

This law has nothing to do with a company that was established before 1950 .

Men and things that I saw there , were very curious .

I have to look after the passengers and luggage that cross the river .

547 关系代词和它的动词 , 若被一个短语或从句隔开 , 多用 who 和 which 而不用 that :

Property was the first thing which , on the death of the father ,

interested the sons .

I can help any man who , in case he is in trouble , needs my help .

I gave food to the child who , after his parents died , had nobody to care for him .

548 That 常和以-ible 和-able 结尾的词一起用 :

There is no temptation that is irresistible , no plan that is impossible , no river that is unfathomable , no gorge that is impassable .

4 . As-As-X

549 作为关系代词 , as 只能用在限制性关系从句中 , 只能用在 such , same , as 或 so 的后面 , 不能用作所有格 (例外情况见第 559 , 582 节) :

Children love such people as (主语) love them . (such people as =that kind of people who...)

Such a student as works hard will succeed .

I never go to such places as (宾语) gamblers frequent . (such places as=that kind of place which...)

Such a dog as I keep is called a bulldog .

Such as (=Those who) have money have friends .

His method is not such (a method) as I use .

在 such as 后有时跟一些名词作为例子 , 而不跟从句 :

He has such books as Iliad and Hamlet .

He has many books , such as Iliad and Hamlet .

Many books are available in this small library , such as Iliad and Hamlet . (注意上面 3 个例句中 such 和 as 以及相关名词的位置关系)

Some cities have millions of people , such as New York and Tokyo .

The same accident as (主语) happened to you , had happened to me .

He bought the same radio set as (宾语) you had .

He is not the same playboy as we knew .

He charged me the same price as they (=as they charged me) . (有些动词可以省略)

He charged me the same price as her (=as he charged her) .

I am in the same class as he .

This is the same watch as I lost . (It is not mine .)

比较 : This is the same watch that I lost . (It is mine .)

注 : 在 such 和 same 后有时也可以用 who , which , what 引起从句 , 如上例。

He can write so (or as) interesting a story as (主语) moves us to tears . (或 a story so interesting as...)

He did it in so (或 as) peculiar a manner as surprised me . (或 a manner as peculiar as...)

As many children as (主语) come will be admitted .

None have as many children as (宾语) he has .

He tried to make as few mistakes as he could avoid .

5 . But-But-X

550 But 间或用作关系代词，意思等于“that...not”，“who...not”或“whom...not”。它引起的都是限制性关系从句，常用在否定句后。下面的例子是书面语，而且比较陈旧：

There is no child but (主语) knows (=no child who does not know) Uncle Lee . (=Every child knows Uncle Lee .)

There is scarcely a good movie but (宾语) he has seen (=that he has not seen) .

There is never a friend but he remebers the birthday of .

Who is there but commits errors? (but 间或也可用在疑问句后)

(There are) Few (=Not many) men but love their children .

(There is) Not one of us but sees his folly .

Who (is there) but knows it ?

注：有时可用 but what 或 but that 代替 but，不过这种情形极少。在 but 后有时会多余 he，it 等。

6 . What-What-What

551 What 是先行词和关系代词的结合体，表示“.....的东西”：

You may choose what (=the thing which) interests you .

(what 的意思是 the thing which，它同时作关系从句中的主语，又作主句中的宾语，也就是说 which 作主语，the thing 作宾语。)

What (=Anything that) is useless to you may be useful to me . (what 既作 is 的主语，又作 may be 的主语)

I know what you are doing . (what 既作 know 的宾语，又作 doing 的宾语。)

What I want is not ill-gotten gains . (what 作 want 的宾语，又作 is 的主语。)

This is what (=all that) I know .

Listen to what he is talking about . (what 作 to 及 about 两个介词的宾语)

They are discussing what they know nothing about .

What (关系形容词) money (=All the money that) I have has been given to her .

What songs he has learned are about love .

What few (=The few that) I had were stolen .

What little (=The little that) I had was stolen .

That which 的意思和 what 也差不多，如：

That which (=What) promises happiness is often deceptive .

I will tell you that which I know .

What 有时也可用来表示人：

He is what you call (=the man that you call) a snob .

有时 what 引起的从句似乎相当于一个名词，试比较下面句子：

This laboratory was still in waht could now be considered a crude state . This laboratory was still in a crude state .

7 . Whoever , Whichever , Whatever

552 Whoever , whichever 和 whatever 又是先行词与关系词的结合体 , 表示 “ 任何.....的人 ” , “ 不管是哪个..... ” , “ 任何.....的东西 ” :

Whoever (=Anyone who) respects others will be respected .

(whoever 同时作 respects 和 will be 的主语)

Give it to whoever (not whomever) likes it . (Whoever 同时作 likes 的主语和 to 的宾语)

Don't be angry with whoever makes mistakes .

Give it to whomever (=anyone whom) (not whoever) you like . (Whomever 作 like 和 to 的宾语)

Whichever of you (=Any one of you who) (主语) said this will be punished . (whichever 同时作 said 和 will be 的主语)

Whichever (=Any one of these that) you like will belong to you . (whichever 作 like 的宾语和 will belong 的主语)

He bought whatever (=anything that) interested him .

(whatever 作 interested 的主语和 bought 的宾语)

He does not think over whatever he says .

He visited whatever (关系形容词) places (=any places that) I recommended .

Whatever 也可用作单纯的形容词 , 表示 “ 任何 ” :

He took no notice whatever . You may eat whatever (=any) food , any food whatever .

You can do it in all circumstances whatever .

8 . Than

553 作为关系代词 , than 只和形容词 , 副词的比较级一起用 :

He has more (adjective) money than (=than what) is necessary .

He eats more than is good for him .

There are better things in the world than are dreamed of .

He works longer (adverb) than is required of him .

B . 进一步探讨

1 . 各种先行词

554 如果先行词是专有名词、人称代词、有名词所有格修饰的名词或由 this , that , these , those 修饰的名词 , 后面的关系从句不能是限制性的 , 因为这样的先行词已经很 “ 固定 ” , “ 明确 ” , 无需进一步限制其意义。我们不能说 :John that、will help me ,She that will marry David , John's mother that takes care of me 或 this city that has a population of two million。这样的先行词只能跟非限制性关系从句 , 如 :

I will see John , who will help me .

This city , which has a population of two million , is very prosperous .

在 who 及 which 前必须加一个逗号。

如果在限制性关系从句前确实用了这类先行词 , 那么这种先行词属于泛指意义 , 表示某类人或物 :

He who (=Anyone who) laughs on Friday will weep on Sun- day .

Those who (=People who) make the best use of their time have none to spare .

I can't trust this man who has cheated me twice (=this man , a man who has cheated me twice) .

Those people who said this (=Those people , people who said this) are hypocrites .

The Hongkong that I saw twenty years ago was different from the Hongkong that I see today . (不同时期的香港)

What I know is only the Napoleon who fought hundreds of battles , but not another Napoleon .

555 比较下面句子中的先行词 :

I am reading a book (indefinite , singular) which you have read .

I am reading some books (indefinite , plural) which you have read .

I am reading the book (s) (definite , singular or plural) which you have read .

I am reading every (or any , each , the best , the first , the last) book that you have read .

I am reading the same book as you have read . (You and I read similar books .)

I am reading the same book that have read . (You and I read this one book .)

I am reading as good a book as you have read .

I am not reading so good a book as you have read .

556 有些先行词既可以看作人也可看作物 , 因而影响后面的关系代词、人称代词及动词 :

This is the baby (or infant , child) which had its fingers

burned . This is the baby who had his fingers burned . (婴儿)

The dog , which had lost its master , screamed all night .

The dog , who had lost his master , screamed all night . (动物)

China , which has many mountains , rivers and monuments , is a beautiful country . China , who has endeavoured to reform herself for a hundred years , is now becoming a great country . (国家)

The company , which has done its best , becomes bankrupt all the same . The company , who have done their best , become bankrupt all the same . (表示团体时用 which , 表示成员时用 who 。)

He has a big family , which has (or who have) lived here thirty years .

I became acquainted with Mr . A , which (=whose character) is difficult to describe .

557 有些先行词为人称代词或指示代词 , 若跟有 who 引起的从句 , 多为谚语 :

He who (=Anyone who) works may eat .

He who marries a beauty marries trouble .

He whom the gods love dies young .

He that lives with wolves will learn to howl .

He that serves the public serves no one .

Those who are thirsty drink in silence .

Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones .

先行词 he 或 those 有时会省略 :

Who (=He who , anyone who) eats must pay . (书面语)

Who works not shall not eat .

Who steals my purse steals trash .

Who knows most says least .

Whom (=Those whom) the gods love die young .

Whom God will destroy he first of all drives mad .

She may marry whom (=any person whom) she likes (or pleases , chooses , would) .

This is written to whom it may concern .

You can take which (=any one which) you like (or please , choose , would) .

558 Little , much , all , nothing , something 可以在关系代词 that 前用作先行词 :

There is little that can be believed about the rumour .

The book doesn't say much that amuses children .

I have nothing that is good to say .

I like all that is beautiful .

There is nothing about him that I know of .

He hates everything that is modern .

559 除了名词或代词 , 有时主句的全部或后面部分可用作先行词 , 这时

关系从句都属非限制性，可用的关系代词主要为 which，间或为 as 或 what：

He likes climbing a mountain (主句的一部分) which (主语) is a good exercise. (which 紧跟先行词)

He learns five languages at the same time. Which is almost impossible. (which 引起的从句有时可写成一个独立的句子)

He died two days ago (整个主句) which (or which fact, a fact which) (作宾语) I can't believe.

John was very ill, which (or which circumstance, a circumstance which) he himself did not know.

He promised to come, but (which vexed me most of all) didn't show up. (which 偶尔可放在先行词前面，这时 which 引起的从句要用括号括起来。)

He is sure to come unless (which is improbable) he's ill.

He said, "I'm foolish." Which was true. (which 紧跟在直接引语后面)

He never curses when angry (主句的一部分) as (主语) is very natural with us. (as 可以紧跟先行词)

He studied the method of becoming immortal, as (宾语) nobody would think possible.

I advised my brother, as was my duty.

He became crazy (整个主句), as many could see.

As has happened many times, children may get drowned in this river. (as 引起的从句有时也可放在 as 所代表部分的前面)

Children, as is always the case, love their mother. (as 引起的从句也可插在 as 所代表的主句的中间)

The result, as may be expected, is poor.

He is intelligent and, what is more (or equally) important, he is honest. (what 引起的从句也可放在 what 所代表的那一部分前面)

He has met two accidents, and what surprises me, he seems unaffected.

If, what seldom happens, he would repent, he could be a good boy.

He decided, what was the only choice, that we should fight to the last drop of blood.

He knows how to write and, what is a different thing, how to make money. (what 代表它的先行词 how to make money, 这是一个短语。)

He is not only clever but, what is very likely, honest. (what 也可指由一个单词表示的先行词 honest)

He supposes (what is not likely) that everyone respect him.

He has (what is most precious with him) a small dog.

2. 插在先行词和关系词之间的词

560 一般说来，在先行词和关系词之间是没有什么词的。但是有时会夹

有各种修饰先行词的形容词短语：

A doctor from Hong Kong (介词短语), who (指代 doctor, 而不指代 Hong Kong) is a specialist in heart disease has just moved here.

At the door was a beggar carrying a basket (现在分词短语) who (代表 beggar) had been hungry for three days.

The man to help you (不定式), who (代表 man) is my good friend, will study your case.

It is a book of grammar, which (代表 book, 而不代表 gram-mar) I bought at a Japanese store.

The book published last year (过去分词短语) which he had written ten years, has been a bestseller.

He has never seen a man so good (带副词的形容词) as (代表 man) is willing to sacrifice himself.

He did it in a manner so perfect as proved his ability.

There is no habit so stubborn but one can cure. (书面语)

561 有时另一个关系从句修饰先行词, 甚至和它构成一个整体, 这时它可以放在先行词及其关系从句之间, 在这种情况下必须用一个不同的关系代词 (可参阅 587 节) :

He is the only "man that resides in this city" who (不是 that) lives to be a hundred and forty. (who 引起的从句修饰 "man + that-从句")

There is not a "lesson which I have learned" that (不是 which) I don't understand, that I don't remember. (注意: 两个关系代词都用作宾语, 但只有第一个关系代词 which 可以省略。)

562 当作主语的先行词跟一个较长 (或更强调) 的关系从句及一个短 (或较不强调) 的谓语时, 谓语可以放在先行词和从句之间:

His brother (作主语的先行词) was arrested (短谓语) who had misappropriated the Society's funds (长关系从句). (这样安排要比正常的顺序, 如 His brother, who had misappropriated the Society's funds, was arrested. 更好一些)

He (作主语的先行词) won't live long (短谓语) who smokes at least two packs of cigarettes every day for many years (长关系从句).

They always talk (较不强调的谓语), who never think (较强调的关系从句).

He can conquer the world who can conquer himself.

This book will live forever (短谓语) which is written in blood and tears (更强调的关系从句).

My habit cannot be changed, which has existed for many years.

Such an accident suddenly happened (短谓语) as had never happened before in this area (长从句).

The same method is now used here, as has been used in Europe for a hundred years.

Which of you can believe, that has seen the falsehood?

Who didn't pity her, that had heard her sad story?

What can I say , that may convince him? (在问句中先行词可以是宾语)

It (=The person) is Mr . A that (or who) will call on us .

(=The person that will call on us is Mr . A .) (在 It is 和 that-从句之间的词是特别强调的部分)

It is he (not him) that told me this .

It was another fellow that I wanted .

It is I that am (or is) mistaken .

It is you that are (or is) deceived .

It (=The thing) is a small house that (or which) I want to buy . (= The thing that I want to buy is a small house .)

It is always a trifle that we quarrel over .

Hardly a man came but was astonished at her beauty . (=Almost every one that came was astonished at her beauty .) (书面语)

What did I see but was miserable? (=I saw nothing except what was miserable .) (先行词是宾语)

Who could I speak to but were thieves and gangsters? (=I could not speak to people who were not thieves and gangsters .)

563 当作宾语的先行词跟有一个长关系从句和一个短宾语补语时 , 宾语补语应放在先行词和从句之间 :

He considers the method (先行词作宾语) out-of-date (短宾语补语) which has been used for a thousand years (长关系从句) .

(这样安排比正常顺序 , 如 He considers the method which has been used for a thousand years , out-of-date . 更好一些) I regard that man (先行词) as lost (短补语) who has lost the sense of shame (强调从句) .

The doctor asked the patient (先行词) to remain in bed (短补语) who must not even sit in a chair .

564 一个名词有时夹在所有格的先行词及关系代词之间 :

I know his plot , who (=and he) has set the same trap three times . (who 不代表 plot , 而代表 his , 但改为 the plot of him , who...比 his plot , who...更好一些)

I will consider John's proposal (改为 the proposal of John 更好) , who (=and he) may have a good idea .

3 . 关系词作主语、宾语和补语

a . 关系代词作主语

565 作主语时，关系代词是不能省略的，但 there is 或 here is 后却可以：

There is a lady (who) wants to see you . (口语体)

There were many people (who) waited outside .

There has never been anything (that) can satisfy him .

Here is a gentleman from England (who) wants to talk with the manager .

566 关系代词在 there is 前面时也可省略：

He knows the difference (that or which) (通常都省略) there is between good and evil .

War is the commonest thing there is in this world .

I have told him everything there is to tell .

He is the greatest scientist there is .

You can see all there is to see .

The mistakes there are in the exercises are astounding .

That is all there is and there has been .

567 在 “ It is+名词 (代词) ” 后面的关系代词也可以省略：

It was a small mistake (which or that) ruined him . (口语体)

A small mistake it was ruined him .

It is he (not him) (who or that) must apologize .

He it is must apologize .

Who is it (that) does such foolish things ?

What was it (that) happened to him ?

That was nothing (which) exasperated him . (少见)

I am not a man (that) likes to tell lies . (少见)

b. 在各种动词后作宾语的关系代词

568 关系代词可以在各种动词后用作宾语。在限制性从句中作宾语时 which, that, whom 都可以省略, 且通常都省略。但 what, but, as 不能省。在下面例句中, 可省略的关系词都加上圆括号, 或不写出来。

569 1) 作及物动词宾语的关系代词:

He closed the door, which (引起非限制性关系从句) the children soon after broke open. (在非限制性关系从句中关系代词不能省略。下面非限制性关系词以 N (Non - restrictives) 表示。)

He did not love his wife, whom (N) he married only a month ago.

He repaired the door (which or that) (限制性关系词, 以 R [Restrictives] 代表) the children had broken open. (在限制性从句中可以省略)

He will marry the girl (whom) (R) he met a week ago.

A pleasant trip (that) (R) (宾语) we had had! (在这类表示情绪的句子中, 限制性从句前的关系代词通常都省略。)

A nice friend you have!

The music we are enjoying!

The life I live!

Pretty mess you are in!

It is not money (that) I want. (= The thing that I want is not money.)

It is John I saw. (= The person that I saw is John.)

What is it you are watching? (= What is the thing that you are watching?)

Who was it they arrested?

(关于 it 的用法可参阅 562 节)

570 2) 作双宾动词的宾语:

There came two boys, whom (N) (作间接宾语) I gave some oranges.

I bought some oranges, which (作直接宾语) I gave the two boys.

The boy (that) (R) (作间接宾语) I gave oranges (to) is clever.

The children I told stories (to) want more.

The oranges (作直接宾语) I gave them are delicious.

The stories I told them are interesting.

What I teach those students is grammar.

571 3) 作宾补动词的宾语, 跟有各种不同的补语:

He cleaned the desk, which (N) the children had made dirty (形容词作补语).

He was acquainted with John, whom he called Fatty (名词).

What one considers of little use (介词短语) often proves useful.

He did not see the boy (whom) he had asked to come at seven. (不定式)

He likes the girl (whom) he has heard sing somewhere (不带 to 的不定式) .

He must settle the matter (which) they left undecided (过去分词) .

It is such a game as you will find very interesting (现在分词) .

572 4) 作“及物动词+副词”这种短语动词的宾语：

She has made a new dress , which (N) she will put on next Christmas .

On the desk he saw a newspaper , which he took up and read .

She is making a dress (which) (R) she will put on next Christmas .

Smoking is a habit many cannot give up .

She came back to take the purse she had left behind .

I must take back what he has taken away from me .

573 5) 作状语从句中及物动词的宾语：

He is a good fellow , whom (N) you will get assistance from whenever you need (状语从句中的及物动词) .

It is a rule which (R) if you violate you will be punished .

c . 作介词的宾语

574 当一个介词有一个关系代词作它的宾语时,它可以放在这个代词的前面或远远放在后面。这种关系从句可以是限制性的,也可以是非限制性的。关于介词的位置,有下面几种情况:

1) 介词有前后两种位置:

如果关系代词 whom (或 who) 或 which 和一个及物的动词短语一起用,在口语体中,介词远远放在后面,即放在动词短语的末尾,而在书面语中,它放在关系代词的前面:

Love is something which (R) he believes in . (口语体)

Love is something in which he believes . (书面语)

He has made a mistake which I feel sorry for . (口语体)

He has made a mistake for which I feel sorry . (书面语)

That is the person whom I got this news from . (口语体)

That is the person from whom... (书面语)

Hunger, which (N) war usually ends in, sometimes kills more than war . (口语体)

Hunger, in which... (书面语)

My friends, whom he had turned his back to, told me this . (口语体)

My friends, to whom... (书面语)

575 2) 介词通常放在关系代词前面:

如果介词表示 a) 时间, b) 方式或是 c) 与 whom 及一双宾动词一起用,它都放在关系代词前面:

a) I shall never forget the day on which (R) we got married . (不要说 the day which we got married on)

1950 was my worst year, in which (N) I almost died .

b) I don't know the difficulty with which you have studied English . (不要说 the difficulty which you studied English with)

The city was thrown into an ecstasy of delight, in which (N) everyone was celebrating New Year's Day .

c) I waited for a reply from the man to whom I had sent a telegram . (I had sent (双宾动词) the man a telegram .)

I will see John, for whom I have found a job . (I have found (双宾动词) John a job .)

576 3) 介词常常放在关系代词后面:

如果介词明显是 a) 及物动词短语的一部分, b) 表示地点或方向, c) 表示工具或渠道, 或 d) 表示目的时, 介词常常放在关系代词后面。但这一规律人们有时忽视。

a) The child (which) (R) she looked after was ten . (The child after which she looked was ten . 很少见)

This illness, which (N) he suffered from, had killed his father .

b) The state (which) I am going to is California .

That room, which she has slept in for 10 years, faces north .

c) I have just lost the pen(which) I wrote with for many years .
This waterway ,which we have always travelled by ,is now occupied
by the enemy .

d) He forgets the business which he has come on .

Where is the freedom—which we have struggled for for 20 years ?

4) 在下面情况下，介词只能放在关系代词后面，亦即放在及物动词
短语末尾：

a) 如果关系代词为 that :

There is something that you are not aware of .

The boy that my father spoke to is John's son .

b) 如果（在限制性从句中）关系代词被省略：

He is not a doctor you can quarrel with .

That is all we fled the country with .

Money is not the only thing I am working for .

c) 如果关系代词为 what :

I can give you whatever you ask for .

What one is truly interested in is one's wife and chil- dren .

d) 如果关系从句中包含一个系动词（在这种情形下，关系代词都省
略）：

That was the hotel (which) I had been in .

He buys many things one can be without .

I know the obligation I am under .

e) 如果关系代词为两个或更多不同介词的宾语，或是一个及物动词
和另一不及物动词后介词的宾语：

The old man whom (R) I talked with and applied to is my boss .

This man , whom (N) I wrote to and asked a favour of , will study
my case .

The old man whom I visited and applied to is my boss .

This man , whom I wrote to and invited , will study my case .

f) 如果关系代词前面已有介词 of :

Dr . Lee , the office of whom (N) I had been looking for for
two hours , had moved to a house just opposite to mine .

Tomorrow I go to HongKong , the market of which I will make a
study .

There are in this class ten subjects , some (or all , none ,
seven) of which I must pay much attention to .

g) 如果关系代词为 but , as 或 than :

There is not a street but I know much of . (书面语)

There is no conspiracy but he sees through .

I have never seen such an animal as you are telling me about .

Such people as you made acquaintance with are gam - blers .

People have given this rich man more than (=than what) he cares
for .

577 在先行词后面和不定式前面，有时可以用一个“介词+ which 或

(whom) +不定式 ” 的结构 :

He has a piece of land on which to live (= on which he may live) .

He has a son on whom to depend (=on whom he can de - pend) .

A book with which to spend my holiday is in my pocket .

This is no place in which to talk nonsense .

We should have a purpose for which to act (= for which we must act) .

578 这种 “ 介词+ which ” 或 “ 介词+ whom ” 的结构 , 不仅能修饰后面的动词 , 而且还能修饰前面的先行词 , 成为一个形容词短语 :

There are in this class fifty students , the backgrounds of whom (or of whom the backgrounds) (=whose backgrounds) are almost the same .

Most of the villagers are peasants , the land of whom (or of whom the land) is not very fertile .

I have been in the north , the climate of which (or of which the climate) (=whose climate) is unbearable .

These apples , some (or all , none , a few , three) of which were rotten , were bought ten days ago .

d . 关系代词作非谓语动词的宾语

579 1) 作动名词的宾语 :

He is a bad man , whom (N) I always avoid meeting .

John is a nice fellow , with whom I enjoy talking 或 whom I enjoy talking with (及物动词短语) .

This is the house which (R) we consider buying .

He teaches a subject which he must admit having no idea of (及物动词短语) .

580 2) 分词的宾语 :

I passed by his house , which (N) I found nobody looking after .

The child (whom) (R) his mother has kept me teaching for five years , remains ignorant .

581 3) 不定式的宾语 :

It is an unpleasant job , which (N) he will refuse to do .

He sent his son a certain sum of money , which he bade his son (to) spend carefully .

He is the thief (whom) (R) the police want to arrest .

He is a man whom to know (or to know whom) is an honour . (或 He is a man it is an honour to know .)

This is the prize which has run many miles to win .

(比较 : He became the scholar his parents had intended him to be .

He was dressed like a doctor which he wished to be .)

e . 关系代词作补语

582 关系代词 which , that , as 都可在关系从句中用作主语的补语 , 而 who 和 whom 却不能。Which 用在非限制性关系从句中 , that 用在限制性关系从句中 , 并可以省略。两者不仅可代表东西 , 也可代表人。As 可用于限制性或非限制性关系从句中 , 可指东西也可指人 :

He looks like a gangster , which (or as) (N) he is (=and he is a gangster .)

You are a fool , which (or as) he is not (=but he is not a fool) .

He wrote a great book , which (or as) it still is today .

He wants to be useful , which (or as) (代表前面的形容词)

he has never been (= but he has never been useful) .

He is honest , as are all his friends .

I remember the sweet girl (that) (R) she was .

He is now the handsome boy (that) he was not .

He is not the man (that) he seems .

He is all (that) a man should be .

I speak to the man (that) you should be . (不是 (that) you are)

He is not the same man as he was .

Mr . A , honest fellow that (or as) he was , would not do such a foolish thing . (that 或 as 的先行词 fellow 可用作另一名词的同位语 , 前面不加冠词。)

I will send the flowers to Lily , angel that she is .

I must advise John , rascal that he is , to do no more mischief .

I lend him the money , fool that (or as) I was . (= I , fool that I was , lent him the money .)

Kill me , robber that (or as) you are . (= You , robber that you are , kill me .)

would you marry him ? Such handsome boy as he is !

Which , that 和 as 也可在关系从句中用作宾语的补语 :

He is the president of the United States , which (N) the people elected him two years ago .

He is not the gentleman (that) (R) people thought him .

He remains the naughty boy (that) you used to find him .

Mary does not like such a playboy as she considers John .

He is no more such a fatty as people called him .

4 . 作关系形容词的 Whose 和 Which

583 关系词 whose 和 which 可以用作所有格来修饰一个名词 , 因此可以称作关系形容词 , whose 不仅可以代表人 , 还可代表物 :

There came Mary , whose (=and her) dress was attractive .

The vet treated a dog , whose (= and its) legs had been bruised (or , the legs of which had been bruised) .

I have been in Japan , whose scenery is beautiful .

I congratulated Mr. Lee, whose performance was wonderful.
(Mr. Lee performed.)

We lamented for Mr. Lee, whose murder was unexpected.

(Mr. Lee was murdered. [这句中 murder 有被动意义])

His works interested my uncle, whose admiration encouraged him. (My uncle admired.)

They longed for independence, whose declaration was made in 1776. (Independence was declared.)

I met a friend the other day, which (=and this) friend invited me to a concert. (作为关系形容词, which 只能用在非限制性关系从句中。这种用法仅限于书面语, 而且有些笨拙。)

I stayed in Tokyo for two months, during which time (=but during this time) I met very few old friends.

I started for Calcutta, in which city I decided to stay some days.

I met John and Mary, which latter (=Mary) asked me about my wife. (少见)

They bribed the officials, which practice was very common here. (which 可代表整个主句或主句的一部分)

You must learn one or two foreign languages, for which purpose you must see Professor White.

Some students forgot to bring their books, in which case they would be punished.

The commander was killed, which circumstance (or which fact) was very serious.

5. 带插入语的结构

584 像 I know, they are sure, it is hoped 这类插入语, 可以紧跟在关系代词后面, 不影响关系代词的原来结构:

This was Qin Shi Huang, who (N), historians believe, was the worst monarch of China.

如果插入语不长, 前后的逗号可以省略。

He applied to John, whom I know he had applied to three times.

He has a sewing machine which, it cannot be denied, is the best thing in this village.

The millionaire had a very ugly girl who, I could not have dreamed, many boys fell in love with.

He is the gentleman who (R), I have told you, came yesterday to ask the hand of my daughter.

He wrote a letter which I think was to be sent to her.

There will be an incident which, everybody is sure, will take place within a week.

They punished a thief whom I knew had been caught several times. (有些人用 who 而不用 whom)

He is the boy whom I believe loves Mary.

He wrote a letter (which) I think he dared not send her .

They punished a thief (whom) I knew they had been hunt - ing for years .

585 另一种插入语,如 what you call 之类,可放在另一个词(如名词、动词等)前面,表示“你所谓的”这类意思,有讽刺的味道:

He knows what you call (放在名词前) “philosophy” .

What you call “human beings” are selfish animals .

At twelve he , what we call (用在动词前) , “went out into the world” .

The tyrant felt in his old age what historians call (放在形容词前) “regretful .”

He is devoted to what is known as “social work .”

6 . 一连几个的关系从句

586 一个先行词后可以跟两个非限制性或限制性关系从句,由 and ,but 或 or 连接起来:

Lee knows a young man , who teaches history and whose wife is a nurse . (两个非限制性关系从句,由 and 连接起来,各有不同的关系代词。)

Did you see the stranger who came along with a woman yesterday morning and who suddenly disappeared ? (两个限制性定语从句由 and 连接起来)

The fellow that you saw but whom nobody noticed was a thief .

Things that you know or that you think you know are often deceptive .

The boy whom she met years ago and she has not seen (him)

since then , will come to her today . (有时在第二个从句中,可以用一个人称代词替代关系代词。有些人不写 and whom she has not seen 而写 and she has not seen him)

I know the firm which John served for years but he quitted (it) later (用来代替 but which he quitted later) .

I have never seen a man whose nose is so long and his (=whose) mouth so small .

587 一个先行词可以先和一个限制性关系从句结合起来,表示一个统一的意思,然后再由另一限制性定语从句加以修饰,这时两个关系从句间不能用 and ,but 或 or 这样的连词:

He is the only man that lives in the city (=citizen) who (not that) lives to be over a hundred . (在这样的句子中要用不同的关系代词,先用 that,再用其他关系代词。)

There is not a lesson (X) I have learned that I don't understand . (可把 lesson I have learned 作为一个整体,第一个关系代词可以省略,但第二个不宜省略。)

There is not a lesson that I have learned but (=which...not) I understand . (=I understand all the lessons I have learned) . (书面语)

在“ It is+名词+关系从句+关系从句 ”的结构中 , who , whom , which 后面都用 that :

It is only a man who is rich enough that can be honest .

(=The only man that can be honest is a man who is rich enough .)

(It 指人 , 由 that 引起的从句加以修饰。)

It is only a man who has seen many hardships that can be a leader .

It is trees which are too large that will be uprooted by the hurricane . (it 指东西 , 由 that 引起的从句加以修饰。)

It is always the mouth which talks too much that arouse troubles .

· 关系副词

588 关系副词同时既作连词又作副词。

1. Where

589 Where 为地点副词，必须放在表示地点的名词后面表示“在那里……”：

This is the city where (=in which) (R) we live .

Here is the farm where (=on which) my family works .

In this city you can see a tree (可当作地点) where an emperor hanged himself long ago .

The casket where she keeps her diamond is lost .

I will show you the point (or the case, the instance) where you fail . (有些抽象名词可用于引申意义，仿佛是一个地方。)

This is a job where you can learn something .

I met Lee at a tea-house, where (=and there) (N) we discussed the current events .

Her casket, where she kept her diamond, was lost .

The park, at the eastern corner of the city, where many children play, is very beautiful . (有时在先行词和关系副词之间可插进别的词，可参阅 560—562 节。)

The place is quiet where hundreds of pairs of lovers used to spend their evening . (参阅第 562 节。)

This is where (=the place where) I live . (先行词这里没有出现，可参阅 551 节。)

The world is where (=the place where) every man must play a part .

We all come back to where we start .

He is from where rice grows in abundance .

We live near where accidents happen every day .

2. When

590 When 是一个表示时间的副词，须放在表示时间的先行词后，表示“在那时……”：

I long for a moment (when) (=at which) (R) I can have a rest . (引起限制性关系从句时，when 可以省略，在大众口语中有时由 as 代替。)

I cannot forget the day (when) (=on which) I fell in love with her .

The month (when) (=in which) the revolt broke out was horrible .

The years of war and hunger, when nobody was sure of his life, will be here again . (在先行词和关系副词 when 之间有时出现别的词，在这种情况下，when 不能省略。参阅 560—562 节)

The years of peace are no more when everyone can lead a happy life .

The time was when (=the time when) Spain ruled the seas .

(先行词未出现 , 可参阅 551 节。)

This (or That) will be when you grow older .

He should come on Sunday , when (=and on Sunday) (N)

I shall be free to meet him .

We are waiting for New Year 's Day , when (=and on NewYear 's Day)
we children shall have new clothes to wear . 3 . How

591 How 是表示方式的副词 , 必须放在表示方式的名词后面 , 总是用在限制性关系从句中 , 而且通常都省略 :

This is the manner (how) (= in which) you treat me . Can you tell me the way (how) he did it ? This is the way (how) it was and will always be . That (or This) is how (=the way how) he got rich . (这里先行词未出现)

4 . Why

592 Why 是一个表示原因或理由的副词 , 必须放在表示原因和理由的先行词后面 , 总是用在限制性定语从句中 :

Is that the reason (why) (= for which) you study dancing ?
There is no cause why he suspects me .

This (or That) is why (=the reason why) he failed . (这里先行词未出现)

You are why my hair becomes grey .

5 . That

593 That 在大多数情况下都用作关系代词 , 但在非正式语言中可用作关系副词来代替 when , how 或 why , 而且还可以省略 : The night (that) (= when) we started was rainy . Every time (that) I met her , she was accompanied by a boy . His mother died on the evening (that) (=when) he wasborn .

I know the place (that) (=where) he stays .

There is nowhere (that) we can go .

Everywhere (that) I went , I saw misery .

The speed (that) (=at which) he is driving is 70 miles perhour .

He told me nothing about the reason (that) (=why) he re - signed .

This was the manner (or the way) (=that) (= how) hecheated me .

6 . As

594 As 用在 “ the same+先行词 ” 后 , 总是用在限制性关系从句中。这个副词和 549 中讨论的代词 as 是不同的 :

He did it in the same manner as you did it .

It may be completed with the same speed as it was done before .

7 . 陈旧的关系副词

595 下面的例子说明了一些陈旧副词的意义和用法 :

This is the street whence (= from which) every sin comes .

Do you know the place whither (= to which) a dead mangoes ?

The store whereat (=at which) I bought my glasses is near
athand .

This is the point wherein (=in which) you make a mistake .

He went out by the backdoor whereby (=by which) he came .

Is this the knife wherewith (=with which) you killed her ?

第十一单元 同位语

. 同位语的定义

596 同位语是一个名词，表示与前面名词相同的人或物，如在“my friend John”中，John 是 friend 的同位语；在“the Yangtze, longest river of China”中，river 是 Yangtze 的同位语。这两个词分别对前面的名词（可称为主体词）加以解释。

597 两个名词一起用时，第 2 个名词不一定是同位语。在下面例子中两个名词各表示不同东西：

a gold watch the iron bars
the pioneer work Turkey carpets

在下面例句中，后面的代词只是重复前面的主语，也不能称作同位语：

John, he will come. (多余代词)
The travellers, they had to stay the night.
He will come this evening, he. (强调的说法)
I shall try, .

598 有些同位语的作用接近形容词，因为它修饰前面的名词，并依靠它而存在。但它又不同于形容词，形容词限制它所修饰名词的意义，而同位语与前面名词是等同的。

· 同位语与主体词的一致性

599 同位语无需与主体词在“数”上一致，谓语动词却必须与作主语的主体词一致：

I like Mary and John, students in this class. (同位语与主体词一致)

We trudged along under the stars, our only guide (同位语可以和主体词不一致)

His dinner, eggs and vegetables, is (而不是 are) simple. (动词必须与主语一致，而无需和其同位语一致。)

Lotteries, a money-raising device, are (而不是 is) popular here.

600 同位语必须与主体词在“格”上一致。

601 1. 如果主体词(黑体字)为主格，同位语(斜体字)也应当用主格：

Three persons—you, he and I—will have to maintain this big family.

The Diamond, the best-known restaurant in town, is not far away.

Our manager, Mr. Lee, will soon return.

The committee, White, Nixon and she, are to examine the case.

602 2. 如果主体词为宾格，同位语也需用宾格：

You may ask anyone—him, her or me.

They invited our family—father, mother and me—to their country-house.

Our victory lies in an invisible weapon, our morale.

At the news, I felt ashamed for us officials.

603 3. 如果主体词为所有格，同位语也应为所有格：

It is his father's, Dr. Johnson's office.

He is to inherit his grandmother's, Lady Whitestone's property.

It is his, your father's, sweat and blood that you are squandering.

I saw her at her aunt's, Mrs. Read's (房舍).

I bought it at Simpson's, the Shoemaker's (商店).

I went to Whitestone's, the publisher's (机构).

(但在最后三例中, aunt's, Simpson's 和 Whitestone's 中的's 可省略。)

如果主体词与同位语结合很紧密，则只需在同位语后加's.：

I wish to borrow your brother John's bicycle.

(这时主体词与同位语之间没有逗号)

These are photographer Wells's latest pictures.

May I have a look at Captain Smith's letters?

如果这两个成分连接很松散，而同位语也有相当长度，由这两者修饰的名词可以插在它们之间，这样同位语也可不加 - 's。如：He's under

Dr . Kim's , a Korean specialist's treatment . 这个句子可以改为下面两句：

He is under Dr . Kim's careful treatment , a Korean special-ist in heart disease . (较好)

He is under the careful treatment of Dr . Kim , a Korean spe- cialist in heart disease . (又更好 , 避免连用=所有格)

This house is John's (house) , an importer of German cars .

These words are Shakespeare's(words) , the greatest of English poets .

I am interested in Darwin's writings , the first man to build up the theory of evolution . (I am interested in the writ - ings of Darwin , the first man...这样说更好些)

. 同位语的位置

604 多数同位语都紧跟它的主体词：

My friend John .

Mrs . Kim , my aunt .

We , the lawyers .

Captain Lee .

605 同位语有时放在离主体词较远的后部 ,特别是同位语受到强调或是比较长时：

We should try our best , you and I .

Who is to blame , John or Mary ?

I am on the moon , a stranger in a strange environment .

Isn't it a dagger what I see before me ?

He is a wonderful man , that brother of yours .

It is not always wise to tell the truth .

It is not a fault , being poor .

Let us sit together , you and me .

Let us be cautious , us hunters .

I swung in the sky , the most beautiful sight on earth .

We invited all his family to the beach—him , his wife , his dog .

Let the word get around that David was dead .

We travelled to the Great wall , the best - known spot in China .

. 相当于名词的成分作主体词或同位语

A . 相当于名词的成分作主体词

606 不仅名词可以作主体词，而且相当于名词的成分也可以作主体词（下面例句中的黑体词）。

607 代词作主体词：

I , your father , should advise you about your marriage .

They should no more look down on us workers .

They are no ordinary people , those scientists and engineers .

I think it necessary to act more and to speak less .

608 不定式作主体词：

To talk about things you don't know—that is foolish .

To read , to understand , to listen and to write—these four functions of the mind are different from each other .

609 动名词作主体词：

Sitting idle and working too hard—both are inadvisable .

Cursing your children and beating them—is this the only way to teach them ?

610 从句作主体词：

What he is , where he comes from , what he comes for—these three questions have puzzled me many days .

He is married to a Korean girl—a fact few people know .

The President was suddenly assassinated—a circumstance that will arouse lots of troubles in the country .

His belly was swollen—sure signs , that he would die soon .

B . 相当于名词的成分作同位语

611 不仅名词可以作同位语，一些相当于名词的成分也可用作同位语。
(见例句中的斜体字)

612 代词作同位语：

To multiple 5 by 3 and to multiple 3 by 5—both are correct .

For everyone to have enough food , enough clothing , and to have a house , a car—this should be the aim of all politicians .

613 不定式作同位语：

He has the misfortune to lose his wife .

He has a plan to rebuild this city .

For the last ten years he has had a great wish—to build a hundred - and - one - storied building .

His ambition to become an engineer deserves our assistance .

It is no use to dissuade them from fighting .

Only one course is now open to us—to fight to the last man .

614 动名词作同位语：

He tried to achieve the impossible , earning a million dollars in a week .

His idea— making our country strong before making her rich—has many supporters .

Is it good encouraging children to play at fighting?

615 从句作同位语：

The idea that we must make our country both strong and rich is good but impracticable in these few years .

The fact that man can land on the moon is no ordinary matter .

The cause why a man suffers from cancer is not yet known .

· 同位语的类别

A . 与主体词松散连接的同位语的特点

616 同位语可分为 2 类 ,即与主体词松散连接的同位语以及与主体词紧密结合的同位语。

617 第一类同位语有以下特点 :

1) 其内含与主体词相等、或比它更具体或更一般 ;
2) 前面有一逗号 ,破折号 ,或 namely ,or ,to wit ,that is ,that is to say ,viz , i . e . 这类标记 ;

3) 主体词前有一个限定词 (如 a , the , this , that , some) , 也可以没有 ;

4) 前面没有 of 这个词 ;

5) 本身构成一个概念 , 与主体词包含的概念相平行。

Beijing , the capital of China . (相等) .

A cosmonaut , that is , a person trained to fly in space .

A person trained to fly in space , that is , a cosmonaut .

Two friends of mine , namely , Eva and Ida . (更具体) .

Three important languages , i . e . English , Chinese and Spanish .

History—the record of war and crime .

We—Thomas , Paul and I .

Eva and Ida , two friends of mine . (更一般) .

English , Chinese and Spanish , in other words , three important languages .

618 这类结构的一个变体是 it (或另外代词) , 作为特殊的主体词 , 通常被一些词插入而和同位语隔开 , 同位语可以是不定式、从句等 :

It is foolish to commit suicide .

It astonishes me that this child should know everything .

It was presumed that I could persuade a drunkard .

He knows ten languages , that Spaniard . (口语体)

They lost the support of the people , those corrupt officials .

I find it foolish to commit suicide .

I regard it as necessary for you to advise him .

They consider it natural that he should marry her .

B. 与主体词紧密结合的同位语的特点

619 第二类同位语有以下特点：

- 1) 比主体词更具体，而主体词为更一般；
- 2) 前面很少有逗号或其他任何标记；
- 3) 主体词前常有 the；
- 4) 和主体词结合表示一个概念。

the ship Eagle

the river Kwei

the space shuttle Columbus

the proverb "Look before you leap"

620 这种结构的一个变体是前面带 of 的同位语：

the title (of) 'emperor' (of 可以省略)

the novel (of) War and Peace

the crime of murder (of 必须使用)

The Republic of India

of 引起的短语，通常起形容词的作用，修饰它前面的词。但在这里它起一种特殊作用，作前面那个词的同位语。此外，还有一种变体，这类同位语甚至可以放在主体词的前面（而不是后面）。在这样放置之后，同位语成了限制性形容词，两个成分结合得如此紧密，几乎成了一个合成词：

the Columbus Space Shuttle

the Harz Mountain

the Bull Mountain Inn

the New York Harbor

C . 与主体词松散连接的同位语的各种例句

621 专有名词作主体词：

Mary , my sister ; Bill Clinton , the president of the U . S . A . ;
Paris , the capital of France ; Homer , an ancient Greek poet .

622 在期刊中冠词常常省略：

Ida Wells , (a) twenty - year - old singer ; Rhonda White , (an)
English teacher ; Paul Polo , (the) chairman of × × club .

623 普通名词作主体词：

Books , the record of human wisdom ; machines , the extentionsof
our hands , a knowledge-box , i . e . a rural school - house ; a quadruped ,
in simple terms , a four-footed animal ; a four-foot-ed animal ,
technically (speaking) , a quadruped .

624 抽象名词作主体词：

Printing , the art of spreading knowledge ; memory , the basis of
all learning .

625 代词作主体词：

We , the teachers ; us , doctors ; you , all the politicians .

626 两个或更多主体词：

Algebra , geometry and even arithmetic , all are too difficult for
my head .

My sons and my daughters , both are dear to me .

1 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 9 , 11 , etc . , these are odd numbers .

627 句子作主体词：

Suddenly one day the criminal came home with a long , long
beard—a fact you never can believe .

He suffers from tuberculosis—a circumstance that is to
bring about another trouble .

628 注意主体词与同位语之间的各种标记：

629 Here we have four seasons : (or i . e . , viz . , namely , that
is [to say]) , spring , summer , autumn , winter . (这种标记放在全
数例子之前)

There are over a hundred elements , e . g . (or for example ,
for instance) , oxygen and carbon . (这种标记只放在少数例子之前)

Sodium chloride , or (or in common language , in other words) ,
table salt , is a compound consisting of sodium and chlorine .

Table salt , technically (speaking) sodium chloride , is scarce
in this area .

She likes classic , especially (or particularly) Hugo and
Tol - stoy . (放在同位语前面) 。

She likes classics , Hugo and Tolstoy in particular (放在同
位语后面) 。

630 注意各种同位语：

631 John , (though he is) a child of six , behaves like a grown

- up . (一个紧缩的从句作同位语)

I will ask Alan , (who is) an expert in this subject .

His father , (as he had been) a heavy smoker for the last forty years , died of cancer .

632 It was a race—a race against time . (与主体词重复的词作同位语)

His son—his only son—was killed in the war .

His friends , especially those below ten , are all present .

His dream came true , the dream of marrying a good wife .

This and just this is mine ; those and no others are his .

633 注意主体词 it (或其他人称代词) 后面的同位语 :

634 主体词 it 作主语 :

It is necessary to work harder . (同位语可以是不定式)

It makes me sad to think of his future .

It is foolish telling lies . (同位语是动名词)

It was a pity giving up this plan .

It is natural that this rich man should be proud . (that 引起的从句)

It astonished me that the governor should treat me like his brother .

It puzzled me how he could do that . (疑问词引起的从句)

It is a great pity , her death . (同位语是名词)

635 主体词 it 作宾语 :

I find it impossible to start any work . (同位语可以是不定式)

He makes it a rule getting up early . (动名词)

I will see to it that he will take care of you .

(that 引起的从句可以紧跟在 “ 介词+ it ” 的结构后面)

You may rely upon it that he can help you .

636 主体词 He , She...作主语 :

He is neglected and laughed at , that poor poet .

She became crazy , that old woman . They will be angry with me , my parents .

D . 与主体词紧密结合的同位语的各种例句

1 . 前面没有 of 的同位语

637 注意主体词：

638 职业名称作主体词：

the lawyer Amy wood , the painter Black , the dancer NoraWhite
有时职业名称放在人名后，这时职业受到强调：

Amy Wood the lawyer , Black the painter , Nora White the dancer .

639 动物名作主体词：

the horse Bucephalus , the dog Funny

640 实物名称作主体词：

the ship Eagle , the satellite Sputnik , the machine Singer ,
the weapon V -1 , the planet Mars , the constellation Pisces , the metal
aluminium , the precious stone opal

641 词与符号作主体词：

the word “ do ” , the adjective “ red ” , the phrase “ at school ” ,
the sentence “ I love you ” , the figure 8 , the mark \$

642 名词作主体词，而同位语为 that 引起的从句：

The idea that the earth is round is true .

The news that her son had been killed was a great shock to
her . (名词前常常加 the)

There is a possibility that he's crazy . (名词前有时可加其他
限定词)

Their rule that every student should wear the uniform is
not strictly observed .

Some rumour that he would resign was unfounded .

There can be no doubt that John is intelligent and also
hard-working .

Is there any certainty (that) he will get married ? (that
有时可省略)

An order was issued that people should stay at home ,
especially after dusk . (在名词和从句之间有时插入一个短的成分)

A story goes that an emperor jumped into this well .

Nobody can explain the mystery why he was murdered . (有时
可用一个疑问词引起的从句作同位语)

I can't answer the question when we'll have enough food .

643 可用人称代词或名词所有格代替 the：

My friend John , Mary's friend Lilian , your brother Tom .

644 在 mount , lake 这类名词前面，the 可以省略：

Mount Everest , Lake Michigan , Cape Comoron , Fort St .

George , Castle Wildenstein , Hurricane Eileen

在 Premier , General 这类头衔前，the 也会省略：

Premier Churchill , King Alfred , Queen Victoria , Sir
Walter Raleigh , Count Monte Cristo , Lord Leicester , President Clinton

- ton , General Pershing , Secretary of State Dulles , Captain Goldsmith , Mr . White , Dr . Wilson , Professor Lee , Farmer Whitestone , Brother Paul , Uncle John , Aunt Mary

某些职业名称前, the 有时也可省略, 特别是在美国报纸中:

Lawyer Drinkwater , Literary Critic Andersen , Violinist Amy Keats

2 . 前面通常加 of 的同位语

645 在“ a property of my father ”中, of 表示所有关系; 在“ some of my friends ”中, of 表示“一部分”; 而在“ the book of Robinson Crusoe ”中, of 表示不同等东西, 意思是 Robinson Crusoe 是一本书。

在下面例句中 of 都属于第三种意义。

646 Of 可以用在 province 这样的地名后:

the province of Guangdong , the Strait of Gibraltar , the lake of Geneva , the Bay of Bengal , the city of Wuhan , the county of Kent , the Dominion of Pakistan , the Republic of India , the Kingdom of Thailand , the district of Delhi

647 Of 可以用在集体名词后:

the firm of Macmillan , the tribe of Hakka , the house of Rothschild , the family of Palmer , the line of Lochiel (但是: the Clan Chatton)

648 Of 可以加在抽象名词后:

the crime of murder , the game of hide - and - seek , the habit of smoking , the subject of business management , the practice of monogamy

649 Of 放在比喻的说法后:

the milk of human kindness (= human Kindness , which is as desirable as milk) , the tempest of his bad temper (= his bad temper , which is as violent as the tempest) , the sun of her beauty (= her beauty , which is as brilliant as the sun)

650 Of 放在表示时间的名词后:

the month of July , the hour of five , the year (of) 1952 , the great age of 95 (但是: the date January 13)

651 Of 可用在文艺作品名称前:

The novel (of) “ War and Peace ” , the poem (of) “ Ode to the West Wind ” , the tales (of) “ Reynard the Fox ” , the fairy tale (of) “ the Tin Soldier ” , the play (of) “ Hamlet ” , the statue (of) “ St . John the Baptist ” , the sonata (of) “ Moonlight ” , the song (of) “ Home , Sweet Home ”

652 Of 也可加在 name 或其同义词后:

the name (of) “ rose ” , the nickname (of) “ Shortie ” , the title (of) emperor , the designation (of) Sir William , the epithet (of) “ black - hearted ”

653 Of 可以用在动名词前:

the question of spending less and gaining more , the method

of decreasing what we want , the aim of saving more money , the folly of doing things aimlessly

654 Of 可以用在 “ 疑问词+不定式 ” 这种结构前 :

The question of how to spend less and gain more , the problem of what to do and what not to do .

655 Of 可以用在以疑问词引起的从句前 :

The question of (or as to) how we can spend less and gain more , the problem of (or as to) what I should do .

3 . 同位语放在主体词前的情况

656 有时同位语可放在主体词前 (参阅第 620 节) :

the Malay Peninsula , the Missouri River , the Atlantic Ocean , the Suez canal , the Sahara Desert , the North Pole , the Moscow Region , the Rhine Valley ; New York City , London Town , Guangdong Province , Greenwich Village , Henrico County , Nanjing Road , Westminster Bridge , Pearl Harbor

657 有些这样的名称前面加 the , 有些不加 :

the Garrick Theatre , the Windsor Hotel , the Fleet Prison , the Whitney Museum , the Empire State Building , the Washington Monument , the Birmingham University , the Albert Hall , the Smith Company , Westminster Cathedral , Buckingham Palace , Carnegie Hall

658 the Hardy brothers , the Kingery girls , the Johnson home , the Whitestone family , the Stuart line

659 the Rodney Cutter , the Serapis Frigate

660 the Irish Constitution Bill , the Rhine question

661 the Christmas season , the Moon Festival

662 the Missouri , the Atlantic , the Suez , the Sahara , New York , London , Oxford , Buckingham (这些名称后面的词如 the Missouri 后面的 River , the Atlantic 后的 Ocean , the Suez 后面的 Canal 因为人所熟知都被省略掉)

第十二单元 动词

. 概 说

A . 各种动词形式的构成法

663 英语中的动词时态不好掌握 ,其原因之一就是有许多使人产生误解的概念。“一般现在时”很少表示现在时间;“过去时”又可能表示现在的动作;“将来完成时”也可能表示过去的事情;“现在分词”并不总是指现在情况,而“过去分词”也并不老指过去。在某些情况下,“分词”纯然是动词,在有些情况下,它同时是动词又是形容词;在另一些情况中,“现在分词”又变成一个动词兼名词,称为动名词。为了避免某些误解,最好的办法是把它用于句子之前看作是原料,用在句子里之后看作是成品,把这两者严格分开。

664 除了助动词,每个动词都有5个形式,例如 see saw seen seeing, to see;又如 go, went, gone, going, to go. 这些形式都只是原料,不表明它们是指哪个时间、哪种情态及语态,也不表明它们起形容词、副词还是名词的作用。由于它们是没有色彩的字,唯一适当的办法是把 see 和 go 称为 PP1 (Princi - pal Part number one),把 saw, went 称作 PP2,把 seen, gone 称作 PP3,把 seeing 和 going 称作 PP4,把 to see 和 to go 称作 PP5,而不用它们现在的名称(现在时、过去时、过去分词、现在分词及不定式)。可以想像,说“将来时由 will 和现在时构成”,“过去将来时由 would 和现在时构成”,在“We are play - ing.”中,playing 纯粹是动词,而在“It was interesting.”中,分词又是形容词,等等,是如何地使人糊涂。

665 如把这些形式看作原料,就可以用它们(单独或借助 have, be, shall, will 这类助动词)构成任何情态、时态、语态而表示特定的意义。下表说明这些主要形式如何构成动词的各种时态,以及有些什么主要意义。

各种动词形式的构成

AUX= may, must, can, should, needn't, daren't, ought to BE= am, is, are, were, was; can(or could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, had to) be; have been

助动词	主要成分	动词形式	解释性例句
(do or AUX+) PP1	一般现在时: 表示反复发 生或无时间 性的动作	· I (can) teach English. · I (do) know it.	
will (or shall) + PP1	一般将来时: 表示将来动 作	· I shall teach English next year.	
would (or should) + PP1	过去将来时: 表示从过去 看的将来 情况	· He said in 1960 that he would teach English the following year (i. e. in	

		1961) .
would (or should , might , could , had to) + PP1	虚拟过去时 : 在条件从句 中或在表结 论的主句中 表示实现可 能性不大的 现在动作	· If I could teach English , I should be happy . (But I cannot .) · If I knew English , I would teach it .
did (or might , could , had to) + PP1	一般过去时 : 表示过去可 能发生的情 况	· He said he could teach English .
— PP2	一般过去时 : 表示过去动 作	· I taught English last year .
— PP2	虚拟过去时 : 表示实现可 能性不大的 现在动作或 无时间性动 作	· If I taught English , I should be a bad teacher . (But I do not .)
had taught had , shall have , will have , AUX have) + PP3	表示过去、 现在或将 来某时前 作	have (or 完成时态 : · I English by 10 a . m . yesterday . · I have taught 已完成动 English now . · I shall have taught English by 10 a . m . tomorrow .
had+ PP3	虚拟过去 完成时 : 在条件从句 中表示不真 实的过去动 作	· If I had taught English , I should have been a good teacher . (But I did not teach .)
would (or should , could , might) have+ pp3	虚拟过去 完成时 : 在表结论的 主句中表示 不真实的过 去动作	· If I had had a chance , I should have taught English .
BE+ (being) + PP3	被动语态 :	· I am (being) 表示主语 taught by Mr A .

	是动作的 承受者	
(being or having been) + PP3	过去 (或被 动) 分词 : 同时作被 动动词及 形容词	· I am a student (being) taught by Mr . A .
being (or having been) + PP3	被动动名词 : 作被动动 词及名词	· I like being taught by Mr . A .
to be (or to have been) +PP3	被动不定 式 : 作被动动词 及副词 , 动词及形 容词 , 或动 词及名词	· He came to be taught . (v . and adverb) · He is not a boy to be taught . (v . and adj .) · He does not like to be taught . (v . and n .)
BE+ PP4	进行时态 : 表示正在进 行的动作	· I am teaching English .
—PP4	现在 (或主动) 分词 : 作主动动词 及形容词 , 或主动动 词及副词	· She is a lady teaching English . (v . and adj .) · She gives us many examples while teaching English . (v . and adv .)
—PP4	主动动名词 : 作主动动词 及名词	· I like teaching English .
to be (or to have been) +PP4	进行不定式 : 表示重复的 动作	· To be teaching all day long is a bore .
— PP5	简单不定式 : 作为主动动 词及副词 , 动词及形容 词或动词及 名词	· I have come here to teach English . (v . and adv .) · I am not a man to teach Eng- lish .

(v . and adj .)

· I want to teach
English .

(v . and n .)

· I saw him teach
English .

—PP5 不带 to 的
without 不定式：
to 作宾语补语

666 根据上面的动词形式表，下面的动词组合是违反英语用法的，因而是错误的：

is go , was teach , have been make , could saw , might took , can
saw , may went , have be seen , will coming , would have saw , had be
seen , is eat , ought to had come , must seen , want see , will gone
667 下面是一些规则：

1 . PP1 前可以放任何助动词 (即 may , might , can , could , must ,
had to , do , did , will , would , shall , should , ought to , daren't ,
needn't) 。

2 . PP2 前不能放任何助动词。

3 . PP3 前可以加 have 或 had 构成完成时态。

PP3 前可以加 be 的任何形式构成被动语态。

前面无 have 和 be 时，PP3 是形容词 (或副词) 兼被动的动词。

4 . PP4 前可加 be 的任何形式以构成进行时态。

前面无助动词时，PP4 可以是形容词 (分词) 或名词 (动名词) ，同
时也是动词。

5 . PP5 起名词、副词或形容词的作用，同时又是动词。在用作宾语
补语时，前面可能不加 to。

B. 动词的主要成分

668 在动词的 5 个主要成分中, PP4 和 PP5 分别以加-ing 及 to 的方式构成。PP2 和 PP3 大多数都以加-ed 的方式构成, 但大约有 250 个动词有不规则的形式。

1. 规则动词

669 即使是规则动词, 在构成 PP2 和 PP3 时, 也有变异处, 值得注意。

670 PP2 及 PP3 构成法如下:

671 一般情况下在 PP1 后加-ed:

PP1	PP2	PP3
wish	wished	wished
talk	talked	talked
allow	allowed	allowed

672 PP1 若以 e 结尾, 只加-d:

hope	hoped	hoped
hate	hated	hated
debate	debated	debated

(但在构成 PP4 时, 在加-ing 前要把 e 去掉: hoping, hating, debating)

673 PP1 若以“辅音 + 元音 + 辅音”(CVC)结尾, 最后的辅音字母要双写, 再加-ed:

stir	stirred	stirred
stop	stopped	stopped
fit	fitted	fitted
admit	admitted	admitted
occú	occúred	occúred
pref é	pref éred	pref éred

如果最后音节不重读, 最后的辅音字母不必双写:

óffered, cónquered, éntered, visited, int épréted, dev éloped

674 但有一些例外情况:

hándicapped, h únbugged, h órsewhipped, z₁gzagged; w órship(p)ed, k₁dnap(p)ed, tr ável(l)ed, d éil(l)ed, c árol(l)ed, m ádel(l)ed, l ével(l)ed, r ével(l)ed, p éncil(l)ed(美国: -p-, -l-; 英国-pp-, -ll-)

(注: PP4 加词尾-ing 时, 和加-ed 时的情况一样:

stirring, stopping; admitting, pref érring; óffering, c ónquering; w órship(p)ing, tr ável(l)ing)

675 PP1 以 c 结尾时, 要变 c 为 ck 再加-ed:

mimic	mimicked	mimicked
havoc	havocked	havocked
bivouac	bivouacked	bivouacked
picnic	picnicked	picnicked
traffic	trafficked	trafficked

(比较: mimicking, havocking, bivouacking, ...)

676 PP1 若以 y 结尾，一般要变 y 为 i，再加-ed：

try	tried	tried
defy	defied	defied
study	studied	studied
testify	testified	testified

但 y 前若是一个元音字母，则 y 不必变：

play	played	played
destroy	destroyed	destroyed
employ	employed	employed

obey obeyed obeyed

但有几个例外情况：

lay	laid	laid
pay	paid	paid
say	said	said

677 -ed 词尾有 3 种读音。在清辅音后读作 [t]：

jumped [j)mpt] , dipped , developed
book ed [bukt] , baked , havocked
kissed [kist] , promised , perplexed
hashed [h\$t] , finished , demolished
perched [p+::tMt] , inched , lunched
knifed [naiMft] , laugh ed , photographed

以 t 或 d 结尾的词，-ed 读作 [id]：

acted [\$ktid] , seated , permitted
aided [eidid] , ended , succeeded

在其他情况下（即 PP1 以任何其他字母结尾时），- ed 读作 [d]：

loved[l)vd] , named , filled , died , answered , studied , pre-ferred

2. 不规则动词

678 几乎所有不规则动词都是单音节词，少数双音节及三音节词也是由单音节词加前缀构成：

a . bet , bless , knit , make , sweat , tread (单音节词) b . be - think , fore-tell , mis - take , un - do , re-build , out - grow , over - lie , under - go (加前缀)

c . back-bite , broad-cast , gain-say (合成词)

这些双音节词与三音节词所含的 PP2 与 PP3 和单音节词的 PP2 与 PP3 一样。

think , thought , thought ; bethink , bethought , bethought tell , told , told ; foretell , foretold , foretold

bite , bit , bitten ; backbite , backbit , backbitten

许多以-en 结尾的 PP3 都可用作形容词：

frozen fruit , woven thread , hewn timber , cloven hoofs , proven fact , driven snow , grown children , shorn lambs , ter-ror - stricken women , molten iron , drunken people , ill-gotten money

679 不规则动词表：

(斜体词为陈旧形式)

PP1 (现在时)

PP2 (过去时)

PP3 (过去分词)

abide	abode , abided	abode , abided
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awaked , awoke
backbite	backbit	backbitten ,
backbit		
backslide	backslid	backslid ,
backslidden .		
be (am , art , is , are)	was , wast , wert , were	been
bear	bore , bare	borne , born
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
befall	befell	befallen
beget	begot , begat	begotten
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beheld , beholden (=indebted)
bend	bent , bended	bent , bended (knees)
bereave	bereaved , bereaved , bereft bereft	
beseech	besought	besought
beset	beset	beset
bespeak	bespoke	bespoken , bespoke
bestride	bestrode	bestriden , bestrid , bestrode
bet	bet , betted	bet , betted
betake	betook	betaken
bethink	bethought	bethought
bid	bade , bid	bidden , bid
bide	bode	bode
bind	bound	bound , bounden
bite	bit	bitten , bit
bleed	bled	bled
blend	blended , blent	blended , blent
bless	blessed , blest	blessed , blest
blow	blew	blown , blowed (=damned)
break	broke	broken , broke (形容词)
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast , broadcast ,	

	broadcasted	broadcasted
browbeat	browbeat	browbeaten
build	built	built
burn	burnt (英) , burned	burnt (英) burned
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
chide	chid	chidden , chid
choose	chose	chosen
cleave	clove , cleft	cloven (hoofs) , cleft
cling	clung	clung
clothe	clothed , clad	clothed , clad
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
crow	crowed , crew	crowed
cut	cut	cut
dare	dared , durst	dared
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug , digged	dug , digged
dip	dipped , dipt (少见)	dipped , dipt (少见)
dive	dived , dove (美)	dived
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed , dreamt (英)	dreamed , dreamt (英)
dress (少)	dressed , drest (少见)	dressed , drest (少见)
drink	drank	drunk , drunken (形 容词)
drive	drove	driven
drop	dropped , dropt (少见)	dropped , dropt (少见)
dwell	dwelt , dwelled	dwelt , dwelled
eat	ate	[et] (英) , [eit] (美) eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fit	fitted , fit (美)	fitted , fit (美)

flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forbid	forbade , forbad	forbidden
forecast	forecast , forecast ,	
forecasted	forecasted	
forego	forewent	foregone
foreknow	foreknew	foreknown
foresee	foresaw	foreseen
foretell	foretold	foretold
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
forswear	forswore	forsworn
freeze	froze	frozen
gainsay	gainsaid	gainsaid
get	got	got , gotten (美)
gild	gilded , gilt	gilded
gird	girded , girt	girded , girt
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grave	graved	graven (形容词)
		graved
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hamstring	hamstringed , hamstringed ,	
	hamstrung	hamstrung
hang	hung , hanged (绞死)	hung , hanged (绞死)
have , hast , has	had , hadst	had
hear	heard	heard
heave	heaved , hove	heaved , hove
	(水手用语) (水手用语)	
hew	hewed	hewed , hewn
hide	hid	hidden (形容词)
		hid
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
inlay	inlaid	inlaid
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
knit	knitted , knit	knitted , knit

know	knew	known
lade	laded	laden (形容词) laded
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean	leant (英), leaned	leant (英), leaned
leap	leapt, leaped	leapt, leaped
learn	learnt (英), learned	learnt (英),
learned		
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lighted, lit	lighted, lit
load	loaded	loaded, laden(载有)
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
melt	melted	melted (snow, butter) molten(gold, glass)
misdeal	misdealt	misdealt
misgive	misgave	misgiven
mislay	mislaid	mislaid
mislead	misled	misled
mistake	mistook	mistaken
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood
mow	mowed	mown (形容词) mowed
outbid	outbade, outbid	outbidden, outbid
outdo	outdid	outdone
outgo	outwent	outgone
outgrow	outgrew	outgrown
outride	outrode	outridden
outrun	outran	outrun
outshine	outshone	outshone
outspread	outspread	outspread
outwear	outwore	outworn
overbear	overbore	overborne
overcast	overcast	overcast
overdraw	overdrew	overdrawn
overeat	overate	overeaten
overfeed	overfed	overfed

overgrow	overgrew	overgrown
overhang	overhung	overhung
overhear	overheard	overheard
overlay	overlaid	overlaid
overleap	overleapt , overleapt ,	
overleaped	overleaped	
overlie	overlay	overlain
override	overrode	overridden
overrun	overran	overrun
oversee	oversaw	overseen
overset	overset	overset
overshoot	overshot	overshot
oversleep	overslept	overslept
overspread	overspread	overspread
overtake	overtook	overtaken
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown
partake	partook	partaken
pass	passed	passed , past (形容词)
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
prove	proved	proved , proven
quit	quitted , quit (美)	quitted , quit (美)
read	[ri:d]	read [red] read [red]
rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilt
recast	recast	recast
relay	relaid	relaid
rend	rent	rent
repay	repaid	repaid
reset	reset	reset
retell	retold	retold
rid	ridded , rid	ridded , rid
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang , rung	rung
rise	rose	risen
rive	rived	riven , rived
rot	rotted	rotted , rotten
run	ran	run
saw	sawed	sawn (形容词) sawed
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought

sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn (形容词) sewed
shake	shook	shaken
shave	shaved	shaved , shaven
shear	sheared , shore	shorn (形容词) sheared
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone , shined (擦亮)	shone , shined (擦亮)
ship	shipped , shipt	shipped , shipt
shoe	shod	shod
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown (形容词) showed
shred	shredded , shred	shredded , shred
shrink	shrank , shrunk	shrunk , shrunken(形容词)
shrive	shrove , shrived	shriven , shrived
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang , sung	sung
sink	sank , sunk	sunk , sunken (形容词)
sit	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid , slidden
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
slit	slit	slit
smell	smelt (英) , smelled	smelt(英) , smelled
smite	smote , smit	smitten , smit
sow	sowed	sown (形容词) sowed
speak	spoke , spake	spoken
speed	sped , speeded	sped , speeded
spell	spelt (英) , spelled	spelt(英) , spelled
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt (英) , spilled	spilt(英) , spilled
spin	spun , span	spun
spit	spat , spit	spat , spit
split	split	split

spoil	spoilt (英), spoiled	spoilt (英),
spoiled		
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
stave	staved, stove	staved, stove
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank, stunk	stunk
stop	stopped, stopped, stopt (书面语)	stopt (书面语)
strew	strewed	strewn (形容词) strewed
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck, stricken (形容词)
string	strung	strung
strip	stripped, stript (少见)	stripped, stript (少见)
strive	strove	striven
sunburn	sunburned, sunburnt	sunburned, sunburnt
swear	swore, sware	sworn
sweat	sweat, sweated	sweat,
sweated	swept	swept
sweep	swelled	swollen
swell	swam	swum
swim	swung	swung
swing	took	taken
take	taught	taught
teach	tore	torn
tear	told	told
tell	thought	thought
think	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived
thrive	threw	thrown
throw	thrust	thrust
thrust	trod	trodden, trod
tread	unbent	unbent (形容词)
unbend	unbound	unbound
unbind	underbid	underbided, underbid
underbid		
undergo	underwent	undergone
undersell	undersold	undersold

understand	understood	understood
undertake	undertook	undertaken
underwrite	underwrote	underwritten
undo	undid	undone
upset	upset	upset
wake	waked (美) , woke	waked (美) , woken , woke
waylay	waylaid	waylaid
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven , wove
wed	wedded , wed	wedded ,
wedweep	wept	wept
win	won	won
wind	winded , wound	winded ,
woundwithdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
withhold	withheld	withheld
withstand	withstood	withstood
work	worked , wrought	worked , wrought (iron)
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote , writ	written , writ

注：PP1 , PP2 , PP3 这些名称对一般的读者是不熟悉。像“现在时”，“过去时”，“过去分词”这些名称，虽然容易引起误会，但是所有语法书及字典几乎都使用。为此本书不得不在会书中也使用这些名称，使没看本章的读者也能理解。

C . 动词的分类

680 动词可以分作两类：谓语动词（或称动词的限定形式）及非谓语动词（或称动词的非限定形式）。谓语动词只能用作动词，在句中充当谓语，它必须与主语在人称和数上一致，它是一个句子和一个从句必不可少的部分。例如：He knows me, John came yesterday afternoon. 非谓语动词，不仅用作动词，还起形容词、副词或名词的作用，它无需与主语一致，也不是一个句子或从句必不可少的。例如：He is a businessman knowing many politicians. knowing 可起形容词作用，修饰 businessman 这个名词。又如：He wants to go to the pictures. to go 起名词作用，作及物动词 wants 的宾语。又如：Coming up to her, he bowed politely. coming 起副词的作用，修饰动词 bowed。另外，一个句子或分句一般只需一个谓语动词（除非有由连词连接的更多个谓语动词），而非谓语动词可以不要，也可以有许多，如在 Fighting to achieve independence requires all of us having patience — not only courage. 中有一个谓语动词，三个非谓语动词。又如在 He denies having asked her to run away from her family. 中有一个谓语动词和两个非谓语动词。

681 谓语动词可以是一个词，如：He saw me. John spoke Spanish. 也可以由几个词构成，通常有一个主要动词和一到三个（间或有四个）助动词，如：He will come. He may be killed. Wang must have been cheated. 非谓语动词也可以只有一个词，如：It started raining. 有时由几个词构成，通常只有 have 和 be 这两个助动词，如：Having seen it, He can't but believe. To respect others means to be respected. Having been sent to prison is not a favourable record.

682 谓语动词可以用于陈述语气（Indicative Mood），表示某情况是事实，如：I know it. He came yesterday. 也可以用于虚拟语气（Subjunctive Mood），表示某情况不肯定，或是与事实相反的假想情况，如：If I knew it, I would be safe (but I do not know). If he had come, he would have been arrested (but he did not come).

683 陈述语气的动词有 12 种时态，表示不同的动作时间和动作完成的不同程度。下面是动词 write 和 be 在 12 种时态中的不同形式，说明它们如何在人称和数上与主语一致。He 也代表 she, it, a teacher, this boy 及任何单数名词。They 代表任何复数名词。

write 及 be 在陈述语气 12 个时态中的形式

现在	一般时	We (I, You, They) write . He writes . We are (I am, You are, He is) happy .
	完成时	We (or I, You, They) have written . We have been happy . He has written . He has been happy .

	进行时	We are (or I am , You are , They are , He is) writing .
	完成进行时	We (or I , You , They) have been writing . He has been writing .
过去	一般时	We (or I , You , They , He) wrote . We (or You , They) were happy . I (or He) was happy .
	完成时	We (or I , You , They , He) had written , had been happy .
	进行时	We were (or I was , You were , They were , He was) writing .
	完成进行时	We (or I , You , They , He) had been writing .
将来	一般时	We (or I , You , They , He) shall (or will) write , shall (or will) be happy . (The meaning is different between shall and will .)
	完成时	We (or I) shall have written , shall have been happy . They (or He) will have written , will have been happy .
	进行时	We (or I) shall be writing . You (or They , He) will be writing .

完成进行时 (少用)

684 虚拟语气的动词也有 12 种时态，不仅表示不同时间及动作完成的不同程度，而且表示不同程度的怀疑。虚拟语气和陈述语气的形式几乎一样，但含义却不相同。因此在时态名称前要冠以“虚拟”二字，以示差别，如“虚拟现在”或“现在虚拟”，“虚拟过去完成”或“过去完成虚拟”。

write 及 be 在虚拟语气 12 时态中的形式

虚拟现在 (一般) 时	If he writes . If he be wise .
虚拟现在进行时	If he be writing .
虚拟现在完成时	If he have written . If he have been wise .
虚拟现在完成进行时	If he have been writing .
虚拟过去 (一般) 时	If he wrote . If he were wise .
虚拟过去进行时	If he were writing .
虚拟过去完成时	If he had written . If he had been wise .
虚拟过去完成进行时	If he had been writing .
虚拟将来 (一般) 时	If he would (or should) write .

	If he would (or should) be wise .
虚拟将来进行时	If he would (or should) be writing .
虚拟将来完成时	If he would (or should) have written .
	If he would (or should) have been wise .
虚拟将来完成进行时	If he would (or should) have been writing .

和陈述语气的差别是：在虚拟一般时中，be 用于各种人称，而不用 is ,am ,are ;第三人称单数主语后用不带-s 词尾的动词(如 write ,have) 来代替带词尾-s 的动词(如 writes ,has)。在虚拟语气过去时中，即使在第三人称单数主语后也用 were ,而不用 was。虽然时态总数有 12 个，但进行时及完成进行时态却很少使用。现在时态只是偶尔使用，也偏于书面体。因此常用的时态只有 6 个。

685 非谓语动词(亦称 Verbals)可以是动名词、分词或不定式。它们表示的时间根据句中谓语动词表示的时间来确定。因此对它们来说，所谓“现在”，“过去”，“将来”已不适用。通用的“现在分词”和“过去分词”不是很确切的名称，称作“主动分词”和“被动分词”似乎好一些。这些非谓语动词和谓语动词一样，也有 4 种形式，表示在谓语动词所表示的时间当中业已完成或正在进行的动作。关于这三类非谓语动词的各种形式，可参阅第 12 单元 中谈“非谓语动词”的那一部分。

686 谓语和非谓语动词都有 4 个“体”，又名“动相”(Aspects)：简单体(Simple)，起始体(Ingressive)，终结体(Terminative)及反复体(Frequentative)。简单体表示在某一时间(不管短还是长)动作是完整的。我们使用的大部分动词都属这个体：

He spoke to me . Mary came the other day .

They build many houses . I know it .

起始体使我们注意动作的开始：

He began to cry . He became pale .

John caught a cold . I put on my dress .

He fell asleep . He ran mad .

终结体使我们注意动作的终结，常常意味着成功或失败：

He gave up hope . he found it out .

Stop crying . We finished playing .

反复体表示同一动作的多次重复：

The girls giggled The hen cackled .

He asked again and again . I tried and tried .

上面的例子所表示的“体”可由一个单一动词表示出来，也可由一动词结合另一词类表示出来。

687 不管是谓语动词还是非谓语动词，动词都可以是不及物动词、及物动词、双宾动词、系动词或宾补动词，这五类动词是根据它们是否有宾语或补语来决定。

本身意思完整的动词称为不及物动词(Intransitive Verbs)，如：John came . Mary was playing . We dined at that restaurant yesterday .

表示动作由主语传到另一人或物的称为及物动词(Transitive Verbs)，动作所传及的这个人或物称为宾语(Object)，如：John saw

a cat . Mary was playing basketball . We like Mary . 这些动词告诉我们看见什么，玩什么及喜欢谁。

双宾动词 (Dative Verbs) 有两个宾语，第 1 个是表人宾语，亦称间接宾语 (Indirect Object) ,第 2 个是表物宾语，亦称直接宾语 (Direct Object) ，如：He gave me some books . I teach John French . I wrote his sister many letters .

系动词 (Linking Verbs) 都跟有一个主语的补语 (Complement) 。补语不同于宾语，不承受主语的动作，而是说明主语的特点，如：He is a miser . Mary seems lonesome . Our manager became thin .

宾补动词 (Factitive Verbs) 不仅跟有一个宾语，还跟有一个宾语的补语，说明宾语的特点，如：I call him a miser . I found Mary lonesome . Don't put the manager out of temper .

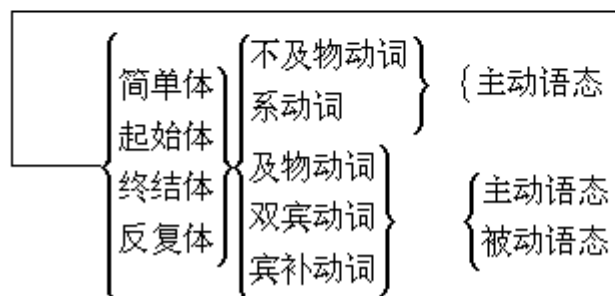
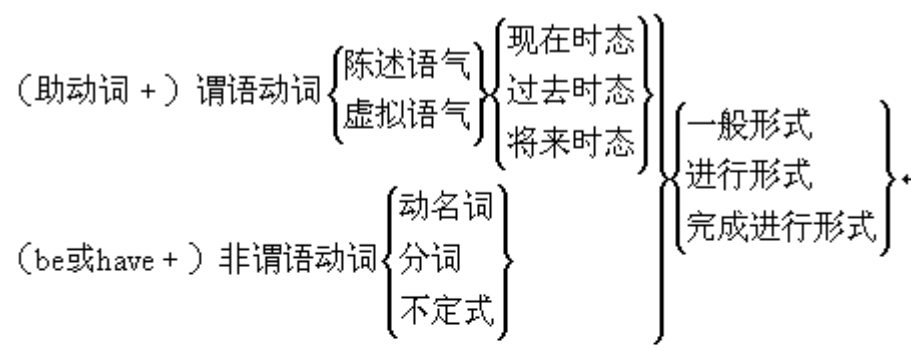
上面所谈五类动词的情况可以概括为下面公式，从中还可清楚看出它们在句中的位置：

S + IV	主语+不及物动词
S + TV + O	主语+及物动词+宾语
S + DV + IO + DO	主语+双宾动词+间宾+直宾
S + LV + SC	主语+系动词+主语补语
S + FV + O + OC	主语+宾补动词+宾语+宾补

宾语可以是任何相当于名词的东西，补语可以是任何相当于名词或相当于形容词的东西，但一个特定的动词只能跟一种东西（如名词）或几种东西（如形容词、介词短语及不定式）而已。这是一个非常有意思的问题，将在有关 47 种谓语类型的那个单元详细讨论。

688 最后一点，一个动词，不管是谓语动词还是非谓语动词，可以是主动语态或是被动语态。主动语态表示主语是动词所表示动作的执行者，如：I wrote these letters . Edison invented the electric lamp . Many people speak English . 被动语态表示主语是动词所表示动作的承受者，如：These letters were written by me . The electric lamp was invented by Edison . English is spoken by many people . 及物动词、双宾动词及宾补动词可以由主动语态改为被动语态。关于陈述语气、虚拟语气及非谓语动词的各种被动形式，详见第 章“动词的两种语态”。

689 概论中所谈问题可概括为下表，从中可以看出动词有几种分类法：



．谓 语 动 词

A . 陈述语气

1 . 12 种时态

690 陈述语气的动词有 12 种主要时态，表示不同时间的动作及动作完成的程度。它们是：

<u>现在</u>	<u>过去</u>	<u>将来</u>
一般时	一般时	一般时
进行时	进行时	进行时
完成时	完成时	完成时
完成进行时	完成进行时	完成进行时

a . 一般现在时

691 形式 :

I (or You , They , Those men) know . He knows (or doesn ' t know) .

I am (or You are , He is , John is , They are , Those men are) honest .

I (or You , He , John , They , Those men) can (or may , must , ought to , has to or have to , should , used to , need not , dare not) do it (or be there) .

692 一般现在时的用法 :

1) 表示反复发生的动作及人或物的一般特征 : 不指特定的时间。动作或特征可发生在任何时间, 包括现在、过去和将来, 表示动作及状态的动词以及助动词都可用于这个时态。

The sun rises in the east . (天文) (表动作动词)

Light goes faster than sound . (物理)

The durian grows in southeast Asia . (植物)

Tigers eat meat . (动物)

The stomach digests food . (生理学)

A rolling stone gathers no moss . (谚语)

He gets up early . I smoke . He goes to school .

I like coffee . (反复动作或习惯)

He sells rice . Mary teaches English . (职业)

You play the piano very well . He speaks Chinese fluently . He knows Japanese . (技能)

We respect old men . Children wear new clothes on New Year's Day . They bow to each other when they meet . (风俗)

Man is selfish . (表状态动词)

This river looks pretty .

Two and two are four .

He seems cunning .

I have a dog and I love him .

Wealth and fame mean nothing to me .

This book contains ten stories .

They may smoke . They must not smoke . (助动词)

You must see the lawyer . You need not see the lawyer .

He can write poetry . He cannot write poetry .

He may be honest . He cannot be honest .

这样用时, 一般现在时常和表示频度的副词或副词短语一起用, 如 never , hardly , scarcely , rarely , seldom , sometimes , often , frequently , generally , always ; yearly , quarterly , monthly , daily ; twice a year , five times a week , on alternate days .

Thomas never smiles .

He seldom dances .

He goes to school five days a week .

693 2) 表示未来计划, 将来时间或明确说出, 或是对方知道的:

I go (= am to go) to Hong Kong next June .

He starts next week .

We leave very soon .

He gets his money tomorrow morning .

He gives a party in three days .

He retires next year .

We move next month .

We dine on August 2 .

We play football this afternoon .

When does the ship sail ?

When does the meeting take place ?

When do we part ?

How long does he stay (or remain) ?

Do you go with him ?

He leaves for Singapore , and gets back soon .

They meet again at supper .

694 3) 在从句中表示未来动作, 这时主句已使用一个将来时态 : Anyone that comes (形容词从句) will be warmly welcomed .

I will reward the person who finds my dog .

She won't forgive anyone who steals flowers in her garden .

The doctor will first attend the patient who comes first .

This new government will welcome whoever are experts .

His success will depend upon how he starts the plan . (名词从句)

A quarrel will arise as to who rules the country .

I will keep silence even though everyone asks me about it (副词从句) .

I will tell you the story while you and I are taking a walk .

He will learn English until he thoroughly masters it .

I will speak to him when I see him next Sunday or Monday .

I will get everything ready before my boss Dr . J comes back .

上面这类句子的从句中, 一般不使用助动词 shall 和 will, 如表示“愿意”, 从句中也可以用 will:

If he will (= is willing to) send the money , it will save trouble . You will succeed if you will (= are willing to) try .

即使在主句中, will 或 shall 有时也可以不出现:

I must not go although the weather is fine .

I tell you the story while we are taking a walk .

If you refuse , I am ruined .

If you laugh , the world laughs with you .

695 4) 表示命令、请求、恳求等, 这时主语 you 通常都不说出: Come here . (命令)

Open the door .

Do open the door . (恳求)

“ May I open the door ? ” “ Do . ”

Do not open the door . (禁止)

Just open the door . (亲切的要求)

Open the door please . (客气的请求)

Be quick , can you ? (这里要用 be 代替 are)

Don't be here after nine .

Be a nice boy !

Please do be quick .

Let him come here . (用 let 时表示对第三人的命令或请求)

Let everybody mind his own business .

Let me do it .

有时 you 可以使用 , 以引起对方的注意 :

You mind your own business !

You just ask him .

注 : 为了方便 , 这里也把祈使语气的句子列为一般现在时的一种用法。详细情况将在有关祈使语气的那一章再谈。

696 5) 描绘或讲述正当说话时发生的动作 :

I hand you this letter .

I come to see you .

John arrives home now . He sees his wife . She cries bitterly , but he does not seem to recognize her . (在看电影时父亲向孩子这样讲电影情节)

Now the band is playing and the King enters the hall . The spectators raise a cheer . He stops , greets the spectators and then takes his seat . (广播人员现场报导说话时发生的情况)

As I (or We) write (=At the time of writing) , the war has broken out . (记者的报导)

697 6) 描述想像的将来或过去发生的情况 , 使故事显得栩栩如生 , 就仿佛在眼前发生似的。现在进行时和现在完成时也可在此使用。这种用法可以称作戏剧式的现在时 (Dramatic Present) :

Now imagine yourself in a schoolroom , It is large and dingy . The pupils sit on long benches . They recite their lessons . How hard they work ! (想像的情况)

The slaughtered citizens lie everywhere , and the tyrant is triumphing in their miseries . (先知预言将来发生的情况)

The enemy broke (过去时) in . They destroyed (过去时) everything they encountered (过去时) . All the houses are (现在时) set on fire . Husbands , who have killed their wives , kill themselves . (过去情况 , 注意时态突然由过去转到现在。)

As soon as I arrive at the inn , two strangers come and greet me , and ask me if I have murdered a woman . (过去情况口语体)

698 7) 在图片、照片、连环画和卡通片的解说词中 :

David plays tennis with Mary .

Hundreds of students demonstrate .

Something is wrong with my policy ?

699 8) 在剧本中描写角色的动作 :

Bob : Hello ! (He stands up and greets Helen .)

Helen : Hello , Bob ! (As soon as she sees Jimmy , who sits at a distance , she wishes to turn back , but is too late to .)

700 9) 在口语中代替现在完成时 , hear 和 read 这类动词常可这样用 :

My father writes (=has written) that he will return home next month .

I hear (=have heard) that...

I find (or see) that...

I am (=have been) informed that...

I learn (or understand , gather) that...

I am told that...

He reads in the papers that...

He tells me that...

The Bible says that...

It says in the Bible that...

The paper says that...

但是 : A broadcast said this morning that...

在不规范英语中 , 有人说 says I , says Mary , says they 等 , 来代替 I said , Mary said , they said 等。

701 10) 表示一个作家的过去动作或讲话 , 到现在还继续有效 :

Darwin originates the theory of evolution and differs from the Bible on the creation of the world .

Confucius regards sex as human .

Nietzsche advocates the doctrine of will to Power .

702 11) 在 here , there 后面使用 :

Here comes Adam . (但要说 Adam is coming .)

There goes the bus . (但是 : The bus is going there .)

703 12) 用在题目或标题中 , 不管讲的情况是什么时候发生的 (这时用过去时讲过去情况也是可以的) :

" The Sleeper Awakes "

" I Meet Many People "

" Emily is Gone "

" Mamma Spanks Me "

" Premier Resigns "

" Fifty Are Killed in an Aircraft Crash "

704 13) 用在电影、剧本等故事情节或解说词中 :

Hamlet decides to revenge his father , but hesitates to kill his enemy , etc .

The tiger dashes on Wu Sung , but he dodges aside , etc .

The dialogue between Romeo and Juliet when they meet on the balcony is very beautiful .

b . 现在进行时

705 形式：

I am (or You are , He is , John is , They are , Those men are) coming .

I (or You , He , John , They , Those men) may (or cannot , must , should) be making progress in English .

706 现在进行时的用法：

1) 表示讲话时正在发生的动作：

常可和表示现在时间的副词及副词短语一起用，如 today , this week , this term , this year , this century 等。但 now , this moment , at the present moment 这类词常不说出，除非要和表示时间的词作对比。另外注意，this year 及 this century 可指“现在”，而 yesterday , last week , two weeks or two days ago 只能指“过去”。

He teaches English (职业) . He is teaching English (现在动作) .

I play football (爱好) . I am playing football (现在动作) .

He is now gambling (现在动作) as he usually does (= gambles) (习惯) .

The are discussing (现在动作) this matter , though they rarely agree (习惯) .

He is coming now . (有表示现在时间状语)

He is spending his holiday at the seaside this summer .

He is writing a letter at the moment , I believe .

He is living in the country this year .

He must be coming now . (和助动词一起用，表示猜想的情况。)

He may be spending his holiday .

He cannot be waiting for us .

He ought to be working this moment .

表示转瞬即逝的动作的动词，如果用于进行时，可表示尚未完成的动作：

He is dying . (He has not yet died , but he'll die very soon .)

The flower is opening . (It has not yet opened fully , but it will open fully very soon .)

The war is ending .

They are winning , and their enemy is losing .

I am finishing my supper .

707 有些动词，即使表示现在的动作，也只能用一般现在时，而不用现在进行时：

I am looking at the sky , and I see (不要用 am seeing) a strange star . (在 see , hear , feel , taste , smell 等前可加 can , could 表示继续的动作)

He is listening to the radio , and he hears (不要用 is hearing) the speech of the president .

He is telling me the story , but I do not believe (不要说 am not believing) it .

有些动词 , 如 see , hear , believe 和 look , listen , tell 不同 , 是一种 “ 没有进行时的动词 ” , 或者说是 “ 表示持续状态的动词 ” , 不同于表示动作的动词。它们有些可以表示一种无意愿的心理状态或感觉 , 如 :

see , hear , find , smell , notice , perceive ; know , think (that...) , doubt , believe , judge , forget , remember , fancy , imagine , suppose (that...) , presume , understand , recognize , deem , esteem , regard , consider ; love , affect , sympathize , worship , adore , hope , dare , miss , fear , apprehend , hate , abhor , loathe , detest , despise , don't mind , regard , value , respect , revere , esteem ; want , like , care (for) , desire , long , prefer , need , require , dislike , wish ; mean , say .

另有一些表示状态 (而不是动作) , 如 :

be , seem , appear , prove , turn out , chance , happen , fail , matter , consist of , contain , hold , have , possess , own , suit , fit , belong , constitute , concern , signify , mean , resemble , equal , differ , result , depend , suffice , exist , taste , smell , weigh , cost , admit , need , show .

但是这些动词中有些可有两个或多个意思 , 不仅可表示状态 , 也可以表示动作 , 因此不仅可用于一般现在时 , 也可用于现在进行时 :

状态

动作

He sees Mary coming .

He is seeing (=is interviewing) someone .

He hears the dog bark .

He is hearing (= is judging) a case .

He feels sad .

He is feeling (= is groping) for matches .

He hates me .

He is hating (=showing visible or audible signs of hating) me .

He desires to see me .

He is desiring (=cherishing the desire) to see me .

He smells trouble .

He is smelling the milk .

I think that it is easy .

I am thinking about (= is considering) it .

I don't mind it .

I am minding the baby .

He does not care for wine .

He is caring for his child .

He appears honest .

He is appearing on the stage .

He has (=owns) a house .

He is having (partaking of , enjoying) his lunch , a good time .

This policy has a bad result . This policy is having (=is

producing) a bad result .

The case holds 20 cigarettes . He is holding an umbrella .

这些表状态的动词，也可和 always , for ever , constantly 一起，用于进行时，表示说话人不耐烦的情绪：

He is always seeing the ghost .

I am for ever forgetting what I have to do .

He is constantly thinking that he is a sick man .

在口语中这类动词还可用于进行时，以强调现在时刻：

I am feeling cold .

I am just thinking you might be fooling me .

He is being very wise (or polite , honest) (=He is behaving very wisely , politely or honestly now) .

(目前的表现和经常的性格形成对比)

You are just being extravagant (=spending extravagantly) .

He is being very angry(or kind ,friendly) .(Acting affectedly)

Are you supposing you are right ?

I am hoping to hear (or am looking forward to hearing) from you soon .

He is liking music . (He is beginning to like music now .)

Are you (still) loving her ?

He is forgetting his German . (He is beginning to forget it .)

I am remembering your advice .

He is hating her because she has talked with another boy .

在正常情况下，表状态的动词，不能用于一般进行时、过去进行时、将来进行时及完成进行时。我们从不谈：

He was hearing a dog bark .

They will be having a house .

This theory will be remaining important to the world .

I have been knowing him for years .

This had been belonging to us .

708 2) 表示最近刚开始，不久将结束，但讲话时不一定在进行的动作：

They are building a bridge across the river .

He is writing a novel

My mother is making dresses for Christmas .

John is taking medicine .

709 3) 在口语中，可用来表示主语计划将做的事情，这时有表示不久将来的状语配合，但有时这类状语也会省略。这种用法

和一般现在时表示未来计划的用法相似，但不那么独断而更委婉。所用动词必须表示动作而不是状态，主语必须是人：

He is coming(or going , leaving , starting , sailing) in a week .

Is your brother departing (or returning) tomorrow ?

Let me know if you are coming .

Is Wang killing the pig next week ?

I am speaking at the meeting next Tuesday .

We are having a baby next month .

He is buying a new car sometime this week .

比较 :

I am going (=plan) to ask him . I am going (= am certain) to die very soon .

He is going (=plans) to buy a car . I think it is going (=is certain) to rain .

但是 It (不是 a person) is raining tomorrow . 是错误的 , 因为 主语不是指人。

这种进行时如和 must , should 等助动词连用 , 可表示即将发生的动作 :

I (or You) must be going now .

We ought to be starting work .

I have to be dressing for the party .

在下面句子中 , to be doing 用在一个表示愿望的动词后 , 也有同样的意思 , 表示即将做的事 :

He wants to be sending the letter .

I long to be calling on my aunt .

He resolves to be finishing his work .

He is impatient to be talking with you .

I am eager to be drinking something .

710 4) 在和 一个表示频度的状语一起用时 , 现在进行时也可以表示反复发生或习惯性的动作 :

I am taking the medicine three times a day . (In the nearest past and nearest future)

How often is he attending the class ?

He is generally returning home at eight .

We are playing bridge all through the month .

I am eating only vegetables and fruits during the summer .

还可和 always 或类似的副词一起用 , 带有感情色彩 , 表示特点而不是动作 :

He is constantly quarrelling (= has the habit of quarrelling , is addicted to quarrelling , is quarrelsome) .

She is always laughing .

He is constantly (or forever , usually , perpetually , every day) worrying about her health .

Smokers always drink (= Smokers are drinkers) .

Smokers are always drinking (=Smokers drink too much) .

He always dreams of gold (=He dreams of gold whenever he dreams) .

He is always dreaming of gold (=He dreams of gold too frequently) .

一般时表示事实 , 进行时带有夸张的意味 , 带有感情色彩 , 表示不高兴等情绪。

有时两个习惯性动作在同一时间发生且延续同样长时间，也可用进行时：

Mary is washing in the bathroom (all the) while (or when, as)

John is getting Mary's breakfast.

Every Sunday when he is not working, he is fooling around.

同样是两个习惯性动作，由一般时表示的动作，持续的时间要短一些，另外，主句要比从句重要一些：

While John is working, Mary makes tea.

John is working when Mary makes tea.

The newsboy comes when we are taking breakfast.

We are taking breakfast when the newsboy comes.

711 5) 表示某种程度的情绪时，707 节列出的动词也可用于进行时：

Mary is missing John terribly. (陈述句)

We are wondering if you can join us. I am supposing everything is OK.

How are you liking your new house? (问句)

Are you fearing to see her?

What a crazy thing you are wishing to do! (感叹句)

How fast he is forgetting his shame!

She is talking, complaining, grumbling, cursing all the time. (重复)

Don't be grumbling. (祈使句)

712 6) 有时可用来强调动作的重要性：

We are losing our friends.

We are now waiting to be killed.

He is playing us a trick.

He is wasting time and money.

This is killing me.

We are simply (or only, merely, but) defending our own benefit.

713 7) 可以将两个动作加以对比：

While she is weeping, he is laughing.

We are fighting, we are not standing idle.

He is sympathizing with you, but not speaking ill of anyone.

714 8) 说明两个动作是同一动作：

If (or when) he goes to the battlefield, he is going to a picnic. He who ill-treats animals is doing a foolish thing.

In contributing food or clothing, you are saving their lives.

715 9) 可用来表示一个被动的动作。这个时态在过去比今天用的带 being 的形式要多一些，而且它常可用在 while 引起的从句中：

Nothing is doing (=is being done).

Our breakfast is making (=is being made) ready.

A house is building on the opposite side.

A large debt is owing him.

The book is printing .

We do something while it is drying (=is being dried) . (orgathering , performing , planning , displaying , practising , preparing , developing , constructing , compiling , printing , etc .)

(比较过去时及将来时的类似用法 : Nothing was doing .

Nothing will be doing . Our breakfast was making ready . Our breakfast will be making ready .)

716 10) 表示特点而不是动作。这时带-ing 词尾的动词变成了形容词, 而 be 成了一个完全的动词, 不再是助动词了。

He is lacking (=deficient) in courage .

Something is wanting (or missing) (=absent) .

He is deserving (=worthy) of sympathy .

His dress is not becoming (or befitting) (=suitable) to his position .

His reply is disappointing .

His speech is so boring .

The patient is unconscious and groaning .

717 有些词组可用来代替进行时 :

They are duck-shooting , holiday-making , pleasure-seeking , proof-reading , tiger - hunting , wool-gathering , (= are shooting ducks , are making holiday , etc .)

He sits reading every morning .

We have to stand eating our meal .

He often lies singing .

He is sitting reading newspapers .

We are standing eating our meal .

He is lying singing Japanese songs .

The butterflies went flying around .

The groceries fell splattering on the sidewalk .

He keeps asking this problem .

I remain studying in college .

He seems living (但 seems to live 更普通些) here .

He is alive (or asleep) (=is living or sleeping) .

It is astir (= is stirring) (or aglow , ablaze) .

He is at work (= is working) (or at study , at rest , at play) .

The troops are on the march (= are marching) (or on the move , on the watch) .

It is on the rise (=is rising) (or on the decline , on the advance , on the flow , on the ebb , on the increase , on the turn) .

It is in operation (=is operating) (or in progress , in motion) .

He is in the act of stealing (=is stealing) it (or in the act of running away , etc .) .

She is busy (or engaged , employed) in cooking food . (=She

is cooking food .)

He is all of a tremble (= is trembling) (or all in a tremble) .

The bridge is in process of construction (= is being constructed) .

(有被动意义)

The problem is in course of discussion .

Specialists are in demand (or in request) in this area .

He is under treatment (= is being treated) (or under protection , under investigation) .

This demand is under consideration (or under discussion) . The house is under repair .

c . 现在完成时

718 形式 :

We (or you , They , Those men) have seen it .

He (or John) has seen it .

We have been here .

I (or You , He , John , They , Those men) may (or must , ought to , cannot) have done it (or have been there) .

719 现在完成时用法 :

1) 表示过去已完成动作对现在所产生的后果 (一般过去时只讲过去的动作 , 不谈现在的情况) 。

试比较下面各对句子 :

{ I bought a Parker . (对现在情况不理睬)

{ I have bought a Parker . (= I have a Parker now .)

{ I learned French many years . (对现在情况不理睬)

{ I have learned French many years . (= I know French now .)

{ I did not sleep well .

{ I have not slept well . (= I feel sleepy now .)

{ I lost all my money .

{ I have lost all my money . (= I have no money now .)

{ I took dinner with him .

{ I have taken dinner with him . (= I am full now .)

{ Fred Acton was a writer in all his life . (no longer living)

{ Fred Acton has been a writer in all his life . (still living)

{ Shakespeare wrote Hamlet .

{ Shakespeare has written the best drama . (= He is still the best dramatist today .)

在报导新闻时 , 英国人多用现在完成时 , 美国人爱用一般过去时 :

There has been a riot . (英) There was a riot . (美)

China has won the prize . (英) China won the prize . (美)

Jim has had an accident . (英) Jim had an accident . (美)

720 2) 表示过去完成的动作对现在应有的后果 (不一定是现实后果) :

Oh ! Johnny ! You have just taken a bath (= You should be clean) , but how come you get so dirty ?

He has done his best (= He should succeed) , but he has bad luck .

Jim has been in China many years (= He should know Chinese) , but he does not know Chinese .

721 3) 充当联系过去和现在的桥梁 :

He was sleepless many nights . He has been very tired and

can't concentrate at all . So he decides not to go to the office . (过去—现在完成—现在—现在)

He decides not to go to the office , for he has been very tired . He was sleepless many nights . The doctor advised him to take more rest , but he did not listen to him . (现在—现在完成—过去—过去等等)

He wrote many novels . He has been famous in this country . He is now teaching Korean literature in college . He can tell you everything about Korea .

(过去—现在完成—现在—现在等等)

He is teaching Korean literature in college . He has been famous in this country . He wrote many novels during the world war .

He had a very hard time when he was young . (现在—现在完成—过去—过去等等)

722 4) 表示动作的完成 , 并用它来和进行时表示的未完成动作进行对比 :

Everything in the world is changing or has changed , is passing or has passed , is reviving or has revived .

723 5) 和频度状语一道表示从过去某时到现在动作发生的次数 :

I have never (or not yet , hardly ever , seldom , rarely , occasionally , sometimes , often , frequently , always) seen him in the office .

The members have met once . (yearly or once a year , weekly or once a week , daily or every day , twice a week , from time to time , once in a while) .

You have been out every time I have come . (表示频度的状语从句)

724 6) 和“此时”的时间状语一道 , 表示“此时”未完成前的动作 :

I have spent my vacation this year . (That is , I have already spent the vacation I am to spend this year .)

His sister has written the letter today . (The letter is to be written today and she has written it .)

I have taken lunch with John this week . (It has been arranged that I should take lunch with John once a week .)

I have met many people this morning (or this summer) . (说这话时仍然是早晨或夏天 , 如果说 I met many people this morning [or this summer] . 则表示此刻已不是早晨或夏天。) 725 7) 和一个表示时间长度的状语一道 , 表示一个由过去开始到说话时仍在继续的动作 :

He has studied since 1951 . (使用的动词应能表示一个可以持续的动作。介词 since 的宾语必须是一个表示某一点时间的名词或是一个表示短暂动作的名词。)

He has waited here since 8 p . m .

He has grown more and more serious since his graduation from the college .

He has never smiled since the loss of his wife .

He has been very sad since his father died . (在 since 引起的从句中，动词大多表示一个短暂的动作，而且用一般过去时，如动词 died。)

He has known many new friends since he left school .

It is (只有在这种结构中可用 is 代替 has been) 18 years since she died .

It is a long time since we became friends .

He has learned many things since he was(=became) interested in science . (was 本来表示持续情况，但这里用作一个表示短暂动作的动词。)

He has been very busy since he lived (= began to live) in town .

I have been treated by eight doctors since I have been ill . (偶尔在 since 引起的从句中可用现在完成时)

I have seen many things since I have lived here .

He has lived happily (for) ten years . (介词 for 的宾语必须表示一段时间，for 有时可以省略。)

I have taught Japanese (for) two months .

He has kept silent during (=for) the last two years .

I have eaten nothing during the last five days (or my ill-ness) .

He has lost (instantaneous) his key for six days . (这个句子不太好。因为丢失钥匙只需一会儿，不需要 6 天，表示短暂动作的动词不能和表示长段时间的状语一起用。但有些作家却不遵守这条规律。)

这两句也是不好的：

He has left for Europe for these ten days .

I have arrived here for two months .

我们应当说：

He lost his key six days ago .

He left for Europe ten days ago . 或 He has sailed (延续动作) for Europe these ten days .

I arrived here two months ago . 或 I have been (or stayed) (延续状态) here for two months .

He has been dead ten , years ago . (有时有人在用带 ago 状语的同时用现在完成时，但这种用法不宜鼓励，下面句子也如此。)

The door has been locked a long time ago .

He is dead ten years (ago) . (偶尔有人以 is 或 are 代替现在完成时)

The door is locked a long time (since) .

除了 since , for 和 during 引起的状语外，还有一些其他状语可以表示一段时间，并可与现在完成时一道用：

I have seen him before (or lately , recently , of late) . He has already begun , school , but his elder brother has not yet been ready for it .

Have you ever seen a camel ? I have never seen any .

I have just seen John .

So far (or As yet , Up to now , Until now , Until this time , Thus far , Up to the present moment) , he has not (or never) done anything for it . (这些状语多用在否定句中)

So far (or As yet , etc .) he has paid me only (or no more than) ten percent of his debt .

但表示一段时间的状语 , 并不总是说明动作一直持续到说话的这一刻 :

He is now in Tokyo and he has been in Indonesia for ten years .

(He is not in Indonesia now)

It is raining again . It has been fine only two days .

Mr . Watanabe is now a rich man , though he has had a hard time for many years .

726 8) 在和 can , may , must 等助动词一起用时 , 现在完成时可以表示一个过去的动作 , 或者一个猜想已发生的动作 , 这时可以和一个表示过去时间的状语一起用 :

He may have said so . (= I think [or thought] he said so = He probably said so .)

He must have lived in England . (= It is [or was] certain that he lived in England .)

Can he have lived in England ? (= Is [or was] it possible that he lived in England ?)

He cannot have lived in England . (= It is [or was] impossible that he lived in England .)

He will (= may) have given up his plan .

He may have met with an accident yesterday . (= It is [or was] probable that he met with an accident yesterday .)

He cannot have left last Sunday . John must have learned judo when he was young .

不定式的完成形式也可以表示一个过去的动作 , 并和一个表示过去的时间状语一道用 , 尽管谓语动词是现在时 :

He is thought to have met with an accident yesterday . (= It is thought that he met with an accident yesterday .)

He is said to have resigned last Sunday . (= It is said that he resigned last Sunday .)

He seems to have died years ago .

在其他情况下现在完成时不能和一个表示过去时间的状语一道用。在下面的错句中 , 现在完成时都应改为一般过去时 :

I have seen Mary yesterday . (Saw should be used instead of have seen .)

Have you written to her last Sunday ? (Did you write ... ?)

He has begun the study of Japanese four years ago .

John has bought this curio in 1960 .

They have got married when they were in Cambodia .

When have you seen her ?

What time has the baby been born ?

727 9) 还可在时间、条件及让步状语从句中代替将来完成时 (可参阅 694 节) :

He will get married as soon as he has (代替 will have) been graduated .

I will call on you if I have (代替 shall have) finished my work by eleven tomorrow .

I shall be unable to leave even though I have (代替 shall have) done my work by 6 p . m .

728 10) 还可用来表示一个由一般现在时表示的反复性动作前业已完成 的另一反复发生的动作 (这一动作在过去、现在、将来都可以发生) :

The sun has risen (由现在完成时表示的反复发生的动作)

When he gets (由一般现在时表示的在前面动作之后发生的另一反复发生的动作) up at eight in the morning.

His family have taken , lunch when he arrives home at two .

He gets up at eight in the morning , and the sun has risen .

He arrives home at two ; his family have taken lunch .

729 11) Have gone 和 have been 有不同意思 , 从下面句子中可以看出 :

He has gone to Singapore . (He is now in Singapore .)

He has been to Singapore . (But he is not there now .)

He has been in Singapore . (He has stayed in Singapore , but has left it now .)

I have been (不能用 gone) to Japan twice .

I have been (不能用 gone) there many times .

“ Where is John ? ” “ He has gone (不能用 been) to the exhibition .

“ Where have you been (不能用 gone) ? ” “ I have been (不能用 gone) to see my uncle .

730 12) Have got 表示 “有” :

I have got a good dog .

What have you got ?

He said he had got a good dog . (如果主要动词为 said , had got , 用在间接引语中。)

He thought he had got a lot experience ,

但在下面句子中不宜用 have got , 而需用 have :

I will (or shall , may , must) have many friends . (在助动词后不能用 have got 表示 “有”)

Do you have a good dictionary ?

He has dinner at eight . We have a hard time .

(Have got 除表示 “有” 这个意思外 , 不再用于其他意思。) 731 13) 有时可用 be 代替 have , 这时主要动词起形容词作用 , 表示一种状态 :

He is gone (= away) , come (= here) , returned (= back) from his travels . He is just arrived .

Be gone . Don't be gone more than one hour .
He is gone there two days . He is always gone .
Are you prepared (= ready) to quarrel with her ?
They are met (= together) again.
The moon is risen (=up) .
It is fallen (or sunken , vanished) .
He is got into bed .
John is terribly changed (or altered) this year .
I am done (or finished) with human beings .
He is descended from noble ancestors .
I am determined (or resolved) to resign .
Run ,walk ,march ,fly ,wander ,advance ,pass ,set out ,re-tire ,
enlist , dress , agree , mount 偶尔可以这样用。

d . 现在完成进行时

732 形式 :

I have (or You have , He has , John has , They have , Those men have) been studying .

I (or You , He , John , They , Those men) may (or must , cannot) have been playing tennis .

733 现在完成进行时的用法 :

1) 和现在完成时一样, 现在完成进行时可以表示一个由过去某时开始一直持续到现在的动作, 常和一个表示一段时间的状态语一道用 (可参阅 725 节) :

I have been learning English for two , years . (I am still learning now .)

John has been teaching for 20 days . (He is still teaching .)
They have been working since early morning .

He has been staying with his uncle during the past two months . I have been waiting all the morning (or this half hour) . 表示暂时性的动作, 用完成进行时较好; 表示长时期的动作时, 用完成时较好:

I have lived here all my life .

We have developed our country for two centuries .

2) 和现在完成时一样, 这个时态也可表示一个过去的动作对现在的影响:

I have been attending to many matters . (I am feeling tired now .)

I have been telling him not to be a fool . (He should be cleverer now .)

734 3) 但是它有现在完成时不具有的某些特殊含义。它可以表示: a) 动作仍在继续:

They have been discussing it . (They have not yet finished discussing it .)

I have been reading this novel .

b) 有某种企图:

He has been telling me . (He has tried to tell me .) He has been playing me a dirty trick .

c) 尝试但未成功:

He has been advising me (But he does not succeed , I don't believe .)

d) 最近的动作:

He has been drinking with his friend . (He drank not long ago .)

They have (just) been talking about this subject . (可加可不加 just)

e) 反复和逐渐的动作:

I have been telling him . (I have told him many times .)

He has been losing his influence . (He has lost his influence gradually .)

f) 感情色彩：

What have you been doing all this week? (不耐烦)

You have been deceiving me. (生气)

You have been giving me everything. (感激)

735 但要注意：

1) 如果动词表示状态而不表示动作，应用现在完成时，而不用现在完成进行时：

I have known him for years. (不要用 I have been knowing...)

John has loved Mary since he was ten.

He has been here two days.

The property has belonged to my uncle during the last ten years.

2) 在否定句中一般用现在完成时而不使用现在完成进行时：

I have not learned (而不说 have not been learning) English for two years.

He has never seen a man like John. He has hardly met a European in the street.

I have received no assistance from my friend.

但有时也可用现在完成进行时：

I haven't been feeling well recently.

She hasn't been working here long.

e . 一般过去时

736 形式 :

I (or You , He , John , It , They , Those men) came .

I was (or You were , He was , It was , They were , Those men were) here .

737 一般过去时的用法 :

1) 表示过去发生的动作 , 过去时间可以由状语表示出来 , 也可由上下文及说话场合表示出来 :

At five o'clock (or As soon as he received the telegram) , he drove to the station .

He turned out the light at midnight (or when everybody went to bed .)

Did you go swimming yesterday ? ” “ NO . I was very ill (时间已由问句表示出来) . ”

“ Why did you not attend the meeting ? ” “ Because my wife gave birth to a baby . ” (谈话双方都清楚动作发生的时间)

738 2) 表示过去反复发生的或习惯性的动作 , 可有表示频度的状语 , 也可以没有 :

He took a walk every morning .

I swam in the evening .

Mary learned cooking twice a week . John seldom wrote to me .

John lived in Calcutta .

Nobody taught Japanese in this city .

He used to (表示过去习惯) drink coffee at night . (used to 相当于一个助动词)

也可表示过去的状态 :

He is not so happy as he was .

China is not what she was (or used to be) .

He worked much harder formerly than he works now .

739 3) 可用在 said , reported 等后面的间接引语中 , 代替一般现在时 :

He said , “ I am very tired . ” = He said that he was very tired . He exclaimed , “ What a pity it is ! ” = He exclaimed what a pity it was .

但在口语中一般现在时仍可以用 , 特别在有一个表示未来时间的状语时 :

I said I am free next Sunday .

I knew he comes tomorrow (or in three days , next week) . 还有一些情况 , 间接引语中的一般现在时可以保持不变 , 如 :

I said , “ I must go . ” = I said I must go .

He said , “ I ought to do it . ” = He said he ought to do it . He said God be thanked .

He said God forbid that he should ill-treat anyone .

He said thank Heaven he was well again .

但在下面情况下，从句中的谓语应用一般过去时：

He thought he could defeat me. (= Now he knows he can't.)
(从句中的设想证明是错误的)

I thought he was(or had been) a scholar. (Now I see he is not.)

I thought you knew it.

We did not know he was a cheat. (= Now we know he is.) I
didn't quite realize that he was a great, great pianist. (=Now
I realize he is.)

The ancients said (or imagined) the sun moved round
the earth. (= Now they prove wrong)

I knew he was a simpleton (= Now we see that he is) (从句
中的设想证明是对的)

在宾语从句中，如果主句谓语为过去时，要用 would 代替 will：

I knew Wang would not accept this dirty money.

I forgot to tell you that you would get into trouble.

740 4) 可用在表示时间、条件的状语从句中，表示一个从过去看来将
发生的情况；

He promised to give me five dollars when he got his pay.

He said he would reward me if I worked hard.

We knew Dad would punish us unless we behaved.

741 5) 还可用来表示过去计划要做的事，特别是当它有一个表示未来
时间的状语时(可参阅 693 节)：

He started (=was to start) at seven the following day. (比
较：He starts at seven tomorrow.)

He left the next week. (比较：He leaves next week.) They
returned in ten days.

742 6) 还可在对话中用来重复对方刚提这事：

A: His name is Mauling. B: What was his name (= What did you
say his name was) ?

A: Put it under the desk. B: (Talks about something else,
and then) Where was I to put it?

也可用在比较客气的话中，来代替一般现在时(并不是谈过去情况，
而是谈现在情况)：

Was your father in? I was hoping he was free this evening.

Did you want it? I was thinking you might like it.

"I wondered if he could come." "I was wondering, too."

f . 过去进行时

743 形式：

I was (or You were , He was , John was , It was , They were , Those men were) coming .

744 过去进行时的用法：

1) 表示过去某段时间中正在进行或一直在进行的动作，一般要有表示过去时间的状语，除非时间关系很明显：

Yesterday at 10 p . m . I was dancing . (10 点以前或以后都可能在跳舞)

Ten days ago we were enjoying our holiday . (We enjoyed it all the time or almost all day .)

I was travelling during the week (= every day during the seven days) .

I was learning Japanese in those months .

I was cooking yesterday (= all yesterday or most of the day) .

但下面的句子是不对的：

The two brothers were fighting last month . (应当用 fought , 因为他们不可能整个月都在打架。)

I was driving two miles to my uncle's yesterday . (因为开两英里车用不了昨天一天 , 应改为 drove 。) 不过 , They were fighting last night when I called on their father . 是正确的。

745 2) 可用来表示由过去某时持续到另一时间的过去动作：

He was staying here between 1950 and 1959 .

Between two and four o'clock I was playing basketball .

We were working from 8 a . m . to (or till) 12 a . m .

From January to March I was travelling in Europe .

但在这种情况下也可以用一般过去时：

He studied chemical engineering between 1950 and 1954 .

He worked from morning till night yesterday .

746 3) 表示另一过去动作发生时正在进行的动作：

I was studying (一个过去的动作) while (or all the time) my mother was preparing (另一过去的动作) dinner . (两个动作同时发生而且持续同样长的时间)

这时也可用一般过去时：

I studied as my mother prepared dinner . (动作同时进行 , 但不一定持续同样长的时间。)

I wrote letters when my mother was preparing dinner . (两个动作同时进行 , 但进行时 was preparing 的动作比一般过去时 wrote 的动作持续的更久。)

I was walking along when I met a friend .

I arrived at the hospital where the doctor was waiting for me .

有时两个句子并无连词连接：

I arrived at the hospital . The doctor was waiting for me .

The show began at ten . The audience were getting impatient .
747 4) 用来表示“ 经过一小段时间，某动作已经在发生 ”，这时往往表示一些惊讶情绪，常有一个状语表示“ 不久以后 ”这类概念：

He did not know English . But only a year later , he was speak- ing English fluently with Americans .

The child left the hospital . In less than an hour , he was playing in the garden .

I got up at 7 : 30 , and at 8 : 00 I was working in the office .

My horse fell and I was struggling in the stream .

The peace treaty was signed .

Before long they were fighting a- gain .

在许多其他用法上，过去进行时和现在进行时是很相像的，只不过前者表示过去时间而后者表示现在时间，许多有关后者的规则也同样适用于前者，因此过去进行时还有下面这些用法。

748 5) 只能用于表示动作的动词，不能用于表示状态的动词（可参阅 707 节）：

I was looking at the sky and saw (不要说 was seeing) a strange star .

He was telling me a story but I did not believe (不要用 was not believing) it .

但一个表示状态的动词，偶尔也可用来表示动作，因而可用

过去进行时（参阅 707 节）：

He was being very wise . (= He was behaving very wisely .)

He was liking music . (= He began to like music .)

749 6) 表示过去打算办的一件事（参阅 709 节）：

He was departing (= planned to depart) the next month .

John was coming in two days .

I was calling on John two days later .

750 7) 表示过去反复发生的或习惯性的动作，特别是和一个表示频度的状语一道用时（参阅 710 节）：John was going to the swimming pool very often .

He was taking medicine three times a day .

John was waiting while his wife was making herself up . His wife was grumbling whenever (or as often as) he arrived home .

He was always (= had the habit of) worrying about a very small thing . (不以为然)

My mother was constantly praising herself .

751 8) 表示某种程度的情绪（参阅 711 节）：

He was fighting with the whole world .

Was she imposing upon you ?

What a happy time we were spending !

752 9) 强调动作的重要性（参阅 712 节）：

We were losing our good friends .

It was merely wasting our time and money .

I was simply doing what I should do .

753 10) 用来表示对比 (参阅 713 节) :

While he was squandering his money , his father was drudging in the rice field .

We were fighting , we were not sitting idle .

754 11) 表示两个动作实际上是一回事 (参阅 714 节) :

In feeding your child with so much food , you were spoiling his stomach .

By beating your children , you are only creating their hatred . 755 12) 表示即将发生的事 , 尤其是前面有助动词 ought to , must 等时 (参阅 709 节) :

I had to (or must , ought to) be going now .

He wanted to be drinking something . He intended to be having a rest .

756 13) 表示一个被动的动作 (参阅 715 节) :

Our breakfast was making (= was being made) ready .

A house was building (= was being built) .

757 同样可以其他方式代替过去进行时 (参阅 717 节) :

He sat reading .

He lay singing .

He kept asking this and that .

He was alive .

The troops were on the march (= were marching) .

He was in the act of stealing (= was stealing) it .

The bridge was in process of construction (= was being construct-ed) .

758 一般过去时和过去进行时都不宜冒然使用 , 只宜于在下面情况下用 :

a) 有表示过去时间的状语 :

We did (or were doing) it yesterday (or last year , three days ago , in 1959 , on Sunday , once , some months ago , when it was raining , just after they arrived) .

b) 通过上下文或常识可以判断出是过去情况时 :

“ This morning I went out . ” “ But I stayed at home . ” (But 后省略了 this morning)

Dr . Sun overthrew the Manchu dynasty .

Columbus discovered America .

I was having a terrible dream all night . (Most probably last night)

c) 有现在完成时帮助把时间引向过去 :

I have been to Bangkok , where I stayed at my friend's house . As it was raining hard , I had no chance of sight-seeing . (参阅 721 节)

g . 过去完成时

759 形式 :

I (or You , He , John , It , They , Those men) had come. I (or You , He , John , It , They , Those men) had been there. 过去完成时的用法 :

760 1) 表示过去某时以前已经结束的动作 , 过去时间可由时间状语表示出来 :

I had read the novel by three o'clock. (I finished it before three and read it no more at three .)

He had sent the letter last Monday . (= He sent the letter before last Monday .)

He had finished the work five days before (or earlier) (= five days before a given past time) .

We had completed the course in the autumn of 1968 .

过去时间有时由状语从句表示 , 下表表示状语从句中动词所表示动作发生时 , 主句动词表示的动作已发生 :

后发生的动作

先发生的动作

— When we learned English , we had studied Chinese .

— By the time he got married , he had studied history ten years .

— Before he spoke , he had prepared to die .

— Although he failed , he had done his best .

— In order that he might succeed , he had considered the matter all night .

— Where there was a ruin , there had been wealth in , or power .

如果两个动作是同时发生或几乎同时发生的 , 则都可以用一般过去时表示 :

When we learned English , we studied Chinese . (= We learned two languages .) (同时发生)

When she saw a roach , she screamed . (几乎同时发生)

有时过去时间由形容词 (定语) 从句表示出来 , 从句动词表示的动作发生时 , 主句动词表示的动作已发生 :

后来的动作

更早的动作

— The man that came yesterday had travelled in fifty countries .

— The woman he married had married five times .

— This man , who was successful now , had failed a hundred times .

有时名词从句中动词所表示的动作发生时 , 主句动词所表示的动作已发生 :

How he became prime minister had been prophesied thirty years before .

也有时反过来，从句中动词表示的动作先发生，主句动词表示的动作后发生，则先发生的用过去完成时表示：

后来发生的动作

先发生的动作（状语从句）

—He went to school

as soon as (or after)
he had dressed himself.

—The audience applauded when he had finished
his speech.

—He was finally defeated though he had always won.

—I got ill because I had not eaten properly.

但 before 有时有特殊的用法，表示“不等……就”：

He already died before his sons had arrived.

I left school before I had finished my course.

定语从句和名词从句中动词表示的动作有时先发生，就可用过去完成时表示：

后来的动作

更早的动作

— I asked a man

who had learned sculpture in
Italy.

—My wife liked very
much the dog

you had sent me.

—He married a woman

who had given birth to five
children.

—He said

that he had come from
Canada.

—Ha told John

that Mary had got married.

—He was afraid

that someone had got the
secret.

—She was worried

that he had not written to
her for a year.

—He asked me

why I had not got married.

在并列句中，有时一个分句中动词表示的动作先于另一分句中动词表示的动作，先发生的动作也用过去完成时表示：

后发生动作

先发生动作

—He was a beggar
now,

for he had lost millions
in a night.

—He became a great
man,

and he had been poor
many years.

—They all lay down
together,

but some had been beggars
and others had been kings.

有时前后两个句子中，前面句子中动词表示的动作后发生，后面句子中动词所表示的动作先发生，则后面动词须用过去完成时表示：

后发生动作 先发生动作

—He was thirsty.

He had not seen any water for a week.

—The child cried.

Someone had stolen his cake.

—Husband and wife

They had quarrelled all

were unhappy . day .

尽管过去完成时表示先发生的动作，在特定的情况下它也可用一般过去时代替：

1) 如果所用连词或状语已表示了时间的先后：

—He went to school as soon as (or after) he
(had) dressed himself .

—The audience applauded when he (had) finished his
speech .

—He spoke after he (had) studied his speech .

—He found his watch . He (had) lost it two days
before .

—He called on me and he (had) let me know a
on Sunday , week earlier .

—He got ill because he had not eaten (or
did not eat) properly .

—I asked a man who (had) learned scul - ture in
Italy .

—My wife liked very much the dog you (had) sent me .

—He said he came from Canada .

在连续写一段话时，如果顺着动作发生的时间顺序往下写，则所用动词都可以用一般过去时。如其中有一个动词表示的动作先于另外的动作，为了避免误解，这个动作应用过去完成时表示：

I borrowed a book and read it at night . A week later , I re -
turned it to the library and borrowed another . (顺着时间顺序
叙述)

但：I read at night a book which I had borrowed . A week later ,
after I had returned it to the library , I borrowed another .

When he courted her , she turned him down . But two years later ,
they were husband and wife . She found it queer indeed . (顺着
时间顺序叙述)

但：She found the matter queer indeed . She and he were now
husband and wife . But only two years before , when he had courted
her , she had turned him down . (后面一句追叙更早的事)

在追叙更早的情节时，如果一串动词全都用过去完成时会显得很累赘。一般作法是把追叙部分的第一、两个动词用过去完成时表示，使时间关系清楚，后面则都用一般过去时。

Finally they got married . They had fallen in love in Tok -
yo . They had loved each other tenderly . Their parents had been
opposed to their marriage , and they had tried twice to commit
suicide . (为了避免累赘，可以把追叙部分第一句中的 had fallen 保
留，后面句子中的过去完成时全可以用一般过去时代替。)

另外，历史事实通常应用一般过去时表示，在联系现在情况时，即使另一动词用过去时，也不要把它实用过去完成时表示：

I learned that Columbus (不用 had) discovered America .

He said Hitler (不用 had) killed millions of Jews .

如果主句中包含了过去完成时，从句中的过去完成时常以一般过去时代替：

I knew he had lost money when he (had) gambled .

He said Jim had been caught because he (had) sold drugs .

761 2) 除了表示发生时间在另一动作之前外，还可表示对后来动作的影响：

I had eaten something before I took (后来动作) dinner .

(So I had no appetite at dinner .)

但：I ate something before I took dinner . (Maybe I had my usual appetite at dinner .)

He had learned English before he came (后来动作) to England . (He already knew English when he arrived in England .)

He felt worse after he had taken the medicine . (Feeling worse is the result of taking the medicine .)

He felt worse after he took the medicine . (Feeling worse may not be the result of taking the medicine .)

762 3) 在一个否定的句子中表示另一动作前刚发生的动作，有时可译成“刚刚……就……”或“不等……就……”：

He had not (or scarcely ,hardly ,barely) touched his re-volver when (or before) he got shot .

No sooner had he opened his mouth than I knew what he wanted to say .

763 4) 表示过去某时前已经发生并在继续发生的事时，通常有一个表示一段时间的状语，可译为“到……为止”，或“自从……就一直（已经）”（可参阅 725 节）：

By December last year , he had worked for ten years . (Most probably he was still working in December .)

Up to that time all had gone well .

He had lived here since he got married . (He was still here .)

He had learned a lot since he became a student . (He was still learning .)

764 5) 还可表示一个未实现的愿望，特别是动词表示“打算”这类意思时，可译“本来打算……”：

I had intended to do . (=I intended to have gone .) (I intended to go , but I did not go .)

He had hoped to help you . (=He hoped to have helped you = He had hoped to have helped you = His hope was to have helped you .) (But he did not help you .)

He had expected to meet you at the restaurant .

I had meant to invite him to dinner .

He had been inclined to be an artist .

I should like to have seen it . (现在的愿望)

I should have liked to have seen (or to see) it . (过去的愿望)

You had better have stayed here . (未被接受的劝告)

765 6) 用来代替一般过去时 , 表示惊奇 (参阅 747 节) :

I saw her from afar . In a minute , however , she had disappeared .

When he said this , his enemy had come up to him .

It was kept secret , but two days afterwards everyone had talked about it .

He had scarcely raised his hand when his antagonist had lain him on the ground .

766 7) 在 said , reported 后的间接引语中优替一般过去时及现在完成时 :

He said " I have asked the Mayor . " = He said that he had asked the Mayor .

He exclaimed , " I saw it . " = He exclaimed that he had seen it .

但 : I said , " He had been very sad since his wife died . " = I said that he had been very sad since his wife died (不要说 had died) .

I was told he had lost confidence in everything since he became (而不是 had become) bankrupt .

I was told he talked as if he knew (or had known) everything .

767 8) 用来对一个没听清楚的过去情况提问 (参阅 742 节) :

A : They sold six hundred pieces .

B : (Talks about something else , and then asks)

How many pieces had they sold ? (= How many pieces did you say they had sold ?)

A : I kept it in a small box .

B : (After some time) Where had you kept it ?

768 9) 用在状语从句中表示从过去时间看将来某时前已经发生的事 (来代替过去将来完成时) :

He said (in the morning) he would return (in the evening) when he had spoken to Mary (in the afternoon) . (代替 would have spoken)

We would study abroad if our father had earned some money by then . (代替 would have earned .)

h. 过去完成进行时

769 形式：

I (or You, He, John, They, Those men) had been studying.

770 过去完成进行时与过去完成时的用法很相近,它通常表示一个持续到过去某时的动作：

He had been waiting for two weeks. He was still waiting. (有一个表示一段时间的状语)

Up to that time he had been translating those books. (He was still translating at "that time".)

He had been writing the letter till two o'clock.

He was now thirty years old. He had been gambling since he was ten. (He was still gambling at thirty.)

He had been standing there in the sun. (没有时间状语)

He had been thinking about his marriage.

不过这个时态并不一定表示这个过去动作将持续下去：

He came back at seven. He had been waiting for her two hours. (At seven he did not wait any more.)

He stopped swimming. He had been swimming for the last three hours.

771 另一方面,这个时态也和现在完成进行时一样,也可有一些特别的含义(可参阅 734 节)：

1) 尚未完成：

He had been writing the novel. (He had not finished it yet.)

2) 企图：

He had been studying the meaning of this proverb. (He was trying to study it.)

3) 未得结果：

We had been studying what our enemy had said. (But we were not able to understand it.)

4) 最近情况：

He had been quarrelling with his wife. (lately)

5) 反复动作：

He had been asking me the same question. (Many times)

6) 情绪：

What had he been doing? (不耐烦)

这个时态很少用在否定句中,而多以过去完成时代替：

He had not practised English for many years. (普通说法)

He had not been practising English for many years. (少见)

这个时态还可用在 said, supposed 等引起的间接引语中,代替现在完成进行时：

He said, "I have been speaking to John." = He said that he had been speaking to John.

He thought, "She was watching me when I passed." = He thought

that she had been watching him when he had passed .

i . 一般将来时

772 形式：

I (or You , He , John , It , They , Those men) will go .

I (or You , He , John , It , They , Those men) shall go .

773 一般将来时是用来表示将来时间的。在美国，单纯表示将来时，所有人称后都用 will，只是在客气的问句中用 shall，征求对方的意见，如：Shall I (we) wait here? 在英国，shall, will 的用法比较复杂；即使在美国，在比较正式的文体中，这些复杂的用法也仍然存在。在这些细微用法中，一般说来 shall 和 will 是否表示愿望，在不同的人称之后而相异，在陈述句和在疑问句中而不同，在直接引语和间接引语中也不同。简言之，它可能表示意愿或某人的愿望，有时却单纯表示将来时间。

这些差别从下面各对句子中可以看出：

I shall die when I am old . (自然规律，不是任何人的愿望。)

I will die (=I am willing to die) , I hate to live . (说话人自己的愿望)

We shall lose the war , because they are stronger . (不表示任何人的愿望)

We will fight (=We wish to fight) to the last man . (主语 we 的愿望)

You will die when you are old . (不表示任何人的愿望)

You shall die (= I wish you to die) because you violate the law . (说话人的愿望，而不是主语 you 的愿望。)

They will be defeated because they are cowards . (不表示任何人的愿望)

They shall stop(=I want them to stop)doing any mis - chief . (说话人的愿望，而不是 they 的愿望。)

Will he come tomorrow? (不表示愿望)

Shall he come (=Do you want him to come) tomorrow? (第二人称 you 的愿望)

Shall I live long? (不表示愿望)

Shall I help (=Do you want me to help) you? (第二人称 you 的愿望)

He says , " I shall come . =He says that he will come .

774 一般将来时的用法：

1) 在陈述句中表示单纯的未来动作：

形式：

a) I (or We) shall (or will) succeed .

b) You will succeed .

c) He (or She , John , They , Those men) will succeed .

It (or This car) will do .

例句：

a) I shall be able to help you . (能力)

I shall be qualified to teach .
 I shall be obliged to wait a few months . (义务)
 I shall have to tell her the bad news .
 I shall feel very sorry . (感情)
 I shall never regret .
 I shall see and hear many strange things . (客观上要发生的事) (但 : I will look and listen . 主观愿望)
 I shall never succeed , but shall suffer and die .
 I shall be robbed and killed . (不幸的遭遇)
 I shall be sick .
 We shall have a good chance . (机会) I hope I shall see her . (口语中也可说 I shall hope to see her .)
 I shall live until 80 . (命运)
 I shall live single all my life .
 We shall lose everything if we are careless . (后果)
 In these circumstances we shall be friendless .
 We shall probably go tomorrow . (不肯定)
 We shall perhaps meet some acquaintances .
 We shall be rewarded . (被动语态)
 We shall be waited on by pretty girls .
 We shall buy a new car . (不包含人的愿望的情况)
 We shall do some business .

(按照美国用法及非正式的英国用法 , 上面的例句中所有 shall 通常都以 will 代替。)

在主语为第二或第三人称时 , 都用 will 来表示同样的东西 , 如能力 , 义务等。下面例句足以说明这一用法 :

- b) You will be able to understand what I say .
 You will be arrested .
 You will succeed .
 You and I will have a good chance .
 c) He will have a good opportunity .
 He will be reproached .
 She will follow a fool if she marries a fool .
 The wind will blow westward .
 A disaster will fall on our heads .

775 2) 用于陈述句 , 表示说话人的愿望 :

形式 :

- d) I (or We) will pay the cost . I (or We) shall pay the cost .
 e) You shall pay the cost .
 You will pay the cost .
 f) He (or She , John , They , Those men) shall pay the cost .
 He (or She , John , They , Those men) will pay the cost . 例句 :
 d) I will (= wish to) (强调) marry her . (说话人 I 的愿

望)

I will (=I am willing to) be a nice boy in future, but not now.

I will (=want to) have your answer.

I will answer for it with my life.

I promise I will pay you.

I won't take this dirty money.

I will be obeyed.

We will (=Let us) go there no more.

We will take a rest.

I shall (=I certainly will) defend myself if he should attack me. (表示决心)

I shall not do any such thing.

I shall spank you if you are impolite.

e) You shall marry (=I want you to marry) him. (命令) (正式英国英语)

You shall be (=I wish you to be) happy. (许诺)

You shall not smoke (=I forbid you to smoke). (禁止)

You shall never do such a silly thing again.

Do you understand?

If you do not obey me, you shall leave the house. (威胁)

You shall be punished. (= I wish you to be punished, or I wish to punish you.) (被动语态)

You shall be rewarded. (= I will reward you, or will have you rewarded.)

You will hand (=are requested to hand) in your identity card. (这里出于礼貌用 will 代替 shall, 使命令口气得到缓和。)

You will take good care of these things.

You will investigate this case.

You will kindly (or perhaps, I know, I am sure) wait here till three o'clock in the afternoon. (用 kindly 等词使命令的口气进一步缓和)

Every member will come (=He is requested to come) this evening.

Evening dress will be worn.

All employees will attend the meeting.

All visitors will show their identity cards.

You will (=shall) do nothing of the sort. (偶尔也可用 will 代替 shall, 表示盛气凌人的态度。)

You will marry John, and the wedding will take place next week. (在日常会话中, 上面句子中的 shall, will 多以 must 代替。)

f) She shall marry (= I want her to marry) him. (正式文体)

The criminal shall die.

My child shall trouble you no more.

This student shall be rewarded.

The task shall be finished by Sunday .

It shall rain (or thunder) . (上帝的旨意或威胁)

It shall not be said (=I will not say , or I will not allow it to be said) that I am unwilling to help any friends .

776 3) 用在问句中表示单纯的将来动作 (这种不涉及愿望的将来时也像 774 节 i) a) 中句子里的将来时一样可表示能力、义务等) :

形式 :

g) Shall you succeed ?

Will you succeed ?

h) Will he (or she , John , they , those men) succeed ? i) Shall

I (or we) succeed ?

Will I (or we) succeed ? (美国英语)

例句 :

g) Shall you see Wang this evening ?

Shall you be at home tomorrow ?

When shall you need the money ?

Shall you be angry if she says that ?

(在这样用时 will 比 shall 用得更多一些)

h) Will he be arrested ?

Will they meet him on the street , if they go at nine ? Will Wang be pleased with me ?

i) Shall I be a good husband ?

Shall I understand English in four or five years ? What shall we learn next term ?

How long shall I live ?

Shall we have war or peace ?

Will (=Shall) I meet her at the party ? (美国英语) Will we have peace or war ?

777 4) 在问句中表示第二人称 (you) 的意愿 :

形式 :

j) Will you pay the cost ?

k) Shall I (or we) pay the cost ?

l) Shall he (or she , John , they , those men) pay the cost ?

m) Will I (or we) pay the cost ? (少见)

例句 :

j) Will you go or stay ? (Do you wish to go or stay ?)

Will you dine with me this evening ?

Will you kindly (or be kind enough to , be so kind as to) show me the way ?

When will you lend me the book which you say is very interesting ?

Will (or Won't) you dine with me ? (邀请)

Will you do me the pleasure (or the honour) of dining with me ?

How will you settle the problem which nobody can settle?
Why will you go (=Are you so obstinate as to go) so soon?
Will you stop (=Are you willing to stop) making that noise?

(不耐烦)

Open the door, will you?

k) What shall I do? (=What do you want me to do?)

(Shall I 比 shall 的任何其他用法都更普通)

Shall I open the window? (=Do you agree with me to open it?)

Who shall I speak to? (=Who do you want me to speak to?)

When shall I be paid? (=When do you want to pay me?)

I (or We) will go (=wish to go) to the pictures, shall I (or we)? (=do you allow me or us to)?

Shall we have an examination?

l) Shall he pay you tomorrow? (=Do you want him to pay you tomorrow?) (用于第三人称后的时候极少)

When shall they start the game?

Who shall be the umpire?

Shall they be punished?

m) "Will you do it?" "Will I do it? Of course not."

"Will you go?" "Will I? (=Of course, I will.)"

We won't do it, will we?

What will I not do? (=I will do anything.)

778 5) 用在问句及答句中表示单纯将来动作或意愿:

表示单纯的将来动作:

Shall you succeed? I shall succeed.

Shall I succeed? You will succeed.

Will he succeed? He will succeed.

表示意愿:

Will you go? I will go.

Shall I go? You shall go; You may go;
Yes, please. (这样说命令的口
气弱些)

Shall we go? You shall go; You may go;
We (we 中包括了 I)
will go; or, Let us go.

Shall he go? He shall go; He may go; Let him
go; or, Yes, please.

779 6) 用在间接引语中表示意愿或单纯的将来动作:

He says to me, "you shall not do so." 和 I ask him, "when will she come?" 这两个句子中都包含有直接引语, 如果变成 He says to me that I shall not do so 和 I ask him when she will come 后, 就都包含有间接引语。在头两个句子中, He 和 I 可称作第一主语, you 和 she 可称作第二主语, says 和 ask 为这类句子中的引语动词。可以跟

有间接引语或名词从句的动词有 :say ,state ,reply ,declare ,explain , suggest ,advise ,hear ,see ,notice ,understand ,feel ,know ,think , imagine , suppose , know , 等。还有一些短语也可跟这类结构 , 如 be afraid , be aware , be glad , be of opinion , be under apprehension , have no idea 等。

在改为间接引语时 , 有时 shall , will 保持不变 , 尽管第二主语的人称已经改变 , 如 :

He says (to you) , “ I shall succeed . ”

= He says that he shall succeed .

You say (to him) , “ You will lose all . ”

= You say he will lose all .

如果第二主语和第一主语同指一个人 , shall 表示的是单纯的将来动作 :

I say I shall succeed .

He says he shall be glad to see you .

如果第二主语和第一主语不是一个人 , 则 shall 表示第一主语的愿望 (命令或建议) :

He says I shall be promoted . (=He wants to promote me .)

I say he shall be punished . (=I order him to be punished .)

如果第二主语和第一主语不指同一人 , will 表示单纯的将来动作 :

He says you will get sick .

You say he will die very soon .

如果第一主语和第二主语同指一人 , 则 will 表示第二主语的意愿 :

He says he will come .

I say I will do my best .

780 此外 , 从下面句子中不难看出 , 如果第一主语和第二主语同指一人 , 如 shall 表示单纯未来的动作 , 则 will 表示意愿 ; 如 shall 表示意愿 , 则 will 表示单纯的将来情况。反过来也如此。

在下面例句中 , U 表示单纯未来情况 , I 代表意愿 , fail 表示单纯未来情况 , try 表示意愿 :

I know I shall (or will 美式) fail (U) , but I think I will (I) try . (在第一、第二主语均为 I 时 , shall 表示单纯未来情况 , will 表示意愿。)

I suggest you shall (I) try and I don't think you will (U) fail . (在第一主语为 I , 第二主语为 you 时 , shall 表示意愿 , 而 will 表示单纯未来情况。)

I propose he shall (I) try , although I am sure he will (U) fail . (第一主语为 I , 第二主语为 he 时 , shall 表示意愿 , will 表示单纯未来情况。)

You know I shall (U) fail , but do you expect that I will (I) try ?

You advise that I shall (I) try , and you don't care whether I will (美国用法 , 在英国 shall 用得更多些。) (U) fail .

You are sure you shall (用 will 时更多些) (U) fail , but you

tell me you will (I) try .

You insist that he shall (I) try , you have no idea that he will (U) fail .

He believes that I shall (or will) (U) fail , so he doubts whether I will (I) fail .

He orders that I shall (I) try , because he doesn't think I will (美式) (U) fail .

He wonders whether he shall (用 will 时更多些) (U) fail , but he tells me he will (I) try .

He suggests that she shall (I) try , although he knows she will (U) fail .

Will 可用来代替 shall 表示第一主语的命令或请求 ,在这种情况下 ,第二主语似乎将按此行事 (参阅 755e) :

He says we will come at eight .

They say you will hand in the papers .

Do you say they will start tomorrow ?

I say you will stay here until the end of this year .

781 更多例句 :

表示单纯的未来情况 :

We think we shall never live to see him again .

He asks me whether I think I shall succeed .

He predicts that I shall be rich in ten years .

I hear that he will take back the property .

You don't know what John will do .

I hope he will not commit suicide because of her .

Nobody can say what he himself will be in five years .

I trust you and I will live happily together .

He thinks he shall die , but the doctor says he will not .

表示意愿 :

I can tell you what I shall say , but not what I will .

He says he will do anything you ask him to do . I believe nobody will do a thing harmful to himself . He always promises that you shall have his daughter . He determines (or expects) that his daughter shall marry Wang .

He suggests . (or advises , demands , requires , orders , commands , etc .) that somebody shall do it , or something (shall) be done . (shall 在这种情况下可省略)

They are determined (or anxious) it (shall) be done at once . People ignore the rule that nobody shall smoke here . Always remember my desire , girl , that you shall never marry a rich man .

注 : 如同在一般将来时中一样 , 在 j . 将来进行时 k . 将来完成时 , 及 m . 将来完成进行时中 , shall 通常都由 will 代替。

j. 将来进行时

782 形式：

I shall be travelling .

I (or You , He , John , They , Those men) will be travelling . 783

将来进行时的用法：

1) 表示在将来一段时间正在进行的动作：

He will be working hard next week (=throughout next week) .

We shall be travelling this time next year .

I will be enjoying myself while you are working hard .

She will be taking care of the children while you are gone.

时间状语有时不说出：

We shall be meeting again (or from time to time) . They will be discussing it.

784 2) 除了表示未来以外，还可表示亲切和客气：

I shall be thinking of you .

Will you be staying here long?

Shall you be getting home late?

Shall I be disturbing you?

You will be killing yourself .

I shall be telling him to keep silent .

785 3) 表示可能性。这样用时，这个“将来”时态实际上指现在情况（参阅 790 节）：

He will (=may) be expecting me .

You will be deceiving yourself .

You will be making a mistake .

786 在这个时态中用 shall , will 表示意愿的情况是不很多的。

k . 将来完成时

787 形式 :

I (or You , He , John , They , Those men) will have done it . I shall have done it .

788 将来完成时的用法 :

1) 表示将来某时或某动作发生时业已完成的动作 :

I shall have written the letter by ten o'clock tomorrow . (= I shall finish it before ten .)

He will have been graduated before 1980 .

She will have been married to another man when you re - turn from abroad .

The patient will have died by the time his son arrives home .

I shall have done it next Friday (or in less than two months , when you come back) .

I shall have finished it by next Sunday .

He will have written it tomorrow at noon .

在以 if , unless , when , before , after , as soon as 等连词引起的状语从句中 , 通常都以现在完成时代替这个时态 :

I intend to go to college after I have completed my high school course .

You will like the book after you have read it .

I will let you know as soon as I have decided .

789 2) 表示一个持续到将来某时或某个动作发生时的动作 , 这样用时必须有一个表示未来时间的状语 :

By next Sunday he will have lived in Bangkok for twenty years .

The concert will begin at 9 p.m. They will have played half an hour when we arrive .

By the time I leave school I shall have studied English six years .

790 3) 表示一个可能已完成的动作。这样用时 , 这个 “ 将来 ” 时态实际上表示一个过去情况 (参阅 785 节) :

It is eleven . He will (= may) have gone to bed (= It is likely that he has gone to bed) .

He has become rich . He will have forgotten his friend (= It is probable that he has forgotten his friend) .

Did you go to the gambling house last night ? You will have lost all you have .

791 在这个时态中 , 表示意愿的时候是极少的。

1. 将来完成进行时

792 形式：

I (or You, He, John, They, Those men) will have been doing it.
I shall have been doing it.

793 将来完成进行时的用法和将来完成时的用法很相近,主要是将来完成进行时更多强调动作本身,但这个时态用得不多。

794 将来完成进行时的用法：

1) 表示将来某时某事之前业已在发生的动作：

He will have been playing on the piano by that time.

795 2) 表示将来某时某动作已持续多久：

By the time the sun rises, I shall have been sleeping for nine hours.

He will have been studying Chinese seven years by 1980.

By six this evening I shall have been working for ten hours.

It will have been raining for a whole week if it rains again tomorrow.

796 3) 表示一种猜想,实际上指现在情况：

He will (=may) have been waiting for me. But I cannot go, because it is raining.

It is winter. It will have been snowing in the north.

2. 时态的进一步探讨

a . 过去将来时

797 形式：

I (or You , He , She , John , They , Those men) should do it .

I (or You , He , She , John , They , Those men) would do it .

I (or You , He , She , John , They , Those men) should have done it .

I (or You , He , She , John , They , Those men) would have done it .

798 除了 12 个主要时态 , 还有一个时态值得注意 , 那就是过去将来时。

如果今天是 5 月 15 日 , 我今天说 He will come in three days . 我的意思是 : He will come on May 18 . 如果这话是 3 月 5 日说的 , 我的意思是 : He would come on May 8 .

Would come 表示从过去某时看将来发生的事 , 这就是一般过去将来时。在这个时态中主要用 would , 很少用 should。

Would come 也可以说是 will come 的过去形式：

Ten days ago he asked me whether I would go to Hong Kong the following day . (一般过去将来时)

I hoped I should be well again very soon .

He asked for the thing he would never get .

There were some signs that this party would collapse .

He would be one year old in six days .

He was in a hurry . He would leave for Singapore .

He asked me some questions . Would I be busy today ? Would I dine with him ?

同样还有过去将来完成时 , 表示从过去某时看将来某时将业已完成的事：

I thought he would have gone when the police arrived . (从过去观念看)

比较 : I think he will have gone when the police arrives . (从现在观念看)

I hoped I should have left this terrible city by the next Monday .

The way to the station was so long . The train would have started when he arrived at the station .

此外 , 还有过去将来进行时 , 表示从过去某时看将来某时将正在进行的动作：

I thought you would be sleeping now .

She didn't know we should (would) be worrying about her .

最后还有过去将来完成进行时 , 表示从过去某时看将持续到将来某时的动作：

I knew I should have been sleeping before she finished making herself up .

He said by 1979 he would have been living in the forest for 20 years .

这 4 种时态单独使用时较少 , 主要用在间接引语和名词从句中 , 如

果主要谓语动词为过去时，则从句中的谓语在表示将来情况时，都应用过去将来时。换句话说，在这类从句中，will 必须改为 would，shall 可以改为 should，但实际上改为 would 时更多，有时可改为 was (were) going to。试比较下面各对句子：

{ I know I shall fail , but I think I will try .

{ I knew I should fail , but I thought I would try .

{ I propose that he shall try , although I am sure he will fail .

{ I proposed that he should try , although I was sure he would fail .

{ You know I shall fail , but do you expect that I will try ?

{ You knew I was going to fail , but did you expect that I
would try ?

{ You are sure you shall fail , but you tell me you will try .

{ You were sure you were going to fail , but you told me you would try .

{ He believes that I shall fail , so he doubts whether I will try .

{ He believed that I was going to fail , so he doubted whether I
would try .

{ He says we will come at eight in the morning .

{ He said we would come at eight in the morning .

{ They say you will hand in the papers .

{ They said you would hand in the papers .

b. 表示将来时间的各种方式

799 除了前面谈的情况，还有许多其他表示未来动作的方式，它们每一种都有自己的特别含义：

观察下面各类句子：

1) I shall (or You will, He will) leave for Hong Kong. (单纯未来情况)

2) I will (or You shall, He shall) leave for Hong Kong. (表现了说话人的意愿) 3) I leave for Hong Kong next month. (事前安排——通常带有时间状语)

4) I am to leave for Hong King. (事前安排)

5) I am leaving for Hong Kong next month. (事前安排，比较随便的说法——通常都是时间状语)

6) He is (or You are, I am) going to (=intends to) leave for, Hong Kong. (表示个人打算)

7) He (or The tree) is going to (= is very sure to, is very likely to) die.

8) I am ready to leave for Hong Kong.

9) I am (just) about to leave for Hong Kong. (快发生的事)

10) I am on the point (or verge, brink, eve) of leaving for Hong Kong. (即将发生的事)

11) I shall be leaving for Hong Kong. (亲切客气的说法)

12) I shall have left for Hong Kong by next morning (or when you call again). (将来某时将已完成的动作)

13) Were I to leave for Hong Kong next week, I should be late for the meeting. (虚拟，下周不去。)

c . 时态的其他叫法

800 12 个时态可以有更简明的叫法，例如 present indefinite 可以叫做 present simple，present perfect 可以叫做 before - present，present continuous 可以叫做 during - present，present perfectcontinuous 可以叫做 before - and - during present 等等。

d . 时态的呼应

801 在一些复合句中，有些从句的时态要受主句时态的影响，要作必要的改变，这称为时态的呼应（Sequence of Tenses）。一个句子中动词的时态不必受前后句子中动词时态的影响，如：

He arrived（一般过去时）yesterday . He is now staying（现在进行时）at a hotel . Tomorrow he will start（一般将来时）for Rangoon .

802 在并列句中，一个分句中动词的时态也不必受另一分句时态的影响：

John came yesterday , and Mary is coming now , but William will be absent .

803 在复合句中，主句中动词为过去时（一般过去时，过去完成时及过去进行时），从句中的动词就常要受到影响（在有些情况下可以不受影响），也要用过去时：

主句

He was honest ,

He did not leave off

We were talking

The bell rang

I inquired

We understood

I suspected

der .

He found the book

从句

though he was poor .（状语从句）

until he had succeeded .

when the bell rang .

while we were talking .

what he had done at home .（名词从句）

how he was feeling .

that they would refuse to surren -

der .

which he had lost . days ago .（定语从句）
H spoke to John , who he knew

would help him .

但有时可以不受影响，如：

Yesterday I met the lady who is now standing there . The old man who will cooperate with me earned lots of money during World War .

He was very busy these several days because he leaves for Europe tomorrow .

804 在复合句中，如主句动词为现在时或将来时，从句动词可用任何时态，不受主句影响：

主句

I know , or you will
learn

从句

that he is helpful .

that he works hard .

that I have been doing
my best .

that he will be doing
something great .

I want to see the man who came yesterday .

who is waiting there .

I will wait	who will show me something . if he said he wanted to see me . while you are preparing. until you are ready .
-------------	--

805 在名词从句表示一个永恒真理或现在仍然经常发生的动作时 ,尽管主句的动词为过去时 ,从句动词的时态可以不受影响 (不过这时用过去时也可以) :

<u>主句</u>	<u>从句</u>
They learned at school	that honesty is the best policy .
I asked him	how the atomic bomb explodes .
Past events showed us the fact	that all men are selfish .
He was told	that the show starts at eight .
She learned	that he sells rice and coffee .
The students were taught	that the earth moved round the sun .
She became aware	that he was always ready to sacrifice himself .
I forgot	what I looked like .
Did he tell you	where I lived ?

在日常口语中 , 尽管主句动词用过去时 , 从句中的动词可以用现在完成时、现在进行时 , 甚至将来时态。在这种特殊情况

下 , 观点突然从过去转到现在 , 特别是这样可以使时间关系更明确 :

He told me last month that he will be twenty - two and gradu-ate from the university next year .

He said this morning that he has bought the steamer ticket and will leave tomorrow .

He said two days ago that he is working with a company this spring .

He wrote me yesterday that he will leave for Europe in three months .

806 在表示比较的句子中 , 主句和从句可以各自有自己的时态 , 彼此互不影响 :

He likes you better than he liked me .
He will like you better than he has liked me .
He liked you as much as he likes me .

e. 谓语动词和主语的一致

807 有些谓语动词必须和主语在人称和数上保持一致，特别是动词为现在时态时。在一般现在时中，若主语为第三人称单数，多数动词都要加-s 或-es，如：He comes. Mary cries。如果主语不是第三人称单数，就不需加这样的词尾，如：I come.

They cry. 而且，不管是作主要动词还是助动词，在第三人称单数的主语后都得用 is, has, does 这种形式，否则用 are, am, have 或 do。至于 can, may, must 这些助动词，在各种人称后形式不变：

He (or She, It, My friend) comes (or sees, goes) .

He (or She, It, My friend) is waiting, has come, does go, (is, has, does 作助动词) is kind, has a funny face, does nothing at all. (is, has, does 作主要动词)

I (or we, You, They, My friends) come (or see, go) .

I am waiting, have come, do go. We (or You, They, My friends) are waiting, have come, do go. (am, are, have, do 作助动词)

I am sorry. They are kind, have funny faces, do nothing at all. (am, are, have, do 作主要动词)

任何主语+must (or can, may, ought to, need not, dare not) come (or see, go) .

808 过去时可以和任何主语一起用，只有 was 和 were 是例外。was 和第一第三人称单数主语一起用，其他主语都和 were 一起用，如：

He was ill. I was ill. They were ill.

809 在将来时中主要是用 shall 或 will，不需加词尾，如：

They (or John and Mary) will come, shall come.

He (or It) will come, shall come.

810 判断主语的人称不难，但判断它的数有时却并不容易。至少有 39 种有关数上一致的问题，它们可以分为两大类。

第一大类是哪个是主语的问题。在这类中，决定哪个词或词组是主语比决定某个主语是单数还是复数更困难。以下面句子为例：

The students, as well as the teacher, are (or is?) in the class-room. (在决定用 are 还是 is 以前，首先得决定 students 和 teacher 哪是主语，还是两者都是主语。)

My guide is (or are?) the stars. (是 guide 还是 stars 是真正的主语?)

第二大类是主语是单数还是复数的问题。在这类中，决定主语是单数还是复数比决定哪个是主语更困难：

Billiards (单数还是复数?) is (or are?) my favorite game.

The phenomena (单数还是复数?) is (or are?) unbelievable.

The headquarters (单数还是复数?) is (or are?) in London.

1) 第一大类：哪个是主语？

811 谓语动词通常跟在主语后面，但有时却放在主语前面，特别是在由 who, which, how, when 等疑问词或助动词引起的问句中：

Who are they?

Which does she like best?

Has your wife come back from Paris?

Are the guests celebrating her birthday?

在某些倒装句中，谓语动词有时放在主语前面：If you are not satisfied, nor is Peter.

Never in my life have I forgot her. Nobody else can I love.

Hardly has Liz woken up when the sun rises.

“I feel bored.” “So is evrybody.”

在下面这类倒装句中情况也如此。

There come many children.

Before the house stands a tree.

Before the house stand a tree and a bench (two things).

In the house there is a cat, (there is) a dog, and (there are) three birds. (后面的 there is, there are 多省略, 在 a cat 前用 is 是对的。)

To Dick fall the duties of maintaining the family.

After Jan comes Nora.

Here's all the coins I have. (在口语中 here's 和 there's 和 where's 后可跟一复数名词)

There's three friends waiting for me.

Where's the kids that stole the apples?

在下面这类句子中，补语或分词提前，主语在 is, was, are, were 之后：

Gone are all my happy days!

Waiting for the results are thousands of people. Gathered under the roof were all the big shots.

812 两个单数名词由 and 连接可构成复数主语：

John and Mary (=Two persons) are coming.

(但：John is coming and Mary is coming, too.)

My money and my friend are both gone.

Good coffee and bad are different from each other.

813 两个人称代词由 and 连接也构成复数主语：

He and I (=We) are friends.

Both you and he (=Both of you) are ill.

814 由 every, any 等词修饰的几个主语，尽管由 and 连接，仍然保持是单数：

Every boy and every girl is playing.

Any relative, any friend and any neighbour is ready to help him.

Each grown-up and each child likes it.

No city, no village, no mountain, (and) no sea is a place of safety.

Many a man and many a woman has seen the accident.

815 两个名词前各加同一限定词，表示是两个人或两样东西，谓语动词要用复数：

A general and a statesman (two persons) were killed .

His home and his office are very far from my home .

A black and a white dog are playing in the yard .

一个不可数名词，如有两个形容词修饰，而指两样东西，动词用复数；否则用单数：

English and French grammar are different .

Sweet and sour pork is delicious .

如果主体词重复，表示是两样东西，动词要用单数：

The situation before the war and the situation after are different .

What he said and what he thought were the same .

如作主语的两个名词用同一限定词，指的是一个人或一样东西，动词要用单数：

A general and statesman (one person) was killed .

His home and office (one place) is very far from my house .

A black and white dog (one dog) is playing .

What he said and thought was for others .

816 有时两个名词虽由 and 连接，但习惯上被看作是一样东西，这时动词也用单数：

Bread and butter is enough for me .

Whisky and soda is his favourite .

Duck and peas is delicious , but eggs and bacon is better .

That cup and saucer is broken .

The wheel and axle is out of repair .

A needle and thread is all my grandmother needs .

Romeo and Juliet is a tragedy .

817 两个抽象名词一起用时，有时代表两个东西，有时代表一个东西，动词的单复数要根据意思来决定，有时两者都可以（看我们如何考虑）：

The use and object of this are (or is) simple .

The stitching and binding of books are (or is) a hard job .

His courage and endurance are (or is) Great .

Sympathy and understanding are (or is) required .

Trial and error (通常看作一个概念) is the best way to learn .

All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy .

The ebb and flow of one's fortune is a matter of course .

818 有时一个主语后跟一逗号，以及“ and+名词+副词 ”，后面的动词就常和第一个名词一致。“ and+名词+副词 ”可以看作一个省略的分句：

Mary , and her parents too (or also , likewise , as well) , is fond of John . (= Mary is fond of John , and her parents are fond of John , too .) Mary , and perhaps (or particularly , even , certainly) her parents , is fond of John . (and+副词+名词)

Mary , but not her parents , is fond of John .

Mary's parents , but not Mary herself , are fond of John . (在跟有 not 时，可以用 but 代替 and 。)

819 单纯数词一般看作单数，如果有两个数词由 and 或 time 或其它词连接，动词可以用单数或复数形式：

Thirteen is an unlucky number .

Two and two make (or makes) four .

Eight plus five equals thirteen . (书面体)

Three fives are (or is) fifteen . (口语体)

Three times five are (or is) fifteen .

What are (or is) twice seven ?

40 multiplied by 58 equals 2320 . (书面体)

Five from nine (or Nine take away five) is (or leaves) four . (口语体)

Six hundred and one minus forty equals five hundred and sixty - one . (书面体)

Three into twelve goes four . (口语体)

Two hundred fifty divided by fifty equals five . (书面体)

如果数词表示复数的人或东西，动词也用复数形式：

Five (=Five Persons) were killed .

One and a half...为复数，而 half a...为单数：

One and a half dollars were spent on sugar , and half a dollar was Spent on flour .

A fine and /or imprisonment is (or are) not enough .

820 如果两个主语由 or 或 nor 连接 动词与最靠近的主语一致 Either you or I am right .

Neither Alice nor her parents like Mike .

One or two words are enough . (但是 A word or two is enough .)

There is one or two examples .

Wang or rather his brothers decide the matter .

但：Life or (=and) death are nothing to me.

Whether John or Mary are willing to help me is still a problem .

821 两个主语若由 not only...but also...连接起来，动词和最近的主语一致：

Not only my house , but many other houses have been white - washed .

(但最好说：Not only my house has been whitewashed , but many other houses , too .)

Not only Mary's parents , but also Mary herself likes Mike .

There is not only Mary , but also Mary's parents .

822 如果主语后跟有介词短语、连词短语或是分词短语，动词仍与主语一致，不受中间插入成分的影响（注意主语后及短语后的逗号）：

Two girls , besides (介词) Mary , are studying Malay .

All my sisters , except Lilian , study flower - arranging .

The street , with so many people going up and down , is dirty .

Lee , together with (介词短语) his three brothers , has come to our party .

The horses , along with their owner , fall into the river .

This problem , in addition to the other two , make me sad .

You , as well as (连词短语) he , are mistaken .

The students , much more than the teacher , wish for a holiday . The teacher , as much as the students , wishes for a holiday .

Wang's friends , no less than Wang himself , wish for his success .

One apple , divided (分词短语) by six children , is a thingunpleasant .

The manager , accompanied by his assistants , has gone out .

My schoolmates , including John , are kind to me .

All the members , not excepting the chairman , are arrived .

823 上面那种插在主语和谓语动词之间的成分 , 也可移到句首 , 意思是差不多的 :

Besides Mary , three students are studying Malay .

In addition to the other two , this problem makes me sad .

No less than Wang himself , Wang's friends wish for his success .

Accompanied by his assistants , the manager has gone out .

824 主语后面有时跟有 of 或其他介词时 , 动词仍和主语一致 : One of the boys is sick .

The meeting of so many strangers broadens his view .

A cleanup of such a government is absolutely necessary .

The loss of his parents was too much for him .

A truckload of oranges costs about a thousand dollars .

Two spoons of sugar are just enough .

Two bottles of whisky are nothing to him .

Only five bags of rice are in stock .

Six cases of cholera are reported .

Signs of revolt are increasing every day .

This kind (or sort , type , class , species , breed , variety) of cat is rare . These kinds (or sorts , ...) of flowers are rare . (口语体)

Flowers of this kind (or sort , ...) are rare . (书面体)

One of the students , who speaks Irish , is her son .

One of the students who speak Irish is her son .

More children than one are infected .

Nobody but five workers is promoted .

Such people as John are wonderful .

The number of banks in this city is about forty . (但 : A number of banks are closed down . 动词和这类数词短语后的名词一致)

The average of absentees is four in each meeting . (但 : An average of four persons are absent in each meeting .)

The total of murders in this year is over two hundred . (但 :

A total of two hundred murders are committed this year .)

后面跟复数动词的短语有 : a majority of people , a variety of reasons , a rain of bullets , a storm of stones , a flood of re-sources , a sea of faces , a trickle of tourists , a mountain of watermelons 等等。

825 系动词一般都和前面的主语一致 ,而不受后面补语的影响 :My only pleasure is the movies.

The movies are my only pleasure .

Those stars are my only guide .

My only guide is those stars .

His food is fruit and milk .

Fruit and milk are his food .

Dogs are a pleasant trouble .

We are a football team .

主语后的同位语和补语一样都不影响动词的形式 :

The movies , my only pleasure , are also my ruin .

Those stars , my only guide , are twinkling all the night .

His food , fruit and milk is delicious and nutritious .

They become master (or mistress) of the situation (or the English language) .

Many fall victim .

They seem to be our enemy .

They are always the victor .

The world appears too many for me .

The nation is but individuals .

Who is knocking ? It seems to be John and Mary .

She is all eyes (or all tears , all smiles) .

The room is all books and newspapers .

The street is all loiterers and beggars .

但 : The following is my address (are their addresses) .

826 在某些习惯用法中补语用复数形式 , 动词仍与主语一致 :

He is (or becomes , makes) great friends with John .

He is pals (or shipmates , partners) with you .

He is enemies with everyone .

I am quits with him .

827 不定式、动名词或从句作主语时 , 尽管里面有复数名词 , 动词仍用单数形式 :

For them to tell lies is very easy .

For us businessmen to know many people is necessary . Telling lies does not pay .

Visiting all European countries is my ambition .

What we want is good roads .

That they like power and wealth is true .

" It pours cats and dogs " means it rains heavily .

“ Many happy returns ” is a form of greeting on someboby's birthday .

828 在 it 引起的强调某句子成分的句子中，动词用单数更好一些：

It is they who (代表 it , 而不代表 they) is (比 are 好) wrong .

It is you that (代表 it , 而不代表 you) often makes (比 make 好) such mistakes .

但实际上用复数的人也不少。

2) 第二类：主语是单数还是复数？

829 数词，不管是泛指还是特指，只要是指人或物，通常都跟有复数动词：

Seven were killed .

Two are missing .

Few know it .

A few have been thrown away .

Several were wounded .

Hundreds have become homeless .

Both have come .

Thousands upon thousands were starved .

Some were killed , others were wounded .

A large variety of umbrellas are on sale .

A few are satisfied , but a great many are disappointed and very angry .

The majority (or generality) of human beings are selfish .

Fifty dozen of stockings have just arrived .

Ten pair (s) of gloves are on display .

Four yoke of oxen are coming .

Twenty head of cattle are grazing .

A number of articles are damaged . (但 : The number of thirteen is unlucky .)

One and a half (more than one) apples are entirely rotten . (但 : One apple is rotten .)

No students are interested in this subject . (但 : No student is interested in it .)

Many hours and days have been spent . (但 : Many an hour and day has been wasted .)

More persons than one are suspected . (但 : More than one person is suspected .)

There is [or are] more than one person .)

830 量词一般看作单数：

So much has already been done .

A large amount of money has been spent on agriculture .

A large quantity of food was left rotten .

Little has been done .

A little is enough .

A high degree of development is in sight .

A great deal was lost .

Too much vegetables (即使用复数) spoils my appetite .

Not much clothes is on sale in this small town .

Too much old books has been crammed into my head .

831 有些单词或短语，若跟有不可数名词，则成为量词，因此是单数，如跟有可数名词，则成为数词，这时就成了复数：

There is enough (量词) water .

There are enough (数) rooms . More water is required .

More trucks are required .

Some coffee has been ordered .

Some apples have been stolen .

NO milk was sold in this store .

No oranges were sweet in this season .

None of the money is wisely spent .

None of the houses are good to see .

Most of the milk was spilled out .

Most of the bananas were rotten .

A lot of money has been spent .

A lot of people have been invited .

Abundance of meat is consumed every day .

Abundance of watermelons are on sale .

Plenty of water is used in this city .

Plenty of pigs are killed every day .

Half of the liquor is alcohol .

Half of the inhabitants are workers .

Part of the money is spent on the movies .

Part of the books are damaged .

The rest of the cost was paid by him .

The rest of the children were still young .

Three fourths of the earth's surface is covered by water .

Three fourths of the residents are Chinese .

The bulk of his property has been sold .

The bulk of the inhabitants are Indians .

A mass of snow lies before my door .

A mass of people are gathering on the square .

A large percentage of profit has come to nothing .

A large percentage of crimes are due to alcohol .

A large proportion of his income is spent on liquor .

A large proportion of the residents are Arabs .

832 有些指示词可以作单数也可以作复数：

All the city is clean and very beautiful . 但 : All the cities are clean and beautiful .

Anything good is good to him . 但 : Any streets in this city are

familiar to him .

Someone (or Somebody) has come . 但 : Some friends have come .

Such a person is never happy . 但 : Such persons are always dissatisfied .

A certain boy has broken it . 但 : Certain boys have done it .

Another girl loves him . 但 : Other girls love him .

Each wears a cap . 但 : They each wear caps .

Either (or Neither) (作形容词) party is right .

Either (or Neither) (作代词) of the two parties has its good leader .

Either (or Neither) (作代词) have their good leaders . (口语体)

Neither Jan , nor Helen , (nor) Belinda , nor Dorotby have come home . (口语体)

833 What , who , which 可作单数也可作复数 :

Who are (or is) waiting outside ?

Which are (or is) yours ?

What 引起的从句多作单数 :

What he is doing is trivial . 834 What made me sad was his unhappy marriage .

如果补语是一个复数名词 , what 引起的从句也可作复数看待 :

What children like are stories .

What seem to be boats are rocks .

这主要得根据情况决定 , 试比较下面句子 :

What (= A thing that) seems to be a rat is something else .

What (= Things that) seem to be rats are some other animals .

His family (作为整体) is large .

834 集体名词可以表示一个集体 , 可以看作是单数 , 如果表示其成员 , 就可以作复数看待 , 特别是在英国 :

His family (= The members of his family) are all well .

一个集体名词若有 every , each , a , this , that 修饰 , 常常作单数看待 :

Every family in this area is equipped with guns .

This club is devoted to the study of photography .

A committee is appointed to inquire into the matter .

The committee are at dinner .

The cavalry was repulsed .

The cavalry wear scarlet trousers .

This team is well organized .

Our (而不是 These) team are good players .

The company was organized by Mr . Johnson and they are mostly Americans .

The mob becomes more and more violent .

The mob were throwing up their caps and cheering .
This hotel is by the seaside .
All the hotel are startled at the alarm .
This class is a small one .
Our class are quarrelling among themselves .
The old couple (or pair) is happy .
The young couple (or pair) are quarrelling with each other .
但 : This twin (one of the twins) is like the other .
These twins are like each other .
The litter of pups was born yesterday . (动物的集体)
The litter of pups were playing with each other .
Every herd of elephants in this area seems to be happy and free .
The flock of birds were flying about .

机关、团体、地方，例如 Bank of Japan , Labour Party , Hong Kong Sport Club , Ministry of Finance , the press , the city , the village , the neighbourhood 等既可作单数也可作复数。在美国英语中，单数的集体名词通常看作单数。在英国英语中，人或动物的单数集体名词却既可看作单数，也可看作复数，但无生命东西的集合体的单数名词，如 cluster (of grapes) , collec - tion (of books) , bunch (of keys) , pair (of shoes , scissors , glasses) 只看作是单数。

835 有些集体名词通常作复数看待，但相应表示其成员的词，却可有单数形式：

The nobility have become poor .
This nobleman has become poor .
The peasantry (or tenantry , yeomanry) were underfed .
The peasant (or tenant) was underfed .
The gentry are rich .
This gentleman is rich .
The police are well - trained .
That policeman is well - trained .
Mankind are destroying their own civilization .
Man is destroying his own civilization .
Humanity is destroying its own civilization .
The human beings are destroying their own civilization .
The laity are not able to understand this term .
A layman is not able to understand this term .
The clergy are opposed to it .
A clergyman is among us .
The cavalry have fought bravely .
This cavalryman has done something great .
The infantry were defeated .
Every infantryman was healthy and strong .
The militia are to defend their town .
No militiaman knows about the infiltration of the enemy .

The youth are the future of a nation .

A youth is waiting at the bus stop for his girlfriend .

The British(or English ,Irish ,Scotch ,Spanish ,Dutch ,French) are....

A Briton(or Englishman ,Irishman ,Scotsman ,Spaniard ,Dutchman , Frenchman) is....

836 有些集体名词，形式上是单数，前面却可以加数词，后面跟复数动词：

A hundred clergy are meeting .

Twenty police (= Twenty policemen) are coming .

Twenty thousand infantry are setting out .

Many gentry are opposed to the measure .

Those folk (s) (or people) are hard - headed .

His sixteen offspring are all working with him .

All his kindred are living in London .

Three million population of this city are well - fed .

Four thousand cattle are to be exported .

837 有些名词经常有-s 或-es 词尾，它们都跟复数动词：

The eaves are pretty .

Riches are not always dependable .

The odds are against us . (比较 : What is the odds ? ——口语体)

Thanks are expressed .

Clothes are (Clothing is) not much needed here .

These goods are to be delivered .

另一些这类名词是 : archives , assets , belongings , earnings , grounds , rapids , nuptials , oats , premises , proceeds , quarters , remains , savings , scales , woods , winnings

838 有些疾病的名称带有-s 词尾，但都作单数看待：

The measles(or mumps ,rickets ,smallpox ,shingles)is a disease very common in this village .

839 有些名词通常带-s 或-es 词尾，它们后面既可跟单数动词，也可跟复数动词：

抽象名词：

Every means (= method) has been used . All means (=methods) have been used .

An alms (or Much alms) was given to the poor .

These alms were given to the poor .

Great (or Much , Little) pains have (or has) been taken .

The tidings is (or are) bad . (比较 : The news is——不能用 are——bad .)

His wages are 3000 dollars a month . The wages of sin is death (old usage) . A living wage is received only by a few work - ers .

An amends is necessary . These amends are satisfactory .

This species is rare . These species are valuable .

A series of battles was (or were) being fought .

Many series of battles have been fought .

地方名称 :

The headquarters of the trade is in London . The headquarters of these various trades are in London .

A barracks is standing on the hill . Some barracks are the largest in this country .

A (general) stores is located at the corner . Several new (general) stores are being set up .

A glass - works is being built . These two glass - works are the best in this area .

A golf-links (= golf - course) is in the eastern part of the city .

Some golf - links are very far from here .

A crossroads is usually dangerous , but some crossroads are safe .

A gallows is being set up . Some gallows are left idle .

A shambles has replaced the prosperous city . Many shambles present themselves to our eyes .

Kensington Gardens is a nice place . There are not many botanical gardens in this country .

A lodgings is easy to find . Many lodgings are for rent .

“ Is there a public baths here ? ” “ There are many public baths . ”

A kennels is where dogs are bred . Some kennels sell precious dogs .

His whereabouts is (or are) unknown .

物件名称 :

The bellows (or scissors , pincers , tongs , forceps , shoes , pants , shorts , glasses , etc .) are lying in the corners .

A pair of bellows (or scissors , pincers , tongs , etc .) is lying idle .

840 有些动物的名字并不带-s 或-es 词尾 , 但可以用作复数或单数名词 :

Salmon (or Trout) (作为食品) is delicious .

These salmon (or trout) are caught in that river .

Fish (作为食品) is their only food . Three fishes are visible in the water . A lot of fish are caught .

Poultry (作为食品) is delicious . The poultry (作为活的动物) are drinking water .

The sheep is (or are) sleeping .

A deer is playing . Some deer are running .

841 有些名词似乎不可数 , 却可有单复两种形式 , 有不同意义 :

His career has reached its climax . Their careers have been successful . (一个人有一番事业。许多人有许多番事业。)

His beard is impressive . Their beards are long .

The mane of this horse is thin . The manes of those horses are thick .

His offspring is healthy . Their offsprings are all soldiers .

The population of this city is thin . The populations of these two cities are similar .

The language of the U . S . A . is English . The languages of Britain and the U . S . A . are almost the same .

The alphabet of English is twenty - six letters .

The alphabets of English and French are a little different from each other .

842 有些学科的名称，虽以-s 结尾，却都作单数看待：

Mathematics is an important subject in school .

Economics is a study of production and consumption .

Dramatics is his subject . And accoustics , too .

如果一个学科名称用来表示某些实际事务，则可作为复数：

My mathematics are poor .

The economics of this country are stable .

Such politics are foolish . Such tactics are ridiculous .

Gymnastics are popular today .

The ethics of some politicians are doubtful .

Statistics on this subject are incorrect .

843 某些以-s 结尾的游戏或球类名称作为单数看待：

Billiards (or Bowls , Dominos , Draughts) is my favourite game .

但：Cards are not interesting to me .

844 以-ese 结尾的国民名称可作为单、复两种形式：

That Japanese (or Chinese , Portuguese , Vietnamese) is my friends .

Those Japanese (or Chinese , Portuguese , Vietnamese) are my friends .

845 有些外来术语，有特别的单数及复数形式：

This axis (or medium , radius , larva , analysis , criterion , Phenomenon , oasis , libretto , soprano) is... (单数形式)

Those axes (or media , radii , larvae , analyses , criteria , phenomena , oases , libretti , soprani) are... (复数形式)

The data is (or are) ...

846 由一个形容词加 the 来代表一类人时，都作为复数：

The honest (= The honest people) are always trustworthy .

The poor are to be relieved .

The blind are unfortunate .

The strong , the rich , the wicked are respected as the wise .

The oppressed are to rise one day .

有个别这类形容词代表单个的人，后面要跟单数动词（这些多为法律用语）：

The dead (or deceased, departed) was fifty years of age.

The bereaved is (or are) still young.

The condemned (or accused) is absent.

His intended (or betrothed) is young.

有些形容词加 the 后表示抽象概念或具体东西，但都作单数看待：

The beautiful (= Beauty) is the ideal of life.

The true looks less attractive than the false.

The familiar is always more desirable than the unknown.

The inside of the palace is more beautiful than the outside. (the inside = the inside part)

The white of an egg is full of protein.

847 长度、重量、时间等名称多作单数看待：

Fifty dollars (= The sum of fifty dollars) is not a large sum.

Three yards (= The length of three yards) is not enough.

Six months (= The period of six months) is too short a time to learn anything.

Five kilograms (= The weight of five kilograms) is enough. 这类带数词的名词前还可加一个指示词：

One short seven days is like seven years.

That three dollars (= That capital of three dollars) was the beginning of his career.

That second six months was happy indeed.

Every ten minutes is a trial.

A fortnight is not long enough to do the job.

This two kilograms of meat is enough for ten persons.

An estimated two thousand persons was killed in this hurricane.

A good ten miles is the distance we have climbed.

A happy three days has passed like a dream.

Such a weary six years was to me a terrible dream.

Ten apples (= Such a number of apples) is enough.

Two thousand immigrants is the quota for us this year.

如对组成部分加以强调，动词也可用复数形式：

Fifty dollars are too expensive.

Three yards cost thirty dollars.

848 书名、电影名等，即使里面包含有复数名词，也作单数看待：

Gulliver's Travels is my favourite book.

City lights is a famous movie.

Giants of the Earth is an opera.

The Canterbury Tales is (or are) very interesting.

849 复数的专有名词都在后跟复数动词：

The Philippines have seven thousand islands in the Pacific. The

Himalayas are the roof of the world .

The Niagara Falls are the falls on the Niagara River .

The Great Lakes are a series of five lakes between the USA and Canada .

The Dardanelles are a strait 40 miles long and 1 —4 miles wide .

The Pleiades are a cluster of stars in the constellation Taurus .

The Olympics are an international athletic competition held every four years .

其他复数专有名词还有：the Canaries , the Solomon Islands ; the Alps , the Rockies , the Urals , the Pyrenees , the Andes ; the Graces , the Fates ; the Netherlands

少数例外情况：

The USA is a wealthy and strong country .

The United Nations is an international organization working for the peace of the world .

B . 虚拟语气

850 前面谈的都是陈述语气。现在我们讨论一下虚拟语气。虚拟语气的意义和陈述语气的意义是很不相同的，尽管它们的形式和名称有相近之处。不少学英语的人觉得虚拟语气使人迷惑。他们有时理解不当或使用错误，因为他们把陈述语气中学到的东西直接搬到虚拟语气中。

英语有三种语气。陈述语气表现事实，祈使语气表示愿望，虚拟语气表示假想。在陈述语气中 (The Indicative Mood)，我们说 He comes here every day . 说明这是一个事实。如果我们说 Let him come here . 这就是让某人做某事，是一种意愿，这就是祈使语气 (The Imperative Mood)。而虚拟语气 (The Subjunctive Mood) 表示一种假想的情况，例如：If he came here, I would ask him . 表示万一他来，我将问他，但估计他不一定会来。因此是一种假想的情况。在这种情况下，谓语动词都用另一套特殊的形式，称为虚拟语气。这种语气主要用在条件从句、让步从句及名词从句中。

1 . 状语从句中的虚拟语气

a . 在条件从句中的用法

1) 6 个虚拟动词形式 (参阅 684 节)

851 a) 虚拟现在时表示一个不一定会发生的情况, 可以指现在的情况或将来情况或没有时间性的情况:

If he know(not knows) it , he will tell me . (But I DOUBT whether he knows it .)

If Mary have the money , she will buy it . (But I DOUBT whether Mary has the money .)

If everything be ready , we should start soon .

If his advice be good , it would be accepted .

这时条件从句中的谓语动词用其原形 (不加词尾), 主句中谓语用 shall , will , should , would 构成。但是在现代英语中这种用法已不多见。

852 b) 虚拟过去时表示一个与现在、将来事实相反的假想情况:

If he knew it , he would tell me . (But I know he DOES NOT know it .) (事实是他不知道, 因此他不会告诉我。)

If Mary had the money , she would buy it . (But I know Mary HAS NOT the money .) (事实是玛丽没有钱, 因此她不会买。)

在这种情况下, 条件从句中的谓语动词都用与陈述句过去时相同的形式, 主句中多用 would (间或在第一人称后可用 should) 这种形式。但动词 be 一般用 were 这个形式, 不管主语是第几人称:

If everything were ready , we should start .

(But I know that not everything is ready .)

If his advice were good , it would be accepted .

853 c) 另外, 表示未来情况, 还可用 “ were+不定式 ” 这种形式:

If he were to come , I should be absent from home . (But I know he WILL NOT come .)

If I were to marry Lilian , I should not be able to maintain the family . (But I know I SHALL NOT marry her .)

If he were to study music , he would have a hard time .

854 d) 虚拟将来时将来的假想情况还可用 should 引起短语表示, 表示实现可能性不大的情况, 可译为 “ 万一…… ”, 这时主句中的谓语动词用 will 或 would 引起都可以:

If he should know it , he will (or would) tell me . (But I DOUBT whether he knows it .)

If Mary should have the money , she will (or would) buy it .
(But I DOUBT)

If everything should be ready , we shall (or should) start soon .

If his advice should be good , it will (or would) be accepted .

855 e) 如果表示有某种愿望, 也可用 would 引起的短语作从句的谓语, 这时表示说话人不相信主语有此愿望:

If he would (= were willing to) pay me , we would be friends again . (But I know he WILL NOT BE WILLING to pay .)

If you would do something for me , I should be very much obliged . (But I know you WILL NOT BE WILLING to .)

If she would be a nun , I would be a monk .

If I would , I could .

856 f) 虚拟过去完成时表示一个与过去事实相反的假想情况 , 这时主句谓语用 “ would + have + 过去分词 ” 这种结构 :

If he had known it , he would have told me . (But I know he DID NOT know it .)

If Mary had had the money , she would have bought it . (But I know she HAD NOT the money .)

If everything had been ready , we should have started .

If his advice had been good , it would have been accepted .

857 虚拟语气用法中 , 有 18 项特殊的问题值得注意。现在分别加以讨论。

858 a) 虚拟条件中的谓语有时可用进行时 , 表示 “ 如果.....正在 (进行) ” 等。主句中谓语可用一般时、进行时或完成时 , 仍由 should , would , might , could 等构成 :

If she were living happily , I should be very much astonished .

If human beings were not killing each other , we would be living a happier life .

If you had been wandering about while they were working , you might have been fired .

859 b) 除用 if 外 , 还可用一些其他词或短语引起条件状语从句 , 如 suppose , supposing (that) , provided (that) , providing , in case , on condition that , unless (= if not) 等 :

All my property would be yours on condition that you would marry me .

I could accompany you provided I had finished my work .

In case a friend should call , please ask him to go to the Diamond Restaurant .

Unless he had studied the theory very carefully , it would have been dangerous to publish it .

I should have called on you , but (that) I was (= if I had not been) too busy .

He would have died only (that) the doctor saved him (= if the doctor had not saved him) .

860 c) 如果条件从句中包含有 were , had , should , could , 连词有时可以省略 , 这时条件从句要用倒装语序 , 即把谓语动词或其中的一部分 (如助动词 , 系动词 be 等) 移到主语前面 , 这种结构主要用于书面语 :

Were I (= If I were) in your place , I wouldn't do it .

Had you (= If you had) seen it , you would have believed .

Should anyone (= Suppose anyone should) come , say I am gone .

Were they to get married (= If they were to get married) , they would not be happy .

Could they raise sufficient fund , they would start the project .

861 d) 条件从句不仅可以放在句首 , 也可放在主句后面 , 偶尔也可插在主句的主语与谓语中间 :

If he should eat so much fat , John would not live long .

John would not live long if he should eat so much fat .

John , if he should eat so much fat , would not live long .

If my father had been ill a few more weeks , my family would have been starved .

My family would have been starved if my father had been ill a few more weeks .

My family , if my father had been ill a few more weeks , would have been starved .

862 e) 条件从句的谓语可以包含一个助动词 (包括 would , could , might , had to 等) , 但语法上不一定需要 :

If you would , you could .

If I could help anyone , I would do it .

If I might say anything , I would inform her of the danger .

但 : If he knew it (无助动词) , he would , tell me .

863 f) 在虚拟条件句的主句中 , 谓语通常都必须包含有 would , should , could , might 这类助动词 :

If you needed assistance , I could do something .

If it were necessary , I might leave the office for a few minutes .

If they treated me as a slave , I had to resign .

If you had informed me earlier , I needn't have made this contract .

If you had not encouraged me , I daren't have started (在口语中代替 wouldn't have dared to start) the project .

864 g) 虚拟条件句的主句可以是 :

1 / 陈述句 : If I knew , I would tell you . If he decided to study , I could teach him .

2 / 疑问句 : If he should fail again , what else could I do ?
If you would like to work , when could you start ?

3 / 感叹句 : If you knew the reason , how simple it would appear !
If we had not known any war , how happy we should have been !

4 / 祈使句 : If you should meet Mr . Kim , please tell him I arrived yesterday . If anyone should come for money , tell him I am gone . If you still had the courage , do try again .

注 : 在祈使句中除了用加重语气的 do 外 , 不能使用其他助动词来构成谓语。

865 h) 通过下表可以比较一下陈述语气和虚拟语气两种情况的差别 :

I = Indicative Mood (陈述语气)

S = Subjunctive Mood (虚拟语气)

表现的情况 (可能性)	条件从句 (现在或任何 时的假设)	主句 (现在或任何 时的结论)
I. 有可能性	If she loves him,	She will marry him.
S. 可能性不大	If she love him,	she will marry him.
S. 与事实相反 (可能性)	If she loved him,	she would marry him.
I. 有可能性	If she loved him,	she would marry him.
S. 与事实相反	If she had loved	she would have him, married him.
(可能性)	(将来假设)	(将来结论)
S. 可能性不大	If she should love	she will (or would) him, marry him.
S. 与事实相反	If she would love	she would marry him. him,
S. 与事实相反	If she were to love	she would marry him. him,

注1：上面主句中的 will 也可用 shall, can, may, must, ought to, need (not), dare (not) 代替，意思略有变化。

注2：主句中的 would 可用 should, could, might, must, had to, need (not), dare (not) 代替，意思也略有变化。

866 i) 条件从句和主句所表示时间有时并不相同，这种句子称为错综时间条件句 (Conditional Sentences of Mixed Time)，如过去假设配合现在结论，现在假设配合过去结论，等等。

1 / 过去——现在：

If I had studied medicine ten years ago, I should be (代替 should have been) a doctor now.

If you had bought this house before the war, you could sell (代替 could have sold) it now for ten times the original price.

If I had worked hard for the last ten years, I should be living a happy life today.

2 / 现在——过去：

If John should arrive today, he must have started five days ago from Tokyo.

If I gave a party this week, I should have let you know a week ago.

3 / 过去——将来：

If he had started five days ago, he would arrive in three days. (But I know he did not start five days ago, nor will he arrive in three days.)

4 / 将来——过去：

If he should arrive in three days, he would have started five days ago.

5 / 现在——将来：

If I should fail this time , I would try again .

If you didn't make up your mind this moment , you might suffer in future .

867 j) 一般说来, 条件从句谓语若为虚拟语气, 主句谓语也应是虚拟语气。但在个别情况下, 尽管条件从句的谓语为虚拟语气, 主句的谓语都用陈述语气:

If you were in need of money , here I am .

If he had wanted to marry , there were many girls .

I shall be very happy if you could agree .

I shall be surprised if he became bankrupt .

868 k) 如果条件句作宾语从句, 它的动词形式不受主句谓语动词 (如 tell , report 等) 的影响:

I often tell him that	}	if he had done good work , he
		would have been rewarded .
I have told him that		if he did good work , he would
		be rewarded .
I told him that	}	if he were to do good work , he
I shall tell him that		would be rewarded .

869 1) 在主从两种句内, 助动词的意义如下:

1 / 从句内, 任何人称后, should 无特别意思。

2 / 从句内, 任何人称后, would 表示意愿。

3 / 主句内, would 在任何人称后, should 在第一人称后无特别意思。

4 / 主句内, should 在二, 三人称后表示说话者的主意。

5 / 从句内, 任何人称后, could , might 等表能力, 许可。

6 / 主句内, 任何人称后, could , might 等表示推测。

If we (or you , she) should (=happen to) meet John , we should (没有特别意思) (or you would , she would) not be able to recognize him .

If you (or he , I) would (= wished to , were willing to) marry her , her parents would (无特别意思) be happy .

If she went to the front , I would (=would be willing to) , you would , he would , too .

If you (or he) needed it , you (or he) should have it (=I would be willing to give it to you or him) .

If he could not have travelled (=had not been able to travel) in so many countries , he could not have known (=he would not be able to have known) so many things .

If he had been educated , he could not have been (=wouldnot have been) so silly .

If he might (=were allowed to) drink as he likes , he might (=would probably) drink too much .

870 m) 条件从句有时可以缩短成:

1 / 介词短语 :

Without water (= If there were no water) , they would die of thirst .

In his position(=If one were in his position) ,one would commit suicide .

What would I not give for it (=if I could get it) ?

We should have died but for you (= if it had not been for you) .

2 / 不定式短语 :

I should be very glad to help anybody(=if I could help anyone) .

Stones would have wept to see the scene (=if they had seen the scene) .

To hear him talk (=if you heard him talk) you would think him an American .

3 / 分词短语 :

Coming yesterday (=If it had come yesterday) , the rain would have spoiled our party .

Doing your best(= If you did your best) ,you would be criticized all the same .

Left to herself (= If she were left to herself) , she would surely get into trouble .

Surrounded longer by the enemy (=If it had been surrounded longer by the enemy) , the city couldn't have maintained itself and would have surrendered .

4 / 名词或代词 :

Your refusal (=If you should refuse , it) would mean offence .

A gentleman (=If he had been a gentleman , he) wouldn't have done so .

I (=If I were you , I) wouldn't agree to it .

5 / 连词 or 或 otherwise :

Be honest , or (=if you were not honest) nobody would trust you .

He must be crazy , otherwise he wouldn't have divorced her .

有时尽管没有条件从句或表示条件的短语,有的句子实际上也是虚拟条件句 :

Heaven and earth would cry at the sad news (if they were able to hear it) .

Even stones would rush to listen to her singing .

The uproar of the fighting might have aroused dead men .

I was so hungry . I could have eaten a whole cow .

这类句子可以称为含蓄条件句 (Conditional Sentences of Implied Condition) .

871 n) 有时一个定语从句起着条件从句的作用 :

Anyone who (= , if he) should have insulted my dog , would have insulted me .

A nation , which (= , if it) often got into political troubles ,

would never make progress .

Every caress I gave you(=if I gave you any caress ,every caress)
would be sin .

What would people say about John , whose (=if his) wife should
go with another boy ?

872 o) 有时整个条件从句可以不出现 ,但从上下文中可感觉出来 ,这时
主句谓语可以用虚拟语气 :

I might have come yesterday . (If it had not rained ; but as
you know , it rained yesterday .)

I would do anything for you . (If I could I...)

He would have failed . (If he had made less efforts , he...)

I should have died .

You need not have told her the secret .

I had rather (or as soon , sooner , better , best) stay here .

I had almost said she had a pretty mouth .

Who would have thought so ?

I had not thought (or dreamt) that my daughter - in - law was
so pretty . (说 I did not think , I never thought...更普通一些)

873 p) 在日常口语及书信中 , would , should , could , might 等助动
词可用来代替 will , shall , can , may 等 ,使口气显得谦逊婉转 ,仿佛
有一个 if I might ask you , if it were...possible , if you would not
mind 这类条件从句省略掉似的。这类用法非常普通 ,也很有用 ,可以称
为客气说法的虚拟语气 (Po lite Subjunctive) :

1 / 问句 :

Could this be your luggage ? (现在情况)

Would he return very soon ? (将来情况)

Could he have said it ? (过去情况)

2 / 请求 :

Would you lend me your newspaper ? (回答 : I will)

Could I eat it ? (回答 : You can .)

Might I borrow your pen ? (回答 : You may .) (用 might 时不
太多)

3 / 意愿 :

I should like to have some coffee .

I would have a talk with you .

4 / 看法 :

I should say you are mistaken .

I should think so .

I don't think she could forget me .

I am afraid you might fail .

He would regard this as a piece of folly .

It would seem to be queer . She could ask David , but he might
refuse to answer .

That would have been risky . He might have died . (过去情况)

874 q) 有时表示后果的主句 (如 what would happen) 可以省略, 只剩下条件从句:

1/ “What would happen?” 省略 (可译为“……怎么办?”):

If our secret should be discovered!

If they did not like it!

If she said no!

2/ “How happy I should be” 省略 (可译为: 但愿……):

If I succeeded!

If I were young again!

If only (or but) I could see you!

If I had learned something!

Oh, if we met again!

Oh, if I had wings!

O could I but see you!

O had I not committed the crime!

Ah, had I only known it!

3/ “I'll be hanged (or damned, dashed)” 省略:

If ever I know it. (=I don not know it.)

If he has not broken the window. (=He has broken it.)

If I do not love my wife.

If you are not my good friend.

(在最后这类句子中多用陈述语气, 现在用得也比较少。)

875 r) 在 as if 引起的从句中, 谓语也常用虚拟语气, 这类句子也接近虚拟条件句:

He talks as (he would talk) if he were (or was) (口语中也可说 is) a professor.

He talks as (he would have talked) if he had (口语中也可说 has) been a professor.

He talks as (he would talk) if he would (口语中也可用 will) be a professor.

He talks as (he would talk) if he were (or was) (口语中也可用 is) giving a lecture.

He talked as if he were (or had been) (口语中也可用 was) a professor.

He felt as (he would have felt) if the house had been (口语中也可用 was) turning round him.

She weeps as if her heart would (口语中也可用 will) break.

It seems as if he knew (口语中也可用 knows) everything.

It looks as if he didn't (口语中也可用 doesn't) care.

It seemed (to me) as if he had done something wrong.

As if 前的主句有时省略:

As if he were a professor!

As if the house were turning!

As if he had done something important

另外在 than 后面也可跟一个由 if 引起的虚拟条件句：

He feels happier than (he would feel) if he were on his wedding day .

The room looked prettier in its simplicity than (it would have looked) if he had put many decorations in it .

I can learn more from these books than (I could learn) if I had travelled in fifty countries .

b. 在让步状语从句中的用法

876 虚拟语气也可在让步从句中使用，用法和条件从句中的用法很相近，常用的连词为 though, although, if (= though), even if, even though, whether, whatever, wherever, however, whoever:

Though he be shy, he can be courageous. (I DOUBT whether he is shy.)

Even if he have everything, he remains unsatisfied.

Whether the rumour be true or not, we must take precaution.

(虚拟现在时 be 和 have 等多用于书面材料中，在现代口语中多用 may be 或 is, may have 或 has。)

Even though I were guilty, I would not confess. (I know I AM NOT guilty.)

Although he killed me, I should remain firm.

I should not wonder (or be surprised) if (=though) he did not fail (=failed) again.

Wherever you might go, you would see nothing but misery.

However dangerous it might be, I would try it once.

Even if I had known his plan, I could not have prevented it.

(But I DID NOT know it.)

Even though I had done my best, I should not have met any encouragement.

Though I were to study ten years more, I could not be wiser.

(But I know I SHALL NOT study more.)

Even though I should be jilted ten times more, I would not commit suicide.

877 有时连词可以省略，这时从句要用倒装语序（可参阅 860 节）：

Be it (=Though it be) never so (=ever so) easy, nobody will try.

Were she (=Though she were) ever so gentle, I could not marry her.

Had you (=Though you had) advised him a hundred times, he would have remained stubborn.

Were I (=Though I were) to try a hundred times, as many times I should fail.

Should he (=Though he should) eat more than usual, he would remain skinny.

c. 在后果状语从句中的用法

878 虚拟语气也可用在由 lest (书面语) 引起的从句中, 表示“唯恐……”, 谓语动词多由 should 构成:

I always speak slowly lest I should be misunderstood. (should 可以省略)

He works hard lest his family should be starved.

We kept quiet lest we should disturb our parents.

We ran as fast as possible lest we should be too late (for fear that we should be too late).

We trembled	} (or might) discover our secret . lest he should
We were in great fear	
I felt some apprehensions	
I was afraid (or suspicious)	

在表示目的状语从句中, 谓语多由 may, can 构成, 间或也可以用 shall, will, 若主句为过去时, 从句谓语则由 might, could 等构成:

He works hard that (or so that , in order that) he may (or can , will , shall) maintain this family .

He worked hard that (or so that , in order that) he might (or could) maintain his family .

在以 in case 引起的状语从句中, 谓语也多由 should 构成, should 有时可以省略:

Take some medicine in case she get (or should get) ill on the way . (用陈述语气 gets 时比 get 时更普通一些)

I will put down your address in case I forget (or should forget - get) it .

He carried an umbrella in case it should rain .

d. 在时间状语从句中的用法

879 偶尔在时间状语从句中可以使用虚拟语气，但在现代英语中多用陈述语气：

I must pause till my breath come (or shall come) back.

We leave bed before the cock crow (or shall crow).

We love each other as long as the earth last (or shall last).

He did it when he were (or should be) in the mood. 2. That

引起的名词从句中的虚拟语气

880 虚拟语气有时可用在主句后由 that 引起的从句中。主要有下面几种情况：

1) 在 wish 或 would that 后的从句中使用 (that 有时可以省略)，谓语多用虚拟过去时 (谈现在情况) 或虚拟过去完成时 (谈过去情况)：

I wish he might recover soon.

I wish he would not trouble us again.

但是：I wish (or hope) he may (or will) come no more. (间或用陈述语气)

God (or Heaven) grant it (may) be so.

I wish I could fly.

I wish I were (or was) a bird.

I wish I had wings.

I wish

I would to God

I would to Heaven

I would (rather)

Would (to) God

Would that

O would

O that

God grant

God send

I were young again.

we could pass a peaceful year.

we became free men again.

all of us had enough to eat.

(以上指现在或将来情况)

I had not been born.

she had forgotten me.

I had not met her.

(以上指过去情况)

下面的简单句可以看作是一个名词从句，主句 I wish 省略 (这时谓语多用虚拟现在时)：

God bless you!

Long live the Queen!

Heaven forbid!

Heaven preserve us!

All happiness attend you and yours!

God confound him!

God damn it!

(The) Devil take you!

Perdition (or Plague) take him!

You be damned !
Manners be hanged !
Cursed be all he says about love !
有时连句子主语也省略掉 :
Curse you !
Bless you !
Confound you !

881 2) 在 suggest , desire , order 这类动词后的 that 引起的从句中使用 , 从句谓语多由 should 构成 , 在美国多用虚拟现在时 :

主句中主语和从句中主语不是同一人或物。

I (person) propose (or move , suggest , advise , ask , beg , request , require , desire , insist , demand , order) that something should be done . (虚拟语气 should be 可以用 is , am , are , is to be , shall be , will be , must be 或 may be 等陈述语气代替。在这种形式中 , should , must 表示最强的愿望 , may , will 表示最弱的愿望。)

He proposed the meeting be postponed . (这种虚拟现在时在美国使用较多)

I insisted that the party be given on September .

They request that this (should) be done as soon as possible .

Do you advise that the patient eat (not eats) only liquid ?

I proposed (or moved , suggested , insisted ...) that something be (or should be) done . (must be , shall be , might be , was to be)

在一些其他的 that 从句中谓语也需用虚拟语气 :

My proposal is that we (should) stop this war . (补语从句)

Their desire was that a vote be taken .

The sentence is that the murderer be hanged .

It is requested that all of you stop any form , any kind of demonstration . (是谁的请求没有说出 , that 引起的是主语从句。)

It has been ordered that the troops reach the mountain by 6p . m .

He will issue the regulation that the library be open even on Sunday . (同位语从句)

He gave the order that nobody stand (not stands or stood) near the examination room .

It is my desire that all the members of the family should gather once a year . (主语从句)

It was the command of the general that we all should defend the village .

He was anxious that his son should see him after ten years of separation . (宾语从句)

She was careful that nobody should know about her marriage .

The emergency required it that we all should stay at home . (宾语从句)

882 3) 在下面这类句子的 that 从句中也可以用虚拟语气 , 这时主句主语和从句主语不是同一个人 :

I will take care that your son (should) be well-fed .

He will arrange (or undertake) that everything (should) be convenient to us .

I will satisfy myself that the wedding (should) take place tomorrow .

I will see (to it) (or make sure) that no burglary (should) happen here again .

Mind that no mistake (should) be made .

但在这类句子中，that 从句的谓语也可用陈述语气：

I will take care that your baby is (or shall be , may be) well - fed . (现在情况)

I would take care that your baby was (or should be , might be) well - fed . (过去情况)

883 4) 1 / 虚拟语气的 should 有时表达一种情绪，特别是惊讶情绪，可译为“居然”，“竟然”。句子的安排大约如下：主句（包括表示情绪的字词）+由 that 引起的从句（包含 should 以及表示激起这种情绪的动词）。

It was annoying (or irritable , upsetting , embarrassing , disconcerting) that my son should break her glasses .

It was disappointing (or discouraging) that half of his students should fail in the exam .

It is rather perplexing (or bewildering) that she should say yes and no at the same time .

It is despicable (or contemptible) that they should turn traitors .

It is alarming (or frightening , dreadful , shocking) that you should mingle with these dangerous people .

It was sad (or tragic , lamentable , deplorable) that the four sons of this widow should all die on the battlefield .

He is very amazed (or astonished) that there should really be castles in the sky .

I am sorry (or upset , embarrassed , ashamed) my child should be so rude .

He is very glad (or happy , pleased) that all his students should pass the exam .

He regrets (or deplores) that he should have told lies to his good friend .

She grumbled that everyone should ask about her past .

I wonder (or marvel) that she should love a man twenty years older than she .

在以上所有的例句中，虚拟语气也都可以用陈述语气代替，这时就不靠虚拟语气来表示情绪，谓语只表示一个事实，如最后两句中 should ask 和 should love 都可分别改为 asked 和 loves。

2 / 另外，在下面这类句子中，that 从句中的谓语可用虚拟现在时，

这时主句可表示说话人对 that 从句中动作的看法：

It is only appropriate (or fitting, right, good, proper) that he apologize (不加-s) to her.

It is always advisable (or desirable, preferable) that you be too polite rather than less.

It is compulsory (or imperative, necessary, obligatory) that a young man enlist for service.

He thinks (or regards) it of great importance that a person be honest. (反映主语的看法)

但在这类句子中，如主句的补语为 true, sure 等词，从句中谓语应用陈述语气：

It is true (or certain, evident, apparent, natural, no wonder) that this war won't last long.

It is probable (or likely, possible) that she has got tired of me.

I am sure (or certain, confident, aware) that the situation is getting better and better.

It is not true that the war has settled any problem.

884 5) 在 It is time 后需要使用虚拟语气 (可有下面 3 种形式)：

It is time something be done. (用虚拟现在时)

It is time he go.

It is time something was (or were) done. (用虚拟过去时)

It is about (or really, quite) time we returned home.

It is time we did something more serious.

It is time we went to bed.

It is high time we should end the war. (用 should 引起的短语)

It is really time you should make up your mind to marry.

885 6) 以 whether 引起的从句中，谓语间或也可用虚拟语气：

I doubt whether the rumour be true.

I can't tell whether she love me.

I wanted to know if (= whether) it were so easy.

He asked me whether she were pretty.

但在这种情况下，用陈述语气时更多一些：

I doubt whether the rumour is true.

I wanted to know if it was so easy.

c . 祈使语气

886 在3种语气中,祈使语气最为简单,它表示要求、命令或建议等。
主语 you 通常都省略掉,动词都用一般现在时的形式(不加-s)。

887 Lend me a helping hand .

Wait for me .

Come here .

Do it at once .

Just go and see .

Try again .

Look before you jump .

Wait and see .

Shut up .

888 用 be 代替 is , am , are 等形式,它是主要动词,不是助动词,后面可跟形容词、名词、过去分词、副词或介词短语:

Be honest .

Be careful .

Be gone .

Be strong .

Be a good boy .

Be a man of courage .

Be here by noon .

Be away from danger .

Be on time .

Be at peace with each other .

有时可用被动结构: Be guided by reason .

Be persuaded by your friend .

889 前面可以加 do 来加强语气,表示恳求等:

Do lend me a hand .

Do wait for me . Do , please , wait for me .

Do be honest . (这 be 不是助动词)

Do be on time .

890 否定祈使句一般用 don't 开始,也可用 never,这时更强调一些:

Don't wait for me .

Don't try again . Do please don't try again .

Don't be careless .

Don't be a coward .

Don't be at odds with each other .

Don't be deceived .

Don't be talking . (间或可用进行时)

Don't be waiting .

Never wait for me .

Never be a coward .

891 You 有时也可说出:

Mark you ! Look you ! Mind you ! (某些动词后可跟 you)
John , you (not anyone else) take this to the yard or kitchen .
Mary , you throw that bottle away . (说明对谁讲话)
You wait here , and I 'll be back soon . (比较温和的命令)
You wait and see ! (有时可使语言生动)
Just you let it alone .
Never you mind !
You do that (= Go right ahead) . You bet (= you may be certain) .
You are going to bed . (Go to bed at once) (现在进行时可表

示立即要做的事)

You are not doing it yet .
Now you 're getting off .
Do you wait for me . (恳求)
Do you buy me a pack of cigarettes .
Don 't you believe it ! (强烈禁止)
Don 't you ever touch me .
Don 't you forget this day !
You don 't move !
Never do you say that again !
Come here , you ! (you 放在句末 , 表示一种傲气)
Mind your own business , you !

892 Let 可引起祈使句 , 表示 “ 让某人做某事 ” , 在让 you 以外的人做某事时用 let :

Let her mother come and see . (= I suggest that her mother should come and see .)

Let men farm , and women weave .
Let us (包括讲话双方) go to the pictures .
Let us have a rest , shall we ?
Let us not go , O . K . ?
Let me talk with the manager . (建议)
Let me die and you be happy .
Let you and I go to the pictures . (口语)
Let 's go to the pictures , we two .

Let us don 't be deceived (不规范说法) . (= Let us not be deceived) . 也可用表示 “ 物 ” 的名词作 let 的宾语 :

Let this ceiling bear witness to my faithfulness .
Let peace prevail .
Let nature take its own course .
Let bygones be bygones .
let everything be finished by May 1 . (跟被动结构)

893 可用一个不定代词作呼语 :

Everybody keep (not keeps) silent .
Look here everybody .
Someone go (not goes) for a doctor .

Some of you wait here .
Don't everyone make any noise .
Anybody don't stand here .
Don't make any noise , any one of you .
Nobody more .

894 这类句子除表示请求、命令、建议之外还可表示许多其他东西 :

Sleep well (= Good night) . (祝愿)
Take care , Give my love (or Remember me) to your mother .
Have a good day (or a nice weekend) .
Suppose (= If) he had known it , what would happen ?
Say (= If) it were true , we should lose many friends .
But the news is false .
You can buy it for , say , a thousand dollars .
Fancy meeting you here ! (惊讶)
Imagine playing football at midnight ! Crazy !
Just think of it ! How funny !
Hang me if I know her . (= I never know her .) (强调否定)
Damn me if I do not like snake - meat . (= I do like it .)

(强调肯定)

See if I don't go . (= I shall certainly go .)
Catch me smoking . (= I never smoke .)
Catch me at it .
Work hard , and you will be rewarded . (= If you work hard ,
you will be rewarded .)
Make much , much money , and beautiful girls will be after you .
Do evil and you will be punished for it .
Work hard , or (= if you do not work hard ,) you will lose your
job .
Make much money , or (= if you don't ,) beautiful girls will
keep away from you .
Come what will (or may) (= whatever may come) , I am not
afraid . (让步从句)
Happen what might , John was ready to fight all of them .
Do it who will (= whoever may do it) , he will fail .
Go where you may (= Wherever you may go) , I will follow you .
Try as we would (= However we might try) , we could not persuade
him .
Be it good or bad (= Whether it is good or bad) , it is my country .
Be he what he may (= Whatever he may be) , he can't in - jure
you .
Be a man ever so rich (= However rich a man may be) , he should
be humble . Let them go where they might (= Wherever they might go) ,
I wouldn't care .
Let him take any medicine , he can't recover .

Let him be the richest man under the sun , what would it be to me ?

Let him be ever so clever , nobody likes him .

895 下面句子有些并不是祈使句,但它们都表示说话人的请求、命令或忠告。加以比较,可以看出多种不同的含义:

Would you kindly open the window ? (最客气的请求,问句形式)

Would you mind opening the window ?

May I trouble you to open the window ?

Will you please (or kindly) open the window ?

Be kind enough to open the window . (客气的请求) Please open the window .

Kindly open the window .

Open the window , will you ? (or won't you ? would you ?) Don't shut the door , will you ?

Just open the window . (对熟悉人的请求)

Suppose (or Supposing) you open the window .

You will perhaps open the window .

You will open the window , won't you ? (or will you ?) Open the window . (略带命令口吻)

Open the window , do .

Open the door , can't you ? (不耐烦)

You can open the door . (命令)

You shall open the door . (命令)

Open the door , you ! (傲慢)

You had better open the door (友好建议)

You should (or ought to) open the door . (建议)

You must open the door . (严肃口吻)

You are to open the door . (= It is your duty) to open the door .)

You might open the door . (= I request you to open the door .)

896 下面是一些带有祈使语气动词的陈旧说法:

Far it be from me to (= I would never) speak ill of anyone .

Suffice it to say (= Let it be sufficient to say) that I have done my best .

So be it (= Let it be so) .

Be it known (or understood) (= Let it be known or understood) that this is not the first nor the last attack .

Witness Heaven (= Let Heaven be witness) .

897 下面是一些常用的说法,是表示请求和禁令的不完整的句子:

No Smoking (= Don't smoke) .

No spitting (= Don't spit) .

Hands off (= Keep hands off) .

Danger (= Avoid it) .

Poison (= Be careful about it) .

All aboard (= All passengers go aboard) !

The pepper , please (= Pass me the pepper , please) !

It's on fire ! Water (= Bring water) !

898 下面例句中包含了一些含有地点副词的动词短语 :

Put (及物动词) your coat on (地点副词) .

(这样说比 Put on your coat . 好。在祈使句中 , 地点副词应放在宾语后面。)

Clean the mess up . 但是 : It is always I who must clean up the mess .)

Take the cat away .

Off (地点副词) you go (不及物动词) .

(比 You go off . 语气更强)

Down you come .

Up you jump .

Back you turn .

D . 助 动 词

1 . 概 说

a. 助动词的某些特点

899 英语中有 12 个助动词 (Auxiliary Verbs) . 它们是 do (did) , shall (should) , will (would) , may (might) , can (could) , must (had to) , need , dare (dared) , ought to , used to (use to) , have (has , had) , be (is , am , are , was , were , being , been) . 它们有些共同的特点。

900 主要动词有时可以独立使用,不需要加助动词,如:He knows it .He saw Mary .而助动词却必须和一个主要动词一起使用,如 He must come He can go . You may try it . 有时和它一起使用的主要动词可以省略,如: John cannot cook , but Mary can (cook) . Do you see it ? No , I don't (see it) . 一个句子或分句的谓语必须包含一个主要动词,但也只能包含一个这样的动词,而助动词却可以多达 3 个:

He came . They all understand it . (不含助动词)

He will go . John must see the doctor .
（包含一个助动词）

He will be leaving . I have been waiting . (包含两个助动词)

It may be being examined . They will have been defeated by next year . (包含 3 个助动词)

901 有 6 个助词 can, may, must, ought to, need (not) 和 dare (not) 可与 12 种时态结合, 如 can go, may be going, must have gone, could go, ought to go. (可参阅 690 节) 带有这些助动词的时态形式和不带它们的形式, 意思上是有差别的。

下面例句大致表明了它们间的差别：

12 种时态形式

He writes it . (任何时间都可发生的事实)

He is writing it . (现在事实)

He has written it . (过去情况对现状的影响)

He has been writing it .
(从过继续到现在的情况)

He wrote it . (过去事实)

He was writing it . (过去事实)

包含这些助动词的相关时态形式

He must (or may, etc.) write it .
(在任何时间都可能发生的潜在可能性)

He must (or may, etc.) be writing it. (对现刻情况的揣想)

He must (or may , etc .) have written it . (对过去情况的揣想)

He must (or may , etc .)
have been writing it .

(对于从过去
到现在情况的揣想)

He had to (or might , etc .)
write it . (过去的潜在可能性)

He must (or might , etc .) be writing it . (对过去事实的揣想)

He had written it . (过去某时之前的过去情况)
 揣 He had to (or might , etc .)
 have written it . (对过去情况的想)

He had been writing it . (少见)
 have He had to (or might , etc .)
 been writing it . (少见)

He will write it .
 He will be able to (不能说 will can or can will) write it .
 He will be allowed to (不能说 will may or may will) write it .
 He will have to (不能说 will must , or must will) write it .
 He will be bound in duty to (不能说 will ought to or ought to will) write it .
 He won't have the courage to (不能说 will dare not or dare not will) write it .
 He won't have to (不能说 won't need or needn't will) write it .

He will be writing it . (这些时态中很少用这六个助动词)
 He will have written it .
 He will have been writing it .

902 其他助动词用法更如有限。Do 只能用于一般 (现在及过去) 时态 , 如 : He doesn't write it . Did he write it ? Shall , will 和 have 已经用来构成某些时态 , 不能再构成其他东西了。Used to 只能用于一般过去时 , 如 : He used to write it .

903 Have 和 be 可以称作特殊助动词 , 因为 :

a . 它们可用来构成许多时态及被动语态 :
 I have done it . I have been doing it . I had done it .
 I am doing it . I shall be doing it . It was done .

b . 它们必须和主语在人称和数上一致 , 而其他助动词都可用于任何人称 :

I can do it . You can do it . He can do it .
 I may do it . You may do it . He may do it .
 I will do it . You will do it . He will do it .

但 :
 I have done it . You have done it . He has (!) done it .
 I am (!) doing it . You are (!) doing it . He is (!) doing it .
 I do not know it . You do not know it . He does (!) not know it .

c) 它们也可以用作主要动词, 而其他助动词多数都不能单独构成谓语:

Has he a car? I have not anything to do.

Is it true? They are not my sisters.

在作主要动词时, 它们仍具有助动词的某些特点, 如可放在主语前构成疑问句, 放在 not 前构成否定句。(参阅 905, 906 节)

d) 它们可以用于动名词、分词及不定式中, 而其他助动词都不能这样用:

Having done it, he went home.

His having studied psychology is the reason for his success.

I wished to have learned German.

Being asked about it, he replied.

I told him about his being promoted.

He seems to be studying it.

b. 必须使用助动词的情况

904 在下面 12 类句子中都必须使用助动词。

905 1) 在含有 not 的否定句中必须使用助动词, 而且通常要放在副词 not 的前面:

He has not come; or, He hasn't come. (在口语中多用后面这种紧缩形式。ain't 为不规范形式。)

He will not do it; or, He won't do it.

He cannot help it; or, He can't help it.

He is not here; or, He isn't here.

偶有不带助动词的否定句, 但这种形式已经陈旧, 如:

I know not. He looks not at anything ugly.

应说 I do not know. He does not look at anything ugly.

但 I never know. He never looks, etc. 是正确的。

否定疑问句可以 a) 表示不耐烦情绪, b) 希望对方作肯定答复或 c) 表示更大关切:

Has he not come? or, Hasn't he come?

Did you not know it? or, Didn't you know it?

Can he not help it? or, Can't he help it?

在重复前面的话时, 主要动词常可省略:

John knows it, but Mary (名词) doesn't (或 but not Mary).

"Uncle can make a lot of money." "But father can't (或 but not father)." "

John knows it, but we (代词) don't (或用 but not we, not us).

"Uncle can do a lot of work." "But I can't (或 but not I, not me)." "

Can he give up smoking? "Of course, he can't (或用 Of course not)." "

May I enter? "Perhaps you may not (或 Perhaps not)." "

"Will he tell us the truth?" "Surely he won't (或 Surely not)." "

在所有助动词中，只有 do 可用在祈使句中：

Do not play the fool .

Do not speak loud .

Do not hurt anybody's feelings .

有些词本身就有否定意思，这时 a) 无需使用助动词，但有时 b) 也可以和助动词一起用：

a) I never said that . 但是：I did not say that .

He scarcely saw it .

He hardly understands English .

He rarely tells lies .

He said nothing .

I have none .

b) He has hardly begun his work .

You can never say that .

在一些特殊情况下，not 可和一些动词一起用，无需加助动词：“Is he angry?” “I think not (= that he is not angry) .”

(但要说 I don't think so .)

“Will they cheat him?” “I hope not (= that they will not cheat him) .”

“Can he get over the danger?” “I fear not .

I know not what it is .

He cared not who said that . It mattered not .

I doubt not that he will fail .

He arrived yesterday , if I mistake not .

906 2) 在疑问句中一般也必须使用助动词，而且通常要放在主语及主要动词前面：

Has he come?

Can you do it?

Ought he to say something?

Did he come?

Do you know?

When did he come?

How can I do that? (R)

如果主语为疑问词，则不需用助动词：

Who told you?

Which interests you most?

What accident happened?

下面是另一些不需加助动词的疑问句：

a) 有些陈述句可变为疑问句，只是句子用升调，结构完全不变：

He arrived yesterday? (= Did he arrive yesterday , as you or somebody said?)

“I love Mary (= Do you say I love Mary)? No , No !”

“She likes pretty dresses? Of course !”

b) 有些疑问句重复对方的话，也可大体保持原来的结构：

What you saw? (= You told me you saw something , but I don't remember or understand what you saw .)

Where he came from?

c) 构成从句的疑问句用陈述语句的语序 :

I asked how John studied German . (比较 : How did John study German ?)

I am not sure whether you know it . (比较 : Do you know it ?)

d) 还有一些特殊结构 , 习惯上不加助动词 :

How goes it with you? (How are you ?)

How came it that he knew Mary?

What care I? (What do I care ?)

What mattered it? (= What did it matter ?)

What signifies it? (= What does it signify ?)

What availed it? (What did it avail ?)

907 3) 在虚拟条件句中的连词省略时 , 主语前要加助动词 :

Should all people think (= if all people thought) alike , this world would be unbearable .

Had Hitler (= If Hitler had) been born in 1960 , he would have lived a different life .

Could I fly , I would fly immediately .

在虚拟条件句的主句中 , 通常也需用助动词 :

If I were in your place , I would not do so .

If I were in Africa , I could do something .

If I had left a minute later , I might have died .

但在某些条件句中 , 却不需加助动词 : If you are free , please come at seven . (祈使句)

In case you see him , ask him to wait for me .

If you move a step , you are a dead man . (使言语更有生气)

If you die , I die .

908 4) 放在陈述句末的简短问句 (tag question) 一般也需用助动词。这时陈述句若为肯定结构 , 后面问句多为否定结构 , 若为否定结构 , 后面问句多用肯定结构。这 “ 问句 ” 只要听着赞同 , 无需答案 , 说时用降调 , 句末用问号或句号。David can come , can't he? (说话人希望对方作肯定回答) He cannot come , can he? (说话人预计对方作否定回答) John will do it , won't he?

John won't do it , will he?

He must speak up , mustn't he?

He mustn't speak up , must he?

Nobody should come , should they?

Nothing is wrong , is it?

I am right , aren't I (or ain't I , but not amn't I) ? He scarcely (否定副词) knows it , does he?

He never saw such a thing , did he?

He seldom said anything , did he?

You had better keep silent , hadn't you ?

He ought to know it , oughtn't (or shouldn't) he ? There will be trouble , won't there ?

在谓语中包含动词 be 时 , 有时不加助动词 :

There is no problem , is there ?

“ She is beautiful . ” “ Yes , isn't she ? ”

This task is not easy . ” “ No , is it ? ”

下面这些句子在非正式口语中 , 后面部分不包含助动词 :

You have made a mistake , no (= haven't you) ?

He is not happy , huh (= is he) ?

You can come tomorrow , eh (= can't you) ?

This is the first time you've come here , right (= isn't it) ?

这类句子有时可用来寻求帮助或提出要求 :

You don't (否定) know where's A Street , do you ?

You couldn't lend me a hand , could you ?

Wait a minute , can (or can't , could) you (用在祈使句后)

Open the window , will (or won't , would) you ?

909 5) 在对别人的话作出反应时 , 有时也需用助动词 (说时通常用升调) :

I am tired . ” — “ Are you ? ” (陈述句为肯定句时 , 后面问句也用肯定结构。)

“ I don't see it . ” — “ Don't you ? ” (陈述句为否定句时 , 后面问句也用否定结构。)

“ Mary can play the violin . ” “ Can she ? ”

有时问句部分可用降调 , 带有吃惊或讽刺口吻 :

“ I won't go to school . ” — “ Oh , you won't , won't you ? ”

“ Jane is angry with you . ” “ So she is , is she ? ”

有时用降调是表示衷心同意 , 后面部分就用否定结构 :

“ It is a lovely flower show . ” (肯定) “ Yes , isn't it ! ” (否定)

“ She has become a lawyer . ” “ Hasn't she ! ”

有时陈述句和简短问句都用肯定结构或都用否定结构 , 来表示兴趣、惊讶、不快或怀疑等情绪 :

You are sleepy , are you ? (肯定 + 肯定) (兴趣)

She has got promoted , has she ? (惊讶)

They don't like my dress , don't they ? (否定 + 否定) (恼怒)

It is eleven o'clock , is it ? (怀疑)

He can repair cars , can he ? (也可单纯提出问题)

910 6) 助动词还可用来重复刚说的一句话 , 对它加以强调 , 这是英国人口语中常用的结构 , 在这类句子中 , 先行词却常放在代词之后 :

They can do it , can those boys (or those boys can) .

They can't do it , can't those boys (or those boys can't) .

They can do it , those boys [can] . (助动词可以省略)

She must be angry , [must] my mother .

It is a bad place for young people , [is] that night club .

[He can] (主语及助动词省略) Speak six languages , Jim can .

[She is] Playing tennis , she is .

[She] (无助动词) Loves music , she does .

911 7) 助动词还可用在 “ 主要动词 + 主语 + 强调式助动词 ” 这种结构的句子中 :

While I may see beautiful things , see them I will .

While I can spend money , spend it I will .

If I must die , die I must .

He decides to go in February , as go I know he has to .

Yield he would not till he was killed outright .

Die he should not because he has a large family to maintain .

He wanted to go and go he did .

有时这种结构可成为一个独立的句子 :

He said I did not study . Study I did . He did not fail . Succeed he did .

912 8) 有强调性的否定副词开始的倒装句也需要用助动词 : Never can I understand what she wants .

Not in the least would he be disturbed .

Seldom has he been at home .

Hardly does he know his dangerous situation .

Only from newspapers do I learn about the world affairs . 在把否定的宾语提到句首加以强调时 , 也需要用助动词 : Not a single word have I said about this trouble . Nothing can he do .

No one else shall I love .

Very little care does he take of his children . Never a cent have I spent on my wedding .

Hardly a grain of rice did he eat .

Only (= No more than) two persons did I meet in the desert .

有时一个普通状语放在句首时 , 也须在主语前放一个助动词 :

For five hours have we waited . (这里一个不及物动词受到强调。)

Most bitterly did he complain to me .

How happily did we live ! (感叹句)

With what speed did the car run !

913 9) 在强调的肯定句中也需用助动词 (这时助动词需重读) : I will go there .

He can come at once .

We have tried our best .

I do enjoy the trip . (没有别的助动词时可加 do)

He did like it .

I really (or actually , certainly or truly) do know him , but we rarely meet . (actually 等副词可使强调更加明确)

Do forget me . (在祈使句中只能加助动词 do)

Do take some .

Do be quick .

“ May I sit here ? ” “ Do . ”

Do you forget me . (you 重读)

Do you take some .

在强调的否定句中 , 也需用助动词 (这时否定副词需重读) :

I will not (or won't) go there .

He can never come at once .

John can hardly understand .

“ I do not see it . ” “ But he does . ”

“ You can not do that . ” “ But I can . ”

“ He did never (or never did) understand her .

有时可以对主要动词加以强调 , 以形成对比。试比较下面两对句子 :

I will speak to him . (强调肯定要这样做)

I will speak to him . (But I will not write to him .) (在 speak 和 write 中强调 speak)

He can read .

He can read . (But he cannot write .)

有时加助动词 do 只是出于节奏上的考虑 :

I do but jest with her .

She does but come to see me .

914 10) 助动词还可用在省略句中代表前句中的谓语 , 以避免重复 :

“ Will he come tomorrow ? ” “ Yes , he will . ”

(will = will come tomorrow)

“ Can you do something for me ? ” “ I can't ! ”

(can't = can't do anything for you)

“ He is learning Japanese . ” “ Yes , he is . ”

“ Who knows the secret ? ” “ David does . ”

“ John works hard . ” “ I don't think he does . ”

“ Lee is ready to help anyone who needs his help . ”

“ He is . ”

People think he is cunning and he is (or is so) .

“ A friend told me he killed a detective . ” “ He did (or did so) . ”

在这类句子中还可在前面加 so 或 that , 表示同意对方的说法 , 而略带惊讶 :

“ He has given up drinking . ” “ So he has . ” or “ That he has . ”

“ John leaves for Europe tomorrow . ” “ So he does . ” or “ That he does . ”

“ Mary must go at once . ” “ So she must . ”

Lee is said to be a fool , and so he is (or that he is) .

“ You have done everything evil . ” “ That I have , madam . ”

Of course , decidedly , surely , probably , 或 perhaps 之类词或短语可加在这类结构前 , 表示 “ 当然如此 ” , “ 或许如此 ” 等等 :

“ He is too cunning for you . ” “ Of course , he is . ”

“We can't ever say anything against our government . ”

“Surely , we can't . ”

“It is said John is ill . ” “ Probably he is . ”

“We shall win . ” “Decidedly we shall . ”

有时可用so 来代表主语及助动词 ,在否定句中可用 not 来代替它们 :

“Of course so . ”

“Surely not . ”

“Probably so . ”

“Probably not . ”

“Decidedly so . ”

在对一个否定句表示赞同时 , 应当说 “no ” (不能说 yes) :

“We can't make friends with such people . ” “No , we can't . ”

(不是 Yes , we can't .)

而对一个否定句 , 表示不赞成时 , 应当说 “yes ” (不能说 no) :

“We can't make friends with such poor people . ”

“Yes , we can . ” (不是 No , we can .)

“Mary isn't happy . ” “But she is , ” or “Yes , she is . ”

915 11) 在 “so + 主语 + 助动词 + (被省略及物动词) + 新的宾语 ” 这种结构中 , 助动词也是必不可少的 , 这时对前面句子的谓语加以重复 , 但把主要动词加以省略 , 只留下助动词 :

“John will study this problem . ” “So he will (study) many others . ” (others 为新的宾语)

“David has studied Algebra . ” “So he has geometry and trigonometry . ”

“The situation makes me worried . ” “So it does everybody . ”

在 “新的主语 + 助动词 + too ” 及 “新的主语 + 助动词 + not + either ” 结构中助动词也是必不可少的 : “He has done it . ” “I have , too . ” (I 是一个新的主语) “John can write a good letter . ” “Mary can , too . ”

“He has not done it ! ” “I haven't either . ”

“John can never write a good letter . ” “Mary can't either . ”

在 “so+助动词+新的主语 ” 及 “Neither (Nor) +助动词+ 新的主语 ” 这类结构中 , 助动词也是必不可少的 :

“He has done it . ” “So have I ” or “So also have I . ” “John can write a good letter . ” “So can Mary , ” or “So too Mary . ”

Kim lives abroad , and so do his relatives .

David is a fool . So is Jim .

David is a fool . so must his brother be .

“He hasn't done it . ” “Neither have I , ” “Nor have I ” , or “NO more have I . ”

“John can't write a good letter . ” “Neither can Mary , ” “Nor can Mary , ” or “NO more can Mary . ”

916 12) 在 “主语+助动词 (+被省略及物动词) +宾语 ” 这种结构中 , 助动词也是必不可少的 , 这时用一个新的主语代替前句中的主语 , 用一

个新的宾语代替前句中的宾语：

He fondled the cat as a mother (新主语) would (fondle) her child (新宾语) .

He discharged Chang as his father had (discharged) others .

She let him go as a cat might a mouse .

He obeys Mary as a son should a mother .

I hate him as I do hell .

He Can no more speak Russian than I can Greek . 在 “ So+助动词 (+省略的及物动词) +主语+宾语 ” 这种结构中也需用动词：

You have helped me , and so have I you (= and I have helped you) .

He loves his mother dearly and so does she him . “ I love you . ”
“ So do I you . ”

c. 助动词的读音

917 口语中助动词有强弱两种形式：

<u>强式 (STRONG FORM)</u>	<u>弱式 (WEAK FORM)</u>
- am[\$m]	- 'm[+m][m]
are[a:]	're[+]
is[ɪz]	's [z][s]
was[w&z]	was[w+z][wz]
were[w+:]	were[w+]
be[bi:]	be[bi]
been[bi:n]	been[bin]
being[bi:iR]	-
—have[h\$ʌv]	—'ve [+v][v]
has[h\$z]	's[+z][z]
had[b\$d]	had , 'd[+d] [d]
—do[du:]	—do[dʊ][d+][d]
does[d]z	does[d+z][dz]
did[did]	did[did][dd]
—shall[M\$ɪ]	—shall , 'ɪl[M+l][Ml][l]
should[Mud]	should[M+d][Md]
—will[wɪl]	— will ,
'ɪl[l][+l]would[wud]	would , 'd[w+d][+d][d]
—can[k\$ɪn]	—can[k+n][kn]
could[kud]	could[k+d][kd]
—must[m)st]	must[m+st][m+s]
—may[meɪ]	—
—dare[d#+]	—
—need[ni:d]	—
—used[ju:st]	—
—ought[&t]	—

918 在下面 6 种情况下助动词取强式读音法：

1) 作为一个单词：

The word “are” is an auxiliary verb .

“Shall” is understood in this sentence .

2) 在重读时：

I do know it , but I keep silent .

He was playing there , only you did not see him .

I can help him , I must help him . I will help him .

3) 放在句子末尾或意群的结尾时：

He has done all he can .

Has he done everything? Yes , he has .

I will pay him as I ought (to) .

4) 在句子开头时 (这时也可读弱式)：

Have You seen it ?

Can you come here?

Must I go now?

5) 向听众缓慢清楚说出时。

6) 在一些特殊的上下文中:

The bus is[iz] leaving (is 在 s, z, M, N 等音后读强式)

He should [Mud] come. (should 在这里表示“ought to”)

They are eating[a:ri:tiR]. (are 在元音前读强式)

Dare I [d#rai]meet him? (Dare 在元音前读 d#+r)

919 在其他情况下助动词均读作弱式。它常常和前面的代词或后面的 not 连起来读, 如 I'm (= I am), don't (= do not). 写出来时“'”表示有字母省略。这种连在一起读的形式称紧缩形式(Contraction):

— I'm (or am) [m] a student. (am 在 I 后读弱式。)

Am [+m] I right? (am 放在句首时读弱式)

— They're (or are) [+] mine.

You're (or are) [+]right.

Are all [+r&::l] of them wounded? (are 在元音前读法)

You're (or are) [+] very kind.

—He's (or is) [z] here. (is 在元音及浊辅音后读法) 'tis (= 这是 It is 的特殊紧缩形式) my dog.

— My book's (or is) [s] lost. (is 在名词主语后可写成's, 但其他助动词则不行。)

—He was [w+z] ill.

— Who were ill [w+ri:l]? (were 在元音前读法)

— I have been waiting. (been 可以强读, 亦可弱读。)

— I've (or have) [ve] done it. (have 在元音后读法)

The boys have [+v] done it. (have 在辅音后读法) (Boys have 不可写成 boys've.)

— My brother's (or has) [z] come. (在名词后可用's 形式)

The dish's (or has) [+z] been washed. (Has 在 s, z, M, N 之后的读法)

—What had [h+d][+d] been stolen?

I'd (or had) [d] seen it. (had 在人称代词后的读法)

— DO [d+] [d] they know it?]

— Does [d+z][dz] your son see it?

— You did [d+d] [dd] see it?

— I'll (or shall) [Ml] [l][l] go.

— I'll (or (will) [l] go.

Who'll (or will) [l] say no?

My father'll (or will) [l] go. ([l]在辅音后可构成一个音节) (在名词后面, 'll 可读作[l], 但在书面语中应以 will 代替。)

— We'd (or should) [Md] be happy.

I'd (or should) [Md] be happy.

— John'd (or would) [Md] be there. ('d 在书面语中应以 would 代替)

He'd (or would) [d] be there . (would 在人称代词后读法)

—I can [k+n][kn]do it .

I can [k+R] go . You can [k+R] keep it . (can 在 “ g ” , “ k ” 前的读法)

—He must [m+st] [m+s] come .

920 Not 也有两种读法 , 强式为 [n&t] , 弱式为 [nt] 或 [n] , “ dnt ” 可读为 [nn] :

—He isn't [iznt] [izn] here .

They aren't [a:nt] [a:n] honest .

—He needn't ['ni:dnt] ['ni:dn] come .

He didn't ['didnt] ['didnn] come .

He wouldn't ['wudnt] ['wudnn] come .

以下为特殊例子 :

I don't [d+nut] [d+un] go .

I don't [d+um] meet him (or Pay it , buy it) .

(don't 在 m , P , b 前的读法)

I shan't [Ma::nt] [M+n] go there .

I won't [w+nut] [w+un] go .

I can't [ka:nt] [ka:n] go . (美国英语中读作 : [k\$nt])

I mustn't [m)snt] [m)sn] go .

Ain't [eint] 是 is not , are not , am not , have not 和 has not 不规范的紧缩形式。在口语中 not 和助动词中有一个必须取弱式读法 :

They aren't [a:nt] honest . (= I deny that they are honest .)
(not 在这里修饰全句)

或 They're not [n&t] honest . (= They are dishonest .) (not 在这里修饰 honest)

He isn't [iznt] a cheat .

或 He's not [n&t] a cheat .

但下面读法不好 :

They are [a:]not [n&t] honest . (poor)

He is [iz] not [n&t] a cheat . (Poor)

2. Do

921 Do 是一个特殊的助动词 , 它和其他助动词不一样 , 没有特别的意思 , 只是用来满足语法上的需要 , 构成疑问句、否定句等。下面的例句代表了 l . b . 中讨论过的各种类型。 (可参阅 904—914 各节)

1) John does not know it .

2) Does John know it ?

3) Did John know it , he would be more careful .

4) John knows it , doesn't he ?

5) “ john knows it . ” “ Does he ? ”

6) He knows it , does John .

7) If John says he knows how to make bombs , know it he does .

8) Not in the least does John know what will happen to him .

9) John does know it .

10) “Who knows it?” “John does.”

11) “John knows English.” “So he does German and Spanish.”

12) Mary loves clothes as John does books.

922 第十类表示的 do 的用法是非常普通的：

You do not speak to him.” “But I do (so).” (do 在这里代表谓语，是一个完全的动词，也可以弱调的 do so 来代替。)

“Did John come every day?” “He did (so).”

“Do you go to the pictures with your wife?” “Sometimes I do (so).”

如果和另一助动词一起用，要用 do so 这个形式：

“Can you prepare something for me?” “I will (or must) do so.”

另外，在用于不定式或动名词这种形式或表示“这样做”时，都要用 do so 这个形式：

“May I ask you to do something for me?” “You have every right to do so.”

“You can borrow money from John.” “I am not interested in doing so.”

Since he has requested (or ordered, advised) me, I must do so (=comply).

923 在表示做某件好事或坏事时，可用 do it 这种形式。这时 do 可以是谓语动词，也可以是非谓语动词。这样用时 do 是一个完全的动词，而不是助动词：

I can advise him; I can do it (=advise him) easily.

I can persuade him, but I do not want to do it (= to persuade him).

If to die is good, I will do it (= die).

He hopes to get the first prize, but can he do it (= get the first prize)?

He is interested in typing, but he can't do it (= type).

Selling matches is a small business, yet he has to do it (= sell matches).

The vase is broken. Who did it (= broke the vase)?

How kind it is of you to do it (help me).

924 需要强调时，可用 that 或 this 代替 it，甚至可放在句首：

I asked her to keep silent. She said she could do that.

Do I love such a man? No, I never do that.

Love my neighbours? This I will do.

3. Have

925 助动词 have, has 或 had 可以用来：

a. 表示完成时态

1) 构成完成时，表示某事业已完成：

I have written a letter. (现在已完成)

He has taken dinner.

I had written a letter . (过去某时前已完成)

The train had started when he arrived .

I shall have got up when you call on me at seven . (将来某时前会已完成) 也可特别地构成非谓语动词的完成形式 (参阅 903) :

The qualification for this . job is to have studied (不定式) shorthand .

He seems to have quarrelled with her .

He is not yet satisfied with having been promoted (动名词) to the rank of sergeant .

The men having eaten (分词) the poisonous fish are all dead .

2) 构成完成进行时, 表示以前某时一直持续的动作 :

I have been wrting a letter for an hour . (直到现在)

I have been waiting for you .

I had been writing a letter . (直到过去那时)

He had been practising music till midnight .

I shall have been witing a letter three hours . (到将来某时)

I shall have been learning English for ten years by 1997 .

3) 构成其他类型谓语, 表示对既往某事的推想或传闻 :

I may have said so . (= I perhaps said so .)

Can I have said so ? (= Is it possible that I said so ?)

He seems to have studied English . (= It seems that he studied English .)

He appared to have quarrelled with her .

(= It seemed that he had quarrelled with her .)

He is said to have died in the war . (= It is said that he died in the war .)

He is thought (or supposed) to have finished the work .

He was said to have died . (= It was said that he had died .)

4) 构成某些谓语, 表示未实现的愿望或打算 :

I should have met him . (But I did not meet him .)

He could have finised it .

I had intended to go . (But I did not go .)

He had hoped to help you .

也可用在非谓语动词中表示同样情况 :

He intended to have come . (But he did not come .)

I was to have seen the pictures .

He hoped to have gone abroad .

926 b . Have to 可用来表示 “ 不得不做某事 ” :

I have to (= must) go . I have to .

I have got to (= must) go . (口语) I got to go . (美国用法)

在英国和美国都可用 do 来构成否定句和疑问句 :

I do not have to (= need not) go . DO I have to go ?

在英国也可用下面方式 (不带 do) 构成否定句和疑问句 :

I have not to (= need not) go . Have I to go ?

I haven't got to (=needn't) go. Have I got to go? (英国口语)

Had to 表示过去情况 (这时不能用带 got 的形式) :

He had to work hard when he was young.

Had he to work? (不是 Had he got to work?)

Did he have to work? (这样说比 Had he to work. 好)

He said he did not have to go. (可用在间接引语中)

I shall have to go. (将来必须做的事)

He will have to go.

He said he would have to go.

You have to be careful. (to be+补语)

It has to be done. (to be+过去分词)

927 c. 可表示“有”, 这时是完全的动词, 不是助动词:

Have you any apples? (英式) Do you have any apples? (美式)

I haven't any time. (英式) I don't have any time. (美式)

I've got a car. (英口语) (这种带 got 的结构不能用于过去时)

I ('ve) got a TV. (have) You got a cat? (美口语) (have 常常省略)

928 d. Have 还可构成某些短语表示:

1) 最好 (如何) :

You had better work hard. (= I advise you to work hard.)

You better (口语中 had 省略) not make jokes, mister.

He had best retire, hadn't he?

2) 意愿 (如何) :

He had rather go. (= He prefers to so.) (不是 have rather)

I would rather (这样说更强调) be poor and happy.

I had sooner live a simple life.

929 在表示“有”时, 美国把 have 当作一般主要动词一样处理。用 do 帮助, 构成疑问句和否定句: Do you have any brothers? Does she have pretty eyes? Mary does not have much patience. 在英国人们常常不用 do, 而说: Have you any brothers? Has she pretty eyes? Mary has not much patience. 在用于其他意义时, 不论是美国人还是英国人都用 do 来帮助构成疑问句及否定句: Do you have (=eat) fruit for breakfast? We didn't have a good time. 4. Be

a . 形式

930 Be 有 8 个不同形式 : be (总称或原形) , am , is , are , was , were , been , being . 有些用于不同人称或数 , 用来构成不同时态 :

I am going . He (or John) is going . You (or We , they , My brothers) are going . (现在时)

I was going . He (or John) was going . You (or We , They , My brothers) were going . (过去时)

931 Were 用在虚拟语气中时不受主语人称或数的影响 :

If I were you , I would not do so .

If she were a boy , she might do something great .

932 Been 用在 have , has 或 had 后面 :

They have been attacked .

He has been waiting .

He had been studying until 1942 .

933 Being 不受主语人称或数的影响 , 可以用来 :

1) 构成进行时的被动语态 :

The case is being studied .

They were being tried .

2) 构成动名词的被动形式 :

He is fond of being praised .

Being undisturbed is necessary when we have an accident .

3) 构成分词的被动形式 :

Being surrounded by the enemy , our army are starving .

The student being punished is the naughtiest in the class .

934 Be 可以 : 1) 用来构成祈使句 :

Be persuaded by me . Be satisfied .

Love and be loved .

2) 用在另一助动词后 (have 和 be 除外) :

He will be going .

You may be tired .

He cannot be mistaken .

3) 用在不定式中 :

I want to be an artist .

It is not enough to be careful .

4) 用在 that 引起的从句中 , 表示应当做的事 :

It is decided that John (should) be rewarded .

He gave the order that the village (should) be defended .

b . 用法

935 助动词 be 有以下用法：

1) 和过去分词一道构成被动语态，可以是现在时、过去时或将来时：

The city is attacked . (现在时)

The city was attacked . (过去时)

The city will be attacked . (将来时)

“ be+过去分词 ” 这种结构可以表示动作，也可表示状态：

The glass was broken by a child . (动作) .

The glass was (= had been) broken . (状态)

The child was dressed every day by his mother . (动作)

The child was (= had been) very well dressed . (状态)

936 2) 和动词的 -ing 形式构成进行时态，表示在某时正在进行的动作：

He was studying (at that time) .

He is studying (now) .

He will be studying (at that time) .

973) 和不定式一道构成谓语，表示安排、打算等：

He is to (= is destined to) die at eighty .

We are to (= are due to) start next Sunday .

We are to (= shall) get married in June .

The sample is not to (= must) be sold .

How am I to (= can I) know ?

Little was to (= could) be seen .

What am I to (= shall I) say ?

Is he to (= shall he) go , too ?

Men are to (= should) live together , but not separately .

It was decided that John was to (= should) marry Lilian .

938 4) 和不定式的完成形式一道构成谓语，表示以前打算要做而未做的事（只有 was , were 能这样用）：

We were to have got married , but we had to postpone it .

Mr . A was to have taught us , if Mr . B had not been appointed .

Mr . A was to have taught us , but Mr . B was appointed .

939 5) 和一个不定式用在条件从句中，表示将来的假想情况（只有 were 能这样用）：

If I were to do it , I should fail . (I know I shall not do it .)

He could do nothing if he were to run the factory . (I know he will not run it .)

940 6) Have been to 表示到过某处而现已不在那里：

He has been to Hong Kong . (= He has gone to Hong Kong , but has left it .)

(比较 : He has gone to Hong Kong . = He is in Hong Kong now .)

He has been in Japan . (= He has lived in Japan for some time , but now he has left it .)

He has been to attend the meeting . (He is at home now .)

比较 :He has gone to attend the meeting .He is not at home now .)

941 7) 用在一些词组 (合成谓语) 中表示即将做 (发生) 的事 :

I am going to (= intend to) see him .

He is going to (= is sure to) win .

I am about to (= shall very soon) start .

He is on the point of dying (= will die almost this moment) .

He was on the point of dying (=would die almost that moment) .

I was about to start when I was arrested .

942 8) 用作系动词, 后面跟一个补语 (参阅 903 节) : Is he busy?

Can John be unhappy?

Are you being angry?

I am not a miser .

They were not robbers?

He has not been in Africa .

943 9) Be 有时可代表整个谓语, 以避免重复前面的话 (这时后面也可以跟 so, 但不跟语气更强一些) :

“Is he ill?” “He is (so) .”

“John was defeated .” “He was (so) .” “Mary will be a good nurse .”

“She has been (so) .”

“That food tastes bitter .” “It is (so) .”

“She looks pretty .” “She is (so) .”

但在 to be 和 being 后必须跟 so, 来表示 “这样” 的意思 :

My son is proud , but I don't want him to be so . I should be a clever man , but what must I do to be so? One should be just , but one will be hated for being so . He has become an actor . but he is ashamed of being so .

5. Will , Would , Shall , Should

944 前面我们已经讨论 will , would , shall , should 在陈述语气及虚拟语气中的一般用法, 主要表示意图和将来, 根据主语的人称和数来决定使用其中的哪一个。现在我们将研究它们的一些特殊用法, 表示许多不同的意思, 在这样用时, 它们不受主语的人称和数的影响。

a . Will , Would

945 1) Will 在重读时表示强烈的愿望和坚持做某事 :

I (or You , He) will do it .

Fools will be fools .

I (or You , He) will not do it . (不肯)

You can do anything you will .

Go whither he will , I am none of his followers . He would go out in spite of the rain . (过去情况) He would not do it , although they paid him a million . He would not let me in .

If you will smoke , you will be ill again . (这两个 will 意思不同 , 前面的 Will 表示 “ 坚持要..... ” , 后面的 Will 单纯表示将来情况。)

If you will (= agree to) sign , we can do it right now .

I will not say he is honest , but I will say he is stupid ,

He will go so far as to say (= ventures the statement) that nobody is happy .

He would have me stay . (= He insisted on having me stay .)

He will have no more of your jokes .

He will have it (= insists) that man is the worst animal .

I will not have you here .

I Will have everybody happy .

As luck (or good luck , ill luck , fate , good fortune) would have it , he came suddenly that morning and met her . (Luckily [or unluckily] , he came...)

946 2) Will 可以表示现在或将来时习惯或倾向 , would 表示过去的习惯 , 常和一个频度状语一起用 (用于第一人称时较少) :

He will often read all night . (现在习惯)

He Will boast of his son whenever he meets friends .

He will sometimes eat supper in this restaurant .

He Would read all night . (过去习惯)

I would sometimes see her . (第一人称主语)

Jealousy will (= can) spoil friendship . (倾向 , “ 往往 ”)

The hall will sit a thousand people .

A lion will attack man .

People will talk .

Truth will out . just as oil will float on water .

Such shoes will last five years .

否定句表示 “ 无法..... ” :

All your estate won't purchase this diamond .

This door won't open .

947 3) Will 可以用来表示一种揣测 , 说明现在的情况 , 口气不如用 must 那样肯定 :

He has worked very hard today . He will be (= is probably ,

may be) sleeping now .

Perhaps it will be snowing in the north now . It is already December .

It will be from John , I suppose .

How will he be ?

How old will he be ?

The man at the corner will know what time it is .

He will (probably or perhaps) know Dr . Lee .

You will notice (or understand) it .

It would be (= was probably) ten when he arrived . (过去时间)

He would not be very happy .

It would be 1932 , the year when you went to Europe .

He will have (= may have) forgotten me . I left him 18 years ago .

I said he would have forgotten me . (间接引语)

He will have heard of the accident .

It is already eleven . He will have gone to bed .

948 4) 和 do 连用, 表示 “解决问题” :

It will do (= serves the purpose) . (现在情况)

Will this desk do for the present ?

Either man will do .

有时可译为 “(不)行” :

It won't do to work until late at night .

Will I do ?

That would not do . (过去时间)

It would not do to tell her everything .

949 5) Will 可用在让步从句中, 表示 “不管……”, 这时动词常放在主语前面 (这种结构书面语中用得较多, 以 no matter...开始的句子要更普通一些) :

Deny it who will (or can , may , likes) (= No matter who may deny it) , the situation is serious .

say who will , nobody believes it . (现在情况)

Come what would , he had decided to go . (过去情况)

Try how (or as) he will , he will fail . (= No matter how he may try , ...) (how 在这里用作副词)

Go when will , I can go with you .

Go where you would , I could go with you . (过去时间)

Make money as (or how) you will , it should be spent wisely .

Look which way you would , you saw nothing but poverty .

(which way : 副词短语)

Talk with whom I would , I felt shy , (with whom : 副词短语)

Run how quickly he will , I can overtake him .

Be it as expensive as it will , I can buy it . (No matter how expensive it may be , etc .)

Live as long as one will ,one can't learn enough . (= No matter how long one may live , etc .)

DO what you will ,you can't defeat him . (what 用作宾语)

Choose which road you will , it leads to ruin . (which road 作宾语)

Let the matter be what it will , I have made up my mind .

(= No matter what the matter may be , etc .) (what 用作补语)

950 6) would rather 等短语表示 “ 宁愿..... ” :

I (or He) would (or had) rather (or sooner , just as soon)

live all my (or his) life in this village . (现在或将来情况)

b . Shall

951 下面例句说明了 shall 用于第二三人称主语后的情况(这些用法过去用得较多) :

1) 上帝的旨意 :

Thou shalt (=are ordered to) love thy neighbours .

Thou shalt not commit adultery .

952 2) 庄严的预言 (今天多以 is to , are to 代替 shall) :

Seek and ye shall (=are destined to) find .

Heaven and earth shall pass away , but not my word .

You shall be the leader of the people .

Nation shall rise against nation , and there shall be famines and pestilences .

953 3) 法律用语 :

POWs shall not be ill - treated .

Every member shall (=is to) pay the monthly fee .

The criminal shall be punished .

The association shall be called Nice Fellows Club .

954 4) 修辞性问句 (不用回答的问句) :

Who shall (=can) decide ? (=Nobody can decide .)

What else shall a man desire ?

Shall an elephant charge a tortoise ?

His name will be remembered as long as the world shall endure .

955 5) 在高雅文体里用于状语或定语从句中 :

Trumpets will be blown , when the king shall enter .

The traveller will be robbed if he shall go over the mountain . (用在状语从句中)

Wait until something shall happen .

Whatever you shall say , I shall follow .

He will be loved who shall love his fellowmen . (用在定语从句中)

Such a man as shall say such a thing , must be a fool .

注 : 本节例句中的 shall 一概不能用它的过去形式 should 代替 , 如果那样 , 意思会发生很大的变化。

c . Should

在下面例句中，should 一概不能用 shall 代替。

956 1) 表示“应当”：

We should (=ought to) love each other . (现在或任何时间)

One should not tell lies .

You should be more careful . (劝告)

He should read this good book .

He knew he should work hard . (在间接引语或宾语从句中，如果主句动词为过去时，should 可以表示过去情况。)

I thought I should try .

可用于轻微的批评或表示遗憾 (这时可指过去情况) ：

You should have seen the exposition . (But you did not .)

He should have told me this .

可用于被动语态，表示“应由……做”：

This should be done by John .

The declaration should be made by our chairman .

957 2) 可用来表示揣想和推测：

He should be here by ten .

You should be able to recognize her handwriting .

You should be happy , for this is your wedding day .

958 3) 可用在 that 引起的从句中，表示惊讶、遗憾、放心等情绪：

It is natural (or funny , hard , astonishing) that John should get married again . (现在情况)

It was natural that John should get married again . (指过去情况)

在这种句子中不用 should 也可以，这时不表示情绪，只单纯谈事实；

It is natural that John gets married again .

Should have 可表示过去的动作：

It is a pity that he should have lost all his money . (is 表示现在感到遗憾，破财是过去的事。)

It was a pity that he should have lost all his money . (was 表示过去感到遗憾，破财是更过去的事。)

I am glad that everything should have been ready .

I don't know that John should have left last month .

在 Why , Where 等疑问词引起的从句中，should 也可以这样用：

It is understandable why he should flatter her mother .

There is no reason why he should fail .

I don't know where he should have gone .

在 lest 引起的状语从句中，should 也可以这样用，表示“唯恐……会”：

I am afraid (or worried , uneasy , anxious) lest he should be ill again .

He is worried lest his mother should die .

在 than that 引起的从句中 should 也可以这样用：

Nothing is worse than that we should commit the same mistake .

Any treatment is better than that you should foolishly leave your illness alone .

Should 可以用在下面几种类型的句子中：

a) It + is+形容词+that 从句：

It is understandable (or expedient , proper) that she should have the right to choose .

It may not be true that he should like gambling .

It is possible (or likely , probable) that all of them should be so silly .

b) It + is+名词+that 从句：

It is a pity (or a misfortune) that they all should get sick again .

It is no wonder (or a marvel) that they should be reconciled . c)

It+及物动词+宾语+that 从句：

It astonishes me that he should call me “ sweetheart ” .

It made me angry that she should nag all day .

d) 表示人的主语+be+形容词+that 从句：

I'm sorry (or perplexed , glad , content) that he should do it .

He is satisfied that you should apologize to him .

e) 表示人的主语+宾补动词+it+宾语补语+that 从句：

I consider it a good joke that she should marry a gambler .

They consider it a pity that he should abandon her .

I think it important that she should accept the offer .

f) 表示人的主语+及物动词+that 从句：

I cannot believe (or imagine) that he should be a homosexual .

I regret (or rejoice) that he should marry this woman .

How can you expect that he should do such a thing?

I can't bear that he should ask me so many questions .

959 4) That 引起的从句可以变成一个感叹句 (前面 I'm sorry 之类的主句省略掉)：

That things should come to this!

That bread should be so expensive!

That lives should be so cheap!

That a man should be so silly!

O (that) they should be so cruel!

O (that) men should kill each other!

Alas! That John should die so young!

960 5) Should 还可用在表示情绪的问句中 (这类问句常不需回答)：

Why should I fear? (= There is no reason why I should fear .)

Why should you insult me? (= You should not insult me .)

Why should you suppose so?

How should you settle this problem? (=You can't settle it.)

What should he do next? (What he does next is too obvious to mention.)

Who should come but his wife? (=The comer can never be any other one than his wife.)

Whom should I see but a ghost?

What should she do but give a cry?

Where the devil should he learn the trick?

Should we let her cry? (We should not.)

You would not be so silly, should you?

“What is the matter?” “What should be the matter? It is trifling.”

“What will he say?” “What should he say? (=what he will say is too obvious to mention.)”

961 6) 可用在 that 引起的从句中, 表示规定或要求做的事 (在这样用时 should 可以用 shall 代替):

The sentence is that he should be (or shall be, be) hanged.

The rule of the school is that every student should wear (or shall wear, wear) uniform. (在美国英语中常可用不带 should 的形式, 在第三人称单数主语后亦不加-s.)

His will was that a million dollars should be (or be) left to his eldest son. (由于是指过去情况, 这里的 should 不能以 shall 代替。)

That 从句还可以用在下面几种类型的句子中:

a) 名词+be+that 从句:

The sentence was that he should be hanged.

His will is that a million dollars be left to his eldest son.

b) It+is+名词+that 从句:

It is our aim (or desire) that everyone live (不用 lives) a happy life. (Another pattern)

It is the rule of the school that every student should wear uniform.

c) 主语+及物动词+that 从句:

He suggested (or insisted) that I should go and fetch Mary after school.

He commanded (or ordered) that we should be always on the alert.

d) It+is+过去分词+that 从句:

It is agreed (or decided, settled, arranged) that we should work harder.

It was suggested (or demanded, desired) that we should keep quiet.

e) 主语+be+形容词+that 从句:

He is anxious (or willing, careful, desirous) that something should be done.

f) 用 that 从句作同位语的句子：

He gave the order that all the troops should be ready to fight .

He made the demand that the salary should be increased .

Should 偶尔可用在定语从句中：

He decided to send her to a place where her mind should be pacified .

I wish to write a book that should teach people how to cook .

注：如果主句主语和从句主语相同，可以 would 代替 should：

John determined that he would try .

I swore that I would revenge myself .

They agreed that they would cooperate .

She promised that she would marry him .

962 7) 可用于表目的状语从句中，表示“以防”或“使不致……”：

He works hard lest he (should) fail . (=He works hard so that he may not fail .)

I took my umbrella in case (or for fear that) it (should) rain . (过去情况)

I punished him lest he (should) play the trick again . (=I punished him so that he might not play the trick again .)

963 8) 可用于表结果状语从句中，表示“……竟会……”（前面是一个问句，用 should 时表示强烈的情绪）：

What have I done that you should be so angry?

Who is he that he should have insulted you so?

How much work have you done that you should be so hungry?

Who did you trust that you should have lost all your money?

Where are your manners that you should say so?

Have you nothing to do that you should sit there idle?

Am I a beast that you should expect me to eat grass?

有时前面部分是一个感叹句：

What a beast he is, that he should have treated her so!

How foolish I am, that I should believe in him!

6. May, Might

964 May 或 might 可用来表示“允许做某事”，“可能……”，“有理由……”等。

965 a. 表示“允许”，常可译为“可以”：

May I (=Am I permitted to) smoke?

Yes, you may. No, you may not (=are not allowed to).

No, you must not (=are forbidden to).

You may not borrow more than one book.

We may (or can) (=have a right to) gamble in this area.

I may come in, mayn't I? (=I suppose I may.)

Might I have a look? (这种说法不太普遍，用 may 更自然些)

Might 可用在间接引语或名词从句中（这时主要动词为过去时）：

He said he might leave earlier . (=He said , “ I may leave earlier . ”)

He thought he might say anything he liked .

下面动词短语不仅表示“得到允许”，而且实际上这样做了：

I was allowed to (or was permitted to , had her leave to) smoke .

966 b . 表示“可能性”，也常可译作“可以”，有时译作“（可）能”：

Something may be said about this subject . (=It is possible to say something about this subject .)

(在口语中也可用 can 代替 may)

Gather roses while you may .

You may go there by train , but you cannot (不可说 may not) go by air .

You may induce children , but you cannot force them .

I felt sure that you might induce...couldn't force.....

You may live a hundred years , but cannot live two hundred .

It is a trap which you may enter but cannot escape .

Such a text - book may be (比 can be 好) obtained here . (被动语态)

It may be seen everywhere .

Anyone (or One , We , Even fools) may (比 can 好) see the danger . (泛指的主语)

Anybody may get ill .

Fools may (=can easily) ask questions more than wise men can answer .

His amazement may be imagined .

You may see his intrigue at a glance .

John may finish the job in ten minutes .

Come as soon as may (or can) be . (尽快地来。)

The castle is as gloomy as may be . (古堡十分阴森。)

Do it as best you may . (尽你的力量做好。)

And what else may (or might) you want ? (你还能要什么呢？)

And who may you be ?

And where may you go ?

967 c . 表示“有理由.....”或“不妨.....”：

You may well (=may with reason) get angry . (=you are justified getting angry .)

He is very proud and well he may .

You may as well (=may with good reason) speak to your boss .

I may just as well stay here as wander about . (=I had better stay here rather than wander about .)

You might (虚拟语气，指现在情况) as well kill me as cause me to give up smoking . (要我戒烟还不如.....)

You might just as well throw the money into the sea as spend it on such rubbish .

He might (陈述语气 , 指过去情况) well hate school , be - cause
you forced him to study . (现在这样用已不多见)

Well he might tremble . He had never seen such a big animal .
还可用来提出保证 :

You may believe me .

He may rest assured (or secure) .

You may take my word for it .

You may depend upon it .

968 d . 用在表示 “ 让步 ” 的状语从句及分句中 , 可译为 “ 尽管..... ” :

A man may smile and smile and be a villain . (= A man may be
a villain though he smiles and smiles .)

(用在分句中)

John may be poor , but he is an upright man .

He may live in Japan many years , but he does not know Japanese .

You may well say that , but I can't believe .

It may be cheap , but cannot be good .

The enemy may be defeated , but cannot be persuaded .

He might be poor , but he is an upright man . (现在情况)

He might well be proud of his enterprise , but he should be more
careful .

Though it may be (or is , be) so , we had better wait . (用在
状语从句中)

Even though he may make (or makes , make) mistakes , we should
excuse him .

Be patient even if your students may be dull .

He should not treat me so , whoever he may be (or is , be) .

He is a rascal , however rich he may be .

I will go whether he may allow me or not .

No matter who may come (or comes , or come) , I am pre - pared
for it .

No matter what he may do , I don't care .

No matter how quickly he may run , he cannot escape .

No matter where you may do it , do it carefully .

Come who may (or will) , I am prepared for it .

Do what he may , I don't care .

Go where I may , I hear the same story .

He was a rascal , however rich he might be . (过去情况)

No matter who might come , I was prepared for it .

969e . 表示 “ 或许 ” , 有时也可译作 “ 可能 ” :

It may be (= is perhaps) easy . (指现在情况)

It may be not easy (= difficult) .

He may perhaps (or possibly) be a man of ability .

可用进行时态表示 “ 某动作或许 (正) 在进行 ” :

He may be waiting for you .

He may be correcting students' homework .

也可和表示状态的动词一起用：

He may forget my name . (forget 这里表示状态)

The dog may belong to that fellow .

The hall may hold a thousand men .

Might 可用来代替 may , 表示现在的情况 , 语气比 may 更不肯定：

There might be no human being on this island .

The child might have no parents .

It might be snowing in the north .

Might 也可用在间接引语或名词从句中 , 作为 may 的过去时：

He said you might be right . (=He said to you , “ You may be right ” .)

May 可表示一种揣测 , 可译为 “ 可能会…… ”

He may meet (= will probably meet , perhaps can meet) her tomorrow .

He may possibly refuse , if I ask him .

You may succeed very soon .

Don't wait too long . He may change his mind .

He may arrive later than next Sunday , but will not (不说 may not) arrive earlier .

He may kill you but will never cure you .

I said he might change his mind .

可用于完成时态 , 表示 “ 可能曾 (已) 经 ”：

He may have said so .

He may have finished it now . (=He has probably finished it now .)

He may have returned home this moment .

也可和一个表示过去时间的状语一起用：

He may have finished it last week . (=He probably finished it last week .)

He may have been graduated last year .

I said he might have finished it then . (用在间接引语中)

这种结构有时相当于一个过去完成时：

He may have done it by last Sunday . (=He had probably done it by last Sunday .)

He may have (=had probably) run away when the police arrived .

He may have died before he became rich .

I said he might have done it by Sunday . (用于间接引语) 这种结构也可表示未来某时之前的情况：

He may have run away when the police arrive .

He may have died before he becomes rich .

即使表示现在情况也可用 might , 只是口气比用 may 显得更不肯定：

He might have finished it now .

同样 , might 也可用来表示过去情况：

It might have been last September .

He might have left before 1950 .

在下面这类句子中 ,肯定句可以用 may 表示否定意思时需用 should :

It is possible (or likely , probable) that he may fail .

It is impossible (or unlikely , improbable) that he should fail .

970 f . 还可用在简单句开头 ,表示祝愿或诅咒 :

May you have a good time ! (=I hope you may have a good time .)

May you be happy !

May Heaven protect you !

May all his family perish !

May you die soon .

重要的词可以提到 may 前面 :

Much good may it do you !

Happy may your birthday be !

Long may you live to enjoy it !

971 g . 用在宾语从句中 ,表示希望或恐惧 :

I hope he may (比 will 更正式一些) come .

I hope I may (比 shall 更正式一些) succeed .

I desire (or pray) that you may do something for her .

I trust this may meet with your approval .

I wish he may die .

He fears that (or lest) some accident may happen .

He is uneasy lest his son may get into trouble .

I hoped he might (or would) come . (如主句动词为过去时 ,应用 might 代替 may。)

He feared that (or lest) some accidents might (or would) happen .

972 h . 用在 that , so that 引起的状语从句中表示目的 :

We work hard that (or so that , in order that) we may pay our debt . (=We work hard so as to [or in order to] pay our debt .)

Let the dog loose so that it may (or can , will) have a run (or so that it has a run) .

I brush my teeth so that I may keep them healthy .

主句谓语若为过去时 ,从句中应以 might 代替 may (不过今天用 could , should , would 时比 might 更多了) :

I stepped aside that she might enter .

I made haste that I might be on time .

They died that we might live .

973 i . Might 可以用在表示现在情况或将来情况的虚拟条件句的主句或从句中 ,表示假想的情况 :

If I might (=were permitted to) say anything , I would say those officials are corrupt . (But I know I may not say so .)

If he might work for you , you would be greatly satisfied .

If his father were a king , he might (=would be permitted to) do anything . (But his father is not a king , so he is not permitted

to .)

If your terms were not so high , you might (=could easily) get a job .

We might (=would probably) miss the train [if we should wait any longer] . (条件从句有时可以省略)

974 j . Might 也可用在表示过去情况的虚拟条件句中 , 这时要用 might have 这种形式 , 这种结构在主句中用得比较多 :

If a boat had been lowered , he might have (=would probably have) been saved . (But I know it was not lowered , so he was not saved .)

If he had not wanted so high a salary , he might have got a job .

If his parents had only said “ yes ” , he might have (=could have easily) travelled over the world .

You might have had my assistance [if you had mentioned it] . (条件从句有时可以省略)

Might have 偶尔可用在条件从句中 :

If I might have (=had been allowed to) killed anyone , I would have killed all of them . (But I know I was not allowed to kill .)

Even if I might have married four or five wives , I would have loved only one .

975 k . Might 可用来代替 may , 表示现在情况 , 使语气显得谦逊温和 :

I think he might get along with anyone . (肯定程度不强)

He might refuse your proposal .

Might it be possible ? (客气的问句)

Might he forget his promise ?

Might (比 may 更客气) I ask you a question ?

(但用得不多)

(但是 : Could you answer me a question ?)

Might I use the telephone ?

You might (=I request you do) do me a favour .

You might go and see .

I might just as well (=had better) stay here . (建议)

You might try this medicine .

You might make a little less noise . (But you make so much noise .) (温和的批评)

They might not interfere too much . (But they do .)

You might help me . (But you do not .)

You might do it yourself .

Might have 指过去情况 :

He might have let us alone . (But he did not .)

It might well have been suggested earlier . (But it was not .)

You might have just as well reasoned with the tiger as persuade him . (和他讲道理是白费气力)

I might have gambled my fortune away . (But I did not .)

(暗自庆幸)

I might have won a million in a lottery . (But I did not .)

(遗憾)

7 . Can , Could

976 Can , could 可表示能力、可能性 , 同意等等。

977 a . 表示能力 , 可译为 “ 能够 ” :

I can (= am able to) play tennis . (现在或经常情况)

Mary can read and write . She can dance and sing .

Can you possibly do something for me ?

I will help you if I possibly can get some money .

He cannot (或 can not [若 not 需要强调时]) do any - thing for anyone , not even for himself or his family .

I can help you = I am in a position (or a situation or a condition) to help you . = It is in my power to help you .

I could swim across a river long before . (过去情况)

I could swim across that river . (could 也可指现在情况 , 如表示过去确实做了某事 , 可用 was able to , succeeded in 或 managed to 代替 could , 参阅 965 节。但 could not 可以用来表示过去的能力及动作。)

He said that he could swim across the river . (= He said , I can swim across the river .)

Can't (help) but 表示 “ 只好 ” , “ 不得不 ” :

I can't but (can't help but , can't choose but , can't do other than) tell her everything . (I have to do so . To tell her everything is all I can do .)

She can't help but believe it and weep .

“ can't + help + 动名词 ” 表示 “ 禁不住…… ” :

I can't help laughing (= I can't help but laugh) .

He can't help giving his life to her .

978 b . 表示 “ 可能性 ” (即客观上允许……) , 可译为 “ 可以 ” :

We can (= may) go there by train , but cannot by boat .

(It is possible for us to go there by train , but impossible by boat .)

You can buy it at any store .

We can eat and sleep in the hotel .

We can go to the seaside on Sunday .

“ not...more than...can help ” 表示 “ 尽量少…… ” :

Do not do anything more than you can help (= must) .

I will stay no longer than I can help .

Cannot...too 可表示 “ 怎样……也不会过份 ” :

One cannot be too honest (or over - honest , sufficiently honest , honest enough) . (= One should be as honest as possible .)

You cannot speak too highly of her beauty . (= Her beauty goes beyond your highest praise .)

I cannot thank you enough .The importance of education can never be over-estimated .

979 c .表示“ 别人允许 ” 也可译作“ 可以 ”：

We children can (=may , are allowed to) smoke .

Father said we could do anything we wished . (间接引语) I can enter the manager's office .

Children can enter elementary schools free of charge . In this country we can say anything we like .

Can I throw the paper here ?

You can't play all the time , John .

Can I go to the pictures , mom ?

980 d .表示“ 有(潜在)可能 ” ,可译作“ (有可)能 ” 或“ 有时会..... ”：

Such an accident can happen . (只是在一定条件下偶尔发生)

A woman can do anything when jealous .

The weather here can be extremely cold .

Such an accident could happen . (这里 could 用来代替 can , 使口气显得不那么肯定。)

He could be very rude .

A cat could be as fierce as a tiger .

The worst boy could be the best .

981 e .表示一种命令：

You can (=I want you to) buy me a pack of cigarettes . (你去给我买一包烟。)

You can scrub the floor , Mary . (玛丽 , 你来擦地。) John can wait here until his mother returns . (约翰在这里等他妈回来。)

982 f .表示“ 某事是否是事实 ” , 常用在疑问句及否定句中 , 在肯定句中要用 may (可参阅 969 节) , 在和表示状态的动词一起用时表示现在情况 , 在和表示动作的动词一起用时 , 表示将来情况：

Can this rumour be true ? (=Is it possible that this rumour is true ?) (谣言能是真的吗 ?)

I don't know . It may be true ; it may not be true .

Yes , this rumour must be true .

No , this rumour cannot be true . (=It is impossible that it can be true . It must be false .) (这个谣言不可能是真的。)

Can he be ill ? (他病了吗 ?)

I don't know . He maybe . (我不知道 , 他可能病了。)

Yes , he must be . (是的 , 他肯定病了。)

No , he cannot possibly be , for I have just seen him . (不 , 他不可能病了 , 我刚才还见到他。)

Can he be living in town ? (=Is it possible that he is living in town ?) (可用于进行时态)

I don't know . He may be living there ; he may not be living there .

Yes , he must be living there .

No , he cannot be living there .

Can mom be still working in the kitchen?

I am not sure. She may not be.

Yes, she must be. It is lunch time.

No, she cannot be. I have just seen her going out.

Can this horse belong (表示状态的动词) to him?

It can't belong to him.

Can this hall hold a thousand men?

No, it cannot hold so many.

Can John believe such a story?

No, he cannot believe it.

Could this rumour be true? (could 用来代替 can, 使口气显得谦逊。)

Could he be ill?

He could not be living in town.

It could not hold so many men.

I asked whether this rumour could be true. (= I asked, "Can this rumour be true?") (用于间接引语)

I thought he could not be living in town. (= I thought, "He cannot be living in town.")

Can have 可用来表示过去的情况:

Can he have said such a foolish thing? (= Is [or Was] it possible that he said such a foolish thing? = I doubt [or doubted] whether he said it. 或者 Is it possible that he has said such a foolish thing?)

I don't know. He may have said it, or may not have said it.

Yes, he must have said it.

No, he cannot have said it. (= It is [or was] impossible that he said it. 或 It is impossible that he has said it.)

Can I have borrowed his money?

I don't remember well. You may have borrowed it.

You must have borrowed it, because you had not enough money last month.

You cannot have borrowed it, because you spent very little money last month.

还可和一个表示过去时间的状语一起用:

Can he have come last Monday? (= Is [or Was] it possible that he came last Monday?)

He cannot have arrived yesterday.

Can he have finished his work by now? (= Is it possible that he has finished his work by now?)

He cannot have taken lunch by this moment. (= It is impossible that he has taken lunch by this moment.)

Could he have said such a foolish thing? (可用 could 代替 can, 使口气显得婉转一些。)

You couldn't have borrowed it .

Could he have come last Monday ?

I asked whether he could have said such a foolish thing . (=I asked , “ Can he have said such a foolish thing ? ”) (用于间接引语)

I said he could not have arrived yesterday . (=I said , “ He cannot have arrived yesterday . ”)

Can he play you a trick ? (=Is it possible that he will play you a trick ?) (和一个表示动作的动词一起用 , 表示将来情况。)

He may play me a trick .

He cannot play me a trick .

983 g . 表示不耐烦或困惑等情绪 , 多用在修辞性问句中 :

What can (=What on earth can .) he mean ? (他会是什么意思 ?) (不耐烦)

What can he want ? (他会要什么呢 ?)

Where can he go ? (他能到哪儿去了 ?) (困惑)

How can I answer that question ? (感到难办)

What can I say ?

984 h . 用在表示目的状语从句中 :

He works hard so that he can (比 may 更口语化) pay his debt .

I study English in order that I can do business with foreigners over the world .

I stepped aside so that she could (比 might 更口语化) went in .

985 i . Could 可用在表示现在将来或一般情况的虚拟条件句中 , 在主句及从句中均可用 :

If I could help you , I would do so . (But I cannot , so I will not do so .)

If John could run a machine , he might work in a factory . (But John cannot .)

If he were my friend , I could (=would be able to) do something for him .

I could be independent if I found some job .

If he had less children , he could not be so poor (= it would be impossible for him to be so poor) .

If it were not winter , the weather could not be so cold .

986 j . Could have 可用在表示过去情况的虚拟条件句中 , 主句及从句中都可以用 :

If I could have read and written (=had been able to read and write) , I should have lived a happier life . (But I was not able to .)

If he could have convinced (=had been able to convince) you , you might have saved a lot of trouble . (But he was not able to .)

If I had known the address , I could have found out the house . (But I didn't know the address , so I was not able to find

out the house .)

Even if he had tried his best , he could not have succeeded .

Even though he had worked harder , he could not have been rich
(= It would have been impossible for him to be rich) .

987 k . Could 可用来代替 can , 使语气显得更委婉客气 :

Could (比 can 客气一些) you lend me your newspaper ?

(比较 : Might I borrow your newspaper ?)

Could you wait a little while ?

Could he come and pick me up ?

Perhaps I could do something .

At least I could say that .

Could 有时表示 “ 简直要..... ” :

I could (= feel inclined to) cry .

I could beat him .

I could eat three pigs . I feel so hungry .

Could have 可用于含蓄条件句中 (条件从句省略) :

I could have made a lot of money . (But you were opposed to the plan .)

We could have won the war . (But we were impatient .)

有时可用来表示温和的批评 :

You could be more careful (= You're careless) .

You could have lent him the money .

He could have informed me days ago .

8 . Must , Have to , Had to

988 Must , Have to 可用来表示 “ 必须 ” , “ 不得不 ” , “ 一定 (要) ” 这类意思。

989 a . 表示 “ 必须 ” :

You must (= should , ought to) do that . (= It is necessary for you to do that .) (讲话人的劝告)

We must love our neighbours . (道义上的需要)

You must pay the tax . (法律上的需要)

This leg must be cut off . (身体上的需要)

One must be industrious and frugal . (经济上的需要)

You must go by air . (其他方面的需要)

You must see her today .

You must work hard , or you will die .

You must work hard , if you want to live .

We must not hate even our enemy . (道义上不应当)

You must never steal . (法律上不允许)

You must eat nothing dirty .

You must (stressed) pay me at once . (= I insist that it is necessary for you to pay me at once .)

(讲话人的强烈要求)

He must (stressed) at least let me know the situation .

You must marry and set up a family of your own .

This situation must not and shall not go on .

Applicants must have learned English four years . (必须学过.....)

You must have done your homework before you can go out . (必须做完作业才能.....)

He must have apologized before she can pardon him . (必须道歉之后她才会.....)

带有 must 的问句征求对方的意见 :

Must I go now ? (= Do you think I must go now ?) (我现在该走了吗 ?)

Must Jim wait for you tomorrow morning ? (吉姆明早必须等你吗 ?)

Why must you fool about all day ? (为什么你要整天胡混 ?)

Must I pay you before Sunday ? (我一定要在星期天以前付你钱吗 ?)

有时表示 “ 一定 (要) ” :

He must get (= insists on getting) back his own .

(= He insists that it is necessary for him to get back his own .)
(表示主语的强烈愿望)

If you must (stressed) marry my daughter , take her .

I am ready if you must fight .

We must needs (or must of necessity , must positively) fight to the last man .

I must and will stick to my principle .

Must he ask me to cooperate with him ?

Must you be always meddling ?

I replied that I must resign . (在间接引语中 must 可以不变)

He said I must go .

I thought she must marry a poor man like Dennis .

She knew that you must see her again .

即使不是在间接引语中 , must 也可表示过去的情况 :

We were not allowed to retreat . We must march forward .

Everybody was busy , and one must always be doing .

990 b . 在表示客观需要时 , 用 have to 和 had to 时比用 must 时多 , 可译为 “ 不得不..... ” 或 “ 得..... ” :

Finding no other solution , she has to (= is forced to , is compelled to) commit suicide . (客观需要)

I've got to (口语中代替 have to , 英国用法) see the doctor . (指一次动作)

I have to (指一次或多次动作) work today (or every day) .

Do you have to work everyday ? I don't have to .

I got to (美式) marry him . Everything has been decided .

You have only (or but) to pay a few dollars and you may go anywhere by bus. (只需.....)

I have only to say a word, and he will do everything for me.

I don't have to (=need not) pay anything. (不必.....)

He hasn't got to (=need not) wait.

You don't have to work so hard.

I am having to defend myself. (现在进行时)

I had to do it, whether I liked it or not. (过去时)

I had got to marry him. Everything had been decided.

(过去时) (在过去时中很少用 got to, 而用 had to.)

有时可用“be+不定式”这种结构,表示类似的意思(比 have to 稍弱):

We are to (=are destined to) work and suffer. There is no other way. (命中注定)

I am to do it, whether I like it or not.

A man is to work outside, and a woman is to work at home.

A person is to live a hundred years at most.

Must 也可表示客观的必然性,可译为“总是要(会)”或“必然(会)”:

Competition must (=is sure to, cannot fail to) happen.

All men must die.

There must be a day for revenge.

War must be followed by hunger.

Must 有时表示客观上不愉快的情况,与 needs (副词)连用,可译为“偏偏.....”,多指过去情况:

When I was sitting to dinner, the telephone must ring (=rang just to annoy me).

Just as I was extremely busy, John must needs ask me a hundred and one questions.

When I wanted to pacify my mind, what had I to do but meet her again? (had to 也可这样用)

991 c. 表示“肯定存在的情况”,可译为“一定.....”, must be, must be+ -ing 或 must+ 表示状态的动词,表示现在或一般的情况, must have 表示过去情况, must+ 表示动作的动词表示将来情况(这样用时, must 和 969 中所谈 may 的用法相似):

He must be (=is surely) very busy today. (=I am very certain he is very busy today.)

That man must be a chemist.

He must needs (or must of necessity, must inevitably) be very sad after the loss of his wife.

He must be at the restaurant now.

This plan must be something.

Nobu must be enjoying himself in Tokyo now.

He must be living in the country this month.

He must be coming this moment.

He must know many important persons . (must+ 表示状态的动词)

This countryhouse must belong to John .

She must remain single until today .

A man with such a face must appear very proud to strangers .

Mr . Kim must have come from Seoul . (=I am [or was]very sure that Mr . Kim came from Seoul . 或 I am very sure that he has come from Seoul .)

Rama must have studied in Calcutta . He was(or is)a historian .

He must have been very ill . He looked (or looks) so pale .

I cannot find my key . I must have lost it when I was buying a newspaper .

He was very sad . He must have seen (=had certainly seen) something unpleasant .

Hunger must (=will certainly) follow after the long drought . (must+表示动作的动词)

You must win , if you do your best .

It must snow today .

992 d . 可用在表示现在、将来或一般情况的虚拟条件句中 , 可用在主句中 , 也可用在从句中 :

If I had to (用来代替 must 或 have to) marry him (条件从句) , I should quarrel with him everyday .

If I were obliged to (用来代替 must) say something about the city , I should offend some people .

If it had not been for John , Mary must (=would surely) have lots of trouble (主句) .

If we were not careful enough , things must be worse .

If he should abandon her , she must go mad .

If he were in Egypt , he must see the Pyramids .

If I were to live alone on this island , I should have to (= should be obliged to) work very hard (主句) .

If she called on me , I should have to prepare something to entertain her .

993 e . Had had to 和 must have 可用在表示过去情况的虚拟条件句中 , 可用于主句和从句 :

If I had had to (or had been obliged to) marry him , I should have quarrelled with him every day . (had had to 用得很少)

If I had been compelled (or forced) to steal those diamonds , I should have made great mistakes and been caught .

If he had abandoned her , she must have (=would surely have) gone mad .

If he had been in Egypt , he must have seen the Pyramids .

If I had been to live alone on this island , I should have had to (or would have been obliged to) work very hard .

If she had called on me , I should have had to (or should have

been obliged to) prepare something to entertain her .

9 . Ought to

994 助动词 ought to 表示责任、推想等。

995 a . 表示该做的事 , 理应做的事 , 可译为 “ 应该 ” , “ 应当 ” :

You ought to work hard . (= It is your duty to work hard .)

He ought to listen to you .

You ought to see the film . (= It is profitable for you to see the film .)

We ought to buy things more expensive but more durable .

We ought .

I think I ought to speak to her mother about the marriage .

在美国 , 在否定句及疑问句中 , to 有时省略 :

You ought not (to) (= It is improper for you to) talk too much .

You ought not (= have no business to) ask me about her .

What ought I do if I oughtn't smoke ?

下面两句为不规范用法 :

He had ought to (or should ought to) (= ought to) (不规范用法) be here today .

Such things don't ought to (= ought not to) (不规范用法) be said here .

在间接引语中 , ought 可以表示各种不同时间 :

He says that you ought to write the letter . (现在)

He said that you ought to write the letter . (过去)

He will say that you ought to write the letter . (将来)

He does not think I ought to leave the company .

It is supposed every citizen ought to observe the law .

He said I ought to work hard , and who ought not ?

He knew everything about me . I ought to leave the company as soon as possible .

He will think I ought not to be his wife .

Ought I to grumble ?

Ought to have 表示在更早的时间应该如何 :

He says that you ought to have written the letter .

He said that you ought to have written the letter .

He will say that you ought to have written the letter .

I know he ought to have done it last Sunday .

He ought to have sent the letter . I still see it on the desk .

He came last Saturday . But he ought to have come two days before .

He ought to have started . It was too late .

You will say one day that you ought to have married another girl .

I shall never say I ought to have done this or that .

He resigned and many of his friends think he ought to have done

so . (He did resign .)

He ought to have left the city ten days ago , as he actually did ; for only five days ago the war broke out . (He did leave it .)

在多数情况下 , ought to have 表示一个与过去事实相反的情况 :

He suffered a great loss . He ought to have followed my advice . (But he didn' t .)

Seven were killed in the traffic accident . They ought to have driven slower . (But they did not .)

He ought to have kept silent .

You ought not to have laughed at him . (But you did laugh .)

由于 ought 前不能加 will , 要清楚表示是将来情况 , 常常需用别种说法 :

It will be your duty to take care of the child .

I shall have no business to advise you again .

注 : ought to 和 should 的意思很相近。用 ought 时语气更严峻一些 , 多指按道义、法律、身体情况 , 应当如何。

Should 更亲切一些 , 表示讲话人的关心 , 为了避免使对方感到不自在 , 常可用 should 代替 ought to。

996 b . 表示推理 , 有时也译作 “ 应当 ” :

Since it has rained almost a week , we ought to (=should) have fine weather now . (现在情况)

He ought to (=should , normally) be able to speak Japanese . He has lived in Japan ten years .

He was an expert , so his information ought to be reliable .
(过去情况)

He was a tiger among his friends . What ought he to be among his employees ?

He ought to have arrived by this time , for it is already noon . (现在以前已完成的动作)

You ought to have finished your work by now .

He ought to have got married . He was forty . (过去某时前应已发生的情况)

He had done business many years . He ought to have saved some money .

10 . Need , Needed

997 Need 的意思是 “ 需要 ” , 可以用作主要 (及物) 动词。这样用时 , 如果主语是第三人称单数 , 后面要加 -s 词尾 , 后面若跟不定式 , 要加 to :
He needs (=requires , wants) my help . (用名词作宾语) Does the rice - field need rain ?

The watch needed repairing (用动名词作宾语)

The child needs spanking .

The watch needed to be repaired (用不定式作宾语) The child needed to be spanked .

He needs John to help him . (用名词+补语作宾语)

He needs(=is required) to start earlier. (现在时) He doesn't need to start earlier.

Does he need to start earlier?

He needed to start earlier. (过去时)

He didn't need to start earlier.

Did he need to start earlier?

He will need to start earlier. (将来时)

He won't need to start earlier.

Will he need to start earlier?

998 Need 也可用作助动词, 这时不加-s 词尾, 可跟不带 to 的不定式, 它用在下面几种情况中 (need 作助动词用时不如作及物动词用时多):

1) 用在否定句中:

“Must I go now?” “No, you need not go (=It is not necessary for you to go).” (Need not 很常用)

You need not say anything.

He need scarcely (or hardly) advise me.

You never need tell me this or that.

Nobody need help me.

2) 用在含有否定意义的句子中:

He need only wait here. (=He need not do anything else.)

You need but consider the matter to understand its importance.

He comes oftener than he need. (=He need not come so often.)

I don't think he need come. (=I think he need not come.)

That is all that need be said. (= I need not say anything else.)

There is no more that need be said. (No more need be said.)

3) 用在疑问句中:

Need he say it again?

Need you go at once?

You needn't go, need you?

Why need I worry?

What else need he do?

4) 用在 if, unless, whether 引起的从句中:

If he need come, he will.

I wonder whether I need see her.

999 助动词 need 不能用在肯定句中。在肯定句中要用其他形式表达同样意思:

He needs to start earlier. (用主要动词 need)

He must (or have to) start earlier.

“Need he come?” “No, he need not.” “Yes, he must.”

“Yes, he needs to.”

1000 助动词 need 可用来表示过去情况, 过去时间可由一时间状语表示出来, 也可由另一过去时动词表示出来:

He need not come yesterday .

Need he come last Sunday this time ?

He told me I need not work so hard .

He advised me to take care of my health , but I said he need not worry .

She need not go if he decided to go instead of her .

He already told you everything . What else need he say ?

He was as clever as need be (= extremely clever) .

注 : 可以用主要动词的否定形式(did not need to 或 needed not to) 代替助动词 need 的否定形式 (need not) , 如 : He did not need to come yesterday . 或 He needed not to come yesterday . 后一种形式很少用。

1001 将来时只能由带 to 的形式表示 :

He will never need to work for anyone .

I shall need to say nothing .

1002 Need 也可用在虚拟语气中 :

If money were useless , we need not struggle for it .

(现在情况) (But we must struggle for it .)

If you had been careful enough , you need not have suffered .

(过去情况) (But you had to suffer .)

You need not have worried . (过去情况) (But you did worry .)

比较 : You did not need to worry . (You did not worry .)

You need not have fired him . (But you did .)

比较 : You did not need to fire him . (You did not .)

He talked more than he need have done . (= He talked more than necessary .)

The room was bigger than it need have been .

He was more honest than he need have been .

Need he have come so early ?

1003 Needn't 可以由其他说法代替 :

I don't have to (or haven't got to) answer him .

I have not need to say much .

I have no need (or no occasion , no call) to flatter anyone .

He is not bound (or required , called upon) to do anything for anyone .

1004 Need not be 和 need not have 可以表示 “ 不一定 ” , 而 must be 和 must have 的意思正相反 , 表示 “ 一定..... ” 。

试比较下面句子 :

He is poor and he must be (= is certainly) dishonest .

No , he need not be dishonest . (= He may be dishonest , or not .)

He must be sixty .

No , he need not be sixty . (He may be sixty , or not .)

He has been to England , but he need not have (= may have or may not have) visited Shakespeare's native town .

He need not have seen much of the world , though he is an old man .

11 . Dare , Dared

1005 Dare 作为主要动词 , 有 3 种意思 : 1) 敢于面对 ; 2) 向.....挑战 ; 3) 敢于.....。如果主语为第三人称单数 , 它后面应带 -s 词尾 ; 如果跟不定式 , 可以跟 to , 也可以不跟。

1) He dares any danger . (跟名词或代词)

2) He dares me to fight . (跟名词或代词+不定式)

3) He does not dare (to) jump down . (现在) Does he dare (to) jump down ?

He dares (to) jump down .

He did not dare (to) jump down . (过去)

Did he dare (to) jump down ?

He dared (to) jump down .

1006 作为助动词 , dare 只有一个意思 , 就是 “ 敢于 ” 。它不加 -s 词尾 , 也不跟 to 。它用于下面 5 种情况 :

1) 用于否定句 :

He dare not contradict me . (常用)

I dare not criticize anybody . (常用)

He never dare touch me .

No one dare ask him about his past .

2) 用于有否定意思的句子 :

I don't think he dare come .

3) 用在疑问句中 :

Dare he climb the tree ?

How dare you read my letter ? (常用)

You daren't speak to her , dare you ?

4) 用在 if , unless 等引起的从句中 :

I wonder if he dare see me again .

5) 用在某些肯定 (陈述) 句中 :

He dare say anything they don't like , and he dare do any - thing he thinks right .

I dare say (= I think) , he is right . (常用)

上面例句都是现在时 , 下面是过去时的例子 :

1) He dared not go . (带 not 的否定句)

下面句子用带 to 的结构 :

Nobody dared to go . (比不带 to 的结构用得更多) Neither dared to go .

He scarcely (hardly) dared to go .

2) We kept silent and we dare not say anything .

(在和 一个过去时动词一道用时 , dare 可用作过去时。)

I told him I dare not go .

He was so bad - tempered that I dare not talk with him . 3) Dared he strike you ?

How dared you say that ?

4) I wondered if he dared do it again .

5) I dared do anything to achieve my purpose .

1007 在前面有 shall , should , will , would 或 has , had 等助动词时 , dare 后面需加 to :

I shall not dare to go there again .

He would never dare to see me .

He has never dared to ask me about it .

1008 Dare 和 dared 也可用在虚拟语气中 :

If I dared (to) fight , I could kill him . (But I dare not .)

If I dare fight , I could kill him .

He daren't (= would not dare to) say that , if I were there . (But I am not there , so he dares to say that .)

He daren't have insulted (= wouldn't have dared to in - sult) anyone if he had considered it .

He daren't (or daredn't) have touched you if you had been rich .

12 . Used to , Use to

1009 助动词 used to 或 use to 可用来表示过去的情况 :

We used to live in Japan . (But we are not living there now .)

They used to think they were always right . (But they do not think so now .)

There used to be a big tree in front of the temple .

He usedn't to tell lies . (书面体) (说 He never used to tell lies . 更好一些)

Used you to drink wine ? (书面体) (说 Did you use to drink wine ? 更好一些)

What used you to eat ? (说 What did you use to eat ? 更好一些)

They used to visit this tea - house , usedn't they ? (说 didn't they ? 更好一些)

He did not use to play with us . (口语体)

Did you use to read newspapers ?

It usen't to be here . Usen't he to be your friend ?

He said he used to go to church .

I knew he used to get drunk .

He used to be told so .

It used to be neglected .

13 . 形式小结

1010

疑问句 肯定和否定回答

Can you make it ? I can make it .

 I cannot make it .

Can this be true ? It must be true . (= I am sure it is true .)

It cannot be true. (=I am sure it is false.)

It may be true; it may not be true. (= I am not sure.)

Must I pay you? You must pay me.

You need not pay me.

Must it be true? It must be true. (= It cannot be false.)

It need not be true. (=It may be false)

May I take it? You may take it.

You must not take it.

Need he come? He must come.

He need not come.

Used you to live here? I did.

I never used to.

14. Can , May , Must 的替代说法

1011 Can , may , must 不能用在另一助动词后 , 更不能用于 can , may , must , need , shall , will , have 这些助动词后。不能说 He may can do it . 这时就需要用它们的替代说法。例如 , can 可以用 be able to 代替 , may 可以 have permission to 或 be allowed to 代替 , must 可以 be obliged to , have to 代替。跟这类代替说法时 , may 表示 “ 可能..... ” , cannot 表示 “ 不可能..... ” , must 表示 “ 一定..... ” , need not 表示 “ 无需..... ” will , shall , have 还是通常的意思 :

He may have permission to (代替 may may) enter this school .

(It is probable that he may enter this school .)

He may be able to (代替 may can) read this .

(It is probable that he can read this .)

He may have to (代替 may must) do it over again .

He cannot have permission to (代替 cannot may) enter this school .

(It is impossible that he may enter this school .)

Can he be able to (代替 can can) do it? (Is it possible that he can do it?)

He must have permission to (代替 must may) enter this school .

(It is certain that he may enter this school .)

He must be obliged to (代替 must must) do it over again. (It is certain that he must do it over again.)

He need not have permission to (代替 need not may) enter this school. (It is not certain that he may enter this school.)

He need not be able to (代替 need not can) read this. (It is not certain that he can read this.)

I shall be permitted to enter this school.

I shall be obliged to do it over again.

He will be able to read this.

He will have to do it over again.

He has been permitted to enter this school.

He has been able to read this.

1012 Can, may, must 的这类替代说法, 还可用于非谓语动词形式, 在这类情况下, can, may, must 本身是不能用的:

Permitted to (代替 may) enter, John was overjoyed. (用作分词)

Being able to (代替 can) speak six languages, he found it easy to obtain a job.

Having to (代替 must) do many things that morning, he went to the office earlier than usual.

He is delighted at being permitted to join the club. (用作动名词)

He is proud of being able to read Chinese books.

He can't understand the reasons for one having to be born and to die.

He wishes to be permitted to join the club. (用作不定式)

He hopes to be able to live in Switzerland.

He feels disappointed to have to work for a very low salary.

15. 可看作助动词的动词短语

1013 下面斜体动词短语可以看作助动词, 括号中= 后的词是大致相当的说法:

He (or You) had better or had best (= should) do it; had better have (= should have) done it; better do it (口语体); hadn't better or had better not do it (美国说法).

It had better be done by someone else. (= It is better done by someone else.)

Hadn't you better do it?

I would sooner (or had sooner) (= would rather) be starved than disgrace myself.

I had (much, infinitely, a great deal) rather have been starved than disgrace myself.

I would as soon die as disgrace myself.

He knows better than to (= would rather not) deceive or cheat her.

He can but (= has to) give it up.

He cannot but (= has to) give it up.

He cannot choose but (= has to) give it up.

He cannot help but (= has to) give it up.

He has to (= must) come today, but he has not to (or does not have to) (= need not) come tomorrow.

He has got to (= must) come today, but has not got to (= need not) come tomorrow.

He is to (= must) come today, but he is not to (= need not) come tomorrow.

He is obliged to (= must) come today.

He is able to (= can) deal with any criminal.

He is qualified to (= can) be a professor.

He is powerless (or helpless) to (= cannot) deal with a battle
- axe like his wife.

She is unfit to (= cannot) (口语说法) deal with a bully like
her husband.

He ought to (= should) respect his teachers.

He is supposed (or required, expected) to (= should) respect
his teachers.

The train is due to (= should) arrive at 10.

He fails to (= should, but does not) keep the appointment.

He is about to (= will) start out.

He is going to (= will) start out.

He is on the point of starting out.

He is bound to (= will surely) win.

He is likely to (= will probably) win.

He is certain (or sure) to (= will certainly) win.

He stands to (= will probably) win.

He is apt (or inclined) to forget.

He is liable to curse.

He was given to talking (= would talk) about himself.

He was accustomed (or used) to talking (= would talk) about
himself.

He was in the habit of talking (= used to talk) about him-
- self.

He had the habit of talking (= used to talk) about him - self.

He is allowed (or permitted) to (= may) do anything he likes.

He is free (or welcome) to use my library.

He seemed (or appeared) to know it.

He chanced (or happened) to see the event.

· 非谓语句动词

A . 概 说

1 . 非谓语动词的类型

1014 非谓语动词是同时具有两种作用的词，它们共分 3 类：

a . 动名词（以- ing 结尾）：同时起动词和名词的作用，如 loving , doing , coming .

b . 分词（以- ing , - ed 或- en 结尾）：同时起动词与形容词或动词与副词的作用，如 loving , drinking , eating , loved , eaten .

c . 不定式（前面多加 to ）：可同时起动词和名词，或动词和副词，或动词和形容词的作用，如 to go , to play , to know .

分词带- ing 词尾的为现在分词，它虽和动名词形式相同，但作用却完全不同。

2 . 非谓语动词和谓语动词的差别

1015 非谓语动词和谓语动词有 6 方面的差别：

a . 谓语动词是句子必不可少的成分，而非谓语动词并不如此。如：He came (谓语动词) . My father is reading . (谓语动词) 两句中都有谓语动词。没有谓语动词，句子则不完整，但句子却可以没有非谓语动词。

b . 一个完整的句子一般只包含一个谓语动词（有时可包含两个或更多并列的谓语动词），但可以包含一个或更多非谓语动词，如：After waiting (动名词) some time at the bus - stop , a foreigner wearing (分词) a blue shirt went (谓语动词) across the street to buy (不定式) a newspaper . 其中有一个谓语动词，却有 3 个非谓语动词。

c . 谓语动词只有一个作用，就是起动词的作用，而非谓语动词却同时起两种作用。在上面例句中，动名词 waiting 起动词和名词的作用，分词 wearing 起动词和形容词的作用，不定式 to buy 起动词和副词的作用。

d . 谓语动词必须有一个主语，而非谓语动词却可以没有主语，如：John (主语) came (谓语) yesterday .

Books (主语) are (谓语动词) our good teacher .

但在下面句子中，非谓语动词却没有自己的主语：

Swimming is a good sport . (动名词 swimming 没有主语)

It is good to work . (不定式 to work 没有主语)

但非谓语动词却可以有自己意义上的主语 (Sense Subject) ，以区别于语法上的主语 (Grammatical Subject) 。语法上的主语是谓语动词的主语，也是全句的主语。非谓语动词意义上的主语，通常都放在它前面，如：

I read newspapers , my wife sitting by my side .

John being my best friend , I cannot refuse his request .

分词的意义上的主语是名词的普通格或是一个代词，而动名词的意义上的主语多为名词所有格或物主代词，如：

I am informed of John's getting ill .

I suggested our fighting to the last man .

My wife's speaking ill of my friends made me angry .

不定式的意义上的主语，多由 for 加名词或代词的宾格表示，如：

We made way for the lady to pass.

It is rather hard for me to make any comment.

e. 谓语动词可包含 will, can, may, must 这类情态动词（助动词），而非谓语动词却不能和它们一起用。不过非谓语动词可以包含有这类助动词的替代说法，如：

He owns being about to（代替 will）get married.（= He owns that he will get married.）

A man going to（= Who will soon）die is always kind-hearted.

I am aware of a great war being on the point of（代替 will）breaking out.

Being able to（代替 can）read Japanese（= As he can read Japanese），he explained the meaning of the letter to me.

To be able to make much money is a half success in life, but no more.

Blessed is the man allowed to（= Who may）kiss her hand!

I hear of his being allowed（or permitted）to（代替 may）enter our club.

It is my destiny to be obliged to（代替 should or must）marry this beast of a man.（= It is my destiny that I should marry.....）

I confess having to（代替 must）depend upon my wife for my business plan.

f. 谓语动词必须和主语在人称或数上一致，如：

He comes every day. They come every day.

My father is sad, My parents are sad, I am sad. 但非谓语动词却不如此，如：I dislike his（or their）coming everyday, My father（or My parents）being sad, I am not in the mood to go to the movies.

3. 非谓语动词和谓语动词的相似之处

1016 非谓语动词也是动词，自然也在某些方面和谓语动词有相似之处，特别是在下面 4 方面：

a. 都有两种语态：

She abandoned（谓语，主动）her husband.

He was abandoned（谓语，被动）by her.

I heard of him being abandoned（非谓语，被动）by her.

I heard of her abandoning（非谓语，主动）her husband.

b. 都可跟有宾语和补语：

1) 谓语动词不跟或跟有宾语或补语的情况：

He came（不及物动词，没有宾语及补语）.

John visited（及物动词）India（宾语）.

Mary gave（双宾动词）him（间接引语）so much trouble（直接宾语）.

She looks（系动词）happy（补语）.

They found（宾补动词）their relative as poor（宾语补语）as a beggar.

2) 非谓语动词不跟或跟有宾语或补语的情况：

He wants to come.

I heard of John visiting India.

I am sorry for Mary to give him so much trouble.

She pretended to look happy while swallowing her tears.

Finding their relative as poor as a beggar, they gave him some money.

c. 都可以由副词(1)、副词短语(2)或副词(状语)从句(3)修饰：

He wants to go immediately(1). I know the benefit of doing things methodically(1).

He is fond of "going" for a picnic(2). He is used to writing business letters three or four hours on end(2).

He does not know the policy of giving away something when he wants to get more(3).

d. 都可以表示时间：

非谓语动词和谓语动词都可以表示时间，但非谓语动词所表示的时间通常都受谓语动词的限制。在下面3个句子中，非谓语动词 playing 可以随谓语动词不同而表示3种不同时间：

He is fond of playing music.

He was fond of playing music.

He will be fond of playing music.

有时谓语动词和非谓语动词表示不同时间，如：

I still remember(谓语动词，指现在情况) meeting(动名词) her five years ago on the mountain. (指过去情况)

I decide(谓语动词，指现在情况) to go(不定式) next week. (指将来情况)

B . 动名词

1 . 动名词的形式

1017 动名词有下面四种形式：

	主动式	被动式
现在式	loving	being loved
完成式	having loved	having been loved

如果是不及物动词，则没有被动形式。

2 . 动名词何时使用

1018 当一个动词被用作主语、宾语、补语或是同位语，也就是起名词作用时，需用其-ing 形成。在下面句子中，learn 都是错误形式，必须改为 learning。这种既起名词作用又起动词作用的词称为动名词：

Learn (主语) is important to modern life.

I like learn (宾语) English.

What is your opinion about learn (介词宾语) it? .0

His main business is learn (补语) the method of making pencils.

I know his interest- learn (同位语) the most effective way to kill.

3 . 动名词的动词特点

1019 a . 作为动词，动名词可以表示时间：

在多数情况下，现在式的动名词和同句或同一分句中谓语动词表示的时间是一致的：

Playing football requires a large playground. (一般情况)

I like eating Chinese food.

He is sorry for being idle.

I enjoyed eating the dinner. (过去情况)

His hobby was collecting stamps.

His success will depend upon his working harder and being assisted by friends. (将来情况)

I will avoid being seen by her.

如果动名词是一个表示意图的谓语动词的宾语，动名词表示的时间比谓语动词表示的时间要晚一些：

He insists on trying again.

He intends (or proposes) going abroad.

He advocated (or suggested , advised) our studying science.

There is no hope of seeing the peaceful world again.

I have no doubt of his passing the exam.

完成形式的动名词表示的时间比谓语动词表示的时间要早一些：

I am proud of having sent (= that I have sent) all my girls to college.

He is not sure of having said (= that he has said) anything against you.

I am proud of having sent (= that I sent) all my girls to college before they were nineteen. (表明了过去时间)

He is not sure of having said (= that he said) anything against you yesterday.

I was proud of having sent (= that I had sent) all my girls to college.

He was not sure of having said (= that he had said) anything against you.

This time next year I shall be proud of having sent (= that I have sent) all my girls to college.

在某些情况下，现在形式的动名词起着完成形式的动名词的作用，表示的时间比谓语动词表示的时间早：

He remembers seeing (= remembers having seen) her somewhere.

He regretted making these mistakes.

He repented of fooling around when he was young.

He was punished for stealing something.

1020 b. 作为动词，动名词可以有主动被动两种形式：

She likes seeing (主动) people and being seen (被动).

Loving and respecting (主动) others means being loved and respected (被动).

He does not care about offending (主动) others but gets angry at being offended (被动).

在某些情况下，主动的动名词却有被动的意思，特别是在下面两种情况：

1) 在 need, deserve 这类动词后作宾语：

This house needs (or wants, requires) repairing (但要用 to be repaired).

This article needs correcting (但：to be corrected). (比较：The relations between these two countries are in need of improving.)

This method deserves recommending (但：to be recommended).

He deserves hanging for being such a fool.

Will this book repay reading?

This scandal won't bear think of (但：to be thought of).

2) 在 for, beyond 等介词后作宾语：

The fruit is now ripe for picking (却要用 ripe enough to be picked).

The monument is ready for building.

This is not fit for eating.

His folly is beyond believing (= not to be believed).

My wife is beyond reasoning.

This mistake is past mending (= not to be mended).

His words are past believing.

This fool is past saving.

Is such a book worth reading (= worthy to be read) ?

This job is not worth doing.

you can use this machine without training.

1021 c. 作为动词，动名词也有下面 5 种情况：

1) 为不及物动词，不跟宾语或补语：

He is fond of swimming.

I dislike smoking.

2) 为及物动词，后面跟宾语：

He is fond of playing pingpong.

I dislike cheating anyone.

3) 为双宾动词，后面跟间接宾语和直接宾语：

He is fond of teaching others table manners.

I dislike lending others money or anything.

4) 为系动词，后面跟补语：

He is fond of being the chief of others.

I dislike being different from common people.

5) 为宾补动词，后面跟宾语和宾语补语：

He is fond of making us laugh.

I dislike making the house dirty.

1022 d. 作为动词，动名词可以由 1) 副词，2) 副词短语或 3) 状语从句修饰：

1) We decided on never surrendering.

People in this prosperous city are not used to walking leisurely.

2) He is afraid of speaking in public.

I cannot stand doing the same thing year after year.

3) Reading while you are eating is harmful to your health.

It is no use closing the stable door after the horse has been stolen.

1023 e. 作为动词，动名词可以有一个意义上的主语：

1) 这种主语可以不出现或由上下文暗示出来：

a) Seeing is believing. (动名词 seeing 和 believing 的意义上的主语为一般人)

Cheating others does not pay.

It is no use crying over spilt milk.

b) It is no use talking about this matter. (动名词 talking 的意义上的主语为你我)

Saying such a thing is foolish. (动名词 saying 的意义上的主语为对方或另一人)

I suggested fighting to the last man. (动名词 fighting 的意义上的主语为我们的军队)

c) At the (or this) moment (or time) of writing, the battle is still going on. (writing 的意义上的主语为讲话人自己)

d) John is praised for fighting bravely. (fighting 意义上

的主语就是句子主语 John.)(这种用法很普通)

I am fond of studying philosophy.

Mary will consider doing something for you.

We must avoid making another mistake.

e) They punished William for fighting in the classroom.

(fighting 的意义上的主语为句子的宾语 William)(这种用法也很普通)

Thank you for lending me the raincoat.

f) Working too hard will injure our health. (working 的意义上的主语由 our 表示出来, 指我们。)

Your success consists in doing the same thing year after year.

2) 如果意义上的主语从上下文中已可清楚看出, 若再加上就显得多余, 如下面句子中的 his, our :

I praised John for (his) working hard.

We are talking about (our) going to college.

(Our) doing too much may be worse than (our) doing nothing.

A new member has to pay a certain fee before (his) entering the club.

但有时意义上的主语必须说出, 以防引起误解。由于句子主语常常被理解为动名词意义上的主语, 下面例句中动名词表示的究竟是谁的动作则不清楚, 须加上意义上的主语, 以防造成误解:

A lot of money suddenly came in without asking for it. (在 asking 前应加上 my 或其他名词或代词)

Your son must finish a high school course before sending him to college. (在 sending 前要加 your)

On entering the room, something wonderful presented itself. (在 entering 前要加 his 或其他名词或代词)

3) 在动名词必须表明它是谁的动作时, 通常要在它前面加一个 John's, my mother's, his 这类所有格的词, 作为它正式意义上的主语。不过有时可用一个普通格的词如 John, my mother, him 来代替。一般说来, 用所有格形式 (P) (Possessive) 比较正式, 用普通格形式 (C) (Common Case) 比较口语化和强调。使用所有格还是普通格, 取决于动名词是作主语、宾语还是补语, 也取决于意义上的主语是名词还是代词:

a) 动名词作主语时, P 比 C 更普通一些, 不管意义上的主语是名词还是代词:

John's coming home from abroad is a great event.

Children's learning manners is important.

His coming home from abroad is a great event.

Their learning manners is important.

如果动名词短语由 it 代表, 而意义上的主语为名词, C 比 P 更普通:

It is a great event John coming home from abroad.

It is important children learning manners.

His difficulty is your opposing him.

另外，在下面几种情况下 C 比 P 更普通：

e) 当意义上的主语是“物”而不是“人”时：

I am informed of the examination being very strict.

He is fond of coffee being served after dinner.

We rejoiced at our troops driving the enemy back across the border.

I am reminded of it being Sunday.

f) 当意义上的主语是一个指示词时：

You will oblige me by all standing here.

This cannot be said without some getting angry.

I am doubtful of this being the best one.

g) 当意义上的主语由一组词表示时：

A dream of all the members of the family living together again has always been in my mind.

Old and young studying in the same classroom is a very charming sight.

The glory of the marshal counts on many soldiers dying "for their country".

Have you heard of Smith the electrician being arrested?

There is no need of any one of us speaking to him about this scandal.

4. 动名词的名词特点

1024 a. 动名词前可加形容词：

作为名词，动名词可以：1) 有一个形容词修饰；2) 可以加冠词：

如果意义上的主语为代词，则 P 比 C 更普通：

It is a great event his coming home from abroad.

It is important their learning manners.

b) 当动名词为及物动词的宾语时，如果意义上的主语为名词，C 比较普通：

I encourage children studying science.

I don't like people talking loud.

如果意义上的主语为代词，C 和 P 都很普通：

I encourage their (or them) studying science.

I don't like their (or them) talking loud.

c) 当动名词为介词宾语时，如果意义上的主语为名词，C 比较普通：

I dare not go to school without father accompanying me.

I am astonished at John suddenly becoming a nice boy.

如果意义上的主语为代词，P 比较普通：

I dare not go to school without his accompanying me.

I am astonished at his suddenly becoming a nice boy.

This is a letter of my writing (= which I write).

(不要用 me writing)

He has many pictures of his own drawing (= which he himself draws).

We live in a house of our own building.

He loves the wife of his own choosing.

d) 动名词作补语时很少带意义上的主语：

My only purpose is Mary's going to college. 1) false thinking is dangerous.

Constant examining of the machine is necessary.

It is fine talking.

People in the habit of rapid reading are many times cleverer than others.

He met with enthusiastic greeting.

I am not used to early rising.

He is a man of wide reading (= wide knowledge from books).

Careful writing prevents mistakes.

He is a man of good understanding.

A little explaining is enough.

Too much learning might make one eccentric.

You can use this machine without much training. I can finish this book at one sitting.

He did all the talking.

I like to do some reading.

She is fond of this chatting with neighbours (有介词短语修饰).

I don't need any translating from an old book. I shall never forget that kissing on an autumn night.

2) Our civilization is in the making.

You can have it for the asking (or the taking). It is worth (the) reading (or keeping).

I cannot get a hearing (= a chance to defend myself). A shaking of hands is a must between friends. That is an unusual undertaking, also an honourable calling (= trade) with Lee.

I heard a clapping of hands (or a sobbing, a crying) (= a series of claps of hands, of sobs, of cries). (不同于 I heard a clap of hands, a sob, a cry.)

A good beginning means a good ending.

在 John's treating everyone as his brother is well known. 及 He is satisfied with my paying him half the price. 中的 John's 和 my 也可以说是修饰动名词的，但还是把它们看作名词较好，因为它们表示了动名词意义上的主语。特别是在 I am fond of hot tea being served. 中，普通格的 tea 还是看作名词较好，而不要看作动名词的修饰语。这类词都放在 1023 中讨论。

另外，一个动名词若已有副词修饰，则不得再用形容词修饰（除去所有格，this 和 that）：

(A careful) (x) Explaining slowly is necessary to my students.
(x 前的形容词应划掉)

He has the habit of (rapid) (x) reading silently.

但可以说：

My explaining slowly is necessary to my students.

John's reading silently has been a habit for many years.

This growing rapidly during the rainy season is only natural with most plants.

反之，若已有形容词修饰，动名词就不再用副词修饰：

A careful explaining (slowly) (x) is necessary to a beginner.

(x 前的副词应划掉)

He has the habit of rapid reading (silently) (x)

此外，在及物动词的动名词前，只有在书面语中可以加 this, that 和 the 修饰，日常英语中，在动名词后应插入一个 of：

This keeping (of) the secret will not be long.

I am interested in the studying (of) animal habits.

That killing (of) the prisoners of war is inhuman.

This treating (of) all men as brothers is the essence of all religions.

1025 b. 动名词后可以跟介词短语作定语：

1) 作为名词，动名词后可以跟一个由 of 或 by 引起的短语，of 和 by 的宾语同时也是动名词意义上的主语。

在这种情况下，动名词前通常都加 the 或另一个指示形容词：

The coming of my uncle (=That my uncle came) to the city was no ordinary affair.

Have you heard of the breaking out of the war? (=Have you heard that the war had broken out.)

This (or That, Any, No) fighting of the natives with foreigners was encouraged.

如果动名词为及物动词，可用 by 引起的短语表示意义上的主语，而 of 引起的短语可表示意义上的宾语：

The making of this wine by the natives has been a secret.

(=How the natives make this wine has been a secret.)

The squandering of all his money by his son has driven him mad.

如果 of 引起的短语较 by 引起的短语长，则应放在 by 引起的短语后面：

The bringing up by Mrs. Wang of all her children

who were still young cost thousands of dollars a month.

如果动名词为不及物动词，它后面 of 跟的宾语必然是它意义上的主语，而不可能是意义上的宾语：

I watched the rising of the sun.

The coming of Christmas made the desolate town prosperous.

The declining of his career began in 1952.

2) 作为名词，动名词可以由一个以 of 引起的短语或一个所有格修饰。如果动名词为及物动词，则 of 的宾语或所有格（名词或代词）可以同时是动名词意义上的宾语：

The making of dress (=Making dress) is a useful art ;

I know something about dress and its making . (its 为代表物的代词 , 显然是 making 意义上的宾语。)

I know nothing about the printing of books (=printing books) .

Books and their printing and binding are so interesting to me .

He is in charge of the collecting of materials .

如果所有格名词指人 , 则表示意义上宾语的时候不多 , 通常都表示意义上的主语 :

John's (or His) training (= Training John [or him]) needs very great patience .

它的意义上的宾语更多由一个 of 引起的短语表示 :

The training (or teaching) of John took a long time .

Such (or This , Any , No , ...) training of John is effective .

如果有所有格 (代词或名词) 表示动名词意义上的主语 , 则后面 of 的宾语可表示动名词意义上的宾语 :

His entertaining of the guests was successful .

The writing of story books is not easy .

如果动名词短语较长 , 要避免带 of 的结构 , 否则会显得很笨拙 :

I am interested in writing story books for children from ten to thirteen . (比 in the writing of story books...好)

I will call on you after finishing my work by four to - morrow afternoon . (比 after the finishing of my work...好)

3) 作为名词 , 动名词后还可跟其他的短语作定语 :

He has a hankering for wealth and fame .

Any deviating from the custom will make him angry .

There is an abrupt falling from the usual standard .

1026 c . 动名词可用在各个不同位置 :

动名词可以和名词一样 , 用在各个不同位置。它可以用作主语、宾语、补语、同位语等 (可参阅 1023 . 第 3 节) :

Swimming (主语) is good for health .

I like swimming (宾语) .

My favourite sport is swimming (补语) .

I have to give up my only pastime-swimming (同位语) .

1027 1) 动名词作主语 :

Studying music is interesting to very few people .

Going to the cinema is his only amusement .

Drinking too much is not good for health .

Working too hard will cause illness .

Your (很少用 you) drinking so much liquor is dangerous .

(= That you should drink so much liquor is dangerous .

= It is dangerous that you should...)

John's (很少用 John) suddenly returning from abroad astonished his family .

His brother John (很少用 John's) getting married two days ago

was a great event in this village .

(更普通的说法是 The fact that his brother John got married two days ago was a great event .)

Today being rainy prevents us from going out .

It is dangerous your (很少用 you) drinking so much liquor .

It astonished his family John (很少用 John's) suddenly returning from abroad .

It is no use (or no good) doing evil even toward evil people .

Is it any good getting married ? It is not much good .

Having studied biology is an important qualification for the study of agriculture .

Having seen the world sixty years is not enough to make one wise .

There is no persuading him . (It is impossible to persuade him .)

There is no telling what will happen tomorrow .

There can be no denying that he has made many mis- takes .

There was no trusting such a rascal .

1028 2) 动名词作主语的补语 :

My job is teaching in high school .

The best thing is being kind to everybody .

This is asking for trouble .

His trouble is having tried every means and being at his wit's end .

My aim is everybody ('s) having a good time .

My trouble is all my friends (不要说人 friends') abandon - ing me .

1029 3) 动名词作及物动词的宾语 (约有 100 个动词能用动名词作宾语) :

We commenced building a bridge .

I cannot help thinking so .

I detested his (or him) interrupting my work .

He will consider my (or me) working together with his brother .

I doubt my friend John (很少用 John's) having any chance .

(= I doubt whether my friend John has any chance .)

I cannot abide a woman whistling .

He cannot permit his daughter and his son (很少用 son's being insulted .

I dislike my daughter going out with a boy so often .

1030 4) 动名词作宾补动词的宾语 :

He considers it no good talking so much . (it 代表后面的动名词)

I always think it happy having to maintain a large family .

I find it tiresome always trying to make money .

People think it unusual her having there husbands .

1031 5) 动名词作介词的宾语：

Before buying books , he came to me for advice . (=Be - fore he bought books , he came to me for advice .) On arriving , in Hong Kong , he called on John . We talked about studying a foreign language .

He cannot read with his wife sitting beside him . My success depends on doing my best .

He is a fool in trusting such a loafer .

He has the opportunity of studying medicine .

The aim of doing something great takes years of efforts .

He is afraid of you ruining yourself .

She is ashamed of her husband being a profiteer .

In writting a letter , the ink used should be black .

在下面句子中，动同的-ing 形式可以看作动名词，前面的 in , by , through 等介词省略：

They spent all their lives (in) studying birds .

You have no business (in) asking about my income .

They lost no time (in) buying up the food - stuff .

She lacks experience (in) doing any business .

I have a hard time (in) looking for your address .

He let down his father (by) fooling about .

He amused himself (by) reading novels .

We earn a living (by) selling coffee .

We got lost (through) driving into a forest .

I caught cold (through) walking in the rain .

I am tired (of) doing the same thing every day .

I am ashamed (of) doing this dirty business .

He is never done (with) asking about my sister .

1032

Are you through (with) cursing me ?

They take turns (at) looking after their baby .

We must stop (or prevent) him (from) stealing again .

He went out a - hunting (or a - fishing) . (a 是一种陈旧的词头)

He set the bell a - ringing , set the clock a - going .

He sent his children a - begging .

He went out hunting (or fishing , swimming) . (现在多用这种形式)

He set the bell ringing , set the clock going .

1032 6) 动名词作同位语：

His purpose-earning a million dollars in a year - has been defeated .

He must fulfill his promise-paying off his debts before June 1 .

1033 7) 动名词偶尔用于所有格：

I read for reading's sake . (动名词这样用时很少)

Children play for playing's sake .

1034 8) 动名词和名词并列的情况 (动名词可以和名词平行使用 , 仿佛也是名词) :

His time was formerly spent n music , poetry , painting , and collecting stamps , but is now spent in laundry , cooking , cleaning and caring for children .

Football , swimming , and taking pictures are his favourite pastimes .

Nothing is so pleasant as reading .

There is no harder job than writing books .

He learns English as well as typing .

5 . 动名词同时用作动词和名词

1035 前面我们讨论了动名词作动词以及作名词的特点。这里我们将研究动名词如何同时起这两种作用。当一个动名词有它的意义上的主语 , 又有副词、副词短语或副词从句修饰 , 同时有宾语或补语时 , 它就清楚表现了这两方面的作用。具有这六种成分中任何一种的动名词称为动名词短语 (GerundPhrases) :

I don't like children swimming in this dirty river (动名词短语) . (Swimming 为动名词。它一方面作为名词 , 用作及物动词 like 的宾语 , 另一方面又作为动词 , 有它意义上的主语 children 和副词短语 in this dirty river。)

He is sorry for making such mistakes (动名词短语) . (Making 为动名词。一方面作为名词 , 它是介词 for 的宾语 , 另一方面作为动词 , 它是及物动词 , 有它的宾语 mistakes。)

John's paying me a visit before he leaves for Cuba (动名词短语) is an honour to me . (Paying 为动名词。一方面它作为名词 , 在句中作谓语动词 is 的主语 , 另一方面它作为双宾动词 , 它有间接宾语 me 和直接宾语 a visit , 同时有意义上的主语 John's 和副词从句 before he leaves for Cuba。)

His dream has always been suddenly becoming a millionaire (动名词短语) . (Becoming 为动名词。一方面它作为名词 , 用作主语补语 , 另一方面 , 它又作为动词 , 有副词 suddenly 修饰它 , 同时有自己的补语 millionaire。)

6 . 合成词中的动名词

1036 动名词可用来构成合成词。在合成词内 , 动名词可起动词的作用 , 有自己的副词 (状语) 、宾语等 , 但合成词本身只能用作名词 , 不能再有副词、宾语等。常见的有下面这几类 :

1) 名词 (作宾语) + 动名词 :

You must give up cigar-smoking (= smoking cigars) .

He has learned letter-writing (= writing letters) .

This office is not a place for love-making (= making love) .

Tiger-hunting is very exciting .

I am interested in dress - making (or flower - arranging ,

proof-reading , rope - walking , fire-eating , disc - throwing) .

2) 名词 (作状语) + 动名词 :

We are ready to greet his home-coming (= coming home) .

Sunday is the day for church - going (going to church) .

Metal - working (=Working in metal) is a very important handicraft in this small city .

Further Examples :

Night - watching (=Watching at night) , night - walking , fellow - feeling , lead - poisoning

3) 动名词+副词 , 或副词+动名词 :

The bringing-up of children costs no end of labour .

There is in this country a great speeding - up of industry , but a great stepping-down of morals .

The uprising of the under - developed countries marked the middle of this century .

What is the reason for the falling - off of the production of our factories ?

I can see the down - going of his career .

4) 动名词+名词 (这时动名词起着形容词的作用 , 修饰这个名词) :

He left his sleeping-room at 10 a . m .

He came with a walking-stick .

The water remains below its boiling-point .

A dancing - master teaches her .

7 . 名词化的动名词

1037 有时一个动名词可以完全变成名词 , 尽管在意思上仍表示动作 , 它已不能像 1035 节中所说那样有动词的特点(如有宾语、补语、状语等) , 它只有名词的特点 , 可作主语、宾语、补语、同位语。这种动名词称为名词化的动名词 (Verbal Nouns) :

I am interested in singing .

Hunting is an exciting sport with me .

Some happening prevented him from going abroad .

I am learning swimming .

许多名词化的动名词表示一种技能或活动 :

shooting , fishing , cycling , outing , jumping , acting , draw - ing , singing , editing , meeting , gathering , wedding , sitting , hearing , christening

偶尔也可以有复数形式 :

War is nothing but killings , burnings , and pillagings .

Do you know anything about his doings and dealings in Paris ?

Good beginnings mean good endings .

I could hear their gaspings and moanings .

The findings will soon be published .

Every man has some failings (or shortcomings) .

I heard several clappings (or sobbings , cryings) .

名词化动名词不能像动词那样有自己的副词、副词短语、宾语等，但可以作为名词，有自己的形容词或形容词短语（定语）（1024中所给动名词都是名词化动名词）：

Public speaking is an art .

He cannot stand this endless questioning .

This case requires steady investigating .

This lavish spending will soon ruin him .

The examining of this case of murder gave no result .

Any speaking before the public must have the approval of the government .

8 . 以-ing 结尾的名词

1038 动名词有时可以完全失去动词的作用，而成为一个纯粹的名词，它不再表示动作，而表示一样具体的东西。在这种情况下，动名词已由抽象名词变成具体名词，因此不能再称作动名词。

Engraving , drawing , sewing , writing (s) , clipping (s) , cutting (s) , holding (s) , earnings , takings , sawings , win - nings , parings , scrapings , shavings , sweepings (=What is engraved , drawn , sewn , ...)

Covering , locking , binding , dripping , blacking , hangings , surroundings , outgoings , incomings (=A thing or things that cover , bind , drip , ...)

Flooring , roofing , edging , carpeting , gilding , lining , rigging , bedding (=Material for making floors , roofs , ... for gilding , lining , ...) (动词 + ing)

Socking , shirting , trousering , guilting , bagging , scaffolding , piping , tubing (=Material for making socks , shirts , ...)

(名词+ing)

Give the leavings (残菜剩饭) to the beggar .

He spent his earnings (挣的钱) on the education of his children .

He sent me newspaper-clippings (剪报) from time to time .

The place where the carpenter worked is full of shavings (刨花) .

Don't throw the sweepings (垃圾) in the street .

The findings (调查结果) will be published next week .

He does not like dripping (烤肉流出的油脂) .

I use blacking (=鞋油) once a week .

His wall looks pretty with some hangings (壁毯) .

9 . 表示动作的名词

1039 一些表示动作的名词可起相当于动名词的作用：

We think establishment (=establishing) of good schools absolutely necessary , especially in this city .

The passage (=passing) of the act will be a matter of course .

His treatment (=treating) of workers is not fair .

Is this trifle worth mention (=mentioning) ?

有些表示动作的名词有被动意思：

So simple a matter has escaped consideration (=being considered) .

I am ignorant of his dismissal (=being dismissed) .

She is interested in the collection of stamps (=collecting stamps , stamp - collecting) .

The management of a school (=Managing a school , School - managing) is an important subject .

She has devoted all her life to the arrangement of flowers (=arranging flowers , flower - arranging) .

如果有名词表示动作，在需要名词的地方最好用这种名词而不用动名词：

No improvement (不要用 improving) is visible .

What we need is a resolution (不要用 resolving) to adopt .

Apply to the police for information (不要用 being in - formed) .

We try to step up production (不要用 producing) .

Every word of the clown created laughter (不要用 laugh - ing) .

I cannot afford the expense (不要用 expending) .

如果找不到合适的表示动作的名词，则可以用动名词：

This park is a place for love-making .

I like cycling .

Swimming is his favourite pastime .

Smoking cigar is harmful to health .

He is fond of fault-finding .

C . 分词

1 . 概说

a . 分词的形式

1040 分词有下面几种形式：

	及物动词	不及物动词	
	主动	被动	主动
现在	writing	being written	arriving
完成	having written	having been written	having arrived
过去		written	arrived

The boy saw the man murdering (主动) the woman .

The police examined the woman murdered (被动) by someone .

The workmen making (主动) this paper must be skilful enough .

I saw such paper being made (被动) by children .

b . 分词和动名词的比较

1041 动名词是动词和名词的结合体，而分词则是动词和形容词或动词和副词的结合体：

John likes walking alone . (Walking 起名词作用，用作及物动词 likes 的宾语，因此是动名词。)

I saw John walking alone . (Walking 起形容词的作用，修饰名词 John，因此是分词。)

Walking alone , John met a friend . (Walking 在这里是 “ When he was walking ” 的意思，用作状语，修饰动词 met，因此是分词。)

Being invaded is almost the fate of a small country . (Being invaded 起名词作用，用作主语，是动名词。)

The country being invaded was a small country . (Being invaded 起形容词的作用，修饰名词 country，是分词。)

Being invaded , all the country rose in arms . (Being invaded 在这里是 “ As she was invaded ” 的意思，用作状语，修饰动词 rose，是分词。)

c . 分词的动词特点

1042 作为动词，分词的用法和动名词差不多，只是意义上的主语的表示方法不同。可参阅 1019—1023 节。

1) 分词不仅起形容词和副词的作用，它们也是动词。作为动词，它们可以表示时间。不过它们表示的时间要受同句中谓语动词的制约。

主动现在分词（相当于谓语动词的一般时）表示一个与谓语动词所表示动作同时发生的动作：

Writing to her, he expresses (or expressed, will express) his wish to be a lawyer.

主动完成分词（相当于谓语动词的完成时）表示同句谓语动词所表示动作之前发生的动作：

Having written the letter, he sends (or sent, will send) it by air mail.

被动现在分词（相当于谓语动词的被动进行时）表示在同句谓语所表示的动作发生时正在被进行的动作（分词表示动作可能比谓语所表示动作长些）：

I find (or found, will find) the letter being written by John.

（被动）过去分词（相当于被动谓语动词的一般时）表示在谓语动词表示的动作发生的同时或之前发生的被动动作：

I find (or found, will find) the letter written (=writ - ten some time ago or being written) by John.

1043 2) 作为动词，分词也可以是 5 种动词：

a) 不及物动词：

I found Mary playing.

The boy coming here is my son.

b) 及物动词：

I found Mary reading newspaper.

The boy climbing a tree is my son.

c) 双宾动词：

I found Mary teaching her brother arithmetic.

The boy offering you tea is my son.

d) 系动词：

Mary, being lonesome, moved to my house.

The boy knows very little, being only ten years old.

e) 宾补动词：

Mary spilled the milk, making her mother angry.

The boy keeping the floor clean, was praised by his parents.

1044 3) 作为动词，分词可被 a) 副词，b) 副词短语和 c) 状语从句所修饰：

a) There is a man coming here.

Walking along, I met Mary.

Being suddenly attacked, the enemy fell into a panic.

b) The man talking in a whisper is my uncle.

Waiting hour after hour , I became impatient .

Bitten by mosquitoes , he suffered from malaria .

c) Who is the fellow dressed as if he were a billionaire ?

Considering this matter at night when all was quiet , I began to feel ashamed .

1045 4) 作为动词 , 分词可以有一个名词或代词作它意义上的主语 :

The sun having risen , I get up .

Mother being ill , I decide to stay at home .

He getting angry , all his guests left his house .

I read papers , she sewing by my side .

注 : 凡带有 2) , 3) 或 4) 中所谈成份的称分词短语 (Participle Phrases) , 不带这些的称为简单分词 (Simple Participles) 。

d . 分词的形容词特点

1046 分词可以起形容词或副词的作用。在起形容词作用时，它可以用作 1) 定语，2) 主语补语，3) 宾语补语，或作 4) 解释性形容词，也就是说可以放在所修饰的名词前面或后面 1)，放在系动词后面 2)，放在宾补动词后面 3)，或放在句子的其他地方 4)。换句话说，它可以四种方式来修饰名词：

1) She is a contented woman . She is a woman contented with her marriage .

The starving troops had to surrender . The troops starving in the desert have to wait some days .

2) The woman is contented .

The troops seem starving .

3) A peaceful life leaves the woman contented .

Destruction of the bridge rendered the troops starving .

4) The woman arrived home contented .

The troops wandered about starving .

1047 有些分词已完全变为形容词，可以加程度副词如 very , too . 很多甚至可以和形容词换用。这类分词可以称作分词形容词 (Participial Adjectives) :

She sings in a trembling (= tremulous) voice .

He has a forbidding (= stern) face .

These existing (= existent) circumstances will not last long .

Can our never - ending (= endless) efforts stop the ever - lasting (= perpetual) war among human beings ?

That is an unheard - of (= extraordinary) case of robbery .

He is a celebrated (= famous) scholar .

This egg is rotten (= putrid) .

The child seems terror-stricken (= fearful) .

This judge is very unfeeling (= hard - hearted) .

This girl is too trusting (= trustful) .

I find him rather confiding (= unsuspecting) .

She is a very loving (= affectionate) mother .

表示情绪的分词常可用作形容词，过去分词甚至丧失它们的被动意义。Charming 单纯表示“迷人”，和 attractive 差不多。

Pleased 表示“高兴”，和 glad 差不多，exasperated 表示“恼怒”，和 angry 差不多：

This is a very astonishing (= strange , wonderful) story .

He offers a more tempting (= attractive) benefit than any one .

The battlefield showed us a shocking (= horrible) scene .

He has never had so pleasing (= pleasant) a trip .

He seems so satisfied (= content) with his lot .

He feels rather depressed (= despondent , sad) .

I find John no less discouraged (= low - spirited) than I .

- 1 I left my boss vexed (= angry) with me .
- 2 . 起形容词作用的分词 (形容词型分词)

a . 分词作定语用法

1) 总的特点

1048 分词可以作定语, 修饰或是限制一个名词, 可以放在它前面, 也可以放在它后面。一般说来, 简单分词放在名词前面, 分词短语放在名词后面。

a) 放在名词前的分词

1049 1 / 表示动作的分词:

一个现在分词或过去分词放在名词前时, 可以表示一时的动作, 这时它的动词特点胜过形容词特点, 相当于一个定语从句:

Do you see the rising sun (=sun which is rising) in the east?

They tried to surround the retreating troops (=troops which were retreating) .

The roaring lion frightened all the animals in the jun - gle .

They tried to deliver the besieged city (= city which was being besieged) .

These repeated efforts (=efforts which were being re - peated) were still inadequate .

Those oppressed nations (=nations that are being op - pressed) are rising to liberate themselves .

1050 2 / 表示特点的分词:

它也可以表示比较长久或永久性的特点。这时它的形容词特点胜过它的动词特点:

Germs are living creatures (=not inanimate things , creatures that can live) .

She is a charming lady (=attractive lady , lady who charms others) .

The working classes are usually poor .

There were many flying fish .

We watched the moving pictures (=motion pictures) .

Used cars (=old cars , cars which have been used) are cheaper than new ones .

Stolen love (=Secret love , love which is stolen) , though dangerous , tastes exceptionally sweet .

This printed matter may be sent by mail .

1051 3 / 和用作形容词的动名词的差别:

用在名词前的现在分词和用在名词前起形容词作用的动名词是有区别的, 从意思上、重音上及是否加连字号, 都有区别。下面各对句子中, 第一句中带 -ing 词尾的动词为分词, 第二句中带 -ing 词尾的动词为动名词:

Bóiling w áter (美音) (=Water that is boiling) can produce enormous power . (英音 : bóiling w áter) (为首重音符 , 为次重音符)

Water begins to boil at the bóiling - póint (美音) (=point at

which liquid boils ; 而不是 point which boils) . (英音 : b ɔ : l i ŋ - p o i n t)

He is a w ā l k i n g d i c t i o n a r y (美音) (= dictionary that can walk , learned man) . (英音 : w ɔ : l k i ŋ d i c t i o n a r i)

He came with a w ā l k i n g - s t i c k (美音) (= stick for walking ; 非 stick that walk) . (英音 : w ɔ : l k i ŋ - s t i c k)

How clever that d ā n c i n g b ɛ ər (= bear that is dancing) is !

He is a d ā n c i n g - m ā s t e r (= master who teaches danc - ing) .

Someone said many years ago that China was a s l ɛ ɪ p i ŋ l i ɔ ŋ (= lion that was sleeping) .

He is in the s l ɛ ɪ p i ŋ - c ā r (= car for sleeping , 而不是 car that is sleeping) .

R ū n i n g water is cleaner than stagnant .

It is a r ū n i n g - t r ā c k for sportsmen .

1052 4 / 用作名词的情况 :

和形容词一样 , 某些分词在加 the 时 (后面不跟名词) , 可以代表一类人或一种抽象东西 :

Which are more numerous , the dead or the living (= the living people) ?

Something must be done immediately with the wounded and the dying .

What should we do with the oppressed , the defeated the insulted and the injured ?

Can we say anything about the unseen (= the thing un - seen) and the unknown (= the thing unknown) ?

b) 放在名词后的分词

1053 放在名词后的分词多数是分词短语 , 它可以变成一个定语从句 (尽管定语从句不一定都能变成分词短语) :

1 / 表示一时动作的分词短语 :

The danger threatening the world (= which is threaten - ing the area) is too many people with too little food .

They looked on at the city being attacked by the enemy (= which was being attacked by the enemy) .

The man being followed by guards (= who are being fol - lowed by guards) is a party leader .

1054 2 / 表示长久特点的分词短语 :

A man respecting others (= who respects others) will be respected .

Can you teach a boy refusing to be taught (= who refuses to be taught) ?

It is difficult to save a man enchanted by the beauty of a woman .

Books called the comics (= that are called the comics) are sometimes harmful to children .

Any books well read (= that are well read) are good books and

any men well treated are good men .

2) 名词前作定语的分词

a) 用在名词前的不及物现在分词

1055 名词前的现在分词多数为不及物动词 :

The trembling criminal hung his head .

Do you see the floating bridge there ?

She is a doting mother .

The existing situation will last some years .

In the field are nodding trees , murmuring rivulets , smiling flowers , singing birds , swimming ducks and playing children .

He is an uncompromising diplomat .

It proves futile in spite of all untiring efforts .

This upright man always takes an unswerving course .

It is an unavailing plot .

There is an undying friendship between them .

b) 用在名词前的及物现在分词

1056 1 / 意义上的宾语为 “ 人 ” 的情况 :

及物动词的分词也可用在名词前面 , 但它们大多表示情绪。它们的意义上的宾语指一般人或某些人 , 是不说出的。例如 : It is a charming story = It is a story that charms us (me , you , or anyone) . 又如 : We have an encouraging prospect . = We have a prospect that encourages us . 又如 : This exciting experience made him sleepless . = This experience , which excited him , made him sleepless .

It is an interesting (or surprising , amazing , moving , entertaining , affecting) story .

He has a puzzling problem to solve .

In the forest there happened a shocking (or frightening) case of murder .

Her fascinating eyes and her tempting mouth put you in a reverie .

It is a misleading statement , a deceiving promise .

An unconvincing rumour spread over the city .

1057 2 / 意义上的宾语为 “ 物 ” 的情况 :

有少数及物动词的分词 , 它们的意义上的宾语也不说出 , 却是指 “ 物 ” 的 , 这时要经过琢磨才知道宾语是什么 :

It is an arresting sight (= a sight that arrests somebody's attention) , an imploring look (= a look that implores somebody's help) , a revealing story (= a story that reveals things hidden or kept secret) , a deserving cause (= a cause that deserves sympathy or help) .

He is a grasping attorney (= an attorney who is eager to grasp money) .

A knowing man (= a man who knows all the secret) , an understanding man (= a man who understands others' feelings) , a forbidding

headmaster (= a headmas - ter who forbids others to approach or to like him) , a loving father (= a father who loves children or others) , a promising youth (= a youth who promises to suc - ceed) , a designing businessman (= a businessman who designs some intrigues) , an unfeeling judge (= judge who feels no sympathy) , an unforgiving father (= a fa - ther who does not forgive any fault) , an unthinking playboy (= a playboy who does not think of the conse-quences) , an unsparing housewife (= housewife who does not spare money) , an unassuming scholar (= a scholar who does not assume importance) . an unpre - tending manager (= a manager who does not pretend importance) .

c) 用在名词前的及物过去分词

1058 1 / 一般的过去分词 :

及物动词的过去分词常可用在名词前作它的修饰语。它表示同句谓语动词所表示的动作发生时正在被进行的一个动作,也可表示那时之前一个被动动作的后果:

He is an honoured and respected professor (= professor who is honoured and respected) .

We live in a crowded area .

The oppressed nations are beginning to rise .

The persecuted patriot hid himself in the jungle .

I drink boiled water (= water that has been boiled before , but is no more boiled and is free from germs now) .

There are many trained , nurses (= nurses who have been trained before , but are efficient now) in this hospi - tal .

Don't tread on the broken glass (= glass that has been broken before , but may hurt somebody's feet now) .

Used cars cost cheaper than new ones .

There are thousands of wounded soldiers in this lost bat-tle .

He is a qualified teacher .

1059 2 / 已失去动词特点的过去分词 :

a / 以-en (或-n) 结尾的过去分词 :

有不少过去分词已失去动词特点,成为纯粹的形容词,它们有些以-en (或-n) 结尾 :

His honesty is a proven fact .

I like frozen fruit .

This is the tomb of forgotten heroes .

How hot is molten iron ?

It is said the devil has cloven hoofs .

Some drunken sailors are fighting in the street .

Do you see the hidden meaning of this letter ?

下面词组中也包含这种分词 :

driven snow , woven thread , sawn timber , hewn timber , a sunken cheek , shrunken clothes , a rotten egg , a shorn lamb , a graven image ,

a terror - stricken child , a down - trodden people , ill - gotten money , a swollen face , a car - ven image , his broken promise .

1060 b / 带 un-前缀的过去分词 :

“ That is an unfounded rumour . ” “ No , it is an undoubted fact . ”

There are unnumbered (or untold) crimes in this small city .

The enemy suddenly attacked this unguarded city .

His unaffected (or unfeigned) manners make me love him .

A rich man has to hear unearned praise from time to time .

What is the most important thing for an underdeveloped country ?

That is an unheard - of (= extraordinary) case of murder .

He became the owner of undreamt-of wealth .

An unlooked-for (= unexpected) love letter came to me one morning .

An unwished-for (or unhoped-for) (= undesirable) accident happened to me .

Nobody can stand this uncalled-for (= unnecessary and improper) insult .

1061 c / 有特别意思的过去分词 :

有少数过去分词 , 在用作纯粹形容词时 , 意思发生一些变化 , 已不再是作动词时的意思 , 如动词 celebrate 表示 “ 庆祝 ” , 但形容词 celebrated 却表示 “ 著名的 ” :

This is a celebrated city .

This is the most noted (= famous) mountain in Japan .

He is a confirmed pickpocket (= pickpocket who is unlikely to be changed) .

He is a past - master (= one who has much experience) in deceit .

He will suffer for his ill - advised (= unwise) action .

I have never seen such a beautiful place in my born days .
(= in my lifetime) .

1062 d / 有主动意义的过去分词 :

大多数过去分词都有被动意思 , 例如 the forgotten hero 的意思是 the hero that has been forgotten , 又如 boiled water 的意思是 water that has been boiled。关于这一点可参阅 1040。但有少数过去分词却有主动意思 , 它们甚至起及物动词作用 , 可以有一个说不出的宾语。例如 a drunken sailor 意思是 a sailor who has drunk too much liquor。

A learned scholar (= A scholar who has learned very much) usually looks silly .

Experienced men (= Men who have experienced a lot) in this matter are not numerous .

A practised man (= A man who has often practised doing this) can do more than a greenhorn .

These cultivated people (= These people , who have cultivated

their minds) are my good friends .

The king loves his devoted subjects (= his subjects , who devotes themselves to him) .

A dissipated youth (=a youth who dissipates his time and money) will ruin himself .

Is a contented man (= a man who contents himself with what he has) always happy ?

The mistaken traveller has had a narrow escape .

d) 用在名词前的宾补动词的过去分词

1063 某些宾补动词的过去分词可以用在名词前面作定语。这是一类特殊的宾补动词，它们用在下面这类句子中：

They declared him to be a traitor .

They proved the statement to be false .

He professed himself to be a scientist .

下面句子包含了以这类动词作定语的过去分词：

This is the reputed scene (= the place which is reputed to be the scene) of robbery .

John is the supposed father (=the man who is supposed to be the father) of this child .

He is an avowed member (= a man who has avowed himself to be a member) of this party .

He is a professed scientist .

The confessed (or admitted) thief was sent to prison .

e) 用在名词前的不及物动词的过去分词

1064 有几十个不及物动词的过去分词可用在名词前作定语。它们多数表示一种变化，表示一种完成的动作，一种状态。它们已失去动词的特点，不再有被动意义，几乎成了形容词：

A retired official (= An official who has retired or is retired) lives next door .

He is a returned student (= a student who has returned from abroad) .

The decayed tooth should be pulled off .

A married man is more stable in character than a bachelor .

Thousands of people mourned for the deceased actress .

Both fading (现在分词表示未完成的动作) and faded (过去分词表示完成的动作) flowers were blown about in the strong wind .

Here and there were decaying or decayed leaves .

We see changing and changed modes of life every year and every day .

下面词组中各包含一个这样的过去分词：

abdicated emperor , absconded debtor , aged poet , arrived guest , assembled company , eloped pair , escaped prisoner , failed candidate , fallen angel , fled robber , perjured witness , travelled writer , departed glories , expired lease , foregone conclusion , mouldered

temple , risen sun , rotten fruit , shrunken clothes , sunken rocks ,
vanished civilization , withered leaves well - read and well-behaved
young man , plain - spoken politi - cian , free-spoken man , full -
grown girl , full - blown roses

3) 在名词后作定语的分词

1065 分词也可放在它们所修饰的名词后面。

a) 简单分词

1066 简单分词，不管是现在分词还是过去分词，放在名词后的情况是
比较少的，但在下面情况下可以放在名词后面：

1 / 如果它受到强调，感到像一个从句：

I want to know the person coming (= who comes or is coming) .

Who were the people participating (= who participated) ?

I went into the room adjoining—and saw something I can't tell .

No man living can do that .

I went to meet her at the place indicated (= which had been
indicated) .

They threw into prison all the persons suspected (= who were
suspected) .

The prisoner acquitted went home directly .

The matter being investigated (= that is being investigat
- ed) is a military secret .

The work being done (= that was being done) prevented him from
going .

下面词组中各包含一个这样的分词：

The money spent (= that has or had been spent) , the day appoined ,
the fact alleged , the reason given , the plan sug - gested , the party
interested , the guests invited .

2 / 如果它用来进行对比：

The visitors coming and going are so numerous .

He is a person revered and beloved .

In many countries , words spoken are different from words
written .

3 / 如果名词是一个不关紧要的词或被修饰的是一个代词：

Those remaining had to wait two days more .

Virtue is a thing unseen .

He is like one charmed .

All involved will be sent to jail .

The point controverted is insignificant .

4 / 如果名词前有一个形容词最高级或类似的形容词：

This is the most difficult job known .

He is the fattest man living .

The chief (or only , one) guest invited was me .

This is the only chance left .

We welcomed every client (or all clients) coming .

Every man arriving received a gift .

5 / 如果分词和其他词构成固定词组 (短语) :

I will stay here for the time being .

We danced for two days running .

They were at daggers drawn .

I know the bank concerned .

The votes cast represent their opinion .

There is 20 dollars remaining .

6 / 如果分词前加 so 或 thus :

Fish thus (or so) cooked is delicious .

Money thus (or so) earned is money stolen .

7 / 如果分词是某些特定的词 (这时分词也可放在名词前面) :

He is a poet born (or born poet) .

He is a novelist born and bred (or a born and bred novelist) .

An artist born and brought up (or a born and brought up artist) must be different from an ordinary man .

The terms above - mentioned (or - cited , - specified , - said , - named) should be carried out .

The person before- (or afore) mentioned died in 1950 .

The expected visitor came in the year following at the time appointed .

b) 分词短语

1067 1 / 现在分词短语 :

现在分词短语必须放在所修饰名词的后面 , 它相当于一个包含一般时或进行时谓语的从句 (完成分词不能这样用) :

It is a question puzzling (=that puzzles) many people .

(带有宾语) (比较 : It is a puzzling question .)

He was a businessman growing (=that grew) rich in recent years . (带有补语) (比较 : He is a growing boy .)

The gentleman talking (=who is talking) so loudly is my uncle . (带有副词) (比较 : Can you read her talking eyes ?)

The lady visiting (=who visited) us from time to time taught us French . (带有副词短语)

The girl coming to learn music is only six years old . (带有不定式作状语)

" Anybody getting up as soon as the cock crows will be rewarded , " said my father . (带有状语从句)

1068 2 / 过去分词短语 :

过去分词短语也必须放在所修饰名词的后面 , 它相当于一个包含被动谓语的定语从句 , 这个谓语可以是完成时态 , 也可以是一般时态。若分词是被动进行形式 (即由 being 开头的短语) , 这个谓语又可以是进行时态。

Dogs cruelly treated (= which have been cruelly treated) will

be vicious . (帶有副詞)

The woman abandoned (= who had been abandoned) by her husband called on me one day . (帶有副詞短語)

I drink water boiled (= which has been boiled) at least ten minutes .

Book called (= that are called) the comics may be harmful to children . (帶有補語)

Boys disciplined (= who are disciplined) when they are young will become good citizens . (帶有狀語從句)

I shall study the subject being studied (= which is being studied) by so many students . (帶有 being)

The text-book being used (= which is being used) in this school is " Let Us Learn French " .

c) 前面帶 as 的分詞

1069 連詞 as 可以用在分詞前面 :

The news as arriving (= The news as it arrives , Such news as arrives) today is not believable . (There may be different news) .

The results as proclaimed (= The results as they have been proclaimed , Such results as have been proclaimed) in today's newspapers are encouraging .

His ability as displayed during the last three months was inadequate .

I will tell you a story as told by my mother .

b . 作主语补语的分词

1070 现在分词和过去分词都可用在 is , was , grow , feel 这类系动词后作补语 (亦称表语) 。由于它们修饰解释主语 , 可以称作主语补语 (Subjective Complements) , 它们已失去动词的特点 , 后面不能跟宾语或补语 :

It is interesting (or charming , astonishing , exciting) . (这些表示情绪的现在分词这里用作纯粹的形容词 , 尽管看起来像谓语动词 , 却不是谓语动词。)

He was interested (or charmed , astonished , excited) . (这些表示情绪的过去分词 , 这里也是用作纯粹的形容词。)

She is very (or greatly) delighted (or disgusted , concerned , pleased) . (带有表示程度的副词)

He felt interested (or charmed , astonished , excited , annoyed , assured) .

He appears (or seems) pretending (or sparing , unthinking , grasping , forbidding) . (还有少数其他现在分词 , 也可用作纯粹的形容词 , 不是作谓语动词。)

It looks decayed (or withered , rotten , sunken) .

He remains unsatisfied ; the matter remains unsettled and untouched .

His illness continued unchanged .

He became excited (or discouraged) .

He got scolded .

He grew tired of life .

The situation proves encouraging .

注 : 在 He is studying , I was playing , They will be singing 以及 He is worshipped , I was attacked , They will be insulted 和 He has come , I have slept 中 , 斜体动词没有形容词特点 , 完全是动词 , 因此应当称作谓语动词 , 但有人仍把它们称作现在分词及过去分词。

c . 作宾语补语的分词

1071 分词也可用在 see , hear , set , make , keep 这类宾补动词后 , 作宾语的补语 , 修饰或谈及宾语的情况 , 它们称为宾语补语 (Objective Complements) 。 它们仍具有动词的特点 , 可以有宾语、补语及修饰语。另外 , 如果这些宾补动词表示感官作用 , 它们可以转变为及物动词 , 同时现在分词或过去分词可以变成 that 从句中的谓语动词 :

I saw (宾补动词) him (宾语) running (现在分词作宾语补语) off . (= I saw (及物动词) that he was running or ran (谓语动词) off .)

I found (宾补动词) those people (宾语) working (现在分词) hard . (= I found (及物动词) that those people were working or worked (谓语动词) hard .)

They heard her singing .

Did you notice that fellow stealing it ?

I saw the thief caught (过去分词) by policemen . (= I saw that the thief was caught (被动谓语动词) by policemen .)

Do you own yourself defeated ? = (Do you own that you have been defeated ?)

He declared himself satisfied .

I must see everything done properly .

I found everything changed .

如果宾补动词不表示感官作用 , 分词则不能变为 that 从句中的谓语动词 :

He left his children playing in the street .

The joke set all of them laughing . (不能说 The joke set that all of them laughed .)

They must keep the pot boiling .

I have kept you waiting a long time .

He sent the ball flying .

They caught him doing evil .

I can't make myself understood .

His actions make him respected , but not his words .

I have a house built on the mountain .

Please get the luggage carried into the room .

分词也可由 being 开始 :

He watched the pictures being hung on the wall .

I found myself being looked after by ten servants . (= I found that I was being looked after by ten servants .)

在某些宾补动词后 , 现在分词前可加连词 as :

He described the city as expressing the modern idea of speed .

He quoted Confucius as saying this .

He recorded the movement as beginning a new era .

He accepted me as having seen much of the world .

The results show their lessons as having been neglected .

He looked upon the accident as being caused by a grave mis

- understanding .

在个别动词的被动结构后也可跟带 as 的分词短语 :

The story was told as having happened to himself .

An old man was represented as standing among his sons .

I was given a dictionary as being the best students .

d . 作解释性修饰语的分词

1072 作为解释性修饰语 (Explanatory Modifiers), 它常常放在主语前面或后面, 由逗号把它和主语分开, 就像一个作状语的分词一样。但是作状语的分词可表示时间、原因、条件、让步等, 可改为一个状语从句, 并修饰谓语动词。作解释性修饰语的分词若说明伴随的情况时, 不能变为状语从句, 这时对主语的说明多于对谓语的说明。(参阅 1602, 1605, 1611, 1617 各节) 对下面两对句子加以比较, 就可看出这两种用法的差别:

Gasping and excited (作状语的分词), Richard aroused suspicion. (=Because he gasped and was excited, Richard aroused suspicion.)

Gasping and excited (作解释性修饰语的分词), Richard arrived home. (Approximately=Richard gasped and was excited when he arrived home ;或 Richard gasped and was excited ,and thus he arrived home.)

Not seen by anyone (作状语的分词), David stole the watch. (=As he was not seen by anyone, David stole the watch.)

Not seen by anyone (作解释性修饰语的分词), David ran past. (Approximately= David was not seen by anyone when he ran past ; 或 David was not seen by anyone, and thus he ran past.)

下面是一些包含有解释性修饰语的句子:

Shivering and greatly ashamed, Lilian lowered her head.

Starving, John wandered about.

Kneeling and shutting her eyes, Mary prayed to the goddess.

Bleeding and fainting, he waited for the ambulance.

Closing the door, he shut out the beggar.

Shouting aloud, he called to me.

Walking along the bank, the poet sang a sorrowful song.

Dressed in white, she suddenly appeared.

Supported by his sons, the old man came out.

这些分词放在主语后时最不强调, 放在句末时强调意义最明显:

Richard, gasping and excited, arrived home.

David, not seen by anyone, ran past.

Mary, kneeling and shutting her eyes, prayed to the goddess. (只有主语为名词时, 分词才可放在它后面, 如果是代词, 譬如说 he, 就不能放在这个位置。)

Richard arrived home, gasping and excited.

David ran past, not seen by anyone.

Mary prayed to the goddess, kneeling and shutting her eyes.

He went away, laughing.

They were at table, chatting merrily.

She sat on the window sill, looking out.

He begged his mother to pardon him, promising to be obedient.

to her .

She arrived home , carrying a basket of vegetables .

He arrived home , drenched with rain , dejected and ex-hausted .

The kitten watched it , fascinated .

Thirty were killed , including Lawrence and all his family .

但 : Thirty were killed , Lawrence included (or excluded , excepted) . (带有意义上的主语 Lawrence)

分词 being 在主语前时常常省略 , 在主语后时有时省略 , 在句末时偶尔也可省略 :

(Being) Weary and tired , the old man tilled the land .

The old man , (being) weary and tired , tilled the land .

The old man tilled the land . (being) weary and tired . (be - ing 后面可跟形容词)

(Being) An orphan at six , John had been brought up by his uncle .

John , (being) an orphan at six , had been brought up by his uncle . (being 后面可跟名词)

(Being) A man of few words , David has taught German ten years .

David , (being) a man of few words , has taught German ten years . (being 后面可跟名词)

(Being) Always in a bad humour , Mr . Browning has never dined with his relatives in his life .

Mr . Browning , always in a bad humour , has never dined with his relatives in his life . (being 后面可跟介词短语)

1073 在下面句子中 , sat , stood 等谓语动词作用接近系动词 , 分词 reading , talked , accompanied 等作用倒接近谓语动词 , 因此显得比 sat , stood 等词更为重要 :

He sat reading newspaper .

He stood talking with some friends .

He lay singing a sorrowful song .

John came running to me .

She went shopping (or swimming , boating , begging , exploring , looking for him) . (表示 went 的目的)

He sat surrounded by his twelve children .

He lay buried in the mountain .

He came accompanied by his wife .

e . 合成词中的分词

1074 分词短语很少放在名词前作定语，但如果它由两个词构成，又是一个特定的说法，它可变为合成词，放在名词前面修饰它。这种合成词多表示一个长时间的特点而不是一个暂时性的动作，在第一个词（可以是副词、形容词或名词）和分词之间有一个连字号（-）。它用在名词前时最多，但有时也可用在系动词或宾补动词后作补语。

合成分词可以有許多不同的构成法：

1075 1) 副词+不及物动词的现在分词：

A hard - working student(=student working hard)can never fail .

They tried to surround the fast - retreating army (=army retreating fast) .

We must endeavour to save our long - suffering nation (=nation having suffered long) .

Is he a far-seeing politician ?

Our troubles are never - ending .

She has an everlasting sorrow in her heart .

The tide is incoming .

下面是更多的例子：

a rapidly-rising name , a never-failing aid , a far - reach-ing plan , a frequently-occurring accident , a high - ranking official , the out - going tenant , the forth - coming book , the outlying villages , late-flowering plants , home-coming soldiers

1076 2) 形容词+系动词的现在分词：

A young - looking gentleman (=gentleman looking young) will be the husband of this old widow .

I love sweet - smelling food (=food smelling sweet) , but who does not ?

This high-sounding project may be useless .

She wears a bright-shining dress .

He is an easy-going but not a thorough-going business - man.

This product is cheap-looking , though it is good .

1077 3) 名词+及物动词的现在分词：

He is still a pleasure-seeking boy (=boy seeking plea-sure) .

It is a heart-rending story (=story rending one's heart) .

The story is soul-stirring .

This discovery is epoch-making .

Can anyone refuse the saint-seducing gold ?

He is a man-eating official .

I bought a paper-cutting machine .

We need an atom-smashing machine .

This act is self-sacrificing .

1078 4) 名词+不及物动词的现在分词：

He is a night-walking patient (=patient walking at night) .

We are water-living people (=people living on water) .

This is an autumn-flowering plant (=plant flowering in autumn) .

We are law-abiding people (=people abiding by the law) .

1079 5) 副词+及物动词的过去分词：

The above-mentioned examples (=examples mentioned above) are enough to prove this theory .

There is something mysterious behind the half-closed door (=door closed by half) .

Hand-shaking is a long-established custom (=custom having been established long) .

How can this badly-managed school (=school managed badly) teach children?

He never listens to this often-repeated advice .

This book is ill-written and worse-printed .

This text-book is widely-used .

Many people die because they are over-fed .

This strangely-formed spaceship will carry men to the moon .

Most people in this country are ill-clad , ill - fed and ill-housed .

1080 6) 形容词+及物动词的过去分词：

I don't like any ready-cooked food .

I bought ready-made shoes yesterday .

The chicken has been full-grown .

This new-made dress cost very little .

He is always clean-shaven .

This is an old-established word .

Is the child native-born or foreign-born?

He is a thorough - bred artisan .

Foreign - manufactured goods sell more than native-made products .

That is an American-equipped army .

French-built bridges are excellent .

He is an American-educated engineer .

1081 7) 分词+及物动词的过去分词：

The moss-covered rocks (=rocks covered by moss) are slippery .

It is a state-owned newspaper (=newspaper owned by the state) .

Many great scholars are self-taught .

Hand-made paper may be better than machine-made .

I love a moon-lit scene .

Can a god-forsaken sinner do anything?

f . 类似分词的词组

1) 概说

1082 在结束对形容词型分词的讨论以前,我们可以谈一谈与之相似的一些词组。这种词组大多用在名词、系动词及宾补动词后面。它们中间有些由介词加一个表示动作的名词构成,具有形容词及动词的特点,在语法作用上接近现在分词:

There is someone on the watch (=watching) . (用在名词后面)

It is a subject under study (=being studied) .

They are at work (=working) . (用在系动词后面)

We are all of a tremble (=trembling) .

I find our civilization on the decline (=declining) . (用在宾补动词后面)

The story set the table in a roar (=roaring with laughter) .

此外,带有前缀 a-的词有时也相当于一个现在分词,它主要用作补语:

What is amiss with our government?

He remains awake .

He is asleep .

其他这类词组还有下面这些,它们只是在形式上像分词,也可放几个不同位置:

a) 带词尾-ed 的名词:

He is a gifted artist .

The old man is spectacled .

I found the roofs of Buddhist temples pointed and covered with gold-leaf .

b) 形容+带-ed 词尾的名词:

She is a good-natured woman .

His opinion is one-sided .

I find John absent-minded .

c) 名词+带-ed 词尾的另一名词:

He is a chicken-hearted hero .

He seems muddle-headed .

She likes her skirt gold-laced .

2) 相当于现在分词的词组或单词

1083 a) 含主动意义的词组:

They are at study (or prayer, play, rest, work) (=studying, praying...) , don't disturb them .

The cattle are at feed .

Let us think of our men in the fight (=fighting) on the border .

His limbs are in a quiver, he is speechless .

She is all in a flutter .

He is always in expectation of something miraculous .

The government can do nothing with criminals in flight .

Everyone and everything in this city seems to be in motion .

I am in receipt of a large fortune .

He is in study (=at study) .

She was in the act of killing herself when her husband came .

He is busy (or engaged , employed) in selling cakes .

The criminal was all of a tremble (or all of a flutter) . (=trembling or fluttering) when he saw the policemen .

He is on the drink (=drinking) , don't discuss this matter with him .

In the room were about twenty persons on the gamble .

This woman is always on the laugh . No wonder she is so fat .

John is on the prowl (or the look-out) for some profit to make .

He set the table on (or in) a roar .

Somebody is on the watch . Be cautious .

She is on the whimper . It is no use to advise her .

We found the influence of Britain on the decline (or the wane , the decrease) in the middle of this century .

Humanity is always on the march . We have never stood still .

I hear the kettle on the boil .

A million workers are on strike .

We were on tour (or tramp) over Japan .

1084 b) 含被动意义的词组 :

His claim is still in dispute (=being disputed) .

A sumptuous feast has been in preparation (=being prepared) for three weeks .

The opera is in rehearsal .

Many beautiful products are on exhibition .

Nothing valuable is on sale in this street .

There is something on offer . It may be interesting .

A road is under construction (=being constructed) .

Fashion is the subject under discussion .

This question has been under study for a thousand years .

A bridge is in course of building (=being built) .

This evil practice is in process of abolition (=being abolished) . (比较 : The government is in process of abolishing this evil practice . 这里的 of 后面跟一个主动的动名词)

1085 c) 带前缀 a-的单词 :

He stood agape (=gaping) .

He was asleep (=sleeping) .

He remains awake .

He is ajar with the world .

He holds himself apart .

The ship's deck was awash .

They set the rumour afloat .

We saw all the village ablaze .

Something is amiss with my car .

The street is all aglow with lights .

All the world was astir when the spaceship started for the moon . 3) 接近过去分词的词组或单词

1086 a) 名词+ed :

Most of these peasants are unlettered (=uneducated) .

She is an aged (=old) woman .

There comes a petticoated woman .

John is an unskilled worker .

Can you believe his honeyed words ?

b) 形容词+名词+ed :

She is a middle-aged woman , but her heart is still young .

He was rather heavy-handed (=clumsy) when he handled chopsticks .

I bought a high-priced (=expensive) radio-set .

He is a cold-blooded animal .

The peasants are bare-footed .

He is ill-humoured , don't joke with him .

He is short-sighted .

He is sensitive to any criticism , he is thin-skinned .

He is ill-starred (=unlucky) . He cut his finger even when sharpening a pencil .

He is bad-tempered (=irritable) . Leave him alone . He is evil-minded . Nobody calls him friend .

c) 名词+名词+ed :

The headmaster is a silver-haired gentleman .

He wears a pair of horn-rimmed spectacles .

He is a bull-necked man .

That hook-nosed drunkard is my uncle .

He is a lion - hearted (=brave) king .

Mrs . Whitestone is an ox-eyed battleaxe .

This old man is a self - willed (=obstinate) politician .

3 . 作状语的分词 (副词型的分词)

a . 相当于状语从句的分词

1) 用法及意义

1087 作状语的分词在书面语中比口语中用得更多。在口语中它通常都用状语从句代替。不管现在分词还是过去分词，都可用作状语修饰动词，其作用相当于一个以 as, because, when, after, if, though 等连词引起的状语从句。它可以放在主语前面，主语后面或句末：

Seeing (=As or Because he saw) the policemen, the thief ran away.

Trusting (=As he trusted) as he did in his friend, Adam handed the money to him. (as he did 加强现在分词的语气)

(Being) Written (=As it was written) in haste, the book had many defects. (在过去分词前 being 通常省略)

(Being) Interested (=As he is interested) as they are in music, they plan to study it. (as they are 加强过去分词的语气)

(Being) (=As he is) A little boy, John knows very little of the world. (即使后面跟形容词或名词, being 有时也省略。)

(Being) An optimist, he drank and slept as usual.

(Being) Tired and sleepy, she went to bed.

Walking (=When I was walking) along, I met John.

Feeling (=When or As it feels) hungry, the animal hunts for food.

Watched (=When or As she was watched) by the passers-by, she lowered her head.

Having dressed (=After I had dressed) myself, I went to school.

Having been suppressed, the rebellion died down by degrees.

Sitting (=After he sat) down, he read papers.

Entering (=After I entered) the room, I took a rest.

Having written (=After I wrote) very important letters, I started for the post office.

Turning (=If you turn) to the right, you will see the church.

Speaking with him, you would think him a professor.

Left (=If it is left) alone, the situation will grow worse.

United we stand, divided we fall.

Working (=Though he worked) hard as he did, he was still unable to support the family.

Finding it useless to argue, I argue the more.

Having been married fifty years, they still love each other passionately.

1088 并不是都可以用从句代替分词短语的，有些表示伴随情况的分词短语很难用一个适当的从句代替。这时常可把句子改为一个并列句，来表示两个动作同时发生的情况（可参阅 1072）：

Carrying a basket, she went to the market. (大致相当于 She carried a basket and thus she went to the market.)

Escorted by a guard, Lee arrived home at night.

Dressed in black, he came up with a revolver.

2) 分词短语的位置

1089 副词型的分词短语的不同位置表示不同程度的强调,大体说来,放在主语后时最不强调,放在句末时最强调:

Having studied medicine eight years, John became a doctor.

(放在主语前)

John, having studied medicine eight years, became a doctor.

(放在主语后)

John became a doctor, having studied medicine eight years.

(放在句末)

另外还有一些其他考虑,例如分词短语不宜紧跟在代词主语后面,像下面句子那样:

He, hearing her voice, stood up.

此外,如分词短语表示的动作在谓语动词表示动作前一刻发生,则分词短语不能放在句末,因此下面这句是错的:

He stood up, hearing her voice. (错句)

应当说:

Hearing her voice, he stood up. (正确)

He stood up, having heard her voice. (正确,但分词受到强调。)

若分词表示的动作紧接着谓语所表示的动作之后发生,则宜放在句末:

He stood up, listening to her order. (正确)

Arriving at the airport, he received their warm welcome. (正确)

He arrived at the airport, receiving their warm welcome.

(也对,因为分词表示动作紧接谓语表示动作之后发生。但分词receiving所受的强调不如上句中的谓语re-ceived。)

The poet sauntered along the bank, singing a sorrowful song. (正确,因为两个动作同时进行。)

Singing a sorrowful song, the poet sauntered along the bank. (也对,但分词singing受到的强调较少,这里saun-tered受到更多强调。)

另外表示条件和让步的分词短语不能放在句末:

You will see the church, turning to the right. (错句,分词短语应放在前面。)

He's still unable to support the family, working hard as he does. (错句,分词短语应放在前面。)

b . 前面带连词的分词短语

1090 由分词短语表示的状态语，有时前面可以有一个连词，使意义更加明确：

While (or When) passing (=While it passed) through a for-est ,
the car suddenly stopped .

Before leaving (=Before I left) Hong Kong , I said good-bye to
all my friends .

After taking a walk , he took supper .

Though living near each other , we never met .

He spoke English very well as if having been in England .

We got married when studying at A . B . School .

Whether sleeping or walking , he thought of her .

If (being) caught (=If he was caught) , the thief would be
punished . (在过去分词前 being 常被省略)

The thief would escape again , though (being) caught .

A good book will become a bad one , unless (being) well read .

As if (being) discovered by someone , the thief began to run
away .

即使不在过去分词前，being 也总是被省略：

While (being) at home , he worked at his plan .

Unless (being) ill , he is always present in class .

Though (being) inside the palace , he lives a miserable life .

Though (being) a delicate child , he has to earn money for his
family .

The rat , as though (being) dead , suddenly ran away .

但要注意，分词短语意义上的主语应是句子的主语：

While picking flowers , a wasp stung the child . (错句，因为
picking 不是主语的动作。)

While picking flowers , the child was stung by a wasp . (正
确，因为 pick 是主语的动作。)

If caught , the police will punish the thief . (错句)

If caught , the thief will be punished by the police . (正确)

When ten years old , my parents died . (错句)

When ten years old , I lost my parents . (正确)

c . 错误联系的分词短语

1091 从上面例句可以看出，分词的意义上的主语（也就是动作的执行者）应是句子的主语，也就是说分词和谓语所表示的应同是主语的动作：

Walking (=When John walked) alone, John met Mary. (为同一个人的动作)

The car suddenly stopped, while passing (=While the car was passing) through a forest. (同一样东西的动作)

下面的句子都是错误的：

Having answered the first question, the second must be answered. (错句，意思混乱，分词短语表示的不可能是主语的动作。)

Arriving home, my family gave me a cordial welcome. (错句，意思混乱，arriving 不是 family 的动作。)

Being a movie fan, Charles Chaplain is his favourite. (错句，Charles chaplain 不是 movie fan。)

Standing on the mountain-top, the whole village could be seen. (错句，village 不在山顶。)

Though arriving late, the teacher did not reproach Lee. (错句)

If caught, the police will punish the thief. (错句)

Though considered a criminal, John's business continued to prosper. (错句)

以上各句应分别改为：

Having answered the first question, we must answer the second. (=After we have answered the first question, we must answer the second.)

Arriving home, I found my family giving me a cordial welcome. 或
When I arrived home, my family gave me a cordial welcome.

Being a movie fan, he likes Charles Chaplain very much.

Standing on the mountain-top, I could see the whole village.

Though Lee arrived late, the teacher did not reproach him.

If caught, the thief will be punished by the police.

或 If the thief is caught, the police will punish him.

Though John was considered a criminal, his business continued to prosper.

d . 带有意义上主语的分词状语

1092 如果分词的意义上的主语和谓语的主语不是同一个人，则在分词前应加上它意义上的主语，使意思明确。

1093 1) 带意义上主语的现在分词：

John arriving home (=When John arrived home) , Mary asked him to dine .

The sun having risen (=When the sun has risen) , we start work .

The weather being fine (=Because the weather was fine) , we went out for a walk .

The storm having damaged everything (=Because the storm had damaged everything) , many became home-less .

There being nothing to do (=Because there was nothing to do) , we played games .

We closed our store , there being no customers (=because there were no customers) .

Time (or Weather) permitting (=If time or weather permits) , I will see you soon .

All (or Other) things being equal (=If all [or other] things are equal) , ancient people are not much inferior to modern people in intelligence .

All being well (=If all is well) , we shall prosper next year .

Good willing (=If God is willing) , we shall stand up a-gain .

Advice failing (=If advice fails) , we have to use force .

John strode along , his children following (=and his children followed) close behind . (表示伴随情况)

I read a novel , my wife sewing (=and my wife sewed) by my side .

1094 2) 带意义上主语的被动分词：

The table being set (=When the table was set) , we began to dine .

The fish having been fried (=When or After the fish had been fried) , we cooked mutton .

So much money having been spent (=Because so much money has been spent) , we wish to see the result .

So much money having been spent (=Though so much money has been spent) , we have not seen any good result .

1095 3) 带意义上主语的过去分词：

All things (or Everything , all) (being) considered (=If all things are considered) , he has done his best .

There are 60 students , all (being) told .

This (having been) ended , we dispersed .

This (having been) done , we went to bed .

Given health and patience (=Health and patience being given) , one could do a great thing .

Given good luck (=Good luck being given) , a fool could be a sage .

Given the same situation , I can do nothing either .

在下面句子中 being 常常省略 :

The meal (being) over , we went for a drive .

His mouth (being) full of chocolate , he said I was a glut-ton .

Jesting (being) apart , do you really love her ?

He sat there ,his face(being)serious and his attention(being) steady .

He came in , a stick (being) in his hand , his eyes (being) aflame .

John climbed along , face (being) downward .

He tumbled down , head (being) foremost .

He came in , gun (being) in hand .

He leaned on the wall , pipe (being) in mouth .

He appeared , his hair (being) a wreck .

We decide to go on a pleasure trip , John (being) to provide a big car .

I now pay you half the sum , the other half (being) to be paid next month .

e . 在 with 后带意义上主语的状语分词

1096 带意义上主语的状语分词前面有时可加介词 with 或 with-out , 这时它们表示伴随的情况。加上 with 或 without 不影响句子的意思, 但影响它的结构 :

With night coming on , we came home .

She went to the market with her son following her .

She came without anyone accompanying her .

He passed by without anyone noticing him .

I read newspapers with the morning sun shining through the window .

I stood before her with my heart beating fast .

We sat face to face , without a single word said .

With his hand put into his pocket , he was ready to pay me .

He is now a beggar , with all his fortune squandered on a woman .

He ran away with his shoulder terribly wounded .

She came to me with eyes red (=with eyes being red) .

He felt lonesome , with her away .

With the moon up , we took a walk .

f . 错误联系但并未错用的状语分词

1097 1) 现在分词：

一些分词结构，尽管联系错误（即不是句子主语的动作），却已成为习惯用法，被认为是正确英语。它们大多数都是独立成分，这样用的几乎全都是现在分词：

a) 副词+Speaking：

Generally speaking (=If we are to speak generally) , he is honest .

Frankly (speaking) , I cannot cooperate with anyone .

This machine costs , roughly (speaking) , ten thousand dollars .

Biologically speaking (=Speaking from a biological viewpoint) , man is as selfish as any other animal .

b) 宾补动词的分词+名词（代词）+补语：

Supposing him willing , when can he start work ? (=If he is willing , etc .)

Supposing this to be true , he is certainly the murderer .

c) 及物动词的分词+名词（代词）+副词（或副词短语）：

Setting aside (or apart) (=Apart from) the question of capital , this business has many other problems .

Leaving (or Putting) ability on one side (= Apart from ability) , a man has to know many things .

Viewing it from this standpoint , his fault may be excused .

Taking all things together (or into consideration) (=On the whole) , the situation seems hopeless .

Everyone has to observe the rules , not excepting (= including) the principal .

（比较：We all have passed the exam , without excepting the worst students in class . ）

（比较：All must come , the smallest pupils excepted . ）

d) 不及物动词的分词+介词+名词：

Talking of (=With regard to , Now that we talk of) motorbikes , have you seen the latest type ?

Talking of John , this small man is wonderful .

Coming to (=Talking of) this question , I say no and yes .

Coming to details , thirty-five students have failed .

Getting back to our story , the princess was killed , but...

Judging from (=According to) his report , we have all failed .

Allowing for (=Considering) the minor deficiencies , the show is a success .

The journey usually takes a week , allowing for delays caused by bad weather .

Allowing for all accidents , there will be at least five thousand apples left .

According to Claudianus , death levels all things .

According to the newspaper , the enemy has been de-feated and driven back .

(但 : You must cut your dress according to (=in con-formity with) your cloth . 在这里 according to your cloth 不是独立成分 , 而是状语 , 修饰 cut。)

The crops failed owing to (=because of) the long drought . 这里 owing to the long drought 也不是独立成分 , 而是状语 , 修饰 failed。)

e) 分词+that+从句 :

有些分词可跟 that 引起的从句 , 分词和从句作用和连词引起的从句差不多 :

We started at nine , notwithstanding that (=though) (较正式) it was raining .

He was prudent notwithstanding that he was young .

He knows too much considering (or seeing) that (=since this child is only five years old .)

He is ungrateful considering that (or seeing that) he has received from us so much assistance .

Considering that (or Seeing that) all members had been present , we began the meeting .

Seeing that I was no more useful , I was fired .

Granting that (=Although) it is true , what follows ?

Granting that he has made a mistake , he is not to blame .

Admitting (or Assuming , Allowing) that he is drunk , that is no excuse .

Admitting (or Assuming , Allowing) that you have done your best , you should apologize to her .

Supposing that (=If) he is a cheat , our money is lost .

Supposing that there is no more money to spend , will you steal ?

f) 用作介词的分词 :

在下面句子中 , 分词后只跟宾语 (不跟副词、副词短语及从句) , 因此可以看作是介词。有些分词短语修饰动词 , 故不是独立成分 :

We had several disputes concerning (=about) social-ism .

He informed me concerning his family .

He knows nothing regarding this case .

Regarding his studies , what would you suggest ?

I know something respecting that man .

Respecting his conduct , I have nothing to say .

He gave me a report touching the political situation .

Touching religion , I have some doubts .

You have done well considering (= on account of) your age . (=Although you have not done very well , yet you really have , just because you are still young .)

You have not done well considering your age . (=Although you

have done well , yet you really have not , because you are advanced in years .)

Considering the low price , the car is worth buying .

Considering the high price , the car is not worth buying although it is good .

There are fifteen students counting me (or including me , me included) .

Barring (=Except for) accidents , we shall arrive at two .

Bating (=except for) (陈旧用法) this point , I agree with you .

Wanting (=Without) (书面语) endurance , one might fail in his career .

Wanting water , plants cannot live long .

Failing (=Without) John , we can do nothing .

Failing wine , I will drink water .

Failing prompt payment , the goods must be returned .

It is one month wanting (=minus) two days .

He died following (=after) an attack of cholera .

The law was effective beginning (=on and after) May 1 .

We started notwithstanding (=in spite of) (书面语) the rain .

She went to the office notwithstanding her illness .

He was held in custody pending (=before the conclusion of , until) (书面语) trial .

We have to wait pending the settlement .

The war was suspended pending the negotiations .

Students must not consult dictionaries pending the examination .

Saving your presence (=Not meaning to offend you) (陈旧的道歉方式) , your son is naughty .

1098 2) 过去分词 :

只有少数过去分词可以用作独立结构 :

Forty students of this class have passed this year , compared (or comparing , as compared) with thirty-two last year .

Compared with most of the girls nowadays , Mary is still a good girl .

Granted (=Granting) that you are in the right , you should not get angry .

Provided that (=On condition that) he will keep silent , I will let this matter alone .

Provided that he acknowledges his fault , I will pardon him .

Given (=With) prudence and patience , anybody can achieve something .

I can persuade him , given enough time and money .

下面句子中的分词前面可以有连词 :

Insert a preposition where needed (=Where it is needed) .

Don't make it , unless required (=unless it is required) .

Let me know when finished (=when it is finished) . You may omit the word or not , as required .

比较 : If possible , if any , when necessary , where necessary , where possible Please come here at 6 a . m . if possible .

There is little , if any , coffee left .

They will use force , when necessary .

Shorten this long sentence where possible .

D . 不定式

1 . 概说

a . 不定式的形式和用法

1099 不定式的形式如下：

	主动	被动
一般式	to write	to be written
完成式	to have written	to have been written
进行式	to be writing	

1100 不定式除了是动词，还可以同时用作：

1) 名词（主语，宾语等）：

To err(作主语)is human ,to forgive divine .We want to rest . (作宾语)

2) 副词（状语）：

We eat to live (作状语，修饰 eat .) , but not live to eat .

I have come to hand you a letter .

We spend money to have a good time , but not to suffer .

3) 形容词（定语）

He is the boy to marry (作定语，修饰名词 boy。) Lilian .

Is this the way to treat your wife ?

4) 独立结构：

To speak the truth , there is some distance between her and me .

Sad to say , we have done everything to save him , but...

还可用在感叹句中：

O to see my parents again !

You fool ! To think she will marry you !

b. 不定式的动词特点

1101 和动名词及分词一样，不定式有动词的特点。

1) 不定式可表示主动或被动：

He wants to be respected (被动式)，but hates to respect (主动式) others.

I tried to defeat (主动式) him, but only to be defeated (被动式) .

1102 2) 不定式可表示时间：

不定式表示的时间通常和同句谓语动词表示的时间相同：

He seems (or appears, is said, is believed) (一般时间) to study (一般时间) English. (=It seems that he studies English.)

He seems (现在时间) to be studying (现在时间) English. (=It seems that he is studying English.)

He seemed (or appeared, was said, was believed) (过去时间) to study (过去时间) English. (=It seemed that he studied English.)

He seemed (过去时间) to be studying (过去时间) English. (=It seemed that he was studying English.)

He will try (将来时间) to study (将来时间) English.

I shall do (将来时间) something to assist (将来时间) him.

用不定式的完成形式表示的时间比同句谓语动词表示的时间早：

He seems (现在时间) to have studied (过去时间) English. (=It seems that he has studied or studied English.)

Spaniards are said (现在时间) to have ruled (过去时间) the Philippines. (=It is said that Spaniards have ruled or ruled the Philippines.)

He seemed (过去时间) to have studied (过去的过去) English. (=It seemed that he had studied English.)

如果谓语动词表示希望、愿望、决定等，不定式表示的时间比同句谓语动词表示的时间晚一些：

He hopes (or means, wants, wishes, expects, is inclined to, is anxious to, would like) to study (比现刻晚的时间，将来时间) English. (=He hopes that he will study English.)

He wishes (现在时间) to be studying (即将到来的时间) English.

He hoped (过去时间) to study (比这个过去时间晚的时间) English. (=He hoped that he would study English.)

He resolved (or was impatient) (过去时间) to be studying (这段过去之后紧跟着到来的时间) English.

过去时谓语动词后的不定式完成形式表示过去未实现的愿望：

He hoped (or wished, intended) to have studied English. (=He hoped to study it, but he did not succeed.)

比较下面句子中不定式和谓语动词表示的时间：

I "am" sorry to have lost your key.

I "remember" to have seen her.

He "was" reported to have died .

I don't "want" to see anyone .

You "had better" to be leaving .

He "is" prudent enough to do so .

To have studied English at least six years "is" the qualification for this position .

He "was impatient" to have finished the job .

1103 3) 不定式后可跟宾语或补语, 或什么都不跟:

He wants to organize a company . (一个宾语)

It is something to know astronomy .

He wants to teach you a lesson . (两个宾语)

He asked his wife to fry him some fish .

He wants to keep everything clean . (宾语及补语)

We are trying to make our life longer .

He wants to be a saint . (补语)

To be a father is not easy .

Women like to argue and men like to fight . (不跟宾语或补语)

Women like to talk , but not to think .

1104 4) 不定式可以由一个副词、副词短语或状语从句修饰:

He refused to wait here . (副词)

He does not want to work hard .

He decides to stay for a few days . (副词短语)

Is it pleasant for birds to fly from tree to tree ?

It is comfortable to sleep when it is raining . (状语从句)

To stay where you are is sometimes the best way to meet an emergency .

1105 5) 不定式可以有意义上的主语:

不定式意义上的主语由介词 for 引出:

To learn music is difficult . (意义上的主语未说出, 不知是谁学音乐。)

For me to learn music is difficult . (指出是我学)

His purpose is to learn music . (可能是他学)

His purpose is for his son to learn music . (他的儿子学音乐)

There is nothing to eat . (不知给谁吃)

There is nothing for you to eat . (给你吃)

He saves his money to spend on books . (可能是他自己花)

He saves his money for his brother to spend on books . (他的弟弟花)

The book is difficult to understand .

The book is difficult for children to understand .

The pig is old enough to kill .

The pig is old enough for the butcher to kill .

1106 当不定式跟有 3)、4)、5) 所提到的成分时, 称为不定式短语 (Infinitive Phrases)。如果不跟什么就叫作简单不定式。不定式短

语有很强的动词特点，而简单不定式的动词特点不多，甚至没有。

1107 6) 不定式通常（但不一定所有时候）都表示一种潜在可能性。和动名词、分词不同，不定式可能包含有“能够”、“可能”、“一定”、“应当”、“愿意”等概念：

I will tell you how to make (=we can make) sausage .

The book is interesting enough to attract (=so interesting that it can attract) children .

He has not a single cent to spend (=that he may spend) .

I shall be happy to see (=if I may see) my family again .

This is the duty for you to do (=which you must do) .

They all are your brothers and are to be treated (=must be treated) as such .

This is a great novel for all of us to read (=which all of us should read) .

My advice is for her to go (=that she should go) to college .

A man to teach (=who will teach) us English will come next Friday .

但并不是任何不定式都可以改为包含助动词的从句的：

I like her to wear a short skirt .

To err is human .

I want to save some money .

2. 起名词作用的不定式（名词不定式）

1108 不定式可以起名词的作用，它可以用作主语、宾语、补语或同位语。在很多情况下，它都可以动名词代替，除非它前面有 what ,how ,when 这类疑问句，因为动名词前是不能有这类词的。

a. 不定式作句子的主语

1109 不定式可以用作句子的主语：

To know oneself is difficult .

To tell a lie is not always easy .

To love and to be loved is the greatest happiness one can seek .

Never to have made any mistake is impossible .

To build a house requires a lot of money .

Never to promise becomes a gentleman .

To gamble is to commit suicide . (两个动作实际上是一回事)

To do everything is to do nothing .

For one to know everything is difficult . (前面可加意义上的主语)

For me to study music requires a lot of effort .

For his brother John to go to sea seems natural .

How to get rid of rats and flies is a big problem . (不定式前带有疑问词)

What to do and where to go is unknown to most of us .

To be writing and reading is a bore . (不定式的进行式表示动作的反复)

There is no greater shame than for you to forget her . (不定式用在比较从句中)

Nothing is so easy as for one to tell lies .

1110 在用作主语时，不定式常常被放到句尾，前面用 it 代替它：

It is difficult to know oneself .

It is not always easy to tell a lie .

It won't hurt you to stay here a day or two .

It requires a lot of money to build a house .

It is impossible for one to know everything . (带有意义上的主语)

It is unknown to us what to do and where to go . (带有一个疑问词)

What would it be best to do? and which is it right to select?

A rogue more cunning than Alan ,it would be hard to imagine . (不定式的宾语如果比较长，可移到句子前部来。)

That he speaks English perfectly , it is easy to see .

It is very kind of you to come . (有时 of 可用来代替 for)

It would be wiser of us to act right now .

It is extremely cruel of John to kill animals .

How careless (it is) of you to break the glass !

(It is) So kind of you to help me !

1111 当一个及物动词的不定式和它的宾语一起用作句子的主语时，这个不定式可以移到句尾，而把不定式的宾语变为句子的主语，它同时也是不定式意义上的宾语 (可参阅 1130)：

To write the letter took him a long time . —The letter took him a long time to write .

To build the bridge requires five million dollars . —The bridge requires five million dollars to build .

To make this dress cost ten dollars . —This dress costs ten dollars to make .

To read newspapers is interesting . — Newspapers are interesting to read .

To teach these children are very hard . —These children are very hard to teach .

To land on the moon is expensive . —The moon is expensive to land on .

1112 用作主语时，不定式在许多情况下都可以动名词代替：

Building (or To build) a house requires a lot of money .

Telling (or To tell) lies is not always easy .

Maintaining (or To maintain) a business is harder than starting (or to start) it .

但在下面类型句子中，不定式似乎比动名词要更普通些：

To walk ten miles at a stretch was not an easy job . (指具体某次的情况)

To read aimlessly is a waste of time . (这话由一个这样做过的人说出)

To respect others is to be respected . (=If you respect others , you will be respected by others .) (表示条件)

To set up a factory requires much time and money . (=If you set up a factory , you will have to spend much time and money .)

To love your neighbours is to be loved by them .

No to speak much is the best way to avoid trouble . (带有否定词)

Never to offend anyone is my principle .

It is against nature to remain single . (用 it 作先行主语)

It shocked me to see the bloody spectacle .

在下面类型句子中，用动名词作主语似比用不定式作主语更普通：

Walking ten miles at a stretch is not an easy job . (指一般情况或习惯动作)

Reading aimlessly is a waste of time .

Losing her fortune deprived her of her reason . (=As she lost her fortune , she lost her reason .) (表示原因)

Paying off the debt freed him from all worry . (=As he had paid off the debt , he was free from all worry .)

No smoking is allowed . (有一形容词修饰)

This dancing is crazy .

That silly debating came to nothing .

Any reading increases our knowledge .

It is useless advising a drunkard . (帶有 It is useless 或类似意义的词)

It is (of) no (or little) use (or good) playing all day .

比较 : There is no (or little) use (or good) (in) loitering the hours away .

但 :

Is it of any use (or worth while) to spend so much ? (疑问句)

Falling in love is easier than to keep in love . (使句子多样化 , 可两者同时用。)

To read books is good , but observing nature is better .

b. 不定式作及物动词的宾语

1113 不定式可用作及物动词的宾语。适合用不定式作宾语的动词大约有 90 个：

He wishes to go there .

John decided to marry her .

I cannot afford to get sick .

She promised to bring her book to me .

They sought to kill their enemy .

He needed to be admired . (被动不定式)

The child wants to be caressed .

He wished to have learned English . (But he did not succeed .)

I intended to have married Helen . (But I did not marry her .)

They wished to have organized a party . (But they did not succeed .)

We planned for him to come . (有些动词可跟有带意义上主语的不定式)

We arranged for them to strike against bad working conditions .

The red light means for the cars to stop .

We resolved to be going . (不定式的进行式可表示即将发生的动作)

He wants to be dressing .

I long to be seeing her .

I shall (or will) hope (or expect) (=hope or expect) to see him .

1114 上面所提的动词后不能跟动名词作宾语，而另一些动词，大约在 50 左右，既可以不定式又可以动名词作宾语：

I proposed to abolish (or abolishing) the rules .

We omitted to do (or doing) it .

He neglected to pay (or paying) the fee .

有个别动词后可跟不定式或动名词，但意义不同，在下面句子中 to think 为状语，表示目的，而 thinking 则作宾语：

You must stop to think (or thinking) .

c . “ 疑问词+不定式 ” 作及物动词的宾语

1115 有些及物动词可以用不定式作宾语，但不定式需加一个疑问词。这种带疑问词的不定式可以看作是疑问词引起的从句的简短形式，能这样用的及物动词约有 70 个：

I cannot tell what to do (=tell what I must do) .

I wonder where to buy it (=wonder where I can buy it) .

Can you explain how to make charcoal (=explain how we can make charcoal) ?

Consider whom to apply to (=consider whom we must apply to) .

I don't know whether to laugh or to get angry (=know whether I should laugh or get angry) .

d . “ 疑问词+不定式 ” 作双宾动词的间接宾语

1116 有些双宾动词可以用不定式作它们的间接宾语，但不定式前必须加一个疑问词。这种带疑问词的不定式，可以看作是由疑问词引起的从句的简短形式，可以这样用的双宾动词约有 10 个：

He advised me what to do (=What I must do .) .

I told him where to learn music (=Where he can learn music) .

He teaches the students how to make friends .

He shows me how to go to England .

e . 不定式作主语补语

1117 不定式可以用在系动词，特别是动词 be 后，作补语，说明主语指什么：

My purpose is to help him (=is that I may help him .)

His plan was to set up a big company .

The policy of our country is to make friends with all peoples .

His problem is where to find a land of peace .

Our questions are , always , what to buy and how to sell .

The proposal is for every student to work eight hours a day
(=is that every student should work , etc .) .

My hope is for all members to come together once a year .

That is to say (=means) you made a mistake but didn't admit it .

This (=This letter) is to certify Mr . John Lin is a salesman of our firm .

This matter is for you to consider . (句子主语 matter 也是不定式 consider 的意义上的宾语)

These apples are for the children to eat .

To live(or Living)is(=means)to do(or doing)something worth while . (说明意义)

To become a slave is to give up one's freedom .

To see her is to love her . (If one sees her , one will love her .) (表示条件及结果)

To gamble is to commit suicide , but not to get rich .

To criticize others is to make enemies .

To read is to travel in distant countries and ancient lands .

What we must do is (to) fight to the last . (在美国英语中 , 如果主语从句中包含主要动词 do , 则不定式前的 to 常常省略。)

All(or The only thing)she did(or must do)was(to)keep silent .

The least you can do is (to) pardon him just this once .

(To) Eat and drink must be what we all like to do . (语序颠倒)

f . 不定式作宾补动词的宾语

1118 不定式可用作宾补动词的宾语，这时不定式先由 it 代替，同时移到句尾（或从句末尾）。这种不定式通常可以变为一个由 that 引起的从句：

I thought it good to wait (=that I should wait) there .

She judges it useless to be quarrelling (=that any one should be quarrelling) with him .

I make it a rule to get up at five .

He believed it his duty to tell you the secret .

I found it necessary to keep silent about this .

He regards it as of great importance for his children to be strictly trained . (加上意义上的主语)

I supposed it a great pity for them to oppose my plan .

(比较：I thought it good waiting there . I judged it useless quarrelling with him .)

(比较：It is considered of little use for Asians to study art .

It is thought a pity to misunderstand freedom .)

g . 不定式作名词的同位语

1119 不定式可以用作名词的同位语：

I have only one aim in life—to eat and to sleep .

His plan , to go abroad after his marriage , has been approved by his father .

My father gave me three choices : to go to college , to do business , to get married .

He has achieved his aim to swim across the river .

All agreed to his proposal to rebuild the temple .

(比较 : I have only one aim in life—eating and sleeping .)

h. 不定式作介词的宾语

1120 动名词可作介词的宾语，不定式却不能，但在介词 about, save, except, but, than 或 instead of 后，间或可用不定式作宾语：

He is about to (=will soon) leave the city.

Uncle is about to die.

We saw no alternative except (or but, save) to fight.

He never came except to borrow.

Nothing remains but to wait and see.

What is left but for me to kill him or for him to kill me?

(在 but 和不定式之间有不定式意义上的主语)

I see no solution except for all of us to wait and see.

He did nothing but eat, drink and be merry. (在 do 后, to 可以省略。)

He can't (do anything) but laugh. (=He cannot choose but laugh.)

What has he done, but (or except, save) loiter around all day?

He has nothing to do but grumble and grumble.

She died rather than be insulted. (在 rather than 后 to 一般省略)

She would (or had) rather die than marry him.

She could not do better than die, could not do otherwise than die.

Rather than marry him, she would rather die.

He is taught rather to read than to write. (在并列不定式前 to 保留时比省略时多)

He prefers to stand firm rather than (to) surrender.

Is to give better than (to) take?

He advises me to wait a few minutes rather than (to) go out in the rain.

He knows better than to say (=is too wise to say) any silly thing. (在 know better than 后必须加 to)

He knows better than to criticize anyone.

He has a better heart than to abandon (=has a good heart and will not abandon) his wife. (在比较级+名词+than 后必须加 to)

He has more prudence than to spend much money.

比较: He has been standing firm rather than surrendering. He prefers remaining single rather than having a family.

I told him to work instead of to study.

My purpose is to advise him instead of to cheat him.

Don't worry. I have come to see you instead of to borrow anything.

She is a woman to be loved, instead of to be understood.

They advised him to fool around, instead of to do something serious.

They let him fool around instead of do something serious .

(to 有时省略, 前面不定式不带 to 时, 后面的也不带 to。)

I make my students ask questions instead of accept all I say .

比较 : He gives his mind to strengthening his own power instead of serving his country .

如不定式前带有疑问词, 则可在适当介词后作宾语, 这时不能用动名词作介词宾语, 因为动名词前不能加疑问词 :

He paid much attention to how to pronounce this word .

He doesn't seem interested in what to study in college .

He is curious about where to discover an oil field .

He is not sure of whom to apply to .

3 . 作状语的不定式

1121 作状语的不定式可以用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子。它不能由分词代替, 因为那样会使意思发生变化, 甚至变得无法理解。

a . 修饰动词的不定式

1122 1) 作状语的不定式可表示目的：

He came to see me (=so that he might see me) .

He studied hard to pass the exam .

I would give much to learn it .

He worked hard in order (or so as) to pass the exam . (in order 或 so as 可加强表示目的作用)

He sang on purpose (or in an attempt , with a view) to show off .

He raised his hand as if (or as though) to (=as if he would) beat me (=to pretend to beat me) .

To understand the book better , he read it again . (不定式可以放在句首)

I stood aside for her to enter . (带有意义上的主语)

He blew the whistle for the car to stop .

In order for his son to study abroad , he has been very thifty for ten years .

Some must die for others to live .

I bought flowers (bought 的宾语 , 同时也是 to give 的意义上的宾语。) to give Eva .

I picked up some photos to show friends .

I held the letter for her to read .

To master music , a teacher is required . (错句 , 因为不定式意义上的主语不明确 , 应改为 To master music , you require a teacher . 或 If you wish to master music , a teacher is required . 参阅 1091。)

To win the war , all information must be amassed . (也是错的 , 应改为 To win the war . we must amass all information . 或 All information must be amassed , so that we may win the war .)

Come and take it . (and take 代替 to take , 语气更强 , 在美国英语中 and 可以省略。)

Could you come (and) be my friend? She won't come (and) join us.

Go (and) play tennis. Let's go (and) have fun.

Try (and) do your best.

1123 2) 作状语的不定式可表示未料想到的后果：

He escaped the sword only to perish by famine (=but as a result he perished by famine). (常带 only 这个词 , 表明这是结果不是目的。)

He worked hard only to fail.

He earned millions of dollars only for his son to squander it. (带有意义上的主语)

He tried to kill himself only to be saved.

He left his native country never to return. (never 这个否定词可表示没实现预期的目的)

We parted never to see each other.

He lived to see(=until he saw)the second world war.

(当不定式明显表示后果时,勿需加 only 这个词。)

He awoke to find himself caught by policemen.

He rose to be principal of the school.

He has done much for the community to be made the president(=so that he is made the president).

He grew up to be a philosopher.

1124 3) 作状语的不定式表示条件。

在 不定式 这样用时, 谓语中常包含 will, shall, should, would, must, can 或 could 这样的助动词:

One will get into trouble to attempt(=if one should attempt) such a business.

To say such a clever thing, he can't be a fool.

You will do well to consider(=if you consider)it.

To see her, you wouldn't believe she is already forty.

I should have been very pleased to have been present.

(But I was not present.) (虚拟语气)

The servant would not have quitted to have been better treated.

I should be happy to be of service to you.

You will be happy for your daughter to be a lawyer.

(带有意义上的主语)

You will get into trouble for your children to be fooling around.

To be really useful, a book must be read several times.

To study music, one must start at six.

I couldn't insult myself to save(=though I could save) my life.

1125 4) 作状语的不定式可以表示产生某种感情的原因:

He was glad (or proud, angry, ashamed, excited, interested, disappointed) to learn the news(=as he learned the news).

(这样的不定式通常用在表示某种感情的形容词、动词或名词后)

He is sorry(or sad, grieved)for you to have been cheated. (带有意义上的主语)

He is amazed(or astonished, shocked)for Mary to receive that letter from a stranger.

He is happy for his daughter to marry a rich man.

He laughed to hear my story (=as he heard my story).

I regret to have done such a silly thing.

He blushed to own it.

He enjoyed satisfaction to see the result.

He felt shame for his son to have stolen something.

He fell into despair to learn of her death.

She burst into tears to hear the news.

1126 5) 作状语的不定式还可用来表示一个说话人所评说的事实(评语可以用陈述句、疑问句或感叹句的形式做出):

She is cruel (说话人的评语 , 以陈述句形式说出) to abandon her beautiful girl (被评说的事实) .

You are very kind (说话人的评语) to say so (被评说的事实) .

He is ungrateful to abandon his old parents.

You are heartless not to care for your children.

John is a coward to escape his duty.

You must have offended her for her to speak like that.

(带意义上的主语)

He is a brave boy to act immediately.

Lee is an ungrateful son to disappoint his parents so deeply.

She has ruined herself to marry such a man.

What has he done (说话人的评语 , 以问句的形式说出) to deserve this punishment (=that he should deserve this punishment). (被评说的事实)

(He has done nothing, so he does not deserve this punishment.)

Where have you been to be so happy (=that you should be so happy)? (Where have you been? Why are you so happy?)

How can you catch the train to start so late?

Are you not stupid to trust such a hoodlum?

Am I ungrateful to do everything I can for you?

Are you crazy to spend so much in a night?

Am I a cow to be fed with grass?

Is he a god to be worshipped in such a crazy manner?

What a fool he is (说话人的评语 , 以感叹句形式说出) to spend all the money he has (=that he should spend, etc.)!

What a bad boy (you are) to be so rude!

Fool! To fall in love with every girl he meets!

How ridiculous of him to say that!

b . 修饰形容词的不定式

1127 不定式只能修饰某类形容词，而且有其独特的修饰方式。

1128 1) 系动词+表示企图形容词(相当于一个及物动词)+不定式：

We were impatient(=eagerly wished) to start.

He is all wild to buy a bicycle.

He is anxious (or eager)(=longs)to learn medicine.

He seems willing(or ready) to help anyone.

He is quick to see another's fault.

He is inclined(or disposed)to loiter around.

We were reluctant(=did not want) to stay here any more.

He remains shy to speak with girls. He was afraid(=feared) to go alone at night. He is slow to sympathize.

He is long to make up his mind.

He seems in no hurry to go.

We were anxious for you to try again. (带有意义上的主语)

He is pleased for his friends to come over.

He is in no hurry for us to go. It is still early. We were anxious(or eager, impatient) to be doing something. (进行式表示即将发生的情况)

1129 2) 系动词+表示潜在可能的形容词+不定式(这种结构相当于一个带助动词的谓语，下面括号中的解释只是大致情况)：

He is likely to(=will probably)win. It is likely to rain. He is sure to(=will surely)fail.

He is certain to come at seven.

He is liable(or prone, apt)to lose his temper. A great war is expected to break out.

He is qualified to(=can) be a professor.

He is unfit to(=cannot)work.

He is able to(=can)read German and Russian books. He is worthy to be our leader.

I am allowed to(=may)go wherever I like.

He is permitted to(=may)do any job.

You are free to(=may)use my library.

You are welcome to(=may) live with us.

This is sufficient to (may very well)convince him. I am obliged to(=must)do it.

The plane is due to (should) arrive at eleven.

1130 3) 主语+ be+形容词+及物动词的不定式(其意义上的宾语是句子主语)，等于：it+be+形容词+不定式+变为宾语的主语。

The water (句子主语，同时又是不定式 to drink 的意义上的宾语) is good to drink. (=To drink the water is good.=It is good to drink the water.)

Your question is impossible to answer.(=To answer your

question is impossible.)

This large desk seems troublesome to move to another place.

He is hard to work with (相当于及物动词) . (=It is hard to work with him.) (不及物动词+介词=及物动词短语)

This man is dangerous to depend upon.

He seems troublesome to make friends with (及物动词短语) .

This is good water to drink(=water good to drink).

That is a hard question to answer(=a question hard to answer).

The child is hard for his mother to take care of. (带意义上的主语) .

These are safe paths for strangers to drive their cars along.

c . 修饰副词的不定式

1131 副词 too , enough 和 so...as 中的 so , 可以由不定式修饰 :

He seems too old to work. (=He seems so old that he cannot work.)

He is too excited to speak. (=He is so excited that he cannot speak.)

The boat is too clumsy to sail fast.

She is too fat not to lag behind. (=She is so fat that she is sure to lag behind.)

He looks too funny not to attract notice.

The impression remains too deep to be forgotten (被动式) .

He is too young to be trusted.

The child (不定式 teach 的意义上的宾语) is too wild to teach.

That is too painful to forget.

The room is too small for ten boys (意义上的主语) to sleep in.

The old man is too serious for us to speak to.

He is too young to be criticizing anybody.

He seems young enough (or sufficiently young) to study.

(=He seems so young that he can study.)

This rope is strong enough to last long.

The book is good enough for me to read.

This weather is pleasant enough to spend our Sunday in.

(比较 : He cannot be too old to study. 或 He is never too old to study. =He is not too old; he can study yet.)

He is strong enough to lift this iron bar. (He " can lift " it.)
(正确)

He is so strong as to lift this iron bar. (=He is so strong that he " lifts " this iron bar.) (错句)

He was so kind as to lend me the money. (=He was so kind that he lent me the money. =He is such a kindhearted person as to lend me the money.)

The dog was so tired as to sleep all day.

He is so cruel as to kill his wife. (=He is such a cruel man as to kill his wife.)

1132 注意 : “ be+形容词+不定式 ” 的结构很容易用错 :

It is impossible to convince him. (正确—to convince him 为主语 , 由 it 代表。)

That is impossible to convince him. (错句—that 不能代表后面的不定式)

I am impossible to convince him. (错句—impossible 不能用来指人)

I am unable to convince him. (正确)

I am easy to catch cold. (错句—easy 不能用来指人)

I am liable to catch cold. (正确)

I am probable to catch cold. (错句)

I am likely to catch cold. (正确)

I am impossible to convince him. (错句)

It is impossible for me to convince him. (正确)

I find it impossible to convince him. (正确)

I am necessary(or convenient,easy,urgent,hard,difficult,troublesome)to convince him. (错句)

It is necessary(or urgent,etc.) for me to convince him. (正确)

I find it necessary(or urgent,etc.) to convince him. (正确)

The bridge is dangerous to pass it. (错句) The bridge is dangerous to pass. (正确)

The scene is sad to see it. (错句)

The scene is sad to see. (正确)

I am lazy to advise him. (错句)

I am too lazy to advise him. (正确)

She is enthusiastic to advise him. (错句)

She is enthusiastic enough to advise him. (正确)

He is weak to walk farther. (错句)

He is too weak to walk farther. (正确)

The dog is clever to understand you. (错句)

The dog is clever enough to understand you. (正确)

The road is long to reach your village. (错句)

The road is long enough to reach your village. (正确)

The bag is heavy for me to carry. (错句)

The bag is too heavy for me to carry. (正确)

He was quiet to speak. (错句)

He spoke quietly. (正确)

He was easy to do so. (错句)

He found it easy to do so. (正确)

He was fast to read. (错句)

He read fast. (正确)

The storm was violent to roar. (错句)

The storm roared violently. (正确)

He is hard to work. (错句)

He works hard. (正确)

另外, 1128—1131 中的形容词都放在系动词后, 它们也可紧跟在名词后面:

The man impatient(=eagerly wishing)to start began to shout.

My youngest son,anxious(=longing)to learn English , entered an English school.

Mary,afraid to go alone at night , had Lillian for her companion.

The horse likely(=which will probably)to win may lose at the last minute.

Men unfit(=who cannot)to work are highly paid and men able(=who can)to work are jobless.

Don't ask a question impossible to answer(=which is impossible to answer).

That is not a path safe for strangers to drive along.

Can there be any man too old to study(=who is so old that he cannot study)?

Find a man strong enough to break open this box.

A man so cruel as to kill his wife and children may love his dog.

4 . 起形容词作用的不定式

1133 不定式可以起形容词的作用，用来修饰名词。和形容词一样，它可以用在 a . 名词前面，b . 名词后面，c . 系动词后面及 d . 宾补动词后面。

a . 用在名词前作定语的不定式

1134 除了构成合成形容词，不定式从不用在名词前面作定语：

His never-to-be-executed plan is well-known.

A soon-to-be-built bridge will cross this river.

A strongly-to-be-desired reform should be carried on.

An ever-to-be-remembered occasion took place yesterday.

There is a To-Let board nailed to the door.

An easy-to-see sign was over the gate.

b. 用在名词后面作定语的不定式

1135 作定语的不定式通常放在它所修饰的名词后面，但是在名词后用不定式作定语并不是很容易的，不定式和它所修饰的名词之间要有一些特定的关系。不定式和它所修饰的名词之间有十种不同的关系：1) 及物动词和宾语的关系，2) 宾补动词与补语的关系，3) 形容词与状语的关系，4) 主语和动词的关系等等：

1) His fear(=That he fears)to see her former wife is natural.
(比较：He fears [及物动词] to see [宾语] her.)

2) His invitation(=That he invited someone)to attend the wedding was true. (比较：He invited [宾补动词] someone to attend [补语] the wedding.)

3) His gerness(=That he is eager) to help her mother is doubtful.
(比较：He is eager [形容词] to help [状语] her mother.)

4) He has a brother to teach him(=who will----or may, can, must, should----teach him).(比较：A brother[主语] will... teach [动词] him.)

5) He has a book to read(=which he will----or may, can, must, should----read). (比较：He will... read [及物动词] a book [宾语].)

6) He has a house to live in(=which he may live in).

(比较 He may live in[由不及物动词构成的及物动词短语] a house [宾语].)

7) He has a child to take care of(=which he must take care of).
(比较：He must take care of[由及物动词构成的及物动词短语] a child [宾语].)

8) I don't understand his idea to send his son to Sahara. (比较：I don't understand his idea [主体词], that is, to send [同位语] his son to Sahara.)

9) That is a peculiar way to make(=of making, in which one can make) money. (比较：That is a peculiar way of making money [定语短语].)

10) He has the goodness(=is good enough)to help me.

1136 总之，在名词后作定语的不定式必须具备下面5项条件之一：

1) 被修饰名词必须表示一种意图，不定式必须用作同位语，和这个名词紧密相连，名词为其主体词，如1135中1)，2)，3)类句子：

a) An attempt (主体词) to climb (同位语) the mountain will be made.(=An attempt, that is, to climb, etc.)

She feels an inclination to eat something sour.

Her refusal to please her mother is amazing.

The tendency has been strong to wear long hair. (同位语间或可与主体词分开)

A plan was devised for children to play games. (带有意义上的主语)

b) The order (主体词) to start (同位语) was given.

I get permission to see the President.

You are under no obligation to flatter anyone.

The order for the army to start was given. (带有意义上的主语)

c) He does not have any ambition (主体词) to become (同位语) famous.

I can understand his impatience to see the boss.

His anxiety to meet her is rather unusual.

2) 不定式应带有 may, can, must, will 或 should 这类助动词的含义, 如 1135 中 4), 5), 6), 7) 几类句子:

d) He recommended Mary to advise (=who can advise) Ada.

He needs love to strengthen his broken heart.

He has many friends to help (=who will help) him.

e) He has nothing to do (=which he can do).

He offered me coffee to drink (=which I may drink).

He has work to do (=which he must do).

I ordered three hamburgers to take out.

Have you any letter to write (=which you must write)?

(但: to be written = which must be written by others)

f) He has no friend to talk with (=with whom he can talk).

That is a good place to get away from. (正式说法: from which to get away)

We have no proof to go to the police with.

g) He can find no-one to make friends with (=with whom he can make friends). (正式说法: with whom to make friends)

There are some points to pay attention to.

另一方面, 不定式所修饰的名词可以是及物动词、双宾动词或及物动词短语的宾语:

He has no time to spare. (time 作为及物动词 has 的宾语)

He has children to teach.

He wants water to drink.

I found no good movies to enjoy.

You can take his book to read.

He bought it for me to use. (带有意义上的主语)

He offered me some tea (作双宾动词 offered 的间接宾语) to refresh my spirit with.

He gave me bread to eat.

They left us a lot of problems to solve.

I lent him a book to kill time with.

He brought me a patient to take care of.

Allow me five minutes to go there.

He looked for some friends (作及物动词短语的宾语) to consult.

He thought of something to do.

He longed for a new world to conquer.

由不定式修饰的名词可以是句子的主语，甚至前面有 there be 这种结构：

A tiger to fight with the criminal had been selected.

The future to greet us will be prosperous.

The man to come to our assistance is John.

The exercise to be done should be handed in next week.

(被动不定式)

There were many stores to supply us with food.

(“名词+不定式”结构前常有 there be 结构)

There is not any one to save him.

There is money enough and to spare.

There is nothing to do(or to be done).

There is not a moment to lose(or to be lost).

There are many plans to make(or to be made).

There is a lot of work to finish(or to be finished).

但是——

There is nothing to speak of(不要说 to be spoken of).

He knows all there is to know(不要说 to be known).

There is plenty to eat(不要说 to be eaten).

There is the devil to pay(不要说 to be paid).

This policy leaves much to be desired(不要说 to desire).

There remains nothing to be said(不要说 to say).不定式修饰的名词间或是系动词 be 后的补语：

He is not a man to tell lies(=man who will tell lies).

It is a sight to gladden her heart(=sight that may gladden...).

I was the last to see him alive.

He is a man to be trusted.

He is not a child to be trifled with.

It is not a place(=suitable place)to visit.

That is the only thing(=suitable thing) to do.不定式修饰的名词可以是介词 with (或 without) 的宾语：

With some friends to advise him(=If some friends will advise him),he may become a good boy.

With much money to spend(=As he had much money to spend), he became worse and worse.

With all the world to rule(=Though he might rule all the world), he would not be content.

He has a big family, with fifteen children.to look after (=^{and} has fifteen children to look after).

A plan was made, with everyone to contribute 30 dollars.

Men go to war, with women to remain at home.

Without anyone to speak with him, he feels extremely lonesome.

He arrived home, without anyone to greet him.

3) 不定式必须用作同位语, 和一个名词(不论表示意图与否)紧密相连或有松散联系, 这个名词作它的主体词, 如

1135 中第 8 类句子:

h) His effort to convince his brother of his folly has failed.

Our project----to build a bridge across the river----is on foot.

I don't understand his interest----to collect all kinds of bottles and glasses.

4) 不定式所修饰名词必须是一个能把不定式变为形容词短语或定语从句的抽象名词, 如 1135 中第 9 类句子:

i) Our opportunity to win(=of winning on which to win)the prize is gone.

Is that a good reason to invade(=for invading,for which you should invade)our country?

He has the power to arrest(=of arresting)any law breaker.

In this country everyone has a chance to go(=of going)to college.

There's no necessity to tip(=for tipping)the taxi-driver.

This month is the best time to travel(=for travelling).

This is the only way for us to get(=of our getting) free and independent.

I have the honour to be admitted(=of being admitted)into this club.

The power for science (带意义上的主语) to serve mankind is limitless.

I'm in no mood to attend(=for attending) a concert.

Thousands of us made arrangements to flee the dictatorial government.

Illness is his pretext to avoid(=for avoiding on which to avoid) the Press.

My opportunity to study engineering is no more.

5) 不定式必须用在“have + the+抽象名词”这类习用语后, 如 1135 中的第 10 类句子:

j) He has the goodness(or the kindness,the confidence , the impudence,the guts,the reason,the good luck)to do it.(=He is good enough,confident enough , etc.)

Has he the heart(=Is he so hard-hearted as)to abandon his wife and children and become a monk?

He has the face(=is impudent enough)to come over to the enemy.
He has the folly to trust a cheat.

c . 用在系动词后的不定式

1137 系动词 be 后的不定式可表示事前安排或义务：

You are to die at eighty-two. (上天意旨或命运安排) The human race is to suffer more in the next century. (预言)

One is to struggle for one's living. (环境的安排) Houses are to protect us from bad weather.

You are to come at seven. (说话人的安排)

(比较: You have to come at seven.) (强迫命令)

Am I to come at seven? (问对方的计划)

Nobody is to say such a thing. (禁令)

Children are not to smoke.

We must be patient if we are to win the war(=if to win the war is our plan).

If you are to study in Europe, you must learn a foreign language.

He is not to be(=should not be)feared. (被动式) You are to be congratulated.

Apples are to be(=may be, can be) bought everywhere. Even a dog is not to be insulted.

The cause is nowhere to be found.

The letter is for you to answer (以 letter 为意义上的宾语) today.(=You are to answer the letter today.)

The mess is always for me to clear up.

He is to blame(=is to be blamed). He is something(or much, not a bit)to blame. (主动形式, 被动意义)

The house is to let(=is to be let).

The war is still(or yet)(=remains) to win.

The cause is not far(or not long,yet,still)to see(or find).

Much (or A great deal, Something, Little)is yet(or still)to do.

还有其他系动词可以用, 但它们表示其他东西, 而不指事前安排:

Something remains to do.

The problem stands to be solved.

He seems to know it(=it seems that he knows it).

He seems to hate me.

He appeared to be jobless.(=It appeared that he was jobless.)

The method proves(=is found)to be effective.

My secretary proved to be very helpful.

用在系动词(特别是动词 be)后时, 起形容词作用的不定式和 1117 中所讨论的起名词作用的不定式很相似, 但它们的作用不同:

My advice (抽象名词作主语) is for you to apologize (起名词作用的不定式) to her.

To do (起名词作用的不定式作主语) everything is to do (起名词作用的不定式) nothing.

John (具体名词作主语) is to(=should,must)come (形容词作用

的不定式) at seven. (事前安排)

This apple (具体名词作主语) is not to (=should not, must not) be eaten (起形容词作用的不定式) .

d . 用在宾补动词后的起形容词作用的不定式

1138 在“宾补动词+宾语”结构中，可以说宾语既是宾补动词的宾语，又是不定式意义上的主语。约有 90 个表示“判断”的宾补动词可以和不定式 to be 或 to have 一起用，但不能和其他不定式（如 to do, to go, to see）一起用：

He believed them to be honest. (=He believed that they were honest.)

I judged him to have been a gambler. (=I judged that he had been a gambler.)

I should guess him to be playing a trick on me. (=I should guess that he is playing a trick on me.)

He declared the rumour to be false.

He asserted the diamond to be genuine.

He esteems himself to be lucky.

He is believed to be honest. (宾补动词可用于被动结构)

It is declared to be false.

The rumour was thought to be unfounded.

He believed them to have killed his friend.

I judged him to have seen much of the world.

1139 约有 120 个表示指示或愿望的宾补动词可以和任何不定式一起用，但在许多情况下不能正确给出与之相当的从句：

He ordered his men to set out at once. (He ordered that his men should set out at once.)

Nothing could tempt me to do evil.

He likes his wife to dress well.

He asked me to open the door. He forced me to accept his proposal.

He invited his friend to spend the vacation with him.

They are not allowed to leave. (宾补动词的被动结构)

His children were left to be fooling around.

He was induced to be a vagabond.

He ordered his men to burn the bridge. = He ordered the bridge to be burnt.

He caused his students to hand in their exercises. = He caused the students' exercises to be handed in. I don't want there to be another war.

He likes there to be a picnic.

He meant there to be no trouble.

1140 约有 20 个表示“让”或“感觉（听见，看见等）”的宾补动词可以和不带 to 的不定式一起用：

I make him stop (不能说 to stop).

Let him come at seven.

I will have him do it for me.

He watched me paint the door .

He heard her sing .

I felt the house shake .

He was made to stop . (在被动语态后不定式要带 to)

She was heard to sing .

The house was felt to shake .

Live and let (others) live . (宾语 others 省略)

He made (others) believe that he knew many rich and influential people .

I heard (others) say some people were demonstrating .

I helped (others) make cakes .

1141 约有 20 个 “ 不及物动词+介词 ” 这样的动词短语可以用作宾补动词 , 后面跟不定式作它们宾语的补语 :

I telephoned to him to come at once .

I have arranged for him to go to college .

All depends upon him not to interfere .

I wished for it to be done .

The store advertised for a clerk to do the work .

I motion to them to go away .

5 . 用作独立成分的不定式

1142 和作独立成分的分词一样 , 作独立结构的不定式和句子的哪一个词都没有关系 , 但可看作修饰整个句子 , 说明这个句子说出的方式。另外 , 作独立成分的不定式不能以分词代替 , 尽管它们的作用很相近 :

1) To speak (or say) the truth , I cannot go today . (其他类似的短语有 to tell the truth , to tell you the truth , truth to tell , truth to say , truth to speak)

To be frank (or To be frank with you , To be plain , To put it straight) , he is not your friend .

To make a long sentence short (or To bring the story short , To cut the matter short , To be brief) , he married her and they lived happily together .

2) To get back to my story , now the girl refused to marry him . (其他类似短语有 to return to my subject , to go on with my story , to return , to continue the study of porcelain) .

To change the subject (or To proceed to another subject) , do you know an excellent movie is being shown ?

3) To use his own words (or To use the expression of the time) , it is not worth a damn .

To conclude (= In conclusion , Lastly) , man is a curious animal .

To say the least of it (= at least) , he is an honest man .

China , Japan , Vietnam , to name a few , are in Asia .

To give a simple example , “ good ” is an adjective in “ He is a good man . ”

4) To make matters worse (or To complete the sum of her

misfortune , To crown her misery , To crown all , To top it all ,
To top it off) , she lost her only son .

To do him justice (or To give him justice , To give him his due)
(=To judge him fairly) , he has done his best , he has achieved
something .

To begin with (=In the first place) , the situation is not
favourable .

5) Strange to say (or Curious to mention) , he suddenly died
yesterday .

Horrible to relate , he was killed last night .

Sad to tell , he became bankrupt .

This Chinese cannot read Chinese , not to say (or much less ,
let alone) German and Japanese .

This Chinese can read German and Japanese , not to say (or to
say nothing . of , not to mention , not to speak of , let alone , much
more) Chinese .

They are , to say the least , hypocrites .

He may , so to speak , lose face . 6 . 用在感叹句中的不定式
1143 不定式 (有时 to 省略) 可以用在感叹句中。这种感叹句是一个
不完整的句子，常常没有主语和谓语动词：

Oh , you coward , to treat a girl so ! (不满) You fool ! to think
that she would return home ! Oh God , to hear her sing ! (赞美)

To think that he should die so young ! (惋惜) My own flesh and
blood to rebel !

Money to have such power ! (惊奇)

O to be at home ! (愿望)

O to have been dreaming for forty years ! (懊悔) You an expert
and not know this ! (不带 to 的不定式) A millionaire , and become
a beggar overnight ! Talk about honest politicians !

What ! she come to see me !

John marry an old maid ! God forbid !

7 . 疑问词后的不定式

1144 带疑问词的不定式可以独立使用：

What to do ? (=What are we to do ?)

Where to go ? (=Where are we to go ?)

When to start our work ?

How to Win Friends and Influence People

“ How to Make Money and Spend It ”

“ How to Speak ”

8 . To 的特殊用法

1145 a . 不定式的标记 to 有时可以省略，特别是在下面情况：1) 用
在某些宾补动词后作宾语补语 (参阅 1140)：

He let his children do anything they like .

I can make them understand me , but not obey me . He help me

cook every evening .

I heard Mary sing .

2)用在介词 but ,except ,than 后作宾语(参阅 1120) He did nothing but wander about the village .

He has nothing to do except talk nonsense .

I would rather die than be insulted .

3) 用在不完整的感叹句中表示某种情绪 (参阅 1143) :

A civil engineer and be unable to build a small hut ! John marry a battleaxe !

4) 当一个不定式由 and 或 or 与另一不定式并列时 :

He wants to buy and sell some articles .

It's better to wait here and take a taxi .

I am anxious to go and ask him about it .

I decide to write to him and make a suggestion .

You are free to talk or laugh here .

但 : I wish to live on an island with my lover after marriage and to live peacefully . (两个不定式相距较远时 to 不宜省略)

1146 b . 下面情况下 to 需要重复 :

1) 当一个不定式和另一不定式加以对比时 :

I have come not to comfort you , but to bury you .

I am forced either to do business or to get married ; I can't go to college .

I like to criticize but not to be criticized .

To cheat is as guilty as to rob .

2) 当句中有系列不定式时 :

They have come to talk , to sing , to get drunk .

Is it necessary for her to weep , to tell her sad story , to complain to her husband from morning till night ?

1147 c . To 可以用来代表整个不定式短语 , 如果前面有一个类似的动词词组 :

“ Do you like to talk with those people ? ” “ I do not like to (talk with those people) . ”

“ You can stay here if you want to (stay here) .

I teach him everything I am able to (teach him) .

“ What would you say to drinking something ? ” “ I should be glad to (drink something) . ”

“ I think I shall have to give up my study . ” “ But I advise you not to (give up your study) . ”

I cannot smoke any more . The doctor forbids me to (smoke any more) .

I would like to buy and sell , but I don't know how to (buy and sell) .

“ You can elect any person you like . ” “ But I don't know which to (elect) . ”

有时连这个 to 也一并省略：

“Do you like to talk with those people?” “I don't like (to talk with those people).”

I teach him everything I think fit (to teach).

“I think I shall have to give up gambling.” “I would advise you.”

I would like to buy and sell, but I don't know how.

在 1140 中谈到的不带 to 的不定式有时也可省略：

“He refuses to come.” “I will make him (come).”

It is wiser to forbid children to smoke than to let them (smoke).

“He never goes out with any girl.” “But I saw him (go out with a girl) one day.”

. 动词的 4 个体

1148 “体”（又叫动相）（Aspect）是动词值得注意的另一特点，它表示动作完成的程度。12 个时态不仅表示了时间，还表示了动作完成的程度，但时态的讨论还没有对完成程度作充分讨论。为了更好地了解时态，须对“体”作一番研究。一个动词有 4 个主要“体”，表示完成的四种程度。它可以表示一个动作的全过程，它的开始，或终结，和它的反复。体可以由单一动词表示，如 blacken, marry, grumble, 也可由动词短语表示，也就是一个动词和另外词的组合体，如 get married, come to terms, give up gambling, talk and talk, use up, cease to play.

为了对 4 个体有所了解，请先看下面的句子：

Now it was time they ate (全过程) their lunch. As soon as the meal was ready, Mother cried, “Wash your hands, John, before you start eating (动作的开始).” About three minutes passed and John was already full up. “You often eat (反复动作) between meals, so you lose your appetite. Wash your hands again after you finish eating (动作结束).”

A . 一般形式

1 . 一般体

1149 我们先研究一下一般形式的 4 个体。

多数动词都表示一个动作的全过程，这种动词可以说属于一般体 (Simple Aspect)。这种体表示一个能延续较长时间的动作或状态，在不表示特殊体时都用这个体：

He spoke to me . He studied English . Mary walked to the distant hill . He wrote letters . (表示动作的动词)

He hates me . I know it . I think you are right . That belonged to Mary . This resembled that . (表示状态的动词)

He is a crazy fellow . This city seems dirty . She looks sad . This fruit tastes sweet . (某些系动词)

2 . 起始体

1150 先看下面这段短文：

These two countries had been at peace for many , many years . In 1820 , however , they harshly criticized each other , so their relations were tense . After a year , they fought a war , which continued for forty years . Then their diplomats discussed how to end the bloodshed . They talked for ten years before they agreed .

可以看出，斜体动词，从上下文判断，都表示重要的变化，但这些一般体的动词没有把变化清楚讲出。现在再看下面短文，注意斜体动词及动词短语，如何清楚表现出新动作或状态的开始。这些强调动作开头的动词或动词短语可说属于起始体 (Ingressive Aspect)。由于它们也表示一个短暂的动作，这个体也可称作短暂体 (Instantaneous Aspect)：

These two countries had been at peace for many , many years . In 1820 , however , they began to harshly criticize each other , so their relations became tense . After a year , they started a war , which continued for forty years . Then their diplomats came to the table to discuss how to end the bloodshed . They talked for ten years before they arrived at an agreement .

1151 从上面例子中可以看出，英语中有许多对动词或动词短语，如 were 和 became , fought a war 和 started a war , agreed 和 arrived at an agreement , 意思相近，却属于不同的体。在语法上，用哪种体都对，但在修辞上，选择能表示确切的体的词则更好一些。在下面例子中，起始体由 “i” 表示，一般体由 “s” 表示：

a) I know (s) love is sacred ; I learned (i) it when I was a mere child . (起始体或一般体都可由一单个动词表示)

(若把 know 和 learned , 也就是一般体和起始体的位置互换，会使句子显得很别扭，尽管它们的意思相同。)

I have (s) a very lovely dog , and I got (i) it from a friend .

I keep (s) my books on the shelves , and I put (i) them back every time I use them .

I have employed (s) this secretary for a long time and I engaged

(i) her in 1965 .

He borrowed (i) ten thousand pounds five years ago , and now he still owes (s) me five hundred .

I arrived (i) there on April 1 , and stayed (s) there two months .

b) “ I know (s) John very well . ” “ When did you make his acquaintance (i) ? ” (起始体可以由动词短语表示)

At first I thought (s) that nobody could do that , but then it occurred (i) to me that John could .

I can't remember (s) my promise unless I am reminded (i) of it .

Since he was frightened (i) by a ghost , he has been afraid (s) to go in the dark .

He is in love with (s) Mary . He fell in love with (i) her last year .

c) He cannot wake up (i) early this morning , because last night he lay awake (s) all night .

“ I have not seen (s) him for a long time . I don't remember when I lost sight of (i) him . ” “ But I caught sight of (i) him among the crowd the other day . ”

Everyone laughed and laughed (s) , except Mary , who kept serious a few moments , but then burst forth laughing (or crying) (i) .

After he spoke (s) to me for two hours , I broke silence (i) .

d) Ask her to wait . I'll put on (i) my coat . It would be impolite to wear (s) these pajamas .

I go to bed (i) at ten , fall asleep (i) about half an hour later , and I sleep (s) eight hours .

He has held (s) the political power for ten years .

He seized hold of (i) it from another party .

But I believe he will lose his hold of (i) it very soon .

You can do (s) the job , but when can you begin (or start , commence) (i) it ? (commence 为书面语)

It is easy to manage (or run , handle , conduct) (s) the business , but difficult to start (i) it .

All of them had already stood (s) in front of the principal , and then I took my place (i) beside Lily .

e) I am sick (s) . I got sick (i) two days ago when I walked in the rain . (有些系动词表示一般体 , 有些表示起始体 。)

He looks old (s) . He grew old (i) last year , when he lost his wife .

“ She appears mad (s) . ” “ She is . She ran mad (i) because all of her four sons were killed on the battlefield . ”

“ She looks pale (s) ” “ She turns pale (i) every time she gets frightened . ”

He is a robber (s) . He turned robber (i) merely for revenge .

He commenced writer (i) in the beginning of this century ,
and is a writer (s) of international fame today .

He is a victim (s) of love . He does not know how and when he
fell a victim (i) to her charms .

A thing becomes of great importance (i) the moment you THINK
it is (s) .

f) “ I must set it right (i) . ” “ Yes , if you do not think
it right (s) . ” (起始体或一般体也可由宾补动词和宾语补语表示出
来)

The children make the floor dirty (i) . Their mother leaves
it dirty (s) and doesn't care .

“ I consider the situation difficult (s) ” “ But who renders
it so (i) ? ”

I found it clean (s) enough . Maybe the maid had washed it clean
(i) .

(其他起始体动词还有 paint it red , cut it short , raise it high ,
break it open , etc .)

Let us set the ball flying (= make the ball fly) (i) .

This accident set us thinking (i) .

He started the machine going (i) .

1152 一般体的动词可以在前面加一个 begin 或其同义词使它变为起始
体 :

We began (or started) to study poetry .

We began (or started) playing a game .

He commenced looking for a wife .

I started in to write a story after I had learned the rules .

We started out to practise as surgeons after we were graduated .

We set about to repair the road immediately after it was bombed .

It set in to snow (or snowing) .

We fell to eating the roast pigeons as soon as everyone was
present .

He could find no other solace , so he took to drinking .

He was extremely stubborn , but finally he came to see his own
fault .

At first he neglected my advice . At last he got to believe it .

He had been a playboy for two years .

In the end he grew to know the danger .

1153 包含 to 或 into 的动词短语可能是起始体 , 除非这些介词只表示
方向 :

a) They came to blows (= began to fight) , came to an understanding
(= began to understand each other) , came to loggerheads (= began
to quarrel) , came to man's estate (= began to reach manhood) .

It came to the front (= began to be prominent) , came to our
knowledge (= began to be known to us) , came to light (= began to

be disclosed) , came to a standstill (=began to be stagnant) .

They went to law (=began a suit in a law-court) , went to bed (=began to rest) , went to bad (=began to be debauched) , rose to eminence (=began to be eminent) .

b) It came into force (=began to be enforced) , came into use (=began to be used) , came into existence (=began to exist) , came into sight (=began to be seen) .

They fell into company with John (=began to know John) , fell into error (=began to make mistakes) , fell into the shade (=began to be obscure) , fell into the hands of the enemy (=began to be controlled by the enemy) .

They entered into correspondence (or negotiation , agreement , a war , a contract) with us (=began to correspond , negotiate , etc . , with us) .

They sank into poverty (=began to be poor) .

They turned (or changed , translated , transformed) this into that .

He united (or mixed) these things into one .

He divided one into many .

It grew (or developed , degenerated , ripened) into something different .

1154 由 take 开始的动词短语可能是起始体：

He took a fancy (or a liking) to it (=began to like it) , took an interest in it (=began to notice it) , took over the government (=began to control the government) , took charge of the business (=began to manage it) , took pity on him (=began to pity him) , took possession of (=took over) the property .

1155 祈使句中的谓语动词 (即使是一般体动词) 也总是起始体 , 因为动词表示的动作要求开始进行：

Come here . Do it at once . Love your neighbours .

Hate your enemy . Know yourself . Be a good boy . Let everybody mind his own business .

1156 有些一般体动词偶尔也可用作起始体动词：

When he told me the news , I was aware (=began to know) that the rumour was false .

He saw the broken window and was (=became) immediately angry .

Since he was (=got) married , he has been a different man .

He is just dead (=has just died) .

I first knew him (=made his acquaintance) in 1960 .

He lay down and slept (=fell asleep) .

You will see her and love (=fall in love with) her .

I have thought him a good worker since I employed (=engaged) him .

3 . 终结体

1157 有些动词或动词短语，表示一个动作的结束，这类动词则属于终结体 (Terminative Aspect)。

1158 有些系动词表示终结体：

He proved (to be) honest . (=He was finally found to be honest .)

She grew up (to be) a pretty girl .

He turned out (=proved) a good man .

He came out a different man .

He went off a victor .

He emerged a victor .

1159 一般体的动词，如在前面加 finish 或其同义词，可以变为终结体：

We should now stop quarrelling (=quarrel no more) .

Can he give up smoking?

Please quit (or leave off) playing tricks .

He ceased to sell (or selling) apples long ago .

1160 包含有 up, down, out, through, away 等副词的动词短语可以表示终结体，除非这些副词表示方向：

a) Everything was burned up . (up 表示“彻底地”)

The river dried up .

He tied (or fastened, locked, chained, sealed, screwed, packed, shut, folded) it up .

He set (or mix, fix) it up .

b) The tempest died down . (down 表示减少到较少程度或完全消失)

The clock ran down .

The shoes wore down .

The factory (was) closed down .

The revolution (was) calmed down . Slow down the car .

The fire burned down .

I must quiet down his excited mind .

c) I will carry through the task . (through 表示完成) She got through (=passed) the exam .

He will read the book through .

I saw the matter through (from the beginning to the end) .

Go through with the novel .

When will you be through with (= finish) my book? d) The fire burned itself out (or burned no more) . She had her sleep out (=slept to her heart's content) . He sat out the play (=sat until it was finished) . He slept out the night .

He can't hold out (=endure to the end) .

The fire (or The cup, The purse, The copyright, The week) is out (= is finished) .

e) The water boiled away .

His last hope faded away .

1161 包含 till, to 或 into 的动词短语, 若表示动作的结果或结束, 也属于终结体:

He lived till ninety-nine.

He worked until midnight.

He was beaten till death.

She cried herself to sleep.

He argued to the end of time.

We fought to the last man.

He revenged himself to his heart's content.

To my greatest astonishment he suddenly appeared at midnight.

He was loved to his ruin.

All efforts came to nothing.

He came to an untimely end.

He went to extremes (or rack and ruin, no good, the dogs).

The plan went to pieces (or nought, the winds, the ground).

He fell into the shade (=was no more noticed).

He fell into oblivion(=was no more remembered)after many years of popularity.

1162 包含有表示结果的不定式或从句的动词短语可以是终结体:

The child grew to be an old man.

He lived to see his son becoming the president.

He tried to avoid a small trouble only to meet with a bigger one.

He left his family never to return home.

He worked hard so that he got a medal.

He spoke eloquently so that thousands of people followed him.

1163 有些一般体的动词表示企图, 有些终结体的动词表示结果。这两类动词的差别很重要, 需要记在心中。如果说 He killed himself, but he was saved 就是自相矛盾。说 I persuaded him, but he didn't listen to me. 也如此。同样, I resigned, but my boss did not allow me to. 也是不对的。因为 3 个斜体词, 从上下文看是指企图, 而从词义看却指结果。

如说 He killed himself 则表明他已经死了。说 I persuaded him 则表示已经让他接受了劝告。如果在这些动词前加上 try 或其他同义的词, 或改用其他动词, 如: He tried to kill himself. I advised him. I wished to resign. 则句子就可讲通了。

1164 注意下面例句中这两类动词的差别, “a” 代表企图 (attempt), “r” 代表“结果” (result):

a) You can advise (a) him, but you cannot persuade (r) him to do it.

I can speak to (a) him and also convince (r) him of his folly.

I listened and listened (a) but heard (r) nothing.

I looked (a), but saw (r) nothing.

I memorized (a) the poem but I was unable to remember (r)

it .

Though he has learned (a) English many years , he does not know (r) it .

He went (a) to the island but was shipwrecked before he arrived (r) .

I looked for (a) my lost hat and found (r) it in a corner .

You can fight (a) him , but can you beat (r) him ?

Can you conquer (r) him ?

b) I tried to convince (a) him , but he is not convinced (r) of his mistake . (表示结果的动词 , 若在前面加一个 try 或其同义词 , 可以变成表示企图的动词。)

He tried to commit suicide , but he was saved .

He has tried three times to escape , but he got arrested as many times .

I attempted to prevent (or discourage) him from smoking , and I succeeded .

The more I try to sleep (a) , the less I can sleep (r) .

I am not sure whether I can come (r) , but I will try to come (a) .

c) Before the fish bit at (a) the worms , it had been hooked up . (在表示结果的动词后 , 如果加介词 at , 也可能把它变成一个表示企图的动词。)

He shot at (a) me and hit (r) me in the arm .

Many stones were thrown at (a) me , but none hit (r) anyone .

d) I should like to take a look (or a glance , a nap , a stroll , a drive , a ride) . (“ Take a , have a 或 give a+由动词变来的单音节名词 ” 可以表示企图 , 用来表示结果的短语为 “ have taken a look , a glance ” 等。)

I should like to have a try (or a go at it , a taste , a look , a drive , a ride) . But after I had had a try , (a go at it , etc .) , I was so disappointed .

4 . 反复体

1165 有些动词或动词短语表示一连串反复进行的同样动作 , 这种动词属于反复体 :

He talked and talked . (重复的动词)

She sang , sang , and sang the same song all day long .

He counted his money again and again . (动词加上表示频度的副词)

He never (or seldom , sometimes , often , continually) smokes .

He told me the story over and over again . He was ill . He went to the toilet repeatedly .

He walked on and on .

We met twice a week . We still hoped to understand each other better .

He is accustomed (or used) to reading several French newspapers before breakfast. (表示习惯的动词短语)

He has the habit of eating icecream after a meal. He used to eat at the restaurant.

He is in the habit of going to bed after midnight. He makes it a rule to see me on Sunday.

He gets up at six in the morning. (一般时态可表示反复发生的动作, 包括现在、过去, 将来。)

He smokes.

I usually have milk in the morning.

He who plays with fire gets burned in the end.

The sun rises in the east.

He came home late every evening. (过去)

He sold shoes.

Truth will out. (will 可表示总是要发生的事)

Children will be naughty.

He will read papers for hours.

He would work until midnight. (would 表示过去的习惯)

She would wait until her husband returned.

He kept (on) talking with friends. (keep, keep on, go on 等可表示一连串同样的动作, 或一个持续的动作。)

It went on raining.

They continued to work (or working).

She remained standing outside.

We went on, though it was dark.

The fire crackled. (后缀 -le 和 -er 表示一串短短的有时甚至笨拙的动作, 这类动词也属反复体。)

Hens cackled.

The stars twinkled.

He lingered on the street.

The fish wriggled.

She prattled all day long.

It is no use haggling with him.

The flames flickered.

She frequently mutters something to herself.

Some butterflies fluttered among flowers.

He loitered about this village.

He frittered away his money and time.

He pooh-poohed at me. (发出重复的声音)

1166 总之, 对体有所了解, 对掌握动词至关重要。当我们忽略动词的体时, 我们就难以确切表达我们的意思。一般来说, 我们用一般体动词表示动词的全过程。我们注意力在动作的开始时, 我们应当用起始体, 仿佛是一个近镜头。在我们注意动词的结束时, 我们要用终结体, 也像一个近镜头。当我们表示一连串的同样的动作时, 我们要用反复体。

B. 可能形式，进行形式和完成形式中的体

1167 上面讨论的一般形式的 4 个体，可以变为可能形式，进行形式和完成形式的 4 个体。因此总共有 16 个体。

1168 1. 当我们要表示一个可能发生但并未真正发生的动作时，我们可使用可能形式 (Potential Form)，在主要动词前加某些助动词。将来时 (由 shall, will, be to, be going to, be about to 等构成) 都属于可能体 (Potential Aspect)。

一般可能体：He may come tomorrow. He must be there.

起始可能体：We shall begin to learn Japanese next week.

They will enter into negotiation.

终结可能体：I have to finish reading it soon.

I can eat up all these oranges.

反复可能体：You need not tell it again and again.

I should not linger here long.

1169 2. 当我们想表示在某个时刻正在进行的动作，或表达某种程度的情绪而加以生动描绘时，我们使用进行形式 (Continuous Form)：

一般进行体：

I am writing a letter now. She is watching TV. I was walking along when it began to rain. They were eating. You were speaking to an ass. We were waiting for buses.

He is smoking.

He hates me. I know it. It means a lot. This belongs to Mary. He has a cat. The situation continues tense.

David, aged 43, remains single. The fish stays fresh. We are happy. It tastes sour. (这里的斜体动词不是进行时，它们表示的状态却是可以延续的。)

David was in the act (or the middle) of stealing it when he was detected.

Our plan is in progress (or full operation).

The production of steel is on the increase (or the decline).

Preparations for the journey are under way (or consideration).

He is under treatment (or investigation).

(一些由 in, on 和 under 引起的短语，表示正在进行的动作。)

起始进行体：

We were winning. I was leaving this city. The flowers are opening. His fame is vanishing. Mary was dying.

They were coming to terms. They were arriving at our town now. He is becoming insane. He is falling asleep.

The crop is ripening. I'm losing my best friends. 注：起始进行体常常表示旧动作快完新动作开始。如：

Mary was dying. 实际上表示她将死而未死。又如：We were winning. 实际上等于说 We were about to win. 但实际上未曾胜利。有时也可以表示一个反复发生的动作，如：Many grenades are exploding

this month . He was reminding me all the morning . 都表示多次反复的动作。

终结进行体：

He is going to rack and ruin . He is sinking into oblivion .

I am giving up smoking . The river was drying up . The fire was burning itself out . He was sitting out the play .

The clock is running down . He was coming to an untimely death . She was growing to be a lovely girl .

I gave up smoking . (一般终结体) 我已戒烟了。但 I was giving up smoking . (终结进行体) 我快要戒烟了，但未戒。

反复进行体：

He is singing and singing . He was telling me over and over again . He was getting sick from time to time . He was always (or for ever) thinking of himself . He is every day looking for some trouble . He is on all occasions praising himself . He was constantly trying to make money .

(这种进行形式常常带有 always 或其他类似的词，除表示反复发生外，还带有一定程度的情绪。)

1170 3 . 当我们想表示一个已完成动作的影响或后果时，我们需用完成形式 (Perfect Form)：

一般完成体：

I have read this book . (= I understand it now .)

He has been married . (= He has a family now .)

He has not slept well . (= He is sleepy .)

He had studied French . (= He knew French .)

He had not eaten anything . (= He was hungry .)

起始完成体 (= 一般进行体)：

He has begun to learn (= is learning) English . He has gone to bed (= is sleeping) . The law has come into force (= is being enforced) . Mary had arrived (= was staying) here . He had started the machine going (= The machine was going) . He had left London (= He was away from London) .

注 1：(一般完成体使用时，句中可有一个表示一段时间的状态语。

I have studied this matter for three days . He has not slept well during the last ten days . He had not eaten anything since three days ago .

但用起始完成体的句子却不能带这种状态语，因为短时动词不宜配合长时状态语：

I have lost it for three days . He has not fallen asleep during the last ten days . (错句)

I have got married for ten years . (错句)

I have been married for ten years . (正确)

I got married ten years ago . (正确)

I have put on this shirt for three days . (错句)

I have worn this shirt for three days . (正确)
I put on this shirt three days ago . (正确)
I have arrived here for five months . (错句)
I have been here for five months . (正确)
I arrived here five months ago . (正确)
I have left my native country for thirty years . (错句)
I have been away from my native country for thirty years . (正

确)

I left my native country thirty years ago . (正确)
We have won the second world war for over forty years . (错

句)

We won the second world war over forty years ago . (正确)
He has died for five years . (错句)
He died five years ago . (正确)
He has opened this store for many years . (错句)
He has run this store for many years . (正确)
He opened this store many years ago . (正确)

注 2 : 完成形式有时可表示反复发生的动作 , 这时也可用一个表示一段时间的状语。

He has told me (=has told me several times) the same story since a month ago .

I have written (=have written many times) to her for many years .

My classmates and I have received (=have often received) letters from her for the past year .

He has lost money in gambling since 1968 .

终结完成体 :

He has finished writing the book .

John has given up smoking cigar . The clock had run down . He had gone to Heaven . All efforts had gone to nothing .

注 : 在用这个形式时不能用表示一段时间的状语 :

The clock has run down for a long time . (错句)

The clock ran down a long time ago . (正确)

He has finished his lunch for twenty minutes . (错句)

He finished his lunch twenty minutes ago . (正确)

John has given up smoking for eight months . (错句)

John gave up smoking eight months ago . (正确)

He has smoked no more for the past eight months . (正确)

反复完成体 :

He has said and said it again . I have told you over and over again . I had tried , tried and tried , but finally failed . I have been accustomed to smoking .

1171 上面谈到的 16 种形式 , 每种都是两个体的组合。此外还可有以 3 个体的组合 , 如 have been teaching (一般完成进行体) , must have died (可能完成起始体) , will be grumbling (可能反复进行体) 。由于它

们的含义可以从 16 个体中推想出来，没有必要对它们作详细讨论。

C . 非谓语动词的 4 个体

1172 非谓语动词和谓语动词一样，也有 4 个体：

He works (一般体) hard . (谓语动词)

He seems to work (一般体) hard . (不定式)

He is used to working (一般体) hard . (动名词)

A man working (一般体) hard can never be starved . (分词)

He lost (起始体) his job . (谓语动词)

I don't want to lose (起始体) my job . (不定式)

I was shocked at the news of his losing (起始体) his job . (动名词)

Losing (起始体) his job , he cannot maintain his family anymore . (分词)

He finished (终结体) reading it last Sunday . (谓语动词)

I hope to finish reading it by next Sunday . (非谓语动词)

He worked , worked and worked (反复体) till he died . (谓语动词)

To work and work (反复体) till we die is our destiny . (非谓语动词)

1173 和谓语动词一样，非谓语动词也有可能、进行与完成形式，意义几乎相同。详见有关非谓语动词各章。

D . 表动作名词的体

1174 和谓语动词一样，表示动作的名词也可有它们特殊的体：

一般体：

education ,establishment ,study ,manufacture ,knowledge ,murder

起始体：

departure , disappearance , change , loss , birth , arrival ,
real-ization

反复体：

repetition , reiteration , revival , redistribution , mutter ,
flut-ter , giggle , twinkle

E . 结束语

1175 最后研究一下下面这段短文，看看各个动作完成的程度可能是很有意思的。(1)表示动作发生以前，(2)表示动作开始，(3)表示动作正在进行，(4)表示动作结束，(5)表示动作结束之后：

It was declared on January 15, 1968 that they (1) would build a bridge at this village .

They actually (2) started building it on February 1 .

I saw that they (2) + (3) had started building it when I passed through the village on February 3 .

They (3) were building it briskly and energetically until December .

They (4) finished building it on December 5 .

They (4) + (5) had just finished building it when I passed through the village again on December 8 .

The bridge looked magnificent ; they built (一般体) it at an enormous cost .

Now they (5) had built a bridge across the river .

So men and cars did not have to wait for ferry-boats any more ; they could cross the river any time .

. 5 大类动词

A . 5 类动词的定义

1176 动词可以根据它是否有宾语或表语分为 5 类 (可参阅 33 1-7) 。
这种区分, 不仅适用于谓语动词, 也适用于非谓语动词。

1177 后面不跟宾语和补语的动词称为不及物动词:

谓语动词

John came .

Mary died yesterday .

Many people sang in the yard .

I slept soundly .

非谓语动词

I saw John coming .

Mary is said to have died yesterday .

I found many people singing in

the yard .

I want to sleep .

1178 有宾语的动词称为及物动词:

谓语动词

He visited Hong Kong .

I know him very well .

They speak English .

She wrote a letter .

非谓语动词

I am about to visit Hong Kong .

I should be glad to know him .

They are learning to speak English .

She dislikes writing any letter .

1179 后面跟两个宾语 (即间接宾语和直接宾语) 的动词称双宾动词, 间接宾语多指人, 直接宾语多指 “ 物 ” : 谓语动词 非谓语动词

He gave John a cat .

He teaches Chinese
students English .

She cooked me rice .

They played Mary a
trick .

He asked us many questions .

They envied John his
pretty wife .

I thanked him for giving
John a cat .

His job is to teach Chinese
students English .

She went to the market
before cooking me rice .

Their playing Mary a trick
made me angry .

He is curious enough to ask
us so many questions .

It is natural for them to envy
John his pretty wife .

大多数间接宾语可改为介词短语, 这时双宾动词变成及物动词:

He gave a cat to John .

He teaches English to Chinese students .

She cooked rice for me .

They played a trick on Mary .

(但 asked 后的 us 和 envied 后的 John 不能这样变)

1180 后面跟主语补语的动词称为系动词:

谓语动词

He is a teacher .

Mary become a lawyer .

She grew old .

old . They kept silent .

非谓语动词

He wants to be a teacher .

One has to study many years
to become a lawyer .

She is aware of herself growing

It is always good to keep silent .

1181 后面跟一个宾语及宾语补语的动词，称为宾补动词：

谓语动词

Many people know him
to be a spy .

Many have heard this song sung . It is true for many people
to

非谓语动词

I am astonished at many
people knowing him to
be a spy .

have heard this song
sung .

I saw them coming .

I was glad to see them coming .

She kept the house clean .

I thank her for keeping the
house clean .

They chose John president .

Have you heard of them
choosing John president ?

They left me an orphan .

They died leaving me an orphan .

They beat him black and blue .

Beating him black and
blue , they threw him into
the ditch .

He taught me to be careful .

It is good for him to teach
me to be careful .

I prepared the students
to take the exam .

Preparing the students to
take the exam , I go to
school earlier than usual .

He encouraged me to try
encourag-again .

I remember him
ing me to try again .

每一个句子等于把两个句子巧妙地结合起来，前面一句包含一个及物动词，第二个句子包含一个系动词。第一个句子的宾语同时是第二个句子的主语。上面的例句大致可解为下面样子：

Many people know him , and he is a spy .

Many have heard this song , and this song has been sung .

I saw them , and they were coming .

She kept the house , so the house remained clean .

They chose John , so John became president .

They left me , so I became an orphan .

They beat him , so he became black and blue .

He taught me , and I was to be careful .

I prepared the students , and the students were to take the exam .

He encouraged me , and I was to try again .

在某些情况下，宾语及宾语补语可以改为一个 that 引起的从句：

I think it easy . — I think that it is easy .

The circumstance decided him to study hard . — The circumstance decided that he was to study hard .

They wish him dead . — They wish that he would be dead .

They reported seven planes shot down . — They reported that

seven planes had been shot down .

I must see the work done . —I must see that the work be done .

B. 不同类型动词的相互转换

1. 各种类型的不及物动词

1182 a. 多数动词在一个句子中可能是及物动词, 而在另一句中又可用作不及物动词:

作及物动词

He can speak English .

She was boiling water .

We played tennis .

作不及物动词

A dumb person cannot speak .

The water is boiling .

Some children are playing in the garden .

I wrote three letters this morning . He cannot write though he can read .

1183 b. 有些动词几乎只能用作不及物动词:

He came yesterday , but I was out .

He lay on the ground , crying and struggling .

He died many years ago .

Don't laugh . It's something serious .

Don't jump up and down .

He fell downstairs .

1184 c. 有些动词通常用作及物动词, 但用于一般意义, 不说出宾语是什么时, 它就成了不及物动词:

I never smoke (cigarettes , cigars , or any others) .

Though he has eyes , he does not see .

We must drink , we must eat .

This machine can cut , can pull , can raise .

He reads every night .

It is better to give than to receive . To do is harder than to speak .

1185 d. 有些动词通常作及物动词, 如果按习惯用法宾语可以省略, 它也就成了不及物动词:

He shrugged (his shoulders) .

She waved (her hand) to me .

I will leave (this place) tomorrow .

Wait . I will change (my clothes) .

The hen is laying (an egg) .

Write (letters) to me often .

Let me milk (the cow) .

Shut up (your mouth) .

A barking dog never bites (persons) .

He proposea (marriage) to her .

He drinks (liquor) almost every evening .

Kiss (each other) and be friends .

They loved and embraced (each other) .

We met (each other) every Sunday .

They married (each other) last year .

在非正式口语中，有时宾语可以省略：

The news is important , but nobody told (the news to) me .

Psychology is one of our main subjects , but the school has not taught (it to) us yet .

If I owe you anything , I will pay you (the debt) .

Don't tell me (the story) . I know (it) .

“ You must be careful . I understand (I must be care-ful) . ”

“ You have wronged many friends . ” “ I deny (what you say) . ”

“ The back gate jams . ” “ I can open (it) . ”

1186 e . 如果及物动词后面有作宾语的自身代词被省略，它也就成了不及物动词：

Keep (yourself) away from danger .

The child hid (himself) under the bed .

They are making (themselves) merry .

The mob dispersed (themselves) .

He turned (himself) to me .

Let us rest (ourselves) a few minutes .

The rock rolled (itself) down the mountain .

The bubble burst (itself) .

A scar showed (itself) on her face .

1187 f . 有些及物动词，如果用来表示被动意义，也就成了不及物动词：

The books sell (= are sold) well .

This cloth washes (= is washed) easily .

The fish will not keep long .

The liquor drinks well .

The door won't shut .

She photographs well .

What does a cat eat like ?

These faults count for nothing .

This compares favourably with that .

The bridge is building (= is being built) .

Dinner is getting (= is being got) ready .

Great events are preparing .

Some measures are taking . The book is printing .

The house is completing .

1188 g . 及物动词的被动语态也可以看作不及物动词，因为它后面既不跟宾语，也不跟表语（括号给出的是大致意思）：

He was killed (= died) .

The papers were blown (= flew) off .

He has been tormented (= suffered) for years .

She was astonished (= wondered) at your sudden refusal .

He was pleased (= rejoiced) to hear the news .

Don't be troubled (=worry) .

The war will be ended (=end) next year .

He must be taught by (=learn from) a very strict teacher .

1189 h . 由及物动词和它的宾语构成的成语，也可看成不及物动词，因为它后面既不跟宾语，也不跟补语：

We have to give way (=yield) .

Lend an ear (=listen) to me .

Our plan did not take shape (=materialize) .

This soldier won't take orders (=obey) .

Some accident took place (=happened) .

Can I have a word (=talk) with you ?

She takes a good picture (=photographs well) .

He has sown his wild oats (=dissipated) for ten years .

Take your time (=Don't hurry) .

I exerted myself (=endeavoured) to make more money .

He concealed himself (=hid) in the jungle .

He conducted himself (=behaved) properly .

I washed myself (=bathed) every evening . Don't lose heart .

This habit has taken root in him .

He passed a remark about the ceremony .

1190 i . 由“不及物动词 + 介词 + 名词”构成的成语也可看作不及物动词：

A steamer came into sight (=appeared) .

Business has come to a standstill (=stopped) .

He rose to his feet (=stood up) .

The glass fell into pieces (=broke) .

He came to himself (=revived) .

They fell on their knees (=knelt down) .

Everything is going to the bad (=declining .)

2 . 各种类型的及物动词

1191 a . 有些动词只用作及物动词，很少或从不用作不及物动词：

I like milk .

He made a small boat .

He threw the rotten bananas into the garbage-can .

He painted his room .

We received the things John gave us .

I got the first prize .

We discussed many problems .

1192 b . 有少数动词必须跟有自身代词作宾语：

He prided himself on his knowledge of zoology .

He absented himself from school .

They pledged themselves to support us .

Go and enjoy yourselves .

He conducted himself well . Don't overeat (or overwork ,

oversleep) yourself . (在美国自身代词可以不用)

You must behave yourself .

He distinguished himself by his hard work .

1193 c . 有些动词通常作不及物动词 , 如果用来表示 “ 使.....干某事 ” , 则成为及物动词 :

He flew a kite (=caused a kite to fly) .

He grew a lot of bananas (=caused a lot of bananas to grow) .

She bathed her child .

My boss worked me hard .

We dined our guests handsomely .

He walked his horse about .

She ran a needle into her finger .

The woodman fell the trees .

They starved our troops .

I will marry my girl to anyone who loves her truly .

He stood his umbrella against the wall .

He leaned his elbow on the desk .

He beat his hand against the desk .

He shot an arrow at us .

1194 d . 有些动词通常作不及物动词 , 但在一些成语 (习用语) 中可成为及物动词 :

We are talking business (or shop) .

Please talk sense .

He walked the boards when he was young .

She walked the streets at night .

He eagerly played knife and fork .

He ran errands for the firm .

He ran a risk of being killed .

Why don't you go the whole hog and become a dancing-master ?

Don't come (=act) the bully over me .

He will stand trial .

1195 e . 有些动词通常作不及物动词 , 但在跟有同源宾语 (与动词意思几乎相同的名词) 时 , 可变为及物动词 :

He lived a happy life .

He died a glorious death .

She smiled the smile of a fairy .

He dreamed a sweet dream .

He breathed his last (breath) just on his birthday .

He shouted his loudest (shout) .

He behaved his best on his wedding day .

1196 f . 有些动词 , 通常作不及物动词 , 但在以某个动作表示某种意思时 , 可以成为及物动词 :

He bowed his gratitude (=expressed his gratitude by bowing) .

She smiled a welcome (=expressed a welcome by smiling) .

They shouted applause .
He looked his thanks .
He laughed his consent .
He waved good-bye to us .
He whistled a melody .
He nodded his approval .

1197 g . 有些双宾动词的被动形式也可以看作是及物动词，特别是在表示人的宾语变成主语时，这时它有一个宾语（括号中给出了它们的大致意义）：

I was given (=got) a lot of praises .
He is taught (=studied) Malay .
I was shown (=saw) everything in the palace .
I was paid (=received) half of my salary .
I was served (=ate) only potatoes .
I was denied everything (=did not get anything) .
I was told (=learned) many things .

1198 h . 有些由不及物动词和介词构成的短语，可以看作是及物动词，因为它们后面可跟有宾语：

They laughed at (derided) me .
We wish for (=desire) something exciting .
They spoke about (=discuss) the situation after the war .
Let us look into (=study) this case .
I started from (=left) Tokyo on January 16 .
I looked for (=sought) a place where I could live in peace .

下面 i , j , k , l 和 m 中的成语可以看作及物动词，因为它们后面都可以跟有宾语。

1199 i . 由“及物动词+地点副词”构成的成语也可看作及物动词：

We passed over (=ignored) all the details .
He gave up (=abandoned) the plan of selling monkeys .
I put off (=delayed) visiting the doctor .
I have handed in (or sent in) (=tendered) my resignation .
He has to leave off (=stop) doing evil .

1200 j . 由“不及物动词+地点副词+介词”构成的成语也可看作及物动词：

They stood up for (=supported) John as their leader . I looked back on (=contemplated) the past .

I have gone through with (=finished) your novel . Turn aside from (=Avoid) evil .

They look down upon (=despise) poor people . We look up to (=respect) scholars .

What do you go in for (=want) ?

1201 k . 由“及物动词+名词+介词”构成的成语也可看作及物动词：

He takes no notice of (=neglects) my warning . He gave examples of (=exemplify) the use of the articles .

He gave an account of (=related) his adventure . They put

confidence in (=trust) nobody .

He took sides with (=favoured) our party .

The play caught the fancy of (=attracted) the public . I availed myself of (=accepted) his invitation . He engaged himself to (=served) a jeweller . Help yourself to (=Eat) the pork .

1202 1 . 由“系动词+形容词(或分词)+介词”构成的成语也可看作及物动词：

He is fond of (=likes) coffee .

I am sorry for (=regret) my mistake .

Mathematics is interesting to (=interests) me . This dress is suitable for (=becomes) her .

A man in this country is similar to (=resembles) any man in any other country .

They are void of (=lack) sympathy .

1203 m . 由“系动词+介词+名词+介词”构成的成语也可看成及物动词：

He is at a loss for (=lacks) words to express his gratitude .

He is in fear of (=dreads) debt .

He is at odds with his brother .

We are at peace with them .

3 . 系动词的另一种形式

1204 宾补动词的被动语态可以看作是系动词，因为随着语态的改变，宾语的补语可变成主语的补语，同时这类句子可以看成是两个句子的结合体（可参阅 1180）：

The floor was swept clean . (=The floor was swept and it became clean .)

John was chosen president . (=John was chosen and he became president .)

I was left an orphan . (=I was left [alone] and I became an orphan .)

He was beaten black and blue . (=He was beaten and he became black and blue .)

He was advised to work hard . (=He was advised and he was to work hard .)

He was taught to be careful . (=He was taught and he was to be careful .)

The rumour was found false . (=The rumour was found and it proved false .)

The enemy was seen coming . (=The enemy was seen and he was coming .)

4 . 各种类型的宾补动词

1205 a . 不及物动词有时可用作宾补动词，此时后面跟有一个自身代词，及形容词(或介词短语)表示谓语动词所表示动作的结果：

He slept himself sober . (=He slept so much that he became sober .)

She cried herself blind .

We walked ourselves lame .

He laughed himself red in the face .

I talked myself hoarse .

I ran myself out of breath . (= I ran so much that I be - came out of breath .)

I laughed myself into fits .

We worked ourselves into illness .

1206 b . 由一个不及物动词和一介词构成的成语有时可被看作是一个宾补动词，因为它不仅有宾语，还有宾语补语：

He signalled to (= signed) me to take a seat .

We appealed to (= requested) the government to help us .

We rely upon (= require) him to supply us with all necessities .

Everyone longs for (= desires) the nation to be free from political disturbances .

I prevailed upon (= persuaded) her to marry me .

. 动词的两种语态

A. 主动语态及被动词态的形式与意义

1207 下面两句话意思几乎相同：

1. John speaks English .
2. English is spoken by John
-

在第一句中，动词 speaks 表示主语 John 是动作的执行者，这时就说它为主动语态 (Active Voice)。第二句中的谓语 is spoken 表示主语 English 是动作的承受者，因此就说它处于被动语态 (Passive Voice)。

当主动结构的句子变为被动结构的句子时，有 3 个成分受到影响：主动语态的动词（如 speaks）成为被动语态的动词：be+过去分词（如 is spoken）；主动结构中的宾语（如第一句中的 English）成为被动结构中的主语（如第二句中的 English）；主动结构中的主语（如第一句中的 John）变成被动结构句子中 by 的宾语（如第二句中的 John）。

下面是几对主动结构和被动结构的句子：

1. Columbus discovered America. (主动)
2. America was discovered by Columbus. (被动)
1. The cat has eaten the fish. (主动)
2. The fish has been eaten by the cat. (被动)
1. Some one of us will do it. (主动)
2. It will be done by some one of us. (被动)

不过，由于被动语态的主要作用是不提主动结构句子中的主语（其理由下面再谈），因此在变为被动结构之后，由 by 引起的短语常不出现。例如，我们说 English is spoken in England. 而不说 English is spoken in England by them.

从以上所说看来，He teaches 和 He is taught 是不同的，而 John murdered 和 John was murdered 也是不同的。

B. 哪些动词可变为被动语态

1208 不是所有动词都可从主动语态变为被动语态的。在五类动词中，只有及物动词、双宾动词和宾补动词可以变为被动语态，不及物动词及系动词不能变成被动语态：

及物动词

He writes many letters every day .

Many letters are written every day .

They import a great deal of rice .

A great deal of rice is imported .

双宾动词（由主动变被动有几种方式）：

They send us magazines from time to time .

Magazines are sent (to) us from time to time .

We are sent magazines from time to time .

We have magazines sent (to) us from time to time .（这是表示被动语态的另一种方式）Teachers teach my class many subjects .

My class is taught many subjects .

Many subjects are taught (to) my class .

My class has many subjects taught (to) it .

宾补动词

People call him Fatty .

He is called Fatty .

They asked Mary to be careful .

Mary was asked to be careful .

有些动词尽管是及物动词，却不能变为被动语态，因为它们大多表示状态：

This new dress becomes her .（不能说 She is become by this new dress .）

This chair costs me twenty dollars .

Her work deserves the first prize .

This bulb doesn't fit my lamp .

Tom has a big house .

This box holds only a few articles .

We lack courage and patience .

Nobody resembles anybody else in face or in mind .

另一些及物动词跟有特殊的宾语，也不能变为被动语态：

He shouted his loudest .（不能说 His loudest is shouted .）

He breathed his last .

She nodded her approval .

I smiled my thanks .

She praised herself .

He ruined himself .

He wishes to be somebody . He enjoys taking pictures .

另一方面有些动词常用于被动语态：

She is said to be a movie star . (不能说 They say her to be ,
etc .)

Newton is known as a great physicist .

Davy is reputed to be the best doctor in this small town .

C. 各种动词形式的主动与被动语态

1209 下表表示了各种动词形式的主动与被动语态

1. 谓语动词 (陈述语气) :

			<u>主动语态</u>	<u>被动语态</u>
一般	——	She teaches me	I am (or you are , He	
现在时		(or you , him ,	is , They are)	taught .
		them) .		
现在	——	She has taught	I (or You , They) have	
完成时		me (or you ,	been taught ; He has	
		him , them) .	been taught .	
现在	——	She is teaching	I am (or You are , He	
进行时		me (or you ,	is , They are)	being
		him , them) .	taught .	
一般	——	She taught me	I was (or You were ,	
过去时		(or you , him ,	He was , They were)	
		them) .	taught .	
过去	——	She had taught	I (or You , He , They)	
完成时		me (or you ,	had been taught .	
		him , them) .		
过去	——	She was teach -	I was (or You were , 进行时	
		ing me (or you ,	He was , They were)	
		him , them) .	being taught .	
一般	——	She will teach	I shall (or You will ,	
将来时		me (or you ,	He will , They will)	
		him , them) .	taught .	
将来	——	She will have	I shall (or You will ,	
完成时		taught me (or	He will , They will)	
		you , him ,	have been taught .	
		them) .		
将来	——	She will be	I shall (or You will ,	
进行时		teaching me (or	He will , They will)	
		you , him ,	being taught .	
		them) .		

2. 谓语动词 (虚拟语气)

	<u>一般主动</u>	<u>一般被动</u>	<u>进行主动</u>	<u>进行被动</u>
现在	He writes	It be	He be	It be being
虚拟语气	it .	written .	writing it .	written .
过去	He wrote	It were	He were	It were being
虚拟语气	it .	written .	writing it .	written
将来	He should	It should	He should be	
虚拟语气	write it .		be written .	writing it .
过去完成	He had	It had been	He had been	writing it .
虚拟语气	written it .		written .	将来完成 He

should	It should	He should	
虚拟语气	have	have been	have been
	written it .	written .	writing .

条件句中主句的谓语形式

	<u>主动</u>	<u>被动</u>
一般时	I should (or would , could , might) do it .	It would (or could , might) be done .
完成时	I should (or would , could , might) have done it	It would (or could , might) have been done .

3 . 非谓语动词：不定式

	<u>主动</u>	<u>被动</u>
一般	to write	to be written
进行	to be writing	
完成	to have written	to have been written

4 . 非谓语动词：分词

	<u>主动</u>	<u>被动</u>
现在	writing	being written
过去		written
完成	having written	having been written

谓语动词：动名词

	<u>主动</u>	<u>被动</u>
现在	writing	being written
完成	having written	having been written

D . 表示动作或状态的被动语态

1210 被动语态不仅可表示动作，也可表示状态。在表示状态时，助动词 be 接近一个完全动词，而过去分词起形容词的作用：

The house was painted (动作) yesterday .

The house was beautifully painted (=had been beautifully painted) (状态) .

The store was closed (动作) at six every day .

The store was closed (=had been closed) (状态) when I passed by at night .

The glass was broken (动作) by his naughty child .

The glass is broken (=has been broken) (状态) .

Throw it away .

The village was deserted(=was abandoned) just before the enemy came .

The village was quite deserted (=empty) .

The child is dressed by his sister every evening . He is well-dressed .

His works will be preserved by his wife .

None of his works are preserved (=extant) .

Dinner is prepared by mother .

I am prepared (=ready) to start .

She was married by her uncle .

She is married (=not single) .

A new government is being established . (进行时一般都表示动作)

This usage is now firmly established .

The fish was eaten by the cat .

The fish has been eaten by the cat . (完成时常表示状态)

Do you know when the key was lost ?

I don't know . I found that it was lost when I arrived home .

His future is ruined by Mary .

He is bankrupt and ruined .

He got killed(or shot ,bitten ,punished ,used to it) . (“ got+过去分词 ” 通常表示动作或动作的开始，这一点比用 be 时更清楚，但只是用在口语中。)

I was astonished (or delighted) by his remarks .

I was astonished at and delighted (状态) with his remarks . (表示情绪的分词用作形容词的可能性最大，通常表示状态，除非后面跟一个由 by 引起的短语。)

He is worried(=sad) ,delighted(= happy) ,irritated(=angry) ,puzzled (=all at sea)

E . 什么时候使用被动语态

1211 除非有特殊理由，一般不要用被动语态。先观察下面四组例句：

1 . a . A salesgirl called Mary sold it for twenty cents .

Some teachers teach French in this school .

People are building a bridge across this river .

They speak Spanish in Cuba .

b . The doctor gave me an injection of vitamins .

The thief stole all her clothing .

The police arrested John and sent him to prison .

c . You stole my diamond .

My uncle killed a rich widow in her bathroom .

The principal has mismanaged the school .

John ruined her future .

d . Someone left a purse behind .

A man , whose name I forget , introduced this method into our country in 1950 .

在第 a 类句子中，主语不起太大作用，听话的人或读者对他们不感兴趣。第 b 类句子中主语不说也可以猜出。第 c 类句子中的主语不说出可能更明智。第 d 类句子的主语，说话人和听话人可能都不清楚。在这种情况下，最好把宾语变成主语，把主动语态变为被动语态：

a . It was sold for twenty cents .

French is taught in this school .

A bridge is being built across this river .

Spanish is spoken in Cuba .

b . I was given an injection of vitamins .

All her clothing was stolen .

John was arrested and sent to prison .

c . My diamond was stolen .

A rich widow was killed in her bathroom .

The school has been mismanaged .

Her future is ruined .

d . A purse was left behind .

This method was introduced into our country in 1950 .

被动语态可以用来避免提到主语，也可用来对主语加以强调，即把主语变为 by 的宾语，并放到句子末尾：

2 . Edison invented the electric light . (不强调任何词)

The electric light was invented by Edison (受到强调) .

Columbus discovered America . (不强调任何词)

America was discovered by Columbus (受到强调) .

Shakespeare wrote Hamlet .

Hamlet was written by Shakespeare .

Everyone commits this mistake .

This mistake is committed by everyone .

反过来说，把句子由主动结构变为被动结构，可对原来的宾语加以强调，成为主语：

3 . He spent three million dollars in an evening . (不强调任何词)

Three million dollars was spent in an evening . (强调主语)

In this city they are building the largest restaurant in all the world . (不强调任何词)

The largest restaurant in all the world is being built in this city . (强调主语)

使用被动结构还可避免在并列句中改变主语：

4 . He asked some passers - by and was told (不必变为 they told him) he should turn to the right .

He asked for her hand , but was laughed at (以此代替 she laughed at him) .

He respects others and is respected (以此代替 others respect him) . We must defeat them or be defeated (以此代替 they must defeat us) .

F . 被动语态相当于不及物动词的情况

1212 某些动词的被动语态和一个不及物动词意思差不多 : The river was frozen (=froze) in winter .

She was dressed (=dressed) beautifully .

The ceremony was begun (=began) at 9 a . m .

The house was burned (=burned) for three hours .

The cloth has been worn (=has worn) thin .

They were married (=married) in 1950 .

It was dried (=dried) .

Some of the dry leaves were blown (=blew) into my house .

The boat was upset (=upset .)

The plan was worked out (=worked out) with little success .

Their project was developed (=developed) very slowly .

Mary were starved (=starved) .

She was graduated (=graduated) three years ago .

The merchandise was sold out (=sold out) in an hour .

Many English words are derived (=derive) from Latin .

All the passengers were drowned (=drowned) .

The rumour was traced (=traced) back to a trivial incident .

The eggs will be hatched (=hatch) very soon .

G . 被动语态相当于 “ 主动语态+自身代词 ” 的情况

1213 某些动词的被动语态 , 和 “ 主动语态+自身代词 ” 的意义几乎相同 , 主语可以指人也可指物 :

Many secrets were discovered (= discovered themselves) .

My idea was conveyed (= conveyed itself) to them with ease .

The candle was burned (= burned itself) out at midnight .

The problem was resolved (= resolved itself) into nothing .

The matter was settled (= settled itself) at once .

All his efforts have been wasted (= wasted themselves) away .

The news was communicated to every reader .

Her face was bathed in tears .

His strength and patience has been exhausted .

In twenty years the population of this city was doubled .

He was enrolled (= enrolled himself) in the army .

He was associated (= associated himself) with drug dealers .

I can't be persuaded (= persuade myself) of his honesty .

I can't be assured of his readiness to help .

We have been refreshed with a warm bath .

He has been satisfied of the truth of his statement .

He has to be accustomed to this hard life .

One must be reconciled to one's fate .

He is worried about her .

He wants to be revenged on the murderer .

H. 另一种被动形式：

Have (或 Get) + 名词 (代词) + 过去分词

1214 “have+名词(代词)+过去分词”是另一种被动形式，但其意思和“be+过去分词”有些差别。试比较下面3种类型句中的这两种被动形式：

1. He wrote (及物动词) a letter. (他自己写)

A letter was written. (谁写的未说出)

He had a letter written. (他请别人写的)

John repaired (及物动词) a watch. —A watch was re - paired. —
John had a watch repaired.

2. They handed (双宾动词) him (间接宾语) a note (直接宾语). —
A note (主语，原句中的直接宾语) was hand - ed (to) him. —He (主
语，原句中的间接宾语) was handed a note. —He had a note handed
(to) him. (比上句好)

They played (双宾动词) John a trick. —A trick was played on
John. —John had a trick played on him. (比 John was played a
trick. 好)

3. They said (及物动词) something for (介词) John. —So
- mething was said for John. —They (主语，也是原句中的主语) had
something said for John. John (主语，原句中介词的宾语) had
something said for him.

John sent a letter to Mary. —A letter was sent to Mary. —

John had a letter sent to Mary. —Mary had a letter sent to her.

也可用 get 代替 have：

John got (=had) a letter written. (get 和 have 都含有让别人
做某事的意思)

I got (=had) my clothes washed.

She got (=had) her dress made.

但：

John had (不能说 got) his watch stolen. (= John's watch was
stolen.) (have 还可表示遭遇其事的意思，get 则只能表示“要某人
做某事”。手表被偷不是他的主观意图。)

The criminal had (不能说 got) his head cut off.

(比较：The judge got the criminal punished.)

· 带主动意思的被动形式

1215 有些被动形式有主动意思：

He is delighted(= joyful) ,satisfied(= content) ,exasperated(=angry) ,worried(= sad) ,dejected(= sorrowful) ,distracted(=mad) ,animated(=cheerful) ,disheartened (= gloomy) . (多数表示情绪动词的被动形式都有主动意思)

He is exhausted (= weary) , married (= not single) , pinched (=poor) ,reserved(=modest) ,puffed - up(= vain) ,unrestrained (=free) ,untrained(=ignorant) ,distinguished(= famous) . It is untarnished (=clean) , un - touched (=intact) , untrodden (=pathless) , unsettled (=unstable) , deserted (= lonely) , complicated (=not simple) , burnished (= bright) . (表示状态的被动形式没有被动意思或只有少许被动意思)

J. 带被动意思的主动形式

1216 另一方面有些主动形式却有被动意思：

1. 谓语动词：

The secret discovered itself (=was discovered) . (参阅 1213)

The matter settled itself (=was settled) at once . Don't worry yourself (=be worried) .

His energy has exhausted itself (=been exhausted) . The plan worked out (=was worked out) with success . (参阅 1212)

School will open (=be opened) next week .

The project developed (=was developed) slowly .

A candle burned (=was burned) in the corner .

The book reads well .

This article sells well .

The cloth wears well .

How does the house let ?

The door won't lock .

The house is building .

The cow is milking .

My work is finishing .

2. 非谓语动词：

There's nothing to buy (=to be bought) .

There's not a moment to lose .

There is some work to finish .

There are many lawyers to apply to .

The child wants spanking (= to be spanked) .

The story won't bear retelling .

The composition needs correcting .

This house requires repairing .

This novel is worth reading .

3. 形容词、介词短语和名词也可有被动意义：

The book is readable (=may be read) . (后缀-able 和-ble 有被动意义)

The root of this plant is eatable (=may be eaten) .

This theory is not defensible (=cannot be defended) .

No trees are visible (=can be seen) in the desert .

The matter is still in dispute (=being disputed) .

(有些介词短语有被动意义)

The bridge is in process (or course) of construction (=being constructed) .

Rice is in great demand (=greatly demanded) .

I am in his employ (=employed by him) .

The plan is under contemplation (=being contemplat - ed) .

The house is under repair .

The problem is under discussion (or under investiga - tion) .

可以把下面各对句子加以比较 :

This rich man is in possession of (= owns) a large garden .

The large garden is in the possession of (= is owned by) a rich man .

Miss White is in charge of this library .

The library is in (or under) the charge of Miss White .

General Dong is in command of the Second Division .

The Second Division is under (the) command of Gen - eral Dong .

Our army is in control of the city .

The city is in (or under) the control of our army .

Few know about his ill-treatment , punishment , and demotion (= being ill - treated , being punished , and being demoted) . (有些表示动作的名词可有被动意义)

He came to my aid (or assistance , rescue) . (= I was aid-ed , assisted , rescued .)

K. 非谓语动词的被动形式

1217 本章所给都是谓语动词的例子(1216 2, 3 两段除外), 适合谓语动词有关语态的规律, 也同样适用于非谓语动词, 尽管有时有些细微差别。

1218 1. 就谓语动词而言, 被动动词所表示动作的承受者必然是句子主语:

This "continent" was discovered by Columbus.

That "man" will be punished.

"He" is interested in learning new things.

"John" will be questioned.

"I" shall be examined again.

但就非谓语动词而言, 被动动词所表示动作的承受者可能是起形容词作用的分词或不定式所修饰的主体词:

This is the "continent" discovered by Columbus.

The "man" to be punished is gone. I want "him" to be arrested. "His" being interested in gardening is unknown to me. It's no use "for John" to be questioned.

也可以是句子的主语:

"I" am willing to be examined again.

"I" avoided being examined again.

也可能不说出来:

To be promoted is the result of many years of effort. Being insulted is worse than being killed.

1219 2. 用于被动语态的谓语动词可以是(1)及物动词, (2)双宾动词或(3)宾补动词:

(1) Many letters are written every day.

The case is being studied.

(2) The flowers are sent her by her lover.

The books were given her by her uncle.

(3) Mary is advised to talk less.

The city is always kept clean.

非谓语动词也如此:

(1) There are many letters to be written.

The case being studied concerns drug-smuggling.

(2) The flowers sent her are beautiful.

The books given her by her uncles were novels.

(3) Being advised to talk less, Mary keeps silent while we talk.

The city, to be always kept clean, has a thousand workmen to do the job.

1220 3. 用于被动语态的谓语动词可表示动作或状态: The enemy was surrounded (动作) by our troops yesterday.

The city is surrounded (状态) by trees.

非谓语动词也如此：

The enemy , surrounded (动作) by our troops yesterday ,
surrendered this morning .

The city ,surrounded(状态)by trees ,looks extremely beautiful .
1221 4 . 在谓语动词用于被动结构时 , by 引起的短语常常由于某些原因不说出：

The watch was stolen (by John) .

非谓语动词也如此：

The watch stolen (by John) cost fifty dollars .

1222 5 . 谓语动词的被动语态相当于一个不及物动词或相当于 “ 及物动词+自身代词 ”：

The ceremony was begun (=began) at 8 : 00 a . m .

His patience has been exhausted (=exhausted itself) .

非谓语动词也如此：

Begun (=beginning) at 8 : 00 a . m . , the ceremony is a great
event in this small village .

Having been exhausted (=exhausted itself) his patience changed
to recklessness .

1223 6 . 谓语动词还有另一种表示被动意思的方式：

He got his house repaired every year .

非谓语动词也如此：

He talked with masons about getting his house repaired .

第十三单元 介词

1224 英语中有 3 类介词：

1. 简单介词 (约有 70 个) : in , at , on , by , with , down , for , beside , along , across , into , toward

2. 分词介词 (约 15 个) : during , pending , following , bar-ring , considering , concerning , regarding , touching , speaking , judging , talking , excepting (参阅 1097f)

3. 成语介词 (约有 500 个) : out of , apart from , because of , by means of , with reference to , with a view to , on the verge of

. 简单介绍

A . 介词的宾语

1225 介词后面一般紧跟宾语。这种定语是名词或相当于名词的东西。
一共有 11 种类型。

1226 1 . 名词 :

I live in a small house .

We are walking along the street . I will answer you concerning
your request .

1227 2 . 代词 :

I spoke to them .

He is interested in it .

He wrote to me concerning himself .

1228 3 . 动名词 :

He spent the afternoon in swimming .

He learns English by reading English papers .

He insisted on going back to the hotel .

1229 4 . 不定式 :

He did nothing but (or except) (to) sleep .

Everything is allowed except to disturb others .

What does he do save (to) talk nonsense ?

I would sooner die than (to) yield .

I know better than to argue with such a rascal . (I will not
argue .)

I could do no otherwise than (to) laugh . (I could not but laugh .)

(不定式一般不能用作介词的宾语 , 只有在 save , but , ex- cept
和 than 后可以。在这样用时 to 常常省略。)

1230 5 . 疑问词+不定式 :

The problem of what to do is difficult to settle .

That depends on which method to use .

We have informed him of when to send the merchandise .

Have you received my letter regarding how to send the money ?

(在任何适当介词后这种结构都可使用)

1231 6 . 表示时间或地点的副词 : We all have trusted him till now
(or till recently) .

He has been ill since then .

He has never seen anyone since three years ago .

I'll love you for ever .

I shall have finished it by tomorrow .

We shall meet again before long .

He came from afar .

He has just returned from abroad .

New troubles arose from within (or from here , from all around ,
from hard by , from below , from else- where) .

比较 : He stood in here (or out there) . (这里 in 和 out 是副

词，不是介词。)

(能以副词作宾语的介词为数不多)

1232 7. 形容词：

In short, I have explained everything.

At first, he failed; but at last, he succeeded.

He has at least a thousand friends.

I have advised him in public and in private. He was ill of late.

(只在少数成语中可在介词后用形容词)

1233 8. 介词短语：

He came from across the river. (across=a place across)

He returned from beyond the sea. (beyond=a place beyond)

He was shot from behind the hedge.

He stole to behind the enemy.

The enemy suddenly appeared from just below our feet.

(两个介词之间夹入一个副词)

He has been ill since before the war. (before=a time before)

I write up to about midnight. (about=a time about)

He read till into the night.

He did not see her till about last Sunday.

I worked till after four.

They have stayed for above ten days.

The storm continued from before sunrise till after midnight.

He had arrived by soon after ten (两个介词之间夹入一个副词)

I bought it at over ten dollars. (over=a price over)

I can sell it for under your price.

I drove at from 30 to 40 miles an hour. (from...to=a distance from...to)

I drove at between 30 and 40 miles an hour. (between ...and=a distance between...and)

This job is done by from 40 to 50 men.

1234 9. That 引起的从句：

I know nothing except that (or save that) he stood at the spot where the murder was committed.

Man differs from other animals in that man can laugh and speak.

He is not content notwithstanding that (=although) he is rich.

I would study abroad but that I am poor.

I would have been a politician but that my father forbade me to.

(除了在 except, in, save, but, notwithstanding 之后, 介词后一概不能用 that 引起的从句作宾语。)

1235 10. 疑问词引起的从句：

They were disputing about where they should go.

He does not care about who will be the president.

He wants to be informed of which college is the best for him .
His success depends on whether he will work hard .
Have you any idea as to when the war will end ?

(疑问词前的介词有时可以省略)

1236 11 . 名词 (代词) + 形容词 (或相当于形容词的东西) :

这种宾语通常跟在介词 with 后 , 表示伴随的情况 :

He lay on the floor with his feet ice-cold (形容词) (with his feet ice-cold=his feet being ice-cold)

He is away from home with her alone (=she being alone) .

With the sun up (地点副词) , the birds twittered noisily .

She went to the market with her child behind .

He wandered about without a cent in his pocket (介词短语) .

With his wife out of temper , he can't stay at home .

He went to the party with his shoes shining and creaking (现在分词) .

The revolution broke out with millions of people screaming and shouting .

He came with a gift (which was) beautifully packed (过去分词) .

The police returned with a thief bound up in rope .

They sat face to face without a word said .

He returned home with a lot of problems to settle (不定式) .

He wandered over the village with a dog (which was) the size (=of the size) of a calf .

He studies Malay with Mary his only classmate (同位语) .

这种宾语间或可用在其他介词后面 :

" After " all said and done (过去分词) , this seems the best one .

Have you ever heard " of " an upright man abandoned by his friend ?

They celebrated that day " for " the freedom regained .

" In spite of " so much time and money spent , he remains a bachelor .

His success depends " on " him (or his) working (现在分词) hard .

The fact " of " John (or John's) marrying a woman of pleasure shocked his family .

His success depends " upon " the method to use (=which he will use) (不定式) .

B . 副词与介词的差别

1237 许多介词可以用作地点副词，不过有时不易看出它们是否用作副词。根本差别是，介词总跟有宾语，而副词后从不跟有宾语。不过，必须指出，如此副词，往往就是省略了宾语的介词。（省略是因为从上下文可猜出宾语是什么）：

带介词的句子

Children must keep (不及物动词) off this dangerous place .

I went before them .

He stood between us .

John wandered about the streets .

The animals live inside the cave .

He went up the mountain .

He dashed into the house .

We were left behind the

I took (及物动词) the luggage into the house .

He sailed his boat across the river .

Throw it outside the house .

Don't drag the cat up the staircase .

The old man (名词) across the street is my uncle .

Some people behind the scene support him .

The beautiful prospect before us is encouraging .

但地点副词除了表示地点，还可表示其他东西，这时就不能认为是把介词宾语省略：

How did it come about (=happen) ?

The plan fell through (=failed) .

The machine broke down .

How are you getting along ?

We have given up .

He has grown up .

Hold on !

带副词的句子

Children must keep off .

(在读者或听话人可以清楚离开什么地方时才这样说)

I went before .

He stood between .

John wandered about .

The animals live inside .

He went up .

He dashed in (不是 into) .

We were left behind .

I took the luggage in (不是 into) .

He sailed his boat across .

Throw it outside .

Don't drag the cat up .

The old man across is my uncle .

Some people behind support him .

The beautiful prospect before is encouraging .

1238 此外我们还应把“及物动词+地点副词”这种动词短语(如 :He kept down his temper . 和 He left behind his clothes and hat . 中的斜体词) 和 “不及物动词+介词” 这种动词短语 (如 :He walked down the

mountain . 和 He waited be- hind other passengers . 中的斜体词) 加以区别。这种短语是较难区别的 , 因为它们都跟有宾语。

一般说来 , 如果这样的动词短语包含 1) 一个通常用作及物动词的动词 , 或是 2) 一个通常用作副词的词 , 或 3) 有一个紧跟在动词后的名词或代词 , 这个短语就是 “ 及物动词+副词 ” 型的动词短语 :

及物动词+地点副词

1) He cast down the wedding ring . (cast 通常用作及物动词)

He carried on the business .

We cut off their retreat .

I put on my blue shirt .

Don't give up your plan .

We hand over the thief to the police . I can lay down my burden now .

He made (or delivered) over his property to his son .

I will take (or set , put) down what you say .

He filled up a form .

He locked in his naughty children .

He drew up his will .

He rubbed in some oil .

He bound (or stored , tore) up the document .

The revolution brought about a great change .

有些不及物动词间或可用作及物动词 :

They hissed down the speaker .

They shouted down the performer

We must think over this matter .

We haved talked over this problem .

I walked off my headache .

He blew off the candle .

We laughed down those who opposed us .

2) He bore away the palm . (away 通常用作副词)

He beat back his enemy .

He brought forward his proposal .

He cast out the uninvited guest .

He drew aside John and Mary .

He collected together all he needed .

3) I will see John off . (名词 John 紧跟在动词后面)

He called his secretary in .

He helped her up .

Our forefathers handed the traditions down to us .

Point the verb out . Put your shoes off before entering the temple .

I put my glasses on .

I will send the goods off tomorrow .

I shall take the property over .

Take your hat off .

Let's talk the plan over .

I can't put a word in .

1239 如果一个动词短语包含 4) 一个通常用作不及物动词的动词或 5) 一个通常用作介词的词，这种短语就是“不及物动词+介词”型的动词短语：

不及物动词+介词

4) He came across a valuable curio. (came 通常用作不及物动词)

They cling to their leader.

I conversed with some friends.

He crowed over John.

He cried for coffee.

They differ in opinion.

He has run into trouble in his job.

He went about the city.

The accident happened to John.

I hope for peace.

5) Look at the thing you did. (at 通常用作介词)

I listened to him.

He kept from gambling.

I cannot judge of him.

I talked with John.

We strove for independence.

He spoke against me.

He fell among thieves.

1240 如果一个动词短语中的动词可以是及物动词，也可以是不及物动词，后面的词可以是介词，也可以是副词，我们可以用下面的方法来决定它属于哪种类型。以 The car dashed down the mountain 为例。如果 down 是介词，就是“车往山下冲”，如果它是副词，就是“把山冲倒”，显然是“车往山下冲”，因此它是介词，这个动词短语是“不及物动词+介词”。再看另一句 We can't get under the fire. 如果 under 是介词，就是“到达火下面”，如果是副词，则表示“把火控制住”(=get the fire under control)。显然这里 under 是作副词，这个动词短语属“及物动词+副词”型。

1241 如果动词短语是“及物动词+副词”，在宾语长时，必须把宾语放在副词后面：

He gave up the plan which he had worked on for many years.

They hissed down the speaker, manager of Asia Company.

How can he keep under a woman who has been tolerated for many years?

如果宾语很短，它可以放在副词之后，也可放在副词之前：

He gave up his plan. He gave his plan up.

They hissed down the speaker. They hissed the speaker down.

He can't keep under his wife. He can't keep his wife under.

如果宾语是一个人称代词，则必须把它放在副词前面：

He gave it up. (而不是 He gave up it.)

They hissed him down.

He can't keep her under.

但如果这个短语是“不及物动词+介词”，则必须把宾语放在介词后面（除去下章提到的一些特殊情况）：

He went about the street . (Right)

He went the street about . (Wrong)

He sailed along the river . (Right)

He sailed the river along . (Wrong)

He fell among thieves . (Right)

He fell thieves among . (Wrong)

C . 介词的位置

1242 从上面所有例句中可以看出，介词通常放在它的宾语的前面。

He is going to school .

He is interested in playing music .

在下述情况下，特别是在口语中，它可放在它的宾语的后面：1 . 宾语在说话人脑中占有最重要地位：

Your brazen face , I will never look at again . (正常说法 : I will never look at your brazen face again .)

Any matter , political or social , he seems to have got tired of .

Football , I am too old for .

Such a trifle , they thought little of .

Smoking or drinking , I don't care for .

2 . 它的宾语是一个疑问词：

Who is this gift for ? (书面体 : For whom is this gift ?)

Whose girl did he fall in love with ?

What are you talking about ?

“ Go there ! ” “ What for ? (=What do I go there for ?) ”

(书面体 : For what ?)

“ Listen ! ” “ What to ? ”

“ I have been to the pictures . ” “ Who with ? ”

“ He has been married . ” “ Who to ? ”

3 . 它的宾语是名词从句中的一个疑问词：

I asked who this gift was for . (书面体 : I asked for whom this gift was .)

Say whose daughter he fell in love with .

Mind what you are talking about .

4 . 它的宾语是一个起名词作用的不定式短语中的一个疑问词：

I asked who to apply to (=Who I should apply to) .

(疑问词+不定式+介词) (书面体 : I asked to whom to apply .)

Mind what to talk about .

I wonder what to live on in this desert .

Tell me which friend to cooperate with .

5 . 它的宾语是一个关系代词：

I know a man whom you can believe in . (书面体 : I know a man in whom you can believe .)

The mountain (which) you are looking at is the most beautiful in Japan .

He is not such a boy (as) she is interested in .

There is not a single subject that he pays attention to .

That is worse than (what) I have any idea of .

This is the environment (which) I have grown up in .

6 . 它的宾语是一个表示时间或空间的介词，而且用在 all 后或

round , through , 或 over 前 : He travelled all the year round .

He gambled all the night through .

He travelled all the world over .

7 . 宾语是由 there , here 或 where 构成书面语 , 或法律用语中的合成词 :

thereabout (s) =about that.....hereabout (s)

[ten dollars or thereabout]=about this place

thereafter=after that.....hereafter=after this

thereby=by that means.....hereby=by this means

thereto=to that.....hereto=to this

therefore=for that reason

thereof=of that.....hereof=of this

thereupon=upon that , then..... hereupon=on this

therewithal=with that , besides.....

.....herewith=with this

Whereabout (s) =about what place ? about which (关系代词)

whereby=by what ? by which (关系代词)

wherefore=for what reason ? for which (关系代词) reason

whereof=of what ? of which or whom (关系代词) whereas=seeing that , while

D . 介词的亲和力

1 . 以介词开头及以介词结尾的短语

1243 介词是用来把名词（或相当于名词的东西）和动词、另一名词或一形容词连系起来的词。这个名词（或相当于名词的东西）称作介词的宾语。这个动词、另一名词或形容词，为了方便，可称作介词的相关词（Related Word）：

He went（动词作相关词）to the hospital（名词作宾语）。

I spoke with John .

The headmaster（名词作相关词）of my school（名词作宾语）is a kind man .

The hut across the river looks pretty .

He is angry（形容词作相关词）at her breaking（相当于名词的东西作宾语）the cup .

John is charmed with her beauty .

这介词和宾语的关系有时比它和相关词的关系更密切。在 He came on Sunday . They are at war . She is with child .

He made mistakes on purpose . 中，on 和 Sunday 结合，at 和 war 结合，with 和 child 结合，on 和 purpose 结合，而构成短语或成语。可以说用 on 是靠 Sunday 决定的，用 at 是靠 war 决定的等等。这样我们就有了以介词开头的短语（通常称作介词短语）。但是介词也可和它的相关词有更密切的关系，在 He persisted in his decision . He tied his horse to the tree . He is afraid of strangers . Our dependence on a foreign country is a shame . 中，介词和它的相关词结合起来构成成语或习用语。可以说用 in 是靠不及物动词 persisted 决定的，用 to 是靠及物动词 tied 决定的，用 of 是靠形容词 afraid 决定的，用 on 是靠名词 dependence 决定的。这样我们就有了以介词结尾的短语。

介词有时属中性，对哪一边都没有特别的偏向（亲和力）。这时可以把以介词开始的短语（或称介词短语）作为一个单元。例如：

He got it from his uncle .（是 got from 还是 from his uncle 是一个单位？我们不能十分肯定。但说 from his uncle 是一个单位是没有错的，比说 got from 是一个单位强。）

He went with John .

The pictures of Mary are beautiful .

The book on the desk is a dictionary .

2 . 以介词开头的短语之用法

1244 以介词开头的短语（包括有特殊亲和力的和中性的）（斜体字）都用来修饰 a . 名词，b . 动词，c . 形容词或 d . 整个句子（用黑体字表示）。这些短语都起形容词或副词作用：

a . I saw the photo of his father . The picture on the wall is beautiful . The man beside John is an artist .（这些短语必须紧跟它们修饰的名词，如 photo , picture . 它们起形容词的作用。）

The book is of little use . The tragedy seems at an end .

They are at war . He set them at war . He brought the tragedy

to an end . (这些介词短语都放在系动词或宾补动词后面 , 起主语补语或宾语补语的作用。)

b . He came here on Monday . On Monday he came here .

They talked behind us . He learned English with me . (这样的介词短语都放在所修饰动词的前面或后面 , 如 came 和 talked , 它们起副词的作用。)

c . He is cruel to the extreme . He is in some degree dishonest and unreliable . (这些介词短语可以紧挨着放在所修饰的形容词前面或后面 , 它们起副词的作用。)

d . In a word , I have told you everything .

On the whole , the situation seems very serious . (这种短语通常放在句子开头 , 它们起副词的作用。)

3 . 以介词结尾的短语 (及物动词型短语) 之用法

1245 另一方面 , 如果介词和它们的相关词 (a . 动词 , b . 形容词或 c . 名词) 有更大的亲和力 , 我们就有 7 种类型的短语 , 都以介词结尾 , 都起及物动词的作用 , 有自己的宾语 , 因此可以称为及物动词型短语。在下面的各个句子中 , 第一个括号表明这种及物动词型短语在意义上接近一个单一的及物动词 , 第二个括号 (如果有的话) 说明这个及物动词型短语的详细结构 :

1246 a . 动词 + (副词或名词) + 介词 :

1) He may laugh at (=ridicule) (不及物动词 + 介词)

my project . (laugh at 以 project 作宾语)

We have been talking about (=discussing) this matter .

You can count upon (=trust) my assistance .

2) We must keep away from (=avoid) (不及物动词 + 地点副词 + 介词) those people .

He ran away with (=stole) a million dollars .

They look down on (=despise) humble people .

3) I paid attention to (=watched) (及物动词 + 名词 + 介词) his tricks .

She must take care of (=mind) her children .

He made fun of (=ridiculed) you .

但是 :

He threw a glass at me . (这和上面 3 类句子不同 , threw a glass at 不是成语。threw 和 at 间虽有亲和力 , 但 glass 与它们的关系比较远。) 再如 :

He tied his horse to the tree .

He sold his house for tens of thousands of dollars .

He compared Paris with London .

4) We are against (=oppose) (系动词 + 介词) any form of slavery .

He is above (=despises) money matters .

We are for (=support) John as our chairman .

注意 : 有许多介词短语可用在系动词后。

He is at grips with (=is fighting) his enemy .

He is in love with (=loves) her .

He is in need of (=needs) money .

Good luck is in store for (=is awaiting) us .

1247 b . (系动词)+形容词+介词 :

5) John is fond of (=loves) (系动词+形容词+介词) wine and women .

He is charmed with (=enjoys) the beautiful scene .

He is doubtful of (=doubts) my sincerity .

6) He is a man fond of (=分词 loving) (形容词+介词) wine and women . (这种短语和前面句子中的短语不同,前面是谓语动词短语,而这种“形容词+介词”的短语,相当于一个分词[例如 loving],修饰它前面的名同[例如 man]。不过这种分词仍然起及物动词的作用。)

John , doubtful of (=doubting) my sincerity , changed his mind .

Charmed with (=Enjoying) the beautiful scene , he forgot to go home .

1248 c . 名词+介词 :

7) Indifference to (=动名词 ignoring) (名词+介词) pleasure and pain is not human . (这个“名词+介词”的短语不是谓语动词,而应看作是相当于动名词—如 ignoring—的东西,可以用作主谓、宾语等,但这种动名词仍然是及物动词。)

I can't understand their hostility to (= hating) all for-eigners .

His delight in (=loving) poetry is only natural .

注:还有一种及物动词型短语,由及物动词和地点副词构成。例句见 1233。

4 . 动词后跟介词与不跟介词的情况

1249 有时“不及物动词+介词”和用作及物动词的同一动词在意义上和作用上都没有多少差别,甚至全无差别。例如:We fought with them .和 We fought them . 基本上是一样的。He admitted to doing something wrong . 和 He admitted doing something wrong . 也是一样的。下面列出了这类特殊动词:

He admitted (to) (=acknowledged) doing something wrong .

We approached (to) (=came near) our destination .

He has approved (of) (= O . K . 'd) my proposal .

He attained (to) power (or prosperity , wisdom , perfection , proficiency , old age) .

He will attest (to) (= bear witness to) my ability and conduct .

He ceased (from) (= stopped) working with the firm .

He confessed (to) (= acknowledged) doing something wrong .

Let me drink (to) your success (=wish you success) .

He has to flee (or fly) (from) the town .

I forbore (from) troubling anybody .

His voice jarred (on) me .

We judge (of) a person by his appearance .
 He jumped (over) the hedge .
 He lamented (for or over) (=expressed sorrow for) her death (or his misfortune) .
 He leaped (over) the ditch .
 I never mock (at) anyone .
 He mourned (for or over) (= expressed sorrow for) her death (or his loss) .
 He owned (to) his fault .
 We partook (of or in) (= took a share of) the meal (or the benefit) .
 He passed (by) my house .
 Sunlight penetrated (or pierced) (into) the mist .
 He pondered (on or over) (=seriously considered) the plan .
 He repented (of) getting married so hurriedly .
 He roamed (over or about) the world .
 he ruled (over) a kingdom .
 I shared (in) his troubles and his joys (or the cost with him) .
 He sought (for or after) wealth and fame .
 Nobody can stand (for) (=tolerate) his bad manners .
 He succeeded (to) John in his office .
 He will testify (to) (=bear witness to) my ability and conduct .
 We will treat (of) this subject later .
 He trod (on) my toes .
 Don't trust (in) (=believe in) this man .

1250 但在多数情况下,这两钟结构是有差别的。例如:He stabbed his enemy . stabbed 表示一个完成的动作,而在 He stabbed at his enemy 中,stabbed at 只表示有这种意图。同样,grasp ,strike ,catch ,shoot , snap , bite , get , guess , reach , and clutch 也如此。

He shot (at) the thief .
 The dog bit (at) the visitor .
 He (person) admitted me into the club . He admitted (=received as true) this fact .
 It (thing) admitted of no choice (or no excuse , no doubt , no delay) . (=There cannot be any choice...)
 He (person) allowed (=permitted) me to choose . He does not allow smoking .
 It (thing) allowed of (=admitted of) no choice (or no excuse , no doubt , no delay) .
 He answered (=replied to) me .
 He will answer for (=be responsible for) my debt .
 He arranged flowers (or the books in two classes) .
 We arranged (for) a picnic (or a wedding) .

He asked permission (or favour, leave, a high price, a question, my name, the way) .

He asked for Mary (or money, milk) .

He attended (=was present at) the lecture (or school, a meeting) . (名词为 attendance)

He attended to (=gave thought to) his work (or his affairs, my wants, my remarks) . (名词为 attention)

He attended on (=waited on) the patient (or his master) .

She cannot bear (=cannot endure) the sight of him (or the smell, the sound) .

She bears with (=is patient with) his importunities (or his temper) .

He begged your pardon (or favour, permission) .

He begged (for) money, (of) his friend to help him .

Let us begin this book . (=read its first part before other parts) .

Let us begin with this book (=read this book before other books) .

I believe him (or it) (=believe that his remark [or it] is true) .

I believe in him (or it) (=believe that he [or it] is good) .

The city boasts (=is proud of) its beautiful bridge .

He boasts of (=speaks proudly of) his large country-house .

He called me (=required my presence, telephoned to me) .

He called to (=shouted loudly to) me . He called at (=came to) my house He called for (=demanded) money .

He called on me (=paid me a short visit) .

I will consult (=seek advice from) a specialist about this matter .

I will consult with (=talk with) my relatives and friends about this matter .

He entered a house (or a school, a club) . (地点)

We entered into details (or conversation, a contract) . (抽象名词)

I entered on (=began) my duty (or my career, a new life) in 1969 . (抽象名词)

He escaped (from) death (or an epidemic, starvation, being punished, being discovered) . (抽象名词)

He escaped from the prison (or the world) . (地点)

The birds escaped from the cage .

I fear (=am afraid of) John .

I fear for (=am anxious on behalf of) John .

He felt my pulse (=examined it by touching) .

He felt for the matches (=tried to find them by groping) .

He went on writing (=continued to write) .

He went on with his writing (=continued to write after an interruption) .

I forget the number . (不记得)

I forget about the number . (记不清楚)

I hear her (=I hear her voice) .

I have not heard about her (=learned anything about her) .

I have not heard from her (=received letters from her) .

He tried to improve (=make better) this product .

He has improved on (=produced another thing better than) this product .

He inquired my name (or the reason , the way) .

He inquired of some person about something , inquired in-to (=investigated) the case , inquired after my health .

He joined a club (or his friends) . (人)

He joined in our conversation (or dancing , the game , a walk) . (活动)

I know John . (认识)

I know of (or about) John . (不太熟悉)

He learned his lessons .

He learned of (=was informed of) her death .

He lectured (=scolded) John .

He lectured on (=made a speech on) an interesting subject .

He meditated (=considered , decided on) revenge .

He meditated , on (=thought quietly about) the revenge he had taken .

He tried to meet the problem , decided to meet me at the air-port , had to meet his obligations , met some friends on the street , would like to meet a new friend . (多是有意动作)

He met with success (or praise ; ill - treatment , an accident , obstacles , a great loss , a storm) . (偶然遭遇)

My memory (or My heart , My eyesight) (thing) failed me . (=I lost my memory , lost courage , lost my eyesight) .

He (person) failed in (= did not succeed in) his business (or the examination) .

Don't offend (=make angry) anybody . (人)

Don't offend against good manners (or the law , traditions) . (抽象名词)

He operated (=managed) a machine (or a store , a farm) . (物)

The doctor operated on (=performed a surgical operation on) John . (人)

He paid the price (or the tuition , my wage , the rent , the taxi fare , the fee , his debt . the bill , the tax , the fine , the rate , the interest , the protection [money] , the postage , the damage) . (款项)

He paid for the goods(or his schooling ,the food ,the taxi) . (货物或服务)

He played (at) cards , football , hide - and - seek , music , Ham-let . (按照规则)

He played with a dog (or a gun) . (不按照规则)

He practises typing (or dancing , music , English) . (抽象名词)

He practises on the typewriter (or the piano) , with the word (or chopsticks) . (普通名词)

He prepared a dinner (or a speech , a lesson) .

He prepared for a trip (or the examination) , against something unpleasant .

He pretended (=claimed falsely) illness .

He pretended to (=claimed) intelligence (or honesty , the throne) .

He provided someone with things necessary .

He provided for his family (or his future , my education , their comfort) , against something undesirable .

He pulled the rope .

He pulled at the rope (=gave a tug at it) .

He read a paper (or a book , a letter , a document) . (书面材料)

He read about (or of) the accident (or the President , a historical fact) . (事或人)

He remarked (=noticed) the difference of these two .

He remarked on (=commented on) the management of our school .

He decided to revenge the victim . (为.....报仇)

He decided to revenge on the murderer . (向.....报仇)

He searched (=examined) my luggage (or my house) .

He searched for (=looked for) smuggled goods (or a criminal) .

He spoke English (or the truth , a falsehood , his mind , a good word for me) .

He spoke about (or of) someone (or something) .

He spied (=saw) the dog stealing the meat .

He spied on (=kept watch on) every movement of the enemy .

Let us start (=begin) our journey .

He started with (=began with) a thousand dollars and made a million .

They stormed (=attacked) the enemy's fortress .

He stormed at (=raged against) me .

He talked sense (or nonsense , shop , politics , rubbish , baby , English) .

He talked about some person or thing .

He told the news (or a tale , a story , the secret , a lie , a falsehood , a joke , the difference , black from white) .

He told of someone or something .
 He treats everybody (person) well (or badly) .
 This book treats of (=deals with) education .
 Just taste this food .
 He has never tasted of (=experienced) peace or happiness .
 It tasted of garlic .
 He trusted me with money (entrusted me with money) .
 He trusted (in) me (=confided in me) .
 He watches television every Sunday .
 She must watch over (=guard) the house
 He is watching for (=on the look-out for) a chance .
 He witnessed (=was present at) the accident .
 He witnessed to (=testified to) the truth of John's statement .

5 . 同根词后跟同样介词

1251 在这钟及物动词型的短语中，词根相同但词类不同的词通常都跟相同的介词：

He depended (动词) upon his father for food and clothing .
 He was dependent (形容词) upon his father for food and clothing .
 His dependence (名词) upon his father for food and clothing was true when he was very young .
 He lived dependently (副词) upon his father for food and clothing .
 He differs (动词) from his brother .
 He is different (形容词) from his brother .
 His difference (名词) from his brother is startling .
 He behaves differently (副词) from his brother .
 He didn't separate (动词) from her till midnight .
 They have been separate (形容词) from each other for ten years He can't bear separation (名词) from her .
 He can't live separately (副词) from her .
 He triumphed (动词) over his enemy .
 He was triumphant (形容词) over his enemy .
 I heard about his triumph (名词) over his enemy . He inquired (动词) into the case .
 He made an inquiry (名词) into the case .
 I invited (动词) him to the party .
 I sent him an invitation (名词) to the party .
 He is angry (形容词) with me .
 His anger (名词) with me is often due to a trifle .

1252 但是也有一些不同情况。某些词的不同词类要跟不同介词：

He acted according (形容词) to the rules .
 He acted in accordance (名词) with the rules .
 She is affectionate (形容词) to me .
 She has an affection (名词) for me .

This alternates (动词) with that .
The alternative (名词) to this is that .
He is ambitious of becoming somebody .
He has a great ambition for becoming somebody .
He is capable of making a bird-cage .
He has the capacity for the task .
He is compassionate to her .
He felt compassion for her .
He took compassion on her .
He is confident of my sincerity .
He has confidence in my sincerity .
He is contemptuous of art . He feels contempt for art .
This colour contrasts well with that .
This colour is a contrast to that .
He delighted in music .
He was delighted with music .
This criticism will derogate from his reputation .
This criticism will be derogatory to his reputation .
He was descended from Confucius .
He was a descendant of Confucius .
He is desirous of peaceful life .
He has a desire for peaceful life .
He is fond of praise .
He has a fondness for praise .
It hindered us from progress
It was a hindrance to progress .
He is infatuated with an actress .
His infatuation for an actress got him into trouble .
He is partial to tropical fruits .
He shows a partiality for tropical fruits .
He prepared for a journey .
He packed all things preparatory to journey .
He prided himself on his wealth .
He was proud of his wealth .
His pride in his wealth is only natural .
The accident resulted from neglect .
The accident is the result of neglect .
He is not respectful to his teachers .
He has no respect for his teachers . I became surety for my friend .
I was sure of his honesty .
He sympathizes with sufferers .
He is sympathetic to sufferers . (with 可用 , 但用得很少。)
He has great sympathy for them .

The firm closed up for want of funds .
The firm is wanting in commercial ethics .

E . 介词的省略

1253 在指示形容词 (every , each , any , all , this , that , one , the , last or next) 前 , 时间介词 in , at , on 通常省略 :

He came every day . (但是 : on Sunday , on July 4)

You can come anyhour . (但是 : at seven o'clock)

He thought of her each minute .

He plays all day .

I cannot go out this month . (但是 : in January)

He was ill that year . (但是 : in 1956)

He was ill (on) the day the war broke out ,

He was ill (in) the winter he lived at a village .

He came last week and will come again next Monday .

1254 在表示时间长度和距离的名词前 , 介词 for 可以用 , 也可以省略 :

He has been waiting (for) three hours .

I have learned English (for) five years .

I wish to talk with you (for) a moment .

They have been married (for) thirty years .

We have to walk (for) five miles . I drove (for) three hundred miles yesterday .

The cat jumped (for) ten feet up to the fence .

If you move (for) an inch , you are a dead man .

1255 在系动词与 age , colour 这类名词之间 , 介词 of 通常省略 :

We are (of) the same age .

The book is a red colour .

The animal seems to be the size of the tiger .

My house is a different shape from yours .

This book is six dollars .

This bridge is no use .

1256 在下面这类句子中 , 介词 with 都省略掉 :

He stood hat in hand (=with a hat in his hand) .

He was coming gun on shoulder .

He waited at the corner , pipe in mouth .

1257 在下面这类句子中 动名词前的介词 in 常常省略 He has tedious work (in) selecting them .

I spent three years studying it .

He has difficulty getting it .

We took turns sleeping .

He did effective work exposing the enemy .

There is no need informing him of it .

He is busy reading .

He is helpful cooking the dinner .

Many lives are lost resisting the enemy .

· 成语介词

1258 像 because of , in accordance with , in the interest of , for the sake of 等成语介词是一些和简单介词起同样作用的习用语。它们大多由三四个词组成, 由 at , by , in 或 on 开头, 以 of , with 或 to 结尾, 一些包含定冠词 the , 另一些则不包含它。

1259 它们有 3 类, 一类和它们的宾语一道, 起副词作用, 修饰动词或全句 1) , 另一些在系动词或宾补动词后作补语 2) , 有少数兼有这两种作用 3) :

1) He failed in consequence of his neglect .

In contrast to his silly face , he handles things cleverly .

He works for the sake of our benefit .

With regard to this matter , I have nothing to say .

As the result of this delay , our plan was entirely defeat-ed .

2) He is in need of food .

They are in danger of utter failure .

We keep in touch with them .

We found him in need of food .

He put them in danger of utter failure .

3) He died in the midst of his sweet dream .

He is in the midst of danger .

He worked in the service of man .

He was in the service of the King .

He rode at the head of his men .

He was at the head of the club .

He lives next door to me .

This act is next door to murder .

1260 成语介词和它们的宾语一道, 都可起形容词的作用, 修饰一个名词, 不管它们通常用作副词(状语) 1) , 或是用作补语 2) :

1) This statement ahead of the event proved true .

The death of plants for lack of water is common in this season .

There will be a performance in aid of wounded soldiers .

The arrival of our boat in advance of the others was something unexpected .

2) The boy in the employ of that firm is my son .

All refugees in need of clothes will receive aid .

A man in danger of being drowned will catch at even a straw .

The people next door to me are very kind .

1261 和简单介词不同, 成语介词后只能跟几类宾语:

He succeeded by force of patience (名词) .

He stood in the midst of them (代词) .

He asked people to do it instead of doing (动名词) it himself .

A question arose as to when to start (疑问词 + 不定式) .

They did not agree with regard to who would take the

responsibility (疑问词 + 从句) .

1262 和简单介词不同, 成语介词大多属中性, 即既不与前面的词也不和后面的词有特别的亲和力, 从上面的例句中即可看出。但通常用作补语的成语介词和前面的系动词 (特别是 be) 常有较强的亲和力。如果说系动词和后面的简单介词起及物动词的作用, 系动词和后面跟的成语介词也如此:

He is in possession of (=has) many acres of land .

He is in need of (=needs) comfort .

He will be at the head of (=head) the Club .

The country is on the verge of (=is nearing) starvation .

He is in the good graces of (=pleases) his boss . 但要找到意义正好与成语介词相同的及物动词有时并不容易, 如下面句子中的成语介词就不易换成及物动词:

This is not in the power of man .

The sailors were at the mercy of the winds .

His extravagance is out of proportion to his pocket .

The decoration is out of keeping with the room .

1263 至于成语介词的位置, 也像简单介词一样, 在一般情况下, 都放在它们宾语的前面, 但在下面 3 种情况下, 偶尔也可放在宾语后面较远处:

1) 宾语为疑问词:

Who is John at daggers with?

What is he up to?

Which boy is Catherine in love with?

2) 宾语为名词从句中的疑问词:

I do not know whom John is at daggers with .

I asked what he was in need of .

He tells me which candidate they are in favour of .

3) 宾语为关系代词:

The country (which) we are at war with has been aggressive for centuries .

Her husband , whom she has been out of touch with for many years , seems to be in France .

第十四单元 连词

. 连词的分类

1264 从形式上看,连词可以分为简单连词(Simple Conjunctions),如:and, but, if;副词连词(Adverbial Conjunctions),如:then, besides, still;短语连词(Conjunction-Phrases),如:as yet, or rather, on the other hand;和关联连词(Correlative Conjunctions),如:so...that..., either...or..., not only...but...间或后面跟某种副词,如:and...as well, but... all the same。

1265 根据用法,连词可以分为并列连词(Coordinate Conjunctions),如:and, but, besides, 和从属连词(Subordinate Conjunctions),如:than, then, if。

．并列连词

A. 并列连词的一般特点

1. 并列连词连接单词、短语或分句

1266 并列连词(下面的黑体字)用来连接两个或更多的 a. 单词;

b. 短语, c. 单词及短语, d. 分句(见下面的斜体字);

a. **he is healthy and handsome.** (单词与单词)

He came and sat down and spoke to me.

b. **The butterflies flew over our heads and about the flowers.** (短语及短语)

They want to win the war, but to pay no price.

We lived in the countryside, merely reading novels, (or) playing games, or telling stories.

c. **I feel funny and out of sorts.** (单词及短语)

I declare this seriously and with confidence.

I devote my spare time to music, books, or playing ten-nis.

d. **I played the violin and she sang.** (分句及分句)

I want to go to college but my parents want me to get married.

Do not move or you are a dead man.

I know that he has been arrested and that he is in prison. (名词从句及名词从句)

e. **Let's take him to the hospital or something.** (分句及单词)(少见)

You can do anything you like and welcome.

2. 并列连词连接同一级别的词

1267 从上面例句中可以看出,并列连词必须连接同一词类的词:在 a 组例句中连接形容词与形容词,动词与动词,副词与副词;在 b 组例句中,连接介词短语与介词短语,不定式短语与不定式短语,分词短语与分词短语;在 c 组例句中,连接单词与短语——形容词与形容词短语,副词与副词短语,名词与名词短语;在 d 组例句中,连接分句与分句,名词从句与名词从句;在 e 组例句中,连接单词或短语与分句,但这种连接法是例外情况。

3. 关联连词

1268 a. 关联连词(下面例句中的黑体字)必须放在它所连接的两个词(组)中间, b. 除了连词外,还有某些副词或副词短语(见下面斜体字)可放在第一词(组)之前, c. 这些副词或副词短语间或放在第二词(组)后面。这种与副词或副词短语一起用的连词称为关联连词。

a. **John and Mary are my children.**

He looks dirty but happy.

b. **He is at once honest and clever.**

One must be either hard-working or economical.

He is not only (or not just) a soldier, but also a writer.

On the one hand he tried to smuggle drugs, and on the other he tried to bribe the officials.

I have never (副词可以放在分句内而不是放在它前面) been in

Africa , nor has my brother .

c . He is honest and clever , too .

That is not cheap and not useful either .

He had failed several times ,but he persisted in his plan all the same .

4 . 并列连词前的标点

1269 在并列连词前应用什么标点？

a . 单纯的简单并列连词为数不多，只有 and ,but ,or(nor) ,so .在它们连接较长句时，前面通常加一个逗号：

I went and he return . 但是—I went to Europe on business last spring , and he returned from Europe this summer .

It is neither easy nor difficult . 但是—Neither can I express my opinion , nor can he say anything .

b . 副词连词是那些同时用作副词和连词的词。它们只用来连接分句，而不连接单词或短语。（但前面若有单纯连词，它们也可以连接单词或短语。）它们前面可加逗号或分号：

He rarely meets people , [或；] therefore he feels shy .

He is young , [或；] however he knows more than he seems to .

He has lived on this island for thirty years , [或；] besides he has married a native woman .

He has seen much of the world , [或；] still he is eager to see more .

单纯连词常可放在副词连词前面，这时它前面可加逗号：

He rarely meets people , and therefore he feels shy .

He has seen much of the world , but still he is eager to see more .

但若两个分句（或其中一个）中有一逗号，则应用分号代替逗号：

He rarely meets people , either boys or girls ; therefore he feels shy .

He's young ; however , he knows more than he seems to .

Unlike his brother , he has seen much of the world ; still he is eager , if possible , to see more .

副词连词和短语连词（不包括 and ,but 及 or ）有时可放在主语后面。这时这个主语前面应用一个分号，甚至句号：

John is seriously ill . Some of his best friends and relatives , therefore , are coming to see him .

The storm was terrible ; few houses , however , were damaged .

He made many mistakes ; his younger sister , on the other hand , made very few .

Not only her son died , she herself went mad , too (or as well) . (这两个词特意放在句末)

c . 并列连词若有意把前面一系列句子（看作一个整体）和后面的一个或几个句子（看作一个整体）连接起来，则此并列连词前面还可用句号：

Bob got up at five every morning . He would read newspapers

while eating his breakfast . It was about eight when he started for the office . But today is Sunday . He wants to sleep as much as possible .

d . 有时一串平行的短句可用逗号连接起来 , 而不用连词 , 看起来是像逗号的滥用 , 然而却是对的 :

We need wisdom , we need money , we need power .

One child isn't enough , two are just right , three are too much .

Paupers want to be rich men , rich men want to be kings , kings want to be gods .

B. 连系连词

1270 并列连词有 6 种,它们是:连系连词(Copulative Conjunctions),选择连词(alternative Conjunctions),相反连词(Adversative Conjunctions),推论连词(Illative Conjunctions),解释连词(Explanatory Conjunctions)和列举连词(Particular - izing Conjunctions)。

1271 连系连词,亦称“and-连词”,表示“加上”。

1. 连系连词可连接单词或短语:

a. He is honest (形容词) and intelligent (形容词). (and 连接同一词类的词)

He did it quickly (副词) and effectively (副词).

Honesty (名词) and wisdom (名词) are essential to success.

We talked (动词) and laughed (动词) and drank (动词).

Our government is of (介词) the people, (and) by (介词) the people and for (介词) the people.

b. A novel must be interesting↑ and instructive↓. (用 and 连接三四样东西有几种方式,注意语调。)

A novel must be interesting↑, exciting↑ and instructive↓.

A novel must be interesting↑, exciting↑, instructive↓.

A novel must be interesting↓ and exciting↓ and instructive↓.

A novel must be interesting↑ and exciting↓, instructive↑ and encouraging↓.

c. He behaves honestly and also (or and likewise, and even) wisely. (短语介词)

He behaves honestly and wisely too (or as well, a - like). (关联连词)

He behaves alike (or equally, at once, both) honestly and wisely.

He behaves not only (or not just, not alone, not merely) honestly, but (or but likewise, but also) wisely.

He behaves not only honestly, but wisely too (or as well).

d. He behaves wisely as well as honestly. (=He behaves not only honestly, but also wisely.)

He can move back as well as go forward. He is a wiseman.

e. He sells bananas, pineapples, grapes and others (or and so forth, and so on, and the like, and all that, and what not, and such like, and all, and the rest, and things, etc.).

He commits rape and murder and everything in between.

f. He stayed abroad for months and months. (很长时间)

He travelled for miles and miles. (很长距离)

Thousands and (or upon) thousands of people have been killed. (大量的)

She waited and waited and waited. (反复的动作)

g. They write nonsense and novels (=nonsensical novels). (书)

面语)

I shall never forget his earnestness and affection (= earnest affection) .

Two hours was spent in discussion and excitement . (=exciting discussion) .

That is a sin and a shame (=a shameful sin) .

They are amidst factions and intrigues (=the in - triges of factions) .

Do you like to listen to gossip and old wives (=gossip of old wives) ?

The child is interested in warriors and heroic acts (=heroic acts of warriors) .

h . He did not behave (or never behaved) honestly , nor wisely (or or wisely , nor wisely either , or wisely either , and not wisely either) . (两个否定词)

He behaved dishonestly , nor wisely .

He behaved neither honestly nor wisely .

He behaved neither honestly , nor legally , nor wisely .

I have no money and fun .

I have no money or fun .

I have no money , nor fun . (注意逗号)

I have no money , nor has he .

i . Come and (=Come to) dine with me . (and dine用来代替 to dine , 可表示 dine 不仅是来的目的 , 而且是重要的独立的活动。)

Come and see me (在祈使句中常在原形动词前加 and)

He came and sat down by me . (在陈述句一般过去时前加 and)

He came and asked me many questions .

He will come and discuss it . (加在助动词后)

She should come and ask me .

I asked him to come and dine with me . (加在 to 后以避免重复 to)

He wants to come and play tennis .

Stand up and say "hello" to me . (不仅在 come 后 , 其他表示行动的动词后也可加 and。)

Go out and tell him .

Call and see me .

Stay and take dinner .

The cat rushed and caught the mouse .

They , ran out and welcomed me .

Mary stopped and talked with a woman .

He wrote and told his boss of the result .

Try and read it .

Be sure and (=Be sure to) come .

Go and be miserable ! (Go and 也可用来表示没有预料到的东西 ,

有时可译为“居然”)

He went and spent all his money on rubbish .

He has gone and told my secret to her .

Adam upped (=got up) and cursed me . (up and 也可表示惊异)

j . I never “drink and drive” . (drink and drive 作为一体 , 整个加以否定 , 不能说 I never drink and I never drive .)

You cannot “eat your cake and have it . ”

Don't “propose only once and get tired . ”

You cannot touch pitch and not be defiled (=without being defiled) . (这个句子中有两个否定词)

Nobody can hear her story and not be moved (=without being moved) .

I must not work for the store and do nothing . k . What with (=Partly because of) his courage and what with his wisdom (or What with his courage and his wisdom) , he became an important person .

l . I have been happy and sad , master and slave . (有时两个不同类别的词可以放在一起)

He is fat , bald and a local patriarch .

I thought of the mayor and how to speak to him . 1272 2 . 连系连词可用来连接分句 :

m . I called on John , and he welcomed me . (一连串情况) At first he refused , then he agreed , at last he said no .

Now the clouds were dark , now they were bright ; now they looked like castles , now they looked like jungles .

n . He is an engineer , and besides (or also , likewise , in addition to this , at the same time) he can make shoes . (提供进一步情况)

He has a lot of money and he knows the mayor on the side (=in addition) . (美国口语)

He lives in a very big mansion ; furthermore (or more - over) , he is the owner of ten factories .

He knows a lot about India ; indeed (or nay , what is more) , he has been in most countries in Asia .

Not only this town is in panic , (but also) all the world was shocked .

o . I cannot go . First (少用 Firstly) , I don't feel well . Secondly , I don't know that man . Thirdly (or Lastly) I am waiting for John . (列举理由、后果、目的等。注意连词前的句号。)

Smoking is harmful . First , it costs money . Second , it causes illness . Third... .

I like travelling . For in the first place (or instance) , I can relax myself while travelling . In the second (or next) , I can see more of the world . In the third... In the last...

He is hopeless . For one thing , he is old and sickly . And for another , he has no friend or relative . (或 He is old and sickly ,

for one thing . For another...)

p . I have never been abroad , nor (or neither) (=andnever)
have I ever wished to go . (每个分句中有一个否定词)

I can not swim , neither (or nor) can my brother .

Neither has he done it , nor will he do it .

He kept silent (= did not speak) , nor (or neither) did I say
a single word .

All that is true(=not false) ,nor must we deny it .q .The workers
refused to work . Likewise , the boss refused to increase their wages .

The parents don't care about their children . Similarly (or In
the same way) , the children don't care about their parents .

r . Talk of the devil (祈使句) , and he will appear . (=If you
talk of the devil , he will appear .)

Work hard and you will see the result .

Let him do it and you will be surprised .

Let the glass fall and I will punish you .

Let (but) this fellow become rich and he would forget us .

Only mention it and she (will) get (s) mad . (will 有时省略
不用)

Spare the rod and spoil (=you will spoil) the child .

s . One minute more , and he would have been caught . (=If he
had delayed one minute more , he would...) (and 这里连接短语和分
句 , 这是不寻常的。)

One hour later , and I could never see her again . (=If I arrived
one hour later , I could...)

Just another step and he would have been hit by a car .

Only ten minutes ago and he was only a beggar .

Three thousand years and the world will greatly change .

One cup more and we can go .

t . He divorced her , and a good thing too . (=He divorced her ,
and it was a good thing , too .) (and 这里连接一个分句和一个短语 ,
这也是不寻常的。)

They were gone , and a good riddance .

He is mad , and no wonder (or and small blame to him) .

You two can get married , and no mistake .

Kill me , and there an end of it .

Do it and welcome .

u . I spoke earnestly and they yawning . (在现在分词 yawning
前 , were 一词省略 , 在 and 后的分句中省略 be 是表示对比。)

He made merry and his father drudging like a buffalo . John tried
to cheat Marry and she unaware of it . (形容词 unaware 前 was 省
略)

How can I go to the movies and my mother so ill at home ?

He welcomed the visitors and they his enemies .

(名词 enemies 前 were 省略)

He is a millionaire and his father[is]without a cent .

I can't go to the cinema alone and my wife [is] to stayat home .

[You are] A policeman and so scared !

[He is] A good friend and [to] betray me thus !

[You are] An official and [to] break the law !

v . I met Wang , who (= and he) invited me to the cinema . (这种关系代词也是一种并列连词 , 参阅 538 节)

He released the bird , which (= and it) flew away .

I shall see you tomorrow , when (= and then) we cango together to your aunt .

I walked to the station , where (= and there) I met afriend of mine .

C. 选择连词

1273 选择连词，亦称“or 连词”，表示进行选择。

1. 选择连词可连接单词或短语：

a. I must be hard - working (形容词) or economical (形容词). (Or 可连接任何词类)

You may go, (动词) or stay (动词).

Which is better, wealth (名词) or health (名词)?

You can do it quickly (副词) or slowly (副词).

I can start before (介词) or after (介词) breakfast.

b. You can study chemistry or even nuclear energy.

You may study chemistry or rather physics.

You must study calculus or at least algebra.

c. You must study either chemistry or physics. (关联连词)

You must study either chemistry or physics or biology. (不是 either—either—or)

We observe rules whether of law or of morals.

d. You may have food fried (形容词) or otherwise. (可用在任何词类后)

Death (名词) or otherwise is nothing to me.

You can finish it tomorrow (副词) or otherwise.

e. He likes the “durian”, or (=that is,) a tropical fruit having a strong smell.

He is a “Taoist”, or a philosopher advocating simplicity.

f. Either Bill or John (=Both) are Ida's lovers. (美国说法)

He likes either the low or the high social class.

1274 2. 选择连词也可连接分句：

g. We ought to (or should, must, ...) work hard, or (or otherwise, else, or else) (= if not) we shall be starved.

Work hard or you will be starved.

He knows grammar, or he would make many mistakes.

He did not know grammar, or he would have made many mistakes.

Either they take over the city, or we try to defend it.

h. He said nothing; or rather (=more exactly), nobody had asked him.

He will arrive at eight; or at least, he said he would.

i. I send it to you or you come to take it?

Will they give freedom to us? or must we fight for it?

j. He will explain to her or something (=or do something like that). (Or 这里连接分句和单词，这是不寻常的。)

Take out the barking dog or something.

I do not want to see her, or anything.

Pay, or else (=otherwise you will get into trouble).

D . 相反连词

1275 相反连词，亦称“but 连词”，表示相反或对比。

1276 1. 相反连词可连接单词或短语：

a . He is poor (形容词) but honest (形容词) . (but 可连接任何词类)

He works slowly (副词) but steadily (副词) .

He is a millionaire (名词) , but then (or but on the other hand) a drunkard (名词) .

1277 2. 相反连词也可连接相反分句：

b . He is young , but (yet) he is prudent . (微微相反)

He is young ; however , he is prudent (或 he is , howev - er , prudent . 或 he is prudent , however .)

He is young . He is prudent , though . (口语说法) c . Everyone was against him , still (or but still , yet) he stood firm . (强烈相反)

He has faults , nevertheless (or nonetheless , for all that , with all that , in spite of all that , notwithstanding all that , all the same) I love him .

He has faults , but I love him all (or just) the same .

He has faults . After all (or Anyway) I don't mind .

d . Indeed (or Certainly , Undoubtedly , To be sure) he has faults , but we respect him . (先认定 , 后对比) (It is) True , he has faults . Still we respect him . He has faults all right , but don't you have faults , too ?

e . We respect him , only (= though) he has some faults .

He writes well , only he uses too many difficult words .

He writes well . He uses too many difficult words , though .

f . I am not idle . (But) On the contrary (or Far from that) , I am very busy . (第一句中有一否定句)

The child is not at all dumb . Rather , he's very clever . He did not succeed ; rather (or instead , on the contrary) , he failed long ago .

He made no mistakes . Contrariwise (or Conversely) , his work was excellent .

Not that he is lazy , but that he can't find a job . He says I am idle (or , I am idle ?) On the contrary , I am very busy . (暗含否定意义)

1278 3. 相反连词连接对比分句：

g . I thought it was gold , whereas it is brass . (对比) Wise men love truth , whereas fools hate it . Poor men earn too little , while rich men spend too much .

Winter is cold , while summer is hot .

He loves music , as (= while) his sister loves dancing . He loves

music , as who does not ?

John never smokes , as why should he ?

On (the) one hand he loves her , (and) on the other she hates him .

Here doctors try to save lives , (and) there soldiers try to destroy them .

h . Now he was excited , now he was quiet .

Now he sat down , (and) then (or again , next mo - ment) he walked up and down .

Now he cried , (and) then he laughed .

Sometimes (or At times) the cold wind blew through the windows , (and) sometimes (or at times) the oil lamp appeared bluish .

(At) One time (or moment , minute) she seems to love me , and (at) another (or the next) she seems to neglect me .

E . 推论连词

1279 推论连词，亦称“so连词”，表示“按理推论”。

1280 1. 推论连词很少连接单词或短语：

a . All his wealth , therefore , all his happiness , came to nothing .

He did everything patiently , (and) therefore successfully .

He is honest , and consequently reliable .

1281 2. 推论连词多连接分句：

b . The wind blew hard (cause) , therefore (or owing to these circumstances) many huts were damaged . (后果)

Beggars are numerous in this city (reason) , therefore (or for this reason) the government must do something for them . (结论)

All men are mortal (ground) ; kings are men ; therefore (or on this ground) all kings are mortal . (结论)

We must educate our children (purpose) , therefore (or for this purpose) we set up schools . (手段)

c . I have not enough money , so I cannot buy it . (so 和 therefore 用法相同)

They have different ideas , thus (=so) they don't agree .

Have you worked hard ? Then (or In that case) you must be very tired .

“ I want to go now . ” “ Then take the umbrella with you . ”

I had agreed to go ; accordingly (= as an expected conclusion) I made preparations for the journey .

They neglected their lessons ; consequently (= as an unavoidable result) they failed . (第二分句受到强调)

They neglected their lessons ; that was why they failed .

(第一分句受到强调)

He is selfish , hence he has no friends . He always wears a blue shirt ; hence his nickname “ Blue ” .

He is lazy and dishonest ; hence his failure .

d . He has made serious mistakes . He has lost all his friends . In a word (or In short , In brief , In sum , In conclusion) , he is dead .

Joan was sick . In short . she had no warm dress to wear and therefore caught cold .

Jan had to meet her boyfriend . To conclude (or To sum up) , the picnic had to be cancelled .

F . 解释连词

1282 唯一的解释连词为 for , 表示原因或理由 , 它只连接分句 :

Leaves are turning yellow , for it is now autumn .

John has made much progress , for he is polite now .

Let us go to bed , for it is already eleven .

He is unable to sit up , (for) he is so ill . (若后面有 so , such 这类词时 , for 可以省略。)

He fired me immediately , (for) he was so angry .

All were killed , (for) they had such a terrible accident .

G. 列举连词

1283 列举连词列中详细情况。

1284 1. 有些列举连词列出所有细节：

He has been in four European countries, namely (or to wit, viz., that is, that is to say, i. e.), France, Germany, Spain and Greece. (这些连词可以连接单词或词组。注意前后使用了两个逗号, 但 i. e. 只在前面有一个逗号。)

He has to maintain a big family, that is, fifteen persons.

This drug is to be taken 3 times a day, that is, at 6 a. m., at 2 p. m., at 10 p. m.

Every man has a great enemy, namely, himself.

He has his tactics in life, that is, to be always on the offensive.

He was assassinated last night, that is, a new dynasty is coming. (that is 可连接一个分句)

All is quiet on the western front. That is (to say), we have won the war.

1285 2. 有些列举连词只列出部分细节：

He has been in ten European countries, such as (or as, like) France and Spain. (只在连词前用一逗号, 后面不用。)

Some friends of mine study agriculture—for example (or for instance) John. (for example 或 for instance 也可放在 John 的后面)

You can meet him anywhere—at a teahouse, for example.

We must be careful in using prepositions, e. g. with, in and for.

We must learn some foreign languages, (let us) say

Spanish. (say 和 let us say 都不是连词, 是独立的插句, 意思是“例如说”。)

Can I buy it for, say \$ 10?

Can we master the violin in, let us say, twenty years?

“How” may be used in an exclamatory sentence; as (or e. g., thus), “How hot it is!”, “How fast time passes!” (这三个连词不须连接同等级的词)

Marriage does not solve all problems in life. For example (or For instance), John has even more problems to solve after he got married. (或 John, for example, has...) (这里 for example 和 for instance 用来连接两个句子)

在下面句子中, for example 和 for instance 是独立词组, 不是并列连词:

Lucille, for example, is always very considerate.

In the morning, for example, you can practise singing.

There in China, for instance, people ride bicycles, but not drive cars or go on foot.

Here you can drive , for instance , at 60 miles per hour .

． 从属连词

1286 从属连词把从句和一个词连接起来。

1287 A．有些从属连词把形容词从句（亦即定语从句）和一个名词连接起来。它们是用来引起限制性定语从句的关系词，如 who, which 和 that．这些从句必须放在所修饰名词的后面：

Mr . T is the man (名词) who (关系代词 , 引起一个限制性定语从句。) told me the news (定语从句) 。

Man is the only animal (名词) that (限制性关系代词) can laugh (定语从句) 。

He is not such a man (名词) as (限制性关系代词) I admire (定语从句) 。

This is the river (名词) where (限制性关系副词) they found his body (定语从句) 。

I can't understand the reason (名词) why (限制性关系副词) he is so proud . (定语从句)

I know the woman (名词) whose (限制性关系形容词)

husband was killed in a traffic accident (定语从句) 。

1288 B．有些从属连词，如 when, where, because, 引起一个状语从句，把它和一个动词连接起来。它们表示时间、地点、原因、结果等。这种从句可以放在所修饰动词的后面或前面：

I studied (动词) German when (时间连词) I was young (状语从句) 。（从句在动词之后）

We arrived (动词) where (地点连词) they were fighting (状语从句) 。

He speaks (动词) Japanese as fluently as (比较连词) you speak Vietnamese (状语从句) 。

They surrendered (动词) because (原因连词) they were almost starved (状语从句) 。

He insisted (动词) so that (结果连词) I agreed (状语从句) 。

Though (让步连词) he has failed many times (状语从句) he decides (动词) to do it again . (从句在动词前面)

No matter what (短语连词) you do (状语从句) , do (动词) it carefully .

As (时间连词) I grew older (状语从句) , I grew (动词) less ambitious .

So far as (条件连词) I can see (状语从句) , they can fight (动词) no more .

1289 C．另外的从属连词可用来引起名词从句（作主语、宾语、补语或同位语的从句），它们是 that 或像 who, which, where, how 这样的疑问词。由 that 引起的名词从句可称为 that 从句，由疑问词引起的名词从句可称为疑问从句，为了简练，也可称为“W-从句”，因为除了 how，所有疑问词都以 W 开头。

1290 That 从句：

That he is sincere (that 从句作谓语动词 is 的主语) is unbelievable .

That he knows the secret does not astonish me .

I know (that) he will agree with me (作及物动词 know 的宾语) . (在及物动词后 that 可以省略)

He said (that) he could not see me any more .

“All is well , ” he said . (比较 : He said that all was well .)

注意 : That 从句可作及物动词宾语 , 却不能作介词宾语 , 只有少数例外情况。

His purpose is that all will live happily together . (作系动词 is 的补语)

My trouble was that no good dictionaries were available .

Our only hope is , they will speak for us . (be 后的 that 可以省略 , 这时要加一逗号。)

The fact that he is absent - minded (作名词 fact 的同位语) shows that he has something on his mind .

I can't understand the idea that all men are selfish .

1291 W-从句的情况也如此 :

What he is doing (W-从句作谓语动词 is 的主语) is a great secret .

I do not know where we can find peace (作及物动词 know 的宾语) .

He asked how many people ate how much rice in this country each . year .

My success depends on how hard I work (作介词 on 的宾语。)

I do not know at what hotel he stays .

His question is why we cannot lay down arms (作系动词 is 的补语) .

No one can answer his question—why we cannot lay down arms (作名词 question 的同位语) .

(关于这类结构可参阅 379 节)

1292 That 从句是从属的陈述句 :

I know that he will never give up . (比较独立的陈述句 : He will never give up .)

That John was murdered is a malicious rumour .

1293 W-从句是从属的问句 :

I do not understand why he moves so frequently . (独立问句 : Why does he move so frequently ?)

I doubt whether (or if) he will come or not . (独立问句 : Will he come or not ?)

I wonder whether (但不要用 if) or not he will come .

Whether (但不要用 If) he will come is doubtful .

I wonder (或 am not sure) whether he doesn't (= does) forget me .

注：在现代体中从属问句的语序可以和独立问句相同，甚至用问号代替句号。

I inquired would she (=whether she would) marry me. (?)

I asked her might I (=whether I might) speak with her a few minutes?

1294 That...should 构成从属祈使句，that...would 和 that...will 表示愿望和希望：

The teacher ordered that we (should) work harder.

(should 可以省略。独立祈使句：work harder.)

They requested that all the books (should) be returned to the library by next Friday. (独立祈使句：Let all the books be returned to the library by next Friday.)

I wish that he would (or might) recover. (It seems that he will not recover.)

I hope that he will (or may) recover soon. (It seems that he will recover.)

1295 W-从句还可构成一个从属感叹句：

Look how they dance. (独立感叹句：How they dance!)

Nobody can imagine what a mess it is.

Just fancy what a time we have had.

I am astonished at what a nice boy John has become.

注：在本章末，似乎应该提到根据连词用法而分的几类句子。一个句子，如果没有连接几个分句或引起分句的连词，就叫做简单句，例如：We are going to school. John and Mary are good children. 一个句子，如果有连接几个分句的并列连词，就叫做并列句，例如：Wu studies AIDS and Lin studies drugs. I say it is black, but he says it is grey. 一个句子，如果含有从属连词，就叫做复合句，例如：The lady who is smoking is my auntie. See me when you are free. I know that he is unhappy. 一个并列句中，如果有从属连词就叫做并列复合句，例如：He is poor, but he often gives money to people who need help.

第十五单元 感叹词

1296 感叹词用来表示一时的感情，它和其他词没有语法上的关系：

Hello! What are you doing there? (多数感叹词都放句首)

Hurrah! We have won the game.

It costs, oh, a thousand dollars. (感叹词间或可插在句子中间)

He could do it; but, alas, he wouldn't.

Is this your baby? Wonderful! (感叹词偶尔也放在句末)

He married a woman twenty years older than he. Humph!

1297 有些感叹词可表示各种情绪：

Well, is it not strange? (惊奇)

Well, the war has ended at last. (松了一口气)

Well, I have already tried my best. (放弃)

“When will you get married?” “Well, I haven't considered it yet.” (犹豫不定)

1298 惊叹号可以放在感叹词后面，如果感叹的情绪到此为止。如果全句都表达这种情绪，惊叹号应放在句子末尾：

Oh! Life is only a dream.

Oh, life is only a dream!

Aha! You cannot escape now. Aha, you cannot escape now!

Oh dear! What is that?

Oh! I remember now.

Oh for the wings of a bird!

Oh that I could fly!

O mention it no more! (O偶尔可用在祈使句开头)

O my dearest one! (O常可用在呼语前面)

在某些感叹词后常用逗号代替惊叹号：

Oh yes, he has a happy family.

Well, I have done everything I can.

Why, that is very easy.

1299 下面是一些最常用的感叹词：

对小错表示歉意：oops, whoops

引人注意：hey, ho, lo, look, say, see, behold, hark

厌恶：fiddle stick(s), humbug, pish(taboo), ugh, foh, there there, shit(禁忌语)

呼叫：halloo, hallo, hello, hey, holo, hola, ho, ahoi 安慰词：there there

鄙视：bah, bosh, fudge, humph, pshaw, pooh, fie, faugh, foey, shit(taboo)

诅咒：blast(it)(英), bullshit(美), crap, balls, confound it(or him), damn(or darn, dash) it(all), Goddamn(美), Jesus, Christ, hell, you bastard, bloody(英) fool, real ass-hole(美)——禁忌语

告别：farewell, bye-bye, goodbye, so long

发现情况：Aha , o-o. oho , and so
怀疑：hum , hem , well , humph
恐惧：Oh , ugh , no-no , ha 驱逐：begone , avaunt , out , away , off ,
piss off (禁忌语)
发冷：brr
打招呼：hello , hi , howdy , good morning (或 afternoon) (也可
用来告别) , good night (晚间告别语) , see you
不耐烦：tut , tush , why , come come
疑问：eh ? ha ? hey ?
高兴：ah , ha , aha , hurrah , hip hip hip (hurrah) , oh , rah ,
boy , goody , mmmm , oooo , whoopee , whee , wow
笑声：Ha - ha , he - he , ho - ho , te - hee , aha , yi - yi
疼痛：ah , eh , oh , ugh , height , heigh - ho , ouch , yipe , ow ,
wow

赞叹：bravo , o , swell , O . K. , attaboy , hear hear
要求安静：hist , hush , shh , mum , whist
打喷嚏：achoo
悲哀：alas , ah , oh me , oh no , woe
让站住：stop , hold , halt , wait , whoa
惊讶：gee , gosh , golly , man , whew , oh dear , dear me , goodness ,
wow , gracious , oh Lord , good Lord , oh boy , oh my
得意：there , now , so
厌倦：heigh - ho , ho - hum , O me , whew

1300 其他词类的词也可用作感叹词，来表示突然的情绪：

名词：Fire ! Fire ! Water ! Quick ! Water !

Silence ! It is all rubbish .

My purse !

Good morning !

形容词：Strange ! Where is my key ?

Quiet ! Look at that man with a long , long nose .

Fine ! You shall be rewarded .

Shocking ! Nobody could believe it .

动词：Look out ! There comes a truck .

Listen ! I am your father . How could you talk like that ?

We are arrived . Stop !

Hear , hear !

Married ! Ida married to a stranger !

副词：Away ! You are not wanted here .

Why , that is very easy .

Well , that is no ordinary matter .

甚至短语和句子也可用来表示情绪：

Well done !

Well said !

Just my luck !

For shame !
Three cheers for— !
Well I never !
Good stuff !
Didn't I tell you !
That's something !
That's just too bad !
It shouldn't happen to a dog !
That is the beauty of it !
You're crazy !
Act your age !

Edu^{STAR} eBOOK

中教育星电子图书馆

中教育星

电子图书馆

EBOOK



英语语法大全（下）

EduStar

中教育星软件股份有限公司

第十六单元 句子概论

．句子的 5 类成分

1301 句子成分可以分为基本成分、附属成分、独立成分、省略成分和连接成分 5 类。

1．基本成分

1302 根据其结构，句子可以分为 5 类：

a．主语 + 不及物动词

John came .
(S) (IV)

b．主语 + 及物动词 + 宾语

John likes oranges .
(S) (TV) (O)

c．主语 + 双宾动词 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语

John gave Mary books .
(S) (DV) (IO) (DO)

d．主语 + 系动词 + 主语补语

John is happy .
(S) (LV) (SC)

e．主语 + 宾补动词 + 宾语 + 宾语补语

John makes Mary angry .
(S) (FV) (O) (OC)

主语、不及物动词、及物动词、双宾动词、系动词、宾补动词、宾语及补语可以称为基本句子成分。在上面的句子中，如把任何一个成分删除，都会成为病句。从上面例句也可看出，完整的句子一般至少包含 2 个基本成分，至多 4 个基本成分。

2．附属成分

1303 基本成分可以加修饰语：1) 定语（即用来修饰名词的单词、短语或从句）或 2) 状语（即用来修饰名词或代词以外的词的单词、短语或从句）。下面例句中，修饰语为斜体字，被修饰的词为黑体字：

1) *Poor* John tottered toward a **hospital** nearby .

John likes *oranges imported from the U . S . .*

John gave Mary *many* **books** , which are full of illustrations .

2) John often came to chat with me .

John likes *oranges* very much .

Whenever he gets drunk , John makes Mary very angry .

这类句子，即使把修饰语去掉，结构仍是完整的。这种修饰语，可能在意思上很重要，但在结构上不影响句子的完整性，因此称作附属成分。

3．独立成分

1304 句中还有一类成分，可以去掉，不影响句子的完整性，并和句子的其他词没有语法的关系，可以称作独立成分。

Oh! What is that! (惊叹词)

He has , alas , failed again .

Come here , John . (呼语)

Roll on , Ocean , roll on .

4 . 省略成分

1305 此外还有一类被省略的成分，虽然未说出来，却在句中表示一定的意思：

(You) Come here .

(I wish you) Good luck !

Some gave him praises , but others (gave him) rotten eggs .

5 . 连接成分

1306 最后还有连接成分，它实际上是一个并列连词，用来连接两个或几个平行的词、短语和分句。

1307 ，一个完整的句子（从句或分句）必须包含 2 个到 4 个基本成分，此外，如果意思上有需要，还可包含一个或更多其他的句子成分。

．名子中词语特点的 3 种表达方式

1308 句中词的特点可以 3 种方式来加以说明：

- 1．解析
- 2．分析
- 3．图解

以 That boy shook his head . 为例，可以下面 3 种方式加以说明：

1．解析

That—指示形容词，修饰单数名词 boy。

boy—普通名词，阳性，单数，主格，为动词 shook 的主语。

shook—及物动词，过去式。

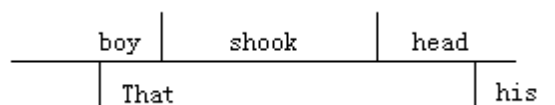
his—物主代词，阳性，单数，第三人称，所有格，修饰名词 head。

head—普通名词，中性，单数，宾格，shook 的宾语。

2．分析

主 语		谓 语		
主 语	名词修饰语	动 词	宾 语	
			名词	修饰语
boy	that	shook	head	his

3．图解

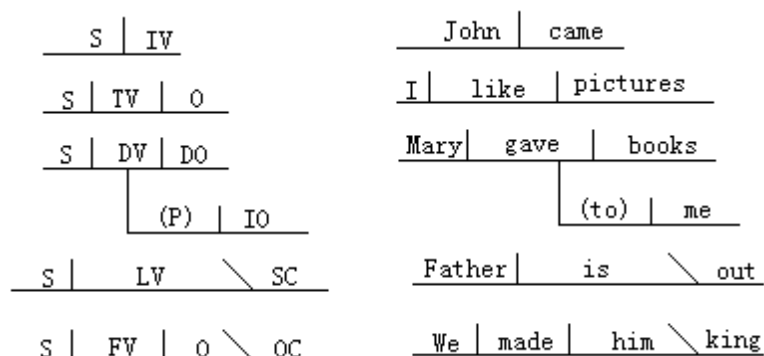


解析对词的分类处理过多，不甚有用。分析说明了句中词之间的关系，但有时显得很复杂。图解最有用，因为它以最简单明了的方式说明了词与词之间的关系，这种关系有时会把读者弄糊涂。

· 图解规则

1. 4 个基本成分的图解办法

1309 5 类基本句及 4 种基本成分可以用下面的方式加以图解：

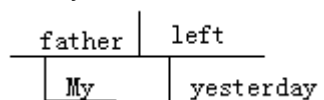


一个词的特定地位意味着它的特定作用。和横线交叉的左边竖线把主语 S (在左面) 和动词 V (在右面) 分开。斜线表示它右面的词为主语或宾语的补语。另一竖线表示右面的词为宾语 O。

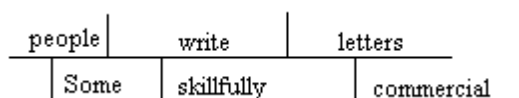
2. 附属成分的图解办法

1310 主语、动词、宾语及补语这 4 种基本成分都放在横线的上方，附属成分，如形容词、副词及起相同作用的其他词语，都放在横线的下方，紧挨在它们所修饰词的下面：

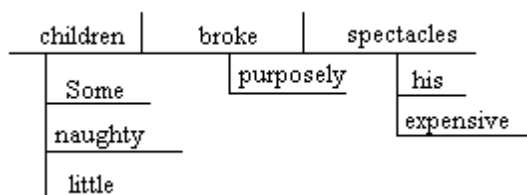
My father left yesterday.



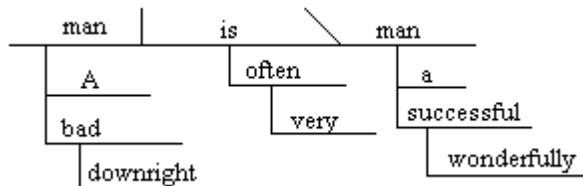
Some people write commercial letters skillfully.



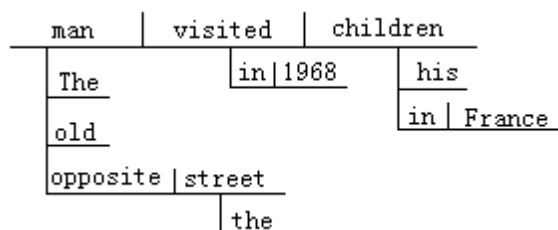
Some naughty little children broke his expensive spectacles purposely.



A downright bad man is very often a wonderfully successful man.



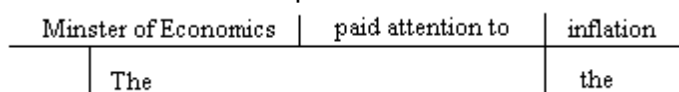
The old man opposite the street visited his children in France in 1968.



3. 成语、助动词、动名词等的图解办法

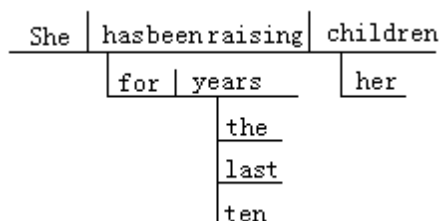
1311 应当记住，一个空位通常只容一个词（类），但成语由几个词构成却起一个词（类）的作用。因此有必要把构成成语的几个词放在一个空位中，因为成语表示一个单一的意思，不宜分割成几个词（类）：

The Minister of Economics paid attention to the inflation.



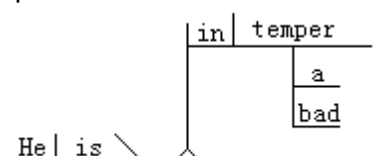
助动词应和主要动词放在一起：

She has been raising her children for the last ten years.

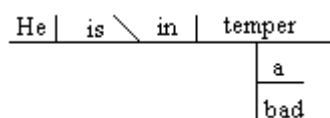


介词短语、不定式短语、动名词短语或名词从句，在用作主语、宾语或补语时，可用一个人来进行图解，不仅表示其内在结构，还表示它作为一个词和其他词的关系：

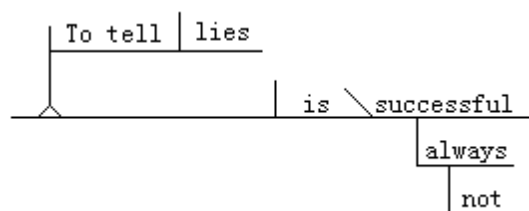
He is in a bad temper.



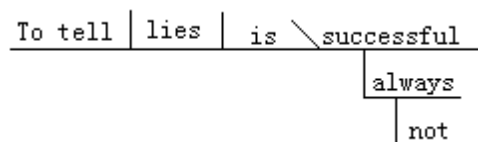
注意，这个句子有 3 个基本成分：主语+系动词+补语。第三部分 in a bad temper 的图解，不仅说明了这 4 个词之间的关系，还通过使用人说明它作为一个单一词类和其他词之间的关系，即起形容词的作用，作为系动词 is 的补语。在下面图解中，这个短语占了 2 个空位，这样容易引起误会，因为人们会以为这个句子包含 4 个基本成分：



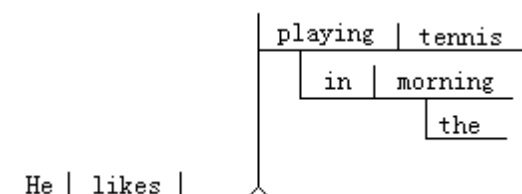
To tell lies is not always successful.



上面图解中 to tell lies 这个不定式短语，一方面表明了 to tell 是一个及物动词，lies 是它的宾语，另一方面说明整个短语起名词作用，只占一个空，作为句子的主语。如果用下面图解，就会引起误会：



He likes playing tennis in the morning .

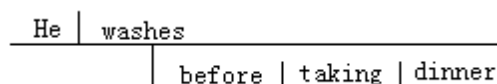


注意上面动名词 playing tennis in the morning 的图解，一方面说明 playing 为及物动词，tennis 为其宾语，而 in the morning 为其修饰语，另一方面说明这个短语起名词作用，用作及物动词（谓语动词）like 的宾语。

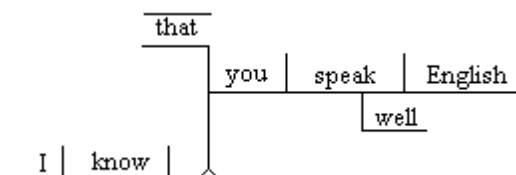
He washes before taking dinner .



注意，taking dinner 这个动名词短语，通过使用人，表明为一个单一词类，起名词作用，用作介词 before 的宾语。如作下面图解则会引起误会：



know that you speak English well .

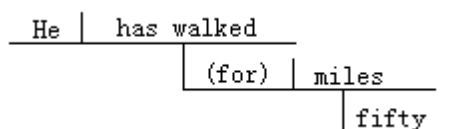


注意 that 引起的从句的图解，一方面表明了这 5 个词之间的关系（that 为连词，主语为 you，speak 为及物动词，宾语为 english，well 为 speak 的修饰语），另一方面说明整个从句起一个单一词即名词的作用，用作及物动词，know 的宾语。that 上下的两条横线表明它是一个连词。

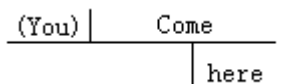
4 . 其他规则

1312 在图解中省略的词应用圆括号标出：

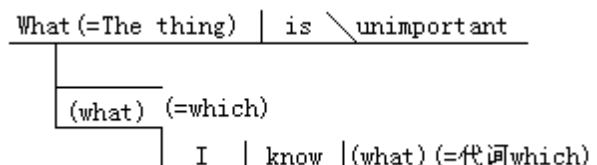
He has walked fifty miles .



Come here .



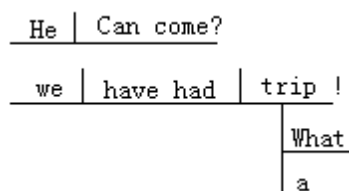
What (=The thing which) I know is unimportant .



问号及惊叹号放在正横线右边末尾，在图解中大写字母保持不变：

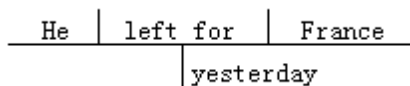
Can he come ?

What a trip we have had !

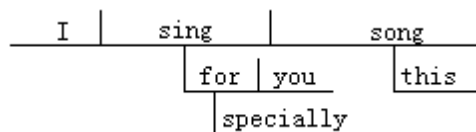


只要句子的意思保持不变，词语位置的任何变动都不影响图解。

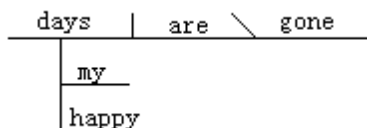
He left for France yesterday 和 Yesterday he left for France 图解的方式一样：



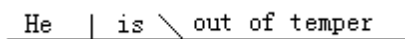
同样，I sing this song specially for you . 和 Specially for you I sing this song . 图解的方式一样：



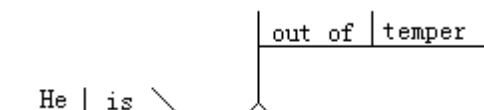
My happy days are gone ! 和 Gone are my happy days ! 也如此：



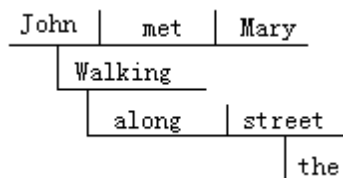
某个特殊的句子，根据不同的理解可有不同的图解方式。例如在 He is out of temper . 中，out of temper 可看作是成语，是一个整体，这时图解方式如下：



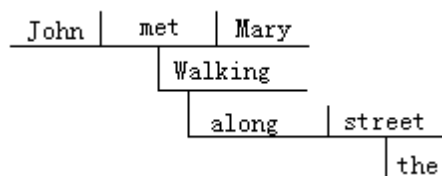
如果把它看作介词短语，包含 2 个成分，则可作如下图解：



在 Walking along the street John met Mary 这个句子中 ,Walking along the street 可以看作定语 ,这时可以按下面方式图解 :



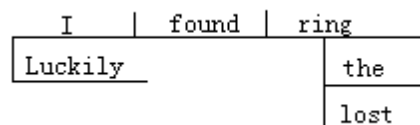
如果把它看作状语 ,图解会是下面这个方式 :



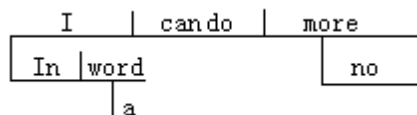
还有一些其他规则 ,说明如下 :

在主要横线左端下方的竖线来表示它后面或下面的词和全句有关 ,可以是一个句子修饰语或是一个把这个句子和另一句子连接起来的并列连词 :

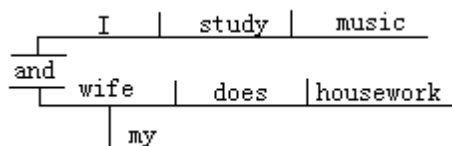
Luckily , I found the lost ring .



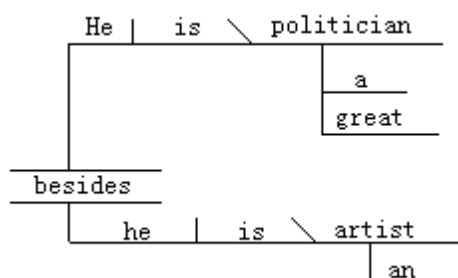
In at word , I can do no more .



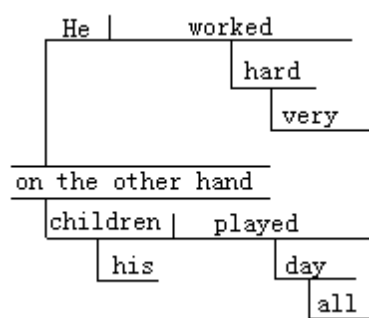
I study music and my wife does housework .



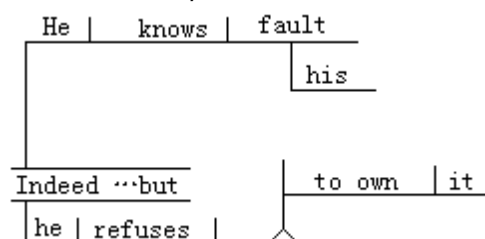
He is a great politician ; besides , he is an artist .



He worked very hard ; on the other hand , his children played all day .



Indeed he knows his fault , but he refuses to own it .



最后，注意以后各节中，凡有星号的例句，都将在各句型讲完之后加以图解。

第十七单元

主语的 12 种类型（附图解）

1313 名词或代词是主语最重要的形式，却不是唯一的形式。除了名词和代词，还有 10 种其他东西可以用作主语。由于它们都起名词的作用，可称作名词等同体（Noun-Equivalent）。此外，下面可以看到，it 是一个作主语的重要代词。

· 名词 (或代词)

1314 Books are good companions .

London is populous .

如果由名词表示的主语受到强调或有较长的修饰语，它可以由一个代词代替，本身则移到句子末尾：

He is a nice fellow , your uncle .

It is truly long , that bridge across the Yellow River .

They have gone away , those rascals .

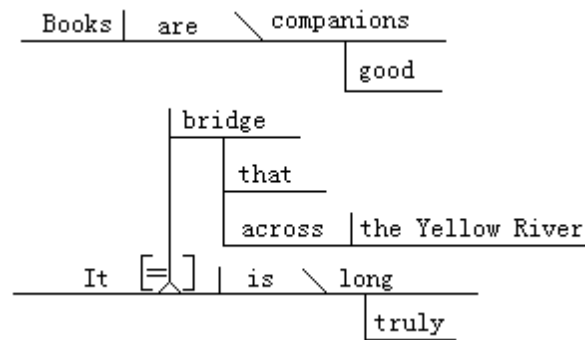
There it stood a monument of all ages .

It is funny the way (that) he teaches his children .

(主语可以跟一定语从句)

It astonishes me the number of the wives he has .

It is inscrutable the rumour that is spreading .



[=]表示它上面的整个词组和它前面的词指的是同一东西。

. 名词成语

1315 “Crocodile tears” means pretended sorrow . The dog star is the largest fixed star . A “field piece” means a cannon .

The river bed is muddy . I wore a sun hat . He is a paper tiger and who is afraid of him ? (名词+名词)

His maiden speech is wonderful . A leap year comes every fourth year . His untimely end is beyond belief . A wet blanket and a queer fish are coming toward us . Is a heavy hand enough to suppress the revolt ? (形容词+名词)

Today is All Fools' Day . A cat's paw may be a scapegoat . This printer's ink is poor . “Man's estate” means the age of manhood . (名词所有格+名词)

An apple of discord was thrown among them . A Jack of all trades may be a good-for - nothing . A fish out of water will die soon . Here is a case in point . A friend at court will help me . (名词+介词+名词)

The ins and outs of this scandal interested us . The long and short of the story is this . The ups and downs of life are familiar to my uncle . (名词+and +名词)

Guangdong Province is in the south of China . Stratford-on- Avon is the birth - place of Shakespeare . The Ministry of Education has issued an important ordinance . (专有名词短语)

其他例子 :

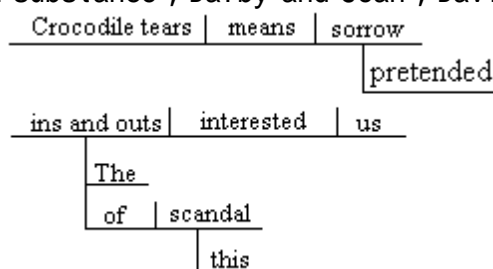
A curtain lecture , elbow room , an insect bite , fairy tales

The Almighty Dollar , the Dark Continent , the black market , a dark room , a golden wedding , an aching void , a low diet

The bull's eye , a sheep's eye , a fool's cap , a sailors home , Achilles' heel , Adam's apple , the lion's share , the king's evil

The age of machinery , the art of God , the man in the street , a bed of roses , a woman of the world , a man of family , a letter of credit , a word of honour , castles in the air , a friend in need , a man about town

All beer and skittle , the alpha and beta , the why and where - fore the sum and substance , Darby and Joan , David and Jonathan



. 代词

1316 We shall start tomorrow . She likes it .

Mine (= My family) is an unhappy family . His (= His fate) has been the fate of an unusual artist . Hers is a car made in Germany . (名词性物主代词+系动词+名词)

We(= Our class)are full up .We(= Our office)close on Saturday afternoon .He(= His watch)is too fast .We(= Our things) have been packed . (人称代词有时可用来表示属于某人的东西)

My uncle he (名词+多余的代词) wants it done . People in town they have never seen cows . (文化低的人的语言或歌谣中的说法)

She is a nice girl , Mary . They are very selfish , those people . (代词在前 , 指同一人或东西的名词在后 , 参阅 1314 节)

It is hot (or cloudy , snowing , raining .) (It 指天气)

It is spring(or morning , Sunday , my birthday) ; struck three , is growing towards evening . (It 指时间)

It is ten miles (or a long way) . (It 指距离)

It is I (or me) . (It 指一个身份尚不清楚的人)

It is all over with him . How is it with him ? How goes it ? (It 泛指一般情况)

It is my sister (主语受到强调) that (or who) studied English at A . A . A . School when she was seventeen . (用 It is...that...这种结构可以对主语、宾语、状语短语或状语从句加以强调。My sister studied at A . A . A . School when she was seventeen . 是原来的句子 , 对主语加以强调时可改为上面形式。)

It is English(宾语受到强调) that (or which) my sister studied , etc .

It is at A . A . A . School (状语短语受到强调) that (or where) my sister studied English , etc .

It is when she was seventeen (状语从句受到强调) that my sister studied English at A . A . A . School .

It is I that said so .

It is waiting for a chance that will not do .

It is here (or then , for this reason , with a lightning speed) that he married her .

It was after seeing her that he became crazy .

Who is it that you want ? What is it that he is looking for ?

It is only arithmetic that he is afraid of . It is only her idols that she pays attention to . It is not his children that he cares about , but his business .

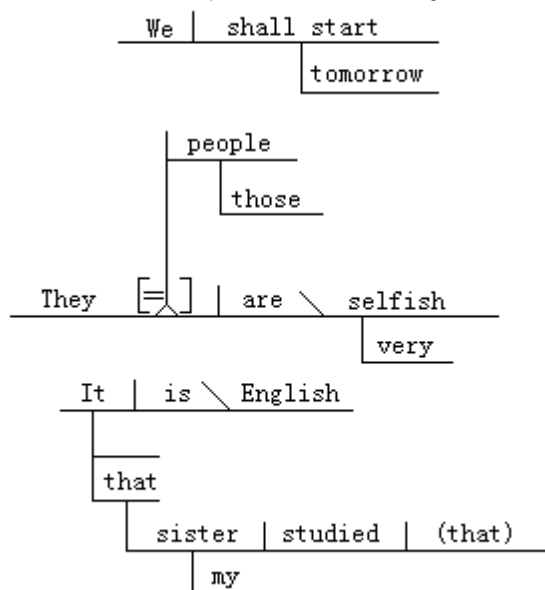
It is a good horse that never stumbles . (= No horse is so good as to never stumble .) (这类常在谚语中出现的句子 , 结构虽和上面句子相同 , 意思却不一样。)

It is a silly fish that is caught twice . (= no fish is so silly

as to be caught twice .)

It is an ill bird that fouls his own nest . (= No bird is so ill as to foul his own nest .)

注：It 可以代表一个动名词、不定式或从句。可参阅 1318—1322。



It 表示 the thing , that 引起的从句可以看做定语，修饰主语 It。that 起从属连词和代词的作用，图解记号异于并列连词。

. the+形容词 (或分词)

1317 The brave deserve the fair . The young are to be educated . There are the dying and the dead , the slain and the vanquished . (复数主语)

The beautiful and the good is our ideal . The middle or the thick of the forest has many animals in it . The accused (or The deceased) is a rich man . The French is different in character from the English . (单数主语)

The brave	deserve	the fair
The accused	is	man
		a
		rich

. 不定式

1318 作主语的不定式常常由 it 代替,本身放到句末作为 it 的同位语:

To live in Tokyo would be too expensive . It would be too expensive to live in Tokyo .

To go out of town every weekend became our custom . It became our custom to go out of town every weekend .

To have broken his leg is his bad luck . It is his bad luck to have broken his leg .

To be happy requires (or needs , wants) no great fortune .

It requires no great fortune to be happy .

To be rich or to be poor makes a lot of difference . It makes a lot of difference to be rich or to be poor .

To raise the fund , to set up the building , to employ workers , all these take time .

The story makes me sick to repeat . To repeat the story makes me sick . It makes me sick to repeat the story . (这三句意思相同 , 却有不同的主语。)

This theory takes much time to understand . To understand this theory takes much time . It takes much time to understand this theory .

To answer the question you asked in your letter is easy .

It is easy to answer the question you asked in your letter .

The question you asked in your letter , it is easy to answer .

(这三句意思相同 , 可比较其主语。)

To handle a wife who comes of a rich family seems difficult . It seems difficult to handle a wife who comes of a rich family . A wife who comes of a rich family , it seems difficult to handle .

不定式可以有一个意义上的主语:

For John to live in Tokyo would be too expensive . It would be too expensive for John to live in Tokyo .

For a commoner to marry a nobleman's daughter does not astonish me . It does not astonish me for a commoner to marry a nobleman's daughter .

For politicians to talk about peace is as funny as for drinkers to talk about temperance . It is as funny as for drinkers to talk about temperance , for politicians to talk about peace .

下面句子中的不定式没有意义上的主语。 for you , of you 等和 it 是有关,起补语作用:

It is for (or up to) you to say yes or no . (=To say yes or no is for [or up to] you .)

It is easier for you to speak to the boss than for me . (=To speak to the boss is easier for you than for me .)

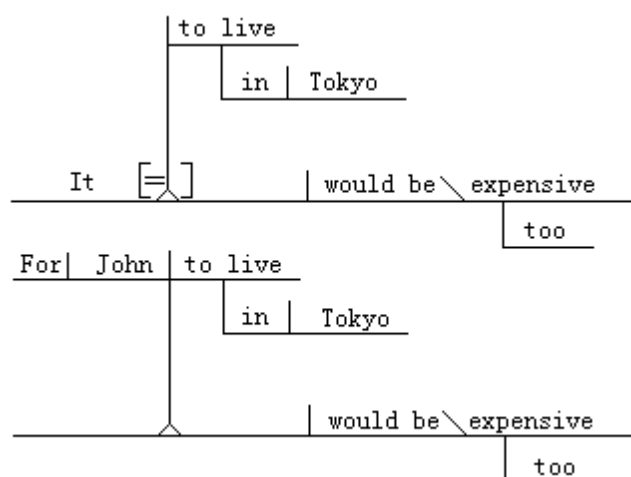
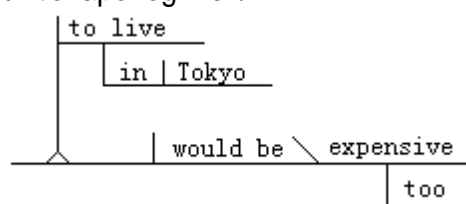
It is very kind of you to do so . (=To do so is very kind of

you .)

It is natural in Mary to love John .

It is inconvenient to her to wait so long .

It is up to you to apologize .



注意意义上的主语 for John 是如何图解的。

. 动名词

1319 和不定式一样，作主语的动名词也可以用 it 代替：

Living in Tokyo would be too expensive . It would be too expensive living in Tokyo .

Crying over spilt milk is no use . It is no use crying over spilt milk .

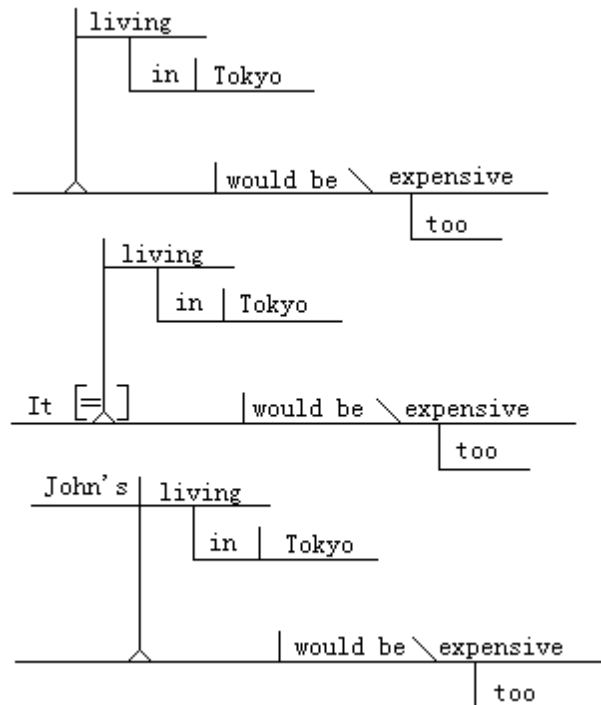
There is no climbing up the cliff . (= Climbing up the cliff is impossible .)

There is no denying the fact . (=Denying the fact is impossible .)

John's (or His) living in Tokyo would be too expensive .

It would be too expensive John's (or his) living in Tokyo .

(动名词这里有意义上的主语)



注意动名词意义上主语 John's 如何图解的。

. that 引起的从句

1320 由 that 引起的主语从句常可用 it 代替，而本身则移到句尾，作为 it 的同位语：

That he had succeeded pleased me very much . It pleased me very much that he had succeeded .

That he was killed is a serious matter . It is a serious matter that he was killed .

That he has done his best is clear . It is clear (that) he has done his best . (如果句子不长，that 可以省略。)

The fact (or The circumstance) that he was killed was a serious matter . (that 引起的从句前面常可放 the fact 或 the circumstance)

It is clear (or likely , certain) that he likes his job .

It would be better that he give up smoking (=He had better give up smoking) .

It is rumoured (or said , learned , denied) that the premier decides to resign .

It is a pity that he should die so young .

It happened (or chanced , came about , developed , turned out) that the detective himself was the thief .

It came about that we had not enough money to pay the bill .

It seems (or appears , occurs) to me that she is a poet .

It struck me that I could be a lawyer .

He is poor , but it does not follow that he will cheat anyone .

It is not that A is an upright man , but that he has no chance to do evil . It may be that B is too hungry to do any good , but it cannot be that he is willing to do any evil .

It is (high) time that we started .

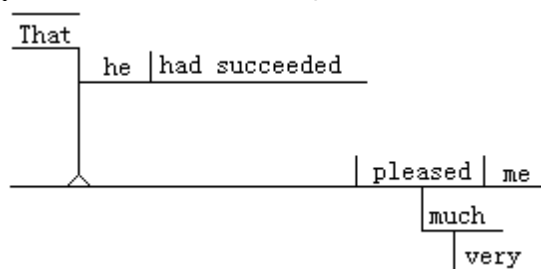
How is it that you know so much ? How comes it (about) that you know so much ? How come (=why) you know so much ?

(It is) Some (Little , No) wonder (that) he failed .

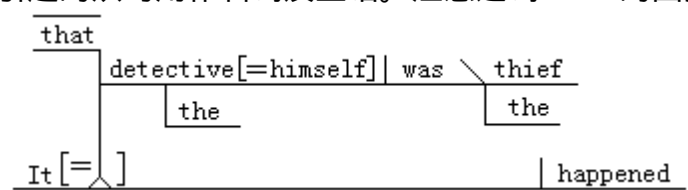
(在用 wonder 作补语时，it is 可以省略。)

(It was) A wonder (that) he did not fall . What wonder (was it) that he failed ? (= It was natural that he failed .)

It is said (or denied , rumoured) that the Mayor fell in love with Mary . The Mayor , it is said (or denied , rumoured) , fell in love with Mary . (这两句意思几乎相同，但在第二句中不能用 that。)



由 that 引起的从句用作名词及主语。注意连词 that 的图解方式。



· 疑问词引起的从句

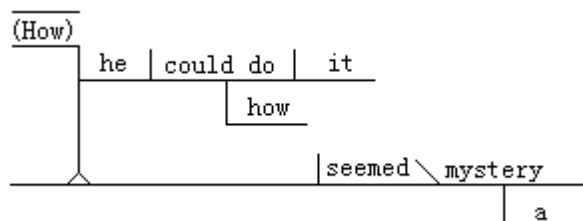
1321 由疑问词引起的从句，和 that 引起的从句一样，可以由 it 代替：

How he could do it seemed a mystery . It seemed a mystery how he could do it .

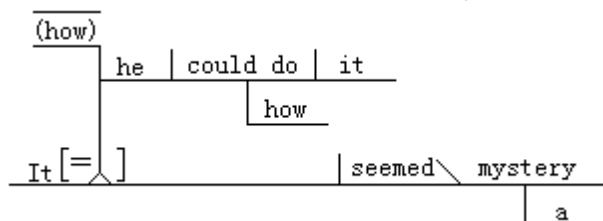
Where he had escaped puzzled me . It puzzled me where he had escaped .

What is it to me who he is ?

It does not matter when you get married , but...



连接词 how 和副词 how 都在这个图解中表示出来，但一个需加括号。



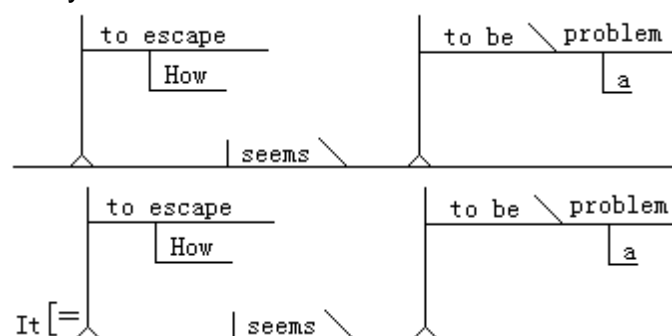
. 疑问词+不定式

1322 疑问词引起的不定式，和连接词引起的从句一样，也可以用 it 代替：

How to escape seems to be a problem . It seems to be a problem , how to escape .

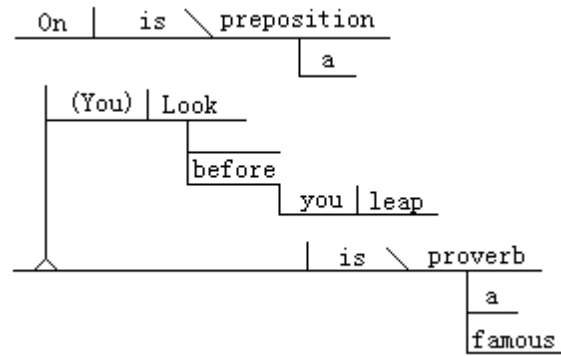
What to say puzzles me . It puzzles me what to say .

Whether or not to follow the policy depends upon circumstances . It depends upon circumstances . whether or not to follow the policy .



. 术语和引语

1323 On is a preposition .Buy means“ get by paying a price ”. “ Look before you leap is a famous proverb . “ Honesty is the best policy ” is a saying often ridiculed by people .



. 介词短语

1324 From seven to seven is our store hours . From infancy to manhood is an important period . From here to there is a short distance . Good in the saddle is good for everything . (这样的短语用作主语时很少)

. 省略

1325 (You) Sit down , please . (You) Wait a minute . (Do you)
Like it ? (You had) Better say no . (Are you) Feeling any better ?
(It) Seems to be impossible . (作主语时 , 有些代词有时省略。)

(You)	(Do)Like	it?
(You)	(Are)Feeling	better
		any

第十八单元 谓语的 47 种类型

· 概说

A . 英语句子结构相对简单

1 . 5 种类型的谓语

1326 在一个完整的句子中，主语之外的部分称为谓语，共有 5 种类型的谓语。

第一类包含一个不及物动词 () :

He came .

My wife cried .

第二类包含一个及物动词及其宾语 (TV + O) :

John likes me .

His uncle wrote letters .

第三类包含一个双宾动词、一个间接宾语和一个直接宾语 (DV+IO+DO) :

They teach me English .

I bought Mary sugar .

第四类包含一个系动词及主语补语 (LV + C) :

He is a teacher .

She looks sad .

第五类包含一个宾补动词、宾语及宾语补语 (FV + O + C) :

We made him king .

She left the house dirty .

2 . 动词的短语形式

1327 不过动词、宾语及补语的意义还应当广一些，上面例句中的及物动词、不及物动词或其他动词都是一个单词，但有时可以是一个起同样作用的短语或成语。例如“及物动词+名词”可以看作是一种不及物动词：

He lost heart . (他灰心了。)

This habit has struck root . (这种习惯已根深蒂固)

下面句子中的动词成语则可以看作是一种及物动词：

I looked for my lost dictionary . (我在找我弄失的字典。)

He paid attention to his lesson . (他很注意他的功课。)

He gave up drinking . (他戒酒了。)

He is afraid of blood . (他怕血。)

He can't get along with anyone . (他和谁都处不好。)

下面句中的动词成语可以看作一种宾补动词：

I waited for him to come . (我等他来。)

详见 1182—1206 节。

3 . 宾语的 9 种形式

1328 此外，也不只是名词或代词可用作宾语，共有 9 种东西可用作及物动词、双宾动词及宾补动词的宾语。由于它们是名词或起名词的作用，可以称作名词等同体 (Noun - Equivalent)，名词等同体，可用作动词

的宾语：

I know John (名词) . She kept the floor dirty .

I will teach John Chinese .

I know him (代词) .

She kept it clean .

That depends upon them .

He threw out an apple of discord (名词短语) .

I have just visited the Board of Trade .

I am not fond of wild goose chase .

This matter interests the rich and the poor (the +形容词或分词) .

The general visited the dying and the wounded . I know the long and (the) short of this case .

He wants to go to college (不定式) .

She refuses to marry me .

I asked to see a friend in prison .

He is fond of swimming in the morning (动名词) .

He avoids meeting any of his friends .

I postponed going to the doctor .

I know that she loves me (that 引起的从句) .

I am sure that you will succeed .

Is he afraid that he will be defeated?

I wonder what he wants (疑问词引起的从句) .

I asked where he had been .

I don't know which way I should go .

I don't know what to do (疑问词引起的不定式) .

I am doubtful how to settle this problem .

I do not care where to eat dinner .

4 . 补语的 15 种形式

1329 不只是名词和形容词可用作补语，上面所提的 9 种名词等同体以及下面例句中的 6 种形容词等同体 (Adjective - Equiva - lent) 都可用作系动词或宾补动词的补语。

名词及名词等同体作补语：

He is a king (名词) .

We chose him chairman .

It is me (代词) .

He became a fish out of water (名词短语) .

I find it a moot point .

The victims are always the poor (the +形容词) .

To respect others is to be respected (不定式) .

Seeing is believing (动名词) .

His purpose is that all children should be educated (that 引起的从句) .

The problem is who is to blame (疑问词引起的从句) .

My problem is how to learn (疑问词引起的不定式) .

形容词及形容词等同体作补语:

He seems happy (形容词) .

You look young .

He makes me angry .

He is out (地点副词) .

The show is over .

Time is up .

He is at home (介词短语) .

We are on good terms .

He leaves his desk out of order .

It seems interesting (现在分词) .

The situation grows encouraging .

I saw Mary smoking .

I am astonished (过去分词) .

He looked frightened .

I had my clothes washed .

He is to blame (不定式) .

It is to be thrown away .

He wants his daughter to marry a rich man .

5. 再复杂的句子也可简化

1330 因此我们可以把许多词看成一个词, 把许多不同形式看作同类东西, 从而使句子的结构变得简单化。例如我们可以把 I know that he does not like to live in this country . 中的 10 个斜体词和 I know John . 中的一个斜体词看作是有同一语法作用的东西, 因为两者都是及物动词的宾语。我们也可把 He begged to see a friend in prison . 中的 6 个斜体词和 He begged pardon . 中的一个斜体词看作是作用相等, 因为两者都是宾语。

同样, 我们也可把 He is to come to the office at eight . 中的 7 个斜体词和 He is punctual . 中的一个斜体词看作相等的东西, 因为两者都是补语。另外下面 4 个句子中的斜体词, 形式不一, 我们却可看作一类东西, 都是及物动词或是起及物动词作用的词组:

He likes chocolate . (他喜欢巧克力。)

He is fond of teaching . (他爱教书。)

John pays attention to his business . (约翰关心他的买卖。)

I am sure that he will be a good husband . (我肯定他会是一个好丈夫。)

此外, 在上面单元中, 我们已谈到名词、名词成语、不定式、从句等等, 尽管形式不同, 字数不等, 却都起同样作用, 担任句子的主语。这样, 不管多复杂的句子都可简化, 而简化是语法的目的。

B. 何种谓语类型用何种动词

1. 47 种谓语类型

1331 我们一方面有不同形式的动词，另一方面有不同形式的宾语及补语。把它们结合起来，再加上一些其他因素，我们可以得出 47 种基本的谓语类型，这几乎代表了英语中的各种可能的谓语。我们可能读到的或写出的任何谓语，几乎都可以（而且应当）纳入这些类型。这 47 种类型可列举如下：

IV	有 3 种类型
TV + O	有 15 种类型
DV + IO + DO	有 5 种类型
LV + C	有 13 种类型
FV + O + C	有 11 种类型
5 类谓语	共有 47 种类型

2. 一个特定动词只能用在几个特定的谓语类型中

1332 为了更好了解这些谓语类型，先看看下面句子：

- a. I know him to work hard.
- b. We want him to come.
- c. She let us to use her car.
- d. They suppose all of us to obey.

e. John saw Mary to walk with a boy. 所有这些句子的谓语都属于第 42 种类型，即“宾补动词+名词+不定式”，但只有 b. 句的谓语是正确的，因为只有 want 这一动词可用于这个类型，其他动词都不能这样用。再看下面句子：

- a. I tried advising her.
- b. I asked seeing the boss.
- c. He thinks going with you.
- d. We wish moving to another place.
- e. They refused helping us.

上面所有谓语都属于第 13 种类型，即“及物动词+动名词”，但只有 a. 句是正确的，因为动词 tried 可用于这种类型，而其他动词不可这样用。

从上面 10 个例句我们可以看出，一个特定动词只能用在某一特定的类型中，在一特定类型中，一个特定的动词能用还是不能用，完全是一个习惯用法的问题。

1333 从下面句子中可以看出 know 可用在多少类型的谓语中：

I know John. (及物动词+名词) (正确)

I know John to come tomorrow. (宾补动词+名词+不定式) (错误)

I know that John comes tomorrow. (及物动词+that 引起的从句) (正确)

I know to answer this question. (及物动词+不定式) (错误)

I know the work easy. (宾补动词+名词+形容词) (错误)

I know how to answer this question. (及物动词+疑问词引起的不定式) (正确)

I know the work to be easy. (宾补动词+名词+to be+形容词)

(正确)

I know John coming (宾补动词+名词+现在分词)。(错误)

I know organizing a political party (及物动词+动名词)。(错误)

从上面例句我们可以看出某些动词只能用在 47 种类型的某些类型中，不能在许多类型中使用。

3. 一个特定的谓语类型中只能用某些特定的动词

1334 有些类型中可以使用很多动词，另一些却只能使用少量动词。例如在“系动词+that 引起的从句”这种类型中只能用 be 这一个动词。在“不及物动词+介词+疑问词引起的从句”这种类型中约可用 20 个动词，在“及物动词+不定式或动名词”这类类型中，约可用 50 个动词，而在“及物动词+that 引起的从句”这种类型中，约可用 150 个动词。每种类型中能用的动词，在本单元中将几乎全部列出并加上例句，以便读者了解并掌握什么动词在何种类型中使用。不过某些谓语类型中可用的动词极多（可说是成百上千）。在这种情况下只能给出一小部分动词。

C. 谓语类型与句型

1335 关于上面提到的类型有几点值得注意：

1. 动词只须与主语在人称和数上一致，因此它们之间的关系相对比较简单。而动词和宾语及补语的关系比较复杂，这在下面 47 种谓语类型中可清楚看出。如果对主语不加考虑，这 47 种谓语类型也就是 47 种句型。事实上在下面讨论中，谓语类型的公式都采用“S + TV + N”，“S + DV + N + N”，“S + FV + N + A”这类形式，里面包含了主语(S)，因此也就代表了句型。

2. 一个句型可以包含一个简单句：

John knows how to play football.

He avoided meeting her at some party.

3. 它也可以包含一个带有宾语从句的复合句：

He knows what you are doing.

I asked where he got it.

4. 但并列句中至少需有两个句型：

I have decided to go (一个句型) and he will go too (一个句型), but she decides to remain at home (一个句型)。(共包含三个句型)

D. 修饰语与独立成分

1336 句型指一个完整句子的骨架，它可包含任何数量的修饰语（即形容词、副词及起同样作用的其他词语）。这些修饰语可能在意思上很重要，但在语法上却是可以删除的，在我们考虑句型，也就是句子的基本结构时，可以对它们不加考虑。所有下面句子都属于同一句型，即“主语+及物动词+名词”，但却可包含不同类型的修饰语（斜体部分）。最

后包含 25 个词的句子和第一个包含 4 个词的句子同属一个句型：

I saw a house .

I saw a big house .

I saw a big house on the opposite side .

I saw a big house on the opposite side , which was said to be haunted by a ghost .

Yesterday I saw a big house... .

Yesterday when I sailed down the river I saw a big house... . 修饰语在后面将作详细讨论。句型还可以包含一个独立成分，但基本结构不变。

所有下面句子都属于同一句型，即“主语+系动词+补语”：

That man is crazy .

Oh ! that man is crazy .

Oh ! that man is crazy , I am sure .

Oh ! that man is crazy , you may be sure , Mary .

E . 句型的用法

1337 在下面讨论中，所列出能用于某句型的动词的数目只是大致估计。列出的目的只是说明某一句型使用范围大致有多广。一般说来，数目越小，越难使用，因为如果这个句型只限于用少数动词，则用错的机会更多。

1338 偶尔也会有些例外的句子无法归入这 47 种句型的任何一个。但如果把某些不规则的动词短语适当转换为规则的动词短语，则它们大部分仍可归入某些句型：

I have a good mind (=intend) to punish you . (have a good mind 可能换为 intend，则句型将是“主语+及物动词+不定式”。)

He will have it (=insists) that I have cheated him . (主语+及物动词+that 引起的从句)

“Who has taken my pen ? ” “John (has taken your pen) . ”

(I) Beg (your) pardon .

(It was) No sooner said than (it was) done .

(You) Live and let (others) live .

(I wish you) Good luck !

1339 确定一个句子属于哪个句型是有好处的。下面的句子都是错的，因为它们不代表 47 种句型中的任何一个：

1 . I hear about that John has arrived . (主语+不及物动词+介词+that 引起的从句)

2 . I paid attention what he was doing . (主语+及物动词+名词+疑问词引起的从句)

3 . He is afraid of that he will be assassinated . (主语+系动词+形容词+介词+that 引起的从句)

4 . He is afraid being assassinated . (主语+系动词+形容词+动名词)

5. I know that who has broken the window. (主语+及物动词+that+疑问词引起的从句)

6. We want peaceful. (主语+及物动词+形容词)

这些句型应改正如下:

正确句型

1. 主语+及物动词+that 引起的从句

2. 主语+及物动词+名词+介词+疑问词引起的从句

3. 主语+系动词+形容词+that 引起的从句

4. 主语+系动词+形容词+介词+动名词

5. 主语+及物动词+疑问词引起的从句

6. 主语+及物动词+名词

正确句子

I hear that John has arrived.

I paid attention to what he was doing.

He is afraid that he will be assassinated.

He is afraid of being assassinated.

I know who has broken the window.

We want peace.

其次, 应确定使用的动词是否适合用于某个谓语类型。

F. 47 种句型的公式

1340 每种句型都可以用一个公式来代表, 例如: “S + IV”, “S + TV + N”, “S + LV + AP”, “S + FV + N + PaP”, “S + DV + N + that - CI”. 下面列出了代表某些词的缩写形式:

S= Subject (主语)

O= Object (宾语)

C= Complement (补语)

IO= Indirect Object (间接宾语)

DO= Direct Object (直接宾语)

IV= Intransitive Verb (不及物动词)

TV= Transitive Verb (及物动词)

DV= Dative Verb (双宾动词)

LV= Linking Verb (系动词)

FV= Factitive Verb (宾补)

I= Infinitive (不定式)

G= Gerund (动名词)

PrP = Present Participle (现在分词)

PaP = Past Participle (过去分词)

N= Noun or Pronoun (名词或代词)

R= Reflexive Pronoun (反身代词)

A= Adjective (形容词)

P= Preposition (介词)

AP= Adverb of Place, or Adverbial Particle, as in, out, up, away (地点副词或副词性小品词)

W - CI = Interrogative-
Clause, (疑问词引起的
从句, 由 whether,
what, which, who,
whom, whose, where,
when, why, how 引起)

That-Cl= Noun-Clause

(that 引起的名词从句)

inn . = innumreable = hundreds or thousands (无数 , 成百上千)

“ . ” 表示它前后的词构成成语 , 如 IV . P , LV . A . P . , TV . N . P , LV . PaP , 它们包含 2 个或 3 个词。

1341 一个 “ + ” 号表示这个句型包含 2 个基本成分 , 即主语及不及物动词 , 如 :

S+IV

S+IV . AP

2 个 “ + ” 号表示这个句型包含有 3 个基本成分 , 即主语 , 及物动词及宾语 , 如 :

S+TV+N

S+IV . P+ that - Cl

S+LV . A . P+G

或指另外 3 个成分 , 如主语、系动词及补语 :

S+LV+A

S+LV+ that-Cl

S+LV+P . N

3 个 “ + ” 号表示这个句型包含 4 个成分 : 主语、双宾动词、间接宾语及直接宾语 , 如 :

S+DV+N+N

S+DV+N+W-Cl

S+DV+N+ that-Cl

也可以是另外 4 个成分 , 如主语、宾补动词、宾语及 (宾语) 补语 :

S+FV+N+A

S+FV +N +PaP

S+IV . P+N+I

这里我们可以了解一个十分重要的事实 , 即英语句子是很简单的 , 它少则包含两个成分 , 多则包含四个成分。

了解了公式及图解的意义 , 现在就可开始借助它们研究 47 种谓语类型或句型。注意 : 句子末尾的星号表示这个句子将在每一类句型讲完之后进行图解。

. 47 种谓语类型 (附公式及图解)

A . 各种不及物动词

1 . S+IV (John laughed .)

1342 不及物动词不跟有宾语或补语，其数量不可胜数：

They smiled . John died . Mary walked slowly . Fire burns .

I dreamed last night . He wept bitterly . You must dress for dinner . That depends . It does not pay .

1343 通常跟有宾语的及物动词，如果宾语可以猜出，着重点不是宾语，而是动词（动作）时，可以把宾语省略，用作不及物动词：

A tractor can cut , push , pull , dig , lift , pump , carry and spray . The blind do not see . We must eat . I will change (my dress) . The knife cuts well . I will consider . If time permits . He can read . Don't trouble (yourself) . The stain shows (itself) . They married (each other) .

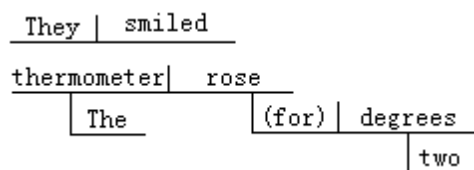
1344 有些动词用在表示数量的名词前，看起来像及物动词，实际上却是不及物动词：

The thermometer rose (or fell) two degrees .

He waited ten minutes . The wedding lasted three days .

I walked five miles .

1345 图解：



2 . S+IV . AP (John moved in .)

1346 无数的不及物动词可以跟有特定的地点副词，与之构成成语。但在多数情况下，这些副词并不表示地点，而有其他意思，因此可以称作副词性小品词 (Adverbial Particle) .

a . Don't answer back (=answer rudely) when a superior speaks to you . He backs away (=draws back) from her because he has made her angry . Don't worry , I will never back out (=fail to fulfil a promise) . In order to survive , we must band together (=unite) . He barged in (=inter - rupted rudely) while we were talking . The storm will soon blow over (=pass away without injurious effect) . The dynamite placed beneath the bridge blew up (=exploded) . He blows up (=loses his temper) at every small incident . Quick ! The soup is boiling over (=over - flowing the side of a pan) . Brace up (=take courage) if you really want to get married . Many prisoners broke away (=suddenly escaped) . Our car suddenly broke down (=failed to function) on our way home . A fire broke out (=started suddenly

and violently) on Sixth Street . Tears burst forth (=suddenly appeared) .

b . She colours up (=blushes) if we mention her love . An accident like this comes about (=happens) every day . My wife and I come together (=are reconciled) after ten years of quarrel . The seeds have come up (=shot up above the ground) . When we were talking , a young man came up (=approached) . Three days after the quarrel , I cooled down (=became calm) . She was shocked at the bill , but she had to cough up (=pay , perhaps unwillingly) . Hardly a week had he learned computer science when he cracked up (= suffered a mental breakdown) . An error may creep in (=steal in unnoticed) . This old empire crumbled away (=disintegrated gradually) because of misrule . I should not take much sugar , but I cannot cut down (=lessen) .

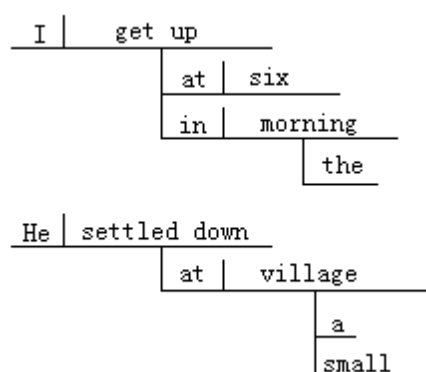
c . All members of my family dine out (=eat away from home) every Sunday . They drink liquor every day and can - not do without (=dispense with it) . We dressed up (= put on formal clothes) for a banquet . I will drop by (=call casually) when I am free . The production of rice dropped off (=decreased) last year . He dropped out (=left school before finishing his courses) at fifteen . The well has dried up (=become dry) . The road is rough , we should ease down (=lessen speed) . Let us ease down (=work less , make less effort) . His reputation faded out (=gradually disappeared) after his death . The country fell apart (= fell to pieces) because of civil war . I never fall back (=re - treat) before difficulties . Our country falls behind (= drops behind) in science and technology . Let us fall to (= begin to eat or to work .)

d . We were unable to get by (=pass) because the road was blocked . She got down (=dismounted) from her horse . The train got in . We got off (=started a journey) . How are you getting on ? I get up at six in the morning . At last I have to give in (=yield) . Rice is going down (= becoming cheaper) . A rumour went forth (= became public) . The gun went off (=exploded) suddenly . Our work went on (=continued) . The candle has gone out (= ceased to burn) . I won't hold back (=keep behind) if every one goes forward . Since I have started , I can't leave off (=stop) . Look in (=Pay a short visit) as you pass . While all are busy , don't look on (=be a mere spectator) . Look out (=Take precaution) , here comes a truck ! I moved in (=moved into a house) after he moved out . All trouble will pass away (=cease to exist) . She passed away (=died) a month ago .

e . The clock ran down (=stopped running , because the battery had exhausted itself) . She ran on (=talked incessantly) . Supplies have run out (=become exhausted) . Bad weather set in (=began) . We

set out (=set off) on February 16 . He settled down (=established himself) at a small village . I don't want to listen any more , so shut up ! He stood aside (or apart , aloof) while we were quarrelling . Some stood back (= retreated) , some stood out (= refused to yield) . The proposal will stand over (=be postponed) till next Friday . At the bad news I stepped back from surprise . The tyrant should step down(=re-sign) . Many volunteers stepped forward (=offered help) . My brothers quarrelled , but my father never stepped in (=interfered) . He stowed away (=hid in a ship or plane to get a free ride) . The band struck up (=began to play) . He summed up (=summarized) after a debate . The son tagged behind (or along) (= followed closely) wherever his mom went . Before I think ahead(=anticipate) , I think back(=recall) . Our business is just ticking over (= getting on in a routine way) . We touched down (=landed after a flight) at 6 p . m . Many workers walked out (=refused to work) .

1347 图解：



3 . S+ IVp (This cloth wore well .)

1348 约有九十个不及物动词用于主动形式却有被动意义，它们通常和表示无生命东西的主语连用：

a . This play acts excellently . The figures will not add up . The bread bakes well . The door blew open . The candle blew out . This bottle does not break . The dust won't brush off the hat . The luggage carries easily . David's raincoat caught on the nail . Some of the documents don't seem to check with the facts . This cannot compare (favourably) with that . Some of the sentences won't construe . Potatoes will cook slowly . Every minute counts . These people mostly count for nothing . The potatoes cropped well last year , but I think will crop badly this year . This light wood cuts like butter . The pineapple doesn't cut easily . This piece of cloth will cut up into two suits . Instinct derives from ancestors . Milk digests easily . Thie wine drinks well . The tooth draws easily . The frog eats like chicken .

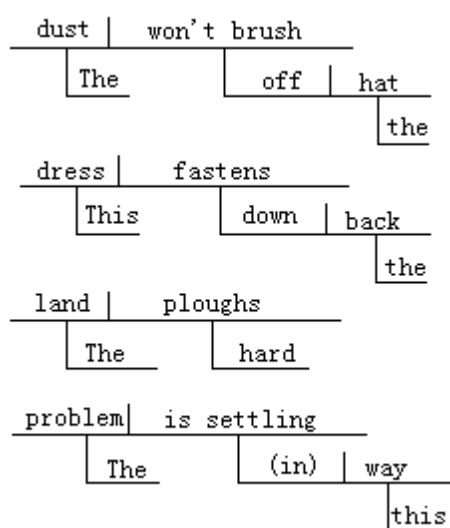
b . This dress fastens down the back . The toilet does not flush . The eggs hatch out easily . This rice won't grind fine . Water

heats readily . This cloth irons easily . This house lets well . The door will not lock . These books pack easily . My watch pawns for two dollars . These potatoes peel easily . She photographs (takes) well . The land ploughs hard . The film does not print well . This story reads ill (or well) . The photo reproduces well .

c . His house rents at \$ 800 a month . This poem does not rhyme . A shame does . not rub off . This plastic scratches easily . The play screen badly (=is unfit for filming) . The book sells well . This door won't shut . This cigarette smokes better than others . This wood split straight . This material stains easily . The ship steers with ease . The match will not strike . This paper will not tear . His de - scent traced back to a king . This poem translates easily . The TV set won't turn on . This board will never warp . This material washes easily . Such shoes wear badly . The plan worked out well . The photo washes out a little .

d . Drums are beating (=are being beaten) . The book is binding (=is being bound) . Some trouble is brewing . Young people are always brimming with new ideas . The house is building . The bridge is completing now . The meal is digesting well . What is doing now ? The task is finishing . Guns are firing . Friendship is forming . The theatre is rapidly filling up with people . The fish is frying . The house is leasing . The cows are milking . One boy is missing (or wanting) . He paid what was owing . Music was playing . Something is preparing . My application is processing . The problem is settling this way . A new film is showing . The boy is shaping well . The seeds of trouble are sowing . The fruits are spoiling quickly . Measures are taking .

1349 图解：



B . 各种及物动词 + 各种宾语

4 . S+TV+N 或 S+TV . N (John learned Japanese .)

1350 无数的及物动词可以用名词或代词作宾语：

John has a plan . Do you like him ? What an interesting book I am reading ! He speaks English . I love cats .

1351 不及物动词有时和后面跟的名词构成成语。整个成语，如果被化作一个整体，可以看成是一个不及物动词：

He lost hope (=despaired) . He gave ground (=retreated) The accident took place (=happened) this morning .

He made the grade (=succeeded) . We made our way (= advanced) to the jungle .

在某些成语中，名词前没有冠词，也没有物主代词：

a . He will bear witness . Her beauty beggars description (= makes words poor) . Don't borrow trouble (=worry about trouble that won't come) . We broke ground (=ploughed , untilled ground , began an undertaking) . Our boat cast anchor . I often caught cold . He caught fever (or infection) . Her house caught fire . He changed colour (=be - came pale) His personality commands esteem (or respect) He never did evil (or ill , wrong) . None of us care whether they do right or wrong , good or harm . We did (=produced) Romeo and Juliet . Jan did (=acted) Juliet . I did (=prepared) omelette (or breakfast) . Tom did (=wrote) poetry . His brother did (=translated) French into English . I did (=studied) electricity . They cry wolf (=give a false warning) just for arms aid .

b . One must exercise patience and caution when one exercises authority and discipline . He felt regret , but not satisfaction . He found time (or leisure) to study . He has finished college . After he took the lead , we followed suit . They gained time by giving me ambiguous answers . My watch gained time . We have gained ground (=got an advantage) . We will soon gain power , if we are patient enough . He gave evidence in the law - court . He gave ear (or heed , credit) to the rumour . He gave judgement (or advice , notice , warning , trouble) . I've had it (= can't suffer any more) . You hit it (=said the right thing) . This theory doesn't hold water (=isn't valid) . The criminal jumped (or skipped) bail (=gave up the bail money and ran away to avoid trial) .

c . My mother kept house and kept books . Being hospitable he kept open house (= provided hospitality for any comer) . He cannot keep body and soul together (=keep away hunger) . He kept bad company (=associated with bad people) . My watch does not keep (good) time , so I am late . He killed time by reading novels or doing another thing interesting .

d . He left school last year . We may lose ground but will never lose hope . I never lost courage (or heart) after I fail . Be quick , don't lose time . He lost self-control (or himself) in moments of

stress .

e . Mother makes dinner . It seemed late , but he made good time (= travelled fast and arrived on time) . He doesn't work hard , but he makes good salary . Make haste (or speed) . He can make money (or profit) , but spend much . After so many years of war we must make peace . I made tea (or hay) . We made way (= stood aside) for others to pass through . We made way (or headway) (= advanced) in the face of difficulty . He marked time (= spent idle hours) while waiting for his wife .

f . The soldiers mounted (or kept , relieved , stood) guard . He moved heaven and earth (= did everything) to attack his opponent . They opened fire (= started shooting) and killed three of us . The children often play havoc (= do great damage) . He plays politics (= attains political aims by hook or by crook) . He had broken the window , so he played possum (kept quiet to avoid attention) . He played second fiddle (= held a subordinate place) . He failed because he had often played truant .

g . We raised money for a great project . I can read character from handwriting . He can read music . I must say goodbye now . We said grace (= said a prayer of thanks before or after a meal) . We set (or made , struck) sail (= began a voyage) in February , 1969 . He refused to yield , he showed fight . He showed courage (or fear) . He sowed discord among his enemies . He struck oil (= had good luck in some enterprise) . He suffered (or sustained) defeat .

h . Don't take alarm if I tell you some bad news . He has to take breath after climbing upstairs . He took cold and could not work . He takes drink and drugs . Take heart , don't be afraid . The law will soon take effect (= be effective) . Take exercise every morning and keep healthy . He took flight after murdering a woman . He took medicine (or poison) . Don't take offence (= be offended) . Something strange took place (= happened) in this old house . Let's take rest . We take stock every week . The evil has taken root (= become established) . My dream will take shape (= materialize) next year . He took trouble to help me .

i . Don't tempt providence (= take an unnecessary risk) . He has touched bottom (= is beginning to prosper after his worst days) . The boat turned turtle (= turned upside down) .

在某些成语中名词前有不定冠词 , 或作复数 :

j . He often acted a double part (= was deceitful) . Since I criticized him , he has borne a grudge (= nursed a grievance) . The enemy beat a retreat (= retreated in a hurry) . Thomas Edison blazed a torch (= started something new) in various fields . Don't breathe a word (= say a word) about this secret . When angry , he calls names (= call somebody by abusive names) . I would like to cross swords

(=argue) with this boaster . You have done a good job (=done something well) . I drew a blank (=failed to get any information) when I returned to the office . We must draw a line (=distinguish) between right and wrong . We down tools (=stop work) at six .

k . My sister fixed a date for the celebration . This evening I have a date (or an engagement) (=have a social meeting) with her . I have a job (or a time) (=have trouble) writing this first love letter . (但 : I have myself a time [= have a good time] writing it .) As they didn't lift a finger (or a hand) (=didn't give help) , I lent (or gave) a hand (=gave help) to the old lady .

l . I made an appointment (=had an engagement to meet some one) for 3 p . m . He made a boast , but who believed him ? He made a call over the phone . He made a face (= twisted his face) , and then we were no more angry . Don't make a fuss (=get excited about a trifle) . John made a hit (=gave a good impression) at the exhibition of his works . Shall we make a move (=start) right now ? Dick made a public appearance after nine years in prison . Thomas makes a quick buck (= earns money quickly) . We make a row (or a scene) (=started a violent quarrel) from time to time . As soon as we arrived we made reservations for hotel rooms . I must make tracks (=set off) before it is late . William made waves (=created a sensation to impress others) at the party .

m . A big boss behind pulls strings (=secretly exerts influence) . Don't run a risk (=put yourself in danger) . The patient ran a temperature (=had a fever) . The criminal has served a sentence (or time) (=passed term of imprisonment) . I smell a danger in this desolate area . We struck a happy medium (=found an answer between two extremes) . As you committed mistakes for the first time , we might stretch (or strain) a point (=allow an exception to the rules) .

n . I would willingly take a back seat (=occupy an unimportant position) . We take a coffee break (=drink coffee and rest a short while) after two hours of work . He took (or drew) a long breath before he spoke . The situation took a turn (=changed) for the better . He wouldn't turn an honest penny (=make money by honest means) .

在另一些成语中名词前有定冠词或有物主代词 :

o . Act your age (=Don't be childish) . My warning merely beat the air (= made useless efforts) . I must bide my time (=wait for a good chance) . Someone blacked his eye (= gave him a blow) . He blew his own trumpet (=praised himself) . He has blown his mind (=becomes wildly enthusiastic because of drugs) . He bossed the show (=con- trolled everything) . She boxed his ear (=smacked him on the ear) . I have to break (or cancel , change , postpone)

the appointment . After half an hour of silence , I broke the ice (= overcome reserve) . The news broke her heart . He broke his word (= failed to keep his promise) . I broke the news (= announced the news) to her . They broke the peace (= quarrelled) . He burned his fingers (= suffered a loss through a rash action) . We buried the hatchet (= made peace) . I am not buying it (= am not to be deceived) .

p . He calls the roll (= calls the names to check who are absent) . Dick carried the ball (or the can) (= did the hardest part of the work) . I carried (or gained) my point (= succeeded) . We carried (or gained) the day (= won) . I caught my breath (= rest after hard breathing) after running . He tried to catch the train but missed it . This advertisement catches my eye . He changed his coat (= became a turncoat) . Don't change your mind . He changed his tune (= changed his policy) . He cleared his reputation (= free his name from reproach) . He cracked the whip (= suddenly became bossy) to impress me . We crossed the Rubicon (= took a decisive step forward) . When nobody could settle the problem , he cut the Gordian knot (= settle it in an unusual rapid way) .

q . I did the sights (or the travel) (= went sightseeing or took a trip) . The little girl can do (= make clean and tidy) her hair , her teeth , her nails , even the laundry , the bed- room , the dishes . She does (= learns) her lessons well , and can do (= solve) any sum (or problem) . She does her bit (= does her share of duty) splendidly . He dogged my footsteps (= constantly followed me) because he suspected I was a spy working for foreigners . He drags his feet (or heels) (= hesitates) when asked to work . We drew the swords (= were ready to fight) . He has to eat his words (= take back his words) . Although small , this table fills the bill (= is just right) . I have to face the music (= face trouble) . He is feeling his way (= proceeding carefully but slowly) . Although they were cripples , they fought the way up the hill . We all follow the crowd . Don't worry , I'll foot the bill (= pay all the expenses) . This number of persons will not form the majority .

r . He got the sack (= was dismissed) . He got the upper hand (= gained control) . He has the courage of his convictions (= acts bravely according to his belief) . This car has had its day (= fallen into disuse) . This small affair hits the headlines (= becomes important news) in this small town . The music hits the public taste . He hits his stride (= exhibits his best ability) when he tells a story . We will hold the fort (= defend the position) to the last . Hold your temper (= Don't get angry) . I have to hold my tongue (or my peace) (= keep silent) . I must hold my own (= keep what I have) . We must hold (or keep , maintain) our ground (= keep what we have) . He has always husbanded his resources (= been frugal

against an emergency) .

s . I jogged his memory (=reminded him) . He jumped the gun (=started to run before the starter's gun) , and jumped the traces (=didn't obey the rules) . The train jumped the rails (or the track) (=suddenly , left the rails) and many were killed . Dick slipped but kept his feet (= kept standing) . He knows his way about (or around) (= understands the ways of the world) . He knows the ropes (or the score) (=knows the special rules) in the export business . He will lead the way (=be a guide) to the old castle . I left the beaten track (=did not follow the crowd) . He lost his reason (=became mad) .

t . He made the grade(= succeeded) in business . The doctor makes (or goes) the rounds (=goes from place to place to inspect) every morning . We made our way(= advanced) through the forest . He mended his fences (= made peace with people who dislike him) . You missed the boat(= missed the opportunity) . The company opened its doors (= started doing business) in 1950 and closed its doors (= stopped doing business) in 1983 . This exhibition opened our eyes (=made us see the truth) . I picked my way (= proceeded) up a steep hill . I must play the game (=do what is right) . You played your cards well (=acted cleverly) . Dick played the market(=bought and sold stocks) and lost lots of money . Jim pocketed his dignity (=laid a- side his pride) and even pocketed an insult (= accepted it) . He has poisoned your ear (or mind) so that you can't be fair .

u . Every member should pull his weight(= does his part) . Don't pull my leg (=fool me) . Once you succeed , never push your luck (=expect to continue to be lucky) . He has to run the gauntlet (=receive a series of ill treatment) . He ruled the roost (=lorded it over) . We must save the situation (=do something to improve the situation) . A new method will see the light(=be disclosed) . This serves my turn (or purpose) . I have served my apprenticeship for seven years . She set the table for ten persons . He shows his face after ten years of absence . I will show the way . Everyone sings his praises (=praises him strongly) . He sowed his wild oats (=led a dissipated life when young) . I will speak my mind (=speak candidly) . He stole the show (=acted so well that the audience ignored the other performers) . He stole the spot light(=made people watch him instead of what they should watch) . You stole my thunder (=said before me what I intended to say) . Jim has strained every nerve (=used every effort) . He swallowed the bait (=was offered a big promise and was caught) .

v . Mary took it (=endured it without complaints) though she was ill - treated . You can take your ease (or your own course) (=act your pleasure) . The doctor took my pulse and temperature

(= ascertain them) . Where does this custom take its rise (=originate) ? Take your time (=Don't rush) . We must not tie our own hands (=restrain our - selves from action) . We have to tighten our belts (=eat less and spend less than usual) . Just one vote tipped the balance (or the scale) (=turned the scale , decided some - thing doubtful) . I would try my hand (=try) . Should I turn the other cheek (=be patient and not hit back) when I am injured or insulted ? His success has turned his head (=made him act foolishly) . The dead body turned her stomach (=made her sick) . The reinforcements turned the tide (=change the situation favourably) . He turned his thought to something much more important . He just twiddled his thumbs (=didn't do anything) .

w . She walked the floor (=walked back and forth) all night , she was so worried . He walked the plank (=was forced to resign) . Watch it (=Be careful) .

人们似乎都不喜欢单独用一个不及物动词作谓语，特别是在简单句中。往往不说“ I cook . ” “ He laughed . ” “ We chatted . ” “ Tom repairs . ” “ we acted . ” 而说“ I do the cooking . ” “ He gave a laugh . ” “ We had a chat . ” “ Tom makes repairs . ” “ We take action . ” 也就是把一个词换成了两个词，用一个 do 或 give 这样色彩不重的动词加上一个大多由动词变来的名词。

下面是一些这类短语的例子：

x . I DO the cleaning , the reading , the shopping , the translating , a little sewing ; a nap , a try , a brisk walk .

He GAVE a cry , a groan , a jump , a shout , a shrug , a long sigh , a satisfied smile .

We HAD a bath , a dream , a fight , an interview , a quar- rel , a shave , a shower , a smoke , a swim , a talk , a taste , a try , a walk , a wash , a chat , a go , a rest , a sleep . She TOOK a bath , breath , a nap , a look , notice , objection , recreation , a rest , a solitary stroll , a long walk .

Paul MADE an announcement , an answer , an application , an appointment , an attack , an attempt , a beginning , a bid , a call , a check - up , a comment , a comparison , a copy , criticism , a decision , a declaration , a demand , experiments , an explanation , a guess , inquiries , investigations , notes , payment , preparations , progress , a proposal , a recovery , a remark , a request , repairs . re- searches , a sacrifice , a selection , a slip , a formal statement , another start , a long stay , a deep study , a helpful suggestion , a general survey , several visits .

1352 图解：

you	do like	him?
I	am reading	book!
		What
		an
		interesting
He	lost hope	
We	gained ground	
He	acted	part
	often	a
		double

5 S+TV+R 或 S+TV R 或 S+TV+(R) (John hid him- self behind it .)

1353 无数的及物动词可用反身代词作宾语(S+TV+R):She reproached herself . He killed himself . He praised himself . Don't deceive yourself . He cut himself . The dog choked itself .

1354 有些动词和反身代词构成成语，相当于一个不及物动词 (S +TV . R) :

He avowed(or declared)himself(=showed his character openly) ; collected himself (=regained self - control) ; conceal himself (=hid) ; enjoyed himself (=had a good time) ; exerted himself (=endeavoured) ; can't find himself (=provide his own living , or find out his abilities and use them) . I lost myself (=demeaned myself ,lost my way ,or became absorbed in something) ;pulled myself together (=became composed) ; seated (or settled) myself (=sat down) ; washed myself (=bathed) .

1355 约有 20 个及物动词常常或经常跟有反身代词 :

I overworked myself , overslept myself , overate myself .

He disported (=amused) himself . He perjured himself .

He busied himself . He absented himself from school .

Bestir yourself . I bethought myself of it . You must demean (or bear ,comport ,deport ,conduct ,acquit ,quit)yourself properly .Help yourself (=Serve yourself with food) . He relieved himself (=went to the bathroom) .

1356 约有 50 个及物动词可跟有反身代词 ,也可以不跟(S+TV+(R)) :

a . 就某些动词来说，使用反身代词时语气更强一些 :

The bubble bursts (itself) . The clouds dispersed (themselves) .He dressed(himself)for a party ;engaged(himself) in a contest (or a quarrel) . The horse fed (itself) on grass . He guarded(himself)against vice ;hid(himself) behind ;never intruded (himself) on anybody's company . Can I qualify (myself) for the post ? I reformed (my- self) . I rested (myself) on the couch . He set (himself) up as a scholar . He shaved (himself) for a dinner ; stripped (himself) for a shower - bath . I could not submit (or

surrender) (myself) to the enemy (or insult) . I trained (myself) for the race . I never troubled (myself) to help anyone . He turned (himself) to me for advice . He washed (himself) . He worried (himself) about nothing . He wrapped (himself) before going out .

b . 在下面例句中 , 动词之后的反身代词常常省略 :

No suspicion attaches to John . A chicken develops in the egg . The road extends for miles . His heart fills with sorrow . Don't hurry . Keep quiet . Make sure that the journey is safe . We made merry . Don't misbehave . I cannot refrain from laughing . We removed from place to place . John separated from Mary . I withdraw from society .

c . 在下面例句中 , 动词之后的反身代词可以保留 , 也可以省略 , 根据特定的上下文决定 :

The child does not behave (himself) (=show good manners) .

He behaved well (or gallantly , properly) .

He drew himself up (=assumed an erect attitude) .

He drew up (=came near) .

He gorged himself with meat .

He gorged on meat .

He indulged himself with wine .

He indulged (himself) in wine .

We have to prepare ourselves .

We have to prepare (ourselves) for the worst (or the exam) .

d . He is recovering himself (=becoming calm) .

He is recovering from illness (or madness , fatigue , shock , fright) .

He set himself to write letters (or to writing letters) (=began to write letters) .

He set to work (=began to work) .

He set out to do it , set about doing it (=began to do it) .

He settled himself (=became calm) . He settled himself (=sat down) in a chair .

He settled (himself) down (=became established in a new way of life) in London .

It (Thing) will settle .

1357 图解 :

She	reproached	herself
(You)	Do not deceive	yourself
He	collected	himself

6 . S + TV + N (John lives a happy life .)

1358 约有 60 个动词 , 通常用作不及物动词 , 却可以有同源宾语 (Cognate Object) , 这种宾语几乎和动词的意思相同 , 通常都有一个

形容词或形容词短语修饰它。同源宾语可以和动词同形：

She blushed an innocent blush ; bowed a little bow ; coughed a terrible cough ; danced a silly dance . He died a natural death (or a thousand deaths , the death of a martyr , the death he deserved) ; dreamed a sweet dream ; laughed a hearty laugh ; lived a happy life ; look a look of weariness ; could not say his say . He sighed a deep sigh (or a sigh of satisfaction) ; slept a sound sleep (or the sleep of the just) . It smelled a strange smell . He smiled a sad smile ; talked foot - ball talk ; thought all good thought .
1359 有些同源宾语可以和动词不同形：

It blew a brisk gale . He danced a phantom ballet ; did a great deed ; fought a brave war (or fight , battle , action) ; went a long way (or a dangerous journey) ; harvested a good crop ; lived a hand - to - mouth existence ; played a silly game ; played (or acted) a great part ; plod a weary way ; prayed an earnest prayer ; saw a strange sight ; ran a long race . The bell rang a merry peal . He sang a beautiful song ; struck a deadly blow .

1360 有些动词后的同源宾语常常省略，代之以一个表示情绪或态度等的名词：

He beamed satisfaction (=beamed a beam of satisfaction , showed satisfaction by beaming) ; bowed his obedience (or his thanks) (=showed his obedience or thanks by bowing) ; danced his joy (=danced his dance of joy , showed his joy by dancing) ; gesticulated his love ; giggled agreement ; laughed dissent ; look inquiry (or his thanks) ; nodded his assent (or welcome) ; roared approval ; shouted applause ; sighed disappointment ; smiled his welcome (or his relief , his approval , his thanks) ; whistled his contempt , wept tears of joy .

1361 有些同源宾语在最高级形容词后常常省略：

The fire blazed its brightest (blaze) . He breathed his last (breath) ; did his best (deed) ; fought his bravest (war) ; laughed his loudest ; looked his best ; ran his fastest ; shouted his loudest ; sang his sweetest ; tried his hardest .

1362 在口语中一个没有意义的 it 常可用在某些动词后作同源宾语，表现一定的情绪：

He braved (or brazened) it out (=faced trouble bravely [or shamelessly]) . We'll face it out and fight it out . As it was getting dark , I had to hotel (or inn) it . She queened it (=domineer) over them . He used to rough it (=live an uncomfortable life) . I'll go it alone (=act independently) . He's starring it in a film . As there's no cab , I've to trudge (or walk , foot) it .

1363 图解：

He	lives	life	
		a	
		happy	
He	shouted	(shout)	
		(a)	
		(of)	applause
He	breathed	(breath)	
		his	
		last	

7. S + TV. AP + N or G (John gave up his plan.)

1364 无数及物动词后面跟有一地点副词来构成成语，整个成语相当于一个及物动词。但这些地点副词 (Adverb of Place) 多不表示地点，而表示其他东西，因此这种副词也可称作副词性小品词 (Adverbial Particle)，可以用 AP 来代表：

He gave up his plan. I have to think out new methods.

She folded up his coat. We may pass over the details.

The plague swept off many people. He has taken over a business. He gave in the paper. He closed down the store.

The bell bellowed (or pealed) forth the anniversary (or the victory of our army).

有些“动词 + 地点副词”构成的成语可以用作不及物动词，如 1340 节中句子表示的那样，有些则用作及物动词：

An ammunition dump blew up (=exploded). (作不及物动词)

The enemy blew up (=destroyed by explosion) the bridge. (作及物动词)

The noisy children cleared off when I came. (作不及物动词)

I have to clear off those noisy children. (作及物动词)

Our conversation broke off as a lady came in. (作不及物动词)

That fellow broke off our conversation. (作及物动词)

He showed off before girls. (作不及物动词)

He showed off his new car. (作及物动词)

如果宾语较短，特别是由人称代词表示时，地点副词可以甚至必须放在宾语后面，在对副词加以强调时尤其如此 (可参阅 1497 节)：

Put the money by. She called him back. Don't break it off. He dreamed his hours away; slept the clock around; cried his heart out; laughed (or talked) them down. He ate it up; closed it up; packed it up; tied it up. He sent me away, saw her off, called me out, drew us aside.

1365 其它例子：

a. They backed up (=supported) Johnson and his policy. They bailed out their friend. They beat back our attack. I must beat up (=beat severely) those mischievous children. I blew out

(=extinguished) the candles . We bolstered up (=supported) this old system . I booked down (=wrote down) the sum . We booked up (=fixed an engagement with) several singers . They boss us about (=order us about) . The news bowled over (=overwhelmed) my family . We broke up (=dispersed) the meeting at 11 00 p . m . . The mistake brought about (=caused) a lot of trouble . Can you bring down the price ? The tax brought in ten million dollars a year . The examples bring out (=explain clearly) the meaning of this word . She brushed off (=jilted) her lover . We must build up our own armed forces . He will buy off (=pay money to get rid of) my interest .

b . This strong measure called forth (=provoked) a revolt . We called in a doctor . We have to call off (=cancel) the picnic , which we have prepared for so many days . Call (=Wake) me up at 6 a . m . . I'll call you up (=telephone to you) . The music carried off (=moved) everyone . He carried off (=won) all the prizes . Let's carry on (=continue) the work , We carried out (=performed) the plan .

c . He can dig up (=discover) some important information . He drew on (=pulled on) his socks after getting up . I drew up (=prepared) a bill (or a list) . The taxi dropped me off (=let me get off) at my hotel . The noise drowned out (=made inaudible) our conversation .

d . The mother fed up (=gave extra food to) her sickly son . We filled in (or out , up) the form . He fenced off (=built by means of a fence) a garden . Figure out (=count) the sum . He fired off many questions , which nobody could answer . They fitted out their son with everything necessary . We fitted up (=installed) the machine . We fixed up (=arranged) a trip . He flagged down (=stopped by waving to it) a passing car . Follow up (=Continue) your success with something more ambitious .

e . He gambled away his last cent , even all he had won before . He will get over (=finish) his job . He gave away (=gave free of charge) his property . He gave away (=betrayed) his friends . We gave in (=handed in) the exercise books . The food gave off (=emitted) a bad smell . He gulped down his coffee . Heat up (=re - heat) the leftovers . He helped me out (=help me get over a difficulty) . She held back (=kept back) her tears . Can we hold down (=keep down) costs ? We could not hold off (=keep at a distance) the attackers .

f . The enemy kept up (=maintained) the attack for three months . I knocked off (=ate up quickly) five bowls of rice . I laid aside (or by) (=saved for future needs) some dollars . I laid down (=state clearly) some rules for the office . Our company laid off (=dismissed) five workers . Leave off (=stop) fighting . He left out (=didn't include) Mary in the invitation . Don't let down (=disappoint) your parents . The driver let off (=dropped) a lady

at the hotel . The judge let him off (=did not punish him) . I will look you up(=visit you) tomorrow .The manager looked the applicant up and down (=examine him carefully) . A girl will liven up (=make lively) our party .He lived out his years(or days , life) (=lived all his life) in this small village . He will make out (=write out) a cheque . My father can't make out (=see) these small letters , for he is farsighted .

He makes up (=invents) all kinds of lies . The boss marked down (=reduced the price of) all articles . He messed up (=put in disorder) my desk . I nailed up (=closed up with nails) the window .

g . He packed off (=sent away hurriedly) all his children to the country . Partition off (=Divide with partition) your living room . Pass on (=Hand) this notice to other people . We passed over (or up) (=overlooked) the chance . I've paid off (=paid the wages of) the workers . I have to pay off (=pay for safety) the blackmailers .I will pickout (=select)the best necktie for you .He picked up (=found) a cab at the cross-roads . He picked himself up (=got up after a fall) . He picked up (=learned without teachers) English so quickly . I pinned him down (=got him to commit himself) as to the question of socialism .

h . I played back the recording , so that what has been recorded about her speech could be heard .He played down(=made less emphatic) the defects of his factory products . Plug in (=Make connection , by means of a plug , with) the radio . He can polish off (=finish off) all these grapes . He pulled on (=put on) his pants and then went out . I pulled up (=stopped) my car at the post office . His brother pushes him about (or around) (=orders him about) . I put aside (or by) (=saved) a few thousand pounds . After five hours of work , I put away (=re - placed) the tools . Put forward your viewpoint . I put in (=spent) five hours repairing this radio - set . He put in (=submitted) an application months ago . We have to put off (=postpone) the trip until next month . Instead of losing weight I put on some weight lately . We put on (=presented) a show .

i . I'll ring you up (=telephone to you) . They roared out a 21 - gun salute . Roll up the sleeping bag before we leave . We roped off (=enclosed with a rope) a space for dancing . Round up (or down)the price(=Bring it to a whole number by raising[or lowering] it) .

j . We save up some money for future needs . I will see (=ac - company) you back (or home) . She sent away (=dismissed) all her suitors . Send in (=Submit) your photos for the contest . He sent out invitations to his wedding . His departure was set back two weeks . This discontent set off (=caused) a revolt . We set out (=arranged) the goods for sale . We set up (=establish) a small

store on the third floor . Can he shake off (=get rid of) his bad habit ? She showed off (=displayed to impress people) her hands . He shut himself away (=confined himself) in his attic .

k . He signed away (=sold by signing legal papers) all his houses . He signed his house over to me . Let's size up (=make a judgement of) the situation . This small accident sparked off (=touched off) his temper . He sorted out (=arranged in classes) all the books he had collected . Switch off (=Turn off) the tape recorder . Sum up (=State briefly) your opinion .

l . Take down (=Write down) my speech , please . I will take over the business he decides to give up . I took up (=got interested in) painting last year . This bed takes up (=occupy) too much space . You can take up (=mention and discuss) the matter with the boss . I can talk round (=persuade) anybody who refuses to cooperate . I have to tear down (=take to pieces) the broken machine . He will tear up (=tear to pieces) the contract when it is no more useful to him . He told off (=reproached) his employees . He can think up (=devise) all kinds of lies . He threw on (=put on) his gown .

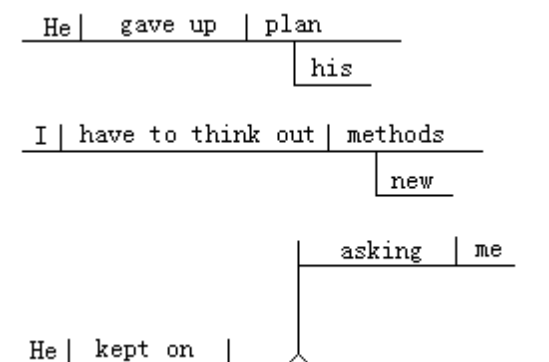
1366 在上面所有例句中，及物的动词成语都用名词或代词作宾语，但有些也可用动名词作宾语：

He kept on asking me . He put off going to the doctor .

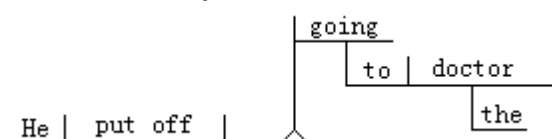
He left off studying French . He gave over (or gave up) smoking .

1367 注意不要把地点副词错误地看作是介词，把及物动词看作不及物动词，换言之，不要把这第七类谓语类型和下面第八类谓语类型混淆。

1368 图解：



人这个符号表示，上方所有的词（动名词短语）应看作是一个词类（名词），尽管它们内部各有特定的作用。Asking 作为动词，以 me 作宾语，而 me 和 kept on 没有直接关系。



8 . S + IV . P + N or G 或 S + IV . P . N (John laughed at me .)

1369 无数的不及物动词可跟特定的介词构成成语，整个成语起及物动

词的作用，可以用名词、代词或动名词作宾语：

a . You must abide by (=keep) your promises . The river abounds with (=has many) fish . I agreed to his view . We aim at success in the examination . This answer amounts to refusal . I must apologize for my fault . I ask for (=demand) nothing luxurious . He depended upon me for advice . He dreamed of his grandfather . He got into politics . Don't gamble on it . He imposed on (=deceived) her . He laughed at (=derided) me . She looks after her child . He looked into (=examined) the matter . He sent for (=summoned) them . I thought of (=considered) this matter . Don't trifle with (=mock) her .

b . He abstained from drinking . His reply amounts to refusing her demand . We began with learning A B C . Happiness consists in being easily pleased . My success depends on my friend helping me . He died from drinking too much . I felt like beating him . He got to drinking . He goes about (=is busy) repairing a car . He heard of his brother having succeeded . We look to moving to a more peaceful country . He objected to being treated like a dog , a slave . He took to reading novels . The paper tells of the enemy having captured the city (=The paper says that the enemy has captured the city) . He thought of going abroad . He wondered at being praised for doing nothing .

1370 无数不及物动词不仅和介词，还可和名词构成成语。这种成语可以看作是不及物动词，因为它们后面既不跟宾语，也不跟补语。

a . 这种成语中有些名词前不加冠词：

They burst into laughter (=suddenly laughed) . A steamer came into sight (=appeared) . When did this world come into existence (=come out) ? The new law comes into force (=functions) next September . My son came of age last year . He came to grief (=suffered misfortune) . Your letter has come to hand (=arrived) . He cried over spilt milk . Everything ended in smoke . He fell into poverty . The law has fallen into abeyance (=been no longer observed) . Many slang words have fallen out of use (=been no longer used) . They got into trouble . We got into hot water (=became involved in difficulty) because of jealousy . I went on sick leave . He has gone through fire and water (=undergone the greatest perils) . They go to law (=appeal to court) . The school went to great expense (=spent very much) . I will go to sea (=be a sailor) . He will go to rack and ruin (=perish) . Robbers lay in wait for us . We live from hand to mouth (=can save nothing) . The ship put to sea (=began a voyage) this morning . Don't stand on ceremony (=be formal) .

b . 有些名词为复数形式：

She burst into tears (=suddenly cried) . The building burst into flames (=suddenly burned) . He fished in troubled waters (=looked for personal advantage in times of national

calamity) . The fence fell into pieces . They fought against odds (=fought with men much more than they) . We should keep within bounds (=act with propriety) . They played at cross purposes (=opposed each other) . They played into the hands of another (=acted so as to give some advantage to another) . Don't play with edged tools (=play with things dangerous) . We took to the boats (=used the lifeboats to escape) .

c . 有些名词前加 “ a ” :

We came to a conclusion . His plan came to a bad end (or no good) (= failed) . Business has come to a standstill (=stopped) . The two came to an understanding (=began to understand each other) . We will go for a drive (=go in a car for relaxation) . Your argument goes (or flies) off at a tangent (=changed suddenly in its direction) . His life hung by a thread (=depended dangerously on something small) . Provide against a rainy day (=Prepare for any emergency that may arise) .

d . 有些名词加 “ the ” :

These two plans come to the same thing(give the same result) . He erred on the safe side (=chose a course erroneous but safe) . His works have fallen into the shade (=ceased to attract attention) . They fought to the bitter end (or to the death) . He goes by the name of Joo (=is familiarly called Joo) . He will go to the bad (=sink into poverty and disgrace) . The situation is going to the bad (=is becoming worse) . The weak will go to the wall (=be pushed aside as helpless) . He need not go to the trouble of employing a tutor (=trouble himself to employ one) . Don't harp on the same string (=keep saying the same thing) . Keep in the shade . He rose to the occasion (=showed that he was equal to it) .

e . 有些名词前需加物主代词 :

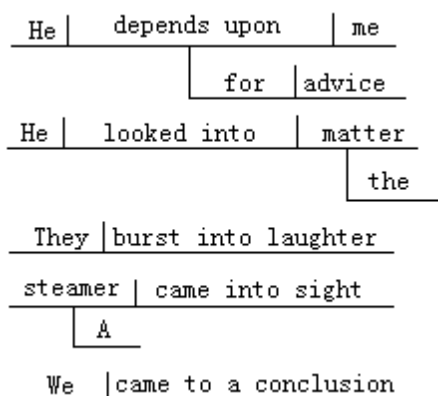
Come to your senses (=Stop behaving like a madman) . He fell on his knees (=knelt down) . Poverty fell to his lot (=became his destiny) . He is going about his work (=doing it) . She lies at your mercy (=is subject to your control) . The old widow lives on her own (=lives without help from others) . Do not quarrel with your bread and butter(=do anything harmful to your livelihood) . It rises from its ashes like a phoenix (=live again) . He rose to his feet (=stood up) . The chance slipped through my fingers (= escaped) . My work will speak for itself (=be visible to all) . He stood on his dignity (=insisted on being treat-ed with proper respect) . He stood to his guns (=defended his rights) . You tread on his toes (=offend him) . He worked on my fears (=caused me to do something for him , by taking advantage of my fears) .

1371 不要错误地以为下面句子的谓语和上面句中的谓语属于同一类型 :

He came on Sunday . (S + IV)

The children are playing by the tree .

1372 图解：



9 . S + IV . AP . P + N or G (John looked down on me .)

1373 无数不及物动词可与地点副词和介词构成成语。整个成语可以看作一个及物动词，因为它们可用名词、代词或动名词作宾语：

a . The loss added up to (=amounted to) a million dollars . He bows down to (=flatters) nobody . He broke away from (=cut his ties with) all his friends . Carry on with (=continue) your work . Lee cashed in on (=made a profit from) tea . We don't really catch on to (=under - stand) this custom . I can't catch up with (=overtake) the class this year . I checked out of the hotel two days after I checked in (=signed the register on arriving) . The police checked up on (=investigated) the suspect . He came around to (=agreed , after disagreeing , to) my views . The teacher came down on (=reprimand) him . I came down with (=caught) a flu . I came near to death (=almost died) . No result came out of the test . He came out with a question . Last year no plays came up to (= equalled) the standard . My friend came up with a good idea . We all cried out against (=opposed) favoritism . Most important , you must cut down on (=reduce consumption of) sugar . He cut in with (=insert) a terribly saucy remark while we were discussing .

b . This custom dates (=or goes) back to the early eighteenth century . We should do away with (=get rid of) all social evils . Everyone does well with him (=treats him well) . He dropped in on (=made an unplanned visit to) my family . He dropped off to sleep (=fell asleep) . He dropped out of (=quit) high school . He ended up as (=finally be - came) a manager . He ended up with not a cent in his pocket . I have to face up to (=bravely accept) the situation . We have to fall back upon (=depend upon) his support . He fell out with (= quarrelled with) all his friends . I feel up to (=feel capable of undertaking) this job . He will find out about (=get facts about) this matter . He didn't fit in with (=live

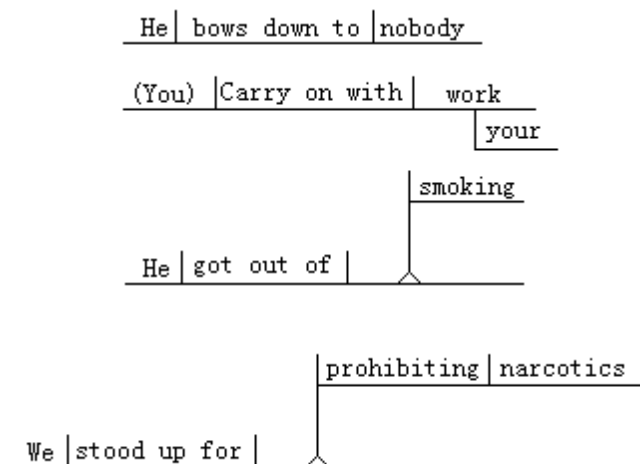
in harmony with) those foreigners . How can I get away from (=avoid) her nagging ? How are you getting on(or along)with(=living together with) your bride ? I cannot get out of (=avoid) this trouble . Have you got through with (=finish) that job ? Don't give in to (=yield to) your impulse . He goes along with (=agrees with) our party . He goes (or plays) around with (=fools around with) all kinds of girls . He went in for (=got interested in) stamp collecting . He will go on to college . This store will soon go out of business (=end a business) . This sweater has gone out of fashion (=is no more fashionable) . He often goes out with that pretty Japanese girl . She held on to (=kept grasping) his arm .

c . She keeps away from (=avoids) him . We should keep in with (=keep friendly with) our neighbors . I can not keep up with (=overtake) my classmates . This small event led up to (=prepared the way for) his death . Live up to(=Act according to) your promise . I often look back on (=recollect) the old days . He looked back over (=reviewed) his record . Don't look down on (=despise) small people . We are looking forward to (=anticipating with pleasure) your visit . Look out for (=Watch out for) the car . He cannot make up for (=compensate) the loss I have suffered . He made off with (=stole and hurried away with) all my money . Does his school work measure up to (=come up to) his hopes ? Last year I met up with (=met by chance) Jane , who I hadn't seen for ten years . The child messed about with (=made a mess of) my desk .

d . He played up to (=tried to please) her . I had to put up with (=bear) these terrible noises every day . I must settle up with (=get even with) the man who has insulted me . Many signed up for (=joined in) the contest . The guests sat down to dinner at eight . I can't sit down with (=suffer without complaint) that insult . We should speak up for (=speak in a loud voice for) justice . This policeman stood in with (=was in secret league with) those gangsters . Why don't we stand out against (=oppose) this evil practice ? We should stand up for (=support) this good policy . I always think back to (=recall) my childhood . Think twice about it before you act . Tune in to another radio station . We should wake up to (=realize) the seriousness of our situation . They wait up for me (=They stay awake until I come home) . He walked away with (=easily won) the election . He walked off with (=took away) my umbrella . We walked out of the meeting as an expression of protest . I want out of (=want to be freed from) her nagging . I warmed up to (=became friendly with) my neighbors . We should wise up to (Am .) (=finally under - stand) what is going on . I can't work together with him .

e . He got out of (=avoided) smoking . We moved on to getting married . We stood up for prohibiting narcotics . I never turn aside from (=avoid) doing anything good . He went near to (=narrowly escaped) being killed .

1374



10 . S + TV . N . P + N or G (John found fault with me .)

1375 无数及物动词和特定的名词和介词构成成语。整个成语可以看作及物动词，因为它们可用名词、代词或动名词作宾语：

a . They caught hold of (=seized) the thief ; caught sight of (=spied) a strange star ; declared war on (or against) a foreign country ; found fault with (=censured) me ; gained possession of (=got) a large estate ; got notice from the police ; gave warning to (=warned) us ; had (an) interest in (=liked) music ; left word with the office boy ; lost sight of (=forgot) their purpose ; lost touch with (=could not communicate with) all their friends ; made war on (=fought) a foreign country ; put confidence in (=trusted) me ; put (or lost) faith in everyone ; took care of their children ; took (a) pride in their work .

b . They asked a favour of you ; did a good turn to (=did a service to) me ; did an injury to their brother ; drew (or formed) a conclusion from (=inferred from) this fact ; entertained a fear for (=worried about) this adventure ; extended an invitation to (=invited) all their friends ; formed an estimate of (=estimated) his abilities ; gave an account of (=related) the accident ; gave an order to (=ordered) us ; gave a trial to the candidate : had a lesson in (=learned) English .

c . They asked the favour of an early supply ; cleared the way for the Queen ; got (or had) the start of (=gained an advantage over) their rivals ; got the better (or the best) of (=overcame) their competitors ; lost the use of their legs ; took the consequences of (=submitted to the results of) their folly ; took the place of

(=replaced) other members .

d . He cleared his mind of prejudice ; directed our attention to the vice ; did his duty to (or by) his country ; found his way to my village ; gave his love to his parents ; paid his addresses to (=courted) her ; raised his voice against (=opposed) the manager ; set his mind on (=attended to) his business ; shook his head at the news ; thrust (or poked , pushed) his nose into (=meddled officiously in) every - thing ; took his eyes off her ; took his choice of the books he needed ; turned his attention to exportation ; turned his back on (or to) (=forsook) his friends .

e . They did much damage to the car ; had little notion of this project ; had no objection to your proposal ; had no patience for (=couldn't stand) those fools ; had some relations with the government ; made (or lost) a lot of money over coffee ; made some reference to Shakespeare ; saw no harm in LSD ; took no delight in (=didn't like) reading ; took some interest in music ; took little notice of the crime .

f . He had dealings with (=did business with) us ; will go shares with (= divide profits or cost with) his friends ; made friends with politicians ; made preparations (or arrangements) for the journey ; shook hands with us ; took pains over the work ; took photographs of us ; took precautions against theft ; took sides with (=supported) a certain political party .

这种动词成语不仅如上面例句表示的，可以用名词作宾语，也可像下面例句表示的，可用动名词作宾语：

g . He aimed his efforts at studying nuclear energy ; bore the responsibility of paying the debt of his son ; gave his mind to bringing up his children ; had no patience for waiting so long ; had the pleasure of dancing with Mary ; laid claim to being respected as a man ; made preparations for starting at 3 a . m . ; didn't see his way (clear) to (=didn't find it possible or good) becoming a money-lender ; saw no harm in smoking ; took no interest in learning any trade ; laid claim to being the father of a famous actress who had been an orphan .

1376 无数及物动词可与特定的介词连用，但与作宾语的名词关系并不紧密。这种句型与其说是“TV . N . P + N or G”这类，不如说是带状语的“TV + N”类型：

I gave the money to John . Thank you for your kindness . Compare this with that . Don't throw stones at that dog . He prepared us for the exam . She keeps her children from harm . Please translate this poem into Chinese . It reminds me of her pretty eyes . He asked (or begged , implored) her for pardon (or aid) . They banished (or dismissed , expelled) him from that place . They charged (or presented , provided , supplied , furnished) him with something . What

1377

注：在上面及物动词的空格内只有 gave 一个词，gave 下方的标记说明了它和介词 to 的联系。

1378 约有 60 个及物动词可和反身代词和特定的介词构成成语, 整个成语可以看作及物动词:

b . He allied himself to (or with) (=was united with) a rich family ; associated himself with the firm (or the party , the movement) ; engaged himself to a businessman (or a woman) ; concerned himself with (or about) the exam ; en - rolled himself in the army .

d . He prided himself on (=was proud of) his new car ; valued himself on his birth ; plumed himself on his appearance ; pique himself on his dress .

e He indulged himself (=gratify himself)with wine(or in wine) ;
addicted (or delivered up , gave up , abandoned) himself to pleasure

(or dissipation , wine , drinking , gambling , grief , bad habits) ;
lost himself to her , dedicated himself to education , devoted himself
to music ; submitted himself to discipline (or his wife) ; yielded
himself to temptation .

f . He familiarized himself with (=made himself well acquainted
with) business ; accustomed himself to the weather ; accommodated
(or adapted) himself to new circumstances ; reconciled himself
to (or with) (=overcome his objections to) his enemies (or his
fate , his lot , the situation , a life of poverty) .

g . He troubled himself about such a small matter ; worried
himself about the education of his children .

He delighted (or contented) himself with his success (or the
result) ; enjoyed (or amused) himself with wine and women ; refreshed
himself with coffee .

He bethought himself of a plan .

He has satisfied himself of the truth of the report ; can't
assure (or persuade) himself of my sincerity .

h . He intruded himself on my company .

He avenged (or revenged) himself on his enemy .

He defended himself against robbery ; guarded himself against
vice ; set himself against everyone .

He broke himself of a bad habit ; freed himself of evil .

i . He distinguished himself for bravery .

He ingratiated himself with (=flattered) his boss .

He absented himself from school .

He excused himself from coming .

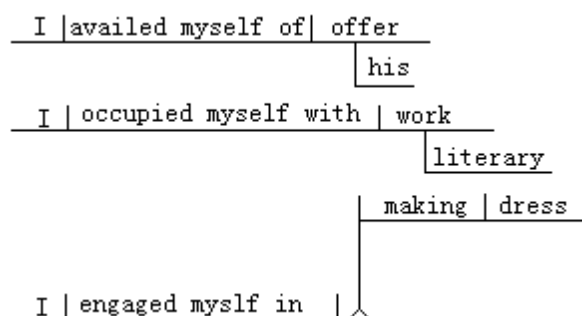
j . The problem resolved itself into a question of money . This
trifle developed itself into a serious problem .

The snow melted itself into water . It burned itself into
ashes . It changed (or transformed) itself into a giant .

The kingdom divided itself into three .

I engaged myself in making dress . He threw himself into
teaching . He addicted himself to gambling . He accustomed himself
to living on the mountain . He amused himself by reading . You must
resign (or reconcile) yourself to living a hard life . I excused
myself from attending the party .

1379 图解 :



12 . S + TV + I 或 S + TV . N + I (John wanted to swim .)

1380 约有 90 个及物动词用不定式 (而不是动名词) 作宾语 :

a . He wished (or hoped , delighted) to go ; wanted to know it ; schemed (or arranged) to kill his rival ; tended (or desired) to fight ; meant to help you ; aimed to be - come a doctor ; thought (=intended) (现在用得较少) to go ; ached (or yearned , longed) to be free ; trusted (=earnestly hoped) to hear from you soon . She admired (=intended) (美式) to learn Russian . He did not care to go .

b . He volunteered to help me ; offered to buy my house (or to strike me) ; chose (or elected) to remain here . He hesitated to go ; didn't scruple to steal ; hastened to tell me ; decided (or determined , resolved , concluded) to marry her ; vowed (or swore) to revenge himself . He promised (or agreed , consented) to pay me soon . They have contracted to build a large theatre . He threatened not to pay me .

c . He condescended (or deigned) to help me (or to offer me tea) ; vouchsafed to answer . He submitted to be punished . He refused (or declined) to lend me the money ; scorned (书面语) to accept the bribe , disdained (书面语) to speak with the hypocrite . He demanded (or required) to see my passport ; asked (or applied , begged) to see the king ; moved to postpone the decision .

d . He could (not) afford to wait (or to be generous , to be idle) ; managed to control his temper ; will never manage to learn ; contrived to live a simple life (or to make matter worse) . They tried (or sought) to kill their enemy ; endeavoured (or strove , struggled) to be independent .

e . They won't trouble (or bother) to do such a thing ; do not care to see it . They undertook (or guaranteed , engaged) to pay me the debt . They helped (us) (to) build the house . They expect to be there at noon . They never thought (or expected) to see me again . They pretended (or affected , made believe) to be rich men ; claimed (or professed) to know everything .

f . They dared (or ventured) to do it ; won't presume to criticise us . May I venture (or presume) (=take the liberty) to ask you a

few questions ? They learned to swim . They prepared to leave here ; started out (or set out) (=began) to write a report ; proceeded to play music ; moved to arrest the criminal . They deserved to enjoy this privilege . This child needs to be spanked .

g . He grew to believe it . How did he come (=begin) to know it ? How came you to love her ? The extra job serves to increase my income . These sentences will suffice to explain the use of the verb . Her looks contribute to show her joy . That just goes to show your ignorance . Every man tends (or inclines) to believe in himself . The boy bids fair to succeed (or to be an engineer) .

1381 有些动词在不定式前可加 for 引起的短语，表示意义上的主语：

We planned for him to come . We arranged for something to be done . He wanted (for) his son to be happy . The ringing of the bell meant for them to come to dinner . We have decided for the meeting to take place on the 3rd (=decided that the meeting should take place on the 3rd) . He doesn't deserve for you to help him .

1382 在下面句子中及物动词和后面跟的名词构成成语，可以看作一个单一的及物动词，后面跟不定式作宾语：

He had a good mind (=earnestly wished) to do it ; tried his best (=endeavoured) to find out a solution ; took the trouble to consult a dictionary ; took (good) care not to trouble her ; had not the heart to leave her ; made up his mind (= decided) to go abroad ; had to make shift to set up a hut ; saw his way (clear) to criticise (or praise) them .

1383 有些动词，看起来像是及物动词却不是及物动词，可以和 to 构成词组，起助动词的作用：

You ought to (=should) obey your parents .

You want to (=should) be more careful .

I shall have to (=must) go .

I (have) got to (=must) go now .

I am to (=must) see him .

He stands to (=may) win (or lose) the game .

He is going to (=will) leave here . He failed to (=should , but did no) answer her . He appeared (or seemed) to know it .

He used to come at seven and usedn't to come at eight . He chanced (or happened) to meet me there .

He turned out (or proved) to have discovered our secret .

试比较下面句子：

He is certain (or sure) to (=will certainly) succeed . He is likely to (=may) come this evening .

He is able to (=can) speak English .

He is allowed to (=may) do what he likes .

He is obliged to (=must) go at once .

He is bound to (=must) go .

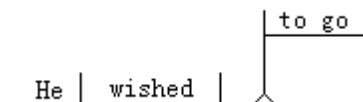
He is in a position (or a situation) to (=can) help his friends .

在上面所举动词之后不可加动名词：

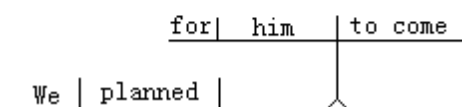
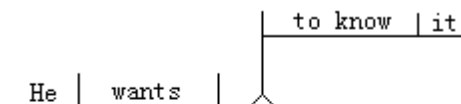
I wanted going abroad . (错句)

He promised helping me . (错句)

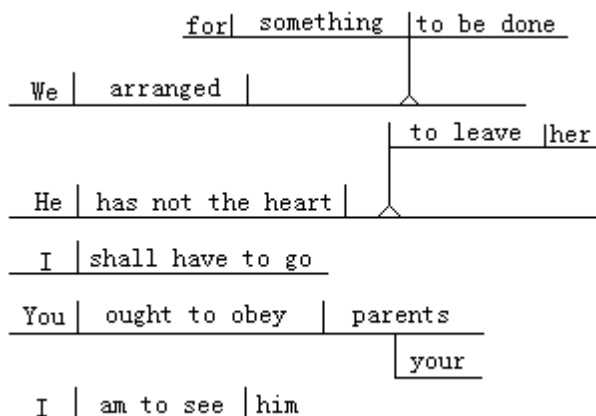
1384 图解：



注：不定式的图解方法和动名词一样（参阅 1368 节）。



注：不定式意义上主语 for him 的图解办法。



13 . S + TV + G (John enjoyed swimming .)

1385 约有 100 个及物动词用动名词（而不是不定式）作宾语：

a . You cannot avoid making mistakes . They will evade answering my questions . How can he escape being punished ? I will never shirk helping my good friends . I can - not help thinking so (or laughing) (=I cannot but think so or laugh) . She could not resist telling him everything .

b . They commenced (or set about , fell to) building a bridge . They kept (on) waiting there , and you kept (on) drinking . He resumed studying French . He has finished (or completed , done) writing the letters . You must stop (or quit) drinking . Perhaps you can't believe ; he has renounced smoking cigars , given up (or given over) playing the fool , left off being idle . I have to delay (or postpone , defer , put off) meeting him (or going to the doctor) .

c . I will consider (or contemplate) cooperating with him . He

mentioned learning Japanese ; reported having done all his work ; described their making liquor with rice . They suggested (you) making a trip to Japan . He advocated (or urged) (our) using force . He encouraged (our) spending less and earning more . He advised (or counselled) (your) trying once more . He recommended (our) increasing the salary .

d . He enjoyed eating Vietnamese food ; relished watching women passing by ; fancied going to the movies ; adored (=liked very much 口语体) being praised . He appreciated your assisting him . I detest (or abominate , loathe) working at night ; resent being laughed at ; dislike accompanying her ; reject giving him any aid ; favoured taking a decisive step . They depreciated (=expressed disapproval of) building a big library ; officially sanctioned flogging . Do you mind opening the door (or his smoking , being awakened , taking this letter to the post office) ? I don't mind opening the door (or his smoking , being awakened) .

e . He admitted (or acknowledged) having done something wrong ; owned (or owned to , confessed , confessed to) killing her ; denied stealing it ; disclaimed having tempted anyone to do evil . I doubt having any chance .

f . He risked offending somebody (or losing all he had , getting hurt , being robbed) . Should he chance being caught , he would be put to death . He faced being isolated from society . He missed eating a good dinner (or seeing such a good play) . I will await hearing from you .

g . I do not understand driving a car ; can't understand his behaving like that . I practised playing the piano . She aped being a high - born lady .

h . Fancy doing everything for nothing (or meeting you here) . Could you fancy meeting her here ? I cannot fancy doing such a silly thing .

I cannot imagine marrying such a man . I did anticipate (=look forward to) having a good time at Christmas .

i . They don't allow (our) talking loud in public ; never permit (our) screaming in the house ; tolerate (our) smoking and gambling ; forbade (our) speaking loud ; hindered (or prevented) (our) committing the same mistakes ; barred smoking and playing cards .

I never forgive (or pardon , excuse) spitting in public places .

He grudged paying me (= was unwilling to pay me) (or having to pay double the price , my living a happy life) ; repented learning too late .

She felt like swimming (or crying) ; burst out crying (or laughing) .

j . This measure means changing the whole system . The visit entailed buying gifts for children . The plan includes building a church . Money justifies doing evil . This proposal involves increasing the school fee . This implied condemning him to death . The new system facilitates pronouncing Chinese characters . The birth of another baby necessitated earning more . This provokes (or excites) vomiting (or crying) .

1386 有些及物动词后动名词的前面须有意义上的主语，正像上面的某些句子所表现的：

I cannot approve his (or him) behaving like that . (用 him 的时候比用 his 时更多一些。)

Mother welcomed their (them) visiting her at her villa .

I protest his (or him) treating me like a slave .

I often picture myself living a beautiful life .

I denounced anybody's (or anybody) telling lies .

Dennis announced Greg's (or Greg) getting married .

We applaud Ada's (or Ada) making so wise a decision .

1387 在某些动词后可跟 there being 这种结构：

I doubt there being any mistake .

He admitted there being some mistakes .

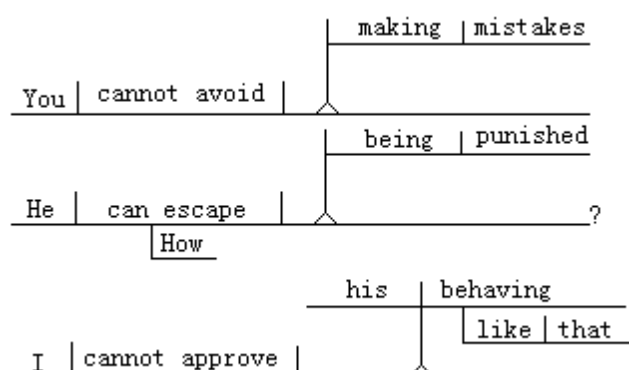
He didn't mind there being any wild beasts there .

1388 在上面所举动词之后不可用不定式：

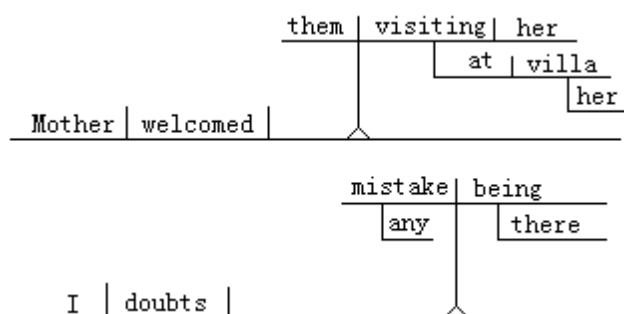
I enjoy to eat bananas . (错句)

He avoided to meet her . (错句)

1389 图解：



注：动名词意义上主语 his 的图解办法。



14 . S + TV + I or G (John liked to swim or swimming .)

1390 约有 50 个动词既可用不定式也可用动名词作宾语：

a . I cannot endure (or bear , stand) to be (or being) cheated .

We proposed (or intended , planned , designed , purposed) to abolish
(or abolishing) the outdated rules .

He attempted to get (or getting) rid of all the beggars .

He forbore to say (or saying) anything against anybody .

He neglected (or omitted) to pay (or paying) the fee .

b . She started to cry (or crying) before getting hurt .

He declined to speak (or speaking) at the party .

He continued (or discontinued) to stay (or staying) there .

I dread (or fear) to climb (or climbing) the mountain .

We need to learn (or learning) something .

He scorned to cheat (or cheating) anyone .

1391 有一些动词，在某些上下文中需用不定式作宾语，在另一些上下文中需用动名词作宾语：

a . He (表示人的主语) began to cry , to eat , to dance (or crying , eating , dancing) . It (表示物的主语) began to boil (or to rain , to move) (而不说 boiling , raining , moving) . He (人) ceased to write (or writing) . It (物) ceased to harden (而不说 hardening) . (不过有些作家不承认这一差别)

b . He began to know it (or to love it , to see it , to understand , to feel sad , to be suspected) . (而不说 knowing it , loving it , etc .) (在表示一种被动的心理状态时 , begin 可用不定式作宾语 , 而不用动名词作宾语。) He got (or grew . became) (=began) to know (or to believe , to care for) her .

但是：

They got (=began) quarrelling (or talking , laughing , playing) . (美式英语)

c . I prefer studying music to (介词) doing business .

I prefer to study music rather than (to) do (不定式) business .

1392 另一些动词用不定式作宾语和用动名词作宾语意义不同：

a . You must stop thinking (=not think any more) ; stop to think
(=stop doing something else and begin to think) .

He forgot meeting (or having met) you at a hotel (=had met you

but forgot it) ; forgot to meet you (=ought to have met you , but did not do so) ; remembered (or re- called , recollected) going (or having gone) to the pictures with her (=remembered that he had gone) ; will remember to post the letter (but has not yet posted it) .

b . I regretted telling (or having told) you the sad story (=regretted that I had told it ; regret to tell you (=regret that I have to tell you) that your son is very naughty .

You must try eating (=eat for the first time) the durian ; must try (=make efforts) to finish this work before Sunday .

She cannot help (=cannot help others) to prepare the meal ; cannot help (=cannot refrain from) laughing .

c . He went on teaching lesson five (=didn't stop after teaching some part of lesson five) ; went on to teach lesson five (=began teaching lesson five after finishing lesson four .)

I like (or dislike , love , hate) swimming (or studying the current events) (habit) ; should (or would) like (or love , prefer) to swim in this place (or to drink coffee) . (one recent act)

I began to understand (or to see) my mistake (被动心理状态) , started selling coffee years ago . (主动的活动)。

1393 注意避免连续使用 2 个-ing 形式或两个不定式 :

He is beginning to work (而不是 working) .

He is trying to do it (而不是 doing it) .

He seems to like playing (而不是 to play) tennis .

It's necessary to start organizing (不要说 to organize) a new party .

1394 约有 10 个及物动词可用被动形式的不定式或主动形式的动名词作宾语 :

Your work needs correcting (or to be corrected) .

This baby wants looking after (or to be looked after) .

It requires washing (or to be washed) .

His language would not bear repeating (or to be repeated) .

It won't bear thinking of (or to be thought of) .

The colour will not stand washing (or to be washed) .

It defies explaining (or to be explained) .

The complicated situation forbade analysing (or to be analysed) .

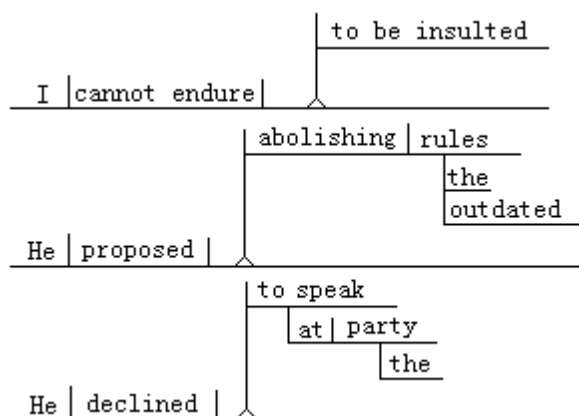
He deserved punishing (or to be punished) .

比较下面句子 :

The work is worth doing (or worthy to be done) .

This plan is worth carrying out (or worthy to be carried out) .

1395 图解 :



15 .S + TV + that-CL 或 S + TV + N (=that-CL) (John said that she was lazy .)

1396 约有 150 个及物动词可用由 that 引起的从句作宾语。

下面由 that 引起的从句都是陈述句 (参阅 1292 节) :

a . From this he gathered (or inferred) that his boss did not like him (or that the plan was good) .

He heard (or understood) that Wang was in love with Su (or that the situation was growing worse) .

He heard say that she was married .

He found (or saw , perceived , felt , sensed , noticed) that something was wrong (or that people liked him very much) .

He learned (or realized , discovered) that the earth is round (or that this plant could be found in Africa) .

I have ascertained (or found out) that he was murdered .

He reads that the earth has existed billions of years .

b . He does not doubt but that (=that) I'll win . (But that 只用在否定及疑问句中, 这种用法业已陈旧。)

You can not deny but that (=that) she's a good player .

Who can tell but that he is a swindler ?

Neither of us knows but that (=that) we can marry .

He knows as (=that) (不规范用法) you are honest .

I can tell as (=that) he is a swindler .

c . I think (or suppose , assume , presume , believe , expect , imagine , fancy) that he is a very honest fellow .

Suppose we have some coffee (=Let us have some coffee) .

Suppose we try (=Let us try) . (that 可以省略)

I dare say you are wrong .

I guess (or figure , calculate , reckon) (Am .) he will be here by seven . I wager (or bet) he has done his best .

d . I suspected that he was a thief . You didn't doubt that he was a thief . But she doubted whether he was . (=I thought he was probably a thief . You were sure he was . But she was not sure whether he was .)

He judged (or concluded , decided , gathered , considered) that it was best to resign (or that nobody could be trusted) .

The law prescribes that a man below eighteen must not get married .

The judge ruled (or adjudged) that David was innocent .

e . He believes (or maintains , holds) that the plan is imperfect (or that all men are born equal) .

I objected that (=objected because) he was unjust .

I protested (=affirmed strongly) that I had said nothing against anybody .

He claimed that he was innocent (or that he was a descendant of Confucius) .

f . He denied that he had stolen anything , but did not deny that (or but that) he was on the spot . (=He said that he had not stolen anything , ...)

Wang agreed (with me) that Lee was careless .

He admitted (or acknowledged , confessed , owned , recognized) that he was not qualified for the job .

We must allow that he is right , and grant that his re- mark is true .

g . He asserted (or claimed , alleged , stated , said , re- marked) that the situation was getting better and better .

He declared (or announced) that he was planning a trip (or that Mr . Fu had been murdered on the street) .

He proclaimed that the war would end after a week .

He reiterated that he could do nothing for anyone .

He mentioned that she would leave us soon .

He certified that I was a member of a photo club .

h . He revealed (or let on) that Wang had four wives .

He emphasized (or specified) that I was to blame .

He writes that all men are born equal .

I voted that we go for an excursion .

He showed (or signified) that he had nothing to say about the matter (or that something had happened) .

He hinted that he would like to go to the party and intimated he would accept if he was invited .

He insinuated that I had played him a trick .

His refusal does not mean that he is unkind to us .

His accent betrayed that he came from the North .

i . He demonstrated (or proved) that the earth is round (or that justice would win) .

All facts established that he was a traitor .

He estimated (or calculated , figured) that it would take three days to get to the moon .

He theorizes that the human beings could live 200 years , if...

I submitted there was some mistake and John was to blame .

I argued that everything was wrong with our system .

He explained that he was too ill to come .

j . He cannot guarantee (or warrant , engage , undertake) that I shall make a profit .

I will see (or check) that everything is done .

He promised that he would help you .

He pretended (or let on , made believe) that he was ill (or that the theft had nothing to do with him) . He played that he was a bridegroom .

He foretold (or foresaw , predicted , prophesied , di- vined) that you would be very rich (or that the world war would break out ten years after) .

He radioed that he was seriously ill .

k . He swore (or vowed) that he was innocent (or that he would never divulge the secret) .

He forgot that he owed you a hundred dollars , could not recollect that he owed you so much , but he remembered that he owed you ten dollars .

He replied (or answered) that he could not help me (or that he had no money to lend me) .

He added (or put in , threw in) that he must resign .

She retorted that I was more selfish than she .

I don't care that he should say so .

He rejoiced that we had won the battle , but grieved (or exclaimed) that many had been killed .

He boasted that he was the richest man in the city .

l . He murmured (or mumbled , grumbled) that he was so unlucky , and complained to me that nobody had treated him well .

He whispered to me that John had been taken by the po- lice .

He charged that the radio of his neighbour disturbed his sleep .

He wondered (or marvelled) that everything should change so quickly . I don't wonder that he was killed .

Do you wonder that he was killed ?

m . I appreciated that it was well done .

He dreamed that he was on the battlefield ; little dreamed that he should become so miserable .

Picture (or Imagine) to yourself that your wife is waiting for you at the door .

He exclaimed (or cried out , interjected) that he had lost his gold watch .

Beware (or Mind) that he does not deceive you (or lest he deceives you) .

I will look out (or check) that he does not cheat me .

1397 下面由 that 引起的从句表示命令、请求、建议等，可以称作命令从句、请求从句等（注意谓语由 should 构成，参阅 1294 节）：

a .He commanded(or ordered ,enjoined ,directed)that we should start at four .

The law prescribes that nobody should gamble .

He promised you should be rewarded .

He demanded (or required , requested , asked , wanted) that I should pay him next Monday .

I insist that he studies music(=I say it is true that he studies music) . 但 : I insist that he study (or should study) music . =I advise him to study it .

b . I had (or would) rather (or sooner) (that) she left (or should leave) this dangerous place .

I wish (or prayed) that I should not fail again .

He consented that his house should be searched .

His illness would not permit that he should work hard .

He contrived that his son should go to college .

We must secure that every teacher should be qualified .

c . He decided (or resolved , determined , intended) that everybody (should) be ready by 8 A . M . .

He guaranteed that it (should) be paid .

He arranged with Mary that they should meet again .

He recommended (or suggested , proposed) that I should flee .

He moved that John (should) be elected .

He willed that his property should go to his daughter .

The contract provided that the tenant should pay every month .

d . He cannot bear that you should say no .

God forbid that I should meet her again .

He hated that the dentist should touch him .

He dreaded that (or lest) he should fail

He urged that something (should) be done immediately .

He preferred that nothing (should) be said .

1398 下面的 that 从句表示希望或愿望（谓语多由 will 或 may 构成）：

He hopes (that) you will (or may) help him ; wishes (that) you would help him ; expects that you will help him ; can- not ensure that Mary will come today ; guarantees that the debt will be paid ; fears that you will refuse to help him ; begs (or requests , entreats , desires) that you will help him ; trusts (=hopes) you may help him (or we shall meet again) . God grant that he may succeed . We long that we may be free .

I bet (or hope) she arrives (=will arrive) before noon .

1399 在这类句子中，否定词 not 放在主句中时比放在从句中时多：

I do not suppose (or believe , expect , imagine , think) that he

is right . (这样说比 I suppose that he is , not right . 要好)

但应说 : I hope he does not fail again .

1400 当一个及物动词不能跟有 that 从句时 , 它后面可放一个 fact , circumstance , idea 这类名词 , 把 that 从句和它连接起来。这时 that 从句成为 fact 这类名词的同位语 , 也可以说它是由及物动词加名词构成的及物动词短语的宾语 :

a . He accepted the fact (owned) that he couldn't rise again .

He ignores the circumstance (=doesn't care) that he has made the same mistake as his rival .

He overlooked the fact (=failed to notice) that nothing in the world is perfect .

He had the belief (or an idea , a notion , the impression)
(=believed) that the king is always right .

I had word (=heard) that they would attack us .

b . We have no doubt (=do not doubt) (that) he knows it .

I have all the feeling that everything is wrong .

He had a dread (or a fear) (=feared) that the police would arrest him one day .

I have a hunch (=think it likely) that it will rain .

I brought the charge that John had murdered my wife .

c . He felt gratitude that they had helped him .

He makes the point (=points out) that some countries are overdeveloped .

He gave judgement that the accused was innocent .

Take care you don't fall .

He made up his mind (=concluded) that we were all wrong .

You bet your boots (=can be sure) that he will fail .

1401 在下面句子中 that 从句是 it 的同位语 :

a . I must (or will) see (or see to it , look to it) that everyone is happy .

He insisted (upon it) that he knew better than anyone .

He took it (=supposed) that I had left for London .

He took it for granted (=was sure) that I could help him .

Rumour has it (=says) that the king is ill .

He put it that a woman must keep the house .

He will have it (=insists) that you have insulted him .

He lays it down (=states clearly) that the school should be kept clean and quiet .

b . You may rely (or depend) upon it (=be sure) that he can help you any time .

He owed it to me (=was grateful to me for the fact) that he was still alive .

Look (to it) that everything is ready .

I will answer for it (=promise) that he will make no more

mistake .

He stood to it (=insisted) that I was wrong .

Take the word of scientists for it that an atom is like a universe .

1402 That 从句可以放在 it 和某些不及物动词后面 :

It appeared that he knew the secret . (=He appeared to know the secret .)

It seemed that he knew the secret . (=He seemed to know the secret .)

It happened that he knew the secret . (=He happened to know the secret .)

It turned out that he knew the secret . (=He turned out to know the secret .)

How does it come that you know the secret ? (=How do you come to know the secret ? How come you know the secret ?)

1403 在 that 前有些词有时省略 :

Not that (=It is not true that) I hate a woman , but that (=but it is true that) I have no chance to consort with any .

Not that I love Caesar less , but that I love Rome more .

1404 连词 that 有时可以省略 ,特别是在 1) believe , presume , suppose , think , hope , wish , expect , say , know , hear 等动词后 ; 2) 在插入语中 that 必须省略 ; 3) 在一个 that 从句还包含另一 that 从句时 , that 也必须省略。下面例句中的 表示省略的 that :

1) I dare say he does not know it .

I believe you are wrong .

2) The young man , she thinks (or I know , it seems) , could be her husband .

The young man could be her husband , she thinks (or I know , it seems) .

There is a young man who (关系代词在从句中作主语)

she thinks (or I know , it seems) , could be her husband .

3) She said she wished I could see her .

I thought you knew something had happened .

I understand he exclaimed he had not enough to spend .

1405 在以下情况下连词 that 不可省略 : 1) 需要表明副词或副词短语修饰哪一个词 , 2) 在 that 从句中插有一个关系从句或状语从句 :

1) He said that yesterday he went to town .

He said yesterday that he went to town .

He denied that at the party he spoke ill of the major .

He denied at the party that he spoke ill of the major .

2) I know that you , who are my friend (主语和主要动词间插入一个关系从句) will agree with me . (但 : I know you will agree with me .)

I think that , if you can (在 that 和主语之间夹有一个状语从句)

you will do it . (但 : I think you will do it .)

1406 当一个及物动词后有几个并列的 that 从句作宾语时 , 后面的 that 必须重复 (但有时这条规定会被忽略) :

They know that (可省略) he studies music , and that (不可省略) his wife is a country woman , but that (不可省略) they love each other dearly .

I told father that (可省略) I would work hard , that (不可省略) I would be a good student , that (不可省略) he need not worry , and that (不可省略) I would return home on New Year's Day .

但 : He said he knew it and (连接两个谓语而不是两个从句) had told it to others . I think she will start at nine but will not arrive until twelve .

1407 在需重复一个 that 从句时 , 可以用 so , not , it 或 as much 等词代替它 :

Is he a clever fellow ?

So I see (or notice , believe , hear) . (= I see , notice , ... that he is a clever fellow .)

So I said (or hoped , supposed) .

So I have heard (or have seen , have noticed) .

I believe , (or say , pray , expect , wish , hope , think , imagine , trust , guess , suppose , assume , presume , fancy , understand , said , was told , told you) so .

It seems (or appears) so .

I do not say (or think , suppose , expect , believe) so .

I believe (or notice , expect) so (指前面句子总的意义) 或 it (较具体 , 指前面的词组。) 或 that . (较为强调)

但 : I deny (or mean , swear) it (不可说 so) .

He has turned hooligan , hasn't he ?

I suspect (or fear) so .

If so (= If he has turned hooligan) , that is a pity .

Why so ? How so ?

I believe (or expect , suspect , hear) the same (= so) .

Did Mary commit suicide ?

I believe (or trust , say , expect , hope , think , suppose , am afraid , understand) not . (= I believe or trust , ... that Mary did not) .

It appears (or seems) not .

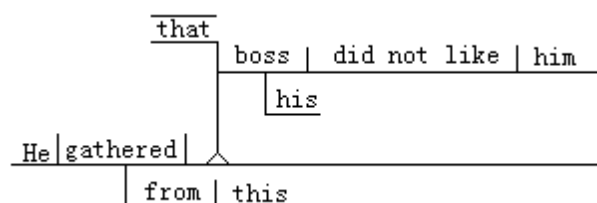
The murderer has been arrested , hasn't he ? I know (or hear , am told , say , guess) as much or so much

(= it or so) .

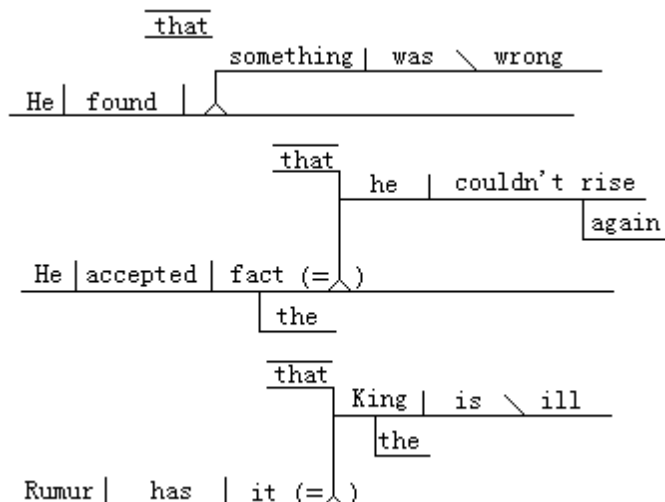
He has made great mistakes and confessed (or owned , acknowledged) as much (不要说 so) .

Father will marry Mary to John and has said as much .

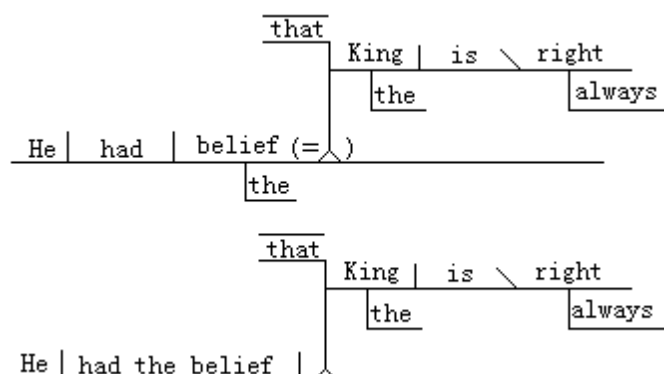
1408 图解 :



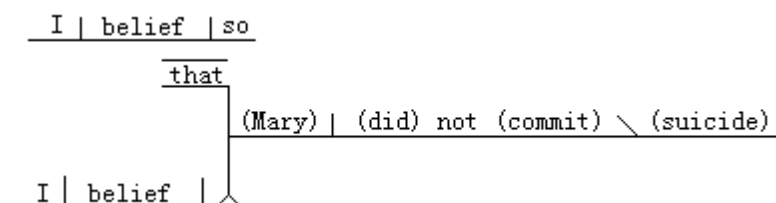
注：△上方的词是一个名词从句，可参阅 1320 节，从句的图解方式和简单句相同，只是在它前面的上方加一连词。



注：(=) 表示里面的名词从句是这个符号前那个词的同位语。



注：上面是同一句子的另一图解方法。



参阅 1407 节。

16. S + TV + W-CL or W-I (John asked when he will come or when to begin.)

1409 约有 70 个及物动词可以用疑问词引起的从句（或称从属问句）作宾语（可参阅 1293 节）：

a. We discussed (or deliberated, considered, debated) what might be done (or whether we should go on strike) .

He asked (or inquired) whether he could apply (or not) .

I will find out (or check , ascertain , study) who broke it .

We doubt (or question) whether we would have peace .

I must ascertain (or study) why he killed himself .

I wonder whether he is happy . (=I want to know whether he is happy or not ; or , I suppose he is not happy .)

I wonder whether he is not happy . (=I suppose he is happy .)

I wonder whether (or when , where , how) we can meet again and spend a pleasant vacation together .

但 : I doubt whether (但不能用 when , where , how) we can meet again and spend , etc .

b . Watch how you spill it . Look what a mess you are making .

Please mark which syllable is stressed .

Beware when you must keep silence .

Notice who is coming with Mary .

c . He saw (or perceived , noticed , sensed , observed) how his friends were suffering from the epidemic (or what important persons were present at the party .)

He could not see why you cooperated with this fool .

He discovered (or found out) where the thieves hid themselves (or where the treasure was kept , when the enemy would start an attack) .

He learned (or realized) how the earth turns round the sun (or who were behind the scenes) .

I hear (or understand) what has happened (or what they are plotting) .

d . I know what you want (or how we should handle this matter of money) .

I cannot conceive (or understand , think , imagine , make out , tell , guess) how he could say such a thing (or how it could happen , why they treat me so .)

Nobody here believes how difficult it is to cure a disease .

The captain decides (or determines) who shall play in the football match .

He could not judge (or decide , settle) whether the answer was right (or when we should act) .

e . I cannot recollect when he visited us .

He forgot what she had said .

I don't recall how he cheated me .

I still remember how he kissed me .

Can you suggest which is the best way (or when we shall start on our journey) ?

David cannot express how grateful he is .

We cannot agree who is to be our representative .

I don't care (or mind) whether I shall fail (or what may happen) .
f . Please say what you want and which of these you like best .
Please repeat what you have just said .

Can you describe how he looks ?

Can he explain why he failed ?

History shows how we have struggled , where we are going , and
what we should do .

He revealed where John had fallen in love with Helen (or how
their leaders quarrelled among themselves) .

He reported how those people were starving .

g . He has calculated how much it costs (or when the building
can be finished) .

I'll count how many guests have come .

He can prove (or demonstrate) how mankind have developed from
lower animals (or whether it is true) .

We will select who may be our representative .

He could foretell (or forecast) when it would rain ; could predict
whether there would be a good harvest ; prophesied how Christ would
come again to the world (or which country would rise and which would
decline) ; divined when you would fail and rise again .

I read where (=that) (口语体) there will be a storm .

1410 在由疑问词引起的从句中，助动词有时可放在主语前面，句末甚至可用问号代替句号：

I asked how could we settle the matter . (?)

He inquired what should do . (?)

I wonder when does the war come to an end . (?)

I wonder , can she (用来代替 whether she can) excuse me . (?)

1411 有时疑问词引起的从句可以是一个惊叹句：

He said how pretty it was . (=He said , " How pretty it is ! ")

He exclaimed what a poem he was reading . (=He exclaimed ,
What a poem I am reading ! ")

He cried out (or interjected) how hard he had worked and what
evil treatment he had received .

1412 下面三个小段意思是一样的：

John met Mary at a bus stop . John said , " I am glad to see
you . Where are you going ? " (直接引语)

John met Mary at a bus stop . John said he was glad to see her
and asked where she was going . (间接引语)

John met Mary at a bus stop . He was glad to meet her . Where
was she going ? (这也是间接引语，但 John said that 和 he asked 却被省略。)

1413 上面提到的及物动词也可用疑问词加不定式作宾语：

a . We debated (or deliberated , discussed , considered) what step
to take .

I will ask (or inquire) when to begin our lessons .
 I am learning how to swim .
 He wonders what to do when he grows up .
 I have discovered (or found out) how to make this cake .
 I cannot understand how to do it .
 I cannot tell where to meet this cheat again .
 b . I cannot think how to stop this evil practice .
 I don't know whom to apply to .
 Have you decided where to study ?
 Please say which course to take .
 I will explain how to use the word " as " .
 He won't revealed when to get married .
 I don't mind (or care) what to eat .
 Can you recollect how to do this ?
 Don't forget how to please your parents .
 I cannot predict when to meet her again .
 “ S + TV + W - I ” 可以转换为 “ S + TV + W - CL ” .
 I cannot understand how to (=how I can) do it .
 I wonder what to (=what I should) do .
 I cannot tell where to (=where we or you may) buy a curio .
 We shall consider what step to (=what step we must or should)
 take .

They told me when to (=when they were to) get married .
 1414 如果疑问词引起的从句的主语并非主句的主语，同时又无法从上下文中推想出来，且从句中又不包含 can , must , may , should , be to 这类助动词，则 “ S + TV + W - CL ” 不可转换为 “ S + TV + W - I ” :

I know what the government should do . (不可改为 I know what to do , 除非 the government 变为 I .)

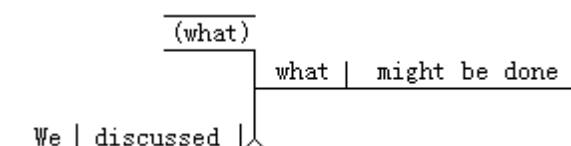
He asked where his children can study . (不可改为 He asked where to study . 除非读者知道是 children 这个词被省略。)

We were discussing how long a man can live .

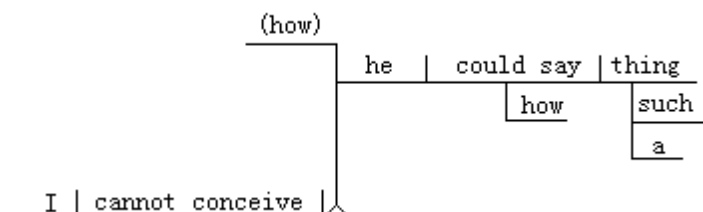
I know what I want . (不可改为 I know what to want , 因为从句中没有合适的助动词。)

I cannot repeat what I have heard . (不可改为 I cannot re-peat what to have heard , 因为从句中没有合适的助动词，have 不是一个合适的助动词。)

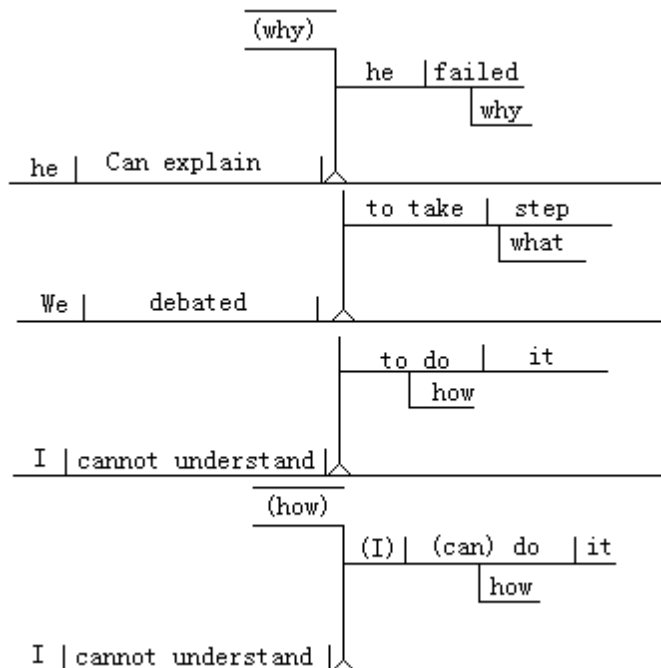
1415 图解：



注 :What 在这个句子中有双重作用，即连词的作用 (括号中的 what) 和代词的作用，两者均应在图解中表示出来。



注：how 也有连词作用与副词的双重作用。



注：上面是“疑问词 + 不定式”结构的另一种图解法。这里不定式可以看作是疑问词从句的缩写形式，I can (主语 + 助动词) 可以看作是被省略，how 被看作有双重作用。

17. S + IV. P + W-CL or W-I (John worried about what he would study or what to study.)

1416 约有 20 个不及物动词可以和介词(常可省略)构成及物动词短语，用疑问词从句作宾语：

a. He doubted (about or as to) whether he could succeed.

They must decide (upon) who is to represent their party.

His success depended (or relied) (upon) what people he made friends with (or how he handled the matter).

Don't fuss about how it should be done.

Don't worry (about) what school you are to go to (or how much you can earn).

b. They already agreed (about or as to) when they were to start and what they were to take with them.

I will attend to what the old man wants.

I shall think over what I should say.

He brooded on (or over) whether he should commit suicide.

I am thinking (of or about) how I can study abroad (or which course I am to take) .

c . He enlarged (or speculated) on what mankind will be .

He talked of (or about) what we should do .

He hesitated (about or as to) what he should say .

I reflected (on) where I could live peacefully .

Your happiness depends upon how little you want and how much you accomplish .

We could not agree about whom we should depend upon for our supply .

1417 上面所说跟有介词的不及物动词也可用“疑问词 + 不定式”结构作宾语：

We talked about what to do .

He has decided (on) where to go .

That depends (on) how to handle the matter .

He worried (about) how to make his living .

They cannot agree (about) when to act .

They have thought over where to study science .

“S + I .P + W-I”可以转换为“S + I .P + W-CL”，而“S + I .P + W-CL”有时可以，有时不可以转换为“S + I .P + W-I”。

We talked about what we could do (what to do) .

He has decided (on) where he must go (where to go) .

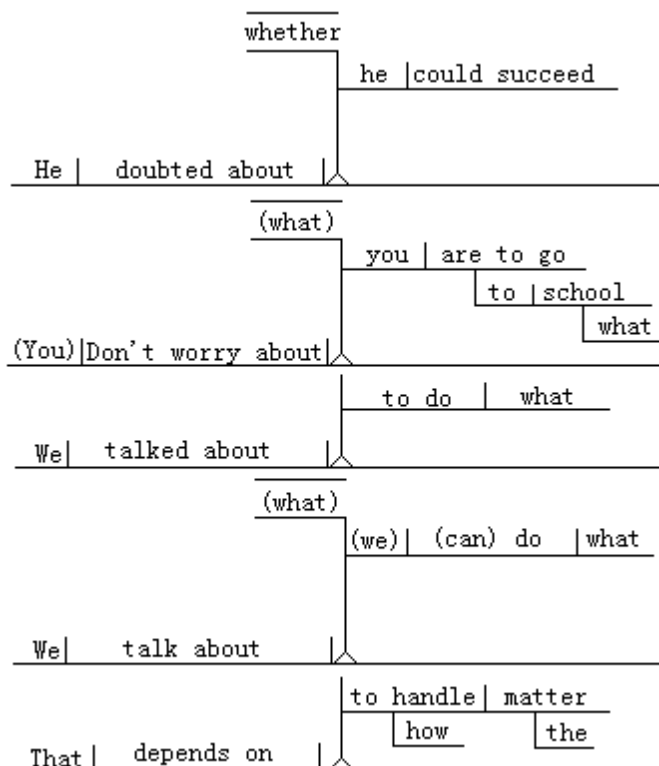
He worried about how he could make his living (how to make his living) .

但：We talked about what our school could do .

(不可改为 We talked about what to do .)

We talked about what we ate . (不可改为 We talked about what to eat . 因为从句中没有合适的助动词。) 可参阅 1413-14 节。

1418 图解：



18 . S + TV . N . P + W-CL or W-I (John gave an account of how he had fought or how to fight .)

1419 无数及物动词可和特定的名词和介词构成成语。这种成语起及物动词的作用，可跟有疑问词从句或“疑问词 + 不定式”结构作宾语：

a . He has no interest in (=doesn't care) who rules the country .

He gave an account of (=related) how they fought .

He had a lesson in (=learned) how paper is made .

I took no notice of (=didn't notice) what he was .

I got a look at how the robot worked .

He set his mind on where he could make most money .

He could only make guesses at who she was .

They carried on a quarrel about which girl was the prettiest .

He can't form a judgement as to whether this world is going to the bad .

b . He has no interest in what to study .

He gave an account of how to make paper .

He directed his attention to how to do business .

He set his mind on what job to do .

He set up a standard of how to write .

He gave examples of how not to speak ill of others .

1420 有时介词可以省略 (参阅 1416 节) :

I have no idea (about) (=don't know) who she is .

I cannot make up my mind (as to) (=decide) whether I should

marry her .

I have a doubt (as to) (=doubt) whether our love will last long .

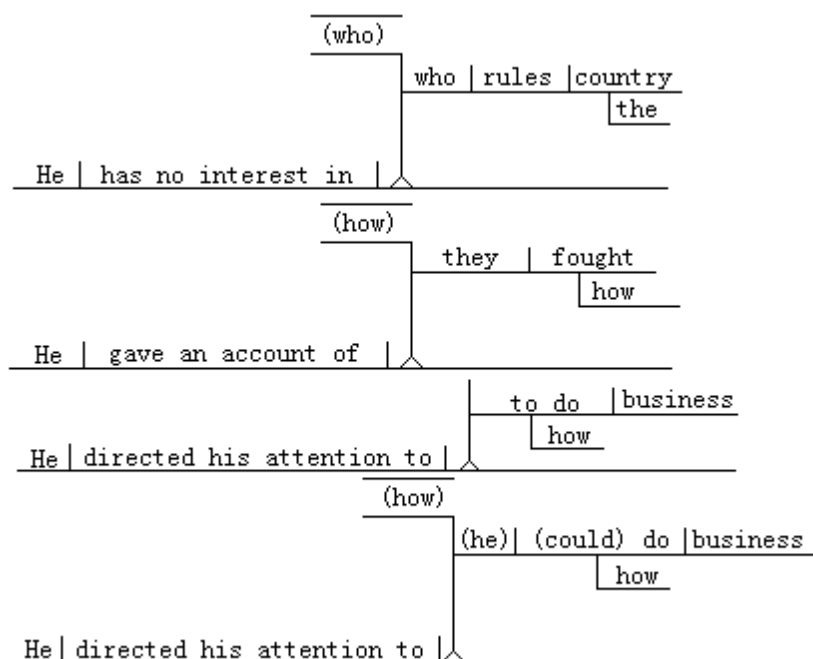
(Cf . I have no doubt (=believe) that our love will last long .)

Can you give judgement (as to) (=judge) which is the better ?

He cannot make a decision (as to) (=decide) what policy his government should adopt .

Have a care (about) what you say to her .

1421 图解：



注：上面是“疑问词 + 不定式”结构的另一种图解法。在这种图解中，how 被看作有副词和连词的双重作用，不定式前 he could 两词省略。参阅 1415 节。

C . 双宾动词 + 间接宾语 + 各种直接宾语

19 . S + DV + (to) N + N (John gave me a dog = John gave a dog to me .)

1422 约有 90 个双宾动词可有两个名词或代词作间接宾语及直接宾语。如果直接宾语紧跟在这些动词后面，间接宾语可变成由 to 引起的短语，这些动词则成了及物动词：

He lent me his knife . = He lent his knife to me .

He left her ten thousand dollars . = He left ten thousand dollars to her .

更多例句：

a . He gave John a cigarette (or an English lesson) , offered me tea (or a position , a bribe) , handed his brother the salt (or the letter) , delivered them the goods (or a letter , the message) , passed me the butter , brought me my book (or a cup of tea) , took (or carried) me an umbrella , left me some cakes (or a free choice) ,

returned me the book (or an angry look) , threw me a magazine (or a word) , tossed (or cast , flung) the beggar a penny .

b . He provided (or furnished , supplied) us (with) food and everything necessary , presented me (with) a good dictionary . (用 with 时较不用时为多)

It afforded me an opportunity (or great pleasure , satisfaction) . He rendered his boss a service (or assistance , the account) , tendered me his resignation (or his services) , administered me a blow , caused (or occasioned) me so much pain (or anxiety , heavy loss , inconvenience , some trouble) , dealt me a scolding .

c . He granted me an audience (or a credit , a holiday , a request) , meted us out reward and punishment , allowed them more time (or a holiday , ten dollars) , awarded me the prize (or full marks) , accorded her the privilege (or a warm welcome , due praise) .

He refused me admittance (or the request , this favour , the loan of a book) , denied me nothing (or justice , all comfort , help) , (be) grudged me my salary (or my honour) , barred no friends his house .

d . He assigned me a duty (or a small room) , allotted me a garden (or a few exercises) , prescribed me a milk diet (or a duty) , apportioned us different duties , issued me a permit (or a driving license) .

The hardware store shipped me a big machine (or some utensils) .

He forwarded (or sent , dispatched , posted , mailed) her a parcel .

They paid me the salary (or the taxi fare , the tuition , the price) , reimbursed me the costs , advanced me a month's salary (or 1000 dollars) , remitted me a thousand dollars , lent me some money , owed me a debt (or thanks , obligations) , sold rich customers good diamonds and sold others poor goods , charged me no tuition (or a dollar) , loaned me their car , rented me a house .

e . He played me a tune (or a piece) , sang me a Japanese song (=sing a Japanese song to me or for me) , extended us a warm welcome , stood me champagne , served me a good dinner , fed his dog beef .

He wishes me good luck (or good evening , every joy , a safe journey , the compliments of the season , a good night) , bade me a welcome (or adieu , good morning) , waved me adieu (or a greeting) , nodded me a welcome (or approval) , bowed me his heartiest thanks , paid them a visit (or his respects) .

f . He wrote me letters (or a few lines) , answered me nothing (or not a word , a question) , scrawled me a note , read me the letter (or a poem , a lesson) , told me a story (or everything) , foretold me my future , showed me his care (or much kindness) , pointed me out my mistake , whispered me a piece of news , telegraphed (or wired ,

faxed ,cabled)me full details of the result ,telephoned (or phoned) me the details (or the current price) , transmitted me a message , taught me Chinese (or music , a lesson , singing , obedience) , preached us a very good sermon , pledged me his friendship , put me a question , quoted me an instance .

g . He bequeathed (or willed) his children a large fortune (or all his property) , left me a large fortune .

They yielded the enemy their position , ceded him the land , conceded him the privileges (or the favours he asked) .

They guaranteed me satisfaction (or regular employment , punctual arrival) , insured (or assured) me success (success to me or for me) , promised me assistance .

He recommended me a good book (or a good servant) .

They did him harm (or honour , good , justice , wrong , credit , a favour , a good turn , an injustice , an injury , a kindness , a service) , caused us a lot of mischief .

They made him a visit (or an offer , a promise , no reply , some answers) .

1423 直接宾语亦称作事物宾语 (Thing-Object) , 而间接宾语亦称作表人宾语 (Person-Object) 。不过间接宾语间或也指事物 :

He never gives the matter a second thought , does not give the plan a trial , wished it a happy ending , allowed his imagination a full play .

直接宾语可以是代词 :

Don't tell her that . He told his brother that . Who asked you this ?

Who gave it (to) you ? We gave it (to) him . I will pay it (to) you all .

1424 尽管上面句中的间接宾语可以变作 to 引起的短语 ,但这种短语少用为宜 ,但在下面这类句子中 ,却用以 to 引起的短语较好 :

To you , I give this . (间接宾语为了强调而提前)

To the President , I write this letter .

To whom do you give it ? (和一个疑问代词连用)

Who do you give it to ?

Which boy do you sing to , Mary ?

The man to whom you told the story is my uncle . (和关系代词连用)

I have given to him . (直接宾语省略)

I will write to him .

Please deliver to John .

I have given the book to Mary , the best student in class . (间接宾语比直接宾语更长更重要)

I only teach English to students who are truly anxious to learn .

The letter , I have sent to him . (直接宾语放在句首)

All these valuable things , he gave to me .
 Some dictionaries have been given to the library .
 (直接宾语是被动动词的主语)
 A letter will be sent to him .

1425 图解 :

He	lent	knife
	(to)	me his

He	gave	cigarette
	(to)	John a

20 . S+DV+ (for) N+N (John bought me a dog=John bought a dog for me .)

1426 约有 35 个双宾动词用两个名词或代词作间接宾语及直接宾语。这种动词可变成及物动词，这时间接宾语应改作由 for 引起的宾语：

He ordered me a book . =He ordered a book for me .
 She made me a dress . =She made a dress for me .

更多例句：

a . He built himself a hut .
 The shoemaker turns me out 100 pairs of shoes .
 Hunan Province yield China a lot of rice .
 She wove me a garland .
 The carpenter made Uncle a beautiful desk .
 She cooked me eggs .
 She boiled me some water .
 Fix me a drink .

Please spread me some bread with butter .
 I will cut you a slice of bread .
 Pour me out some tea (or coffee) .
 Please fill me some wine .

b . Please pull me a chair to the table .
 Please fetch me a dictionary (or a doctor) .
 He reached me a pencil .

I'll put you a chair over there .

He gathered me some stamps .
 He chose his wife a nice dress .

Pick me out a dozen oranges .

Can you match me this cloth ?

c . Can you find (or get , secure , obtain) me a job ?

They reserved us a hotel room , called us a taxi , bought us a lunch .

The book won him a good name , earned him a lot of money , but created him many enemies .

This incident acquired (or gained) him wealth .

I've got me money enough , will buy me some liquor . (口语体)

You have save him so much trouble (or time , money) .

Can you spare me a few minutes (or one dollar) ?

Could you change me this five-pound note (or ten-dollar bill) ?

Can you cash me this bill ?

1427 上面句子中的间接宾语可以变作由 for 引起的短语 , 在 1424 节中所说情况下 , 必须改成这种短语 :

For you alone , I cook this fish .

For my family , I must save some money .

For whom do you build so big a house ?

Who (m) do you choose this cloth for ?

The person for whom you made a dress was my niece .

I will cook for you .

Please call (a taxi) for me .

She poured out coffee for John , the man she loved most .

I will get a job for John , who has been jobless for many months .

This trouble you can save for me and many others .

A good name will this good work gain for him , but not wealth .

Three taxis were called for us .

A magnificent palace was built for the king and queen .

1428 图解 :

He	ordered		book
	(for)	me	a

21 . S+DV+N+N (John envied me my dog .)

1429 约有 70 个双宾动词虽然可以变作及物动词 , 却不在表人的宾语前用介词 to 或 for。这时有几种情况 : a . 有些动词后 , 表人宾语前用另一介词 ; b . 有些动词后 , 事物宾语前有一介词 ; c-f . 其他动词很少变作及物动词 :

a . They played (or served) John a trick (or a bad turn) , bestowed him honour (or a title , praise) , enjoined (or imposed) me obedience (or a duty) , (=They played a trick on John , served a trick on him , bestowed honour on him , ...)

She flung him a wink , flashed me a glance , shot John an angry look , cast me a glance , dealt (or hit) him a blow . (=She flung a wink at him , flashed a glance at me , ...)

They bore us malice (or ill will , hatred) , waged us war . (=They bore malice against us , waged war against us , ...)

He bore me great affection (or good will) . (=He bore great affection for me , ...)

He asked me some questions (or the time , my name , my address , the way , the fare , the price , the reason , the cause) . (=He asked some questions of me , ...)

He asked you a favour (or permission , a kindness) . (=He asked a favour from you , ...)

b . He envied John his new car (or his pretty wife) , forgave us our sins (or our debt , our negligence , our misconduct) , pardoned me the question (or my offence) , excused me my asking , took me out a walk (or an airing , a drive) . (=He envied John for his new car , forgave us for our sins , ...)

He banished me the realm , dismissed me the club (or the service) , expelled me the school . (=He banished me from the realm , dismissed me from the club , ...)

c . He fined me ten dollars , wagered (or bet) me ten dollars (that John would win) , bid me half the price , quoted you the best price (or a proverb) , tipped me one dollar (or the wink) .

It costs him twelve dollars (or much trouble , his life) , takes me six days (or all my life) to do that , will last me three years .

The business lost me all my capital , profited me a lot of money , netted him a thousand dollars daily .

d . I struck him a heavy blow , fetched him a slap (or a box on the ear) caught that man two kicks in the stomach , hit his face a rap , hit him a hard blow . (所有斜体动词都是 gave 的意思)

She kissed him good night (or good-bye , a welcome , a hearty kiss) , swept him a look (or a bow , a curtsy) , blew him a kiss .

She bore him witness (or company) , kept him company , has borne him three children .

They made me a present (or some allowance , a request , an apology) .

e . It bodes (or portends) us no good (or evil) . He prophesied me success .

He set us a task (or the examination paper , a good example) . (Cf . He set a task for us .)

The doctor ordered me a complete rest (or a special diet , silence) .

He forbade his children tobacco (or the use of liquor or drugs) .
He deigned me no reply .

f . She dropped me a few lines (or a note , a postcard , a curtsy) .
I enclose you a list of new products .

He led me a (pretty) dance (or a dog's life) .

He called me names .

He let me blood .

He means (or intends) you no harm .

1430 图解：

He	played	trick
	(on)	John a
He	bore	malice
	(against)	us
He	envied	John
	(for)	car
		his
		new
He	fined	dollars
	()	me ten

22. S+DV+N+W-CL or W-I (John showed me what I should do or what to do.)

1431 约有 10 个动词用名词或代词作间接宾语, 却用一个由疑问词引起的从句或不定式作直接宾语:

English grammar shows us how we should make sentences (=how to make sentences).

Please tell me which book we should choose (=which book to choose).

Can you advise me what I must do (=what to do)?

He asked me where he could get the entrance ticket (= where to get the entrance ticket).

He reminded me when I must go (=when to go).

He notified me when John started for London.

Please inform that man whether his wife has been here.

You must teach your children when to act, what to say and where to stop.

She asked me where could she buy flowers? (注意主语前的助动词及句末的问号)

I ask him what must I study in this country?

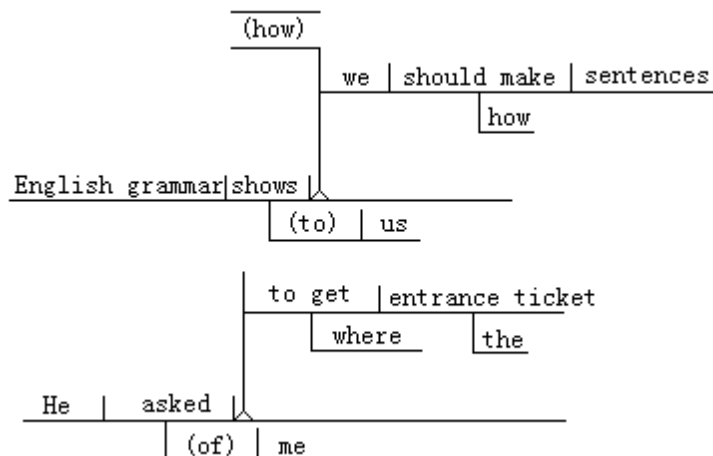
1432 在这类句子中不要使用上节所提动词以外的动词, 如:

I criticized him how he was wrong. (错句)

I know him when he will succeed. (错句)

He scolded his servant why he was so lazy. (错句)

1433 图解:



23 .S+DV+N+that ·CL (John convinced me that I was wrong .)
 1434 约有 30 个双宾动词可用名词或代词作间接宾语，而用 that 引起的从句作直接宾语。That 这个字有时可省略。整个从句在重复时可以用 so 代替：

a . I told John (that) he was mistaken . Everybody had told him so .

They informed (or notified , apprised , advised , wrote , wired , telegraphed , phoned) my brother that the ship arrived on February 2 . I had informed him so .

He whispered me that John had been arrested .

I remind him that the meeting is on Friday (or that he should send the letter) .

He assures me that everything is all right (or that I shall be a happy man) . Nobody else has assured me so .

He can't warrant me that it is genuine . I'll warrant you that you shall be paid .

b . He convinced (or persuaded , satisfied) her that he would love her always (or that they could be happy) .

This accident taught us that we were not careful enough (or that driving could be very dangerous) .

I entreated him that he must stop smoking .

I beseech him that he will help my family .

They admonished him that he should not drink liquor .

They ordered their men that they should fire .

He promised me that I should have a gold watch .

They warned him that the place was dangerous .

They threatened me that they would kill all my people .

c . He promised me that he would come .

We thanked God (or our stars , Heaven) that our trial was ended . Thank Heaven I am better . I thank you that you have done this for me .

I flattered myself that I was not to do such a silly thing .

I bet (or wager) him five dollars that it will rain today . (Bet 后跟两个直接宾语，这是英语中一个不寻常的现象。)

1435 上面提到的双宾动词有些可变作及物动词 这时可以用 of 引起的短语修饰：

They told him of my sickness , informed (or notified , apprised) him of your visit , reminded me of my promise , assured me of his honesty , convinced (or persuaded , satisfied) me of his innocence , admonished me of the danger (or my fault , my duty) , warned him of the danger .

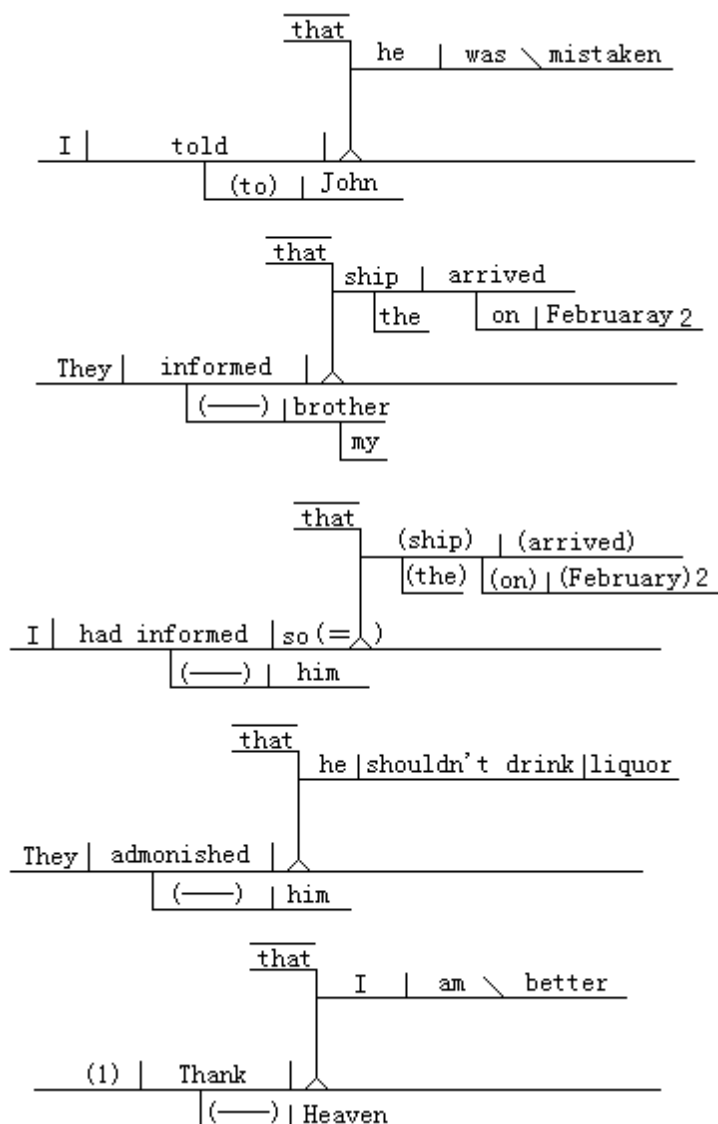
1436 在这类句子中不要使用上面所提动词以外的动词，如：

I criticized him that he was wrong . (错句)

I supposed him that he knew everything . (错句)

I know John that he will arrive late . (错句)

1437 图解：



D . 系动词+各种补语

24 . S+LV+A or PrP or PaP (John was rich .)

1438 约有 90 个系动词可用形容词、现在分词或过去分词作补语。

1439 a . 表示状态的系动词：

1) He was sad (or pleased , amazed , very interesting) .

The house has been my uncle's (用名词所有格作补语) .

The book is John's .

He felt hungry (or sure , bad , bound to do it , annoyed) .

He seems ill (or happy , tired , satisfied , pleased) .

He appeared ill (or satisfied) . It bulked large . It loomed black .

He is asleep (or awake , alone , alive , afraid) . (表语形容词)

2) He stood alone (or neutral , first on the list , corrected , accused of a crime) . It stood well (or idle) .

This line runs parallel with that . Still waters run deep .

Everything (or Something , Nothing , All) went well (or right , ill , wrong , amiss) . How goes the world? How things go with us? English goes (=runs , passes) current in many countries . He went (=was usually) barefoot (or bareheaded , naked , hungry , well dressed) .

1440 b . 表示状态开始的系动词：

1) He became fat (or poor , well-known , discouraged) . This system became quickly spread . This book became widely read by young people . Our country is becoming richer and richer , stronger and stronger Many of the newcomers became accustomed to this cold climate .

He got sick (or angry , shy , weak , lazy , careless , wet , ready , red , rich , free , shocked , shot , killed , fired , scolded , stung , buried , confused , lost , washed , dressed , engaged , interested , married) . He got to be (=became) rich (or friendly) . It got to be dearer now . The gum gets sore . It got cold (or dark , worse , better , loose) . (Become 表示结果 , get 表示过程。)

2) He grew (=gradually became) strong (or wild , faint , more and more foolish , excited , tired , intoxicated in a minute , accustomed to it) . It grew wild (or thick , tame , small) . It grew ripe (or sweet) .

He turned false (or pale , red) . It turned bad (or yellow , colder) . (比较 : He was turned (of) [=was past] sixty .)

He went mad (or blind , deaf , bald , lame , crazy , wild , red , white , sick , pale , dry , wrong , native , distracted , drunk , lost) . It went bad (or sour , grey , dark , stale , rotten) . The engine (or The

telephone) has gone dead .

The plan goes unheard and unnoticed .

3) His dream came true . The bill came due . The door came unhinged . How came they acquainted ? How came you (to be) so rude ? It came cheap . She is coming sixteen . The seam came unstitched (or unsewn) . The knot came untied . He came awake (or square are with her) . He came over (=grew) feverish (or sleepy) . The weather came over cloudy . He came (or ranked) first .

He ran wild (or mad) . The river ran dry (or high , low , deep , thick) . The prices ran high . Provisions ran short (or low) . The business does not run smooth . The beast ran loose .

He fell asleep (or dead , ill , tired , faint , dumb , silent , lame) . It fell calm (or dark , flat) , The note fell due to me . The rent fell due . (Cf . Ten dollars is due to you . My salary is due tomorrow .) The night fell dark . The post fell vacant . The supply fell short . He fell (=began) humming (or thinking) .

The room struck cold (or nice , warm , comfortable) when one entered .

They made (themselves) merry (or sure that they would win , bold to do it) .

1441 c . 表示状态结束或结果的系动词 :

He proved useful . The wound proved fatal .

It turned out (or proved , came out) (=was found out) (to be) false (or correct , important , interesting) .

He came off victorious (or defeated , second best) .

Everything went (=proved) well with him .

Your knowledge of French will come in (=prove) service- able one day .

1442 d . 表示状态继续的系动词 :

He remained quiet (or firm , honest , poor , unmarried , unpunished , uncared-for) . It remained dirty (or dark , unsettled , untouched) .

It stayed motionless (or fresh) . He stayed silent (or asleep) . He stayed young (or rich all his life) . The store stays open till midnight . The library will stay closed . The paper stayed blank .

He continued firm (or silent , poor , lazy , unknown , un seen) . It continued strong . His illness continued unchanged . It continued rainy .

He kept cold (or silent , still . awake , aloof) .

He held firm (or silent , mute , aloof , still) . The rule held true (or good) for three years .

The grievances went (=remained) unredressed . He went unpunished (or unrewarded) .

You may rest assured (or satisfied , content , confident , secure , certain , easy) . This disease rests mysterious .

1443 e . 带有被动意义的系动词 :

1) He looked proud (or black , pained , pleased , satisfied) .

It looked funny (or interesting) .

It smelt bad (or sweet , fragrant) .

It tastes sweet (or bitter , sour , good , delicious) .

It felt smooth (or soft , hard , cold , hot) . How does it feel to be hungry ?

It sounded (=seemed) unripe (or expensive , strange , wise , easy , all right , reasonable) . Pork sounds too heavy to me .

2) The cake eats crisp .

The coin rang true (or false) . His statement rang hollow (or harsh) .

The meat cuts tender (or tough) .

Her dress wore thin (or threadbare) . It has worn smooth .

Our friendship has worn thin .

The street measures long .

The landscape reproduces too dark . The sky washes out slightly . The background records just right .

It weighs heavy (or much) .

It costs dear . (Cf . It is worth much .)

1444 f . 近似于不及物动词的系动词 :

1) He acted natural (or surprised) . (=He acted + he was natural [or surprised] = He was natural [or surprised] when he acted .) Don't act foolish .

He arrived safe . (=He was safe when he arrived .)

Mary awoke tired . (=Mary was tired when she a- woke .)

He was born poor .

My heart beat quick .

The door blew (or burst , crashed) open ; banged shut .

She blushed scarlet .

The prisoners broke loose (or free) .

2) Stocks close irregular today .

They departed unseen .

The fire burned red (or bright) .

He came running (or singing , smiling , accompanied by his wife) . He came home hungry and tired and sad . Misfortune never comes single (or singly) .

The day dawned clear and bright .

He died happy (or young , worth a million , aged 26) .

He dresses young .

The flame dwindled weak .

3) He entered dressed in white and wearing slippers .

He fell down unconscious (or dead) . The snow is falling thick .

She flashed (or flared , flushed , flamed) red (or scarlet) .

It freezes bone-hard in winter .

The window flew open .

The bird glided peaceful and its feathers gleamed (or glowed)
white .

He grows up unmanageable (or innocent) .

The moon hung low . Time hangs heavy on my hands .

He jerked free from debt .

4) He lay dead (or still , very sick , prostrate , asleep , awake ,
idle , dying , gasping , shivering , struggling , sleeping , hidden ,
buried , stretched out) . (= He lay and was dead ; lay and gasped ;
etc .)

Something lay loose (or open , waste , idle) . The field lay
fallow . The road lay level . Some books lay loose . The fallen leaves
lay wet . The snow lay thick on the ground . They lay scattered (or
concealed) . The carpet lay smooth .

He lives poor (or fast) .

5) He married young .

Many important things have passed unnoticed .

He played fair (or foul) . The dog played (or shammed) dead .

Silence reigned supreme . He ruled supreme .

He returned hungry and thirsty .

She rides easy in the saddle .

6) The sun shines bright (or dark) .

He sat silent (or idle , cross-legged , thinking , writing a letter ,
surrounded by friends) .

Baby sleeps easy at night .

It slid (or sprang) open .

He spoke hoarse (or plain , rough , sensible) .

He stood silent (or firm , mute with rage , taller than me ,
conspicuous , gazing at something , singing , playing on the guitar ,
six feet high , six feet in stocking) . (= He stood and was silent ;
stood and gazed at some- thing ; etc .) A glass of water stood by
me halffull .

The pagoda stood out clear . The room stood empty .

The patient's leg swells big .

The door swings shut .

He talked big (or silly , wild , sensible , funny) .

He walks slow and lame .

He wandered about naked and hungry .

The screw works loose .

注：这种句子有一个起不及物动词作用的系动词，可以说是 S+IV 和
S+LA+A 的巧妙的结合。He talked clever . 可以说是 He talked . 和 He
was clever . 的结合体。而且，它和 He talked cleverly . 有些差别，

clever 作为补语,说明主语 he 的情况,比 cleverly 语气更强,cleverly 为副词,修饰动词 talked.

1445 图解:

25. S+LV+N (John was a boy .)

1446 约有 40 个系动词可用名词或代词作补语:

a. He was a teacher . It was his book . That is he (or him) .
It was I (or me) . I am my own man .

He felt a fool (or a king , a child again , a millionaire , a free man again) .

He became a doctor . He commenced (archaic) writer (or carpenter) . He turned (rather unexpectedly) thief (or optimist , socialist , author , tailor) . They turned thief (or thieves) . It grew to be a big tree . The child has grown to be man . She grew up to be a pretty girl . (to be 常省略,可参阅 1440 节)

He turned out a good doctor (or a robber) . It turned out a foolish idea (or an effective measure) . It will turn out a dream . He loomed up a horrible figure . He proved a thief (or a good father) . It proved an effective measure . It proved a great success (or a bad project) . Cf . 1441

b. He remained a bachelor . They continued good friends .

She will stay a widow for the rest of her life . The case rests a mystery . Cf . 1442

He looked (sometimes looked to be) a fool (or daggers , compassion , the doctor that he was) . My hut looks a wreck (or a palace to me) . He does not look himself . He appeared a thief . He seemed a good boy . It sounds a good plan (or nonsense) . It loomed a fearful figure .

He fell a prey to a tiger (or a victim to his own folly , a sacrifice to your scheme) .

c. She stood a peony and walked a lily . He stood godfather to me (or sentinel , sponsor) . He stood a giant (or my friend) . He posed the tallest of them all . He sat there a guest . He went an enemy and returned a friend . We parted the best friends . He came out a different man . He came off a loser (or a winner , a gainer) . He emerged a victor . He died a saint (or a beggar , a bachelor , a prisoner) . He lived a lonely man (or a bachelor) . He came home a millionaire . He returned a sadder and a wiser man . He left school a good scientist . He did cook and did host . He played truant (or the fool) . He acted best man for me . She acted hostess . He went cabin boy to Singapore . He went apprentice to a trade . He will go

bail (or security) for that (or for John) . (在很多句子中, 动词和其后面的名词之间可以插入 “as'”) Cf . 1444

d . It meant happiness (or loss) . Liquor means death . It spelt ruin (or death , disaster) . A equals B . Two and four make six . He will make a good teacher . The place makes a heaven . John made one (or the fifth) of the company . Seven days constitute a week . He constitutes a burden on the family .

Did he look (or seem , remain) a scholar ? He looked (or seemed , remained) so (=a scholar) . I am not a slave but I feel so (=a slave) .

He decided to be a scientist , and he becomes so (=a scientist) .
1447 “much of (或 somewhat of , little of...) +名词” 可以用作补语:

He is much of a gentleman (or a lawyer , a rascal) . (=He is quite a gentleman , ...)

He is somewhat of a politician . (=He is in some degree a politician .)

He looks more of (a) gentleman than (a) rogue .

He became less of a gentleman than a rogue .

He is enough of a philosopher to keep cold .

1448 一个抽象名词或具体名词用在具体主语后时, 有时和一个由形容词表示的补语意思相近, 若和 all 或一些其他特别词连用, 则表示 “极大程度”:

a . He is all mirth , all confusion , all attention , all kindness , all anxiety , all astonishment , all life , all dignity , all wisdom , all politeness , all gratitude , all aches and pains , all airs and graces , all talk and no deed . (=He is extremely merry , extremely confused , ...)

She is all tears , all thumbs , all smiles , all eyes , all ears , all skin and bones , all legs and breasts (=extremely sad , extremely clumsy , extremely cheerful , extremely attentive , ...)

He is all boy (or all farmer) (=showing all characteristics of a boy , ...)

The chest is all (=full of) precious books (or diamonds) .

He is the picture (or model , image , pattern , epitome , paragon) of wisdom .

He is the spirit (or soul , essence , crystalization) of honour (or meanness , selfishness) .

He became cruelty itself (or incarnate , embodied , personified , crystalized) .

b . John is immense fun (=full of fun) .

My studio is chaos .

Life is all glamour .

Is he good pay (=financially reliable) ?

Whispering is bad manners (or good fun) .

This sentence is bad grammar (=grammatically wrong) .
 John is good (or poor) company (=friendly or unfriendly) .
 I could be more help .
 This is no matter (=unimportant) .
 This truck is no use (=useless) .
 Th novel is nineteenth century .
 Our party is Monday night .
 This car is a green colour (=green) , an American make .
 What year is your car ?
 These two shirts are the same size , but different shapes .
 What direction is the post office ?
 My pen is two dollars .
 She doesn's look her age .
 We are the same age , but you don't look your thirty

years . Cf . 1455

普通名词、集体名词、物质名词也偶尔用作带形容词意义的补语。注意它们前面常常不加冠词：

c . He is fool (or rogue) (=foolish or roguish) (普通名词)
 enough to say that .
 He is gentleman enough to stand firm .
 He became fully master of (=proficient in) mathematics .
 He is right wing (集体名词)
 His taste is middle-class .
 The clergyman is church of England .
 John is Cambridge University .
 This watch is gold (物质名词) .
 My dress is silk .
 The image is plaster of Paris .
 This poem is Shakespeare (专有名词) .

1449 图解：

26 . S+LV+AP (John was in .)

1450 只有 be 可以用地地点副词作补语，其他系动词很少这样用。在这里地点副词起形容词的作用，往往不表示地点而表示别的东西：

a . Somebody was about (=near) . He will be about (=active)
 again after he leaves the hospital . He is now up (or out) and about
 (or around) (=active after an illness) . Lots of books are about
 (=available) in this city . Influenza is about (=here and there)
 in this area , He is not about (=very unwilling) (美语) to admit
 his fault .
 b . He has been around (=is sophisticated) .
 c . The hammer is away (=put away) in the box .
 d . Nobody was by (=near) . None of his relatives are close (or

near) by .

e . He is not yet down (= He has not yet dressed and come downstairs) . The tide is down (=out) . He is down with (= ill in bed with) a cold . The river is down . The sun (or The moon) is down . The tyre is down (=flat) . The rate (or The price , Her temperature) is down (=has become lower) . He seems terribly down (=depressed) about his defeat . He appears down and out (=utterly defeated , in very bad circumstances) . He is down in the mouth (= sad) . He is down to two dollars (=has only two dollars left) . She is down for (=on the program for) a song . He will be down on (=look down on) me for this mistake . He was down (=failed) in the exam . Your words are down (= written) in the contract .

f . He is home from school . They are back by six .

g . Is he in (=at home or in the office) ? Is the train (or the steamer) in (=arrived) ? Oranges are now in (in season) . Summer is in (= come) . He has been in (= in office , in power) for two years . A short skirt is in (=in fashion) . The rice crop is [safely] in (= has been reaped) . Applications should be in (=received) by May 3 . I'm in for (=will join) the contest . We are in for (=will suffer) a punishment .

h . I must be off (= go) now . The train is off (=has started) . The church is miles off (=away) . Christmas is not far off . The electricity (or The water , The gas) is off (=not on , no more available) . This gift article was off (=no more available) months ago . The meeting (or The picnic , The engagement) is off (= cancelled) . He is well (or badly , ill) off (=in good [or bad] circumstances) . My watch is off (=wrong) . His hat and overcoat were off (=had been taken off) . This lamp is 30 percent off (=off its regular price) . The meat is off (=no longer fresh) . I'm off (=free from regular work) today .

i . The water (or The electricity , The light , The tap , The radio) is on (= running , functioning , in action) . The battle (or The rain , The show) is on ; (=going on) . What is on (=happening) in the street ? What is on (=on the pro- gram) at Palace ? His hat is on (=on his head) . His case is on (= being considered) . Dinner is on (=served) from six to ten . All passengers are on (= in the vehicle) .

f . My brother is out (=not in , not at home) . The manager is out (= not in the office) . The secret is out (=has become known) . The latest number of the magazine is out (= published) today . The results are out (=have been published) . The stars are out (=visible) . My daughter is already out (=has already been introduced into society) . The tide is out (=low) . The flowers are all out (=open) . The wine (or the cup) is out (=finished) . My purse is out (=empty) . The

term is out (=finished) . The lease is out (=at the end of the term) . School is out (=over) . I shall return before the week is out (=finished) . The candle (or The fire) is out (=has been extinguished) . The Republican Party is out (=not in power) . The road is out (=impassable) due to snow . Some prisoners are out (=released) . This hairdo has been out (=out of fashion) for 5 months . The labourers are out (=on strike , out of a job) . My hand is out (=out of practice) . Two players were out (=had lost the right to play) . You are out (=wrong) in your guess . My watch is ten minutes out (=too fast or too slow) . They are out (=at odds) with each other .

k . The storm (or The rain , The show , The war) was over (=has ended-opposite to on) . It is all over (=all finished) with me . The tea party is nearly over . Some friends were over (=came here) yesterday . Some money is still over (=remaining) . He'll be over (=there) (口语体) at six .

l . He is not at all there (or here) (=crazy) . (俚语)

m . When will you be through with (=finish) my novel ? I am through for the day (=have finished today's work) . I get through with my work at 6 p . m . . He is through in politics (=His political life is finished) . I am through with you (=Our friendship is no more) . You are through (=Telephone connection has been made) .

n . The moon (or The sun) is up (=has risen) . Prices (or Sales) are up (=have become higher) . A question is up (=arises) . He was up (=did not sleep) all night . He is not up (=has not left bed) yet . Let us be up and doing (=active and busy) . The country is up (=rising) . My blood is up (=I am angry) . The rebels were up . Parliament is up (=no longer in session) . Your chance is up (=finished) . Time is up (=The allotted time has terminated) . His time (or His term , His leave) is up . What is up (=happening) with you . It is all up (=all finished , hopeless) with him . He seems well up in (=well acquainted with) this subject (or current events) . He will be up (=go to a higher place or a large city) . He will be up and around (=well) again soon . He is up (=on trial) in court .

o . He is alone (or away , aloof , asleep , agape) . It is ashore (or aflame , afloat , abloom) . (这些是作补语的形容词，前面带有前缀 a-，有些并不是“地点”副词。)

Were is the Great Wall ? When is her wedding ? How are you ? (这里用疑问词作补语)

1451 图解：

27 . S+LV+P . N or P . G (John was in a bad temper .)

1452 约有 15 个系动词可用介词短语作补语：

He is in Room Six . They have been at the wedding party .

The book seems about some form of revolution . My house is without water . Are they for or against the proposal ? I am from Tibet .

1453 这些短语可能是通常在系动词后用的成语 :

a . He was at hand (or at work) .

He was in debt (or in power , in pain) .

He was on duty , (or on edge , on the phone) .

He was out of office (or out of work) .

He was under oxygen .

He was beyond himself with grief .

It was below sea level (or below the average) .

It was beneath contempt (or beneath criticism) .

It was beyond repair (or beyond belief) .

It was in blossom (or in fashion) .

It was on sale (or on ice) .

It was out of context .

It was all over the place (or It is simply over my head) .

It was within one's grasp (or within sight) .

b . I feel at home (or out of sorts , up to it , at ease) .

It has become of no use . They grew at variance (or out of temper) .

He seemed at his wit's ends . The news seemed out of doubt . Your remark appeared out of place . He appeared out of his mind . He appeared just out of school .

He looks in good health . She does not look at ease . It looked out of place . It smells fish . It tastes of onion . They kept in touch with me . Our world remains out of order . The situation continued out of tune .

He went off his head (or out of his mind , into ecstasies) . He stood in terror (or in awe , in dread of it , in need of it) . I lay at his mercy . The city lies in ruins .

1454 介词的宾语可以是一个动名词 :

That is like throwing pearls before swine .

She is near crying .

It is worth doing .

She is above marrying such a man .

He is against declaring war .

He is for fighting to the last man .

He is past relenting .

1455 在系动词后 , use , age , size , colour 这类名词前的 of 常常省略 :

It is of no use (=useless) . It is of educational interest (=interesting in education) . It is of some consequence . It is of little value .

(Of) What age is he? He is (of) your age. They are (of) the same age. the same sex, the same taste. They are society people, but not our type; We are not that sort.

(Of) What size (or shape, length, height) is it? The animal is the size of an ox (or the shape of a bird). These two buildings are the same height. The street is the right width. The bed is just the length he likes. He is a long figure. The room is a hundred feet square. It's good quality and a good design.

What colour is the table? The table is a dark yellow (or the colour of your chairs).

What price is the car? (Cf. How much is the car?) The car is twenty thousand dollars.

What weight is the pork? The pork is two kilograms.

What use is this stick? The stick is no use. The dog is much service to men. What good is this cat? It's no good.

What part of speech is the word "go"?

1456 约有 10 个系动词可和名词连用,表示数目或尺寸。这些名词前可说省略了某些介词。不过多数字典都认为这些动词是不及物动词(若真是不及物动词,它应可以独用,在它后面不需加上日期,尺寸或重量的词。):

The journey costs ten days (or five thousand dollars).

The work costs a lot of care.

The sugar weighs five kilograms.

The table measures two feet in width and four feet in length.

The thermometer reads (or registers, indicates) 30.

He looks only twenty years of age.

He stood five feet.

The rainfall averages 52 inches a year.

The workers average eight hours a day.

The students total two thousand.

The troops numbered twenty thousand.

1457 图解:

注:人这个符号表明它上方的介词短语起单一词类(形容词)的作用。参阅 1311 节。

28. S + LV + I (John was to come at six.)

1458 约有 10 个系动词可以用不定式作补语。

1459 这些系动词中最重要的是 be.

1460 a. 不定式可以用作名词型的补语,表示某个动作和抽象主语所指是同样东西:

My aim (抽象主语) is to assist you (or for him to lead a happy life, for Mary to go to college).

His advice is for you to admit your mistakes (or to fight to the last man) .

Our difficulty was to master English in a year (or to have to smile in the presence of our boss all the time) .

To teach is to learn . To boast is to cheat . To live is to suffer and to struggle until our death .

1461 b . 不定式也可以用作形容词型的补语，表示主语的动作或品质。主语可以是抽象的东西，也可以是具体的东西：

This book (事物) is to be read (= readable) by children . This herb is not to be eaten (=edible) . The house is to protect us from rain , sunshine and theft . Money is to be spent .

We (人) are to get married next Sunday . Mary is to go to college next year . I am to teach English grammar . John is to die at 90 .

Music (抽象名词) is to entertain and raise our spirit . Grammar is to assist us in writing good sentences . The worst is to come .

He is to blame (= to be blamed) . The house is to let (=to be let) . (有被动意义。)

1462 在下面句子中有 be 以外的系动词，后面可跟不定式：

The report proves (or turns out) to be true . He proved to know it all .

The situation appears to be improving . It looks to be easy .

The letter seemed to have been tempered with .

He can't seem to see (=He seems unable to see) .

He grew to know the world . He grew to believe it . He came to hate her (or to know her , to hear it , to believe it) . This place has come to be used as a school . He is getting to be (=is becoming) a nice fellow . Kim got to be (=became) well-known .

This theory remains to be tested . He continues to be faithful .

He stands to (=is sure to) win (or gain , lose) .

1463 如果主语是不定式，或是补语很长，那么用不定式作补语比用动名词作补语更好一些：

His purpose is to discover (而不用 discovering) who is the most faithful of his friends . His habit has been to eat break- fast after brushing his teeth .

To respect others is to be respected (而不用 being respected) . (=If you respect others , you will be respected .)

To keep silent is to save plenty of trouble . (=If you keep silent , you will save plenty of trouble .)

1464 图解：

参阅 1311 节。

注意不定式 to admit 意义上的主语 for you 的图解办法。

29 . S + LV + G (John's problem was having to do it at once .)

1465 只有系动词 be 可以用动名词作补语 :

His problem was having to get over all these obstacles .

That is telling a lie . That would be going too far .

My objective is finishing the work as soon as possible . My problem was having to get everything ready by six . His distress was having too much money and too many wives . His bad habit has been getting up late . My mistake is studying literature .

Leaving a large fortune to children is encouraging them to be good-for-things . (如果主语是动名词 , 则用动名词作补语 , 比用不定式作补语时多。)

Saving is having .

Seeing is believing .

注 : 在这类句子中 , 主语必须是抽象名词或动名词 , be 表示主语和补语是指同样东西。但在 John is studying . The wind is blowing . The story is interesting . This child is charming . 这类句子中 , 动词的 -ing 形式表示主语的动作或特点 , 因此是谓语动词或是分词 , 而不是动名词。外形相似 , 但意义不同。

1466 图解 :

30 . S + LV + That-Cl (John's problem was that he had to do it at once .)

1467 在所有系动词中只有 be 能用 that 引起的从句作补语 :

His problem was that he had to get over these obstacles .

The chances are that he will fail . His order is that everybody should come at seven .

Not that she loves Bob , but that she loves society . (=It is not that...but it is that...)

It's not so much that I love her as that she loves me .

See 和 appear 可用来代替 be , 但只能在主语为 it 时这样用 :

It seemed (=or appeared) that he was right . (=The appearance was that he was right .)

1468 图解 :

注 : 这种由 that 引起的从句可以借助 人 来图解 , 作为一个单一词类看待 , 而成为系动词 was 的名词型补语 (参阅 1311 节) 。从句的图解方法和一个简单句一样 , 只是在前上方放有连词 that .

31 . S + LV + W-Cl or W-I (John's problem was what he should study or what to study .)

1469 在所有系动词中只有 be 能用一个由疑问词引起的从句或不定式

作补语：

That (or This) is why I have come (or why I worry) .

The problem is who is to pay and when we can start .

Our problem is what to do , where to go , how to begin .

Our question is how can we stop this bloodshed and when shall we live a peaceful life? (注意主语前的助动词和句末的问号)

My question is what to do after I am graduated .

1470 图解：

注：疑问词 why 的双重作用（副词及连词）均已在图解中表示出来。

注：由疑问词引起的不定式可以看作是由疑问词引起的从句的紧缩形式，省略了从句中的主语和谓语动词 be .

32 . S + LV . A . P . + N or G 或

S + LV . PrP . P + N or G 或

S + LV . PaP . P + N or G (John was afraid of dogs .)

1471 约有 30 个系动词跟有一个形容词（或分词）及一个合适的介词，在语法上等于一个及物动词。有时甚至可以找出意思与这种动词短语意思相近的单一及物动词。

Be 是这类系动词中最重要的一个：

a . He is conscious of [or is alive to] (= knows) (LV . A . P) his situation (or being suspected) . He is short of (= lacks) money . John is desirous of (= desires) fame (or going abroad) . This is similar to (= resembles) that . She is void of (= has no) common sense . They are fearful of (= fear) rats (or being searched) . She is fond of (= likes) flowers . He is averse to (= dislikes) tobacco (or helping anyone) . His face is suggestive of (= suggests) contempt . He is famous for hospitality . He is attentive to the lecture . These books are readable by young men only . His writings are unintelligible by common people . Her singing was audible by the farthest seats . The movie is enjoyable by anybody . He is equal to meeting any crisis . They were bent on doing evil . All things are subject to decay . I am sorry for him . She is sore at me . She's cuckoo on dress .

b . This story is interesting to (= interests) (LV . PrP . P) every child . The movie was amusing to (= amused) the audience . His expression was pleasing to (= pleased) his friends . The result is shocking to (= shocks) our team .

c . Water is composed of (= comprises) (LV . PaP . P) oxygen and hydrogen . He is pleased with (= likes) my gift (or playing with children) . John was accustomed (or used) to comfortable life (or living in a warm climate) . He is reduced to poverty (or begging) . John

is given to intemperance (or lying) . He was starved to death . This is made of iron . He is qualified for the job (or teaching) . He is interested in chickens (or keeping ducks) . He is tied up in a crime .

1472 一些其他系动词也可用于这种结构：

a . He felt tired of life ; seemed (or appeared) astonished at the news . Things seem hard on me .

He became conscious of the danger ; got married to her ; grew intoxicated with love ; went distracted with grief ; fell (or came) short of his duty ; ran short of provisions (or hands , goods) . His income fell short of the expenditure . His work fell short of the standard (or our expectation , the required amount) . His speech fell flat on the audience . The tax fell heavy on the tenants . It came right (or easy , natural , wrong , ill) to me . The ship got or ran , fell) foul of the rocks (or a junk) . The sewing machine proved (or turned out) useful to our family .

b . He remained ignorant of the serious situation . The package remains untouched by anyone . The library stays open to the public . He kept aloof from others . She stays keen on David , a teacher she met five years ago . You may rest certain of his support (or obtaining what you want) .

It smells (or tastes , looks) bad to him , but good to me . The statement sounds funny to us .

He stood mute with rage . The burden sat light (or easy) on me . The custom passes current among mountaineers . The remarks passed unnoticed by all present . She fought shy of him (or canned food) .

He made merry over another's mishap . I must make sure of his address . He makes free with my money . They made ready for the fight .

注：某些名词，例如 enemy，可以用作形容词：

He is an enemy (=averse) to falsehood . He is a friend to (=fond of) literature . He may be master of (=proficient in) this subject .

1473 图解：

33 . S + LV . P . N . P + N or G (John was in fear of death .)

1474 约有 5 个系动词（特别是 be）可以和介词、名词和介词构成成语。这种成语在语法上相当于一个单一的及物动词，可以用名词、代词或动名词作宾语：

a . We were at war with (=fought) them . He was at the head of (= headed) the procession . He is at home in (= knows) English . Gambling is at the bottom of (=causes) all evils . He seems at a loss for words .

They grew at variance with us . They are at peace with us . He remains at the zenith of his fame .

This subject is beyond the reach of (=exceeds) my knowledge .

He appeared beside himself with joy (or praising him- self) .

b . The adventurer is in the danger of (=risks) losing his life . He is in a fair way to (= approaches) success (or being promoted) . Mary is in the mood for music (or listening to music) . He is in the service of (=serves) Dr . Johnson . He is in command of (=commands) 5000 men . She is in the first blush of youth . He is in partner- ship with some friends . It is accordance with the rules . The documents are in the hands of a jeweller . He is in charge of this library . The book is in process of publication .

c . He is on a visit to (=is visiting) Japan . They were on an expedition to the North Pole . They are on the track of (=are pursuing) a criminal . I am on the lookout for(=am finding) a job . He was on the brink of (=was nearing) death . He is on the high road to being promoted . He is on the point of moving to another place .

It is out of keeping with (=violates) his words . He became out of favour with her . He grows out of touch with the times . This subject goes out of the sphere of science .

This is within the reach of ordinary men . He is within an inch of destruction .

1475 图解：

34 . S + LV . A + I 或

S + LV . PaP + I (John was anxious to study .)

1476 一个系动词加上一个表示意愿的形容词 (或过去分词) 可构成动词短语，如果后面跟一个不定式 (作宾语) ，这个短语在语法上也相当于一个及物动词。约有 10 个系动词可以这样用：

He is anxious (or concerned) (=longs) to go abroad .

They are impatient (or eager , keen) (=eagerly wish) to get married .

He is disposed (or desirous , inclined) (=likes) to fight .

After living abroad for thirty years , she is dying to see her fatherland .

He seems determined (or decided , resolved) to divorce her .

He is ready (or prompt) to help the poor .

He grows interested to get rich .

He appears willing (or content , ready , prepared) to work hard .

We are apt (or liable) to criticize others .

After three months of illness , he remains ambitious to stand first in the class .

He felt afraid to disturb his boss .

At the age of ten , he became curious to know about sex .

David is going (=intends) to study electronics .

We are agreed (=have agreed) to wait and see .

He is all wild (or crazy , dying , burning) (= fervently wishes) to own a motorcycle .

He is unwilling (or averse , loath , reluctant) (=refuses) to help anyone .

这样用的不定式可有一个意思上的主语 :

He is anxious for Mary to study hard . =He is anxious that Mary study (or shall study or should study) hard .

He is eager for his students to pass the examination . =He is eager that his students pass (or shall pass or should pass) the examination .

He is willing for his daughter to marry a poor scholar .

I am in no hurry for you to get married .

He is pleased for you to come over .

副词 too 可以放在上面提到的形容词前 , 意思和 very 相同。但 He is too (=very) anxious to speak . 和 He is too angry to speak . 不同 , 后者的意思是 He is so angry that he cannot speak . 此外 , all too , but too , only too 可用来代替 too , 表示 very , 但意思更强一些。

1477 图解 :

35 . S + LV . A . + that-CI 或

S + LV . PaP + that-CI 或

S + LV . P . N . + that-CI (John was afraid that his mother would scold him .)

1478 一个系动词和一个表示精神作用的形容词 (或过去分词) 可构成动词短语 , 在语法上相当于一个及物动词 , 后面可跟一个由 that 引起的从句作宾语。约有 10 个系动词能用在 这种短语中 :

a . I am sure (=believe) that he is at home . He was afraid (=feared) that he would fail . I am not doubtful (=don't doubt) that he will succeed . He is aware (=knows) that I cannot help him . I am glad (=rejoice) that the war is over . He became angry that you made the same mistake . I made certain (or sure) the door was closed . He remains (or keeps) confident that he will win . He is ignorant (or conscious , sensible , happy , thankful , ...) that every- thing is OK .

b He is deeply interested that I 'll study in France . He appeared (or seemed) surprised that I said " no " . He felt (or grew) worried that you didn't write .

c . I 'm amazed (or shocked , annoyed , irritated , disappointed , disturbed , upset) that you should reject her like that . (在这类由 that 引起的从句中可用 should 表示感情 , 有时有 like that , so 这类词和它一起用。)

I 'm glad (or pleased , grateful , satisfied) that you should return

the money so fast .

在书面语中的表示“不安”的词后，可用 lest...should 代替 that...should :

He is afraid lest she should (or might) reveal the secret .

I felt uneasy lest she should have an accident .

He was impatient lest he should be late .

1479 在和虚拟语气的动词一起用时，that 可有 if 的意思：

He would be happy that (=if) you should follow his advice .

I should be astonished that (=if) you could win the game .

1480 由于“介词+名词”有时相当于一个形容词，所以 S+LV . P . N+ that-Cl 可以相当于 S+LV . A+ that-Cl。和 S+LV . P . N . P+N 一样，这种句型本可构成另一句型，但由于例句较少，为了处理上的方便，在这里一道处理：

He is under the apprehension (=is apprehensive) that a great war will break out .

He is in hopes (=is hopeful) that you will recover very soon .

I am in dread (=am afraid) that he will fail .

He was in fear (=was afraid) lest she should be killed .

I am of opinion that every man is a good man .

He is under the impression that your family is very happy .

1481 That 常可省略，特别是在一些常用形容词后的 that 从句中：

I am glad you have come .

Are you afraid he will be angry ?

I'm sorry you are hurt .

She is sure he will come .

1482 在形容词（或分词）和 that 从句之间不要插入介词：

He is afraid of that his mother will scold him . (错句)

I am sorry for that I have made the same mistake . (错句)

1483 图解：

36 . S+LV . A . (P) +W-Cl or W-I 或

S+LV . PaP . (P) +W-Cl or W-I 或

S+LV . P . N . (P) +W-Cl or W-I (John was doubtful whether he would succeed or what to do next .)

1484 由系动词加表示精神作用的形容词（或副词）和介词构成的短语，如果用一个由疑问词引起的从句或不定式作宾语，它在语法上也相当于一个及物动词。约有 10 个系动词可用在这种短语中。介词常常省略掉(可参阅 1478 , 1482 节)

a . He is not sure (of) whether you will succeed . I am forgetful (of) what I have done . He appeared (or seemed) afraid (of) what you would do . I grow doubtful (of) whether she likes me . He became aware (of) how you treated him . He seems ignorant (of) who is his father . He felt surprised (at) why Wang was killed . Be careful (of)

how you write to her . He seemed reckless (of) what would happen . He remains curious (about) why she neglects him . I am amazed (at) how he has succeeded . He is indifferent (to) what you said . I am not certain (of) when this ought to be done . He grows fussy (about) how his meals are cooked .

b . He is not sure (about) how to do it . He is careful (of) what to say . He is not sure (of) whether to resign or not (=whether he should resign or not) . I am forgetful (of) what to do (=what I must do) . I grow doubtful (of) where to find a job (=where I can find a job) . He seems ignorant (of) when to go back to school after the vacation . He is indifferent (to) what food to eat and what work to do . He grows fussy (about) what to drink . John seems puzzled (about) what to say . He remained doubtful (of) where to find a wife . He grew curious (about) how to make a toy .

1485 由于“介词+名词”有时在语法上相当于一个形容词，在本节中将 LV . P . N 和 LV . A 合并处理可能是适当的（参阅 1480）：

a . He is in doubt (=is doubtful) (as to) what we could do . I am in a puzzle (=am puzzled) (about) what step I must take . I am at sea (=am puzzled) (about) how he did it . I am at my wit's end (or in perplexity) (about) which way to take , whether to get married or not .

b . He is in doubt what to do . I am in a puzzle (about) what step to take . He is all at sea (about) how to begin . I am at my wit's end (or in perplexity , in two minds , in several minds) (about) which way to take , whether to get married or to continue my study .

1486 图解：

注 1：在 S + LV + C 这类句型中，还有一个句型可包含在内，那就是用 as 引起的从句作形容词型补语的句子。

Things are exactly as (=in the same state as) they were before .

This country is almost as I left it ten years ago .

Our policy is still as we declared it in Geneva .

注 2：句型 32 , 33 , 34 , 35 , 36 都在 S + LV + C 类句子中处理，因为它们中间都有系动词。不过放在 S + TV + O 那一类中处理也许更好，因为系动词和某些词可构成及物动词。这样安排虽然比较合乎逻辑，但容易使某些读者感到糊涂。

E . 宾补动词+宾语+各种补语

1487 和 S + DV + O + O 句型的直接宾语一样，S + FV + O + C 句型中的宾语通常为名词或代词（而补语可以是形容词、名词、地点副词、介词短语、分词或不定式）：

I find John talking with his child .

I want him to dress like a nice boy .

但这种句型中的宾语间或也可能是不定式、动名词或名词从句。在这种情况下，不定式、动名词或从句应用代词 it 代替，本身则移到补语后面去，成为 it 的同位语。

I find it hard to persuade a woman . (不可说 I find to persuade a woman hard .)

He considers it necessary that a man should know at least one foreign language . (不可说 He considers that...language necessary .)

37 . S + FV + N + A (John made the house dirty .)

1488 约有 200 个宾补动词可用形容词作补语。

a . 约有 50 个宾补动词表示精神活动 (有些结构属书面语) :

1) They found the book easy ; felt it cold ; felt themselves guilty ; saw him so sad ; learned her gone ; discovered the house empty .

2) They thought him honest ; fancied themselves right ; imagined it easy ; supposed it true ; presumed it genuine ; esteemed themselves happy ; considered it easy ; figured (or counted) it good ; accounted themselves innocent ; believed it true ; judged it good ; concluded him dead ; held it cheap ; held me dear ; conceived themselves safe ; knew him honest ; took it easy (or ill , amiss) ; remembered him still young .

3) They called (or termed) him generous ; declared him dead ; avowed themselves wrong ; pronounced it genuine ; professed themselves mistaken ; confessed themselves guilty ; were reputed very generous .

4) They proved it false ; showed themselves honest ; certified him insane (or healthy) ; guaranteed (or warranted) it pure ; passed him honest ; rated it good ; granted it possible ; graded his handwriting illegible .

5) They feigned themselves ill ; pretended themselves innocent ; counterfeited themselves crazy ; boasted it precious .

6) They wished him dead (or ill , happy) ; wanted the house clean and tidy ; liked their tea very strong ; preferred the soup fresh and warm .

1489 b . 约有 30 个宾补动词既不表示精神活动也不表示具体动作 :

1) They made him responsible ; got the floor dirty ; had the tickets ready ; had their pockets empty ; rendered the work difficult ; turned the situation favourable ; drove (or set , made) him mad (or wild) ; sent me crazy ; struck him dead (or dumb , speechless , deaf , blind) ; left everything topsy-turvy .

2) They put (or set , brought) things right ; kept the room clean ; placed him first in maths ; bled their parents white ; ranked him honourable ; cut me dead ; marked six of the students absent . He is aged twenty- six . He's born blind . It is dated May 1 .

1490 c . 至少有 50 个宾补动词表示具体动作 :

1) He pushed (or flung, threw, burst, broke, forced, kicked, held) the door open; slammed the door shut; cut the string short; shot her dead; boiled the eggs hard; opened it wide; beat (or hammered) it flat; washed (or brushed, wiped, licked, swept) it clean; slit the envelope open; beat (or pinched) her black and blue, burned himself dead; knocked himself senseless; shook me awake.

2) He baked the cake brown; pulled it long; ground it sharp; chopped it short; turned the light low; wrapped it up tight; raised the portrait high; copied it fair; dyed it red; stained it blue; pumped (or squeezed, shook, wrung, drank) it dry; rubbed it smooth; stripped it bare; sliced it thin; stuffed (or filled) his pockets full, burned the bread black.

1491 d. 约有 20 个宾补动词 (多由不及物动词变成) 表示人的动作, 后面常跟自身代词:

They talked (or sang) themselves ill (or hoarse); drank themselves drunk; ate themselves sick; slept themselves sober; read themselves asleep; cried (or wept) themselves blind; laughed themselves red in the face (or hoarse); shouted themselves hoarse; walked themselves lame; stripped themselves naked; danced themselves weary, wept themselves sober; studied themselves silly.

1492 当宾补动词和形容词都是单音节词, 尤其当宾语较长, 或包含有疑问词或关系代 (副) 词时, 形容词常紧跟在动词后面:

They made good (单音节词) the loss (or their promise); made clear (or plain) their opinion; let loose their caged birds; laid bare (or open) the enemy's design; laid waste the enemy's country.

He set free all the prisoners of the city (较长宾语), threw open the private garden which they had closed many years; broke open the door which they could not open with the key; cut short the sentence that seemed too long.

Whose (疑问词) letter are you copying fair? Which string are you going to cut short? What people do you consider great?

He has a grey beard which (关系代词) he shaves close every five days. He spoke to a woman whose husband he was going to set free. He spoke kindly to John, whom he secretly wished ill.

1493 在上述句子中, 宾语的补语表示宾补动词所指动作的结果。但在下面句子中, 宾语的补语常是 when 所引起的从句的紧缩形式。例如 alive 意思是 when he was alive, young 意思是 when it was young, 约有 20 个动词常可这样用:

They trapped the animal alive; trained it young.

They took (or caught, saved, buried, burned) him alive.

They usually ate the herb raw; drank their tea very weak; served the food hot; roasted an ox whole.

The snake swallows its prey whole.

They carried him half-dead to the hospital; returned the purse

intact to the owner ; bought it ready-made (or second- hand) ; brought the child safe to land ; sent me healthy and happy back to my parents .

1494 So 可以用来代替任何形容词补语 :

“ Is it correct ? ” “ I find it so . ” “ But I don't think it so . ”

“ He is cunning . ” “ But I don't call him so . ”

Your future will be fine if you decide to make it so .

1495 至少有 30 个及物动词(大多表示精神活动) , 可以成为宾补动词 , 但要求形容词前加 as :

a . They abandoned it as useless ; acknowledged themselves as careless ; accepted (or announced) the story as true ; censured this chapter as unnecessary ; certified the statement (as) correct ; construed his reply as unfavourable ; counted themselves as (or for) dead (or lost) ; criticized him as heartless ; declared themselves as clever ; denied it as stupid ; denounced him as traitorous ; decided him as silly ; described the case as serious ; designated him as dishonest ; couldn't ensure the business as profitable ; feigned themselves as ignorant of the robbery ; gave me up as (or for) dead (or hopeless) .

b . They held it as valuable ; labelled him as dishonest ; looked upon the stone as genuine ; looked up to him as holy ; ranked Shakespeare as the first ; reckoned the child as clever ; recognized it as important ; regard the plan as difficult ; represent the situation as hopeless ; see him as trust worthy ; set down the advice as valuable ; stigmatized him as cruel ; warrant the liquor as genuine .

1496 图解 :

as unnecessary 在这里作为一个整体来图解 , 很难在图解中给 as 一个真正合适的位置。

38 . S + FV + N + AP (John laughed it away .)

1497 无数的宾补动词可用地点副词 (或称副词型小品词) 作宾语补语。

这个句型 38 可以看作是句型 7 S + TV . AP + N 的变体。句型 7 包含 3 个部分 (参阅 1341) 。TV 和 AP 放在一起 , 作为一个整体 ; N 可能由 3 个或更多个重要的词构成。而句型 38 包含 4 个部分。句型 7 的 TV 变为 FV , AP 变为补语 , 起独立作用 , 并受强调 ; N 包含一个 (多为代词) 或两个较不重要的词 (参阅 1364) 。

a . He pulled me aside . They set the decision aside (=did not carry it out) . Put it aside (=reserve it) .

He kept the child away from the dog ; scolded his maid away ; wished me away ; bothered the guests away ; snatched her letter away . He talked the hours away (= talked so that the hours flitted

away) ; wept the night away ; dreamed his hours away (=passed his hours in dreaming) ; drank his property away (=drank so much that he became poor) ; laughed my fears away (=dismissed them by laughing) ; explained my doubts away .

He called me back ; hit me back ; answered me back ; paid the money back ; frowned me back .

b . He helped her down ; got (or had) it down (=had it written) ; took my letter down (=wrote it in short-hand while I dictated it) . The applause brought the house down (so loud was the applause) . He laughed this idea down (=so that it failed) ; talked (or laughed) me down (= talked or laughed so that I couldn't speak or act) ; has lived the scandal down (= lived until it is forgotten by people) . They voted the measure down . Put me (or my name) down for ten dollars (given to a charity) .

c . Send the child home ; see her home . He drove the argument home (=made the listeners understand its full force) .

He let us in ; rang the guests in . We danced the New Year in ; bowed the guests in ; count him in , plug the kettle in . She has her pupils in by 8 a . m .

He saw her off ; helped her off with her coat ; could bite his tongue off (=regretted having said something wrong) . He turned the lights (or the radio) off ; slept the headache (or fatigue) off (=slept until he got rid of his headache or fatigue) ; walked his meal off ; laughed the idea off = (down) ; paid his debt off ; let me off at the station .

d . He put (or had) his white shirt on ; pulled her socks on ; helped her on with her coat ; left the light on ; turned (or switched) the TV on .

He let the dog out ; bowed his guests out ; found his way out ; pushed the window out ; had an evening out . He blew the candle out ; brought the meaning out(= made the meaning clear) ; cried his heart out ; swore his tongue out . He told the secret straight (or right) out ; had it out with his enemy (=came to a settlement with him by frank discussion) . She had her cry (or sleep) out (=cried or slept until she felt satisfied) ; sat the show out (= sat until the show was over) . The wind raged itself out(=raged until it was exhausted) .

e . He knocked the glass over ; helped her over ; handed the business over to me ; asked me over (= asked me to call on him) ; turned the page over . We talked the matter over (= discussed it carefully) ; thought the matter over ; looked the letter over . He counted the the apples over (=again) . he declared the war over (=at an end) . He had his grandson over in Berlin .

f . He slept the clock round (=slept 24 hours) .

He called his men together ; tied all the prisoners together .

He read it through (=till the end) ; saw the event through ; sat the night through ; saw your trick through (=was not deceived by it) ; waved me through .

He pulled his socks up . He kept his reputation up ; brought his children up ; looked the word up in the dictionary ; locked (or chained , nailed , packed , tore broke) it up (=thoroughly , completely) .

They cannot keep the revolt under .

1498 图解：

39 . S + FV + N + N (John called me Lee .)

1499 至少有 110 个宾补动词用名词作补语。

1500 约有 70 个宾补动词后面不必跟 as 这类动词有些后面可以加 as , 但也可不加：

a . They made (or crowned , anointed) him King ; appointed (or nominated) him (as) Minister of Finance ; consecrated him archbishop ; constituted (or inaugurated) him president ; chose (or elected) him (as) their leader ; promoted him general ; commissioned him general . The King created him count ; dubbed him a knight . He was named assistant ; ordained priest ; incorporated a member .

b . They call (or name ; nickname , dub) him Fatty ; christen (or baptize) her “ Mary ” ; term (or style) themselves “ Doctors ” ; label (or brand) him (as) a fool ; entitled the book “ Words ” ; phrase the failure a “ success ” , abbreviate New York “ NY ” ; write Peking “ Beijing ” ; mark the bottle “ Poison ” ; pronounce ski [Mi :] .

c . They count (or reckon , esteem) it (as) an honour ; consider (or deem) it their duty ; suppose (or think , account) her a good girl .

d . They acclaimed (or hailed) him (as) a hero ; voted him a good teacher ; declared him (as) the saviour of their country ; pronounced him (as) a great philanthropist ; proclaimed him (as) a great poet .

e . They admit (or acknowledge , confess , feel) themselves (as) inferiors ; show (profess) themselves artists ; reveal him (as) a murderer , a monster .

They warrant him (as) a very honest person ; certify him as one of the members of their association ; prove him a criminal ; judge him a silly fellow ; know him (as) a rascal .

f . They made the plan an object of ridicule ; made the distance seven miles (or the total a thousand dollars) ; found the city a prosperous place ; left the city a ruin ; left me an orphan (or me their son's guardian) ; kept nothing a secret ; saw their son a beggar ; had a son a great sportsman . He was born a poet (or a rich man) .

They led (or took , made) him captive ; took him prisoner .

They entered (or enrolled) him (as) a member .

g . John is a nice gentleman and everyone thinks him so (=a nice gentleman) . “ Is she his wife ? ” “ We consider her so (= his wife) . ” The rose still smells sweet although you don't call it so (= the rose) . They say John is a funny fellow , and I find him so (=a funny fellow) .

1501 有许多动词 (多数表示精神活动) 由于使用 as , 变成宾补动词 , 这和上面的例句不同 , as 不能省略 :

a . They described (or depicted , represented) the place as a paradise . They qualified him as a hypocrite ; defined me as a rogue .

They fancied (or imagined) their leader as a god .

They accepted his words as the real truth of the matter ; recognized the country as an independent state .

b . They criticized the plan as a failure ; denounced him as a public enemy ; blamed the policy as a great mistake ; cursed me as a madman ; looked down upon him as a fool ; mocked me as a clown .

They valued it as a precious gift ; admired her as an intelligent girl ; looked up to him as an authority ; extolled him as a hero ; held him up as an example ; thought much of me as a good writer .

c . They set him down as a fool ; put it down as a pretext ; regarded her as a tigress ; took me as his best friend ; looked to me as their benefactor ; relied upon me as their adviser ; held my gift as something valuable ; contemplated my advice as nothing ; treated me as a child ; looked upon me as their enemy ; remembered Smith as a cheat ; introduced me as a musician ; spoke (or thought) of her as a nice girl ; saw me as nothing .

They rank him as a great poet ; rate him as a pedant .

d . They designated Williams as the successor ; inaugurated him as principal of the school ; installed him as chair- man ; engaged me as a clerk .

They owned (or claimed) the child as their own . They cited many cases as evidence ; gave the number as 72 .

His speech stamped him as a gentleman ; characterized him as a snob .

They designed the room as a kitchen ; used a table as a bed .

He is bred up as a scholar ; is known as John ; is naturalized as an American ; is regarded as a philanthropist ; is established as president of the company .

这类动词之后有时用 for 代替 as :

They branded John for a hypocrite ; knew him for a villain ; put him down for a fool ; gave John up for a dead man ; chose her for their servant ; nominated (or elected) him for president ; took (or mistook) the stone for a diamond ; intended the house for a hospital .

1502 下面 4 句话意思相同 :

He chose her a wife . He chose her as a wife . He chose her for a wife . He chose her to be a wife .

下面 4 句也如此 :

They elected him president . He elected him as president .

They elected him for president . He elected him to be president .

1503 在这类句子中可用一个由 what 引起的从句作补语 :

Call it what you will .

I found the city what it had been .

Consider her as what you think the best .

1504 注意把 S + FV + N + N 和 S + DV + N + N 分开 , 试比较 :

We called him Shortie . We called him a taxi .

We found John a good man . We found John a job .

1505 图解 :

As a paradise 作为一个整体来图解 ,也许可以当作介词短语来图解。(参阅 1511 图解)

40 . S + FV + N + P . N (John put everything in order .)

1506 至少有 70 个宾补动词用介词短语作补语。

1507 这类介词短语多数都可用在系动词后 (参阅 1453) , 作为形容词型的补语。它们对宾语加以说明 , 对句子的完整性至关重要。它们和用作状语修饰动词的介词短语不同 , 后者可以省略 , 例如 : I thank him for the gift . He paid the rent to the landlord . 中的斜体部分便是。

a . They PUT everything in order (=They made everything orderly . Cf . Everything was in order) . They put her in charge of a class (=They caused her to take charge of a class Cf . She was in charge of a class) . They put the police on the track of the thief , a thief on trial , him out of humour , me out of countenance , me to shame . They put the piano in tune , all things in shape , the machine in action , the law in force , their doctrine in practice , a new currency in circulation , everything out of order (or gear , joint) , the loss out of account (or consideration) .

b . They SET the prisoners at liberty (=They made the prisoners free . Cf . The prisoners were at liberty) . They set those people at odds (or at variance) (=They made those people quarrel) . They set a person over the department , him on the right way , John against her , the machine in order , the table in a roar , a project on foot , a house on fire .

c . They PLACED it at my services (=made it serve me) , a sum at my disposal , the government in their power , me in command of an army , the department under a minister , an orphan in my hands , the boy under the care (or the protection) of his uncle , me under their order .

d . They HELD the property in trust (or in pledge) (=kept the property as security) , learning in esteem , the lesson in remembrance , the money in their hands (=at their disposal) , themselves in readiness , him in respect (or veneration , disdain , contempt) , the enemy in check (or in play , at bay) .

e .They KEPT their children in good health(=kept their children healthy) , him in prison (or custody , chains , confinement) , him in countenance , me in the dark , me in suspense , the house in good repairs , the school in order , the articles in stock , their own mind (or nerve) on the stretch , their own children out of harm's way , some of the mad men under restraint , the prisoners under guard (or control) .

f . They LEFT it out of account (or consideration , calculation) (=ignored it) , me in the dark , the servant in charge of the house , it on deposit in the bank .

g . He TOOK them at a disadvantage , her at her word , his little children in tow , every small thing into account (or consideration , calculation) ,his enemy off his guard ,everything she said on trust , the child under his wing .

h . He HAD four servants in his employ (=Four servants were in his employ) . He had her in his mercy , something in view (or mind) , a matter in hand .

i . They BROUGHT the custom into being (=They caused the custom to exist . Cf . The custom came into being) . They brought the law into force (=They made the law effective . Cf . The law came into force) . They brought his genius into play , the machine into use , the war to an end , the country to a crisis .

j . The doctor got me on the diet , the pest under control .

k . They laughed themselves into fits (=They made themselves convulsed with laughter .Cf .They burst into fits of laughter) .They cried (or wept) themselves into a fit ; overworked (or worried) themselves into consumption (=worked or worried so much that they became ill of consumption(“ 肺癆 ” 的古老字) .They drank themselves in- to their graves ; smoked themselves into calmness ; thought themselves into a paradise ; worked themselves into a temper . They waved me into their house (=made me enter their house by waving to me) ; dined him into a good humour ; talked black into white ; kissed a full sense into empty words .

l . He talked me to death (=He killed me by talking so much) . He swore me to secrecy ; cried (or sang) himself to sleep ; drank (or laughed) himself to death .

m . They laughed (or looked) her out of countenance (= made her abashed by laughing or looking at her) ;

laughed (or shamed) me out of a bad habit ; bought me out of

my house ;reasoned me out of my plan ;talked money out of my pocket .He drank himself out of his job ;ate himself out of house and home ;ran himself out of breath ;sinned himself out of salvation .

1508 下面的介词短语表示宾补动词所表示精神活动的结果。这些短语前有时可插入 to be , 例如 : They imagined themselves (to be) out of danger . They thought it (to be) of great importance . 但在 C 类句子中不可插入 to be :

a . I held the matter of no account (=thought the matter to be unimportant) , my fortune and life at nothing , him in esteem (or respect) , nobody in contempt (or disdain) .

They found their family in tears , me at work , you out of humour , everything in order .

I felt myself in the mood for singing (or at home , up to swimming) . I felt everything in order .

b . They wished the war at an end ; supposed (or thought , fancied , considered , judged) it of little importance ; esteemed (or counted , accounted) themselves on the right scent (or the right way) ; declared (or pronounced) the report beyond belief ; avowed (or confessed , professed) themselves out of contact with the times ; showed (or proved , guaranteed) it of great value ; showed themselves of noble spirit . (还有一些其他动词在 1512 节中列出)

c . They referred to it as of no value , looked upon him as past cure , regarded the flowers as out of place , thought (or spoke) of the news as beyond belief .

1509 就像系动词后的介词短语一样 , 宾补动词后的介词短语中有些介词 (特别是 of) 有时可以省略 (参阅 1455) :

He found them the same shape ; wished it a red colour ; saw it no use ; painted the door a green colour ; made the desk a large size .

1510 上面提到的介词短语是形容词型的补语 , 因此是句子不可缺少的部分。下面的介词短语是修饰动词的状语 , 因此在语法上是可以省掉的 :

He studied music on Sunday .

He passed his youth in Paris .

He pronounced every word with care .

He loved her out of pity .

1511 图解 :

41 . S + FV + N + to be or to have (John believed you to be honest .)

1512 约有 90 个表示判断的动词用 “ to be + 补语 ” 或 “ to have + 过去分词 ” 作补语。这个句型一般表示主语认为或宣布某人或某物是什么 (样) 或做过某事 :

a . They believed (or thought , figured , maintained) him to be honest , the book to be useful , him to have been unruly , the book

to have been useful .

They supposed (or presumed , assumed , allowed [dated] , conceived) him to be an expert (or an honest man) , the instrument to be useless ; granted this to be true .

They took (or guessed , conjectured) me to be a French- man .

I estimated the size of this room to be 400 sq . ft .

He made the cost to be a hundred dollars .

b . They suspected him to be a thief , to have stolen their things . They doubted him to be an honest man .

They considered (or held , esteemed , counted , account- ed , reckoned , made out , looked on) themselves to be lucky , the plan to be a foolish idea .

He is reputed to be a good doctor . (They repute him [to be] a good husband . 陈旧用法) He is recorded to have made this canal .

They judged (or concluded , determined) him to be a fool , the plan to be of little use .

c . They construed his reply to be unfavourable .

They found (or perceived , felt , saw , discovered) the trouble to be unavoidable , their new teacher to have studied many subjects . They noted David to be too clever .

They knew (or understood , realized) the situation to be against them , their friend to be a snake in the grass .

They fancied (or imagined) themselves to be the best men in the town , the circumstance to be favourable , themselves to have been cheated .

d . They proved (or argued , bespoke) him to be worthy of promotion , it to be wrong .

They denied the rumour to be true , the accusation to be just , you to have given them any assistance .

They declared (or proclaimed , affirmed , pronounced , announced , stated , asserted , reported) themselves to be members of a secret society , the rumour to be unfounded , the diamond to have been stolen . The diamond is alleged to have been stolen .

They showed (or indicated , denoted) themselves to be trustworthy . His conduct shows him to be a great man .

e . Their accent revealed (or betrayed) them to be foreigners .

They disclosed this matter to be a conspiracy .

They professed (or claimed) themselves to be engineers ; gave themselves out to be scientists ; bragged of them- selves to be the richest men in the city .

They recognized (or owned) him to be their bosom friend .

They confessed (or owned , professed) themselves to be guilty (or mistaken) , to have made a great mistake .

They acknowledged (or admitted) themselves to be silly , their

idea to be a dream , the accusation to be just .

He warranted (or guaranteed , vouched , avouched , at- tested , ensured) it to be pure .

He certified the statement to be correct .

f . He boasted himself to be a great scientist (or to have done great things) ; feigned himself to be ill .

They nominated (or named) her to be secretary ; appointed John to be the supervisor , promoted him to be a general , chose (or elected) him to be the president ; voted him to be a good boy .

They described me to be a mysterious person .

They apprehended their son to be in danger .

They discerned him (or made him out) to be a hypocrite .

They implied him to be honest .

They idealized her to be a perfect angel .

1513 在上面句子中 , to be 后面的形容词或名词表示某种特点 , 而在下面句子中 , to be 和后面的现在分词表示现在正在进行或在主要动词所表示时间当中正在进行的动作 , 而 “ to have + 过去分词 ” 表示主要动词所表示时间之前已完成的动作 :

They suspected him to be playing a trick on them ; believed him to be telling the truth ; imagined themselves to be making great progress .

They supposed him to have seen much about the world ; judged him to have stolen the watch . The wrinkles on his face represented him to have suffered much .

1514 在上述动词后只能用不定式 to be 和 to have , 其他动词的不定式一般不能用 , 但表示状态 (而不是动作) 的动词不定式可以用 :

They knew him to go to school . (错句)

I believed John to make poems . (错句)

I considered him to read English very easily . (错句)

They knew the box to contain 20 cigarettes . (正确)

I believed the sentence to mean something ill . (正确)

I consider it to belong to another category . (正确)

I find it to have several advantages . (正确)

1515 在不少情况下 , 不定式 to be 可以省略 , 这时句型变为 S+FV+N+N 或 A 或 PN . 但 “ to have been ” 及 “ to be + 现在分词 ” 却不能省略 (参阅 1488 a , 1500 a , 1508 , 1509) :

They supposed him (to be) wrong , found it (to be) a good policy , reported him (to be) the best man for the job , believed him (to be) a thief , think it (to be) of little value .

但 : They believed it to have been stolen . I should guess him to be playing a trick on me .

1516 此外 , 上面的简单句 (都是书面语或正式文体) 可以变为包含一个 that 从句的复合句 , 这时句子则变为非正式文体 , 不过有少数宾补动词不允许作这样的改变 :

They believed him to be honest . =They believed that he was honest .

I considered this trouble to be unnecessary . =I considered that this trouble was unnecessary .

He declared himself to have done his best . =He declared that he had done his best .

但 :

He named her to be secretary . =He named that she was secretary . (错句)

I count myself to be lucky . =I count that I am lucky . (错句)

1517 图解 :

42 . S+FV+N+I (John wanted me to do it .)

1518 约有 140 个宾补动词 (表示 “ 愿望 ” 或 “ 命令 ”) 可以用任何不定式 (包括 to be) 作补语。这种句型通常表示 “ 主语+希望或请求+名词+作某事或成为什么 ” :

a . They wanted (or wished) him to teach their son , every- body to be a saint . They intend (or mean , desire) him to study abroad . This story is calculated (=designed) to mislead the public . They expected him to work hard . He designed the furniture to fit his room . I recommend her to learn music .

b . He asked (or told) her to (please) open the door .

She notified us to move out .

He required (or requested , needed) me to help him .

He reminded me to shut the window when I went to bed .

We urged the public to take precautions .

They caused (or got , had , occasioned) everybody to kneel down , their men to destroy the bridge , provisions to be ready , the rule to be observed .

They gave me to understand all the intrigue .

The module programs the flash to provide the right light .

c . I cannot bring myself to acknowledge the fault , to scold her , to believe the news , to leave my children hungry . I wish I could bring (=lead) you to understand it . Those gangsters compelled (or forced , constrained , coerced) me to accept the proposal . Poverty forced him to work hard . Hunger drove (or goaded) him to steal .

He condemned them to be imprisoned .

The judge sentenced him to die .

He likes (or hates , loves) his wife to dress well , summer to come .

I should prefer my daughter to study art , then to talk less .
 d . He charged me to send the letter , me to keep the diamond .
 He commissioned me to buy a car for him .
 He set his servant to go to the market , her to cook .
 He trusts me to arrange everything .
 He sent me to pick grapes .
 He enjoined us to obey .
 I phoned (or called , wired , wrote) him to come .
 He ordered (or directed , commanded) his men to get ready .
 They delegated him to speak at the meeting .
 He instructed the agent to sell it .
 I was assigned (or scheduled) to sing .
 He summoned them to appear .
 e . I should not oblige you to spend your money .
 I am obliged to help him .
 He pressed (or urged) me to drink more .
 They invited (or asked) me to spend the vacation at their
 country-house ; him to speak , to sing , to dance .
 He welcomes you to enjoy his hospitality .
 f . They begged him to accompany them , me to help them .
 They entreated (or besought) the mayor to pardon them , me to
 do something for them .
 They conjured him not to criticize them .
 They implored him to spare their son , the king to be mer- ciful .
 I adjured him to tell me the truth .
 They prayed the god to save them , the enemy to set them free .
 g . He advised (or counselled , recommended) his friend to work
 hard , his friends to try this pill .
 He persuaded his friend to work hard , me to help her .
 They warned (or cautioned) me not to go out that night , me to
 be careful .
 I pledge myself not to be unjust .
 I have committed myself to support his son .
 I bound myself (or him) to pay the debt .
 h . He suffered nobody to touch his flowers , himself to be caught .
 He allowed (or permitted) the students to play in the classroom ,
 but other teachers forbade them to do so .
 He cannot bear any man to speak with his wife .
 He left the students to find it out , the readers to judge ,
 them to sink or swim .
 i . The ticket entitled the bearer to see the movie . His ability
 entitled him to command an army .
 I empowered him to supervise the city .
 The law authorized the judge to sentence him to death .

They promoted him to direct this department .
 They licensed me to practise medicine .
 j . His success decided me to try .
 The circumstance determined him to work hard .
 We programed her to sing .
 We enrolled him to be a freshman .
 The weather influenced him to change his mind .
 The high salary disposed (or inclined) him to take the job .
 God has chosen us to take land .
 I selected (or picked , found) a man to teach English .
 k . I induced him to accompany me . Nothing could induce him to believe it .
 This matter led me to think (or him to make a discovery) .
 Nothing can move him to change his mind .
 He bribed them to keep silent about his crime .
 Poverty might prompt (or entice , move) me to commit a crime .
 They tempted him to be a playboy .
 He coaxed her to give her apple to him .
 He badgered his father to buy a bicycle for him .
 l . He helped me (to) do everything , us (to) cook rice ; aided us to do it (or in doing it) .
 He assisted me to prepare coffee (less common than in preparing coffee) .
 His wealth enabled him to buy a big building .
 Their assistance enabled me to succeed .
 They prepared their students to take the exam . I have to prepare her to receive the bad news .
 m . You provoked (or exasperated) him to speak rudely .
 They challenged (or dared , defied) us to fight again .
 This success inspired (or prompted , encouraged) me to study harder .
 They excited (or incited , stimulated) the people to rebel .
 n . They trained (or disciplined) him to be patient .
 They educate (or teach , bring up) David to be nice .
 He conditioned them to watch each other .
 I must accustom myself to get up earlier .
 I will trouble (or bother , thank) you to do something .
 I understood (or misunderstood) him to say so .
 I have (never) known him to curse , him to help the poor .
 o . He used (or employed , utilized) the coconut shell to take water .
 He beckoned them to approach , them to draw nearer .
 They whispered us to be quiet .
 He signed (or signalled) (to , for) them to wait .

He nudged her to speak .

He has paid (or hired) you to do the dirty work ; bribed the police to excuse his offence ; engaged (or employed) me to type .
1519 这种句型有一些变体 :

a . He caused (or ordered , enabled) music to be played . (在
没有必要说明谁演奏时 , 可用不定式的被动形式)

He allowed (or permitted) his good name to be soiled .

b . I do not want there to be another war (=another war to
come) . (another was 为宾语 , to be there 为补语。)

He likes (or wishes) there to be a picnic (=a picnic to take
place) .

He held there to be no god (=that there is no god) .

He meant there to be no trouble .

He hates there to be any quarrel .

I should prefer there to be a meeting .

I hate there to be some misunderstanding between us .

I expect there to be some kind of agreement .

但注意 :

I promised him to work harder (=that I would work harder ;
不是指 that he would work harder) .

1520 图解 :

43 . S+IV . P+N+I (John cried to me to stop .)

1521 约有 40 个不及物动词后面跟特定的介词 , 可用作宾补动词 , 用不定式作补语 :

a . I prayed (to) God to save me .

I telephoned (or wrote , wired) to her to come immedi- ately .

He cried (out) (or shouted) to her to stop .

The bugle called to the troops to assemble .

I motioned (or signalled) (to) them to go away .

He beckoned (to) me to follow .

He signed (to) me to take a seat .

I nodded to him to do so .

I proposed (or suggested) to John to accompany me .

We appealed to (or called upon) him to do something .

We applied to the government to assist us .

We looked to him to supply us with rice .

b . They asked for us to settle the matter .

They gestured and shouted for him to come back .

Most of us longed (or hoped) for the war to be over , but some
dreaded for a peace to come .

I wished (or pressed) for it to be done at once .

I agree for him to pay me next week .
 The plan provided for the rich to assist the poor .
 I have arranged (or planned) for her to go to college .
 We have fixed for the wedding to take place on Sunday .
 We waited for them to tell us the news .
 They sent for him to build the house (or the doctor to come at once) .
 He didn't care for me to do anything for him .
 They looked for someone to assist them . They did not look for a stranger to come at night .
 The company advertised for boys to do the job .
 c . We called upon him to act .
 We depended (or relied , counted) upon him to help us .
 Everything depends upon him not to interfere . We count on him not to know it (=count on the chance that he does not know it) .
 He prevailed upon her to marry him .
 They fixed on him to speak on their behalf .
 d . I pleaded with him to do something for me .
 They demand of me to keep a secret .
 We beg of him to save our lives .
 He trusts in me to help him .
 He yelled at her to stop .

试和上述句子比较：

I made signs for (=signed) him to come , made an appeal to (=requested) them to help the victims .

I am anxious (or willing , impatient , in a hurry) for (=entreat) John to come .

1522 图解：

44 . S+FV+N+I (John let me do it .)

1523 约有 20 个宾补动词用不带 to 的不定式作补语：

I made him study (不要用 to study) hard . I will make him stay .

He let me go (不要用 to go) . Let him come here at seven .

Let it be destroyed .

He had some accident happen to him (=Some accident happened to him) . I had many friends call on me .

I watched (or looked at , beheld , perceived , saw , observed , noticed) him come . We watched the plane fly . He found (or witnessed) her speak with someone . He heard (or overheard , listened to) her sing . I felt the pressure in- crease . He felt himself grow interested in music .

I have (never) known him tell lies .

1524 He let slip the opportunity (=let the opportunity slip) , let fall a hint (=let a hint fall) , let go my hand , let drop the unessential parts , let pass my mistake .

1525 在某些结构中，一些宾语可省略：

She helped (me) make my clothes . (Am .)

He has to make do (=manage) with a table for a bed .

He made believe (=pretended) not to see me .

I hear (people) say that John has died , hear (people) tell (or speak , talk) of the accident .

1526 在某些宾补动词后 to 可用可不用：

I will have him(to)come at once .Would you have me(to) believe it .

He'll help (me) (to) carry it . Catherine helps (me) (to) cook the dinner . (Am .)

He bade me (to) wait .

I have never known (or never knew) him (to) behave so badly .

1527 不要说：

I make him studies hard . (错句)

I make him to study hard . (错句)

1528 图解：

45 . S+FV+N+Prp 或 S+IV . P+N+Prp (John kept me waiting .)

1529 至少有 60 个宾补动词可用现在分词作补语。

a . 约有 40 个宾补动词后面不用 as：

1) They kept me waiting ; kept the machine running .

He left me standing outside . The news left me wondering .

I cannot have (=cannot suffer) (or won't have) them wasting their time . I will have (=insist on) you finishing it by January . We shall have the rain coming (=The rain will come) . I had many friends waiting for me (=Many friends waited for me) .

He got his son learning (=made his son learn) English , the water boiling . He got (=had) some friends waiting for him (=Some friends waited for him) .

2) I took her (out) shopping , hunting .

The bell brought people gathering on the square .

He sent his child tramping , begging ; sent the price soaring , them packing , his enemy sprawling backwards .

He set the house burning . The story set them laughing , roaring , gasping , trembling , thinking He started (or set) the engine running , the ball flying , the clock going , the music playing . He started (=set) me laughing . (Cf . Let us set the period as beginning on June 1 .)

3) I caught him (while he was) stealing it . He caught you doing

that . I met her (while she was) walking with John . He surprised her bathing in the river .

I sensed him doing something very mysteriously . I felt the house shaking , my heart beating , my end approaching ; felt myself trembling in his arms .

I saw (or beheld , looked at , observed , watched , glimpsed , perceived , descried , scanned) a rat running past ; noticed (or felt , found) him stealing something . I saw (or heard) him talking with her (= I happened to observe part of the action) . I saw (or heard) him talk with her (= I observed the whole action .) 但 : I should like to hear him talk (不用 talking) with her .

4) I heard him giving orders .

His imagination depicts (or pictures , paints) himself hovering in the sky . I imagined (or fancy) him wandering about the city like a beggar . (Cf . Imagine yourself as being respected by your friends .)

He thought himself doing the best thing . Never suppose yourself knowing everything .

I anticipated something happening .

I recollected (or recalled , remembered) her glancing at me more than once .

5) Newspapers reported him missing .

I cannot understand (or conceive) him doing such a foolish act .

I don't like (or hate , dislike , detest) my wife going out often ; don't want anyone cheating me .

I saw lying on the street a dead man who seemed to have been killed several days earlier . (如果宾语太长 , 分词应放在宾语前面。)

He set running the engine which we had thought use- less .

1530 b . 至少有 20 个不及物动词要求分词前加 as 才能变成宾补动词 :

He fancied her clothes as being made of gold ; recognized me as speaking on behalf of all ; accepted me as having seen much of the world ; described the city as expressing a modern idea of speed ; treated money as having little value ; dismissed the fault as being the result of carelessness ; visualized her as having pretty eyes ; saw life as being a dream ; struck me as being a fool .

It is regarded (or looked upon) as (being) useless , accepted as (being) the largest , recorded as (being) the best , portrayed as belonging to a new era . He is quoted as saying that education is all important ; well-known as being upright .

1531 c . 有些不及物动词加介词可以用作宾补动词 , 后面用分词作补语。由于这类句子很少 , 或许可以把 S+IV . P+N+ PrP 这种句型看作是和 S+FV+N+PrP 一样 :

They heard of him living a comfortable life ; told of my brother having succeeded ; listened to her singing ; thought of their boss

planning to fire them .

I think of him as representing modern writers . They spoke of the factory as (being) the best . They looked upon him as (being) their teacher ; referred to the book as teaching everything . Bad novels are sometimes referred to as poisoning the mind of young people .

1532 图解 :

46 . S+FV+N+PaP (John had it done .)

1533 约有 30 个宾补动词可用过去分词作补语 :

a . She had a red dress made , a picture taken , her teeth pulled out , me put in prison . He had his watch stolen . King Charles had his head cut off . I had no breath left , no rice left , my car repaired .

(She made a red dress . =She made it herself . She had a red dress made . =Someone made it for her . He had his watch stolen . =Someone stole it . 不是 He caused someone to steal it . have 表示状态。)

The house has its windows broken .

b . You must get your hair cut , the rules obeyed , your house cleaned . He got his watch dislocated . If you do so , you will get yourself disliked (=become unpopular) .

(You must get your hair cut . =You must cause somebody to cut your hair . get 表示动作。)

c . He could not make his voice heard . His power made him respected . He made his influence felt and recognized , the secret known , the proposal listened to , it understood that he was an honest man .

He will keep me well informed , the bitter lesson remembered , every child well fed , his mouth shut .

He left the matter undecided , it unsaid , his work half done , no means untried , no stone unturned .

d . I heard my name called . Have you ever heard Italian spoken ? I've never heard this song sung .

He felt himself lifted up , insulted , hypnotized .

I must (or will) see (=ensure) the work done , her revenged . I've never seen a man hanged . He saw the village burned .

He found the work already done , his country attacked by the enemy , the house deserted , his eyes dazzled by light , himself elected president .

He watched (or perceived , noticed) the situation changed , his country occupied by foreigners .

e . He imagined himself insulted ; fancied himself defeated ,

lost , buried .

He thought himself neglected (or honoured) by his friends .

I considered matters settled , myself discarded by men .

I want (or wish , desire) the package insured , everything finished by twelve ; like it done at once , such things discussed ; preferred grammar studied first .

I owned (or confessed , professed , acknowledged) myself beaten , myself mistaken .

f . He brought me acquainted with her .

He reported seven planes shot down , twenty persons killed .

He ordered them banished from the city .

I cannot bear this matter mentioned again .

1534 间或过去分词前有一个 being 表示动作正在 (被) 进行 :

I saw the village burned . (=The village was burned when I saw it .)

I saw the village being burned . (=The village was being burnt when I saw it .) (更形象)

He first discovered potatoes being used as food .

I found the work being done .

I heard the song being sung .

1535 如果宾语过长, 过去分词可以放在宾语前面 :

He left untouched all the things to be done immediately .

He heard played again the music he had played when young .

1536 图解 :

47 . S+FV+it+C+I or G or CI (John made it a rule to get up early or that everyone should obey him .)

1537 约有 40 个宾补动词可用不定式、动名词、that 从句或疑问词引起的从句作宾语, 但它们都由 it 代表, 而它们本身则移到补语后面。补语可以是形容词、名词、介词短语或分词 :

1538 a . 不定式作宾语 :

1) He acknowledged it difficult (or troublesome) (形容词作补语) to begin any business . He considered (or esteemed , held) it convenient to come at once . He imagined (or fancied) it easy to learn a language . He supposed it wrong to tell alie . They believed (or called) it silly to do so . I think it fit (or well) to wait here . They declared (or affirmed) it illegal to criticize the government .

2) He made it a rule (or a point , his entire business) (名词作补语) not to eat between meals . The situation rendered it a matter of difficulty to tell the truth . She judged it a useless attempt to advise him . They don't hold it a sin to steal . They pronounced it a crime to say anything against them . He accounted

it fun to go to sea . He thought it no harm to smoke .

3) He took (or had) it upon himself (介词短语作补语) to settle the problem . He took it into his head to invent a translating machine . He had it in his mind (or his head , his thought) to talk with her seriously ; had it in mind (or in view , in contemplation) to advise her . He had it in charge to take care of an orphan . He has it in his power to do good or evil . He wished it in his power to do good . He considered it beyond his power to help me . He put it in his head to go to sea . He has left it to me to decide . He owed it (=was under an obligation) to his boss to tell the secret (or to work hard) . He couldn't find it in his heart (or mind , conscience) to abandon her .

4) He saw (it) fit (or good) to take a rest ; thought (it) fit (or right , well , proper) to wait and see (it 有时省略。) He made (it) plain that we would fight on for democracy .

5) He regarded it as of great importance for you to be humble ; looked upon it as useless for us to learn art .

1539 b . 动名词作宾语 :

1) He considered it useless (形容词作补语) discussing the matter with them . I found it tiresome doing the same thing every day .

2) He thought it a pity (名词作补语) having to let slip the chance . I don't call it living being a blind man . I think it dangerous your doing so .

1540 c . That 从句作宾语 :

1) I thought it likely (形容词作补语) that he would fail . He considered it important that everything should be finished by seven . He made (it) clear (or plain) that he could not help anybody . He took it amiss (or ill , unfriendly , unkindly) that I kept reticent .

2) He wished it to be understood (不定式作补语) that she is not his wife .

3) He had heard it said (过去分词作补语) that somebody would murder him . He won't have it concluded that his son is a fool .

4) The trial put it beyond a doubt (介词短语作补语) that he was the murderer . He cast (or flung , threw) it in my teeth that I was a toady . He took it to heart that I called him a fool . I owe it to him that I am still alive . I have it on good authority (or by all accounts) that she will marry John . They took it for granted that a girl must marry before twenty .

5) He laid it down (地点副词作补语) that we should be more frugal . He set it about that she was to marry him .

6) He gave it as his opinion (补语前加 as) that all men are alike . You may take it as a rule that I am ready to help any friend .

1541 d . 疑问句引起的从句作宾语 :

1) He declared it mysterious (形容词作补语) why she should be

killed .

2) He found it astonishing (现在分词作补语) how they could accomplish it .

3) I heard it debated (过去分词作补语) whether country life is good . They left it undecided who was to be the chief . He wanted it answered how the picture was drawn . (Cf . S+FV+N+PaP)

1542 试比较下面句子 :

不定式、动名词、that 从句或疑问词引起的从句作主语时 , 也常用 it 代表它们 , 本身则移到句子后面 (参阅 1318-20) :

It is very easy to talk nonsense .

It seems necessary that we should know many people .

1543 图解 :

[=]这个符号表示里面的字句 to begin any business 与符号前的 it 是指同一东西 , 也可说是它的同位语。

．各种谓语类型的被动结构

1544 在讨论完各种类型的谓语后，研究语态的变化是良好时机，因为这种变化在 47 种句型中表现得最为清楚。

在五种动词中，不及物动词和系动词不能由主动语态变为被动语态。因此谓语类型 1—3 及 24—36 均不能变为被动结构。下面例句前的数码指第 18 单元中谓语类型的编号。“×”这个符号表示前面的句子不能变为被动结构。“—”这个符号表示前面句子可以变为被动结构，例句放在这个符号的后面。

A．不及物动词

1545

1. Mary walked slowly . ×
- I dreamt last night . ×
- It weighs five pounds . ×
2. The prisoners broke away . ×
3. This story reads well . ×

B．系动词

1546

24. He looks happy . ×
25. He became a doctor . ×
26. The storm is over . ×
27. It was below notice . ×
28. My aim is to help you . ×
29. Seeing is believing . ×
30. The problem is that the peasants are very poor . ×
31. The question is , who can do it . × My question is how to do it . ×
32. He is familiar with the street . ×
33. He is in dread of death . ×
34. He is anxious to study . ×
35. I feel sure that he will fail . ×
36. He seems ignorant why he failed . ×

1547 及物动词及宾补动词，除了少数例外情况，都可变为被动语态，双宾动词还可变成两个或更多的被动结构。一般来说，跟有宾语的动词都可由主动语态变为被动语态，但在一些特定组合中却不能变。

C．及物动词

1548 4. They speak English . —English is spoken .

We must observe the rules . —The rules must be observed .

· 但在及物动词和其宾语构成一个不可分的整体时不能变为被动语态。

He lost heart . × We gained ground . × The criminal took flight . ×

· 在宾语前有一物主代词和主语表示同一人或物时也不能变为被动结构：

They clapped their hands . × She did her work . ×

John made his escape . × The tree lost its life . ×

· 在及物动词表示一种状态而不是一个动作时也不能变：

He has (or owns , possesses) a big house . × We lack (or want) good teachers . × A sentence must contain a verb . × She makes a good nurse . × Seven days constitute a week . × Words failed him . × This job suits me . × The food will last us two days . × It costs me a hundred pounds . × Two meals a day will suffice me . ×

· 当一个不及物动词加前缀 be- 成为及物动词时，也不能变为被动结构：

It doesn't become (or behove , befit , beseem) a gentleman to curse . × An accident befell him . × His dress be- speaks his character . × She bemoans (or beweeeps , be-wails) the loss of her son . ×

· 当一个不及物动词加前缀 out- 成为及物动词时，也不能变：

John outlived his wife . × John outstayed the other guest . × His expenditure outruns his income . ×

· 有些动词，通常为不及物动词，但有时用作及物动词，这时也不能变：

He flew (or fled , roamed , ranged , roved) the country . × They walked the plank (or the streets , the hospitals , the boards) . × They stood an assault (or their ground , ill treatment) . × He sat a horse well . × They talked business (or shop) . × They went a journey . × I shall stay dinner . × He waited supper . × She wept hot tears (or blood) . × She shed (or cried) hot tears . × His eyes flashed fire and shone sparks . × He sweated blood . × It rained dust . ×

· 用自身代词作宾语时不能变为被动结构：

5 . He killed himself . × She has never praised herself in all her life . ×

· 带同源宾语的句子有时可以变为被动结构：

6 . They are living a very hard life . —A very hard life is being lived .

They fought a fierce war (or battle) . —A fierce war (or battle) was fought .

They sang some fine songs . —Some fine songs were sung .

· 带有下面这类宾语的句子不能变为被动结构：

He smiled a welcome . × He nodded assent . × He breathed his

last . × He tried his best . × We fought it out to the end . × We have to foot it . ×

7 . They gave up the plan . —The plan was given up .

The plague swept off many people . —Many people were swept off by the plague .

· 以动名词作宾语时却不能这样变 :

He put off going to the doctor . × John gave up per - forming the plan . ×

8 . She laughed at every boy that fell in love with her . — Every boy that fell in love with her was laughed at .

We all agreed to his view . —His view was agreed to .

Some one trod on his toes . —His toes were trodden on .

Nobody had slept in the bed . —The bed has never been slept in .

People can climb over this wall . —This wall can be climbed over .

· 当动词表示状态而不表示动作时不能变为被动结构 :

The river abounds in fish . × The house abounds with rats . × The bridge abuts on the road . × This does not accord with the rules . × This fault admits of no excuse . × This piece of land belongs to John . ×

· 介词后跟有动名词时不能这样变 :

I abstained from drinking liquor . × His reply amounts to refusing your request . ×

· 但 “ 不及物动词+介词+名词 ” 为一不可分开的整体时也不能这样变 :

She burst into tears . × My son came of age . × We went to law . ×

· “ 不及物动词+副词+介词 ” 构成的成语有些可以变为被动结构 :

9 . He ran away with a million dollars . —A million dollars was run away with .

They looked back on the old days . —The old days were looked back on .

· 但宾语为动名词时不能这样变 :

I look forward to meeting you again . ×

10 . The school furnished John with books . —John is furnished with books .

We translated this poem into another language . —This poem is translated into another language .

They made fun of our children . —Our children were made fun of .

They took compassion on the old woman . —The old woman was taken compassion on .

· 其他可以变为被动结构的这类动词成语有 :

find fault with , give effect to , set fire to , pay heed to ,

bear testimony to , give chase to , take pity on , make fun [or game , sport] of , take heed of , catch [or get , lay , seize , take] hold of , lose sight of , make a fool [or a show , a victim , an example , an end] of , make much [or little , slight , nothing] of .

They attach (some , little , no , much , small) importance to education . — (Some , Little , etc .) importance is attached to education .

They raised objection against the measure . —Objection was raised against the measure .

· 其他能这样用的成语还有 :

lay siege to , give an order to , take possession of , make mention of , lay stress on , set value on , leave word of , send word of , make allowance for , make allusion to , take offence at .

They pay attention to education . —Education is paid attention to . or , Attention is paid to education . (在主语 attention 前有 much , no , little 或其他形容词修饰时 , 用后一种被动结构就比前一种更好一些。)

They have never taken notice of this matter . —This matter has never been taken notice of . or , Notice has never been taken of this matter , (当主语前若有 much , no 或另一形容词修饰时 , 用后一种被动结构可能更好。)

· 其他可用两种方式构成被动结构的成语有 :

make short work of , take advantage of , take care of , take exception to , have recourse to , set store by .)

· 但下面成语不宜用于被动结构 :

He shook hands with us . × He rubbed shoulders with workers . ×
He took refuge in another country . ×

· 其他很少用于被动结构的成语有 :

give ear to , bear witness to , pay court to , keep company with , join hands with , take example by , set eyes on , set foot on , take leave of , give [or pledge] faith to , break [or violate] faith to .

11 . He reconciled himself to his fate . —He was reconciled to his fate .

He engaged himself in business . —He was engaged in business .

He allied himself to a rich family . —He was allied to a rich family .

He devoted himself to music . —He was devoted to music .

· 但下面成语不能这样变 :

I availed myself of his offer . × He helped himself to the cake . × He applied himself to literature . × He prided himself on his new car . × He valued himself on his birth . ×

12 . They planned to go . —It was planned to go .

Someone offered to buy my house . —It was offered to buy my house .

They decide to reconstruct the park . —It is decided to reconstruct the park .

They meant to reconstruct the park . —The park was meant to be reconstructed . (两个被动式放在一起不算错误 , 但不是很好。)

13 .You can't avoid making mistakes . × You must stop crying . ×
I dislike accompanying any woman . ×

14 . 与第 12、13 句型相同。

15 . They believe that the rumour is true . —It is believed that the rumour is true . 或 The rumour is believed to be true .

People said (or reported) that many had died . —It was said (or reported) that many had died . 或 Many were said (or reported) to have died .

16 . I cannot understand how , they can get married so easily . —It cannot be understood how they can get married so easily .

One wonders when war will vanish from the earth . —It is wondered when war will vanish from the earth .

We cannot tell what to do . —It cannot be told what to do .

17 .We must decide upon who is to do the job . —It must be decided upon who is to do the job .

They have agreed (about) when to start the offensive . —It has been agreed (about) when to start the offensive .

18 . They gave an account of how they had fought . —An account was given of how they had fought .

We should take notice of what to buy . —Notice should be taken of what to buy .

但下面这类句子不能变 :

He set his mind on how he could maintain his large family . ×

He has no interest in which country defeats which . ×

图解 :

D . 双宾动词

1549 19 .They teach me Japanese . —Japanese is taught (to) me . 或 I am taught (= learn) Japanese (保留宾语) 。

They gave John everything . —Everything was given (to) John . 或 John was given (= received) everything .

· 其他可把直接或间接宾语变为主语的动词有 :

advance , afford , bequeath , carry , concede , deliver , do , ensure , hand , make , mete out , pass , pledge , point out , prescribe , put , read , reimburse , remit , return , sell , sing , take , telegraph , tender , throw , wire , write , yield .

This incident causes us much trouble . × He nodded me a welcome . × (其他很少用于被动结构的双宾动词有 : grudge , smile ,

stand .)

20 .She cooked me eggs .—Eggs were cooked for me .或 I was cooked eggs .

He called me a taxi .—A taxi was called for me .或 I was called a taxi .

第 20 句型中的动词可用于被动结构，既可以直接宾语作主语，也可用间接宾语作主语。

21 . He promised me a new coat . —A new coat was promised me . 或 I was promised a new coat .

They set us a good example . —A good example is set us . 或 We are set a good example .

They served me a trick . —A trick was served (on) me . 或 I was served a trick .

· 可把直接或间接宾语变为主语의其它双宾动词有：

charge , forgive , forbid , guarantee , prophesy , vouchsafe .

She cast him a glance . —A glance was cast (at) him .

(但不可说 He was cast a glance .)

It means me no harm—No harm is meant me .

He quoted me a proverb . —A proverb was quoted me .

· 可用直接宾语作主语把句子变为被动结构的其它动词有：

bestow , bet , impose , enclose , intend , make , set , shoot , strike , wager .

They banished me the realm . —I was banished (from) the realm , (但不可说 The realm was banished me .)

He called me names . —I was called names .

· 可用间接宾语作主语把句子变为被动结构的其它动词有：

dismiss , excuse , fine , lead .

They answered me nothing . × They envy him his wealth . ×

· 很少用于被动结构的其它动词有：

avail , bear , bode , catch , cost , deign , drop , flash , fling , forbid , hit , kiss , last , occasion , lose , portent , sweep , take , tip , vote , work .

22 . He told John what I did . —John was told (=learned) what I did .

They asked me where I bought it . —I was asked where I bought it .

He reminded me what to do . —I was reminded what to do .

23 . He convinced me that I was wrong . —I was convinced that I was wrong .

They told her that her sister had come . —She was told that her sister had come .

图解：

双宾动词在变为被动语态时成为不及物或及物动词。

E . 宾补动词

1550 37 . They found the book easy . —The book was found easy .

They drove him mad . —He was driven mad .

They certified it as correct . —It was certified as correct .

但下面句子不可改为被动结构 :

He shouted himself hoarse . ×

38 . He laughed the idea away . —The idea was laughed away .

We declared the war over . —The war was declared over .

39 . They called him John . —He was called John .

They left me an orphan . —I was left an orphan .

David chose her as a wife . —She was chosen as a wife .

但下面句子不能改为被动结构 :

Alex acknowledges himself my inferior . ×

40 . He put everything out of order . —Everything was put out of order .

They set him on me right way . —He was set on the right way .

但下面句子不可改为被动结构 :

Andy cried himself to sleep . ×

41 . They supposed him to be teaching English , to have taught English . —He was supposed to be teaching English , to have taught English .

They deny the rumour to be silly . —The rumour is denied to be silly .

He is said to be ill . (这个句子不能反改为主动结构)

42 . He wants everyone to observe the rules . —Everyone is wanted to observe the rules .

He intends his son to study abroad . —His son is intended to study abroad .

He ordered us to spend (及物性不定式) our money more wisely . —We were ordered to spend our money more wisely . 或 He ordered our money to be spent more wisely .

He caused his students to hand in their exercises . —His students were caused to hand in their exercises . 或 He caused their exercises to be handed in .

He allowed them to arrest him . —They were allowed to arrest him . 或 He allowed himself to be arrested .

43 . He called upon them to act . —They were called upon to act .

He prevailed upon me to get married . —I was prevailed upon to get married .

We applied to them to offer (及物性不定式) us a job .

—We applied for a job to be offered .

I waited for him to remit some , money . —I waited for some money to be remitted .

但下面句子不宜变为被动结构：

I cried to her to stop . —She was cried to to stop (应避免) .

44 . I make him study (没有 to) hard . —He is made to study (有 to) hard .

They help me carry it . —I am helped to carry it .

They let me do anything . —I was let do anything (不错 , 但少用)

45 . They kept me waiting . —I was kept waiting .

They heard John singing Korean songs . —John was heard singing Korean songs .

46 . They have a picture taken . × You must get your hair cut . ×
They will keep me well informed . ×

47 . They make it a rule to eat one meal a day . —It is made a rule to eat one meal a day .

They think it fit to wait here . —It is thought fit to wait here .

I thought it likely that he would fail . —It was thought likely that he would fail .

图解：

宾补动词变为被动语态时成为系动词。

· 分句与从句中的谓语类型

1551 47 种谓语类型不仅出现在简单句中，也可出现在分句中，还可出现在从句（名词从句、定语从句及状语从句）中。举少数例子即可说明问题。

名词从句：

I know that he came (IV) .

· · · · knows it (TV + N)

· · · · dreams of flying to the moon (TV . P + G) .

· · · · looks for a job (TV . P + N) .

· · · · is fond of garlic (LV . A . P + N) .

· · · · makes friends with homos (TV . N . P + N) .

· · · · devotes himself to music (TV . R . P + N) .

· · · · is a good-for-nothing (LV + N) .

· · · · holds me dear (FV + N + A) .

定语从句：

He is the man who came (IV) .

· · · · knows it (TV + N) .

· · · · dreams of flying to the moon (IV . P + G) .

· · · · looks for a job (IV . P + N) .

状语从句：

The party was over when he came (IV) .

He cannot use this method although he knows it (TV + N) .

He gets tired of the earth , so that he dreams of flying to the moon (IV . P + G) .

．非谓语动词的谓语类型

1552 和谓语动词一样，非谓语动词（动名词、分词或不定式）可以和各类宾语及补语结合构成 47 种类型。举少数例子即可说明问题。

A．动名词的谓语类型

He likes talking (IV)

- ．．．playing cards (TV+N) ．
- ．．．praising himself (TV+R)
- ．．．teaching people how to behave (DV+N+W-I) ．
- ．．．being in fluential (LV+A) ．
- ．．．being a high official (LV+N) ．
- ．．．seeing people suffering (FV+N+PrP) ．
- ．．．causing his wife to cry (FV+N+I) ．

B．分词的谓语类型

I saw him coming (IV) ．

- ．．．looking on (IV . AP) ．
- ．．．listening to the radio (IV . P+N) ．
- ．．．paying attention to his business (TV . N . P+N) ．
- ．．．handing her a letter (DV+N+N) ．
- ．．．leaving his children smoking (FV+N+PrP) ．

C．不定式的谓语类型

I advised her to try to come (TV+I) ．

- ．．．．to avoid seeing him (TV+G) ．
- ．．．．to be careful (LV+A) ．
- ．．．．to be a nurse (LV+N) ．
- ．．．．to be on her guard (LV+P . N) ．
- ．．．．to look upon this mistake as nothing (IV . P+N+ N) ．

1553 这 47 种类型的非谓语动词都可用作谓语动词的主语、宾语、补语或修饰语：

作主语：

Reading papers (TV+N) is interesting .

Attending to patients (IV . P+N)

To take care of children (TV . N . P . +N)

To teach children manners (DV+N+N)

作宾语：I like reading papers .

- ．．attending to patients .
- ．．to take care of children .

作主语的或宾语的补语：

My greatest joy is to take care of children.

I like him to teach children manners .

The woman reading papers is my sister .

■ ■ ■ ■

■ ■ ■ ■

■ ■ ■ ■

■ ■ ■ ■

■ ■ ■ ■

第十九单元 定语

．限制性定语的 18 种类型

A．用在名词前的限制性定语

引 言

1554 我们已经在第 18 单元研究了一个句子不能缺少的四大成分：主语、动词、宾语、补语。在本单元和 20 单元，我们打算研究一个句子可以缺少的二大成分：定语和状语。在语法上，它们只起修饰作用，可以省略，但在文义上，却很重要，能使句子更为充实。

虽然下面所讨论的问题在词法部分已经讨论过，但这里将从不同角度更详细地加以讨论。例如我们已经谈过形容词、名词、介词短语、现在分词、过去分词等等，这些不同名称似乎表示不同东西，但都可用于修饰名词，因而可起同一作用，可以看作是同样东西，可以通称为定语 (Adjectival Modifiers)。我们还讨论过副词、介词短语、不定式、状语从句，它们也各指不同东西，但都可以修饰动词，因此可看作一类东西，通称为状语 (Adverbial Modifiers)。此外，在第 17 单元中我们谈到的名词、名词短语、动名词、名词从句等都可可在句中作主语。

如果从这个角度来考虑，句子结构就会显得简单得多，而所谓语法就不是很复杂的东西。

1555 为此，在下面各章中，我们将把所有不同形式或类型的定语和状语都集中讨论，使读者对它们的相同点有所认识。此外，对某些修饰语的特殊用法，将提供大量例句。

1556 和形容词一样，定语（任何修饰名词的单词、短语或从句）可以是限制性的 (Restrictive)、补语性的 (Complementary) 或解释性的 (Explanatory)。也和形容词一样，有些形式或类型的限制性定语可用在所修饰名词前面，有些用在它的后面。用在名词前的形式共有 10 种，它们是限定词 (Determinatives)、描绘形容词 (Qualitative Adjectives)、名词、物主代词或名词所有格、不定式、动名词、分词、地点及时间副词、各类短语、以及从句。

1．限定词

1557 限定词必须根据“单数或复数”和“可数或不可数”的情况修饰它后面的名词。

An (or Every, Each, Another, This, That, Such a, A certain) egg (单数可数名词) is rotten.

Both (or Several, Three, Few, A few, Those, These, Many, A large number of) eggs (复数可数名词) are rotten.

Little (or A little, Much, A great deal of, A large quantity of, This, That) milk (不可数名词) was spoiled.

Some (or No, An abundance of, A lot of, Plenty of, Enough, All, My, John's, The, Any, Such) eggs (复数可数名词) have been sold. Some (or No, An abundance of, etc.) milk (不可数名词) has been sold.

If you have much money , you have many friends ; if you have a little money , you have a few friends ; if you have very little money , you have very few friends ; and if you have no money , you have no friends .

图解：

2 . 描绘形容词

1558 He is a good boy . She has a clear voice .

I like her gentle , graceful manner . We went into a dirty , dark , lonely temple . (一系列描绘形容词)

It is a long , long story . He has a great , great power . (重复一个形容词来加强语气)

It was a rainy and windy night . He sang a strange , funny and silly song . (由 and 连接的两三个形容词有同样的重要性)

It was a rainy but pleasant season . He sang a melodious but sorrowful song . (but 后面的形容词比它前面的形容词重要)

It was a pleasant though rainy season . He sang a sorrowful though melodious song . (though 后面的形容词较不重要。因此这两句的意思和上面两句一样)

It is a comfortable “ fast train ” . (Comfortable 修饰 fast train , 后两词为一整体)

He is a sickly “ old man ” . We shall have a happy “ new year ” . Nobody cares about this commonplace “ open secret ” .

I am amazed at the sheer nonsense (or absolute lie , total madness , outright arrogance) of this perfect fool (or complete idiot) . (像 sheer , absolute 这类强化形容词 , 用在名词前能对它加以强调 , 但不宜用在 be , seem 这类系动词后 , 如 : “ His madness is total . ” 就不对了。)

更多例子 : a real scholar , a great supporter , a close comrade , a big fool , an old friend , a plain lie , an extreme folly , a clear failure , pure nonsense , an out-and-out conservative , utter confusion .

This is a nice and (=wonderfully) cool place (or a fine and fast car) . She is a rare and pretty girl .

1559 Those (or The , His) three expensive round Swiss gold watches are lost . John's black curled walking-stick is kept in a sleeping-room of his . 不同类型的形容词放在一起时各有不同位置。大体顺序是：指示词 (或物主代词) + 数词 + 描绘形容词 + 表示颜色或形状的形容词 + 分词 + 由专有名词变成的形容词 + 名词 + 作定语的动名词 + 名词。指示词如和物主代词或名词所有格连用，其顺序是：指示词 + 名词 + of + 物主代词或名词所有格。不过，有些人不完全赞成上述顺序。

The last three acts (or The other two sides) are longer .

The first (or next) two chapters are interesting . (这样用

比 the three last , the two other 等要好)

Both(or All , Half)the(or those , these)visitors are my good friends .

I paid double (or half , quarter) that price for it .

He drank half a (or a half) bottle of water after he walked half a (or a half) mile .

What a fool you are ! You are such a fool ! I saw many a fool .

(A , the , this , that 通常用在修饰同一名词的其他形容词前面 , 但放在 both , all , half 等词之后。)

1560 He is a probable winner (=man who will probably win , 而不是 winner who is probable) , a quick thinker , a frequent offender , a heavy loser , a good swimmer , a bad speaker , a long , resident , a big eater , a hard worker . (这些形容词起副词的作用 , 修饰隐藏在名词里的动词。)

He is a criminal lawyer (=lawyer expert in criminal law , 不是 lawyer who is criminal) , a natural philosopher (不是 philosopher who is natural) , a practical joker , a tragical dramatist , a yellow journalist , a historical novelist .

White slavery (=business of white slaves) is forbidden .

Old bachelorship (= state of old bachelors) was respected here .

He is a public schoolboy (= boy of a public school , 不是 public boy) , an old bookseller (=seller of old books , 不是 old seller) , a historical novelist . It is a dirty clothesbasket .

He works with the Foreign Office (=Office of Foreign Affairs , 而不是 office which is foreign) . He is in the sick-room (=room of sick men) . The dead list (=list of dead men) has been published . He is fed up with his married life . He is on sick leave . His dying wish is unknown . He is a mad-doctor . They are playing a dead march . They learned the deaf and dumb alphabet .

1561 They sold almost everything : leather gloves , silk hats , air guns , glass eyes , brass buttons , , gold rings , silver coins , stone jars , salt butter , ice cream , wooden chairs , woolen socks , earthen ware , oak (en) chests , lead (en) roofs , hemp (en) ropes , flax (en) thread , oat (en) bread . (表示物质的名词或形容词)

It is a golden age (or a golden opportunity) . He made me an airy promise , gave me an icy welcome . He made an oily speech . He gave me a glassy look and a wooden smile . He has an iron will but a stony heart . She has a leaden heart though she has a silvery voice . I love her silky manners . I can't stand his brazen impudence . (用于引伸意义的表示物质的形容词)

1562 He did it in the early morning (=the early part of the morning) , in the late summer , in the mid-nineteenth century . He has lived in West (ern) Germany) (= the western part of Germany) ,

Central India , North(ern) Korea , Upper Austria ,the Lower Danube , East(ern)Africa . (这些表示部分的形容词多用在时间或地点名称前)

图解

┐这个符号表示 and 是一个并列连词。(但┘是表示从属连词的符号)

3 . 名词

1563 名词可以用作定语, 可以 3 种方式加在另一名词前。这两个名词可以写成一个词, 如: fireplace , sunlight , armchair . 两者中间也可加一个连字号, 如: hour - hand , volley - ball , blood- letting . 也可分写成两个词, 如: arithmetic class , wedding march , birthday party 此外还有 airline airfield airplane air - gun air - hostess , air - spray ; air letter , air raid , air cover . 有些这类合成词可以 2 种方式写, 如:

classmate , class-mate ; daytime , day + time ; gunfire , gun-fire ; gunboat , gun - boat ; 或 wet - nurse , wet nurse ; fire- station , fire station ; post-office , post office .

有少数这样的合成词可以 3 种方式写, 如:

headmaster , head-master , head master .

1564 没有严格的规律可以遵循, 不过下面几点可供参考:

如果这种合成词包含 2 个音节, 它们大多都连着写:

classmate	handbag	penknife	gunboat
lawsuit	headache	rainbow	armchair
firefly	inkstand	fireplace	goldsmith

但如果第一个音节需加以强调, 或与同类其他东西加以区别, 这类合成名词需要分开写。例如: Stone Age 表示它不是 Iron age 或其他 Age ; air mail 不同于 sea mail ; sun bath 不是 sea bath 或任何其他 bath ; night school 不同于 day school . 又如 ice cream , marsh gas , law court , club fee , air raid , moon cake or germ charge 也都表示是某样东西中的特殊的一类。

1565 如果这些合成词包含 3 个或更多音节, 它们大多都分开写:

water pressure	fire station	chimney sweep
birthday party	trade mission	paper mill
water problem	air transport	barber shop
railway regulations		peace conference
	morning hours	
woman receptionist	war council	fountain pen

不过有些可以连写, 表示它们是一种独立的东西, 并不与其他东西对比。例如: horsepower 并不表示它是一种 power, 和其他 power 加以区别。

下面的合成词都各自表示自成一类的东西:

watermelon	sandpaper	sidesaddle
newspaper	schoolfellow	battlefield

waterfall	silverfish	dragonfly
masterpiece	fatherland	lumberman

1566 可以认为这种合成词只有两种基本写法。这两种写法很少可以互换。例如：rainbow 不能写作 rain bow，armchair 不能写成 arm chair，firefly 不能写成 fire fly。另一方面 Iron Age 不能写成 Ironage，night school 不能写成 nightschool，law court 不能写成 lawcourt。包含两个音节的合成词情况都如此。同样的，包含三个或更多音节的词更是如此，birthday party 不能写成 birthdayparty，paper mill 不能写成 papermill，fire station 不能写成 firestation。另外一方面 watermelon，newspaper，battlefield，waterfall，fatherland 都不能分开写。总之，一个词的形式和两个词的形式之间很少互换。

不过这两种合成词中常可加一个连字号（虽然不是经常如此）。结果这种合成词常有两种写法，即不加连字号，和加连字号。在下面合成名词中连字号都可以不加进去。

1. class - mate (or classmate)	hand - bag	pen - knife
fire - fly	ink - stand	arm - chair
gun - boat	law - suit	
2. chamber - maid (or chamber maid)	master-key	
motor-cycle	shop - window	story-book
slaughter-house	shuttle - cock	weather - glass
waste-basket	whore-master	silver - fish
thunder-clap	station - master	summer-school

1567 至于这种合成词的意义，第一个名词多表示第二个名词所表示的东西的地点、时间、目的等（在括号内指出）。

skylark, homework, schoolfellow, city life (地点)
night - club, morning star, Christmas gift (时间)
gunpowder (=powder for gun), bird - cage, saltspoon ; mousetrap, kitchen things, tea things (目的)
insect bite, footmark, gunfire (来源)
gingerbread, mushroom soup, ball - pen, oil - lamp (整体中一部分)
mountain - top, finger - end, horseback, kitchen - door (包含一部分的整体)
gold ring, paper tiger, silver cup, stone wall (材料)
firefly, butterfly - table, pot - belly, iron - heart (相似)
man - servant, billy - goat, cow - elephant (性别)
pullman cars, Oxford University, the Diamond Restaurant (专有名词)
story - book, fairy tale, newspaper (内容)
birthday party, harvest festival, peace conference, war victim, hunger march. (原因, 理由)
water - power, hunger - strike, power politics, object lesson (手段)

1568 一个形容词可以下列方式和一个作定语的名词并列于另一名词前

面：

these political and business affairs ; his personal or party problems ; either Medieval or the last century literature ([形容词+连词+名词]+名词)

money and other problems ; art or scientific activities ([名词+连词+形容词]+名词)

that cold “ skeleton hand ” ; the dirty dark “ stone temple ” . (形容词+作为整体的[名词+名词])

the town “ young men ” ; my silk “ high hat ” ; a morning “ conservative paper ” . (名词+作为整体的[形容词+名词])

more everyday manner ; merely business grounds ; purely government work ; partly family viewpoint ([副词+作定语的名词]+名词)

1569 当名词用作定语时，通常都用单数形式，即使 1) 它有复数意义，2) 前面有数词及连字号，3) 后面有复数的主体词或 4) 若用作单独名词应为复数。如果它 5) 是不可数名词，或 6) 表示一个东西，自然只用单数形式：

1) tooth - brush , orange tree , book - binder , head - hunting

2) three - act play , thirty - page report , four - week course , five - mile trip , one-dollar book

3) finger - tips , country - houses , fairy - tales

4) checker board , billiard table , oat cake , green grocer , bowel complaint , slum clearance , gymnastic master

5) coal mine , ash tray , oil well , music lover , fishing ground , reference book

6) eyelash , table legs , picture frame , mountaintop , panhandle .

1570 在下面情况下，用作定语的名词可用复数形式：1) 是复数专有名词，2) 通常都为复数形式，不加-s 可能造成误解，3) 在没跟有连字号的数词之后，4) 在法律术语中，5) 像 gentlemen 这样的特殊词或 6) 跟随现在惯用复数的趋势：

1) the United States Navy , Niagara Falls Power Company

2) goods train , seconds - hand (但 : minute - hand) , savings bank , clothes - brush , newsboy , comics reader , salts bottle

3) twenty pence books , a million dollars project , five thousand tons boat , six pounds sugar , five miles trip

4) Samples Depot , Hotels Association , Excess Profits Tax , Highways Bureau , House Rules Committee , Companies Act

5) gentlemen - farmers , women - teachers , Lords - Justices

6) brains trust , works manager , public relations officer , reservations desk , stores check , sales department , glasses frame , sports jacket

图解：

4 . 名词所有格与物主代词

1571 We work for the country's good . A thirty miles' march is nothing to our troops . We shall have a three days' holiday .

All night we heard the wind's sighing . His job is to clean the house .

图解：

5 . 不定式

1572 作为定语，不定式很少放在它所修饰的名词之前。如果这样用，不定式必须与其他词构成合成词，不定式与有关词之间需加连字号：

his hard-to-be-governed passion , a soon - to - be - published plan , a never - to - be - executed project , the much - to - be - longed for peace , the ever - to-be-remembered occasion , the easy-to-see sign

图解：

6 . 动名词

1573 He is sitting in the smoking room (=room FOR smoking , 而不是 room that smokes) . He is a dancing master . You must use better printing ink .

更多例子：

a walking stick , the boiling point , blotting paper , a laughing stock , a dining room , a swimming race , painting things

图解：

7 . 分词

a . 现在分词：

1574 It is an interesting (描绘) book . The flag of Japan shows the rising (经常发生的动作) sun . Did you see the burning (在谓语动词所表示时间里正在进行的动作) house ?

a sleeping (不及物动词的现在分词) child (=child that is sleeping) , the flying fish (=fish that fly) , the smiling women , the coming months , the following chapter , the retreating army , a beginning student

a charming (及物动词的现在分词) girl (=girl who charms others) an amazing number , a puzzling question , scorching heat .

a flesh - eating (名词+及物动词的现在分词) animal (=animal that eats flesh) , heart - breaking stories , a self - sacrificing act , the record-breaking work

ill - smelling (形容词+系动词的现在分词) things (=things that

smell ill) , a dirty-looking man , a high - sounding speech , a nice - looking girl

the fast - retreating (副词+不及物动词的现在分词) enemy (=enemy that is retreating fast) , a well-meaning man , frequently - occurring accidents , the on - coming tide

图解 :

b . 过去分词 :

1575 You should not eat rotten apples (=apples that have been rotten) . It is not hard to learn spoken English .

a drowned(及物动词的过去分词) boy , my beloved son , a deserted village , a ruined palace , broken health , printed matter , the used car , a lighted candle

well - dressed (副词+及物动词的过去分词) men (=men who are dressed well) , ill-written books , a long - remembered story , a much - needed plan ; his stretched - out arms , speeded - up education ; a long - drawn - out war , not - yet - ended horror

the unlooked-for(不及物动词的过去分词+介词) revolt (=revolt that is unlooked for) , unthought-of accidents , unpaid - for merchandise , an undreamed-of achievement , an uncalled - for war , the longed - for novel , this yet - un - heard-of incident , the most - talked - about book

the blood-stained (名词+及物动词的过去分词) hands (=hands that are stained by blood) , the famine - stricken area , the love - stricken girl , hand - made paper

faded (不及物动词的过去分词) flowers (=flowers that have faded) , swollen legs , the vanished jewels , the exploded bomb , a retired officer , a drunken fellow , a learned scholar , his deceased partner , a professed Buddhist , a perjured man ; newly-arrived (副词+不及物动词的过去分词) guests , a well-read man , out - spoken people , grown - up children , a well - behaved child

图解 :

8 . 地点或时间副词

1576 地点及时间副词可用作定语 , 但放在名词前的时候不很多 : the above statement , the downward movement , the abyss - ward drift , this here boy , that there girl , a far country , an inside story , an upstairs teahouse , the outdoor game , their near relative , the in - patient , the out - patient , the up train , the down stroke ; his now mistress , the once Mrs . Jackson , his late wife , his then opinion , the after events , my off time , the off season .

图解 :

9 . 各种短语

1577 定语短语有许多形式：

a kind of (限定词 + kind 或类似词 + of) car , that sort of man , those funny types of houses , other brands of pencils a cup of (表示数量或数目、以 of 结尾的短语) wine , five bowls of rice , ten years of service , fifty miles of distance , a good deal of rice , a band of thieves , three broods of chicks

that pig of a (= piglike) fellow , that idiot of a (= idiotic) woman , his ideal of a wife , my angel of a Jane , my hell of a life , this skeleton of a dog , a gem of a poem , a palace of a house

knee-deep (名词 + 形容词) water (= water as deep as the knee) , ice-cold hands ; a far-sighted (形容词 + 名词 ed) politician (= politician who can see far) , a one - sided opinion ; the iron-hearted (名词 + 名词 ed) hero (= hero who has a heart like iron) , a gold - laced skirt ; a dark - brown (形容词 + 形容词) umbrella (= umbrella dark and brown)

a wide - open (副词 + 形容词) gate , the all - important (= extremely powerful) money , ever-happy children

a far - too - rapid (副词 + 副词 + 形容词) decision , a not-too-hard problem

this by-no-means-easy (状语短语 + 形容词) job , the on-the-whole-fair solution

a good-for-nothing (形容词 + 介词 + 名词) (= useless) fellow , the honest-to-God truth , lighter-than - air craft , a warmer-than-average welcome , his next-to - nothing profit a mile - long (名词 + 形容词) street , a four-week - long vacation , a ten - year - old ship

the overseas (介词 + 名词) Indians , the underground rail - ways , an uphill walk , an upstairs room , his offhand easy manner ; this under - the - table agreement , the up - to - date hotel , an out-of-season snowfall , the on - the-spot reporter , their out-of-door activities

that end-of-the-century (名词 + 介词 + 名词) period , his man-in-the-street opinion , her woman-of-the-world way , a stick-in-the-mud fellow , an every-man-for-himself fight

a word-for-word (名词 + 介词 + 同一名词) translation , hand-to-hand conflicts , room-to-room telephones , this day-to-day life , a face-to-face talk , the eye-for-an-eye argument , the year-by-year progress , their step-by-step aggression

a stand-up (动词 + 地点副词) drink , a tumble-down house , a sit-down strike , the go-ahead nation , a hand-round sup-per , those stand-off people , knockdown arguments

stay-at-home (动词 + 介词 + 名词) people , a come-by-chance child , go-to-meeting clothes

push-button (动词 + 名词) warfare , take-leave visits , cut-rate tickets , a breakneck speed , my do-nothing days , her telltale face , a help-yourself fight ; his eat-less-bread advice , a let-it-alone attitude

a yes-or-no (名词 + or + 名词) answer , an all-or-nothing settlement , a liberty-or-death war ; kill-or-cure (动词 + or + 动词) medicine , a believe-it-or-not statement , his take-it-or-leave-it attitude .

a life-and-death (名词 + and + 名词) struggle , bread-and-water wages , a cat-and-dog life , the question-and-answer method of teaching ; hit-and-run accidents (动词 + and + 动词) , a wait-and-see policy , the live-and-let-live agreement , his eat-drink-and-be-merry philosophy

图解：

10 . 从句

1578 作定语的从句若要放在它所修饰的名词之前，必须加连字号或引号：

his I-told-you-so attitude ; this “ I am sure to fail ” idea ; a the-king-can-do-no-wrong politician ; the “ do what you can and take what you want ” theory ; the I-want-to-be-alone theory ; their “ money is everything ” philosophy

图解：

B . 用在名词后的限制性定语

1579 有 8 种不同类型的限制性定语需要放在它们所修饰的名词的后面。11 . 一串形容词，或有自己修饰语的形容词

1580 一串形容词或有自己修饰语的形容词需要放在它们所修饰的名词后面，因为它们比较长：

He had a remarkable character , cold , odd and proud (比 a cold , odd , and proud remarkable character 更自然) . This artist , haggard , poor but resolute , will not live on charity . Lily is a dog , intelligent and active , obedient and gentle . It is a road , dusty , wet , rugged but exciting . (形容词 + 形容词 + 形容词)

He is a kind man and a learned (a kind and learned man 较常见) . He keeps a black dog and a white . They are kind men and learned . He keeps some black dogs and white . They advocate free speech and fearless . (书面语)

He has a temper extremely dangerous (or an extremely dangerous temper) . It is a method wonderfully efficient . Nearby is a jungle terribly wild . (副词 + 形容词)

It is a problem the most difficult . In this small country there is a city the busiest I ever saw . I am sorry he did it in a way the least understandable . I believe pain ever the severest can be relieved . (the + 最高级形容词)

He is in a state similar (or a similar state) to mine . It is a condition unfavourable to the enterprise . He is not a man ashamed of his folly . That is an opinion contrary to mine . A man often forgetful of his promise will never succeed . He is interested in customs peculiar to Japanese . That is a place famous for its sausages . (形容词 + 介词短语)

也可以说 : It is an unfavourable condition to the enterprise . That is a contrary opinion to mine . 但不可以说 : He is not an ashamed man of his folly .

He is a writer eighty years old . There is in this province a road five hundred miles long . We swam in a river twenty feet deep . It is a mountain over 3000 feet high . (数词 + 名词 + 形容词)

He is a boy anxious to learn . He is a man ready to die for justice . A man afraid to make enemies is a man afraid to make friends . I like books easy to digest . It is a situation too grave to save . This is a book good enough to teach us morals . (形容词 + 不定式)

图解 :

注意并列连词 and 和 but 的图解方法。

12 . 特殊组合中的单个形容词

1581 单个形容词一般不能用在所修饰的名词后面 , 但在下面这类特殊组合中可以用在名词后面。

a . 用来表示强调、庄严口吻、或对比的形容词 :

May I help you , Lilian dear ? I love you , my lady sweet . Is a life deathless possible ? Our life on the island is joy eternal . They advocate love inviolate . I believe in God Ommipresent . Lord Paramount will give the final judgement . He is a devil incarnate . He is more interested in mistakes past than in improvement future . Money unspent is money useless .

b . 用在 things , matters 或 something 这类词后的形容词 : He neglects things temporal . I do not like matters (or affairs) political . There is something (or nothing , every-thing) interesting in the show .

c . 以 -able 或 -ible 结尾的形容词 (在名词前可能有最高级 , only ,

main 等词) :

It is the greatest novel imaginable . We use every means conceivable . That is the only(or main , chief , principal) vehicle available in this area .

That is the best method possible (or the best possible method) . In this desert this is the only herb edible . I think that is the last city defensible .

There are thieves uncountable(= that cannot be counted) . There is a gulf impassable . He has gone through torments inexpressible (= that cannot be expressed) .

(但 suitable , seasonable , reasonable 及类似的词不能用在所修饰名词的后面 , 因为它们没有 “ that can be suited ” , “ that can be seasoned ” 这类意思。)

d . 用来代替序数词的基数词 :

Chapter Four = the fourth chapter .

Book Five = the fifth book

Class Two = the second class

Number Five = the fifth

Room 152 ; page 636 ; Prisoner No . 1689 .

e . 用在 “ like , as 或 with + 名词 ” 后的形容词 :

He lay on the ground like (or as) a man dead . He laughed and cried like (or as) a man crazy . He greeted me with his arms open . He arrived home with his pockets empty . He confessed his guilt with his face pale .

f . 起补语作用的形容词 :

The only man alive (= that is alive) is John . There was nobody awake to discover the burglary . John alone can do nothing for anyone . There is a rumour afloat .

g . 用在专有名词后构成头衔的形容词 :

Alexander the Great . Henry the Eighth , Richard the Lionhearted , Charles the Bald , MacCarthy the older , John the Short .

h . 法律名词 (来自法语) 里的形容词 :

The Consul General , the Governor General , the Attorney General , the president elect , the bishop elect (or designate) , the Prince Regent (or royal) , the envoy extraordinary , a knight errant , the heir apparent (or presumptive) , the bride elect , the notary public , the poet laureate , the lords temporal (or spiritual) , the court martial ; the price current , the right divine , fee simple , his sign manual .

图解 :

13 . 地点或时间副词

1582 the house opposite , the statement below , people inside ,

the bridge there (or here) , Heaven above , a hotel hard by , a trip north , our life abroad , the distance across , 16 feet square , a day off (duty) , an evening off , the student off for school (or home from school) , rents downtown , the only house around for miles .

in January next (or last) , on Friday next (or last) , on the day following (or following day) , in time past , from (or since) time immemorial , in years gone by , many nights previous (=ago , before) , on a day certain (=fixed) , the trend now , the world today and tomorrow .

图解：

14 . 介词短语

1583 a . 介词 + 名词

· 名词 + [of + 名词] = 形容词 + 名词：

He is a man of honour (= honourable man) , a man of fortune (or character , fashion , sense , letters , parts , few words) . This is an act of cowardice (= cowardly act) , a mountain of great height (= very high mountain) , a matter of no importance (= unimportant matter) , a child without home (= homeless child) .

· 名词 + [介词 + 名词] = 名词 + 定语从句：

Do you see the man at the door (= who is at the door) ? Pass me the book on the desk (= which is on the desk) . I went to the shop opposite the post office . She is a girl with curly hair . It is a rumour without foundation .

· [名词 + 介词] + 名词 (参阅 1243)：

He is a specialist in chest diseases (He specializes in chest diseases) . Her anxiety about your safety is unnecessary (She is very anxious about your safety) . He expressed dissatisfaction with my work . He took delight in the study of dogs . There was an attempt on his life .

· 名词 + [介词 + 名词] (参阅 1243)：

Fruits in season are delicious and cheap . Ideas behind the times should be thrown away . The person in charge was out . We can't let go the victory within our grasp . Anyone in the wrong must say sorry .

· 有时介词可以省略：

He is a boy (of) your age . She wears shoes (of) the size of mine . I don't like a house such a colour . Have you ever seen a sea animal the shape of a horse ? He has a car a light green . She caught a fish greater weight than mine . He bought a bike the same price as mine .

1584 b . 介词 + 动名词

1) about + 动名词 :

He has no thought about getting married again after his wife died . He is under no easiness about making these mistakes . There should be no trouble about travelling in Europe and Asia . He gave them a lecture about smoking , drinking and gambling . He always remembers his dream about becoming rich . He has forgotten his promise about painting my portrait . It seems a proposal about building a bridge has been made .

2) at + 动名词 :

He expressed concern at hearing the news . You can easily imagine her disappointment at not having received Alexander's invitation . I could see his gladness at finding most of his lost money . Her pride (or satisfaction , pleasure , happiness) at meeting John again was inexpressible . His vexation (or despair , shyness , surprise , astonishment , sorrow , regret) at seeing this foolish thing can be imagined . (at 多用在表示情绪的抽象名词后面)

3) for + 动名词 :

The reason for doing it is obvious . His reputation for aiding the poor people is ever-increasing . There is no medicine for curing fools . He can find many pretexts (or excuses) for plying truant .

后面可跟有 “ for + 动名词 ” 的名词有 :

alarm , apology , capacity , compensation , craze , excuse , facility , forgiveness , gratitude , ground , instrument , method , motive , necessity , opportunity , pardon , passion , predilection , procedure , provision , reason , responsibility , scope , taste

4) in + 名词 :

He does not know my pleasure (or interest , experience , skill) in making bird-cages (or in playing mahjong) . He has a share (or no scruple , no hesitation) in doing this dirty business (or in violating so many women) . I cannot understand his obstinacy in avoiding doctors . He knows the difficulty in convincing those hardheaded people .

5) of + 动名词 :

The duty of looking after the house belongs to me . The honour of winning the war gives him courage . The purpose of educating children should always be kept in mind . The custom of worshipping ancestors is prevalent among these people . Do you know the method of making paper ? He has a habit of sleeping still noon . Is this a picture of your drawing (= drawn by you) ? It is a profession of my own choosing (= chosen by myself) .

后面可跟 “ of + 动名词 ” 的名词还有 :

chance , consequence , cost , danger , dream , hope , idea , importance , intention , knack , means , necessity , need , object , opportunity , plan , possibility , power , privilege , probability ,

process, question, responsibility, right, risk, way

在所有介词中, of (还有 for) 似乎是用在动名词前最多的介词。

不过有时可用不定式表示类似意思, 试比较下面句子:

The practice of eating horseflesh is very common. The practice of the northerners to eat horseflesh is very common. The method of convincing them was wonderful. The method of those preachers to convince them was wonderful

6) to + 动名词:

His objection to using nuclear bombs is praiseworthy.

He has pretension to knowing everything. His repugnance to speaking with women astonishes me. He has (a strong) aversion to speaking the truth.

后面可跟有“to + 动名词”的名词还有:

approach, disinclination, dislike, incentive, introduction, obstacle, opposition, prelude, resistance, similarity, stimulus, objection.

1585 c. 介词 + 不定式:

He is about to go. There was no other way out than die.

He has not anything to do except gamble.

(在所有介词中只有 about, than, except, but 后可用不定式, 而且多为不带 to 的不定式。)

1586 d. 介词 + 疑问词引起的不定式:

The knowledge of how to make it was a secret. I am in doubt (about or as to) whether to go or not. The problem of how to master English worried him. He has a good idea about how to win a woman's heart.

1587 e. 介词 + 疑问词引起的从句:

I am in doubt (about or as to) whether I should go. There was no news about (or as to, concerning) when he will return. Can you give me any information about (or as to, concerning) how we can win. I had no idea (of) why she cried. The problem (of) where we are to go is still being discussed. The question puzzled us whether we were to start on January 28. I can't understand his speech on how we can conquer ourselves. He has not interest in what you are doing. His account of how the war was fought is dramatic.

(在这类句子中介词常常省略)

图解:

15. 分词

1588 现在分词可起定语从句的作用:

The man driving (=who was driving) the lorry was drunk. The

woman holding (=who is holding) a baby in her arms is my aunt . Do you see the gentleman standing there ?

(相当于进行时态所表示的正在进行的动作)

Anyone driving (=who drives) a lorry must first get a permit . A man living (= who lives) in town rarely sees cows . A girl studying hard will get a good husband .

(相当于一般时态所表示的任何时候都能发生的动作)

The city as appearing (= as it appears) to the tourists is rather queer . The nurse as attending me was too old .

但 : I must find out the child who broke my door (而不是 breaking my door) . (作定语的现在分词和谓语动词必须表示相同的时间 , 否则只能用定语从句 , 不能用现在分词。)

1589 过去分词也可以起定语从句的作用 :

The people involved (=who were involved) would be punished

This is a letter written (=which is written) in German .

A man satisfied (=who is satisfied) with his lot is happy .

There are many people being starved to death .

(和现在分词不同 , 使用过去分词时可以不考虑时间。)

It is a bedroom seldom slept in . It is a question never paid attention to . It is an accident unthought of .

A penny saved (=which has been saved) is a penny gained .

Things seen are mightier than things heard . (单个的分词也可放在后面 , 这时只是为了强调或对比。)

The city as described (= as it is described) by the travellers is rather queer . The ability as displayed by Asians is not inferior . A great man as known to the public is entirely different from one as known to his servant .

图解 :

16 . 不定式

1590 在作定语时 , 不定式常常相当于一个包含某个情态助动词的定语从句 :

There is a river to cross (= which we must cross) .

We have a lot of work to do (=which we must do) .

There is a sick man to look after (=whom we should look after) . There are many miserable people to help (= whom we should help) .

There are many houses to rent (=which we may rent) .

At the party there were many things to eat (=which you may eat) .

I want a man to teach (=who can teach) grammar .

Is there nobody to end (=who can end) all the troubles of this world ?

He is the man to tell (= who will tell) the truth . I am not

the man to bear (=who would bear) this insult .

1591 作定语的不定式所修饰的名词 (亦可称主体词) 和这个不定式有固定的关系。这名词可能是 a . 不定式意义上的主语 ; b . 及物动词不定式意义上的宾语 ; c . 以介词结尾的不定式短语的意义上的宾语 ; d . 不定式所表示动作的时间、地点或方式 ; 或是 e . 一个跟有作同位语的不定式的主体词。

1592 a . He is the man (意义上的主语) to encourage you (= who can encourage you) .

There is no-one (意义上的主语) to come (= who can come)

He has some friends (意义上的主语) to support him (= who will support him) .

1593 b . Money is something (意义上的宾语) to spend (= which we should spend) .

He has a dozen of children (意义上的宾语) to feed (= whom he must feed) .

He has a famous lawyer (意义上的宾语) to consult (= whom he may consult) .

1594 c . John is the manager (意义上的宾语) to apply to (= to whom you may apply= whom you may apply to) .

We have no guns (意义上的宾语) to fight with (= with which we can fight) .

This is not a matter to grumble about .

I can't think of a better subject to write on .

He had not a stone (意义上的宾语) to lay his head on (= on which he might lay his head) .

There is nothing (意义上的宾语) to make a fuss about (= which we should make a fuss about) .

1595 d . This is the " time " to start (= when we must start) .

This is not a nice " place " to make love (= where people should make love) .

Is this the " way " to treat your good friend (= in which you should treat your good friend) ?

(在 time , place 和 way 这几个词后面 , 不定式相当于一个由关系副词引起的定语从句。)

1596 e . 下面有 4 类用作主体词的抽象名词 , 表示有广泛意义的动作 , 而它后面的不定式则作同位语 , 表示这个动作的具体内容 (参阅 1137) :

1) Another attempt (主体词) to climb the mountain (作同位语的不定式) (=another attempt , that is , to climb the mountain) will be made . (Cf . They will attempt to climb .)

They welcomed the Prime Minister's decision (主体词) to resign (同位语) (= Prime Minister's decision , that is , to resign) . (Cf He decided to resign .)

Alexander's desire to please her mother is obvious .

The child expressed a wish to earn his own living . He kept his

promise to write to me . His refusal (or failure) to help is disappointing .

(第一类名词可以从 “ S + TV + I ” 句型中的及物动词转变过来。其他这类名词有 : claim , consent , determination , need , proposal , resolution , struggle , tendency , threat .)

2) An invitation (主体词) to attend the lecture (同位语) (=An invitation , that is , to attend the lecture) has been extended . (Cf . Someone has invited someone else to attend the lecture .)

He has given me permission (or leave) to use his library . (Cf . He has permitted me to use his library .)

The temptation to eat it is irresistible . The order to mobilize the country has been issued . This does not imply the obligation to pay anything .

(这类名词由用在 “ S + FV + N + I ” 句型中的宾补动词转变过来。)

3) I can see his ambition (主体词) to be somebody (同位语) (=his ambition , that is , to be somebody) . (Cf . He is ambitious to be somebody .)

I know his ability to meet the crisis . (Cf . He is able to meet the crisis .)

His curiosity to know the secret is irresistible . I do know his competence (or impatience , eagerness , disposition , inclination , willingness , reluctance) to do it .

(第三类名词由用在 “ S + LV . A + I ” 句型中的形容词转变过来)

4) The opportunity (主体词) to go to college (不定式作同位语) (=The opportunity , that is , to go to college) is not open to everyone .

He has the power to control our thought . I had the honour to dance with her . He has the knack to cry like any kind of animal .

(第四类名词不是由其它词类转变过来的 , 它们自身就可以跟有用作定语的不定式。)

1597 很多抽象名词不仅可跟有不定式 , 还可跟有 “ of + 动名词 ” 或 “ for + 动名词 ” , 意义和不定式基本相同 :

This is the best way to make (or for making) friends . I suspect his scheme to kill (or for killing) her . He has the authority to handle (or for handling) this matter . He made arrangements (of made preparations , took measures) to pro - mote (or for promoting) industries . He felt no anxiety to please (or for pleasing) his boss . He is not in the mood to listen (or for listening) to serious music .

1598 不定式意义上的主语可以从句子的主语或宾语推想出 , 如 : I have a novel to read (= which I may read) . She gave him bread to eat (= which he might eat) . 有时看不出意义上的主语是谁 , 如 : Music is a good subject to study . 这时意义上的主语可以是一般人 , 或是

读者可以猜出的人。否则，需用“for + 名词”（称为不定式意义上的主语）来说明，如：Music is a good subject for John to study (= which John should study) : He is a useful man for Leo to know (= whom Leo should know) . It seems a good instrument for a carpenter to use (= which a carpenter should use .) He is an unsatisfactory man for anybody to travel with . There is still one more river for travellers to go across . (这里带意义上的主语的不定式，在语法上相当于一个由关系代词 whom 或 which 引起的定语从句。)

The “time (or “hour”) for us to act (=when we should act) has come . This is the “day” for our house to be cleaned . Some “space” for children to play (= where children can play) is necessary . Can we find a “place” to live peacefully (= where we can live peacefully) ? This is the best “way” to treat those rascals (= in which you must treat those rascals) . (在 time , place , way 或类似词后，带意义上的主语的不定式相当于一个由关系副词引起的定语从句。)

The “appeal” for all children to be educated (= that all children should be educated) is being made . The “plan” for every citizen to know at least two thousand words (= that every citizen should know , etc .) has been put into practice . The “demand” for more rice to be imported will be considered . The “arrangements” for all the members to gather at the station are known to only a few . (在 plan , request 和一些其他抽象名词后，带意义上主语的不定式相当于一个由连词 that 引起的同位语从句。)

1599 不定式前的主体词用在动词 be 及 have 后时的情况最多 (参阅 1137) :

He is not a man to tell (= who would tell) a lie .

It is a sight to gladden (= which will gladden) everyone's heart .

There are many stores to supply (= which can supply) us with food . There is no time to lose (= that we should lose) .

He has many things to do . I have some news to tell you .

He had the goodness (or the kindness) (= was kind enough) to help me , had not the heart (or the conscience) (= was not hard - hearted enough) to abandon her , had the confidence (or the courage) (= was confident or brave enough) to shoulder the responsibility , had the face (or the impudence) to ask for money , had the misfortune to lose his parents , had the good luck to find it , had the folly to marry such a woman , had no cause (or no occasion) to feel ashamed , had a weakness to drink , had a good mind (= was eager) to go abroad .

This has (or has got , is) nothing (or something) to do with that (= This is in no way [or in some way] connected with that) . Has this anything to do with that ? He likes any - thing (that has) to do with (= anything concerning) politics . Everything (that has) to do with sports interests him .

She has a pretty nose and a pretty mouth to match . Also she wears a blue dress and (or with) a bonnet to match .

这类主体词当然也可放在其他位置 :

The man (作主语) to come is John . The medicine to cure the patient is penicillin . The bride to be is Mary .

He forgets the debt (作及物动词 forgets 的宾语) to pay . He has to face a problem to be settled at once .

He sent (or gave , offered , brought) me many books (作双宾动词的直接宾语) to read .

He will go with some policemen (作介词的宾语) to escort him . He merely bowed his head , with nothing to say , as he was a man of few words . I am looking for someone to go with me , I can't go alone . He thought of the promise to keep , but could he keep it ? He is ready for the crisis to come . He will be remembered in ages to come .

图解 :

17 . 同位语

1600 有 4 种形式的同位语 :

a . 名词同位语 :

Lord Halifax , Doctor Read , and Mrs . Whitestone were present .

Farmer Johnson , teacher William Jenkins , actor John Matthews were some of his friends .

其它例子 :

the mother goose , the baby seal , a toy gun , a messenger boy ,
the river Thames , my brother Charles , her husband Dennis Kennedy
the state of California , the city of Guangzhou , the distance
of two hundred miles

I spoke to the woman no more my wife . Make good use of things yet yours . He admitted the fault not his own . I have a hope almost a dream .

b . 动名词同位语 :

The problem of divorcing his wife worried him . He was disappointed in his plan of earning ten thousand dollars a month . This task of unifying all political groups is a fruitless attempt . (动名词前要加 of)

c . 不定式同位语 :

His aspiration to become an engineer will succeed . I have the honour to dine with her . The trouble to always hear one's wife grumbling is not a small one .

d . 同位语从句 :

The thought that she would be separated from her husband

saddened her . The rule that everybody should pay the fee was strictly observed . I did not realize the fact that the articles are difficult to learn . The news that her son had been killed was a great shock . He expressed the wish that she would be well again . There can be no doubt that he is intelligent . There is little probability that he will succeed . Is there any likelihood (or possibility) that he will be promoted ? Is there any certainty that you will get married ? Can you find out any evidence (or proofs) that he had murdered his uncle ? Rumours that he would resign amazed everybody . Something must be done in view of the fact that the situation has become critical . An order was issued that all should stay at home after dusk . Nobody can understand the mystery why he was murdered . The question—when we have enough food ? —is not easy to answer .

图解：

18 . 关系 (或定语) 从句

1601 由关系代词或关系副词引起的从句，修饰它前面的名词：

He is the man who teaches us .

He is the man (whom) I have been looking for .

He is the man whose brother called on me yesterday .

He is not the man he was .

She is Mrs . Wang that was (or that is to be) .

It is the book which interests me . (可用 that 代替 which) It is the book (which) I want .

It is the book (which) I have been looking for . This is the first time I have come (不要用 come) here . It is the fourth apple you have eaten .

That was the sixth boy you had considered for a husband . I want the same book as you read .

I want the same book that you read . There is no child but likes him .

It is not every boy (who) can get such a chance . It is not I (that) let the rascal in .

There is a man (who) wants you .

Here is some money (which) will satisfy your need . This is the place where (= in which) we study . It is the season when (= in which) the mango is in . The reason why (= for which) he did not come is not clear .

图解：

注意关系词的图解方法。

. 6 种类型的说明性定语

1602 上面讨论了定语的第一种用法，它们可以放在所修饰名词的前面或后面。由于它们限制了名词的意义而与名词结合，表示一个单一的概念，所以称作限制性定语。下面将讨论定语的另一用法。它们通常放在主语的前面或后面，用一个逗号把它们和主语分开。它们有时也可放在谓语后面，它们也“修饰”主语，但给它以“额外”的意义，称为说明性定语。从形式上来说，它们可以是 1. 形容词；2. 介词短语；3. 现在或过去分词；4. 名词；5. 关系从句；或是 6. 不定式。在作用上，它们起一个包含 be 的从句的作用，表示伴随的情况。例如，Desperate, he committed suicide. ”可以看作是两个句子巧妙地结合在一起，即 He was desperate. 及 He committed suicide. 因此我们可以用 Satisfied and warmed, the baby fell asleep. 来代替 The baby was satisfied and warmed and he fell asleep. 这样，我们可用一个简单句代替一个复合句来表示相同的意思。

A. 用在主语前面的说明性定语

1603 1. 形容词（有时带有自己的修饰语）

Tired and sleepy, (=He was tired and sleepy, and) he went to bed.

Seventy years old, Mrs. Johnson is still healthy.

Autere and reflective, he stood at the door.

Different from rich people, it is necessary for John to work harder (这是错句，因为这样说就表明 different 将修饰 it, 而它应当修饰 John. 正确的说法是: Different from rich people, John must work harder.)

The most assiduous, I awarded John the first prize. (错句)

(正确说法: The most assiduous, John was awarded the first prize.)

1604 2. 介词短语

这样用的介词短语大多是可以用在系动词后作补语的那些，如 out of order (the room is out of order), on sick leave (I am on sick leave) (参阅 1450) :

Still under age, (=He is still under age, and) he is not responsible for his behaviour.

At his wits' end, he committed suicide.

Out of temper, he dashed the glass against the wall.

At death's door, he began to repent.

1605 3. 分词

Smiling and nodding, Adam came up to me, (= Adam smiled and nodded and thus he came up to me; 或 He smiled and nodded when he came up to me.)

Spreading out its leafless branches, the old tree looks very

impressive .

Sitting beside my sick mother , I waited on her .

Attacked repeatedly by the enemy , our troops become stronger and stronger .

Accompanied by a guard , he arrived at night .

1606 4 . 名词 (作同位语 , 有时带有自己的修饰语)

A man of strong character , John would not agree . (= John was a man of strong character , and he would not agree .)

A professor of philosophy , he shouldn't live a boisterous life .

Probably the only one in this country , this machine costs a million dollars .

One of the greatest universities in the world , Oxford University has produced many men of ability .

注 : 这类名词前有时可加 as , 句子的意思不变 :

As a man of strong character , John would not agree .

As a professor of philosophy , he shouldn't live a boisterous life .

1607 上面 4 种类型的修饰语 (除名词外) , 都可以由 and , or , but 或其他并列连词连在一起 :

Haggard and excited , Francis thought he would die .

Radiant with joy , and triumphing in his success , he got up and danced .

Proud and joyous , gasping and bewildered , Pierrot ran and told us the news .

Astonished but happy , he walked up and down , and looked out of the window from time to time .

Either fresh or preserved , this fruit tastes delicious and is nutritious , too .

Embarrassed and out of temper , the colonel beat his brother .

Still impassive and in his dream . Adam was dragged to prison .

B . 用在主语后的说明性定语

1608 上面谈到的 4 种形式的说明性定语也可放在主语的后面 , 但在语气上这个位置比主语前的位置更弱。

1 . 形容词

The girl , tired and sleepy , went to bed .

Mrs . Johnson , seventy years old , is still healthy .

John , austere and reflective , stood at the door .

2 . 介词短语

1609 John , still under age (= who was still under age) , was not responsible for his behaviour .

Mary , at her wits' end , committed suicide .

The tyrant , at death's door , began to repent .

3 . 分词

1610 Adam , smiling and nodding , came up to me .

Lee , suppressing his sorrow , wrote her a letter .

A tree , spreading out its leafless branches , stood by a temple .

The baby , satisfied and warmed , sleep soundly .

1611 上面提到的 3 类说明性定语可以由一并列连词连接起来 , 如 1607 节所谈情况 :

Francis , haggard and excited (=who was haggard and excited) , believed he would die soon .

The farmer , radiant with joy , triumphing in his success (=who was radiant...success) , got up and danced .

Pierrot , proud and joyous , gasping and bewildered , ran and told us the news .

The colonel , embarrassed and out of temper , beat his brother .

Adam , still impassive and in his dream , was dragged to prison .

The child , at first earnest , at last in tears , asked for money .

4 . 名词 (作同位语)

1612 Dr . Wang , a man of fortune (=who was a man of fortune) , would support our plan .

His wealth , something admired by his friends , proved his own ruin .

His brother , a specialist in chemistry , will tell you everything about this .

作说明性定语的名词放在主语后面时 , 这名词即成为主语的同位语。此外 , 这些名词前还可加 as :

Dr . Wang , as a man of fortune , etc .

His wealth , as something , etc .

5 . 并列关系从句

1613 和限制性关系从句不同 , 并列关系从句是起说明作用的 , 它们和另外 4 种说明性定语不同 , 必须跟在主语 (或它们 “ 修饰 ” 的任何名词) 后面 :

Dr . Wang , who was a man of fortune , would support our plan . (=Dr . Wang was a man of fortune , and he would...)

John , who was tired and sleepy , went to bed .

Mrs . Johnson , who is eighty years old , looks young and pretty .

My aunt , whom I haven't seen twenty years , died today .

Crime and Punishment , which I borrowed from a friend , is a very good novel .

I am staying with my aunt , who works in a bank .

I came to the United States in 1914 , when World War I broke out (=and then World War I broke out) .

Singapore , where I have lived ten years , is a nice place .

6 . 不定式

说明性的不定式常常跟在主语后面：

This herb , to be found in Asia , is poisonous .

The prisoner , to be executed at night , sang all day .

Ted , to meet Liz at noon , put on his new clothes .

图解：

C . 用在谓语后的说明性定语

1614 说明性定语放在主语后时最不受强调 ,而放在谓语后时最受强调 ,这时谓语多为一个表示动作的动词。

1 . 形容词

1615 He fell (表示动作的动词) down unconscious . (=He became unconscious when he fell down .)

He approached , careless of danger . (=He approached , and was careless of danger .)

He stood (or listened) motionless . He married young .

We parted content . He lived poor and died poor . He awoke all tired .

We wandered about , happy and free . He arrived home sad and tired . He went away silent but angry . Her words came out , plain and simple .

He dashed out desperate . He went to bed hungry He joined in the game , tall and skinny . He was born in 1982 , illegitimate . My sister Liz was lying on the cot bed , pale and thin . He came down out of the mountains , shy and unschooled . In the north snow covered the ground 3 inches deep . He was dragged , unconscious , into the jungle .

2 . 介词短语

1616 The deer was cropping grass , unafraid and at ease . (=The deer was cropping grass and was unafraid and at ease .)

He wandered about hungry but at liberty to go anywhere .

3 . 分词

1617 a . He entered the house , laughing and weeping .

John sat in the chair writing letters .

He went hiking (or swimming , boating , begging) .

He is off love - making (or fortune-seeking) .

b . He went away a little drunk but as happy as a king .

He stood transfixed with wonder .

He set out accompanied by a guard .

The dog appeared in the stable , harassed and exhausted .

He rose , shivering , deeply touched , unable to speak .

4 . 名词

1618 Daniel left his homeland a young man . (= He was a young man when he left his homeland .)

He wandered about , a hunter of adventure .

He died a saint .

He went an enemy and returned a friend .

We parted the best of friends .

She returned a full - grown woman .

注：如果这样的定语紧跟一个不及物动词，一个没有修饰语的动词，这样的定语可以看作是补语，而不及物动词可以看作是一个系动词，如：He stood motionless ; He went hiking ; The girl fell exhausted ; She returned a full - grown woman . (参阅 1444 , 1446)

5 . 并列关系从句

1619 并列关系从句尽管修饰主语，如果它比谓语长或更加重要，也可放在谓语后面：

His father is disappointed , who has laid all his hopes on him but finds him a good-for-nothing .

Mary decided to run away from home , who had dissuaded her husband from drinking but all in vain .

The house remains vacant , which , it is rumoured , has been haunted many years .

图解：

D . 修饰宾语的说明性定语

1620 说明性定语大多修饰主语，但间或也可修饰宾语：

1 . They carried Alan , half dead (=who was half dead) , to the hospital .

We took the piglet , unable to stand up , into the house and gave it treatment .

Nature sent mortal man into the world , strong and lusty .

2 . The teacher asked Gary , (who was) all at sea , about the theory of evolution .

I advised Eric , (who was) in a bad humour , to take more rest .

3 . We attacked the enemy , unguarded , from behind

I returned the purse , untouched , to the owner .

They dragged him , blindfolded and shackled , into the car .

Father sent me , still dreaming , to school .

May told her son , still playing , to go to bed .

4 . We admire Shakespeare as a great writer . (常见)

He is going to report Dick as a thief .

We look to Singapore as a supplier of rubber .

5 . We spoke to John , who refused to cooperate . (常见)

I know your father , whom I met the other day .
She looked at the burned house , which had been her home .

. 主语补语

1621 主语修饰语的第三种用法是用作主语的补语。

它用在系动词后，是句子的一个基本成分。它和限制性定语、解释性定语不同，后面两者为从属成分，去掉后不影响句子结构。由于主语补语在前面已作详细讨论（详见 1438-1486），这里仅举少量例子：

He is kind . He seems afraid . John got rich . (形容词)

He appeared tired . Mary became intoxicated . My brother remained unmarried . (过去分词)

It looks interesting . The story is amusing . The news was shocking . (现在分词)

Dinner is over . The show is on . The time is up . (地点副词)

I feel at home . He seems in debt . He appears out of humour . (介词短语)

He is to die at eighty . The sample is not to be sold .

This book is to be read ten times . (不定式)

. 宾语补语

1622 修饰语的第四种用法是用作宾语的补语，它虽修饰宾语，不过它用在宾补动词后，是句子的基本成分。它和限制性定语、说明性定语也很不同，是不可省略的，由于前面已对它作详细讨论，这里仅举少量例子：

They made the house clean . I found the book easy . My father left me poor . (形容词)

You should make your work interesting . I find the situation discouraging . I hear her singing " Home , Sweet Home " . (现在分词)

I got a new coat made . He had his watch stolen . I found the work done . (过去分词)

I found the family in tears . I will put everything in order . He left me in the dark . (介词短语)

He asked me to come . He let me eat more . He declared it to be false . (不定式)

第二十单元状语

引 言

1623 在这个单元中我们将讨论状语。状语是修饰名词和代词以外任何词的，可修饰(1)动词，(2)形容词，(3)另一副词，(4)介词，(5)连词，或(6)整个句子。下面例句中加引号的为被修饰词，状语为斜体部分：

(1) He *works* "patiently". (2) It is extremely *"easy"*. (3) He slept very *"soundly"*. (4) He sat just *"behind"* me. (5) He got ill partly *"because"* he was worried. (6) Honestly, *"I am as poor as a beggar"*.

1624 状语可以是(1)副词，(2)短语，(3)分词，(4)不定式，(5)介词+非谓语动词，或(6)状语从句：

(1) He came yesterday. (2) He came from time to time. (3) He came to my office, wanting to have a talk with me. (4) He came to say goodbye. (5) He came after finishing his work. (6) He came only when he wanted to borrow money.

1625 可以从句中删去状语而不影响句子的基本结构：

"Yesterday" "at five" "when it began to dawn", he *"secretly"* left *"for a distant city"*. (S—IV) He left. (S—IV)

1626 也可在句子里加上这种修饰语，而不影响句子的基本结构：

Mary fell ill. (S—LV—A)

"After she had been to a dinner party", Mary *"suddenly"* fell ill. (S—LV—A)

He killed himself. (S—TV—R)

"Becoming bankrupt", he killed himself *"at a hotel"* *"by jumping down from the twelfth storey"*. (S—TV—R)

从上面例句中可以看出，状语在语法上并不是必不可少的，但在意义上却很重要，因为它修饰一个词，对它作更细致的描述。

1627 状语修饰动词时最多。在修饰动词时，它可以放在几个位置，不过放在某个位置可能比放在其他位置更合适。(定语的位置却比较固定，一般放在所修饰的名词前面或后面。)例如 yesterday 可以放在下面数字代表的5个位置上，不过在一定的上下文中只有一两个位置比较合适：

1 Lee 2 was 3 driving his car 4 into the country 5.

．谓语动词的修饰语

A．副词（短语）

1．副词（短语）概说

a．副词分类

1628 根据其意义副词可以分为 5 类：

1629 1) 时间副词：

表示某个时间的副词（回答 when 提出的问题）：

today , now , tonight , nowadays , presently , immediately ;
yesterday , earlier , lately , before , recently , ago ; tomorrow , soon ,
shortly , after , later , afterwards ; when ? then , early , late ,
meantime , punctually

表示频度的副词（回答 how often 这个问题）：

always , perpetually , eternally ; continually , repeatedly ,
generally , usually ; frequently , often ; sometimes ; occasionally ;
rarely , seldom ; never ; once , twice ; daily , weekly , monthly , yearly ;
nights (=each night) , mornings (Am .)

表示时间长度的副词（回答 how long 这个问题）：

everlastingly , eternally , forever ; long ; temporarily ,
briefly . quickly , awhile

1630 2) 地点副词：

表示地点或方向的副词（回答 in what position 或 to what position 这个问题）：

here , there , yonder ; far , afar , near , by ; on , off , away ; before ,
behind ; left , right ; up , down ; in , out ; back , forth ; aback ,
ahead , athwart , overboard ; longways , side - ways ; over , under ;
above , below , beneath ; outside , in - side , aside ; within , without ;
along , across ; together , separately , asunder , apart ; centrally ,
around , about , nowhere , everywhere , anywhere , somewhere ; vertically ,
horizontally , slantwise ; downtown , uptown ; downstairs , upstairs ;
abroad , home

方向副词（回答 to what position 这个问题）：

backward , forward ; upward ; downward ; inward , out - ward .

注：地点副词常修饰表示移动的动词，说明“到某地”，如 He went there , He ran away , He walked across , It flew outside , It fell down . 如果它修饰不表示移动的动词，则说明“在某地”，如 He lives there . He kept away from us . A log lay across , so the car could not pass . He waited down there , He stood outside .

另外，许多地点副词可以用作名词，作介词 from 的宾语。

这种 from 短语表示“来自某处”，试比较下面的句子 He went abroad , He came from abroad ; He came downtown , He came from downtown ; It appears somewhere , It appears from somewhere .

1631 3) 方式副词：

以-ly 结尾的副词 :slowly ,justly ,foolishly ,honestly ,steadily
(and many others)

不以-ly 结尾的副词 :fast ,hard ,thus ,how ,ill ,well ,so ;peasant
- style , Soviet-style , dog - fashion , Mongol- fashion ; likewise ,
otherwise , somehow .

1632 4) 肯定副词 :

表示肯定的副词 :certainly , indeed , surely , really , doubt-
less , truly

表示不肯定的副词 :perhaps , probably , possibly , maybe

1633 5) 程度副词 :

可表示各种不同程度 :

接近于“不” :not , hardly , little

较小程度 :lightly , somewhat

某种程度 :fairly , rather , pretty

较大程度 :very ,much ,highly ,greatly ,deeply ,extraordinarily

极大程度 :entirely , utterly , absolutely , completely , fully

渐 渐 :increasingly , steadily , gradually , slowly

足 够 :enough , sufficient

几 乎 :nearly

仅 仅 :only , just

b . 副词短语的结构

1634 副词短语指起副词作用的短语。它常常包含一个介词,如 by the way , one after another ; 有时它包含一个名词和一个形容词,如 this year , next week , five days , a long time ; 有时包含 and 或 or , 如 again and again , sooner or later ; 偶尔包含一些其他词,如 sure enough , as usual . 它可以是非成语型短语,也可以是成语型短语。它至少有 16 种类型。

非成语型短语

1) 介词+宾语(名词、动名词、疑问词+不定式、疑问词从句、介词短语) :

at Hong Kong , to the city ; after meeting her , by travel- ling ;
on how to do it , about where to eat Philippine food ; as to how
they do it , as to when young people should get married ; till after
lunch , from behind the door

2) “介词+名词+介词”+宾语 :

in case of failure , by reason of his illness , by means of sweet
words , on behalf of my country , in spite of the rain , in place
of his position , in the light of his great work , with a view to
helping the poor (这种“介词+名词+介词”是一个固定短语。)

3) “副词+介词”+宾语 :

together with John , along with his son , apart from his fol-
ly , out of the house , down to the modern times , agreeably to
their instructions , conformably to his promise , aside from
money . (“副词+介词”也是固定短语)

4) 副词+ “ 介词+名词 ” :

early in the day , sometime in the evening , late in May , Sunday at seven back in the stone age , far out at sea beyond on the horizon , high up in the sky , out in the street , once for all

5) 指示词+表示时间的名词 :

this week , next year , one day , each week , some day , every hour , that moment , this time (of year or day) , a moment , a Sunday , the moment (he shouted) , the day (John left Paris) (在指示词前 in , on , at 均省略)

6) 表示数目或数量的形容词+表示时间长度、距离、重量、价格等的名词 :

(for) three days , (for) all week , (for) a short moment ; (for) five miles , (for) a long distance , three blocks ; (for several) weeks , (for several) years ; two pounds ; 50 cents

7) 名词+地点副词、形容词或定语短语 (名词前的 with 省略) :

face downward , partiality apart , his mouth full of chocolate , his back against the wall , hat in hand , gun on shoulder , cigarette in mouth , my ankle swollen , my heart beating fast

例如 : A drunkard was lying in the street (with) face downward . The bell hung from the ceiling , (with) its tongue still .

8) 各式各样的短语 :

Sunday morning , Tuesday evening , July 6 ; two days ago , five weeks hence , three years later ; ten storeys up , halfway down

成语型短语

9) 介词+名词 :

in fact , in any case , by turns , at times , on no account , for instance , by God , without avail , between us

10) 介词+形容词 :

in general , in short , above all , through thick and thin , after all , for good , at best , at most , of old

11) 介词+时间或地点副词 :

before long , until now , at once , for ever , of late , in short , by far , for short

12) 名词+介词+名词 :

side by side , word for word , day after day , face to face , (from) time to time , (from) door to door , all in all

13) 副词+and , or 或其他连词+副词 :

again and again , better and better , by and by , more and more , through and through , over and over again , up and down , to and fro , on and off , backwards and forwards , (every) now and then , now and again , here and there ; right or wrong , once or twice , sooner or later , now or never , seldom or never , neither here nor there ; seldom if ever , more often than not

14) 名词+and (或 or) +名词 :

Winter and summer , night and day (day or night) she waited for him .

They served him hand and foot (=attended to his every wish) .

They bound him hand and foot (=so that he was unable to move) .

He left , bag and baggage (=with all his belongings) .

He removed it , root and branch (=totally) .

They attacked us , horse and foot (=with all their might)

They went at it , hammer and tongs (=with great force) .

We must devote ourselves , body and soul (or heart and soul , heart and hand) (=wholeheartedly) , to this great cause .

They dragged him out head and shoulder (or neck and heels) (=with violence) .

They fought tooth and nail (=with all strength) .

We must go , rain or no rain .

The house has been redesigned , top and bottom (=com- pletely) .

Cf . Good or bad , this is my country .

15) 介词 (常省略) +名词 :

He walked (along) the street .

He swims (after) dog - fashion .

(As) The first thing in the morning I went to see her .

I'll be here (at) seven-thirty Friday .

(At) what time did you leave ?

(On) What day did you arrive ?

I said it (for) a second time , but he didn't hear .

We stayed (for) the night .

He fled (from) this country .

I don't see it (in) your way .

Come (in) this way .

(In) What direction do you go home ?

He went (on) a journey last week .

We ranged (over) the woods .

We travelled (over) the Continent .

We work part time (=for less than the regular time) .

They bound him hand and foot , smote him hip and thigh . (参阅第 13 类)

They did it mornings (or nights , Sundays) (= every morning , or every night , every Sunday) .

16) 副词+副词 :

close by , near by , far away , far off , sure enough , funnily enough , later on , early on , no more , not any more

c . 副词短语的用法

1635 几乎所有副词短语都用来修饰动词 (谓语动词或非谓语动词) :

He “ went ” to the city .

John “ came ” along with his wife .

Ada “stood up to the chin in water .

It “was thrown” out in the street .

He “tumbled” , face downward .

“Meeting” her one day , he told her the news .

He tried to advise her , “speaking” to the effect that...

He decides “to translate” the article word for word .

1636 有少数这类短语,特别是 1634 节中 9) , 10) 两类短语,可以用来修饰整个句子:

In fact , “he has done his best” .

For instance , “good is an adjective” .

In short , “money means everything” .

Sure enough , “he divorced her” .

1637 第 5) 类从理论上可以看作是介词短语,其中 at , on 或 in 省略:

He came (in) every year .

He left (on) last Sunday .

We shall meet (at) next Christmas .

He died (on) the day when it rained hard .

1638 第 6) 类短语只和几个特殊动词一起用:

The book “costs” 50 dollars .

The pork “weighs” five pounds .

It “measures” three feet .

1639 在和其他动词一起用时,这种短语中的 for 可以用也可以省略:

He “waited” 3 hours (or for three hours) .

Some trees can “live” a thousand years .

The boots “last” 2 years .

We “travelled” a thousand miles .

The cat “fell” a hundred feet .

The road “extends” (for) miles .

The patient cannot “move” even a step .

1640 这种短语也可用来修饰后面的形容词(特别是比较级):

This fish , as they say , measures ten metres “long” (or “in length”)

The road measures more than twenty metres “wide” (or “in width”) .

The Pacific Ocean is , on an average , 140000 feet “deep” (or “in depth”) .

The army of our enemy is more than a million “strong” .

The civilization of China is at least 4500 years “old” .

The bridge is ten miles “distant” from my house .

This car is a thousand dollars “cheaper” than that .

He is a head “taller” than his sister .

This is only a trifle “better” than that .

1641 表示时间长度或距离的短语可用来修饰后面的时间或地点副词:

He arrived ten minutes (too) “late” .

He died a week “ago” (or “since”) .
 He had left a fortnight “since” .
 He came three days “afterwards” (or “after” , “later”) .
 I'll meet him three days “hence” .
 He lived four miles “away” (or “off”) .
 It is thrown far “off” .
 They are waiting a short distance “off” .
 The bullet fell a long way “beyond” .

1642 表示时间长度的短语还可用来修饰后面的介词和连词：

He died two weeks “after” his wife's death .
 A long time “before” the war , we had prepared ourselves .
 He died two weeks “after” his wife died .
 A long time “before” the war broke out , we had prepared ourselves .

注：副词短语几乎可以修饰各种词类，但本章以下各节将仅仅讨论修饰动词的用法。如何修饰其他词类将在其他章节中讨论。

图解：

2.5 类副词（短语）的用法

a. 时间副词（短语）

1) 副词（短语）表示的时间与动词时态的关系

1643 由于副词短语和副词的作用差不多，为了方便，我们把两者放在一起讨论，统称为“副词（短语）”，说明时间的称为“时间副词（短语）”。

1644 表示过去时间的副词（短语），可和过去时的谓语动词一起用，也可和“助动词+现在完成时”构成的谓语一起用：

He “came” yesterday . John “was” born in 1940 . He “was” formerly (or once) a rich man . He “arrived” two days ago . He “got” married last week . He “left” Paris two weeks back .

He “can't have arrived” here today week (or a week ago) . He “may have left” (on) Thursday week (or Thursday of last week) . The diamond “must have been stolen” on Friday before last .

1645 表示现在时间的副词（短语）可以和各种时态一起用：

He “is” tired now . He “is studying” music today . We “are learning” music this year . I “have done” my exercise this week .

He “will do” many things today . (今天早晨讲的话)

He “did” many things this year . (今年较晚时讲的话)

He “has done” many things this week . (周末讲的话)

1646 有些副词（短语），可和现在完成时或一般过去时的动词一起用：

I “saw” (or “have seen”) him lately (or of late , recently , before , before now , all along , right along , in the past , over the years) .

He has just gone out . (英式) He just went out . (美式)

1647 有些副词（短语），多和完成时态的动词一起用，偶尔和其他时态的动词一起用：

He "has been" ill since 2 June (or ever since, since two months ago). Till now (or Up to now, Until this time) nothing "has happened". So far (or As yet, Thus far) he "had said" nothing to me. So far he "was trying" without success. There "is" as yet no hope for peace. The guests "(had) arrived" by ([=before or at] seven o'clock).

1648 表示未来时间的副词（短语），必须和将来时或现在（一般或进行）时的动词一起用：

He "will come" tomorrow. I "shall meet" him some day (or one day). He "will begin" his work next week. He "will call" on me in ten days (or in ten days time, ten days from now).

He "will do" it soon (or shortly, presently, instantly, before long, by and by). (这6个副词及副词短语可以和过去将来时的动词一起用：He "would do" it soon. He "would come" shortly.)

He "arrives" this coming Thursday. He "is to move" (on) Friday (of) next week. He "is leaving" today week (or a week from today). He "is returning" this day month (or a month from this day).

1649 个别副词（短语）可以和过去时或将来时的动词一起用：

She came last Monday and he "came" the day before (or two days later).

She will come next Monday, and he "will come" the day before (or two days later).

1650 频度副词（短语）可以和任何时态的动词一起用：

He "studied" (or "had studied", "was studying", "studies", "is studying", "has studied", "will study") every day.

He "is" always (or often, frequently, sometimes, occasionally, seldom, rarely, scarcely, hardly, never) ill.

I "have warned" him once again (or a time or two, once in a long while, now and then, now and again, again and again, time and again, over and over again).

He will be permanently (or forever) blind.

The periodical "is" published daily (or weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly).

1651 表示时间长度的副词（短语）可以和任何时态的动词一起用：

He "stayed" in France (for) three years. They "gambled" all the year (round). They "gambled" all the night (through). He "started" work from 1950. He "served" his country till his death. He "will work" for me during my absence. He "can cross" the river in thirty minutes (or in a short time). We "are working" all (the) day long. The fish "will not live" over the night (or over this week). He "has done" much over the year. I "have done" nothing during the vacation.

2) 某些时间副词 (短语) 的特殊用法

1652 有些时间副词 (短语) 的特殊用法值得注意 :

a) I shall go tomorrow (=the day after today) .

但 : He went last Sunday , and I went on the morrow (or on the following day) (不能说 tomorrow) . He will go next Sunday , and I will go on the morrow (or on the following day) (不能说 tomorrow) . He went last Sunday ; I went next morning (不能说 tomorrow morning) .

b) I went yesterday (=the day before today) .

但 : He went last Sunday , and I went on the previous day (or the day before) (不能说 yesterday) . He will go next Sunday , and I will go on the previous day (or the day before) (不能说 yesterday) .

c) I saw him three days ago (=on the third day before today) .

但 : I arrived last Sunday and I informed him of my arrival three days before (=on the third day before last Sunday) (不能说 three days ago) .

d) I shall see him in three days (=on the third day after today) (不要说 after three days) .

但 : I arrived last Sunday and I saw him three days later (or three days afterwards , after three days , in three days) . I shall arrive on 6 July and will see him three days later (or three days afterwards , after three days , in three days) (= 9 July) .

e) I met him one day . I will meet him some day (or one day) . I met him the other day (=a few days ago) . I will meet him one of these days (=in a few days) .

f) He arrived on time (=at the appointed time) . He arrived in time (=early enough) for dinner (or to take dinner) . He will be punished in time (=sooner or later) .

g) When did he meet her ? Sometime (=At some time) last year .—How often ? Sometimes (=now and then) , not very often .—How long were they together ? (For) Some time , not very long .

h) He has learned music since June 1 (till now) .

He learned music from June 1 (not till now) .

He has learned it ever since (=ever since then) .

He learned it long since (=long ago) .

i) From 1970 to 1980 , I met her four times (不要说 for four times) . I was so shy when I saw her for the first time . The meeting in 1980 was the fourth or the last time we had got together .

f) He has (or had) just left (=left a moment ago) . He is just starting (=is starting this moment) . He left just now (=left a moment ago) . He has left now (=is gone now) .

k) Did you ever see it ? (疑问句)

I hardly ever saw it . (否定句)

Tell me if you ever saw it . (条件句)

不要说：I ever saw it . (肯定陈述句)

l) At first he denied it ; then (or soon , afterward) , he said yes ; finally (or eventually) he denied it again .

First (of all) came A , next (or then) came B , last (of all) came C .

m) I will see her this day week (or month , year) (=in a week , month , etc .) .

I saw her this day week (=a week ago) .

n) He did not receive (or has not received) her answer yet . (否定句)

Did you eat (or Have you eaten) yet ? (疑问句)

He would marry her if he loved her yet . (条件句)

He already knew it . (肯定句)

He still remembered it . (肯定句)

o) Is John here yet ? (通常的问法)

Is John here already ? (表示惊奇)

Is John still here ? (表示不高兴)

p) There is time yet (=still) . The fish is yet (=still) alive .

We may (or will) win yet (=sooner or later) . We must work harder yet (=still harder) .

There is yet another choice . Do it yet again .

q) I have (or had) been interested in music from a girl (or a child) .

r) This custom dates (or goes) back to 1890 , exists to this day .

s) be (= take place) 后可跟各种时间副词 (短语) :

The show will be 9 p . m . . (某一时刻)

The meeting was three hours . (一段时间)

The gathering is every Sunday . (频度)

t) 频度副词 (短语) 可以在意思上接近一个表示数量的形容词 , 特别是当主语为一个非特指的普通名词时 :

Doctors are always very busy . = All doctors are very busy .

Children generally like cakes and sweets . = Most children like cakes and sweets .

An old man often forgets what he has done . = Lots of old men forget what they have done .

Books are sometimes harmful to children . = Some books are harmful to children .

People are seldom concerned about others . = Very few people are concerned about others .

Good gamblers never curse or get angry . = No good gamblers curse or get angry .

它也可在意义上接近一个修饰宾语的表示数量的形容词 :

This desert is sometimes good for patients . = This desert is

good for some patients .

Dennis always hates dishonest people . = Dennis hates all dishonest people .

He generally excuses the criminals who repent . = He excuses almost all the criminals who repent .

图解：

b . 地点副词 (短语)

1) 概说

1653 下面每个句子中都包含一个表示地点的副词短语：

He stood at the center . John moved from house to house .

They came to town . They fought outside their own country . (包含介词的短语通常都修饰动词，很少修饰形容词、副词、介词或连词。)

The bird flew a long distance . We walked miles and miles .

They are inches apart . He sat three rows behind me . (1634 6) 的短语，也就是没有介词的短语，可以修饰动词、形容词、副词、连词或介词。)

1654 包含介词的地点副词 (短语) 将在有关介词的那一单元中作详细讨论 (这部分将来将出单行本) 。这里只讨论地点副词。

1655 有些地点副词原来就是副词，如：

abroad , together , apart , overhead , forward , next , last , left , home , where , here , there

另一些，原来是介词，当它的宾语省略掉时则成为副词：

I sat before John , and Mary sat behind (John) .

Come down (the ladder) .

The students stood around (someone or something) .

Come in (= into my house) .

He jumpd in (= into the water) .

Can you swim across (this river) ?

2) 某些地点副词 (短语) 的特殊用法

1656 下面例句说明了地点副词的特殊用法，有些有引伸意义：

ABOUT : Don' t throw the waste paper about (= here and there) . The children rushed about .

How did the quarrel come about (= happen) ? They will bring about (= cause) the solution of the problem .

ACROSS : Things go across (= against us) . She sat just across (= opposite) (美语) him .

ANYWHERE , (ANYPLACE—美语) : I can' t go anywhere .

ALONG : Move along (= on) , everybody . Come along (= over) and see me . She took her dog along (= together) with her .

ALOOF : He always keeps himself aloof (= never mix with others) .

APART : He always keeps himself apart (= aloof) .

AROUND : He looked around . He shook hands all around .

AWAY : He looked away (=turned his eyes away) .

The colour (or The sound) faded away (=into nothing) .

BACK : Call the dog back inside .

BY : He stood by (=near) .

He hurried by (=past) . Time flew by . Let me by

He put (or set , laid) the money by (=aside for future use) .

DOWN : The price went down . The heat went down (=to a lower degree) .

We beat down the opposition , calmed down his feelings , put down the abuses . He closed down the firm . The revolt died down . The clock has run down . (down =to a less active condition) .

I'll write (or put , set , take , get) it down (=record it) . He will go down (=be recorded) in history as a great man . This practice persisted from 1950 down to 1960 . He handed it down to posterity . (down = to a later period) .

FAR : He did not go far . Did he go far ? He went a long way (instead of far) . He went as far as the north pole . I live far from (or beyond) the town . (far 修饰介词)

He lives far away (or far off) . Someone waited far below (or far above , far beyond) . (far 修饰后面的地点副词)

He goes too far (=goes to extremes) . This money will go far (=help greatly) to better his condition .

FURTHER : He lives two miles further on .

HALFWAY : He will meet me halfway .

HERE : We want but little here below (=in this life) .

Listen here (=to me) .

He came over here . He lives near here . He waited up here .

Come in here . (地点副词+here)

Here is something for you . Here is (=I drink) to your success ! Here comes the car ! Here it comes ! Here you are ! (英式) ; 或 There you go ! (美式) (=Here it is !)

Here goes ! (=Watch , I'm ready to begin !)

Here (=At this point) he stopped a moment . Here (=In this matter) he can't do anything .

IN Come in (=into the house) . He jumped in (=into the water) . I'll put in a notice (in = in the newspaper) . They sent (or shut) him in . The land will be walled in . He cut in his own name .

NEAR : He lives near by (=near) . He has a dictionary near at hand (=near to him) . The vacation is drawing near . His fame spread far and near (=everywhere) .

OFF : He set off (=started) . He took off his hat . Keep your hands off (=Don't touch it) . Keep off the enemy . The buttons came (or fell) off . He made (or got) off , 或 took himself off (=ran

away) . I cannot let him off (=escape) so easily . Off with (=Take off) your hat . Off with you (=Be gone!) .

Throw off (=Get rid of) reserve . He walked off his headache ; slept off his fatigue .

Clear (or Pay) off (=completely) your debt . We must kill off our enemies .

He cut off (=stopped) the steam (or the gas) . He switched (or turned) off the light . He broke off the engagement . He declared off the contract . He left off his work .

They bought off (=bribed) the police .

He worked off and on (=intermittently) .

He put the matter off (=aside) .

We started straight (or right) off (=at once) .

ON : He put (or threw , tried , had , kept) his clothes on (=on his body) . He had nothing on . He put his shoes on (=on his feet) ; girded on a sword ; buckled on an armour ; drew on his gloves . Shall I help you on with your coat ? On with your hat !

He worked(spoke , moved) on(= continually) . we have to hold (or hang , cling) on (= keep on) . We talked on and on (=went on talking) . Go on with (=Continue) your reading .

On with (=Begin or Continue) your work . Something is going on (= happening) . How are you getting on (= making progress) with French ? He is getting on (=getting along) well . He came on (= progressed) well in his studies .

He switched (or turned) on the gas (or the steam , the water , the light , the TV) .

We looked on (=without participating in the matter) .

Come on ! (= Hurry ! Stop behaving that way !)

He did it further (or later) on (=afterwards) . You must be more careful from this hour on .

OUT : He slept (or dined) out (= away from home) . We shall have an evening out . Out you go ! Out with you ! (=Be gone !)

He called (or cried) out .

We let out horses (or money) . He looked (or found) out a position . He can't make out (= understand) the meaning .

He can work out (=solve) the problem .

Speak out (=loudly or freely) . Tell me straight out (or right out) (= without ambiguity) . She had her cry out (=cried to the full) . He had his sleep out .

This fashion has gone out (= become out of date) . Put (or Blow , Turn) out (= extinguish) the light . The fire has burned out .

Hear me out (=to the end) . I can't hold out . He sat out the show (= sat until the end of the show) . He slept out the night . He

sat out the others (=left last of all) .

He knows the matter out and out (= thoroughly) .

OVER : He swam over (=to the other side of the river) .

He climbed over (=to the other side of the mountain) .

He came over (=over some distance) from Singapore , went over to America . Take it over to John . Ask him over (= to come) .

He fell over (= from an upright position) . He knocked the vase over .

He turned the page over (= from one of its sides to the other) . He rolled over and over .

The water in the pot boiled over (=beyond the rim) .

They went over (=from their party or views) to us .

We won (or talked) them over to our views .

The house was searched over (=in all parts , thoroughly) .

He looked (or counted , read , talked , thought) it over .

He is a diplomat all over .

I have to do it over (= again , from the beginning) .

They built the temple (all) over (again) . He read the book over and over again . I have done it three times over . I passed (or glossed , slurred) over (=ignored) his fault . I left the matter over (= aside) . I let it stand over .

There are 15 dollars over (= left) . He has 1000 dollars and (a bit) over (= and something) .

THERE : You can go there (=to that place—重读) and back in a day . You can find it here , there (=at that place) , and everywhere .

There goes the car (名词) ! There it (代词) goes !

It is dangerous to climb up there . I'll go over there .

Why do you stand out there ? Let's stand near (or above , below) there . (地点副词+there)

There (= At that point) he stopped a moment . You are mistaken there (= on that point) .

There is a good boy (=What a good boy you are) !

There is a good chance for you (= Note what a good chance it is) ! (赞扬或鼓励)

There (不重读) is someone outside . There was born a child (=A child was born) . There broke out a war . I want there to be peace . There was said (or supposed) to be a fire . There is no arguing (= You cannot argue) with him .

There ! There ! (重读) Don't cry . (用来安慰孩子)

There ! Didn't I tell you ? There ! You've spoiled every thing . (忿忿 , 不悦或满足)

THROUGH : He has got through (= passed) (the exam) .

I have read it through (= from the beginning to the end) . I

saw the accident all through . She knows me through and through . He got through with (=finished) all the work he had to do . I see through his trick .

We must carry through the plan (=execute it successfully) .

The train went through (=direct) to the city .

The scheme fell (or dropped) through (= failed) .

I'll put you through to the manager (=I'll make telephone connection between you and him) .

UNDER : A piece of cloth should be placed under (something in question) .

He brought the rebels under (his control) . He kept (or got) the fire under . He cannot keep his temper under .

UP : Lee lives four floors up . Up with you (=Get up) !

I started (or sprang) up . He looked for it up and down (=everywhere) .

He went up to (or lived up in) London (to or in a place of more importance) . Did he go up to Oxford (or Cam-bridge) ? (和 DOWN 比较)

He went up to (or lived up in) Edinburgh (to or in a place in the north) .

He walked up (=over , across , or around) (= to the speaker or the place in question) .

We sailed up (=against the current) .

They stirred up the revolt . He praised her up . I screwed up his courage . (up = to a higher or stronger degree) .

He tore up the paper , locked up the door , tied up the dog , wound up the clock , sealed up the letter . The pond had dried up . The fire has burned up . (up 有 “ 彻底 ” 的意思 , 有时在口语中几乎没有意思。)

The products do not come up to (=attain) the standard .

He lives (or acts) up to (=in accordance with) the principle (or his promise) . His fortune amounts (or comes) up to (= totals) a million pounds .

WEST : They sailed west . This village lies west (= to the west) of the capital . He went west (=died) .

WESTWARD (S) : He went westward (s) .

图解 :

c . 方式副词 (短语)

1) 概说

1657 大多数方式副词都是形容词后加词尾 -ly 构成 :

quickly	carefully	traditionally
faithfully	luckily	internationally

但有些以 -ly 结尾的词是由名词加词尾构成 , 是形容词 :

queenly	soldierly	friendly
beggarly	worldly	heavenly
cowardly	scholarly	miserly

这样的词不是副词,因此不能说 She walked queenly.而要说 She walked in a queenly manner.不能说 He treats me friend-ly.而要说 He treats me in a friendly way.但是以-ly 结尾的形容词有时直接用作副词,而不再加-ly,以避免不协调的声音:

We have acted manly (不要说 manlily) in these circumstances.

He died untimely (不要说 untimelily).

The army retreated orderly.

1658 有少数表示方式的副词性短语可以用方式副词代替:

He treats John with kindness (= kindly).

He speaks Japanese with fluency (=fluently).

I can do it with ease (=easily).

They marched off in triumph (= triumphantly).

He has told you in private (=privately).

By good luck (= Luckily) I find the thing I lost.

He sent the letter by mistake (=mistakenly).

He deceived me on purpose (= purposely).

He screamed like a fool (=foolishly).

但多数这类短语不能用副词代替:

He comes of a rich family.

He failed because of his negligence.

It is made by John.

He was killed with a stone.

It is made of iron.

He is starved to death.

We wished for peace.

He went out in spite of the rain.

Plants will die without water.

1659 表示方式的短语相当大一批是由介词引起的,如 1658 中所给的例子。另一大批为地点副词,亦称副词性小品词,常可用在动词成语中,表示方式而不是表示地点。有些地点副词跟在不及物动词后(参阅 1346)。

He drew up (=stopped) before a store.

Hold on (= Wait) a second, please.

The machine broke down (=didn't work properly).

Things work out (=develop) badly.

He didn't show up (= appear).

The couple split up (=ended their relationship) just an hour after their wedding.

He turned in (= went to bed) at eleven.

Speak up (=speak in a loud voice).

有些则跟在及物动词后面:

We put on (=presented) a show.

He turned down (=refused) my application .

Don't hold up (=delay) the traffic .

You made up (=invented) the story .

I'll take on (=undertake) the task .

We have to put off (=postpone) the trip .

还有一些跟在不及物动词后，后面再跟一个介词：

She came around to (=agreed to) my views .

She went in for (=got interested in) photography .

I have to fall back upon (= depend upon) his support .

We stand up for (= support) his policy .

Can you catch up with (=overtake) your class?

2) 带-ly 词尾的单音节副词及不带-ly 词尾的单音节副词

a) 带-ly 词尾的副词和不带-ly 词尾的副词可以有相同的意思

1660 特别值得注意的是有一些单音节形容词，可以有两个副词形式，一个带词尾-ly，一个不带-ly。这类副词，有些两种形式意思相同，但用法不同。带-ly 的副词可以用在所修饰的动词前面或后面，而不带-ly 的副词通常紧跟在一个特定的单音节动词后，与这个动词构成一种习用语：

CHEAP (LY) : We must buy cheap (= buy at a low price) and sell dear . It costs cheap .

Victory cannot be bought cheaply (=with little loss) .

He got off cheaply (引伸用法) .

可和 DEAR (LY) 比较。

CLOSE (LY) : He held (or clasped , hug , shut) it close (ly) .

DEAR (LY) : He wants to sell dear , but does not want to pay dear . It costs dear .

He loves her dearly . He pays dearly (= suffers) for his folly .

DEEP (LY) : He drank deep (= drank to excess) . Still waters run deep . It was buried deep .

I felt his death deeply . I deeply regret it . He is deeply interested .

FAIR (LY) : He played fair (or fairly) (= acted justly) .

We fought fair (= fought honestly) . Copy it out fair (=clearly) .

We deal fairly with him . We act fairly by all men .

FALSE (LY) : He played (someone) false (=cheated some-one) . They falsely accused him .

FINE (LY) : It suits me fine . We are doing fine .

It is finely down . He is finely dressed .

FIRM (LY) : He stood (or held) firm (=stuck to his opinion) . He firmly believes it . He fixed it firmly .

FIRST (LY) : He came first (=before all the others) .

He first saw her in 1969 .

First (ly) , we should be kind to people . Secondly , ...

FOUL (LY) : He played foul (= acted unjustly) . The ship fell foul of (= ran against) the rocks .

They murdered him foully .

FULL (Y) : I know it full (=completely) well .

It has not been fully understood . I cannot satisfy him fully . (fully 为程度副词而不是方式副词)

HIGH (LY) : He lived high (= lived luxuriously) , paid high (=paid a high price) , played high (=played for large stakes) , aimed or flew high (= was ambitious) . The bird flew high .

They spoke (or thought) highly of (= praised or respected) him . He is highly paid .

LAST (LY) : He arrived last (= after all the others) . I last (=for the last time) saw her in 1969 .

Lastly , I will phone to you in case of need .

可和 FIRST (LY) 比较。

LOOSE (LY) : The dog broke (or got) loose (= escaped) . He played fast and loose (= acted recklessly and inconstantly) .

The bolt work loose (or free) (= became loose) .

He used this word very loosely .

LOW (LY) : He buys low and sells high . He lived (or paid , played , aimed , flew) low . He bowed (or lay) low .

He sang (or spoke) low . The supply ran low (=became diminished) .

He spoke lowly (=humbly) .

He bowed lowly (=humbly) .

可和 HIGH (LY) 比较。

NEW (LY) : It is a new-built hotel . A new-made dress was on display . A new-coined word is sometimes very attractive .

It is a newly built hotel . They are a newly married couple .

PLAIN (LY) : Write plain and speak plain .

I told him plainly .

QUICK (LY) : He got rich quick . He ran (or went , walked) quick (ly) .

He quickly ran to the opposite side .

可和 SLOW (LY) 比较。

RIGHT (LY) : Please turn right . He judged (or guessed , remembered) right . No matter whether you act right or wrong , you will suffer .

He is rightly accused . You rightly suppose that . I cannot rightly recollect .

可和 WRONG (LY) 比较。

SLOW (LY) : Go slow (=Work slowly , Be less active) . How slow (ly) they did it ! We drive slow (ly) .

Let us drive slowly . We slowly spoke to that deaf boy .

可和 QUICK (LY) 比较。

SOUND (LY) : He slept sound (ly) .

STRONG (LY) : He is going strong (=continues to be vigorous) .

He (or That) is coming (or going) it rather (or too) strong
(=makes an extravagant proposal or claim) .

He strongly supports our plan . He smelled strongly of alcohol .

SURE (LY) : Sure enough , he will do what he's promised .

He will surely come . (但 surely 为一个肯定副词)

THICK (LY) : Snow fell thick . The blows came thick and fast .

The hill is thickly wooded .

TIGHT (LY) He held (or clasped , hug , shut) it tight (or tightly) .

可和 LOOSE (LY) 比较。

TRUE (or TRULY) : He aimed true (= aimed correctly) .

He told me true (= told me the truth) . This animal will breed
true (=breed in accordance with the parental type) . He spoke truly .

可和 FALSE (LY) 比较。

WRONG (LY) : He aimed (or heard , spelled the word , told me)
wrong . He got it wrong (= miscalculated) . It worked out
wrong . Something has gone wrong .

They are wrongly accused (or informed , directed) .

可和 RIGHT (LY) 比较。

b) 带 -ly 词尾的副词和不带 -ly 词尾的副词可有不同的意思

1661 有些副词，两种形式的意思互不相同：

DIRECT (LY) : Speak to him direct (=not in a round-about way) . I
went to Hong Kong direct . I sent it direct to him . I got it from
him direct . (亦可用 directly)

Come here directly (= at once) . I will be back directly (=
very soon) My family is directly affected . There has been a directly
opposed tendency .

EASY (EASILY) : Take things easy (= Be in no hurry) . Go easy . Easy
come , easy go . I can do it easily (= with no difficulty) . The
machine runs easily (= smoothly) .

FIT (LY) : She laughed fit (= till she was ready) to die .

She can sing sorrowful songs fit to make you cry .

The matter has not been fitly handled .

FLAT (LY) : The play fell flat (=produced no response) .

He lay flat on his face . She sang flat (= sang below the true
pitch) . He denied it flatly (=down right) .

FREE (LY) : I got it free (of charge) . I was admitted free .

You can criticize anybody freely .

HARD (LY) : He works hard (= strenuously) . He drinks hard
(=excessively) . It rained hard . He hardly (=scarcely) knows it .

LATE (LY) : He arrived late (=beyond the right time) . He goes
to bed late . He was ill lately (=recently) .

LOUD (LY) : Don't talk (or laugh) so loud .

He boasted (or praised her) loudly (引伸用法) . She is very
loudly dressed .

MOST(LY) Mary is the most(= in the greatest degree) beautiful . I love Mary most . They are mostly (=chiefly) nice people , though not all of them are .

NEAR (LY) : He came near (= approaching something) .

He nearly (=almost) died . It is nearly finished .

PREVIOUS(LY) : It happened previous to(= before) his ar-rival .

He has said it previously .

ROUND (LY) : We turned (or looked) round .

I told him roundly (=flatly) .

SHARP (LY) : Look sharp (=Be alert) . My car turned sharp .

He answered me sharply (= seriously) .

SHORT (LY) : He stopped short (=suddenly stopped) . We ran (or went) short of (= lacked) capital . The result came short of (= failed to meet) the requirements .

I 'll be back shortly(=soon) . He answered me shortly(=briefly) .

SHY (LY) : I fought shy of (= kept away from) her .

She shyly (=bashfully) mentioned her lover .

SOUND (LY) : He is sound (= thoroughly) asleep .

He slept soundly . He is soundly beaten .

WIDE (LY) : He spoke wide of the mark (= incorrectly) .

The islands are widely scattered . He travelled widely .

They differ widely .

c) 带 -ly 词尾的副词表示方式 , 不带 -ly 的副词表示程度

1662 另一些带副词 , 不带 -ly 的形式 , 用来表示程度 , 修饰形容词、副词、连词、介词或后面的动词 ; 而另一种形式表示方式 , 修饰它前面或后面的动词 :

CLEAN (LY) : All he has is clean (= completely) gone . I have clean forgot it . He is cleanly dressed .

CLEAR (LY) : The bullet went clear (= entirely) through his leg . The robbers have escaped clear away .

He speaks clearly .

CLOSE(LY) : He followed close(= a short distance) behind me . She brought him close to ruin . A church is close by .

He watched her closely (=strictly) . Guard him closely .

DEAD (LY) : It is dead (= completely) straight . He is dead drunk (or tired , certain , slow , against me) .

He is deadly (= dangerously) wounded . She is deadly pale .

DEEP (LY) : He studies deep (= far) into the night .

I regret it deeply (= bitterly) .

JOLLY (or JOLLILY) : He knows you jolly (= very) well .

He laughed jollily .

JUST (LY) : He left just now . Just read this .

He is justly (= rightly) punished . He justly criticized this policy .

MOST (LY) : She loves her mother most of all .

They mostly (=chiefly) come from the north .

PRETTY (or PRETTILY) : It is pretty (= moderately) good .

She is prettily dressed .

RIGHT (LY) : He dashed right (=all the way) to the end of the street . They turned right round . He has read right (=completely) through the book . He stood right (=exactly) in the middle .

I understand her rightly (= correctly) . If I heard you rightly , I don't have to pay him . If I remember rightly , they got married in 1985 .

WIDE (LY) : The gate is wide open . These two parties are wide apart in their views . He is wide awake .

He travelled widely .

图解 :

d . 程度副词 (短语)

1663 下面例句中的副词 (短语) 表示不同的程度。程度副词 (短语) 用来修饰形容词的最多 , 但也常用来修饰动词 :

接近零程度— He can not see . He hardly (or scarcely) knows it . I little expect it . He is by no (manner of) means respected by his friends . You should on no account trust this man . I'll not for the world (or for anything) (=never) speak against anyone . I don't care a fig (or a jot , a bean , a bit , a rap , a damn , a pin) (= do not feel sorry) for his criticism . He is not a bit (or a jot , a whit , a hair , a tit , a rush , a button) injured . I cannot in any way tell you all the truth . He is not in the least (or not at all) happy . I simply (or just) can't help . “ Will he give up ? ” “ — The devil (or The heck , The deuce) he will ” (=He won't) . “ Is he honest ? ” “ Like hell (or Like fun) he is (= He never is) ” . “ He is so kind . ” — “ Kind my foot (or my eye) ! ” (= Very unkind)

较小程度— He writes a little . I was somewhat (or slightly , a bit) disappointed . It helps some (= a little) .

某种程度— This matter depends more or less (or in a way , to a certain degree) on your decision . It sort of (or kind of) (= somehow) amazes me . It is partly broken . I half believe in ghosts .

较大程度— He is deeply (or greatly , highly , not a little , very much , more than) impressed . The villagers were mainly killed by the war . Success depends considerably (or in a great degree , to a great extent) on your patience .

I need it badly (or sorely) . It helps a lot (or a great deal) . The car runs nice and (= very) fast . He works good and (= very) hard .

极大程度— The town is entirely (or totally , completely ,

utterly) destroyed . He fully (or thoroughly , quite) understands her . I fairly (or clean) forget about it .

Her heart is broken through and through . You can omit it altogether .

渐渐— The people speak less and less but think more and more . I moved gradually (or bit by bit , step by step , little by little) toward my object .

仅仅— He only (or merely) reads , but never writes .

I just (or simply) asked her about her cat . It is sold exclusively (or solely) at this firm .

足够— Has the fish been cooked enough ?

Could money be sufficiently earned ?

几乎— He nearly lost his job . He almost forgets his own face . He all but died .

过份— He drinks to excess . He worried himself too much .

Don't believe excessively in fate .

图解 :

e . 肯定副词 (短语)

1664 肯定或不肯定副词 (短语) 常常用来修饰整个句子 , 或用在简短回答中。

肯定副词 (短语) :

Surely (or Sure) he knows it ! Surely he knows it ?

Really (or Truly) he knows it .

Undeniably (or Doubtlessly) Rex has been a drug pedlar many years .

Clearly (or Obviously) , Harold was killed by his only opponent .

“ Do you want your children to obey your order ? ”

“ Definitely . ”

You should by all means (= certainly) follow the rules .

“ May I go now ? ” “ By all means (= Certainly) . ”

True (or Indeed) she loves him , but she keeps silent .

Sure enough (or To be sure , No doubt . Without doubt . Undoubtedly , Of course , Naturally) he knows it .

In fact (or In point of fact . As a matter of fact . As it is , As the matter is , In truth , In reality) (=not in name , word , appearance , or imagination) , he is a big shot , a demagogue , not only in name .

I can't tell you for sure (or for certain) .

He has become an alcoholic , all right (or and no mistake) .

不肯定副词 (短语) :

“ Can he possibly know it ? ” “ He may possibly know it . ”

Perhaps (or Probably , Maybe) he is not happy .

Did you , perhaps , see John ?

He generally , but not necessarily , comes at eight .
I dare say (or Presumably) , he won't agree with you .
In all likelihood (or As likely as not) (= most probably) ,
he will lose all his fortune .

图解：

No doubt 和 perhaps 修饰整个句子，注意它们的图解法。

3 . 副词（短语）的位置

a . 有关 7 类副词（短语）位置的特别规律

1665 当副词（短语）修饰动词以外的其他词时，它的位置很容易确定。但在修饰动词时，其位置却不易确定，它可以放在主语前面、助动词前面、主要动词前面、及物动词宾语的前面、补语前面、动词后面、宾语后面或补语后面。在一个特定的句子中，只有一个或两个这类位置，从语法或修辞角度上考虑是最好的。例如在

—John—will—lend—me—his bicycle— . 中，tomorrow 只适宜放在一二个位置上，而不是很多位置上。

下面所给“规律”只是一些建议，因为特定的副词（短语）有特殊的习惯用法，宜于放在某个特定的位置，有些还会随着作者的特殊意图有特殊的位置。

1666 为了决定副词（短语）的位置，我们把它们分作 7 类，而不是 5 类：

1) 地点副词（短语）：there , forward , ashore ; in Japan , at the station , on high

2) 时间副词(短语) : yesterday , ago , yet ; on Sunday , this evening , for five days , from 1950 till 1960 , since last January

3) 频度副词（短语）：often , rarely ; from time to time

4) 肯定副词（短语）：surely , definitely , probably ; no doubt

5) 程度副词（短语）：greatly , partially ; beyond measure , to some degree

6) 方式副词（短语）：slowly , sadly ; at a low price , in jest

7) 疑问副词(短语) : where ? why ? how ? when ? for what reason ?
in which room ?

图解：

不管 tomorrow 在句中位置如何，它在图解中的位置不变。

1) 地点副词（短语）

1667 地点副词（短语）可以：

a) 放在主语前面。能用在这个位置的副词很少，但可用在这个位置的副词短语却很多：

Outside , the wind is blowing . Here I stop . Upstairs they are gambling .

In Japan everybody works hard . From behind a voice said , “ good

morning” . To the west lay a large villa .

Into the city I've never driven this car . (这是错句, 否定谓语不能放在表示方向的状语后面, 而应放在前面, 应当说: I've never driven this car into the city .)

为了强调可以放在主语前面的副词有: off, up, away, over, down, out, in, back, round, on, above, along, about, below, inside, outside

Off went John . Off John went . Off he (代词) went . (但不可说 Off went he .)

Down fell the vase . Away he ran . Round and round flew the bird .

Up you jump ! In you go !

Up with the King ! Down with Fascism ! Off with his head ! Away with you !

可以放在不及物动词及主语前面。用在这个位置的副词为 there, here, 还有一些表示地点的短语, 后面跟有以下不及物动词: be, come, go, follow, stand, sit, lie, remain, live, enter, appear, happen, arise, take place, 然后跟有一个可能较长的表示人或物的主语:

There is a haunted house . There is a haunted house there (or here) . (第一个 there 没有特别意义, 第二个 there 或 here 表示地点。)

There entered an old man who was over eighty years old but looked very healthy and strong . (较长主语)

Here stands a hero of our country . Here comes the car !

Here lies my paradise . There goes Jane ! (但不能说 There goes she !)

At the end of the wood (there) lies a cottage . All around the hut (there) grew many beautiful flowers . In the centre of the hall (there) stood a round table . Far out at sea (there) came a fishing-boat .

b) 放在主要动词前时极少。

c) 放在及物动词后, 放在宾语之前或之后。可放在这个位置的副词为 a) 中所列 off, up, away 等词。如果宾语较长并受到强调, 副词要放在它前面, 如果宾语为代词, 副词则必须放在它后面:

He put on his coat . He put his coat on .

I picked up the book . I picked the book up .

She gave away her money . She gave it away . (不可说 She gave away it .)

He poured me out some tea . (不可说 some tea out)

She sent him off a gift (不可说 a gift off)

(句中有一间接宾语)

She took out “ the eggs , butter , cakes and other things . ”

He picked up “ the money he had thrown away when he had been angry ” .

He will bring back to me “ the radio-set he borrowed last week ” .

(副词必须放在较长的宾语前面)

Drink your wine up . Switch the light on . Put the cigar out .

Take everything down . Take your hat off . (在祈使句中这类副词常放在句末)

I put down (= wrote down) his name . He took over (=assumed control of) the business . We saw through (=were not deceived by) his trick .

We carried the project through (=We completed it successfully , put it into practice) . He laughed the criticism away (=He ignored it) .

(“及物动词+地点副词”常常构成成语，并不表示位置。这种成语有时也可分开，如最后两句的情况。)

如果一个表示地点的副词(短语)和一个表示方向的副词(短语)一起用在一个谓语后面，表示方向的副词(短语)应放在表示地点的副词(短语)前面，它们之间不用 and , or 这类连词：

We drove from west to east in the city (但不可说 We drove in the city from west to east . 也不可说 from west to east and in the city)

如果谓语后跟有两个表示地点的副词(短语)，表示较大地点的副词(短语)要放在表示较小地点的副词(短语)后面，如果要把其中一个放在主语前面，应将表示较大地点的副词(短语)提前：

They can kiss on the street in the U . S . (但不可说 in the U . S . on the street)

In the U . S . they can kiss on the street . (但不可说 On the street they can kiss in the U . S .)

如果有几个表示方向的副词(短语)，则可按事物发生的顺序安排：

From Eighth Street we proceeded past the Grand Hotel to the park , and then turn to the west .

如果副词(短语)表示宾语(而不是主语)的位置，它们应放在宾语后面：

I keep the tools on the rack .

We arranged a picnic in Mary's backyard .

I like a vacation by the seaside .

Everybody expects a revolt from all directions .

This fine climate attracts us to this country .

d) 放在谓语后面时最多(即放在不及物动词、补语、或及物动词的宾语后面)：

He went out . Come this way . The train arrived at my town .

He climbed to the top of the tree .

He feels lonely in a foreign country . The stars look small at a great distance .

Hang your coat over there . I met him downtown .

图解：

2) 时刻或时段的副词 (短语)

1668 表示某个时刻或某段时间的副词 (短语) 可以 :

a) 放在主语前面。可用在这个位置的副词及短语有 :

yesterday , tomorrow , today , now , once , originally , first , recently , soon , immediately ; one morning , just then , three days ago , later on , sooner or later , until then , so far , just now , all at once , during the summer , from 1970 to 1983 , since May , since when ? until when ? how long ago ? ... 还有由 in , at , on , between , by , during , about , before , after , (for) , from ... to (or till) , since , till or until 等介词引起的短语 :

Recently we have been working hard . Soon he arrived at the station . That morning he received his first lesson .

Ten years ago I invested very much capital in business . For three nights she did not sleep . From 1975 to 1979 he and I studied physics . Since a week ago , I have been sick .

不及物动词有时可放在时间副词 (短语) 和主语之间 , 更多的强调主语或引出主语 (可参阅 1667 a)) :

Now came John and many others . First came Lilian . Next came another problem . Then followed an excited dialogue .

During the summer there broke out a great accident .

In the previous week there spread a rumour about his remarriage .

下面的副词 (短语) 常常用在主语前面起从属连词的作用 :

directly , immediately , once , now (原来都是副词) , the moment , the instant , the years , the spring , every time , all the time , the few minutes (原来是名词加修饰语) :

It rained directly (or immediately) (= as soon as) he left home . Once you see him , you will never forget him .

Now you mention it , I do remember . Any time you come , you are welcome . The few minutes he ate , he had ten telephone calls . All the time he talked , I kept silent .

b) 用在助动词前。能这样用的副词及短语除 a) 中第一段所列副词外 , 还有 last , already , yet , before , shortly , just , still , eventually ; for a moment , as before 这类副词或短语 :

He will soon come here . He would some day understand me .

I was yesterday morning walking along the street . He was soon after caught by the policemen . He was some time before put into prison . He has long (since) been a dead man . I have long admired his works . He has recently (or lately) seen her .

c) 间或用在主要动词 (或助动词) 前面 :

He at one time told me the same thing you are telling me .

We formerly did it , but we nowadays forget the custom . I temporarily , but not permanently , love her .

He recently has behaved better than he formerly did .

Peter , a long time ago , had vanquished the giant . He already has seen it . She so far (or this far) hasn't spoken with me .

d) 大多数都放在谓语后面。用在这个位置的有 a) 第一段所列的副词及 early , late , already , yet , shortly , briefly , awhile , long 这类词。能这样用的短语很多 , 包括 a) 中提到的介词短语。

表示某一时刻 (时) 的副词 (短语) :

He came yesterday . He left at the last act . They divided the property on the death of their father . I came (or will come) on Sunday (=last or next Sunday) .

He came (or will come) on a (or the) Sunday (= another Sunday than last or next) . He expressed surprise at see-ing me . I felt envy on hearing the news .

表示某段时间的副词 (短语) :

I have slept(for)hours .He studies English(for)three years .He has been here many months . He has learned medicine since 1950 . He lived here from 1950 till 1958 .It exists to this day .I have opposed it all along . I'll live here forever after . He died here during the war . He visited many places in the course of (= during) the summer (or the trip) . He lived in this village all his life and never left it a day .

图解 :

注意从属连词 directly 的图解法。

3) 频度副词 (短语)

1669 频度副词 (短语) 可以 :

a) 用在主语前 , 表示强调或对比。用在这个位置的词有 never , seldom , rarely , occasionally , sometimes , often , repeatedly ; once a week , four times , from time to time , again and again , now and then , as a rule :

Sometimes he smokes . Usually he came by himself .

Occasionally he called on me . Never have I been there .

b) 间或用在助动词前 (用在简短评语、回答及反驳中 , 这时助动词受到强调) :

“ They can find time for amusements . ” “ They always can . ”
You have learned Japanese , but I never have learned any foreign language . “ I have to cook my own break-fast . ” — “ But I seldom need do so . ”

c) 在大多数情况下用在主要动词前面 , 用于这个位置的大多为单个副词 , 如 :

always , permanently , perpetually , continually , continuously , incessantly(这类表示“ 不断 ”的副词不能用在否定词前 , 不能说 He will always not like it , 而要说 He will never like it .)

Generally , usually , ordinarily , commonly , normally , habitually ,

customarily , regularly ; often , frequently , repeatedly (这类表示高频度的副词可以用在否定结构后 , 表示“ 很少 ” , 如 : I don't usually (= rarely) take breakfast .)

Sometimes , periodically , occasionally (表示中等频度的副词)

Rarely , seldom , hardly (ever) , scarcely (ever) , barely , little , infrequently , unusually , uncommonly (表示低频度的副词)

Never , not , not ever (否定副词)

例句 :

He can hardly see me , because he is shortsighted . She has always smoked . He often goes to the library . He never tells lies . I don't usually (=rarely) go to the theatre .

短语用在这个位置时不多 :

His family has , time after time , got into trouble .

He would , as a rule , get up at six .

d) 上面提到的副词通常放在 be 后面 , 但 be 受到强调时可以放在它前面 :

He always is a fool . He never is wise . He seldom is .

They never are . It hardly is .

e) 放在谓语后面。可用在这个位置的副词有 continually , often , frequently , repeatedly , occasionally ; hourly , daily , monthly ; once , twice , again :

I have said it repeatedly to him . He called on me occasionally .

I take a walk twice daily (不能说 daily twice) .

I learn kungfu three times weekly (or a week) .

常用在这个位置的短语有 :

every four days , each summer , on alternate days as a rule , as usual , most often , often enough , in general , in quick succession many times , not infrequently , again and again , time after time , time and (time) again

once in a while , once and again , now and again , every now and then , at (odd) times , from time to time , off and on , on several occasions

例句 :

This morning we went to work as usual .

I read the poem again and again .

I practise Karate off and on .

I go to the movies once in a long while .

He came daily . He saw her very often .

He did it once in a while . He studies French at odd times .

He taught me four times a week . I learn music every three days

f) c) 中所给副词有些可用在谓语后表示强调或作为以后补加的意思 :

She went to the pictures sometimes .

He loves her always .

图解：

4) 肯定副词 (短语)

1670 表示肯定或不肯定的副词可以：

a) 用在主语前面。用在这个位置的副词或短语可以看作是句子的修饰语，它们是 truly, indeed, really, actually, eventually, surely, obviously, assuredly, undoubtedly, certainly, evidently, apparently, clearly, admittedly, naturally, probably, presumably, perhaps, maybe, possibly, very likely, in truth, in fact, no doubt, of course, as a matter of fact, sure enough, oddly enough, strange enough, rightly or wrongly：

Certainly he can do anything so long as it's profitable.

Surely he divorced her!

In fact, he knows nothing.

b) 用作句子的简化形式。这样的副词或短语有 yes, certainly, quite, absolutely, decidedly, naturally, evidently, obviously, precisely, surely, sure (Am.), willingly, with pleasure, very well, of course, no, never

“Do you know it?” “Yes.”

“Is he a fool?” “Absolutely.”

“Do you love her?” “Of course.”

c) 间或用在助动词前 (用在简短评语、回答及反驳中，这时助动词受到强调)：

He certainly (or surely, probably, possibly) can. He surely has. He simply can't. You surely are. You simply must give up.

d) 在多数情况下用在主要动词前面或助动词后面。能这样用的有 a) 中所列副词或短语，在用作整句修饰语时，前后常加逗号：

He really understand himself? John probably loves her.

My father of course knows you. (用在主要动词前)

He will actually do what he has threatened to. I have, as a matter of fact, done all I can. He has, at any rate, confessed his fault. (用在助动词后面)

比较：I do not really know (= I know very little). I really do not know (= I know nothing).

e) 用在谓语后时很少，除非是表示强调，或作为后来想起的话：

They will get married, perhaps.

John has done something silly—no doubt.

You didn't complain to her, Surely (= I believe or hope).

图解：

注：句子修饰语 in fact 的图解法。

5) 程度副词 (短语)

1671 程度副词 (短语)：

a) 用在主语或助动词前时很少。

b) 常常用在主要动词前面。能这样用的副词及短语有：

almost , nearly , entirely , thoroughly , perfectly , vaguely , slightly , strongly , little , in all likelihood , as much as , not so much as , as good as , sort of , at any rate , at least :

I almost cried . He quite agrees with me . He wholly forgot that . He half smiled and half cried . He rather hates it . I hardly think so . I scarcely understand it .

He has fully understood her . They will , on the whole , agree to my proposal . The business will , in the fullest degree (or in some measure) , depend upon the political situation . (用在助动词后面)

He does not see it . (not 必须放在助动词及主要动词之间)

Can't he go ? (问句)

Don't talk too much . (禁止)

但 not 放在 being 及 having 前面 :

Not being able to go , I stayed at home with Mother .

Not having finished my work , I can't leave .

此外 , 有时有另一副词 (短语) 可放在 not 和主要动词之间 :

He does not entirely believe me .

c) 常常放在谓语后面 :

I like it very much . They need a house badly . I depend upon him fully for advice . I respect him highly (or greatly) . He needs money terribly (or awfully , dreadfully) . He suffered to such a degree . I love Mary best of all . I know it quite well . He loved her to a ridiculous extent .

I don't care (or care not) a jot (or a button , a bit , a whit , a morsel , a fig , a damn) about it . I don't mind (or value) it a rush (or a rotten nut) . He blamed me no end . She laughed no end . I love my mother a whole big balloon . He thought world of his sweetheart . This accident speaks volumes for the danger of a drunken driver . (用作程度副词的名词或名词短语必须放在谓语或动词后面)

图解 :

6) 方式副词 (短语)

1672 方式副词 (短语) 可以 :

a) 放在主语前用来加强语气。可这样用的副词及短语不计其数 :

Suddenly the door opened . Slowly he walked down the street . Slowly and impressively he rose from the seat . In a low voice he spoke . With one blow of his axe he cut it off . One by one they came out . To his great delight he saw his home again . Slowly , but with courage , did he accomplish it . All at once did we start .

Bang goes the door Whizz goes the arrow . Snap went the

rope . Crash went the glass . Thud went the bag of rice . Crack came the bottle . Pop come the accident . Crash went the disaster of the family . (表示声音的副词常放在动词 go 或 come 前面)

如果主语前有 well , so , to such straits 这样的副词 (短语) , 它们和主语之间应有一个助动词 :

Well can we say that . Well may he do anything he likes .

He has started and so must all of us . If he can go , so can we .

I like art and specially do I like music .

To such straits was I reduced ! To such lengths did he go that nobody wanted to talk with him . To such a point (or a degree) will the war go on that all will be destroyed .

副词前若有 how 与它构成感叹句 , 则副词必须放在主语前面 :

How beautifully she sings ! How quickly he runs !

下面这些副词称为连接副词 , 通常放在主语前 , 可以看作一种并列连词 : besides , also , then , likewise , moreover , again , in addition , nap , what is more ; only , still , all the same , however , nevertheless , and yet , howbeit , con versely , on the contrary , on the other hand ; therefore , hence , so , thus , consequently , accordingly , then , in consequence , as a result ; otherwise , else (可参阅 1668a)) :

It may sound strange ; however , it is true . He always wears a red shirt ; hence he is so nicknamed . He is poor ; besides , he has a large family . Now he cried ; then he laughed . He liked gambling ; as a result he became a good - for - nothing .

下面这些词 , 特别是放在主语前面时 , 修饰整个句子 : fortunately , luckily , unluckily (for him) , happily , tragically ; clearly , indisputable ; essentially , characteristically ; similarly ; incidently , inevitably , naturally , normally ; curiously , interestingly , miraculously , ironically , surprisingly , unexpectedly ; personally , honestly , frankly ; geographically , militarily , politically , culturally ; namely ; firstly , finally , lastly ; as for me , as to your proposal ; by the way ; for instance , for example ; first of all , in the first place ; to my thinking ; at any rate , in any case , in short , in brief , in fine , in conclusion , in a word , in one word , in other words ; in plain English , in plain words ; oddly enough .

Interestingly , the eye is like a camera . Hands manipulate tools ; more important , they create civilization . Unfortunately he dies of tuberculosis . Personally , I do not like his manner of speaking . Geographically , Laos is a small country . As for my school , English is the main subject . In a word , this is not an easy job .

b) 用在主要动词前或助动词后。 a) 中所列连接副词及修饰整个句

子的副词及短语可用在口语中，前后有停顿，在书面语中前后有逗号，当这种副词及短语较不重要时，可用于这个位置：

My brother , besides , knows five languages . Most people , naturally , like peace . Japan and China , historically , belong to the same group . John and Mary , likewise , can help us . This , however , will simplify matters .

This will , however , simplify matters . They must , accordingly , inspect the spot of the murder . Most people will , of course , see through his trick . Many passengers have , luckily , been saved .

可用在主要动词前或助动词后，特别是认为这个主要动词比副词(短语)更重要，或是后面跟有一个较长的修饰语或宾语时。这种副词很多，如 bravely , quietly , 凡所有以 -ly 结尾的副词都可以这样用，这种短语也很多：

He ardently desired it . He deeply regretted his past .

He slowly walked down the street with his son . He promptly answered the letter . He has anxiously inquired for his brother , who suddenly disappeared years ago .

The clown , with no warning , jumped from behind the sofa . John , like every other child , is fond of sweets and fruit . The woman , with tears in her eyes , left her husband . (这种短语前后都要加逗号)

He had , by mistake , thrown it away . It may , for convenience , be left here . Any boy can , under a suitable condition , grow into a great man . He has , in a fit of anger , killed a steadfast and trusted friend .

c) 在多数情况下都用在谓语后面。大多数方式副词及短语都可以或必须放在这个位置：

He spoke naturally (= unaffectedly) . [Cf . Naturally (= of course) he knows .] He looked in curiously . He looked at the boy smilingly . He ran away fearfully .

The work has been done carefully (or , has been carefully done) . Please hold it tightly .

They revolted against the unjust measure . You can do it at your pleasure . He sold it for seven dollars . He distributed the property among his sons . He would have gone out but for rain . The engine goes by steam . We drank liquor by the gallon . Prepare for the worst . He translates the article word by word . We started for Hong Kong . We cannot refrain from tears . He was taken aback on being told about this .

He stood there , hat in hand (or cigar in mouth , gun on shoulder) . He came home with face clouded (or with smiling face , with beating heart , with bent head) . (这种短语中的名词前不加冠词)

He looked my way . He travelled third - class . (用名词作状语)

It costs ten dollars , weighs 30 kilograms . I bought it (for) five dollars , (at) five dollars a pound . (表示数量的名词可以用作状语)

His heart went thump . The door went bang . The house fell crash down . She hit him smack in the face . (可和 a) 类句子比较)

d) 下面例句表明了一类方式副词 (短语) 的用法及位置 , 这类副词 (短语) 表示说话人的评语 , 修饰整个句子 :

Dennis suffered , very unjustly , for a fault not his own .

They rose in revolt , ungratefully , against their leader .

He remained , wisely , single until thirty .

图解 :

7) 疑问副词 (短语)

1673 疑问副词 (短语) 必须用在助动词及主语前面 :

When do you start ? How can you do it ? Where does your brother study English ? Why should they resign ?

In what way did he get it ? For what reason could he speak ill of me ? In which paper did you read the news ? Of whom are you thinking (口语中多说 Who are you thinking of) ? What time did you come ?

图解 :

b . 关于副词 (短语) 位置的 19 条一般规则

1674 1) 除了 on , away , up , down 这样的地点副词 , 没有其他副词 (短语) 可以放在及物动词及其宾语之间。下面例句中的副词 (短语) 都放在错误位置 , 应当放到宾语后面去 :

He speaks fluently English . He likes very much my suggestion . He understands very clearly your viewpoint . He reviews again and again his lessons .

但如果 a) 宾语比副词 (短语) 长得多 , b) 宾语被认为比较重要 , 或 c) 宾语是一个从句 , 则这个副词 (短语) 必须放宾语、动词或主语的前面 :

a) He brought to school so many books , pictures , magazines etc . I copied from him the lecture notes concerning the structure of the atom . Please return before Sunday all the books you have borrowed from the library . He put into execution the plan he made years ago . She took to heart what I had told him . (放在宾语前 , 主要动词后面)

We have , with great difficulty , defended this village of our fathers and sons . The enemy has many times attacked the people inhabiting this area . (放在主要动词前面)

Here they study chemistry , physics , biology and mathematics . With incredible speed , he conquered all his opponents

who had looked down upon him. (放在主语前面)

b) He received from his friends many precious gifts. He emphasized from time to time the importance of love and duty. John is reading very carefully a letter from his wife.

c) After a moment I said that I could do nothing for her. I asked out of curiosity with which boy she dined yesterday evening.

1675 2) 肯定、程度及频度副词绝大多数放在主要动词前或助动词后：

He certainly loves his parents.

He will probably come tomorrow.

I very well know the value of his assistance.

He little understands what he himself says.

He seldom goes to the movies.

John has sometimes written to Mary.

I shall always remember what you have done for me.

1676 3) 如果动词为 be, 则副词 (短语) 通常都放在 be 和补语之间：

He is, no doubt, a good doctor.

The amount is, in all probability, the same as before.

He is, to some extent (or in a way), a famous musician.

He is rarely sick.

He is always late.

副词 (短语) 也可用在被动结构中, 位置在 be 和过去分词之间：

It will be altogether forgotten. The workers were fully employed. It is earnestly hoped that... The war is needlessly prolonged.

1677 4) 如果有几类副词 (短语) 一起用, 它们的顺序可安排如下：

肯定	地点	方式	频度	时间
----	----	----	----	----

He probably went	to Japan	by air	twice	in 1962.
------------------	----------	--------	-------	----------

We met	there	unexpectedly		last Monday.
--------	-------	--------------	--	--------------

He's certainly gone		abroad		with his
wife		recently.		

I	studied	in London		under Mr. A
	for a year.			

1678 5) 如果有两个时间状语, 表示较小单位时间的状语宜放在较大单位时间的前面：

I will meet you at three o'clock tomorrow. I saw the film on Tuesday evening last week.

如果较大单位时间比较重要, 或较小单位时间是后来想起的, 则其顺序也可以颠倒：

I arrived yesterday afternoon, about five o'clock. She and I got married in 1968, in the month of July.

1679 6) 有两个地点状语时, 较小的单位一般放在前面, 但有时也不如此, 其顺序往往根据文体或句子平衡的需要来安排：

He lived at a small village in a northern state. We spent the holidays at a cottage in the mountains. We spent the holidays in

the mountains , at a cottage we rented from a friend .

1680 7) 最好不要把所有的状语放在一个地方 :

I returned " to the village " " by train " " before dark " " one day " . (不好)

" One day before dark " I returned " to the village " " by train . " (较好)

1681 8) 如果把几个状语放在一起 , 通常宜于把最短的放在前面 , 把最长的放在最后 :

He arrived " silently " " after all his companions " . He slept " soundly " " on a very large bed " . He sat " down " " by mistake " " on the back of a sleeping crocodile " .

" Tomorrow " " at five " " when it begins to dawn " , I shall go to a distant city . I shall stay " here " " for three days " " while the festival is going on " . " Yesterday " " just before breakfast " " when I was writing a letter " , Mr . A called at my house . (先是单词 , 然后是短语 , 最后是从句。)

1682 9) 像 refer to , insist on , beware of ; play hell with , take care of , lay stress on ; live up to , put up with , look down on ; line up , get along , fool about , carry on , give forth , gamble away 这样的成语最好不要分开 :

He has always firmly and passionately believed in manners . (比 believed firmly and passionately in manners . 好)

He depends upon his uncle for his education . (比 depends for his education upon his uncle 好)

she looks patiently after the baby . (中间有时可插入短的状语)

1683 10) 包含 this , that , like , such , so , thus , the 这类词的状语 , 和其他与前面句子或段落有关的状语 , 最好放在主语前面 :

Just at that moment , a man came . At such a sight , they all shuddered . In this manner he died . So they said . So I do . So do I . Thus they started the rebellion . Here he stopped . After the war , many were starved . In like manner they were killed . From what has been said , this theory is very easy to understand .

1684 11) 放在动词前的状语带有装饰性 , 有时可以省掉 , 而放在动词后面的状语比较强调 , 更为重要 :

They suddenly attacked us . They attacked us suddenly .

We quietly went away . We went away quietly .

I immediately corrected it . I corrected it immediately .

I often go to the pictures . I go to the pictures very often .

1685 12) 一个状语 , 为了强调而加以重复时 , 必须放在句子前面 :

She decides to go tomorrow , and tomorrow she must go .

She cried sorrowfully , and sorrowfully everyone sighed .

John learned Chinese with difficulty , and with difficulty he had learned everything .

(Cf . He is as happy as happy (形容词) can be . If mother thinks I must have a wife , wife (名词) I must have .)

1686 13) 最好不要把状语放在两个动词之间，以免意思含糊不清。下面句子都不妥当，需要改正。例如在第一个句子中，如果 immediately 修饰第一个动词，那它应当放在 wrote 的前面，反之，如果它修饰第二个动词，它就应当放在 tell the news 后面：

I wrote immediately to tell him the news .

I have telephoned to him three times to come . (最好说 I have three times telephoned to him to come . 或是说 I have telephoned to him to come three times .)

To inform him immediately I rang him up . (在 immediately 之后应加一逗号)

下面例句是正确的：

My son now and then asked (×) to follow me to the cinema . He earnestly hoped (×) to see me . John kindly suggested (×) taking care of my little girl . She candidly admitted (×) having gone out with her boyfriend . (“ × ” 表示状语不宜放的位置。)

1687 14) 如果主要动词前有两个助动词，修饰整个句子的副词（特别是频度及肯定副词）要放在两个助动词之间，而修饰主要动词的副词（特别是方式副词）应放在这个动词的前面：

a) Tigers have often been discovered in this area .

You can never have seen such a beautiful place .

He will probably be made President of the Company .

He has surely been punished for his offence .

He may , unfortunately , be killed by robbers .

b) This decision will be publicly announced .

I would have carefully done it , if it had been useful .

He must have seriously considered this matter .

1688 15) 要使副词（短语）尽可能靠近它修饰的动词：

We went to deserted village almost ten miles away from the capital yesterday . (不好)

We went yesterday to...capital . (较好)

Yesterday a guest who had come from a distant country called on me . (不好)

A guest...me yesterday . (较好)

Immediately , he told me to leave his house . (不好)

He told me to leave his house immediately . (较好)

1689 16) 某些副词，如 only , alone , also , too , even , 可能只与某个词有关，应尽量使之靠近这个词：

Only John (n .) (Nobody else) saw Mary there two days ago .

John only saw (v .) Mary (did not talk with her) there two days ago .

John saw only Mary (n .) (not anybody else) there two days ago .

John saw Mary only there (adv.) (not in any other place) two days ago .

John saw Mary there only two days ago (adv - phrase) (not more than two days ago) .

He alone (Nobody else) loves her .

He loved her alone (nobody else) .

He loves her for her simplicity alone (not for any other reason) .

Even John (not only his elder brothers and sisters) writes articles for the newspaper .

John even writes articles for the newspaper (not only does other things less important) .

John writes even articles for the newspaper (not only letters , which are easier to write) .

John writes articles even for the newspaper (not only for his own school) .

Her husband , too (not only she) , spends a lot of money .

Her husband spends a lot of money , too (not only earns so much) .

Her husband spends a lot of money on dress too (not only on other things) .

1690 17) 一个包含否定词 (或有否定意义的词) 的副词 (短语) 可以放在 “ 助动词+主语+主要动词 ” 的前面来加以强调 :

Nowhere can I find a cleaner place . (否定的地点副词或短语)

In no other land do I wish to live and die .

Neither from the north nor from the south does he come .

Only to Asia (=To no other places than Asia) can we export our goods

From the Middle East alone (=From no other areas than the Middle East) does this country obtain its oil .

Not until sixteen had this great writer learned to write .

(否定的时间副词或短语)

Never have I said anything to him . (正确)

No have I said anything to him . (错句 , not 虽为否定词 , 都必须用在短语中 , 不能单独这样用。)

No to anyone have I said anything . (正确)

No sooner had I touch the pillow than I fell asleep .

For only a few (= not many) months could my married life be called happy .

Less than a month have I learned to cook .

No a fig does he care ! (程度副词或短语)

If you do not know her , much (even , still) less do I .

If you can't answer the question , no more can I .

Least of all could I kill anyone .

Hardly (or Scarcely) (=Not quite) had he seen me when he

called out to me .

Never in all her life has she seen such a handsome man .

(频度副词或短语)

Rarely (or Seldom) (= Not often) did he notice such a matter .

Not infrequently may I get the permission to see the boss .

No longer can I stand his impudence .

By no means must you say that . (方式副词或短语)

Under (or In) no circumstances must anyone violate the rules .

Only by stealing can he make his living .

Only when one has enough to eat can one be honest . (副词+
状语从句)

No though you made a request would he agree .

Hardly ever has there been any case like that . (注意 there been
的位置)

Never will there be any World War .

不过 , 要是是一个短语 , 虽然包含否定词 , 却没有否定意义 , 句子仍
用正常语序 :

Not long (= A short time) ago I still saw him . (不要说 did I
still see him .)

Not many (= A few) months later , he came again .

Not infrequently (= Often) he told me the same story .

(也可说 did he tell...)

Not only she agreed , but also her husband said “ yes ” .

(也可说 Not only did she agree...)

尽管副词 (短语) 并不是否定的 , 间或也可有 “ 副词 (短语) + 助动
词 + 主语 + 主要动词 ” 这样的语序 :

In vain have I written all these articles .

From time to time has he said that , but nobody cares .

Still more was I impressed with her manners .

Many a night did John wait for her at the corner .

Of the fifty students , can only five pass this year .

1691 18) 副词 (短语) , 特别是地点和时间副词 (短语) , 可以放在
表示 “ 存在 ” 、 “ 出现 ” 、 “ 发生 ” 等的不及物动词前面 , 而主语 (第
一次出现的东西或加以强调的东西) 放在后面 (参阅 1667 a) , 1668 a)) :
地点副词 (短语) :

At the end of the wood stood a church .

By the front door entered three soldiers .

In this beautiful palace lived a king and his daughter .

All around the house grew millions of flowers .

On the grass (there) lay a shepherd . (在状语和不及物动词之
间可以加 there , 也可不加。)

By the river (there) has a pagoda (短的主语) stood for 101
years .

By the river (there) has stood a pagoda as high as 30 meters .

There happened an accident in this city. (这里的 there 不可省略)

时间副词 (短语) :

Soon after this omen began a revolt.

At last came the wedding day.

In 1952 was born one of my daughters.

When father returned from France, there happened (or took place) something strange. (带有状语从句)

Just as they drank merrily, there came a terrible knock at the door.

如果句子主语很长, 可以放在不及物动词后面, 而把副词 (短语) 放在动词前面:

In all her splendour appeared the bride followed by two pretty children.

For the sake of justice died hundreds of people who made a peaceful protest.

In such surroundings there was born (= appeared) a man of extraordinary ability, destined to save his nation. (被动语态的动词在语法上相当于一个不及物动词)

In her hands was placed all his being and all his happiness.

There was taken to the mayor a man one hundred and twenty years of age and still in good health.

1692 19) 有些副词可以放在几个位置, 而有不同的意思:

NOW

I am now (= at this moment) reading a novel.

I am reading a novel now (更为强调).

He lost all his money in gambling. Now (用作连接副词, 对前面的话加以解释, 或只引起注意) this money he had borrowed from his aunt.

AGAIN

I again (= once more) tried the project.

I tried the project again (更为强调).

He is a scientist, and again (= besides, 用作连接副词) he knows seven languages.

SO

I told him so (= the same thing).

It is raining, so (= therefore, 用作连接副词) I can't go out.

INDEED

He knows a lot of things indeed (用来加强语气).

He is, indeed (系动词 be 之后), the best man I know.

Indeed (和 but 连用), he knows a lot of things, but he is selfish.

ONLY

I can tell you only (放在宾语前面) this (= nothing else than

this) .

He is very kind , only (= yet , 用作连接副词) he doesn't know how to talk .

ONCE

I have been there once (= one time , on one occasion) .

He once (= formerly) lived in the country .

Once (= after one time , 用作连接副词) I visited the place , I could recognize all the streets .

YET

He has not yet (= till now) come .

He has studied English five years , yet (= but) he is unable to write letters .

B . 状语从句

1693 状语从句和副词 (短语) 一样 , 可以修饰谓语动词。根据引起从句的连接词或连接短语的意义 , 这种从句可以分为 15 种。它们是 1 . 时间状语从句 , 2 . 地点状语从句 , 3 . 比较状语从句 , 4 . 方式状语从句 , 5 . 伴随情况状语从句 , 6 . 对比状语从句 , 7 . 原因或理由状语从句 , 8 . 结果或程度状语从句 , 9 . 目的状语从句 , 10 . 条件状语从句 , 11 . 依据状语从句 , 12 . 让步状语从句 , 13 . “ 不管 ” 状语从句 , 14 . 限制状语从句 , 以及 15 . 例外状语从句。

1694 大多数状语从句可以放在主句前面或主句后面。放在主句前面时 , 整个句子比较紧凑 , 读者须一气看到句子末尾方知究竟。放在主句后面时 , 整个句子比较松散 , 读者在看完整句前已知道主要意思。此外 , 状语从句还可插在主句中间 , 这时它的地位较不显著。下面 3 个例句表示了 3 种不同位置 :

When he saw the thief , our neighbour began to shout .

Our neighbour began to shout when he saw the thief .

Our neighbour , when he saw the thief , began to shout .

在以后章节中 , 通常主句在后的句子都加上 (P) 这个记号 (表示 periodic , 即主句在后) , 通常从句在后的句子都加上 (L) 这个记号 (表示 loose , 是松散的意思) 。

1695 当状语从句在主语之前时 , 如果两者的主语表示同一个人 , 其中任何一个主语都可以用代词表示。如果主句在状语从句前面 , 则只有状语从句的主语可以用代词表示 :

When Tom speaks Chinese , he looks awkward . (正确)

When he speaks Chinese , Tom looks awkward . (正确)

Tom looks awkward when he speaks Chinese . (正确)

He looks awkward when Tom speaks Chinese . (错句)

1696 1 . 时间状语从句

表示某个时刻 :

I studied English when (or while , as) I was young .

Someone uttered a cry when (or while , as) we were having a

picnic .

The audience applauded John when(or as ,但不可用 while)he ended his speech .

When the war ended ,millions had been killed .

I will come when (or if ,但不可用 while) I am free .

You will be unhappy when you are old and poor .

When(or After) I die ,my children can take care of themselves .

When she turned off the light , she (同一主语) went to bed .

When she had turned off the light ,she went to bed . (较清楚)

It began to rain just as I arrived home .

He kissed Mary just when his wife entered the room .

The villagers were enjoying their peaceful life when a war broke out . (L) (这里 when 意思接近“ and then ”或“ but just then ”)

We were having our picnic when it rained .

I was walking along when someone patted me on the back .

I was deep in gambling when the police entered .

This new policy came in the very times when they really needed it .

By the time the war ended ,millions of children became orphans .

The next time she saw him ,he was cooking rice .

表示某段时间 :

The twelve days I was in Tokyo ,I was extremely busy . (All) the while I was reading ,they were playing mahjong .

You won't be hungry so long as (or as long as ,while) I have enough to eat . (只要我有饭吃 ,你就不致挨饿。)

I can never be happy so long as my enemy is still alive .

I love you while I live . I'm happy as and when you're happp .

I have learned(till now)many things(ever)since I left school .

I had learned (till then) many things since I had left school .

表示频度 :

Each (or Every) time I spoke ,I was criticized . (每次说话 ,必受批评。)

They quarrel as often as (or whenever ,every time) they meet .

Come whenever (or any time ,no matter when) you are free .

表示“立即” ,“一.....就.....” :

They quarrelled (as) soon as (or directly , immediately , the moment , the instant) the wedding ceremony ended . (婚礼一完就吵起来。)

He had scarcely(or hardly ,barely , only just) began his song when the audience shouted at him . (L)

They had no sooner concluded the war than they were faced with pestilence .

I had not been in India before I married an Indian girl .

The words were scarcely out of my mouth before Mary cried .

表示“在.....之前”：

Look before you jump . Don't jump before you look .

I will die before (= rather than that) I surrender .

I would do anything before (= rather than that) my family should want .

One must work hard before he succeeds (= if he intends to succeed) .

表示“在.....之后”：

He remained pig - headed after (= though) he (had) failed .

He wants to be famous after he becomes rich .

表示“直到”：

He slept until it was nine (时刻) 。 (从句常在主句后)

(till 是口语体 , 可以代替 until .)

The mother sang a lullaby till the baby went to sleep .

He did not get up till it was nine . (= It was nine before he got up = Not until it was nine did he get up .) 要到九点 , 方才起床。)

He was not able to walk until he was five years old .

Until I met her , I had never known what's love .

图解：

1697 2 . 地点状语从句

They arrived where (= at the place where) they had fallen in love ten years ago . (L)

We eat , sleep and work where our forefathers have lived and died .

We have to go where (= to the place where) everybody has to go . (L)

He took me where we might dine and talk .

He is welcome wherever (or anywhere) he goes .

You may go anywhere (or wherever) you like (or choose , can , please , want to) .

Where (or When , If there is smoke , there is fire . (P)

Where there is life , there is hope . (P)

We can't cooperate where there is no common benefit .

图解：

1698 3 . 比较状语从句

比较状语从句通常由 as 或 than 引起 , 有些句子成分通常省略 (参阅 1778) 。这类从句和大多数状语从句不同 , 它们不修饰动词 , 而是修饰 as so , less more 等副词 , 或其他比较级的词 , 如 taller , harder . 在这里讨论它们 , 不是作为动词修饰语 , 而是作为一种状语从句。包含这类从句的句子通常为 L , 即从句在后 :

She is as tall as I (or me) .
 He works as hard as his brother (does) .
 He does not work as hard as his brother .
 He does not work . so hard as his brother .
 No other men work as (or so) hard as his brother (does) .
 No other men work as hard as does his brother .
 She is taller than I (or me) .
 She is taller this year than (she was tall) last year .
 She is more shy than unsocial .
 She thinks more about her appearance than (she thinks about)
 about her personality .
 She finds it easier to read than to write .
 She is not taller than I . (Both are tall .)
 She is no taller than I . (Both are short .)
 I cannot persuade him any more than your persuade a pillar . (=
 I am unable to persuade him , just as you are unable to persuade
 a pillar .)
 I can forget her no more than she (forgets) me .
 Nothing is more dangerous than that you (should) make friends
 with him .
 I will help you rather than that you (should) have any trouble .
 It is better that we should die rather than that we (should)
 be slaves .
 He is only less silly than (= almost as silly as) John .
 Than him nobody is more clever . (= He is the cleverest man .)
 (than 在这里的作用更接近介词)
 Than this there are no better places . (This is the best place .)
 I know John , than whom I have never seen a sillier man .
 图解 :

1699 4 . 方式状语从句

方式状语从句和比较状语从句不同。比较状语从句通常由 as 和 than 引起，不修饰主句里的动词，常有一些成分省略。方式状语从句只由 as 引起，修饰主句中的动词，只在少数情况下有些词省略（例如下面方括号中的词）：

Men fear death as (=in the same manner as) children fear the dark .
 Air is to man as (or what) water is to fish .
 Man is inclined to do evil as water is inclined to flow down .
 She played with him as a cat would [play] with a mouse .
 He climbed Mount Everest just as you would [climb] a ladder .
 As he had [lost heart] before , he lost heart as soon as he saw

her .

He has sent the letter as he was told [to send it] .

He sacrificed himself as he had pledged[to sacrifice himself] .

As everyone expected , the police came at once .

As I know , he has been a prisoner .

As it seems , the public ignore the accident .

As the story runs (or goes) , they got married secretly .

Great minds think alike , as the saying is .

Describe the accident as it is . I left the matter as it was .

Now ,as before(=as she did before) ,she still loves his parents , though she's got married .

Today , as for centuries past , peasants are important to a country .

In this case , as in others , one cannot be too honest .

As when she had lost her puppy last year , she cried bitterly .

He speaks , as it were , for your benefit (but he doesn't) .

He feels , as it were , insulted and neglected by all men .

I will do it exactly (or precisely , just , quite , muck) as I am told . (as 前面可有副词 (短语) 修饰它)

I will do it the way (= as) I am told .

I will do it like (or same as) you did . (口语体)

We do business the same as they do . (商业用语)

He was punished , as were the other offenders (= as other offenders were punished) . (助动词若被提到主语前面 , 可代表整个谓语。)

She learns English , as do many other girls (= as many other girls learn English .)

Asians can kiss in streets today , as can Americans .

He talks as if he were (or was) a professor and that (= as if) he knew a lot of art . (在 as if 引起的从句中 , 谓语通常为虚拟语气。)

He feels as if nothing were wrong .

He feels like nothing is wrong . (口语体)

He seems (or looks) as if he knows it (= may know it) . (陈述语气)

It seems (or looks) like he knows it . (口语体)

He laughed and cried just (or much , precisely) as if he went mad .

He went in a hurry as though (= as if) he had some - thing urgent to do .

His home is as (= in the same condition as) he left it fifty years ago .

He is just as I think about him .

Everything is almost as we saw it in India .

Our viewpoint is as you have known it for many years .
 As you sow , so you will reap . (P)
 As fire tries gold , so does adversity try friendship .
 As in war , so in love . (主语谓语都没有)
 As with individuals , so with nations .
 As is the father , so is the son .
 I love him as (= like) a son of mine . (as 用作介词)
 She swims as a fish .
 They rose as one man .
 Do it in whatever way (= as) you can .
 In this country one can act however (= as) one wishes .
 We can eat and drink how (= as) we like .
 Aunt is partial towards me , like towards a baby .
 I bought a used TV set as is (= without repairs) .

图解 :

as 引起的从句修饰副词 so .

1700 5 . 伴随情况状语从句

I never gambled that I did not lost money . (L) (= I never gambled without losing money = I lost money whenever I gambled .)
 We never meet but we quarrel . (but 为陈旧用法 = that not)
 He never courts a girl but he is laughed at .
 It never rains but it pours .
 Few men say anything but someone would criticize it .
 Never a day passes but that (or but what) (= but) they have some trouble . (少见)
 I never see liquor without (= but) I drink it . (文盲语言)
 I never drink it without I get drunk .

图解 :

1701 6 . 对比状语从句

Human lives are so cheap , while bread is so dear .
 He walked while he might ride .
 He sold it for ten dollars when (or while , whereas) every- one else sold it for twelve .
 Some die of hunger , while others die of eating too much .
 Some study the secret of longevity , whereas others study the method of killing .

图解 :

1702 7 . 原因或理由状语从句

The crops failed because the season was ill . (L)
 The crops did not fail because the season was ill .

(=The crops failed , but not because the season was ill .)

The crops did not fail , because the season was favourable . (注意从句前的逗号)

I love him (all) the more because he is simple . I do not love him the less because he is simple ; 或 I love him none the less because he is simple . (=I still love him though he is simple .) (L)

As it is so easy , you can do it at once . (=It is , as you know , so easy , so you can do it at once .)

Since (较 as 更文气一些) it is so easy , you can do it . (since , as 和 now 常可用来开始一个句子 , 意思不及 because 那样强。)

Now (that) everything is ready , we must hesitate no more .

I'll tell you something , now we are alone .

He shall be pardoned seeing that (or considering that , in view of the fact that) he is very young .

He must be punished seeing that he has committed the crime three times .

He does wrong in that he leaves his children uneducated . (L)

He is a fool in that he married a slut . (in that 为较文气用法)

He will resign in as much as (or for the reason that , on the ground (s) that) he is too old . (in as much as 和 in so much as 都是文气的用法)

Whereas (=Seeing that , 为法律用语) the place is dangerous , nobody is allowed to stand near . (P)

She could not keep still , so happy was she (or she was so happy) . (L) (在使用 so 或 such 时 , 表示原因的连词常常省略。比较 : She was so happy that she could not keep still .)

I cannot understand , he speaks so fast .

He moved the audience , he spoke with such eloquence .

Fool that I was (=As I was a fool) , I was cheated . (fool 前不加冠词)

He refused to quarrel with anyone , great scholar that he was .

He failed , not that he was lazy , but (because) he was ill .

图解 :

1703 8 . 结果或程度状语从句

Microbes are so small that they can't be seen with our eyes . (L)

Microbes are small , so that they can't be seen with our eyes . (注意从句前的逗号)

He studied hard (so) that he finally succeeded . (so 可以省略)

He speaks so fast (that) I can't understand him . (that 可以省略 , 特别是在口语中。)

The book is so easy (that) everyone can read it .

He spoke with such eloquence (that) they were moved .

(such 用在名词前面 , 而 so 用在形容词或副词前面。)

It was extremely cold , so much so that (or insomuch that) nobody went out . (较文气说法)

Let them curse me as much as they please .

Both sides were killed to the degree that (or to such an extent as) they dare not fight any more .

No man is so old but (that) he may learn (=that he may not learn) . (L) (两部分都有否定意思)

Nothing is so hard but what (口语体) it comes easy by practice .

Are you my father that you should order me about ? (L)

(在这类带有情绪的句子中 , 主句可能是一个问句。)

Is he really blind that he should not see it ?

Am I a dog that you should treat me like that ?

Who are you that you dare to insult me ?

What is happening there that they should be so noisy ?

Where have you been that you should be so angry ?

What a fool I am that I should marry such a pig ! (主句可以是感叹句)

How clever you are that you do know how to curse now !

图解 :

1704 9 . 目的状语从句

He works hard (in order , in the hope , on purpose , for the purpose , to the end) that he may succeed .

He works so hard that he may (or can , will) succeed . (L)

Ten apples were bought (so) that each child should have one .

I waved so (that) they could see .

We hid away the cakes so (that) no one should see them . (L)

We hid away the cakes for fear (that) he should (or might) see them .

We work hard lest we should fail . (较文气说法)

We fight on till we achieve independence .

图解 :

1705 10 . 条件状语从句

If it rains , I shall (or will , can , may) not go out . (I do not know whether it will rain or not .)

If it should rain , I shall (or will , can , may) not go out . (I do not know whether it will rain or not .)

If it should rain , I should (or would , could , might) not go out . (I don't think it will rain .)

If it rained , I should (or would , could , might) not go out . (I

know it will not rain.)

If it had rained , I should (or would , could , might) not have gone out . (I know it did not rain .)

If it rained , he will (or can , may) not have gone out . (I do not know whether it rained or not .) If he only (or but) works harder , he will succeed . (He doesn't have to do anything else in order to succeed .)

If you only care to flatter your boss , you will be promoted .

If and when I die , you must take good care of your-self .

He may resign if he so desires (or chooses , wills , purposes) .

I may do anything if I intend (or wish , like , will) it .

He is nothing if (he is) not (=absolutely , decidedly) a cheat .

Your guess is nothing if (it is) not correct .

Ask that gentleman if gentleman (不加冠词) he be . (倒装语序)

His conscience forbade him to do so , if conscience he had .

I have succeeded in persuading a drunkard , if succeed one can .

Let me know your reason , if reason there is .

I have told her ten times , if I have done once (=exactly) .

The mountain is 5650 feet , if an inch (=exactly) .

If ever there was a hero , I saw one . (If 引起的从句可加强主句的语气)

I love lilies , if ever I have loved any flowers in my life .

If I have ever eaten the best food , it was at the Diamond . (赞许)

If anyone knows how to handle several wives , it is Lee Ming .

If the Lucky serves good food , every restaurant does . (批评)

If Wang Soo is expert in kungfu , I don't know who is .

If she agrees , if her parents do not refuse , and if I have been graduated , then I will marry her . (如主句前面有几个 if 引起的从句 , 或从句较长 , 可加 then .)

If you , my daughter , realize that one should be friendly to others , no matter whether they are rich or poor , then you will treat your servant better .

I cheat you ? If so , you kill me . If not , I kill you . (If 引起的从句中主语和动词都没有)

Call a doctor , if necessary ; and ask Mary to look after baby , if possible .

Supposing (or Suppose) it were so , what would you do ? (常用在问句中)

Suppose you get sick , who will take care of you ?

Suppose we go for a swim . (提出建议 , 没有主句 .)

Suppose our plan has been detected by the police . (忧虑)

Provided (or Providing) (that) you give me a receipt , I will pay the rent .

Provided always (or Always provided) (较为强调) (that) he confesses his fault , he will be pardoned .

I will give him anything he wants on condition that he will show good manners .

So(=Provided) (少见) you offend nobody , you may take courage .

So long as (or As long as) one is honest , one can get a-long at any nook .

There's war in so far as there's the earth beneath our feet .

In case (or In the event that) you (should) catch cold (可能发生情况) , put on more clothes . (作为预防措施。)

Don't wait for me in case something should happen .

I prepared tea in case some friends called on me .

I will leave a note in case he is absent .

Take some money , just in case (整个从句省略)

Once I arrived home , I forgot all trouble .

Once she begins to cry , there is no stopping her .

Once (=If once) you smoke , you can't give up smoking .

As (=If) you value your life , hand me your purse .

I told him , as he values his life , to keep silent .

So may God help me as I speak the truth .

So may I prosper !

Unless you (=If you do not) give up smoking , you will suffer from cancer . (=If you give up , you won't suffer .)

We must fight on unless and until we all die .

I'll never forgive you without (=unless) you repent . (不规范语言)

But that he is ill (=If he were not ill) , he would not stay at home .

I would keep silent , but that you are my elder brother .

I would have failed but that you helped me (=if you had not helped me) .

Let me die , but I am (=if I am not) greatly shocked .

Were it not that you encourage me , I would never succeed .

条件从句有时并不由连词引起 :

Were I (=If I were) a bird , I would fly to you . (系动词+主语) (虚拟语气)

Could I (=If I could) do it , I would do it at once .

Should he see it , he would believe .

Try once more , and (=If you try once more ,) you will fail again . (祈使句+and)

Give him a gun and he was sure to fight like a hero . (对过去的假设情况)

You do it again , (无 and) I'll kill you . (口语体)

Come , death , and I shall be free .

Let there be no wisdom on earth , and there will be peace .

You don't eat anything ? Then you will feel tired .

Seeing that he is an old man , I therefore respect him .

Because I kept silent , they accordingly thought me guilty .

A few days' rest and (= If you take a few days' rest ,)
you will be all right again . (代替 if 从句的 “ 名词 + and ”)

A word from her , and he will change his mind .

The least noise and all would be ruined .

One day more and I am free again .

There is a will , there is a way . (谚语) (没有连词)

Nothing venture , nothing have ; but grasp all , lose all .

No money , no say . (没有主语和动词)

Once a knave , always a knave .

下面这种条件从句可以不要主句 , 单独使用 , 表示无法实现的愿望 :

If only I could see her !

If he could but recover !

Had I but taken your advice !

If ever I saw the like of it ! (惊奇)

I'm (or I'll be) damned (or dashed , blowed , hanged , shot)
if I know . (= I really don't know .) (这是发誓的说法 , 主句的誓
语强调 if 从句中的假设与事实相反。)

Burn (or Hang , Blow , Blame , Strike , Search) me if I deceive
you . (= I never deceive you .)

I am a villain (or The devil take me , I eat my head) if

I am not faithful to you . (= I am faithful to you .)

If this is human life ! (= This is not human life .) (誓语
省略)

If it is not a pity ! (= It is a pity .)

图解 :

1706 11 . 依据状语从句

依据状语从句也可看作一种原因或条件状语从句 , 表示 “ 根据 (随
着) 而 ” 。这类句子中的状语从句多放在后面 :

a . 表示 “ 依据 (情况不同) 而 ” :

We see things differently according as we are (either) rich
or poor (= because we are rich or because we are poor) .

An official is praised or blamed according as he is just or
not . (= He is praised if he is just and is blamed if he is not .)

You may study science , art , or commerce according to which
subject interests you most . (according to + 疑问从句)

A man will rise or fail according to how patient he is .

b . 表示“随着(.....的程度)而.....”：

One will prosper in proportion (or in the same degree , in measure) as he knows himself (=because he knows himself more , or less) .

Their attitude toward you varies in proportion as you are wealthy (=according to the degree of your richness) .

We will win the war according as we understand our enemy .

As I grew older , (so) I grew less ambitious .

As they march forward , (so) the guerillas move backward .

We have more trouble as we have more children .

We advance in life as we advance in knowledge .

He became happy as he became rich .

The value of money decreases as the price of merchandise increases .

You see farther as you climb higher .

The (=If to a certain degree) (用作连词) poorer he becomes , the (=to that degree) (用作副词) less friends he has . (P)

The more I earn , the less content I feel .

The farther I went , the lonelier I felt .

The more he studied music , the less he could (or could he) understand it .

The faster (that) you progress , the faster you will (or will you) retreat . (可加上一个 that)

The more (that) you know of a profession , the more you like (or do you like) it .

The sooner (that) we start , the better it is (不是 is it) .

The younger is the pupil , the naughtier he is .

The more I read , the more I travel , the more I think , —the more ignorant do I feel .

The sooner , the better . (没有主语和谓语动词)

The more haste , the less speed .

间或从句放在后面：

I love her more (and more) , the longer we are separated .

(=The longer we are separated , the more I love her .)

He became more (and more) stupid , the older he grew .

图解：

1707 12 . 让步状语从句

Although (or Though) he is (or be) rich , he is (still , yet , nevertheless) unhappy . (He may be rich .)

If he is old , he is still active .

Even if (or Even though) he is (or be) willing, I will not trouble him.

Granting (or Granted, Admitting) it is true, what is wrong?

He is contented, notwithstanding that (or in spite of the fact that, despite that) he is poor. (文气的说法)

While (or When) he has got everything, he is still unsatisfied.

Though he were rich, he would not be happy. (But in fact he is poor.)

Even if he were willing, I would not trouble him. (But in fact he is not willing.)

Rich as (or Though) he is (=Though he is rich), he is not happy. (P) (让步状语从句的最后一词移到 as 或 though 前面)

Small as the dog looked, it was vicious.

Sincerely as Mary loves him, he ignores her.

Hero (不加冠词) as (or though) he was, he turned pale.

Powerful man as he may be, he is a coward before his wife.

Easy as you think it, it costs me a lot of labour.

Great wealth as he has, he is not content.

Punished as he was, he remained stubborn.

While (=although) (正式文体) I object, I say nothing.

While I like his face, I don't like his manners.

She looks sick, if pretty (=though she looks pretty). (L)

Stay with me if only for a day (=though you stay with me only for a day).

He works hard if only to earn two dollars a day.

图解：

1708 13. “不管”状语从句

“不管”状语从句可以看作一种带有疑问词的让步状语从句，在多数情况下可译作“不管……”：

Whatever (or No matter what) you (may) say, I can't believe.
(=Though you may say this, that or anything, I can't believe.)

However (or Any way) you do it, you will get nothing.

Whichever road we (may) take, we shall be too late.

Wherever we live, we have trouble.

You must select at least one job, no matter what (or which).

You must get married, no matter when.

Whether you like the job or whether you think it useless, you have to do it.

Whether you like the job or (whether you) think, etc.

Whether you like the job or (whether you do) not (like it), etc.

Whether it is (or be) true or not (或 or no), the rumour will be believed.

Whether (it is) true or not , the rumour will be believed .

(Whether it is) True or not , the rumour will be believed .

Rich or poor , we remain relatives . Win or lose , we re-main good friends .

Say what you will (or may) (=No matter what you may say) , there is no place like home . (动词+疑问词+主语+ will 或 may) (P)

Look which way you will (or may) , you will see poverty .

Cost what it may , I'll buy it .

Come what may , I will do my best .

Come hell (or Come hot water) , I will save her from danger .

Try as I may (=No matter how I may try) , I can't succeed .

Run as he might , he couldn't overtake the thief .

Be a man as rich as he will (=No matter how rich a man may be) , he should be humble . (P)

Art , vary how it may , remains art .

The enterprise be it as small as it may , requires great ability .

Let the consequences be what they may (=Be the consequences what they may) , he remains firm .

Let John work never so hard (=However hard John may work) , he remains poor .

Detest him as they may , he grows richer and richer .

图解：

1709 14 . 限制状语从句

限制状语从句，不是单修饰动词，而是修饰整个主句，常可译为“据……”，“就……来说”，或“在……方面”：

So far as I can see (or can judge , can learn) , he can't be honest .

He has a happy family , as far as I know (or my knowledge goes) .

That is all right , as far as I am concerned .

He has done everything , as nearly as I can guess .

As far as buying machines , we all agree . (商业英语)

He has never been a doctor , that (or as) (=as far as) I know (or that I remember) . (L)

He was not happy , that I saw (or that I heard of) .

“ Has he been a soldier ? ” “ Not that I know of . ” (not=He has not been a soldier) .

For anything (or all , what , ought) I know (or hear , see , care , can tell) , he is playing you a trick .

He may have escaped , for anything I know (or for anything that appears in the papers) to the contrary . (但 for 引起的不是从句)

He is a good official , as officials (or times , the world)

go (=according to the present circumstances) .

He is a good businessman as businessmen go .

As the world goes (or As times go) , John is a good son .

As things go (or run , are) , this car is very cheap .

As the case(or the matter , matters)stand(s) ,we can do nothing yet .

As (it) (it 总是省略掉的) regards football , I am not much interested .

He was very unhappy as regarded his marriage .

As(it) (it 总是省略掉的) concerns your proposal , I will answer you in a few days .

He was unable to do anything as concerned their re-request .

(As far)As(it)concerned philosophy ,he had studied it twenty years .

These books are the same in that (or in so far as) they deal with war . (限制在某个方面) (L)

It is different from mine in that it looks prettier .

Knowledge is only important in that it is useful .

图解：

“ As far as I can see ” 修饰整个句子 “ he can't be honest ” .

1710 15 . 除外状语从句

I don't want anything but (or except , save , saving , beyond , only) that my children should obey their parents . (that 很少省略)

She is pretty except (or but) for the fact that her eyes are too big .

Nothing can satisfy her except that I buy her a neck-lace .

Save that a few pictures hung on the wall , the room was empty .

He does not need me except when he wants to borrow money .

(=except that he needs me when he wants to borrow money .)

He never touches any vitamins except because he is ill .

Nobody came but (or except , save) John (=except that John came) . (but 用在名词前时 , 可以看作是连词 , 后面有一从句省略 , 但不如看作是介词 , 跟有一名词作宾语。)

Every (or Any) student can answer the question , but he (or him) . (若把 but 看作连词 , 后面可用 he ; 若把它看作介词 , 则后面用 him .)

I have no other friend than (=friend but) you . (前面有 other , otherwise 或 else 时 , but , except 或 save 必须用 than 代替。)

The murderer is no (or none) other than he (or him) .

Come on any other day than Sunday .

Have you anything else than this old song-book?

Nobody else than mother cares about it.

I can do no other (or otherwise) than (=cannot but) laugh.

图解：

说明 1

1711 并列（非限制性）关系从句可以看作是一种状语从句，不过它们的意义不如普通状语从句表达得那么清楚：

The labourers, who (=when they) had finished their work, went home.

The criminal, who (=when he) heard the sentence, cried bitterly.

This house, which (=because it) is painted red, looks odd.

The street, where (=because on it) so many cars drive up and down, is dangerous to children.

The city, which (=though it) looks so pretty, covers up many crimes.

John, who (=though he) has lived here twenty years, does not know even a single street.

图解：

说明 2

1712 在时间、条件、让步等状语从句中，作主语的代词和动词 be 有时可以省略，这时主句和从句的主语必须指同一人或物：

John waited there till (he was) called for. (由于从句中的主语 he 和主句中的主语 John 指同一个人，时间状语从句中的代词主语 he 和 was 可以省略。)

He ran up and down, as if (he was) looking for something.

They will not surrender, unless (they are) caught.

See me if (you are) in need.

When (he was) young, Lee lived in Korea.

Though (he is) rich, he works hard.

However cold (it is), the weather is still pleasant.

Good books, whether (they are) easy or hard, are to be read carefully.

The park, while (it is) under repair, is not open to the public.

When five years old, his father died. (错句。从句中主语与主句中主语不一致，应说 When five years old, he lost his father. 或 When he was five years old, his father died. 参阅 1095)

She won't marry him until mutually understood. (错句。从句中的主语与主句中的主语不一致，应说 They won't marry until mutually understood; 或 She won't marry him until they are mutually understood.)

图解：

但是在一些特殊用法中，省略的主语与主句的主语并不指同一个人或物（省略的部分多为 it is, 或 they are）：

You can come at 5 a.m. , if possible (= if it is possible , 而不是 if you are possible) .

He will consult a lawyer , if necessary (=if it is necessary) .

You can earn as much as possible .

I will do it whenever possible .

The students are to insert prepositions where required (=where they are required) .

(You) keep the cap on while not in use (= while the liquid is not in use) .

C . 以动名词为宾语的介词短语

1713 介词后跟有动名词作宾语的结构也可用来修饰谓语动词。“介词+动名词”结构的作用和状语从句的作用差不多，也可表示时间、原因、结果等。注意所使用的不同介词与介词短语。

a . 时间：

My brother goes to school after taking (=after he takes) his breakfast .

Some women never think before speaking—and not even after .

On arriving (= as soon as I arrived) in London , I visited Dr . West ; and just before leaving it , I called on him a-gain .

I was shocked at hearing (=when I heard) the news that our manager had been arrested .

In saying this , I don't mean to offend my boss , my coworkers or anyone .

He lost his passport during his travelling in Japan and other Asian countries .

She had a baby four months after getting married to an engineer .

On receiving the goods , I sent him the money .

Long , long before Europeans making guns , Chinese knew how to make firecrackers .

b . 方式：

The war spread quickly like the burning of the forest .

She danced so beautifully , just like swimming (=as if she were swimming) under water .

I prefer staying at home to wandering about the world . (=I like staying at home better than wandering about the world .)

c . 伴随情况：

He never talks without offending others . (=He never talks but

he offends others .)

d . 原因 :

He lost heart because of (or owing to , due to , on account of) being attacked (=because he was attacked) by the public .

He is dismissed for doing something wrong .

He died from drinking too much liquor .

He became crazy through losing all his fortune .

He has a bad cold in consequence of (or as the result of) walking in the rain .

e . 除外情况 :

He has nothing to do beyond playing (=except that he plays) the guitar .

He is fit for the post except for being (=except that he is) too old .

f . 条件 :

She can't defend herself in case of (or in the event of) being robbed (=if she should be robbed) .

I should have been wet through but for having carried (if I had not carried) a raincoat with me .

Without greasing (= If you don't grease) his palm , you'll have trouble .

g . 目的 :

He saved all his money towards sending (= so that he might send) his children to college .

John takes exercise every day for the purpose of (or with the intention of , in hopes of , in the hope of , with the hope of) improving his health .

She talks for the sake of talking .

She said this with a view to (or of) intimidating John .

He sent presents to my mother by way of pleasing her .

They built a city wall against being attacked (=lest they should be attacked) .

h . 结果 :

He enticed her into marrying (=so that she did marry) him .

He provoked her into slapping him .

I talked him out of earning (=so that he refrained from earning) the dirty money .

I reasoned her out of going out with a playboy .

i . 让步或不管 :

We continued our journey in spite of feeling (=though we felt) ill .

He made the decision without regard to creating any enemies .

We shall stand firm regardless of (or irrespective of) being (=no matter whether we shall be) praised or attacked .

j . 限制 :

He is foolish in divorcing (=in that he divorces) his wife .

John is wrong in not following your advice .

He has done something wonderful in accomplishing this .

He is skilful at playing tricks .

As for (or With regard to , In regard to or of) cooking , my sister is unequalled .

In respect of writing essays , she is better than her brother .

I trust John for judging the quality of curios .

Nothing can be done about ending this war .

另一些介词短语可以改为并列分句 , 有下面种种意义 :

k . 外加 :

Besides selling rice , he keeps chickens . (=He sells rice , and besides he keeps chickens .)

l . 替代 :

Instead of doing business , he became a monk . (=He did not do business , but instead he became a monk .)

m . 手段

By using our brains and hands , we create our civilization .

(=We use our brains and hands , and thus we create our civilization .)

n . 选择 :

You must take more rest on pain of ruining (=or you will ruin) your health .

和分词与不定式相同 , 这类动名词也应指句子主语的动作 :

o . After explaining , the doorman let me in . (错句。explain 不是 doorman 的动作 , 应说 After explaining , I was let in by the doorman . 或 After I explained , the doorman let me in . 参阅 1091)

Before getting married , our parents opposed us bitterly . (错句。不是 our parents got married . 应说 Before getting married , We were bitterly opposed by our parents . 或说 Before we got married , our parents opposed us bitterly .)

1714 图解 :

这里 burning 已成为一个纯粹的名词。

D . 分词

1715 词也可用来修饰谓语动词。

1 . 起状语从句作用的分词

分词可以放在主语前面 , 也可紧跟在主语后面 , 这时较不强调。它们的作用和 as , when , after , if , though 等引起的状语从句相似 (参阅 1087 , 1089) :

Having (=As or Because I had) no money , I borrowed some from

John .

Seeing me , he gave me the warmest welcome , extending his arms and shouting .

Believing that she can be a good merchant , she decides to do business .

Finding that the other members of my family all smoke cigarettes , I smoke , too .

Being (=As he is) a little child , my brother likes sweets .

(Being) Addicted to the gayeties of city life , they do not like to live in the country . (在后面跟过去分词时 being 常可省略)

(Being) Written (=As it is written) hastily , the letter left a bad impression .

(Being) Born of rich parents , Pedro is not accustomed to hard work .

He adopts the latest method , having been trained in the United States and Germany .

(Being) Defeated in every battle , the enemy will soon sur-render .

Walking(=When I walked) along the bank , I met a friend . Looking outside , I saw it was raining .

(Being) Seen (=When they were seen) by men , the mice began to run .

Turning (=If you turn) to the right , you will see the shop .

Taking (If he had taken) more doses of the medicine , he would have died .

Taken in large doses , the drug will be fatal .

Taking (=After she took) up the basket , she went to the market .

Having been taught for years , he knows how to behave . (having 能强调动作的早先发生)

Having been working (=After he had been working) for forty years , he retired .

Snowdrop , suspecting (=As she suspected) no evil , let the witch come in . (紧跟在主语后面的分词 , 比放在主语前面的分词更不让人注意。)

The merchant , seeing (=when he saw) the customers , showed them his goods .

The king , having been (=after he had been) too busy with State affairs , went to bed earlier than usual .

1716 分词可放在谓语后面 , 这是三种位置中最受强调的位置 (参阅 1089) :

She decides to do business , believing that she can be a good merchant .

They do not like to live in the country , being addicted to the gayeties of city life .

The thief ran away , having killed a young lady in a hotel .
He arrived in Hong Kong ,starting from Europe some days ago .(分词短语若放在谓语后面 , 它表示的时间应在谓语所表示的时间之后 , 除非有时间状语表示它在前 , 如 some days ago 表明 starting 在 arrived 之前 , 或是分词用完成形式 , 即以 having 开头。)

2 . 前面带连词的分词

1717 和状从句相似 ,分词前也可加一个连词 ,来使分词所表示 的时间、条件或让步关系更清楚 (可参阅 1090) :

While listening (=While she was listening) to the radio , she fell in a swoon .

Before speaking (=Before you speak) , you must think over what you are to say .

When going to church , I lost my watch .

Though living near her house , I have never seen her .

Whether staying at home or going out , they are always together .

He talked about every subject as if having seen much of the world .

The article will make a sensation when published (=when it is published) .

If caught (=If he is caught) , the robber will be put to death .

Though caught , the pickpocket will not be punished .

Unless suppressed quickly , the unrest will spread every - where .

The Japanese , as compared (=as they are compared) with the Chinese , are different in character .

The mountain , as seen (=as it is seen) from here , looks blue .

I will buy trucks when really needed (=when trucks are really needed) . (Trucks 不是主语 , 而是宾语。)

Don't send me any money unless required (=unless any money is required) . (Money 不是主语 , 而是宾语。)

(这种习惯用法 , 虽说与语法规则不合 , 却是大家已经接受 的。)

(Cf . If any , if possible , when necessary , where necessary)

3 . 有意义上主语的分词

1718 如果分词本身需在句子主语之外有自己的主语 ,可以在它前 面加一个意义上的主语 (参阅 1092) :

Night coming (=When night came) on , we went home .

The moon having risen (=When the moon had risen) , we took a walk with our friends .

This being the case , we shall have to change our plan .

They being hard up , my father lent them some money .

She being so much grieved , I advised her to go for a trip .

It being Sunday , the shops were closed .

The task having been finished , we waited for dinner .

We were compelled to dismount , the hill-side being too steep
(=because the hill - side was too steep) .

All was quiet in the house , everybody having gone to bed .

There will be five thousand students , all told .

John seeing me , he smiled . (错句。因为两个主语都指同一个人 , 应说 Seeing me , John smiled .)

The mountain being too steep , it is difficult to mount . (错句)

1719 在没有这种意义上的主语时 , 句子主语不仅是主要动词的执行者 , 也是分词所表示动作的执行者 :

Getting dark , I left in a hurry . (错句。因为 I 并不 get dark .)

Seeing that it got dark , I left in a hurry . (正确。因为 I saw that it got dark .)

Being unprepared , the examination is too difficult for me . (错句。因为 the examination 并不是 unprepared .)

Being unprepared , I found the examination very difficult . (正确。因为 I was unprepared .)

John being unprepared , the examination was too difficult for him . (正确。分词有意义上的主语。)

Having answered the questions , the teacher let me leave . (错句)

Having answered the questions , I was allowed (by the teacher) to leave . (正确)

Having answered the first question , many more questions follow . (错句)

I helped him to bed , being very ill . (错句)

Having taken our lunch , the journey is resumed . (错句)

Stepping upon the platform , the audience gave John a thunderous applause . (错句)

4 . Being 常可省略

1720 分词 being 常可省略 (参阅 1602—1612) :

(Being) A keen observer , he saw the danger at once .

(Being) Tough , vigorous , and lusty , he will live at least a hundred years .

(Being) Sick of life , he committed suicide .

The prince , (being) full of joy , said he would give a party .

The students , (being) tired and sleepy , didn't listen to the teacher .

She looked at me , her face (being) in shadow , her umbrella (being) red .

She has two daughters , one (being) eight and the other (being) six .

The trial started , I (being) strangely quiet , my wife (being) restless .

While (being) at home , he worked at his plan .

1721 图解：

Having 前的 I 是分词意义上的主语，在图解中可省略出来。

同样，they 也可省略。

At once 可以看作一个习用语。

Sick of 可看作一个习用语。

E . 不定式

1722 不定式也可用作谓语动词的修饰语。在这样用时，它可以表示
1 . 目的，2 . 感情产生的原因，3 . 程度或结果，4 . 意想不到的结果，
和 5 . 条件。

1723 1 . 表示目的的不定式

They came to see me . (= They came so that they might see me .)

He killed a chicken to warn the monkeys .

Eat to live , but not live to eat .

To pass the exam (放在前面表示强调) , they worked very hard .

To escape the enemy's fury , we have to hide in the jungle .

We need not be rich to be happy .

We have only to press the button to kill millions of people .

They did it on purpose (or with intent) to annoy me . (加上 on purpose 这样的词来对目的概念加以强调)

They stepped up in an attempt to murder him .

They started work early so as to finish it by five .

They started early so as not to be late .

In order to finish the work by five (放在前面位置表示 对它的强调) , they started it earlier .

He loaded the gun as if to prepare to shoot . (假装的目 的)

He snatched his revolver as though to kill himself .

We stood aside for the lady to pass . (= We stood aside so that the lady might pass .) (带有意义上的主语)

The policeman blew his whistle for my car to stop .

For the passengers to notice her , Mary put on her prettiest skirt .

For the production to increase , the labourers have to work one hour more .

He displays all the articles for the customers to see . (不要说 to see them . 但可说 so that the customers might see them .)

The teacher asked a question for the students to answer . (不要说 to answer it . 但可说 so that the students might answer it .)

We waited for the policemen to search .

They prepared many kinds of cake for the buyers to choose from . (不要说 to choose from them .)

He left the mess on purpose for me to clean up .

The teacher utter every syllable slowly in order for us to hear clearly .

Many kinds of cake were prepared for the buyers to choose from . (谓语动词为被动语态)

The trap has been set for greedy people to fall in .

I hand in the paper to be signed . (不定式为被动形式) (Cf . I hand in the paper for the manager to sign .)

Young people today create many problems to be settled . (Cf . Young people today create many problems for their parents and the government to settle .)

I rang for the table to be cleaned .

In order to study science , mathematics should be studied . (这是错句 , 因为不定式 to study 以句子主语 mathematics 作它意义上的主语 , 而 mathematics 并不 study science .)

In order to study science , you (or we) should study mathematics . (正确 , 因为 you or we study science .)

To be a leader , learning from one's followers is necessary . (错句)

To be a leader , one should learn from one's fellows . (正确)

As if to kill me , a revolver was pointed at me . (错句)

As if to kill me , she pointed a revolver at me . (正确)

1724 2 . 表示情绪产生原因的不定式

She laughed (or smiled) to see (= because or when she saw) his funny face . (这样用的不定式多放在后面 , 紧跟表示感情的动词。)

He blushed to own it .

I rejoiced to get back what I had lost .

I regretted (or cried , grieved , groaned) for him to (= that he should) do such a silly thing . (带有意义上的主语)

I felt satisfaction to be an ordinary man .

She felt deep regret for his child to steal a chicken .

He lowered his head to hear his crime exposed .

I shrugged my shoulders to be asked about my marriage .

I could only open my eyes wide to be so praised by my teacher .

I am glad (for my brother) to help people .

Mary was extremely sorry (for her friend) to have made you unhappy .

We are angry (or sad , ashamed , astonished , fascinated , ...) to hear the news .

1725 3 . 表示程度或结果的不定式

How strong is the enemy to have (=that they should have) the confidence to attack us ? (To have the confidence to attack us 表示 strong 的程度。 How strong is the enemy 是说话人提出的问题 , 这样用的不定式多放在后面。)

What reason has he to insult (=that he should insult) me ?
(to insult 表示结果)

Is he a god not to be criticized ?

Is money easy to earn for him to spend so much ?

Is he crazy to do this dangerous business ?

How stupid I am to trust (=that I should trust) a man like that !
(To trust a man like that 表示 stupid 的程度 , How stupid I am 是一个感叹句 , 表明说话人的看法。)

What a slave he is , to be treated so !

He is not a slave , to be treated as such . (He is not a slave 是一个陈述句 , 也表明说话人的看法。)

You must be an ass , to have missed such a chance .

1726 4 . 表示意想不到结果的不定式

He returned to see his wife gone (大致相当于 but he saw his wife gone) . (这样用的不定式通常放在句子后部 , 表示一个出乎意料、常常令人不快的情况。)

He worked hard only to fail .

They moved forward to attack only to meet death .

He did his best only to get into trouble .

He left his fatherland , never to return .

They got married only to be separated the next week .

Many escaped bombs only to perish by famine .

He awoke to find himself a king . (也可表明令人高兴的情况)

He lost a penny only to gain a pound .

He lived to be ninety .

We shall live to see a better world .

He rose to be a great man .

He earned millions only for his children to squander .

Thousands of soldiers die only for a general to get promoted . (带有意义上的主语)

1727 5 . 表示条件的不定式

You will be a nice boy to be polite (=if you are polite) . (不定式表示条件时 , 谓语动词前常有一个助动词。)

I shall lose my reputation to do (=if I do) this dirty business .

I should be crazy to attempt it .

He must be very busy not to be able to come .

To hear him talk , one would think him an English - man .

(这样用的不定式只在少数情况下可以放在句子前部)

What wouldn't I give to be able to save her ?

Where couldn't you go to have a million dollars in your hands ?

1728 图解 :

· 非谓语动词的修饰语

1729 非谓语动词，即动名词、分词及不定式，不仅可以修饰别的词，而且可以被别的词修饰。非谓语动词被副词（短语）、状语从句或不定式修饰时，其方式和谓语动词被修饰方式一样，所不同者，非谓语动词如果被短语、从句或不定式所修饰，必须放在修饰语前面，而谓语动词可放在任何修饰语前面或后面。此外，非谓语动词很少由分词修饰，而谓语动词却常可由分词修饰。

A . 通常用在非谓语动词后面的修饰语

1730 非谓语动词（黑体部分）可以分别由 a . 地点或时间副词，b . 介词短语，c . 状语从句，或 d . 不定式修饰。这些修饰语通常都放在非谓语动词的后面。

1 . 分词

a . Looking outside , I saw a cathedral . Arriving yesterday , I stayed with my aunt . The list given below is very useful .

b . Walking along the street one day , I met Mary . Goods made by hand look pretty .

c . Opening the window when all the family had gone to bed , I saw the moon rise above the mountains . Eric , being praised because he had done something good , felt greatly flattered .

d . Sitting down to read newspapers , I was astounded by an evil report on the President , his wife , and his children . Put to death to warn other similar offenders , the stealing soldier was afterwards exposed at the cross- roads .

2 . 动名词

a He denies visiting her yesterday His children are prevented from playing outside on the street .

b . He likes dancing with his girl friend and with her only . He has the habit of eating his meal in a hurry .

c . Writing poems at night when all is quiet has been his habit , which was formed in his college days .

We are accustomed to thinking ourselves wiser than others .

d . He is fond of playing mahjong to kill time . Going to the pictures to forget one's sorrow is advisable .

3 . 不定式

a . He decides to start work tomorrow . The tiger , it is said , finds it easy to climb up , but hard to dash down .

b . I don't like to eat dinner at a restaurant . He refused to go with me .

c . He decides to write letters as soon as he finishes his supper . Although corruption is common in this country , he refused to bribe any official so that he might be pardoned .

d . To work more hours in order to step up production is not a good policy .

1731 图解：

注：放在非谓语动词前面（1732），及为了强调放在它后面的修饰语（1733），其图解方式和通常放在非谓语动词后面的修饰语（1730）的图解方式相同。

B . 通常用在非谓语动词前面的副词

1732 非谓语动词(黑体部分)也可由 a . 频度副词 , b . 程度副词 , c . 肯定副词或 d . 方式副词修饰。这些修饰语(斜体部分)通常都放在非谓语动词前面：

1 . 分词

a . Usually arriving at nine , today he appeared at seven . Occasionally delayed by traffic , he may arrive at the office later than usual . Not being in the country , he does not know what is happening there .

b . Fully believing in education , he decided to be a teacher . Utterly destroyed , the village had not even a mouse left . Slightly frightened , the mouse looked about .

c . Probably understanding his master's speech , the dog shook his head . Possibly frightened , the child hid behind the door . He left the court , apparently disappointed and dejected .

d . Suddenly standing up , the child ran into his mother's arms . John stood there , carefully examined by Mary's mother . So (or Thus) (常放在分词之前) saying , he left . They opened fire , thus (or thereby) killing eight of us .

2 . 动名词

a . Her parents try to prevent her from often going out with the boy . He is very proud of never drinking or smoking .

b . Fully understanding a poem is not an easy task .

The mayor is still far from completely commanding the situation .

c . I never thought of John possibly defeating his antagonist .

d . Carefully investigating the case is the duty of this bureau , which has investigated such cases many years .

He is fond of leisurely walking along the country road .

3 . 不定式

a . Always to eat the same food is not a good habit .

Never to talk too much is my motto .

b . An official has been sent here to thoroughly study the case . (有时需插在 to 和动词之间)

c. He stood there , probably to wait for his sweetheart .

He came three days ago , surely to borrow money from John .

d. She left her family to faithfully follow him to a distant land . She cried in order to more effectively persuade him .

如果一个非谓语动词由 having , having been , have , have been 或 be 等开头 , 副词通常插在这个助动词与后面的动词之间 :

1 . 分词

Having already advised him three times , I must keep silent now ; it is no use to say anything more .

Having been completely destroyed , the city will take at least five years to clean up and rebuild .

Being carelessly built , the cabin suddenly fell down .

2 . 动名词

He is proud of having twice won the prize . Leo and Ada confessed having been suddenly searched by the police , but they said they did not care about it . Eric has been used to being utterly forgotten by his relatives and friends .

3 . 不定式

He expected to be generously accepted by those people .

This new system needs to be bravely adopted . I'm sorry the furniture seems to have been largely eaten by some insects . After the twenty-seven days battle , the town is found to have been partly destroyed . The population of this city appears to be steadily increasing , although many have been killed by war . It astonishes me for him to have so quickly mastered a foreign language .

但是 :

This is very much to be regretted (=regrettable) .

Milk is infinitely to be preferred (=preferable) to coffee .

C . 为了强调用在非谓语动词后面的副词

1733 有少数 a . 频度副词 , b . 程度副词及大部分方式副词可以放 在非谓语动词后面来加以强调 :

1 . 分词

a . I have to take precaution against the stranger calling on me so frequently . I have never seen a lady loving dogs so much as she .

b . He has a good memory , remembering the long poem perfectly .

c . He sat in a chair , reading his book carefully .

Written hastily , the letter has some defects .

2 . 动名词

a . Smoking cigarettes only occasionally cannot be harmful .

I am astonished at his going to the night - club so frequently .

b . It is possible his depending partly upon his parents for his education .

c . I am glad to hear of your working studiously . Doing one thing constantly is essential to success .

3 . 不定式

a . Is it good to visit the cinema so often ? It was true he planned to take exercise daily .

b . It is hard to know a subject thoroughly . We decide to study the case fully .

c . The teacher asks us to take notes accurately . We are asked to come quickly . Is there any way to stop war effectively ?

1734 说明 1 : Not 和 never 通常都放在不定式前面 :

I wish never to meet her again .

The best thing to do is not to mention it any more .

He seemed never to have seen a prettier girl .

I don't remember ever to have (or to have ever) seen this gentleman .

1735 说明 2 : 一般说来 , 副词不宜紧跟在 to 后面 , 造成不定式两部分 (to 和动词原形) 的分离。但是如果一个副词放在不定式前会令人误以为修饰它前面动词 , 而放在后面又过于强调 , 则可以放在 to 和动词原形之间 :

He wishes to utterly forget his past . (utterly 不好放在 to 前面 , 也不好放在 past 后面。)

He advised them to strictly follow the rules .

He has begun to really understand this principle .

It worried him to gradually lose the use of his leg .

· 形容词的修饰语

A . 副词 (短语)

1736 在 1623—1735 中我们讨论了谓语及非谓语动词的修饰语。在 1736—1769 中,我们将讨论形容词、副词、介词及连词的修饰语。前面我们已谈到,动词的修饰语可以放在几个位置,但只有一两个位置最恰当。而其他词的修饰语不是放在所修饰的词前面就是后面,因此也就比较容易使用。现在我们先谈形容词的修饰语。

形容词修饰名词,而本身又可被其他词所修饰,如副词(短语)、介词短语及不定式。

1 . 用在形容词前面的副词 (短语)

a . 程度副词 (短语)

1737 大多数修饰形容词的都是程度副词(短语),它们通常都放在形容词前面:

—否定:

1) The stars are not visible . (但: No stars are visible . No star is visible . Not a star is visible .)

Such accidents are common . Such accidents are not uncommon . (意思和 common 差不多,但较弱。) It is not unpleasant . It is not impossible .

2) It is never (or nothing) easy . It is not a bit (or not at all , not in the least , not in any way , in no way , no ways , in no respect , nowise , by no manner of means , by no means , far from , anything but , nowhere near , not nearly so , not half) easy (=It is extremely difficult) .

—较低程度或中等程度:

3) The horse is slightly (or rather , somewhat) tired . He is something funny . This theory is half (or partly , quite [Br .]) correct . The rope is fairly strong . The situation is pretty (or sort of , kind of , more or less , in some way , in some sort , in some fashion) peaceful . The statement is , in a fashion (or sort , way , sense , manner , measure) , correct . He is none too (or not too , not so , not altogether , not all that , not very , not extremely , not over -) happy . It is comparatively (or relatively) easy . He felt some better , but not any too comfortable yet .

—不足程度:

4) They are scarcely (or hardly) (=not quite) helpful , and barely (=only just) enough (不令人满意) . They are almost (or nearly) enough (令人满意) . He is all but (=almost) dead . It's about (=almost) (口语说法) ready .

5) There is scarcely any (=almost no) one in the house .

He said scarcely a word , He spoke to nearly every member . I

can do hardly anything . Almost nothing can stop his plan . (限定形容词有时可以用副词修饰)

—较高程度 :

6) It is very exciting (or fascinating , striking , trying , tempting , distressing , depressing , stimulating , etc .) . (表示情绪的现在分词可用作形容词。)

It is very deserving (or becoming , rewarding) . He is very grasping (or knowing , uncompromising , uncomplaining) . (这些特殊的现在分词可用作形容词 , 可用 too 或 very 修饰。)

He is very pleased (or delighted , amused , gratified , soothed , contented , satisfied , vexed , annoyed , disgusted , astonished , amazed ; shocked , frightened , terrified ; worried , harassed , distressed , concerned ; agitated , up - set , disturbed , excited ; embarrassed , ashamed ; tired , exhausted , wearied ; dejected ; devoted ; determined ; charmed ; enlightened ; relieved ; interested ; preoccupied) . (表示情绪的过去分词可用作形容词 , 可用 too 或 very 修饰。)

但 : He is much (or highly , greatly , considerably) respected by others . (在作动词时 , 分词不可用 very 或 too 修饰。)

7) They are very good (or bad , many , few , far , new) . It is very little (or much) . (very 常和 good 这类形容词一起用)

He is more than usually alert . He is quite honest .

He is right (or almighty , extra) (口语中用法) smart .

8) This theory is largely (or mainly , principally , mostly , chiefly) (=for the most part) correct . I should think this remark is , in a large measure (or in a great degree) , believable . He is not a little worried . I am only too (or but too , all too) glad to do it . He is no end (or ever so , more than) happy to hear it .

—完全程度 (常和不宜用于比较级的形容词连用 , 起加强语气的作用) :

9) It is entirely (or completely , thoroughly , quite , absolutely) harmless (or pure) . This man is extremely (or exceedingly) dangerous . They are fully aware of the danger . The plan is all - important . It is utterly (or to - tally , downright) wrong (or false) (或其他表示令人 不快的形容词) . It is altogether (or purely , complete - ly) fictitious . He is just (or simply) wonderful . It is the very best (or very latest , very first) one .

10) It is sufficiently strong (但 : strong enough) .

—有限程度 :

11) He has no more than (or just) three dollars . He has not more than (or at most) three dollars . He has not (or less than) three dollars . He has only (or just) one daughter .

—过份程度 :

12) The city is too (or excessively) noisy . He seems to be over - cautious . He died only too (or but too) young .

It is extravagantly expensive . He has more money than enough .

—渐增程度：

13) Our situation becomes gradually (or steadily , increasingly) better . His future became more and more (or still more , yet more) brilliant .

1738 用 so 来代替一个形容词时，它本身也可由一个程度副词（短 语）来修饰：

The room is big , too much so (=too big) for a child . The teacher is severe , so much so (=so severe) that most of the students dare not go to school . His family is very happy , more so (=happier) than most of the families in this village . I am glad to see him , more so (=more glad) because I haven't seen him for years . She is pretty and even the most so (=the prettiest) in her class .

1739 程度副词（短语）常常修饰形容词的比较级和最高级：

This is much (or far , greatly , lots , a lot , every bit , a good deal) better than that . That is considerably (or tremendously , decidedly , immeasurably , incomparably) larger than this . This is three times better than that . Lilian is somewhat (or a little) taller . Mary is not (or little) more intelligent than her younger sister . The younger brother is much (or by far , in every way) the more intelligent of the two . Is this any larger than that ? This is larger by a long shot .

She is much (or by far , a long way , a good deal , far and away , out and out , out of sight , head and shoulders) the tallest (or the most beautiful) of all .

1740 一个前面带数词的名词，称作“副词型形容词或名词”，可以用来修饰形容词，说明程度，通常都放在它前面：

1) The log is twelve feet long (or in length) , one foot thick (or in diameter) , three and a half feet round (or in circumference) . The lake is two miles across (or in diameter) , about twenty feet deep (or in depth) . He is a head taller than I . He is four floors above , living with a lady .

He is ankle (or waist , shoulder) deep in water .

The watermelons are mountains high .

The husband and the wife are a world apart .

2) The theatre is nine - tenths full (or empty) .

He is half dead .

Mary is part happy , part angry .

3) He is five minutes (too) late .

She is five months pregnant .

He is forty pounds overweight .

He is two , months overdue .

The date is four days wrong .

I am fifty years old .

- 4) Our army is a million strong .
- 5) The pork is two pounds heavy (=in weight) .
- 6) I am five dollars short .

b. 肯定副词 (短语) :

1741 肯定副词 (短语) 也可修饰形容词 :

This war is decidedly (or clearly , avowedly) disastrous .

This method is probably (or perhaps , possibly) good .

His remark is , to all intents and purposes (or to all purposes , to all appearance) , correct . (这些短语也可放在形容词后 面)

c. 方式副词 :

1742 方式副词可以修饰形容词 , 在这样用时它们必须放在形容词 前面。(注意 , 表示方式的副词短语也可修饰形容词 , 但它们 需要放在后面 , 可参阅 1747。)

She is miserably poor(=poor and miserable , or poor to the degree of misery) , uncommonly pretty (=pretty and uncommon , or pretty to an uncommon degree) , indescribably clever (=so much so that her cleverness cannot be described) , hopelessly lonesome , seriously ill , lamentably thin , incredibly patient , deplorably innocent , foolishly honest , desperately fond of flowers , naturally disgusted with city life .

It is provokingly ugly , exceedingly large , practically useless , dangerously shaky .

These activities are highly important , exclusively cultural , wonderfully beneficial , delightfully simple , tolerably expensive .

This is remarkably (or noticeably , tremendously , manifestly , exceptionally) better than all .

The situation is dangerously peaceful . Her dress is beautifully simple . He is infamously famous . She is blissfully innocent .

He is awful [ly] (or dreadful [ly] , fearful [ly] , terrible [y]) (=extremely) wise .

1743 有些形容词和现在分词可以用作形容词的修饰语 , 这时带有 口语色彩 , 且较强调 (参阅 1661) :

He is devilish handsome , deuced clever , extreme wilful , real stubborn , marvellous merry , prodigious active , mighty glad , pretty wise , plenty strong .

He is dead drunk (or stupid , slow , asleep , tired , sure of his future) .

He is broad awake .

He is stark naked (or mad , blind , wild) .

He is rare honest , bitter poor , awful sad , right glad I am jolly (or mighty) glad . I am precious sorry .

He is raging (or raving) mad , stinking drunk , biting sarcastic .

It is exceeding small , thundering good , passing strange ,

shocking bad , blazing strange , flattering sweet .

It is uncommon fine , jolly nice , damned cheap , dead easy , desperate windy , bitter cold , pestilent cloudy .

It is monstrous thick , dreadful dirty , beastly stuffy , confounded difficult , sickly white and rotten pink .

It is blazing (or burning , smoking) hot , flaming red , biting cold , groping dark , shining bright , soaking (or pouring) wet .

1744 在口语中某些“形容词+and”结构可有“very”的意思：

He is good and tired (=very tired) .

It is rare and hot today .

The coffee is nice and warm .

John is fine and astonished .

Keep the kitchen sweet and clean .

She leaves the house rare and dirty .

1745 副词还可修饰一个作定语的名词：

It is a really first - rate policy , a purely family problem , a strictly business affair , a fairly average condition . These are partly state affairs , somewhat old - world customs , very everyday affairs .

2 . 用在形容词后面的副词（短语）

1746 a . 副词很少放在它所修饰形容词的后面。但有少数程度副词短语可放在后面。由 in 引起的短语，通常放在所修饰形容词前面（参阅 1737），但为了强调可放在后面。to 引起的短语却特别地放在所修饰形容词的后面：

The accident is strange in a high degree (or in the extreme) .

This statement is correct in a fashion (or a sort , a measure , a sense , a way , a manner) .

It is believable in a great degree (or measure , extent) .

It is satisfactory in every way (or in every respect , in all respects) .

He is covetous (or obstinate , miserable) to a (or a certain , a small , a large , a great , the last) degree (or extent) .

He is kind after a fashion .

1747 b . 除了程度及肯定副词短语，所有其他副词短语（包括时间、地点、方式等副词短语）通常都放在所修饰形容词后面：

He is late for dinner . It seems easy to me . The rod is thick at both ends . He grows clever in every way . The book is famous in China . A man cautious all the time might make a gross mistake . This dog is black around its eyes . He is generous to a fault . The fruit is rotten to the core . It is satisfactory in all respects .

1748 在上面许多例句中，所有被修饰的形容词都在句中作补语，用在系动词后。但被修饰形容词也可在其他位置：

This machine is wonderfully useful .

This wonderfully useful machine can cut any metal .
 This machine , wonderfully useful , can cut any metal .
 Wonderfully useful , this machine can cut any metal .
 He finds this machine wonderfully useful .
 Those people are very interesting .
 Many of them are very interesting people .
 Those people , very interesting , can do something for our city .
 Very interesting , those people can do something for our city .
 I find those people very interesting .

图解：

B . 介词短语

1749 在 A 篇所给介词短语中，介词和后面跟的名词有较紧密的关系。而在下面所给的例句中，介词和前面的形容词有更紧密的关系。在这种情况下，说这些介词短语修饰前面的形容词未尝不可，但这样的解释未能说明这种特殊结构的全部意义。这种“系动词+形容词 [包含现在及过去分词] +特别介词”的结构，可以说相当于一个单一的及物动词，有时甚至可以用有相同意义的及物动词来代替：

He is afraid of (=dreads) darkness .
 I am aware of (=know) his sudden departure .
 It is suitable for (=suits) my purpose .
 You are forgetful of (=forget) your promise .
 Milk is good for (= benefits) us .
 It is astonishing to (=astonishes) all of us .
 He is educated in (= studies) law .
 He is sorry for (=regrets) his mistake .
 He is deaf to (=ignores) her entreaties .
 Smoking is bad for (= spoils) my health .
 He was angry with her .
 The park is open to the public .
 He is delighted with his success .
 He is dependent upon his sister for his living .
 He is disgusted at his brother's behaviour .
 He is famous for his knowledge of animals .
 He is free from blame .
 He is moved to tears .
 He is overcome with sorrow .
 The house is infested with rats .
 He is involved in difficulties .
 He is fascinated with her .

1750 在没有系动词时，“形容词+介词”这种结构仍然可以起及物动词

的作用，但是作为分词，而不是作为谓语动词：

An accident, shocking to (=shocking) the public, happened yesterday.

A man respectful to (=respecting) others will be respected.

The three persons guilty of (=committing) theft have been sent to prison.

I know of some people proficient in (=mastering) mathematics but ignorant of (=not knowing) worldly affairs.

Dogs infested with (=having) lice need an insecticide.

A person negligent of (=neglecting) his duty would not be trusted.

有时这种结构带有一些文气和做作的味道：

Don't be envious of (最好说 envy) your betters.

He is desirous of obtaining (最好说 desires to obtain) a good position.

His work is deserving of (最好说 deserves) a higher reward.

1751 介词的宾语可以是名词，也可以是动名词：

Are you not afraid of being bitten by mosquitoes?

He is ashamed of having behaved so badly.

He is interested in obtaining a better position.

1752 介词的宾语也可以是一个由疑问词引起的从句。在这种情况下，介词常常省略，介词前的形容词（包含过去分词）几乎都表示一种精神状态：

She was aware (of) (=knew) how her husband had committed the crime.

She was doubtful (about) (=doubted) whether he would come.

He is curious (as to) what we are going to do.

He is ignorant (of) (=does not know) where he is going.

I am sure (or certain) (about) who will be punished today.

Don't be fussy (about) what you eat.

He was upset (about) where she had been during the past three days.

Don't be worried (about) how we do it.

I was astonished (at) how they discovered our hide-out.

Be careful (about) how you handle the matter.

That is dependent on how you do it. (这里 on 不能省略，dependent 不是一个表示精神活动的形容词。)

1753 这种疑问词引起的从句，如果它的主语和主句的主语相同或泛指一般人，可以缩短为“疑问词+不定式”的结构。这时，介词可用也可以省略：

He is curious (of) whether to start the business or not (= whether he is to start the business or not).

He is doubtful (of) what to do (=what he is to do).

He is ignorant (of) where to apply (=where one should apply).

I am sure (of) how to do it .

Be careful (of) when to cross the street , child .

1754 介词的宾语也可以是 that 引起的从句 ,但形容词后的介词必须省略,有时 that 这个词也可省略。而且,介词前的形容词(包含过去分词)几乎全都表示一种精神状态。这种“be +形容词”结构也相当于一个及物动词:

You must be careful (有一个介词省略) that you don't make mistakes again . (Cf . You must be careful of your health .)

He is not aware (= doesn't know) that you have studied dogs so many years . (Cf . He is not aware of your presence .)

I am glad (or delighted , surprised) (=rejoice or wonder) that you have succeeded so easily . (Cf .I am delighted at the news .)

He is sure (or confident) (=believed) that you will do your best .

He is disappointed (or sorry) that you failed .

She is anxious that you should return home earlier .

I am afraid (that) I shall have to leave you .

I am sure (that) you know what I mean .

图解:

C . 不定式

1755 不定式也可用来修饰形容词(包含过去分词),它和形容词有三种组合形式:

1 . 用在表示愿望的形容词后面的不定式

1756 当一个不定式用在系动词和表示愿望或担心的形容词后时,这个系动词和形容词的意思接近 want ,wish ,long 或 dread 这样的及物动词。换言之,系动词+表愿望形容词=表愿望及物动词。

He is anxious (or eager) (= longs) to learn the news .

They are impatient (=earnestly wish) to start .

I should be interested to listen to your opinion .

He is afraid (= dreads) to disturb his boss .

She is unwilling (or reluctant) (=doesn't want) to talk with me .

They are disposed (or inclined) (=intend) to fight .

I was curious to know (=wished to know) who she was .

I am determined (or resolved) to talk to my opponent .

He is ambitious to become famous .

2 . 用在表示潜在可能性的形容词后面的不定式

1757 当一个不定式用在系动词和表示潜在可能性的形容词后时，这种“系动词+表示潜在可能性的形容词+to”结构接近一个助动词。在下面句子中，括号里列出了意思相近的词：

- a . He is able to (=can) do any heavy job .
He is powerless to (= can't) help anyone .
He is going to (= will soon) win .
He is sure (or bound , certain , safe) to (= will surely) win .
b . He is likely to (=will probably) win .
He was liable (or apt) to (= would) catch cold .
He is given (or inclined) to (=will) curse .
He is due to (= is to) come tomorrow .
He is obliged to (= must) help her . (Cf . have to = must)
He was accustomed to (=used to) live in cold countries .
He is worthy (or competent , qualified , entitled , equal)
to (= may well) fill the job .
c . He is permitted (or allowed) to (= may) go anywhere .
He is welcome (or free , or at liberty) to (= may) say anything
he likes .
I am ready (or prepared) to help you .
He is prompt (or quick , slow) to learn .
This is sufficient (or enough) to (=can) convince you .

3 . 用在形容词后的及物动词不定式

1758 a . 当一个及物动词不定式用在形容词后面作它的修饰语时，这种及物动词不定式没有自己的宾语，而以句子的主语作它意义上的宾语：

1) The paths are easy to find . (=To find the paths is easy . =It is easy to find the paths .)

This book is nice to read . (=To read the book is nice . =It is nice to read the book .)

Potatoes are not difficult to cook . (=To cook potatoes is not difficult . =It is not difficult to cook potatoes .)

What foreign language is necessary for businessmen to learn ?

He is ill to please .

John is difficult to handle .

Your question is impossible to answer (=unanswerable) .

Money is not fit to keep .

The scene is pitiful to behold (or fearful to watch , ghastly to see) .

It is simple to explain .

This advice is practical to follow .

The bridge is dangerous to pass .

The job is pleasant to do .

The house is pretty to see .

His insult is hard to bear (=unbearable) .

The story is painful (or fascinating) to tell .

This step is the safest to take .

The food is so easy to prepare , so delicious to eat .

2) That desk is troublesome to move to another place .

Such a speech is not proper to give at the party .

3) This place became painful to see again .

His temper has grown hard to control .

Such a peaceful life remains pleasant to live .

4) The water is good to be drunk . (陈旧说法)

The book is painful to be read .

5) What he wants is impossible to know .

How he was killed is painful to describe .

1759 b . 如果不定式为不及物动词 , 可以加上适当的介词 , 使之相当于及物动词。 “ 及物动词不定式+名词+介词 ” 这种成语也可以看作是及物动词 :

1) He is hard to work with . (=It is hard to work with him .)

The story is painful to listen to . (=It is painful to listen to the story .)

The river is dangerous to bathe in .

His advice is disagreeable to listen to .

It is grievous for me to think on .

The scandal is fascinating to learn about .

She is good to look at .

The road is safe to drive along .

2) He is troublesome to make friends with .

The child is not easy to take care of .

1760 c . 在形容词的前面或后面可以放一个名词。这时 , 这个名词不仅是句中的补语 , 而且是不定式意义上的主语 :

1) He is not easy to deceive . He is not a man easy to deceive . He is not an easy man to deceive . (=He is not a man whom it is easy to deceive) .

That question is hard to answer . That is a question hard to answer . That is a hard question to answer . (=That is a question which it is hard to answer .)

2) He is impossible to work with . He is a man impossible to work with . He is an impossible man to work with (or with whom to work) .

This method is good to depend upon . This is a method good to depend on . This is a good method to depend upon (or upon which to depend) .

3) This basket is not fit to carry eggs in . This is not a basket fit to carry eggs in . This is not a fit basket to carry eggs in (or in which to carry eggs) . (=This is not a basket which it

is fit to carry eggs in .)

1761 d . 这样用的不定式可以有自己意义上的主语 :

1) The water is good for anyone to drink . (=It is good for anyone to drink the water .)

The potatoes are easy for my daughter to cook .

The bridge is dangerous for trucks to pass .

These questions are interesting for all of you to answer .

Such advice is disagreeable for them to listen to .

2) John is a very unpleasant businessman for anybody to work with .

This is a painful child for his mother to take care of .

These are easy paths for strangers to pass along .

1762 在下面句子中 , 不定式不修饰前面的形容词。它是句子的主语 , 由句首的 it 代表 (参阅 1318) :

It is natural to love . (=To love is natural .)

It was impossible to convince him . (=To convince him was...)

It is difficult to say anything .

It would be foolish to do such a dirty job .

在下面句子中 , 不定式修饰整个谓语 , 而不是修饰形容词 (参阅 1124—1126) :

He is foolish to spend (=in spending) so much .

You are lucky to have avoided this trouble .

John is really courageous to point out their crimes .

I am not worthy to accept this honour .

Mary is delighted to learn (=when she learns) about your life .

I am very angry to see the result .

You will be miserable to lead (= if you lead) such a lazy life .

Our country will be prosperous to expand its industry and commerce .

图解 :

. 副词的修饰语

1. 副词 (短语)

1763 副词可由副词 (短语)、不定式和状语从句修饰。但修饰它们最多的是副词 (短语)，通常放在副词的前面：

He lives completely alone. (程度副词或短语)

He writes much (or far , a lot , a great deal , a bit , a trifle , a degree , a little) faster than I .

Many planes were flying right over .

We waited way (=far) (口语用法) behind .

He stood well back .

He pushed it right up (or back , through , across , in) .

He pulled it (only) just up (or back , etc .) .

Do you see that bridge ? Right beside stands my school .

Much beyond is the church .

“ Is the show all that good ? ” “ Yes , but it ends all too soon . ”

He comes here most (=almost) (口语用法) every day .

He is almost entirely forgotten by his relatives .

He works apparently (or probably , really) harder than his brother . (肯定副词或短语)

He speaks English remarkably well . (方式副词或短语)

He runs wonderfully fast .

It has rained extra hard and terribly long .

Things are getting along astonishingly well .

He left two weeks ago . (时间副词或短语)

Two months previously (or earlier , later , after) I saw her .

I shall leave a month hence (=in a month) .

He studied two years longer than I .

He arrived five minutes (too) late .

He flew thousands of meters higher than other planes . (地点副词或短语)

The sign - board hangs ten feet above .

Many animals live a thousand feet below .

He lives far away (or off , below , above) .

A stranger stood close behind (or hard by , near by) .

I stood in here and he sat out there .

A church stood a little way before .

He lives many miles away .

They stood a few feet apart , way back .

1764 方式副词可以 (但不经常) 由一个特别的介词短语修饰，这个短语通常放在副词后面：

He lived independently of anybody . (Cf . His living is independent of anybody .)

He fought loyally to his king . (Cf . He was loyal to his king .)

He did not act compatibly with reason . (Cf . His action is not compatible with reason .)

He decided favourable to our interest .

He knew everything previously to the event .

He lived contentedly with his lot .

注：这种方式副词连同一个特别的介词也可看作一个整体，看作一个介词短语。

图解：

2 . 不定式

1765 Too , enough , sufficiently 以及 so...as 这几个副词可由不定式修饰：

a . too +形容词+不定式：

He is too old to study . (=He is so old that he cannot study .)

He is too excited to speak . (=He is so excited that he cannot speak .)

The boat is too clumsy to sail fast .

This man is too well - informed not to know it . (=This man is so well - informed that he must know it .)

He is too angry not to say something .

The impression is too deep to be forgotten (被动形式) , or too deep to forget . (不定式的主动形式 , 以主语 impression 作它意义上的宾语。)

The story is too painful to be repeated (=so painful that it cannot be repeated) , or to repeat (=that one cannot repeat it) .

This dog is too vicious to be kept , or to keep .

Your steps are too quick for them (不定式意义上的主语) to follow (=so quick that they cannot follow your steps) .

The stone is too heavy for any single person to raise .

He is too fickle to depend upon . (不及物动词+介词=及物动词) .

This boy is too naughty to care for .

The book is too monotonous to amuse oneself with (及物动词+名词+介词=及物动词) .

The child is too naughty to take care of .

但是：

He cannot be too old to study ; 或 he is never too old to study . (=He is not too old , and he may study yet .)

I am only too (=very) glad to help .

You are too ready to (=liable to) criticize others .

It is too (=very) kind of you to say that .

b . too +副词+不定式：

You speak too fast for John to follow (=so fast that John cannot follow you) .

He arrived too late for us to wait .

You speak too loudly for me to understand you .

He is too deeply absorbed to see me .

c . 形容词+ enough +不定式 ; sufficiently +形容词+不定式 :

He is young enough to study . (=He is so young that he can or may study .)

He is honest enough to tell all the truth .

She is sufficiently careful (=careful enough) to avoid the mistake .

He is kind enough to lend me his truck .

He is intelligent enough to be specially trained . (=He is so intelligent that he may be specially trained .)

He is not old enough (=too young) to be sent to college .

He is not sufficiently recovered (=too weak) to go to work .

He is considered to be good enough to be our leader .

He became a sufficiently famous man to be interviewed by reporters .

It is not a useful enough book to justify reading .

The child is intelligent enough to train in music . (及物动词不定式以主语作它意义的宾语)

The bed is big enough for three fat men to lie on .

He is kind enough for us to make friends with .

He is fool (=foolish) enough to spend so much .

He is gentleman (=gentlemanly) enough to pardon me .

They are philosophers enough to keep cold .

d . 副词+ enough + 不定式 ; sufficiently +副词+不定式 :

He acted carefully enough to ensure success .

John behaves honestly enough for us to believe in him .

He will get up early enough to catch the train .

e . so +形容词+as to :

He was so kind as to lend (=so kind that he lent [不是 could lend]) his motorbike to me .

She was so silly as to marry (=so silly that she did marry [并不是 might marry]) a play boy .

The building is so high as to reach the clouds .

He is not so dogmatic as to refuse my advice .

He is so unfortunate as to beg on the street . (=He is such an unfortunate man as to beg on the street .) (如果形容词后面跟有一个名词, 则 so 应由 such 代替。)

He is so daring as to be killed in a duel . (=He is such a daring soldier as to be killed in a duel .)

Cf . This is such a novel as to interest me . (=This novel is

such as to interest me . Such 在这里用作代词 ,表示“ such a novel ” .)

He is so strong as to lift(=that he does lift) this stone . (错句)

He is strong enough to lift (=go strong that he can lift) this stone . (正确)

f . so +副词+as to :

He rises so early as to be in time for school (= that he is in time for school) , though he used to rise late .

He played so skillfully as to win much applause . (结果)

He played skillfully so as to (=in order to) win much applause . (目的)

He worked so hard as to get promoted . (结果)

He worked hard so as to (=in order to) get promoted . (目的)

图解 :

3 . 状语从句

1766 As , not so , 副词的比较级 , more , less 以及 the 这几个副词 , 都可由 as , than , that 及 the 引起的状语从句修饰 , 这种从句都放在副词后面 :

She is as pretty as the moon (is) .

Mary is not so pretty as her sister .

He works as hard as a buffalo (does) .

He does not earn so much as his brother .

A tortoise would run faster than you (run) .

He arrived earlier than we .

He is more diligent than his classmates .

He is less active than anyone else .

He is so satisfied that he does not need anything more .

He arrived so late that the party had been over when he arrived .

The more beautiful a woman looks , the more unfortunate she is .

The longer you live in the city , the less you like it .

图解 :

the (1) =to that degree (副词)

the (2) =if (连词)

the (3) =to a certain degree (副词)

If a woman looks more beautiful to a certain degree , she is

more unfortunate to that degree .

. 介词的修饰语

1767 介词 (或介词短语) 可由副词或副词性短语修饰, 它们都放在介词前面。

1. 副词

a. 程度副词:

They number a little over a thousand.

He failed just because of his bad luck.

The cat jumped all at once (or of a sudden).

The stone fell almost on my head.

He can swim right across the river.

You can play anywhere from 50 to 100 dollars.

Don't let children get anywhere near the electric wire.

It is clean against the rule.

They have advanced clear across the frontier.

Her advice is deep within my soul.

I'll pay you down to the last farthing.

This error is entirely through your neglect.

She is far past sixty.

We were driving half (or halfway) through the long tunnel when the car broke down.

He got married quite against his will.

They got married much to my surprise.

This victory is partly due to your patience.

This marriage is rather against her will.

We were waiting right opposite the church.

I am right at home in any foreign country.

The lake lies somewhat to the west.

She is well on the way to success.

What (= Partly) with threats, and what with entreaties, he finally conquered her.

b. 肯定副词:

Your failure is decidedly through your neglect.

He went out probably by the back-door.

He arrived precisely (or exactly) at ten.

c. 时间副词:

He told me shortly before the event.

He arrived home long after midnight.

It rained immediately after my arrival.

d. 地点副词:

The church is near (or hard) by the station.

He sat close beside her, close against the wall, close behind my seat.

John lives way (=far) (Am.) beyond the church.

She is way ahead of his class in maths .

2 . 副词性名词短语

介词也可由表示时间、地点、金钱等的名词修饰，可称为副词性名词，它们前面常常加数词，通常放在介词前面：

He arrived three minutes before my arrival .

He still misses her a long time after her death .

It has been two years out of fashion .

He left only hours before the outbreak of the war .

He sat two meters behind me .

The station is two miles down the road .

He sat two rows of seats before me .

All the way from A Street to F Street are seen only pedlars .

He is two hundred dollars in pocket .

He went downstairs two steps at a time .

He is over head and ears in love (or debt) .

He is in debt five thousand dollars .

图解：

. 连词的修饰语

1768 连词（或状语从句）可由表示程度、肯定或时间的副词（短语）修饰，它们通常都放在所修饰的连词前面：

You can understand the lesson only when you study it hard .

He still loved her even (or right) after they were divorced .

He got sick simply (or entirely , all , partly) because he ate too much .

He can do it just as he likes .

He has been sick probably (or decidedly , ever) since he drank such dirty water .

He arrived long after I arrived at the station .

He knew it some time before the accident happened .

I saw her in Hong Kong three years after (or before) I met her in New York .

图解：

注：整个句子的修饰语，业已在“谓语动词的修饰语”中，特别是在 1670 及 1672 中讨论。在“插入语：整个句子的修饰语（1773—1777）”中还将作更详细的讨论。

· 名词的修饰语

1769 一般说来，只有形容词可以修饰名词。但是有些副词也可以“修饰”名词，只是修饰的方式有些特别：

He is a simple (形容词) child (=innocent child) .

He is simply (副词) a child (=no more than a child, not a grown-up) .

The only (形容词) son (=only one son) of David did it .

Only (副词) the son (=Nobody but the son) of David did it .

I need a particular (形容词) (=special) map .

I need reference books, particularly (副词) (=to a greater degree) a map .

这类副词(短语)大多用在它们所修饰的名词前：

Just two days ago the deceased drank with me .

Merely bread and water are not enough for children .

What we need is simply money, money and money .

What I say is purely advice, not a threat .

It was only Mary who was able to tell such a story .

We eat all kinds of food, especially rice and fish .

All my family, particularly (or notably) my wife, like roast duck .

The members of this society, mostly (or mainly) Chinese, are enthusiastic about mahjong .

His house is full of books, largely English dictionaries and encyclopedias .

He is interested in many subjects, principally (or particularly) the history of mankind .

I love everyone, even my enemy .

I love neither my enemy, nor my friend; I love myself .

有些可放在它们所修饰的名词后面：

She lives happily with her dog alone .

One of the guests, in particular, is a tennis champion .

Many people buy houses. I bought a house, too (or as well) .

As everybody came alone, I didn't bring my wife either .

He has five houses, and five mistresses in addition .

另外有些副词(短语)可用在所修饰名词的前面或后面：

Exactly who (or Who exactly) told you this funny story?

Exactly what (or What exactly) do you want?

You pay only two dollars (or two dollars only) for the show .

He told everyone, and also John (or John also) .

有些副词(短语)不仅修饰紧跟在后面的名词，还可修饰句子中的任何词(类)。在口语中，这种副词(短语)放在主语和谓语之间时，可以着重说明说话人强读的任何词。在 John only spoke secretly to

Mary yesterday . 这个句子中，如果强读 John，则表示 nobody else but John . 如果强读 spoke，则表示 didn't write， but spoke . 如果强读 Mary，则表示 not Jane，not any others，but Mary . 如果强读 secretly，则表示 not publicly，but secretly . 如果强读 yesterday，则表示 not day before yesterday，not days ago， but yesterday . 但是在书面语中，这种副词（短语）多放在着重说明的词前面。

第二十一单元 独立成分

1770 一个词或一个词组，如果在句子中和其他词或词组没有语法上的联系，则称为独立成分（Absolute, or Independent Expression）。独立成分可以是感叹语（Exclamations），呼语（Vocatives）或是插入语（Parenthetical Expressions）。

. 感叹语

1771 感叹语不仅可以是惊叹词,也可以是名词、形容词、动词、副词;不仅可以是单词,还可以是短语、不定式或从句。它表示突然产生的感情,后面跟有一个惊叹号(!):

惊叹词: Oh! What is that?

O my dear John!

Aha! That is it.

Bah! I am not a pig to be treated so.

名 词: A whale! Look there.

My purse! It is lost.

Idiot! He must be crazy.

Little silly! Who told you to do it?

Fire! Be quick!

Nonsense! You are dreaming.

Silence! Father is sleeping.

Thief! Thief!

The way he talks (名词可由定语从句修饰)! You would think him a professor.

The things they have done! Nobody could believe.

The fool I have been! She must have laughed at me.

A pretty house (that) you have bought! But it's rather dear.

A very useful subject (that) you are learning!

Dirty money they make! They should be sent to prison.

形容词: Marvellous! This is the first time I've seen it.

Shocking! Who could have stood it?

What a job!

Ridiculous! Fantastic!

动 词: Look! Here is her letter.

Come, come! (Don't expect me to believe it.)

Help! He's drowned. Help!

Hear! Hear!

副 词: Away! Let me see you no more.

Why? I can't understand you.

How fast!

Indeed! That is too much.

Quickly! It's dangerous.

代 词: Ah me!

O dear me!

短 语: Fie upon you (or your suggestion)!

A fig for Rex! he spoils everything.

Woe to him!

Down with tyranny (or colonialism)!

O for a sight of her !

不定式 : To think you could be so ungrateful !

O to be at home !

Oh , to treat his parents so !

从 句 : That you should turn against me !

That bread should be so dear !

If the rain could (only) stop !

图解 :

竖的虚线表示独立成分与主要句子之间在意义上的隐约的联系。

. 呼语

1772 呼语是说话人对听话人（或拟人化的东西）的称呼：

Waiter , four cups of tea , please . (在面前的人)

May I help you , madam ? (已婚或单身女人)

Operator , what is the phone number of A - One Company ?

Officer (=policeman) , where is Union Square ?

Parson (=clergyman) , is divorce sometimes necessary ?

Counsellor (=lawyer) , what will be our first step ?

My dear son , you have always been in my mind . (不在身边的人)

Lincoln ! You should be living to this day .

Roll on , Ocean , roll on ! (看得见的东西)

Twinkle , twinkle , little stars !

O death ! Where is your victory ! (看不见的东西)

O judgement ! Thou art fled to brutish beasts .

Freedom ! How I miss you !

图解：

. 插入语：句子修饰语

1773 插入语表示整个句子是怎样说的或应怎样理解；可以看作是句子的修饰语。插入语可以是一个插入的陈述句、独立分词、独立不定式或独立副词（短语）。

A . 插入陈述句

1774 插入陈述句是一个简短的陈述句（只有主语和谓语），通常插在句子中间，偶尔也可放在句子末尾来加以强调或作为后加的意思。如果把它放在句子开头，整个句子就会成为一个名词从句，句子则变作陈述句中及物动词的宾语：

The boy , I think , has come from the country .

The boy has come from the country , I think .

I think (that) the boy has come from the country .

His manners , it is true , are awkward and silly .

His manners are awkward and silly , it is true .

It is true (that) his manners are awkward and silly .

更多的例句：

Those people , he sometimes felt , were better than us .

This house , I know , will be sold to a rich man .

His wife , I presume , was not listening .

What a strange man , I exclaim , is this fellow !

A very beautiful fairy , so the legend runs , has appeared here .

That gentleman , mark you , is the big boss of a big firm .

It was , as I need hardly say , the greatest bridge in this country . （由 as 引起的陈述句是一种状语从句）

The shop around the corner , as is generally assumed , is a secret gambling house . （as 引起的是一个关系从句）

The people of this country , let it be understood , are poorer now than before .

His knowledge of English , it must be acknowledged , is better than ours .

Let everybody , he ordered , speak out openly .

He is , I am afraid , still very childish .

They are mostly , remember , robbers and pickpockets .

Never , he thought , had they seen such a thing .

It is a bore , you know .

Peptic ulcer , a study shows , usually comes from worries .

It is raining , I think .

What it is all about , I wonder .

Where was he , she asked .

He has done everything possible , it seems .

图解：

I think 作为句子修饰语图解，注意左端的竖线为虚线。

B . 独立分词

1775 一个作状语的分词,如果它的意义上的主语很模糊或泛指一般人,此主语就可以省略,这个分词就成为“独立分词”,在多数情况下它都用在句子开头,偶尔也可放在其他位置。分词的这种用法只限于下面这些分词(参阅 1097—1098):

Considering his age (大致相当于 If we consider his age), he is clever.

Allowing for the rain, he will arrive at ten.

Speaking (or Talking) of the football match, our team was rather disappointing.

Regarding (or Respecting) such matters, it is hard to say anything.

Concerning the next step, a further discussion seems necessary.

Coming to the question of marriage, I have something to say.

Judging from reports, the economic condition is now worse than last year.

Judging by the appearance, this article can't be German made.

Granting (or Admitting) that he was drunk, he should not have insulted my wife.

Supposing (or Suppose) that I fall sick, nobody will take care of me.

Generally speaking, people in this town are happy.

Strictly (or Properly, Roughly) speaking, everybody is more or less selfish.

Putting this and that together, he is still happy.

Barring accidents, he should be here this evening.

Begging your pardon, your son is rather naughty.

We shall arrive before dusk, provided (or providing) (that) we walk faster.

You can inform me of this matter, seeing that you have studied it many years.

There are thirty persons, not counting the children.

There are thirty students, including ten girls.

This matter is growing serious, according to the papers.

Nothing can be done, considering (the circumstances).

图解:

Considering 在这里作为句子修饰语图解。(参阅 1774)

C . 独立不定式

1776 虽说不定式的作用和分词差不多，但我们必须说 to speak the truth，而不能说 speaking the truth，只能说 to be frank，而不能说 being frank；必须说 considering his age，而不能说 to consider his age，只能说 regarding such matters，而不能说 to regard such matters，这个现象是十分有趣的。下面例子说明在什么情况下需用不定式（参阅 1142）：

To speak the (precise) truth (大致相当于 If I am to speak the truth)，I can do very little for you.

To speak plainly (or frankly)，it is no business of ours.

To be frank (or plain, sincere) with you, I have no money to spare.

Not to mince matters, I get married next week.

To put it bluntly, that is nothing but a lie.

Not to put too fine a point on it, he is rather hard up.

To do him justice, John has lived and died for his country.

To do her due, she looks attractive.

To return (or To get back) to our subject, the farmer had a daughter...

To resume (or To go on with my story), John decided to marry Lilian...

To change the subject, in the countryside there lived a pretty girl...

To proceed to the other reasons...

To leave aside all these problems...

To sum up (or To conclude), science is very important today, but moral law is more so.

To make (or cut) a long story (or tale) short, they got married after five years of adversity.

To illustrate (or To take a simple example, To give an instance), John has cured his illness by merely drinking water.

David lost his job, his son was expelled from the school and, to crown all, his wife died of cancer.

The journey was long and dreary and, to make matters worse, it rained from morning till night.

To begin with (or To start with), we should be healthy.

Secondly, we should be optimistic.

To use his own words, I don't care so long as my pockets are full.

This man, to put it mildly (or strictly), knows something about his job.

Society, to put it another way, is a school.

This fellow acts like , so to say (or so to speak , so to put it) , a VIP .

He is broad-minded , to say the least of it .

He knows French , German , and Italian , not to say (or not to mention , not to speak of , to say nothing of , let alone) English , a very common language .

He does not know English , a very common language , not to say French and German .

He is a foolish—not to call it honest— countryman .

He visited her almost every day , let alone last Sunday .

He is shy at home , let alone in public .

He writes poems , let alone understands (or understanding) them .

(这种独立不定式 , 后面可以跟有名词或其它词类。)

图解 :

D . 独立副词 (短语)

1777 用作独立成分的副词 (短语) 大多为肯定及方式副词 (短语) , 可参阅 1670 a) 及 1672 a) 。它们通常放在句子开头 (1) , 偶尔插在句子中间 , 使它显得不那么重要 (2) , 或是放在与它关系最深的词附近 (3) :

a . (1) In fact , he is not the son of his present “ father ” .
No doubt , he has done everything possible .

(2) He has , oddly enough , married eleven times and yet has not a single wife .

Life , in my opinion , is nothing but a dream .

(3) We have to walk , at worst , only two miles more .

What we have done is , on the whole , satisfactory .

这种副词 (短语) 有几种相等的结构 :

Seriously (= Seriously speaking , To be serious , If I may put it seriously) , why don't you marry her ?

Certainly (= It is certain that) he will agree .

Fortunately he remained alive (= It was fortunate that he should remain alive) .

Happily (= One [or I] was happy that) she accepted his proposal .

Economically (= From an economic point of view) , Japan is a great country .

更多的例子 :

肯定副词 (短语) :

b . Certainly (or Indeed , Surely , Definitely) , he is the best man I know .

Without doubt (or Sure enough , Of course) , things change year

after year , day after day .

Evidently(or Obviously , Clearly ,Manifestly) , there can't be any equality between man and man .

Assuredly(or Admittedly , Undoubtedly , Decidedly) , our world is one of millions of worlds in space .

Outwardly (or Apparently , Ostensibly , Formally , Officially , Nominally) , he is the Premier , but actually (or really , in truth , in fact , in reality , as a matter of fact) , he is a puppet .

Frankly (or Truly , Bluntly) , I don't like your manners .

Candidly (or Honestly) , I don't like your manner of speaking .

Generally (or Crudely , Roughly , Briefly , Approximately) , our city has ten cases of murder every month .

Probably(or Perhaps , Maybe , Presumably , Possibly) , the enemy has been informed of our plan .

In all likelihood(or In all probability) , he has been killed .

He is reportedly (or allegedly , purportedly , supposedly) the best doctor of this city .

方式副词 (短语) :

c . Basically (or Essentially , Fundamentally , Primarily) , his theory is correct .

In essence (or In substance , At bottom) , these rules conform with the Constitution .

Amazingly (or Annoyingly , Disappointingly , Regrettably) , it rained so hard on his wedding day .

To our amazement (or annoyance , disappointment , regret , great joy , delight) , the bill was passed .

Curiously (or Miraculously , Incredibly , Unexpectedly) , nobody was hurt in this accident .

Normally (or Regularly , Usually) , adverbs modify any words except nouns , pronouns and interjections .

Not unexpectedly (or unreasonably , unwisely) , he left behind all he had and fled by night .

Fortunately (or Luckily) for this city , the pestilence ceased to spread .

Politically (or Militarily , Economically) , the U . S . is a very important country ; but culturally , I am not sure .

Emotionally (or Morally , Intellectually) , this child is as mature as a grown-up .

Happily (or Hopefully , Thankfully) they can excuse us .

Children like sweets . Similarly , adults like money .

d . According to Shakespeare , a light heart lives long .

All in all , young people are fond of new things .

As a result , both died in the fighting .

As a general rule , I go to bed at eleven .

As for me (or Personally) , I have nothing to say .

At a guess , the mountain seems 5000 feet high .

At any rate (or At all events) , I will try .

In a manner of speaking , we have done everything possible . In a word (or In other words) , we must quit .

In the first place , be careful . No less important , be generous . That way , you will succeed in everything .

Incidentally (or By the way) , what is the lady's name ?

On the face of it , the situation seems quiet .

Rightly or wrongly , justly or unjustly , this is my country .

图解：

第二十二单元省略

． 为避免重复而作的省略

1778 当一个句子中有两个或更多相同的词出现时,其中一个必须保留,另外的则最好省略,以避免重复,使句子简练。需省略的词通常出现在复合句、复杂句及复合短语中。在大多数情况下,它都出现在需要保留的词后面,偶尔也出现在它的前面。在下面例句中,需保留的词印作斜体,而需省略的词都放在括号中,如果放在需保留的词的前面,则需省略的词印作黑体。句子中有各种成分可以省略,可以是S(主语),Aux(助动词),V(主要动词),O(宾语),C(补语)或其他成分:

a. 复合句中的省略:

—S 省略:

I arrived here today, and (I) must stay here one or two weeks.

He came up, (he) sat down, and (he) stared at me.

The upper (shelf) and the lower shelf are full of books.

—Aux 省略:

Ted will be leaving this morning, and Liz (will be) coming this evening.

I have got up, and my wife (has) prepared our break-fast. (正确,有两个不同的主语。)

I have go up and I (have) taken breakfast. (错句,有两个相同的主语。)

I have got up and (I have) taken breakfast. (正确,主语和助动词一起省略。)

—V 省略:

The loser is sad, but the winner (is) happy.

He studies math, but his brother (studies) dancing.

Character lives in a man, and reputation (lives) outside of him.

Some die of hunger, others (die) of eating too much.

A large number of people come to look around, but very few (come) to buy.

You must work, but needn't (work) on Sunday. (有助动词)

"Has the show started?" "It may have (started)." "

She can (dance), but you won't dance. =She can dance, but you won't (dance).

—S 和 Aux 省略:

He will come, and (he will) play at cards with me.

Tom is giving up smoking, and (Tom is) taking exercise every morning.

—Aux 和 V 省略:

I will give Mary a doll, and aunt (will give) Jane a book.

I have ordered my men to wait for action, and Jimmy

Lee (has ordered) his to blow up the bridge.

I must go and you (must go) too .

—V 和 O 省略：

He teaches me Thai and She (teaches me) Malay .

I asked Rex to go , but she (asked Rex) to stay .

You like this blue dress? My wife (likes this blue dress) too . (如宾语后不跟别的词应该加 too)

—单独的 O 不能省略：

I treat Jan well , but he treats (Jan) better . (错句，像 Jan 这样一个单独的宾语不能省略，应该用 her 代替。)

“Do you drink coffee?” “Yes , I like (coffee) , madam .”
(错句，应当说 yes , I do 或 yes , I like it .)

—C 省略：

Money is not the end of life , character is (the end of life) .

—S 和及物动词省略：

He has no ambition , therefore (he has) no worry .

“What did he say?” “(He said) Nothing .”

It concerns you , and also (it concerns) me .

She loves Jack , but (she loves) not Greg .

I find Rex a lazy boy and (I find) Joy a nice girl .

I told him to relax and (I told) her to take care of him .

I study French on Monday , (I study) German on Wednesday .

—S 和系动词省略：

“Whose car is that?” “(That is) Mine .”

“Where is your girlfriend?” “(My girlfriend is) In Japan .”

—V 和 O 省略 (仅仅 S 和 O 之间的形容词保留)：

He likes green cars , she (likes) yellow (cars) , I (like) black (cars) .

—S , Aux , V 省略：

I will tell Dick to wait and (I will tell) Dawn to come immediately .

—Aux , V , O 省略：

Tom will clean the house today , and Lucille (will clean the house) tomorrow .

—Aux , V , C 省略 (若 C 后没有其他词应加 too)：

I have been a nurse and she (has been a nurse) too .

—第一及第二 O 省略，但最后的 O 不省略：

Jane edited (this Weekly) , Liz printed (this Weekly) , and I distributed this weekly .

I cleaned up (the room) and then he painted the room .

I threw away (the rubbish) but my wife took back the rubbish .

—第一个 C 省略：

Rex seems (stupid) , but Roy really is , stupid . = Rex seems stupid , but Roy really is (stupid) .

—第一个 O 及 C 省略：

My wife advised (our daughter to marry this rich man) , but I forbade , our daughter to marry this rich man .

My wife likes our daughter (to look sexy) , and Mrs . Doe also likes hers , to look sexy .

—除 S 及 Aux 外整句省略 :

He can please anybody he doesn't like , but I can't (please anybody I don't like) . =He can , but I can't , please anybody I don't like .

John drinks a lot of coffee every morning , but not Mary (= but Mary doesn't drink...) . =John , but not Mary , drinks a lot of coffee every morning .

—除最后一个谓语外 , 其他谓语都省略 (但助动词保留) :

Douglas could (pay his debt) , and must (pay his debt) , but won't , pay his debt .

—在回答一般疑问句时 , 除 S 及 Aux , 其他部分都省略 :

“ Will Jane come tomorrow ? ” “ Yes ,she will(come to- morrow) . ”

“ Must I show them my ID ? ” “ No , you needn't (show them your ID) . ”

—整个句子都省略 , 只剩下回答 who , which 等的词 :

“ Who will come tomorrow ? ” “ Tom (will come tomorrow) . ”

“ When will you start for Singapore ? ” “ Next Sunday (I will start for Singapore) . ”

—整个从句省略 , 只剩下副词 (短语) 或状语从句 :

He will come here , but (he will) not (come here) until ten o'clock .

Everybody shares , but not (everybody shares) alike .

See the doctor , and (see the doctor) immediately .

He earned lots of money , but (he did) not (earn lots of money) to spend it .

“ Do you love her ? ” “ Yes , (I love her) if she loves me . ”

“ Do you help people ? ” “ Yes , (I help people) so that I may be happy . ”

—That 用来代替前面的分句 :

He made mistakes and that (=he made mistakes) very often .

I would like to go abroad ,but that (= I would like to go abroad) at the lowest cost .

We must get ready to set out and that (=We must get ready to set out) before six o'clock in the morning .

—第一分句的状语可影响后面分句的状语 :

Five days ago , I arrived in Las Vegas and (on the same day) I won three thousand dollars .

At a casino , first I won three thousand but then (at the same place) I lost eight thousand .

Generally speaking , you can tell lies once or twice , but you

can't tell lies all the time .

—复合句末尾的状语可以影响前面的分句：

Some visitors left (in a hurry) , and others arrived , in a hurry .

—前面带形容词的名词有时可以省略：

I wanted condensed milk and he showed me powdered (milk) ; I wanted orange juice , and he showed me apple (juice) .

I have a black (cat) and a white cat .

I gave him a dollar or two (dollars) .

—介词的宾语省略：

Policemen watched out for hiding criminals before (the building) and behind the building .

Henry goes to (Hong Kong) and from Hong Kong on business each month .

—连词省略 (但最好保留)：

I know it because your sister told me and (because) mom said it a long time ago .

I will marry her if she really loves me and (if) her parents don't object .

b . 复合句中的省略：

主要是带有状语从句的句子中有些词省略，在名词从句

及定语从句中很少有词省略：

—在状语从句中，S 和 Aux 不能省略，但其他部分可以：

I can beat him at chess , if you can (beat him at chess) .

If you can beat him at chess , I can (beat him at chess) .

If you can (beat him at chess) , I can beat him at chess .

I can (beat him at chess) , If you can beat him at

chess . (不佳) (放在状语从句前面主句中的部分不宜作任何省略)

John looked after the baby , because his wife couldn't (look after the baby) during her illness .

—状语从句中助动词后的动词可以省略：

She could see Tom , though Tom couldn't (see) her .

I can clean the floor , if you will (clean) the furniture .

—Be , is , was 等后面的补语可以省略：

William must be a good man , since his father is (a good man) .

She was happy because her husband was (happy) .

He loves his baby , although he has never seen (his baby) .

(错句。和补语不同，宾语不能省略，但可以用 him 代替。)

—由 than 和 as 引起的从句中有许多省略的办法：

Liz spoke Chinese better before than (she speaks it) now . (除副词 now 外整个从句都省略)

Liz speaks English better than her friends (speak it) . (谓
语省略)

Liz speaks English better than (she speaks) Chinese . (S

和 TV 省略)

Liz speaks English better than (she) writes it. (S 省略)

Liz is more shy than (she is) unfriendly. (S 和 be 省略)

Liz looks younger than she is (young), and feels younger than she looks. (C 省略)

Liz considers him more a friend than (she considers him) a lover. (S, FV, N 省略)

Liz speaks English better than you think (that she speaks it). (that 引起的从句省略)

Liz speaks English better than I (speak) Chinese. (TV 省略)

Bob loves his mother as dearly now as (he loved her) when young.

Bob doesn't regard money so seriously as his father (regards it).

Bob treats people as skillfully as (he) does research work.

Bob knows science as much as you expect (that he knows it).

—If 引起的从句中有些部分可以省略:

I have very few friends, if any (=if I have any friends).

I seldom, if ever, smoke. (=I seldom smoke if I ever smoke.)

I wish to travel over the world if I can (travel over the world).

Pay him next week, if not (=if you don't pay him) this week.

This child is lovely, if (he is) a bit talkative.

I've cheated you? If so (=if I've cheated you), you can kill me; if not (=if I haven't cheated you), what should I do?

省略的词必须和保留的词非常相似, 这条规律却对动词不太适用, 不过最好避免省略另一主要动词。在 “He hasn't written the letter, but he will (write) a short note.” 中, 保留的动词 written 和省略的动词 write 形式并不相同。在动词的 6 个基本形式 (如 go, goes, went, gone, going, to go) 之间, 有时会发生省略的现象:

My wife smokes but I don't (smoke).

She has got married four times and will (get married) once or twice more.

I have made mistakes, but won't (make them) any more.

He should have arrived yesterday, if his wife would (arrive) today to meet him at the hotel.

“I am giving up drinking.” “You have (given up drinking) for three years, my dear friend!”

Tom learned kungfu with Wu and he had (learned it) seven months.

I must learn music ten more years though I have (learned it) ten years.

I am still learning and I will (learn) until I die.

He is playing very well, although he didn't (play very well) before.

—在 be 的几种形式 (即 is, am, are, was, were, be, been, being,

to be) 之间有时出现省略现象：

I am studying physics ,and my brother(is studying) chemistry .

Ten years ago you were twelve and she (was) nine .

If he has been a thief , will he (be a thief) again?

Although he is being friendly , he has never (been friendly) to anyone .

—不定式可以保留 to 而将其他部分省略：

“ Do you want to see her ? ” “ No , I do not want to (see her) . ”

If she asks him to jump downstairs , I think he will try to (jump downstairs) .

I can help him if I wish to (help him) . (第二个 help 为不定式 , 而第一个 help 为谓语动词。)

I saw him playing with a gun , and I told him not to (play with a gun) . (playing 为分词)

He can't give it up , but I am willing to (give it up) .

I can't stand up , as I am too weak to (stand up) .

I must ask him to pay me . I would be an idiot not to (ask him to pay me) .

—在主动语态和被动语态之间不能作任何省略：

You will be loved if only you love others .

Bill said something at the meeting because something must be said .

He wants to buy some food , but nothing can be bought here .

He promised to send me books , but I found nothing sent to me .

—在 who , how , why 等后面的词有时省略：

Somebody is calling . I wonder who (is calling) .

He lost his wallet , but he didn't know how (he lost it) .

He had a stomachache for six years . Even doctors couldn't explain why (he had it) .

Columbus discovered America . Do you remember when?

They did meet each other yesterday . But I can't tell where and how .

图解：

· 语法上允许的省略

1779 有些词可以省略，因为语法允许这样的省略。举少数例子即可说明问题。详细情况可参阅有关各节。省略的词放在括号中：

He got up at six (o'clock) .

He studied mathematics at twelve (years of age) .

She was born in (the year) nineteen fifty-two .

It measures four (feet) by five (feet) .

This dictionary costs seven (dollars) thirty (cents) .

He got six months (of imprisonment) .

I met him at the jeweller's (shop) , my lawyer's (office) ,
Mr .

Wang's (house) , St . Jame's (Palace) , St . Paul's (Cathedral) .

I walked (for) ten miles . He came (on) the following day .

Accidents happen (at) every minute . He arrived (in) the
previous week .

Seven (persons) were killed . Many (persons) were wounded .

The blind (people) cannot see and the dumb (people) can- not
speak .

Throw (the) paper cup into (the) basket after its use .

Please don't ride (a) bicycle in (the) park . (通告)

When (he was) a youth , he travelled in the East . (两个分
句的主语一致)

While (they were) sleeping , our troops were surprised .

Though (he is) a poor man , Yang never says die .

Once (she was) married , she forgot all her friends .

The city , however (it is) defended , will be lost .

The news is important , if (it is) true .

It is more easily understood than (it is) described .

He would be robbed unless (he is) on his guard .

The child cried terribly as if (he were) seriously hurt .

This lady is always complaining whether (she is) offended or
not .

Show me your letter when (it is) finished . (两个分句主语
不一致，但可以听到这类句子。)

The background is important when (you are) taking pictures .

He did not pay me as (it was) promised .

As (it was) planned . they met in a dark corner of the park .

The rain (being) over , we went on our way .

The enemy (having been) defeated , we went home .

(Being) Mad with anger , he struck her .

I do not know the man (whom) you spoke to .

Did you receive the letter (which) he wrote to you ?

This is the way (how) we learn a foreign language .

This is (the reason) why he blames us .

Take as much as (what) is required , but not more than (what) is needed .

“ What did you see in Honolulu ? ” “ See (=What did I see in Honolulu) ? A lot of things . ”

“ How much do you pay for food ? ” “ How much (=How much do I pay for food) ? 150 dollars . ”

图解：

· 习惯用法上允许的省略

1780 有些词在语法上是需要的,但习惯上可以省略,特别是在口语中。省略最多的是由代词表示的主语(如 I, you, it, they)及助动词。省略的词在括号中列出:

1. 在问句中, do, be 及 have 可以省略,甚至由代词表示的主语也一起省略,如果意思清楚的话:

(Do) You remember what I said?

(Do you) Like it?

What (did) he tell you?

Why (does she) not buy one?

Why (do you) hurry so?

—在问句中 be 常常省略,有时连主语一起省略:

(Are) You here?

(Are) These your girls?

(Is) That all?

(Is) Mary coming?

(Is) John very ill?

(Is it) Very easy?

(Are you, Is he, Are they, etc.) Feeling unwell?

(Are you, etc.) hungry?

—在问句中, have 有时省略:

(Have they) Gone to the concert?

(Has she) Seen my portrait?

由 what, how 或 why 开始的某些问句中有些词可以省略:

What (happened) next?

What (will happen) if he refuses?

What (matters) though she has discovered my secret?

What about your project?

How about your project?

But what to do? What to say?

Why not?

Why so?

2. 在陈述句及感叹句中,由代词表示的主语,如果不难看出,可以省略,甚至连同助动词一道省略:

—主要动词前的主语省略:

(I) Like Chinese food.

(We) Hope everything is OK. (We) Thought you got lost.

(It) Looks easy. (It) Serves him right. (It) Sounds good.

—否定助动词前的主语省略:

(He) Doesn't love his parents.

(We) Can't say anything.

(They) Haven't done anything good.

(She) Won't marry him.

—肯定助动词前的主语有时也可以省略：

(He) Must see the doctor .

(She) Can marry another .

(Everyone) May smoke here .

—Be, have 及 will 虽然是助动词，并不能像 must, can 及 may 那样用，但可以连同主语一起省略：

(He is) Seeing the doctor .

(I am) Glad to meet you .

(She has) Given up smoking .

(They will) Be here next week .

How careless (you are, etc) !

What a fool (you are, etc.) !

3. It is 经常省略：

(It is) Impossible .

(It is) Wonderful .

(It is) Well done .

(It is) None of your business .

What a bore (it is) ! (It is) Better to leave that alone .

(It is) Very kind of you to see me .

(It is) Nice meeting you .

(It is) Better (to) buy than (to) borrow .

“Thank you , ” “ (It is) My pleasure . ”

Whatever (it is) , you can't hide it from her . (It is) True that she already has children .

(It is) Funny that he should marry so young . (It is) Small (or No) wonder that they don't agree . He died , and (it is) a good thing , too .

He has gone , and (it is) a good riddance .

My boss is going to fire me , and (it is) no wonder . If he refuses , (it will be) well and good .

4. There 或 there be 有时可以省略：

(There) Must be something wrong .

(There) May be someone making trouble .

(There) Won't be anybody getting interested . (There) Should be no time left for arguing .

I will pay you in three days , and (there is) no mistake . (There is) No fool like an old fool .

(There is) No offence taken when none is meant . (There is) An eye for an eye , and a tooth for a tooth . (There is) No telling what he is doing .

(Is there) Any news ? (There is) Nothing particular . 5. 在下面五种句子中动词 be 可以省略：

—在表示惊讶或不满意的句子中：

She (is) a beauty !

Usury (is) a beneficial practice !

Me (不用 I) (am) playing him a trick !

Mary (is) (to) marry John ?

John (is) faithful to his wife !

Russia and the U . S . (are) at war ?

—由 and 连接的并列句中，后面的分句表示对比：

John fooled about and (=while) his father (was) drudging in his workshop .

How can I pay my addresses to her , and (=while) she (is) still mournful for her mother's death ?

He was in college and (=while) his elder brother (was) still a fool in secondary school .

How can I study and my family so poor ?

(He is) A policeman and (he is) afraid of thieves !

(It is) A great country and (it is) defeated by a small one !

—在补语不正常地放主语前面的句子中：

Happy (is) the man who is content !

Not bad (are) those people .

Not serious (is) his fault .

How absurd (is) his remark !

Crazy fellows (are) they !

A very silly question (is) this !

What a fool (is) John !

A strange fellow (was) that old man .

A great mistake (was) your marrying .

—由 however , whatever , no matter 或 the 引起的从句中：

However difficult the job (is) , he does it with patience .

The larger the animal (is) , the more it eats .

Whatever the consequence (is) , I am determined to do it .

No matter how sweet his words (are) , don't believe him .

—在简短通告、标题、电报等等中：

Shoes (are) on sale .

Every sort of metal construction (is) undertaken .

English (is) spoken here .

No dogs (are) allowed .

Admission (is) free .

Rosy prospects (are) now yours .

Result (is) encouraging .

Paris Talks (Are) Hopeful But Delicate .

Father (is) ill .

Johnson family (is) coming .

Help (is) wanted , skill (is) not necessary , female (is) more desirable , salary (is) high .

6 . 表示善意祝愿的句子中，I wish you 常常省略：

(I wish you) Good luck !
(I wish you) Happy birthday !
(I wish you) Good night !
(I wish you) Good health !
(I wish) A happy new year to you !
(I wish) The same to you !

7. 在包含两个并列成分的谚语中，第一个部分在意义上常 相当于一个由 if 引起的从句，第二部分表示结论。这类

句子中常有一些词省略：(If a man was) Once a thief , (he is) always a thief . (If you have) No work , (you have) no money .

(If a friend is) Out of sight , (he is) out of mind . (If you) Grasp all , (you will) lose all .

(If there is) Rain before seven , (it will be) fine before eleven .

First come , first served .

Least said , soonest mended .

The higher the tree , the stronger the wind .

Other times , other manners .

Nothing venture , nothing have .

One man , one vote .

8. 一个句子的头几个词，如果不难猜出，有时可以省略：

(Do it) Gently , please .

(Go) This way , please .

“ (Give me) A cup of tea , please . ” “ (Do you want) Anything else ? ”

(Good) Morning , Rex ! (Do you have) Any news ?

(I'll do it) With pleasure .

(Let) Ladies (be served) first .

(Allow me to go or help myself) After you .

(Hold your) Hands up !

(Keep your) Hands off !

(The) Fact is I like beautiful colours .

(The) Trouble is I can't speak French .

(The) Sooner the better .

(As) Soon as she saw me , she turned aside .

(I'll) Be right back !

(Please wait) Just a minute .

(I've) Been there a time or two .

(It'll) Be dark soon .

(It has) Been left idle many years .

9. 一个句子的最后几个词，如果不难猜出，有时也可以省略：

It can't be (so) .

I must say (so) .

This is the best ever (done , known , etc .) .

Of all the fools (this is the worst one) .

I have not the least (idea) .

That depends (upon circumstances) .

He is head over ears (in love) .

Do it regardless (of expense) .

Members only (are allowed) .

No smoking (is allowed) .

I'll take a gun , just in case (something should happen) .

Hand me your purse , or else (you'll suffer for it) .

有些名词短语的最后一个词可以省略 :

junior high (school) ; application (form) ; transfer (tick
- et) ; Watergate (scandal) ; Vietnam (War) ; Parking (lot) .

10 . 在下面感叹句 (以 a 或 the 开始) 中 , 有些词省略 :

(What) A confounded nuisance they are ! (what 省略)

(What) An honest trade you are learning , Dick !

(What) A pretty mess we are in !

Oh , the way she talks (is so beautiful , is truly attractive ,
is funny indeed , makes me shudder , makes me laugh , etc .) !

The things that people do nowadays (are terrible in - deed) !

The trip we had (was pleasant indeed) !

The fool you have been (is incurable) !

Oh , the trouble (is too much) !

图解 :

第二十三单元 句子的转换与合并

．简单句之间的转换

1781 句型的转换是指一个句子由一种语法结构变为另一种语法结构，而不改变其原来的意义。这是一种有用的练习，可以学会许多不同的说法，能从几个句子中挑选出最适当的句子形式。

A．主动语态与被动语态之间的转换

一个句子可以由主动结构变为被动结构，也可从被动结构变为主动结构（参阅 1207—1209）：

He has finished his university studies .

His university studies have been finished .

They put him to death .

He was put to death .

An Englishman teaches him English .

He is taught English by an Englishmen .

B．肯定句与否定句之间的转换

一个句子可以由肯定形式变为否定形式，也可由否定形式变为肯定形式：

I am doubtful of his honesty .

I am not sure of his honesty .

Few understand it .

Not many understand it .

He is sometimes silly .

He is not always clever .

It is tidy .

It is not untidy .

He always objected .

He never agreed .

He failed to come .

He did not come .

She told the story with tears .

She told the story not without tears .

Only he knows it .

Nobody else knows it .

He lacks courage .

He is without courage .

He is very tired .

He is not a little tired .

He will always remember your kindness .

He will never forget your kindness .

C．反问型问句与陈述句之间的转换

反问型问句 (Rhetorical Questions) 可以转变为陈述句 :

Is that the way to treat your wife ?

That is not the way to treat your wife .

Can I say anything ?

I cannot say anything .

Where can you ever see a ghost ?

You can never see a ghost anywhere .

Who cares about you ?

Nobody cares about you .

Why should I apologize ?

I should not apologize .

D . 不同词类之间的转换

几乎任何词类都可以转换为另一词类。可以是 :

1 . 动词与名词间的转换 :

Our enemy is strengthening .

Our enemy is gaining strength .

They agreed not to criticize each other .

They made an agreement not to criticize each other . It smells good .

It has a good smell .

John disgraces our family .

John is a disgrace to our family .

2 . 动词与形容词之间的转换 : He neglects my advice .

He is negligent of my advice .

He fears nothing .

He is afraid of nothing .

This letter expresses his gratitude .

This letter is expressive of his gratitude .

They widened and lengthened the street .

They made the street wide and long .

3 . 动词与副词间的转换 :

He succeeded in advising Mary .

He advised Mary successfully .

They enjoyed celebrating the festival .

They celebrated the festival joyfully .

This story surpasses others in beauty .

This story is surpassingly beautiful .

4 . 名词与形容词间的转换 :

He is a man of wealth .

He is a wealthy man .

He is a husband with no heart , she is a wife with a long tongue .

He is a heartless husband , she is a long-tongued wife . “ Here lies the only wife of John Lee . ”

“ Here lies John Lee's only wife . ”

This policy is of great importance .

This policy is very important .

There was once a monster with three heads .

There was once a three-headed monster .

5 . 名词与副词间的转换 :

Please handle it with care .

Please handle it carefully .

In all probability , it will rain this evening .

Most probably , it will rain this evening .

Our troops entered the city in triumph .

Our troops entered the city triumphantly .

6 . 形容词与副词间的转换 :

After a careful analysis , the food proves poisonous .

Carefully analysed , the food proves poisonous .

He hates hard work .

He hates to work hard .

7 . 介词与连词间的转换 :

I like him for his unselfishness .

I like him because he is unselfish .

I will wait until his return .

I will wait until he returns .

图解 :

. 简单句与复合句之间的转换

1782 一个分词、动名词、不定式或介词短语可以转换为复合句，反过来也如此：

—Sitting down , he read the letter .

He sat down and he read the letter .

The guest leaving , I went to bed .

The guest left , and then I went to bed .

Being tired of life , he refuses to see any friends or relatives .

—He is tired of life , so he refuses to see any friends or relatives .

—He ran away to avoid punishment .

He ran away , or he would be punished .

He has to work hard to maintain his big family .

He has to work hard , otherwise he cannot maintain his big family .

Out of a desire to please her mother , he sent her things from time to time .

He sent things to her mother from time to time , for he desires to please her .

—Besides selling rice , he teaches arithmetic in the evening .

He sells rice and besides he teaches arithmetic in the evening .

With all his efforts , he failed .

He made all efforts , but he failed .

By his good manners , he wins her heart .

He has good manners , therefore he wins her heart .

The boy is rewarded for his bravery .

The boy is brave , so he is rewarded .

图解：

. 简单句与复杂句之间的转换

1783 一个词或是短语可以转变为名词从句、定语从句或状语从句，反过来也如此：

A . 名词从句

I cannot tell the time of his arrival .
I cannot tell when he will arrive .
I believe your statement .
I believe what you state .
I insisted on his studying art .
I insisted that he should study art .
I was informed of his behaviour .
I was informed of how he behaved .
I wish you to be always happy .
I wish that you will be always happy .
I think it fit for you to take over the business . I think it
fit that you take over the business . I learn of his success .
I learn that he has succeeded .
His arrival is a great event .
That he has arrived is a great event .
How to get rid of poverty is a big problem . It is a big problem
how we can get rid of poverty .

图解：

B . 定语从句

He is a self - made man .
He is a man who has succeeded by his own efforts .
It has become an independent country .
It has become a country that is no more controlled by another .
I want to live and die in my native village .
I want to live and die in the village where I was born .
She wears a sea - blue skirt .
She wears a skirt which is as blue as the sea .
We need an atom - smashing machine .
We need a machine that can smash atoms .
I have nothing to say .
I have nothing that I wish to say .
The evil done lives after the doers .

The evil that men do lives after them .

图解：

C . 状语从句

The children quarrelled over the property on the death of their father .

The children quarrelled over the property as soon as their father died .

After 20 years of service , he retired .

When he had served 20 years , he retired .

He died in his native place .

He died where he was born .

He stayed at home because of illness .

He stayed at home because he was ill .

In spite of my advice , he persisted in going out with her .

Although I advised him , he persisted in going out with her .

You may drink to your heart's content .

You may drink as much as you like .

Without any water , this plant cannot live .

Unless it gets some water , this plant cannot live .

He is too tired to work any more .

He is so tired that he cannot work any more .

I will inform the police to punish him .

I will inform the police so that he may be punished .

注：1782 中大部分短语不仅可以变为并列的分句，也可以变为状语从句。

图解：

. 复杂句与复合句之间的转换

1784 He gained a lot of money in gambling and he wished to gamble again .

After he gained a lot of money in gambling , he wished to gamble again .

He may be interested in art and in that case he should go to some fine arts school .

If he is interested in art , he should go to some fine arts school .

Recede one step and they will proceed three .

If you recede one step , they will proceed three .

He is poor , but he is proud .

Although he is poor , he is proud .

He has failed , yet he has done his best .

Although he has failed , he has done his best .

We must keep silent or father will get angry .

We must keep silent lest father should get angry .

He must live a regular life , otherwise he will fall ill .

Unless he lives a regular life , he will fall ill .

He is a very good teacher , so the students like him .

The students like him , because he is a good teacher .

They have said all they wish to say , therefore they understand each other thoroughly .

As they have said all they wish to say , they understand each other thoroughly .

图解 :

．直接引语和间接引语之间的转换

1785 说话人讲的话可以用两种方式引用。如果引用他的原话，就称作直接引语。因此 He said, "I am very ill." 为直接引语。如果按引用人的观点来引用，则称为间接引语。因此 He said that he was very ill. 为间接引语。Said 这样的动词称为引话动词，它前面的主语，例如 he，可称为第一主语。引语中的主语，如 I 及 he，称为第二主语。引语中的谓语动词称为第二动词。当直接引语转换为间接引语，或间接引语转换为直接引语时，有几个问题需要注意。

A．大写与标点

直接引语放在引号之内，第一个字母要大写，引号前加逗号（间或用冒号），引语末加句号、问号或感叹号，但在间接引语中却不加这些。间接引语必须由 that, whether (if) 或疑问词 (who, why, when 等) 开头，末尾要加句号。此外，在直接引语中问句可能有倒装语序（助动词放在主语前面），但在间接引语中，问句则需变为自然语序：

I say, "He will come."

I say that he will come.

I say: "When will he come?"

I ask when he will come.

B．引话动词与第二动词

引话动词可以是 say, remark, observe, claim, explain, confirm; ask, enquire, question; answer, reply; declare, announce; beg, urge, suggest, request, demand; order, command; object, deny, admit, agree, argue; warn, threaten; think, reflect, consider; write, cable, phone, telex; shout, laugh, sneer 等等。

若引话动词是现在时或将来时，则当引语由直接变为间接时，第二动词照旧不变。但若引话动词是过去时，则间接引语中的第二动词，就要由现在时变为过去时，由过去时变为过去完成时等。

I say (or will say) to him, "John arrives (or will arrive, arrived) on Sunday."

I say (or will say) to him that John arrives (or will arrive, arrived) on Sunday.

I said to him, "John arrives (or will arrive, arrived) on Sunday."

I said to him that John arrived (or would arrive, had arrived) on Sunday.

C．引话动词与连词

1. 如果间接引语为陈述句，它前面通常都有 : say that, know that, tell him that, state that, ...

2. 如果它是问句, 它前面通常有: ask (him) whether (or if) , inquire (of him) whether , demand (of him) whether , wonder whether , want to know whether ; 或 ask (him) + W (即疑问词, 如 who , whom , when , why , which) , inquire (of him) + W , ...

3. 如果它是感叹句, 它前面通常有: exclaim that , cry out with joy that , ...

4. 如果间接引语为祈使句, 它前面通常有: demand that , ask that , request that , advise that , order that , ...且里面包含助动词 should .此外间接引语还可以转换为不定式短语, 这时引语动词需要改为宾补动词:

1. I said , " You are a nice boy " .

I said that he was a nice boy .

I thought , " You will fail again . "

I thought that he would fail again .

2. I said , " Are you a nice boy ? "

I asked whether he was a nice boy .

I thought to myself , " Will he fail again ? "

I asked myself whether he would fail again .

I enquired of him , " Who knows it ? "

I enquired of him who knew it .

3. I said , " What a nice boy you are ! "

I exclaimed that he was indeed a nice boy .

I said , " Hurrah ! We have won the battle . "

I cried with joy that we had won the battle .

He said , " Curse it ! You are a fool . "

He exclaimed with an oath that I was a fool .

He said , " Bravo ! You have done something wonder - ful . "

He applauded me , saying that I had done something wonderful .

4. I said to him , " Be a nice boy . "

I advised that he should be a nice boy .

I advised him to be a nice boy .

I said to him , " See me at the station . "

I requested that he should see me at the station .

I requested him to see me at the station .

D . 代词

此外还要注意, 把直接引语变为间接引语时, 代词需作改变。如果在直接引语中代词为第一人称, 在变为间接引语时, 将变为与第一主语一致的代词。

I said , " I can do it . "

I said that I could do it .

He said , " I must go . "

He said that he must go .

You said , " I know . "

You said that you knew .

We said , “ We can do it . ”

We said that we could do it .

They said , “ We must go . ”

They said that they must go .

I said “ We can do it . ”

I said that we could do it . (We 中包括 I)

如果在直接引语中，代词为第二人称，在间接引语中它将变成与引
话动词的宾语一致的人称：

I told him , “ You are right . ”

I told him that he was right .

I told you , “ You are right . ”

I told you that you were right .

He told me , “ You are right . ”

He told me that I was right .

He told us , “ You are right . ”

He told us that we were right .

We told them , “ You are right . ”

We told them that they were right . ”

To somebody 也可看作是宾语：

He said to me (=told me) , “ You are right . ”

He said to me that I was right .

He explained to them , “ You have gone the wrong way . ”

He explained to them that they had gone the wrong way .

引话动词的宾语有时可以省略，但它在间接引语中可能需要说出来：

They asked me when I would get married . I said , “ You will learn
it very soon . ”

...I said that they would learn it very soon .

如果在直接引语中代词为第三人称，在间接引语中，它可以保持不
变：

I told you , “ He is crazy . ”

I told you that he is crazy .

He told me , “ She is crazy . ”

He told me that she was crazy .

We told him , “ They are crazy . ”

We told him that they were crazy .

He told me , “ He is crazy . ” (这两个 he 代表两个不同的人)

He told me that a certain person was crazy .

还需指出，上述代词，在直接或间接引语中，可以为任何“格”，
而不仅仅是主格：

He told me , “ I will ask my brother to take me to the pictures . ”

He told me that he would ask his brother to take him to the
pictures .

He declared “ We must urge them to return our territory to us ! ”

He declared that we must urge them to return our territory to us .

E . 时间副词 (短语)

间接引语中的时间副词 (短语) 可能和直接引语中的时间副词 (短语) 不同 , 这是因为原来说话人提到的时间可能与现在引话人提到的时间不同 :

He said , “ Mary is very busy now . ”

He said that Mary was very busy then .

He said , “ Mary came yesterday . ”

He said that Mary had come the day before (or the previous day) .

He said , “ Mary came five days ago . ”

He said that Mary had come five days before (or five days earlier) .

He said , “ Mary will come tomorrow . ”

He said that Mary would come the following day (or the next day) .

He said , “ Mary will come in five days ! ”

He said that Mary would come five days afterwards (or later) .

F . 第一主语及引话动词的位置

在新闻报导中第一主语有时放在引话动词的后面 :

Said Stevens , “ ... ”

Comments Dr . Lee , “ ... ”

Boasted Asia Bank president John Bush , “ ... ”

第一主语及引话动词 , 除了放在直接引语前面外 , 还可放在其他位置 :

He said , “ Oh ! I have done my best . ”

“ Oh ! ” he said , “ I have done my best . ” (但不说 said he)

“ Oh ! I have done my best , ” he said . (但不说 said he)

“ Oh ! I have done my best . ” (如果大家都清楚这话是谁说的 , 第一主语及引话动词也可不必说出。)

在第一主语及引话动词放在其他位置时 , 要注意标点符号 :

He said , “ Oh , I have done my best ; I have made every effort . But all in vain . ”

“ Oh , ” he said , “ I have done my best ; I have made every effort . But all in vain . ”

“ Oh , I have done my best , ” he said ; “ I have made every effort , But all in vain . ”

如果引话动词有较长的修饰语 , 最好把它放在主语及引话动词前面 , 如果主语及引话动词在直接引语后面 , 长修饰语最好放在引话动词后面 :

After a short space of silence he said , “ I'll consider this

problem . ”

“ I'll consider this problem , ” he said after a short space of silence .

如果主语和引话动词放在直接引语的中间或后面，作主语的名词可以放在引话动词的后面或前面(若主语是人称代词 ,只能放在动词后面):

“ I think so , ” he said (or Leo said , said Leo) . (很少说 said he)

“ Everything is OK ! ” she says (or Amy says , says Amy) . (很少说 says she)

· 简单句的合并

1786 两个或更多简单句可以合并成一个比较复杂的句子，这种练习对学习写作的人很有好处。两个或更多简单句可借助并列连词合并成一个复合句：

He saw John . He greeted him .

He saw John and he greeted him .

I called on Mary . Mary was ill .

I called on Mary , but Mary was ill .

He has not a single penny . He has to beg . He will be starved .

He has not a single penny , so he has to beg , otherwise he will be starved .

两个或更多简单句，可以加上从属连词，把一个或更多句子变为名词从句、定语从句或状语从句，这样来合并成为一个复杂句。

1 . 变成名词从句：

He has arrived . I know it .

I know that he has arrived .

He may have an accident . I am afraid .

I am afraid that he may have an accident .

How many were killed ? I am not sure .

I am not sure how many were killed .

How did he achieve this success ? That is unknown to me .

How he achieved this success is unknown to me .

2 . 变成定语从句：

Who is that man ? I saw that man yesterday .

Who is the man I saw yesterday ?

The boy was caught by the police . The boy stole my Pekinese dog .

The boy who stole my Pekinese dog was caught by the police .

She wears a skirt . I don't like a skirt like this .

I don't like such a skirt as she wears .

3 . 变成状语从句：

I walked along . At that time , it was raining .

When I walked along , it was raining .

You turn to the right . You can see the hotel .

If you turn to the right , you can see the hotel .

He suffered from cancer . He had smoked too much .

He suffered from cancer , because he had smoked too much .

He looks stupid . He is clever .

He looks stupid though he is clever .

He studies until midnight . He wishes to pass the exam .

He studies until midnight so that he may pass the exam .

两个或更多简单句，也可以把其中一个或更多简单句变成一个短语，甚至一个词，来合并成一个较为复杂的简单句：

Mr . Johnson will leave our school . He is a teacher of history .

Mr . Johnson , a teacher of history , will leave our school . (用同位语代替一个句子)

He died . He is forgotten .

He is forgotten after his death . (用介词短语代替句子)

She poisoned herself . She had a quarrel with her husband .

She poisoned herself because of having a quarrel with her husband . (用 “ 介词+动名词 ” 结构代替句子)

He is willing to sacrifice himself . He wishes to please her .

He is willing to sacrifice himself to please her . (用不定式代替句子)

The enemy surrendered themselves . They came to us with a white flag .

The enemy surrendered themselves , coming to us with a white flag . (用分词代替句子)

第二十四单元 标点

1787 标点是在文章中加上标记，使意思更容易理解。这些标记是：句号（.），问号（?），感叹号（!），这三者表示较长的停顿；分号（;），冒号（:），这两种表示中等长度的停顿；破折号（—）及逗号（,），这两者表示少许停顿；引号（' '），园括号（()）及方括号（[]），这些都是一对一对使用的；还有省字号（'），连字号（-），这些都是插在字内的；大写（ABC）及斜体（abc），这两者本身，含有标记。上述标点符号可以放在：

1) 有关词的后面：He came .（句号放在陈述句后面）

2) 有关词前面：I will stay-Do you go with them?（破折号放在表示意思突然转折的字句前面）

3) 有关词的前面和后面：John , of course , will come .（插入的短语前面加一逗号，后面也加一逗号。）

4) 有关两组词的中间：

John came to me , and I asked him to dinner .（逗号插在两个并列分句中间）

5) 一个词的内部：John , uncle's .（大写 J 安插在 John 这个词内部，省字号也安插在 uncle's 这词内部。）

. 句号 (.)

1788 句号 (Period 或 Full Stop) 有下面用法 :

1 . 用在陈述句后 :

He came here .

He will help me .

但不可用在书名、文章题目、诗歌标题后面,即使是一个句子:

She Stoops to Conquer

My Days Have Been Wondrous Free

2 . 用在祈使句后 :

Come here .

Be good enough to help me .

3 . 用在形式上为问句而实质上是祈使句的句子后 :

Would you take dinner with me . (或 ?)

Could you wait a few minutes . (或 ?)

4 . 用在省略句后 :

“ Is he worried ? ” “ No , just doubtful . Doubtful of every - thing . ”

“ Who did it ? ” “ George . ”

“ John , can you pay me back ? ” “ Not today . ”

5 . 用在主体词后以强调在句末同位语 :

He is a great man . A social reformer like Gandhi .

—即使主体词是一主语,亦然:

They all attended the party . Politicians , scientists , and engineers .

—如此句号也可强调句末副词 (短语) :

He works every day . Assiduously and patiently .

He has lost confidence . In the world and himself .

He works extremely hard . In order to make money .

—也可强调状语从句 :

He lost more and more friends . Because he became poorer and poorer .

One can accomplish anything . If one has patience enough .

6 . 句号也可用于书信中地址的结尾以及日期的后面 :

Johnson and Company ,

988 King's Street ,

Hongkong .

May 16 , 1982 .

The Manager ,

Vin Loi Trading Company ,

684 Mekong Street ,

Bangkok , Thailand .

这些句号可以省略,而逗号有些也可省略,但地址及日期内部的逗号不能省略 (如 Bangkok , Thailand 和 May 16 , 1982) 。

7. 句号可用在小数前（前面是整数，后面是小数），作为小数点：

\$ 23. 541 (= twenty - three dollars and something)

—注意在数字中逗号和句号的差别：

\$ 478 , 607 , 823.541

8. 用在缩写词后面（可称为缩写号，现在在英国多省略）：

Mr . Esq . Mrs . Dr . Rev . St . Jr . Ph . D . Bros . ;

Y . M . C . A . U . S . I . S B . B . C . ; Co . C . I . F . C . O . D . ;

32gr . 6ft . 4in . ; 9A . M . 450 B . C . A . D . 1150

—如果一个组织已很著名，句号可以省略：

USIS UNO UNRRA UNESCO USSR TVR NBC

—有些缩写词可以分音节，像一个普通词那样读音：

UNO [>U(: : : QoQ] , UNRRA [>)QT+] , USAF [>U(: : K\$G] .

—缩写词如果不能分音节，则必须按每个字母原来的音读

（如 bi : bi : si : ）：

B . B . C . Y . M . C . A . USN

—注意，在下面这些字后不加句号：M , Miss ; OE ; Henry V , Book Four ;

1st , 2nd , 3rd , 4th ; via , vide , en route ; ‘ flu , Pub , cab , bus ,
zoo ; Fred , Sam ; H₂O , CaCo₃ .

9. 用在括号内的完整句子中：

He was very ill that day . (I knew very well that he was .)

But he refused to see the doctor .

. 点点点 (...)

1789 1. 几个 (.) 表示有几个字母省略 :

De . . I take it . (这里 vi 两个字母省略)

2. 三个点表示一个引用的句子中在前面或中间有一部分词省略 (必要时在三点的一边可加逗号或冒号) :

“ ...books , pencils , slates , glue , ...are on sale . ”

—在引用的句子后部用四个点也可表示未说完的话 (也许是故意未说的) :

“ Put your hands up , otherwise ”

—在两个完整句子之间, 也需打四个点, 表示有一个或更多句子省略 (如果前面的句子以问号或感叹号结尾, 则只需打三个点) :

Then they got married...After two years they had a baby . ”

3. 引用的两段话之间的虚线表示有一段或多段话省略 :

4. 虚线还可引导视线到较远的词 : Definition of Economics.....page 27

5. 点点点还可表示一些不难猜出或让读者捉摸的东西 He whispered to her...Then at midnight...

. 问号 (?)

1790 问号有下面用法：

1. 用在问句后面：

Do you know him?

—用于用作书名或文章标题的问句后面：

Where Is the World Going?

—不能用在作从句的问句中：

They all asked whether I knew him.

—用在引用的问句后：

They asked me, “Do you know him?”

—用在选择问句的末尾（不能用在 or 前）：

Will you stay here or start tomorrow?

Is this yours or mine?

—用在一系列问句的每一个问句后面：

Who is to blame? You? He? or I?

Who started the war? who prolonged it? and who should end it?

are questions hard to answer.

2. 用在形式为问句的祈使句后：

Would you come and take lunch with me? (或.) Could you wait a bit? (或.)

3. 用在以陈述句形式提出的问题后（句子用升调）：You know him?

I dare not speak to her?

4. 用在以问句形式提出的感叹句后：

How could you say such a thing? (或!)

What more do you want now? (或!)

5. 用在括号中表示前面说法不能肯定：

He made a trip on July 6(?).

6. 用来说反话（也放在括号中，这种用法品味不高）：

We had a good(?) (=unpleasant) time the other day.

. 感叹号 (!)

1791 感叹号有下面用法：

1. 用在惊叹词后：

Oh dear ! What (or what) are you doing there ?

For shame ! How (or how) could you do that ?

Good heavens ! (or ,) is it you ?

He has , alas ! failed again .

—惊叹词意思较弱时可以不用 (以逗号代替)：

Why , that is easy . Oh yes , I have forgotten . It costs , oh , only a dollar . Ah , that's what I want . Well , I'm wrong ?

2. 用在作惊叹词用的其他词类后：

Fire ! Quick !

Silly fellow ! Ridiculous !

3. 用在以 (to think) that 引起的表示情绪的句子后：

To think that bread should be so dear !

That bread should be so dear !

4. 用在“名词+关系从句”后，表示情绪：

A pleasant trip we have had ! The life we live !

5. 用在以 what 开头的感叹句后：

What a pity it is !

What great work he has done !

—用在以 how 开始的感叹句后：

How beautiful the poem is !

How hard he works !

—甚至用在作书名、文章标题等的感叹句后：What a Silly Girl I Have Been !

6. 用在表示一定情绪的祈使句中：

Just imagine !

Tell the truth !

Speak no more !

7. 用在表示愿望的句子后：

Long live the king !

O that I had wings !

O for the wings of a bird !

Curses upon him !

God be thanked !

8. 用在表示某种情绪的省略句中：

No business of yours !

Just a minute ! And you'll see .

You coward !

No more !

He is a doctor !

9. 用在戏剧性的句子中 (但这种用法品味不高)：I told you !

He went abroad with only ten dollars in his pocket !

. 冒号 (:)

1792 冒号有下面用法：

1. 用在一个严肃的长引语前（在一般短的引语前用逗号）：

Bacon said: "Reading makes a full man, ..."

2. 用在正式信函的称呼语后（在非正式信函中用逗号）：

Dear Sir:

3. 用在总称之后，后面跟有例子：

He has many books: Hamlet, Paradise Lost, Don Quixote, and others.

Correct the following words: childs, mouses, oxes.

Our question: Why (or why) should man kill himself?

My opinion is this: Nobody thinks himself a bad man.

4. 用在举例后，后面跟总称：

The sea, the sky, the ship: (或—) these are all I see.

To work, to sleep, and to play: (或—) all these are essential things in life.

5. 用在表示著作、时间等的词语内，把较大和较小单位分开：

Macbeth 1 12

Matthew 5

6 35 a.m.

6. 用在比例中：

1 3 8 (= The ratio of one to three to eight)

7. 用在标题和副标题之间：

Yiching: the Philosophy of Change

. 分号 (;)

1793 分号有以下用法：

1. 把没有连词连接而意思上都有联系的句子连接起来(可以用句号，但这时意思会被断开；也可用逗号，可能力量较弱不能把两句拉在一起；也可用冒号，但现在这样用时比过去少了)：

It won't last long ; it's too weak .

He is a clever fellow ; even his enemy admits it .

I love you ; I worship you ; I want you .

He is content ; he lives happily .

2. 把内部包含有逗号的两个句子连在一起 (这时不宜用逗号)：

Dick is a generous , large - hearted person ; but John , Mary and some of his friends are selfish people .

(Cf . Dick is a generous man , but John is a selfish fellow .)

Alan ran his business carefully , methodically and efficiently ; and he was a great philanthropist , too .

He has three wives : one , who married him 20 years ago ; a second , who was a rich widow ; the third , who has already married five times .

3. 用在后面跟有逗号的连接副词之前：

He studies hard ; moreover , he has to work for his living .

He has squandered all his wealth ; therefore (或 as a result) , he has to beg his bread .

4. 用在两个并列从句或两个短语之间 (这时也可用逗号，但对比性较弱)：

We know that country life is more quiet than city life ; that it is more healthful ; that it is happier .

To work eight hours ; to sleep eight hours ; to do other things eight hours—that is the best way for man .

That depends upon who do it ; how they do it ; and when .

5. 用在 such as , that is 这类词前：

We learn several subjects ; such as (or e . g .) chemistry , and physics . (These are some of the subjects we learn .)

We learn several subjects ; that is (or i . e . viz , to wit , namely) , chemistry , physics , maths and biology .

(These are all the subjects we learn .)

—在这种句子中也可用逗号或冒号代替分号：

We learn several subjects , namely chemistry , physics , and mathematics .

We learn several subjects : namely , chemistry , physics , and mathematics .

We learn several subjects , namely , chemistry , physics , and mathematics .

—但在下面这种句子中逗号、冒号或分号都不需要：

We learn such subjects as chemistry and physics .

· 破折号（一）

1794 破折号有以下用法：

1. 用在毫无联系的两词句之间：

I thought—Did you see John?

2. 用来表示句子没说完：

I think so, but—

3. 用来表示口吃（结结巴巴）：

I—I—I—don't—don't know.

4. 用在对不同人的讲话之间：

You are right, Mary.—Do you think so, John?

5. 用在不同人讲的话之间：

Do you think so?—No.—Why?—Just because I don't think so.

What do they say?—They say honesty is not the best policy.

6. 用在后来想起的话语之前：

I saw her two days ago—on the street—with her mother.

7. 用在一个重复性同位语（又加上修饰语）的前面或前后：

It was a race—a race against time.

His son—his only son—died.

8. 用在同位语或纠正语的前面和后面：

Mary's relatives—in fact, all her acquaintances—knew it.

Mary's acquaintances—especially her relatives—knew it.

These two streets—or rather most of the alleys of this city—were dirty.

9. 用在一个名词及其同位语从句之间：

They ignored his request—that everyone must be punctual.

Nobody can answer his question—when can we be happy and free?

10. 用在内部含有自己标点的许多同位语的前面和后面：

These three poets—Byron, Shelley, Keats are good friends.

11. 用在谓语和后移的主语同位语之间：

Some friends will come tomorrow—John, David, and George.

12. 用在举例后面及总括性词（如 these, such, all）之前：

Cereals, fruits, vegetables—these are daily food.

He wrote a letter, spoke with John, listened to the report—all at the same time.

13. 用在加以强调的词前：

It is a matter of capital, of technique—of courage, too.

He likes books, travels, pictures and—money.

You can be a millionaire—if you know how to become one.

14. 用来表示有字母省略：

D—I take it!（这里 e, v, 和 i 省略）

15. 用来表示‘到……’（这时用短横）：

The years 1958—1960（=1958, 1959, 1960）

pages 27 - 32, 或 pp, 27 - 32

paragraphs 18—20 , 或 gg 18—20

16 . 用在某些编号中 (这时也多用短横) :

U—235

Class 5—A

17 . 用在表示出处的词前 :

The course of true love never did run smooth . —Shakespeare .

Love can turn a cottage to a gold palace . —German proverb .

To be or not to be , that is the question . —Hamlet .

18 . 用在移行的句子前 (这时也可不用) :

We want to know—

a . When Black killed his friend Kingsley .

b . What he had said to Kingsley's wife .

c . Who he first saw after the murder .

. 逗号 (,)

1795 逗号有下面用法：

用在由并列连词连接的两个平行词句之间，连词可说出，也可省略：

1. a. 用在平行的词之间：

A good house , a good car , a good wife are what he wants .

I can read light , serious , amusing , or profound works of English authors .

Do you see that tall , big , husky fellow ?

Butterflies flew before , behind and above the huts .

He is honest , but silly .

I like this , rather than that .

但：He is an English grammar teacher . It is a diamond wedding party . It is a Chinese New Year celebration .

b. 注意写法：

Music , painting , and poetry are all interesting to him . (美国英语中 and 前多加逗号)

Music , painting and poetry are... . (正确 , 英国多这样写。)

Music , painting , and poetry , are... . (不好)

c. 逗号可由 and , or , nor 代替：

Music and painting and poetry are...

Neither music nor painting nor poetry is...

d. 逗号须用在 etc . , and so on , and the like 的前面和后面：

Music , painting , poetry , etc . (or and so on , and the like) , are... .

e. 逗号须用在重复的词前：

What I need is money , money , money .

Long , Long ago and far , far , far away there was a king .

2. 用在平行的短语之间：

You can meet him at church , at school , or on the street .

I went to talk with him , to return the book , but not to see his sister .

Reading English . speaking it , and writing it are different processes .

3. 用在并列的分句之间：

He has learned Japanese for years , but he does not know it .

He must come back as soon as possible , or I cannot wait .

He was tired , so he took a rest .

He is very ill , so he does not go to school .

He seems to be very ill , for he looks so pale .

但由 but , and , or 连接的简短分句之间可以不加逗号：

He is silly but his sister is clever .

John studies art and I study science .

4. 用在由 or , and 或 but 连接的两对知识之间：

You can go by night or by day , by sea or by land .

He is honest but clever , thin but hard-working .

5 . 如果两个相似结构共有一个宾语 , 逗号须要用在第二个结构的前面和后面 :

He depends on , and is trusted by , his uncle .

He did it in accordance with , and in defence of , the law .

She is fond of , but seems poor in , her homework .

He loves , or pretends to love , his wife .

—但在一个短的不强调的词前后不加逗号 :

He was murdered inside or near the jungle .

6 . 用在插入词的前面和 (或) 后面 :

a . 用在 yes , no , sure , personally , probably , certainly , usually ; in general , in the first place , in my opinion , in any case , as a matter of fact ; strictly speaking

这类修饰语的后面

Unfortunately , Mary caught cold yesterday .

Inevitably , he will be sent to prison .

On the whole , he is a nice fellow .

Generally speaking , New York is a nice place .

—用在句子修饰语的前面和后面 :

Tom , in the first place , must respect his parents .

Jimmy , I must say , shouldn't listen to the rumour .

b . 用在 furthermore , similarly , accordingly , anyway , otherwise ; above all , in the same way , in other words , in contrast 这类连接副词 (短语) 的后面 :

He lost lots of money ; as a result , he got sick .

He is sick ; therefore , he must rest .

I do everything ; in addition , I must not complain .

Liza is noisy ; Tim , by comparison , is quiet .

I am too busy ; Bill , on the other hand , fools about .

7 . a . 用在句子开头的分词 (短语) 之后 :

Seeing the police , the thief began to run away .

用在句子开头的不定式 (短语) 之后 :

To earn more money , the boy worked harder .

b . 用在松松地插在主语后面的短语的前面和后面 :

The thief , seeing the police , began to run away .

Plants , with enough water and sunshine , will grow fast .

The boy , to earn more money , worked harder .

但是 : The thief seeing the police began to run away .

(还有其他没看见警察的小偷 , 这里的分词短语为限制性定语 , 而前面句子中 , 逗号后的分词短语为非限制性 (或解释性) 分词 , 带状语性质。)

The house on the opposite side is my uncle's .

The boy to earn more money worked harder . (There were other

boys who did not have to earn more.)

c. 用在句末的非限制性(解释性)分词(带状语性质)前面:

He sat in a chair, reading papers.

但在句末的不定式前不宜用逗号:

He sat down to read papers.

8. 用在呼语的后面或(和)前面:

John, come here.

Come here, John.

What, John, are you doing?

9. 用在句子开头的副词短语后(也可不用):

At eight(,) he goes to the office.

Thanks to his help(,) I got a good job.

但句子末尾的副词(短语)前不宜用:

He goes to the office at eight.

I got a good job through his help.

10. 用在主句与从句之间:

用在一个非限制性定语从句(相当于一个并列分句)前:

I asked a boy, who (=and he) kept silent.

He went to France, where (=and there) he planned to see her.

但: I asked the boy who kept silent. (There were other boys who did not keep silent. 这里的定语从句是限制性的。)

He went to the city where he planned to live a year or two.

11. 用在引话动词(如 said, replied)及直接引语之间:

He said, "You are wrong."

—用在引话动词和半直接引语(不带引号, 第一个字母大写)之间:

He replied, She was wrong.

—用在插在直接引语中间的 he said 这类词句的前面和后面:

"In the morning," he said, "I don't feel well."

—在引话动词和由 that 引起的间接引语之间不用逗号:

He thought that she was wrong.

—引话动词及由疑问词引起的间接引语之间也不用逗号:

He knows what she said.

It may be asked whether anyone could stand the insult.

12. a. 用在状语从句之后, 主句之前:

If you are careful, you will make fewer mistakes.

Since he is ill, he cannot work.

When it was raining, he came to me.

b. 若主句在前, 状语从句在后, 主、从句之间一般不加逗号:

You will make fewer mistakes if you are careful.

I love her just because she looks pretty.

He works hard so that he may succeed.

John speaks Chinese better than Lee speaks English.

但是: You will make fewer and fewer mistakes in your composition, if you are careful enough. (如果主句较长, 主句后

可以加逗号。)

I will , if I can . (如果状语从句需要强调 , 前面也可以加逗号。)

He will come , only when he needs your help .

13 . 用在较长的主语和它的谓语之间 :

That the city had been lost to the enemy , was true .

Studying every evening after the office hours for the past ten years , enabled him to know French and German .

14 . 用在同位语前面 :

用在一个专有名词和它的普通名词同位语之间 :

John , my brother ; William Shakespeare , the greatest poet of England ; London , the capital of England .

但在一般名词和特别名词之间不宜加逗号 :

the word “ flame ” , the year 1942 , the historian Herodotus [但 a great historian , Herodotus] , my brother John , our greatest poet William Shakespeare , William Shakespeare's tragedy Hamlet , the question “ to be or not to be ” , the idea that man is mortal

在下面这类名称中也不加逗号 :

Alexander the Great , John the Baptist , Richard the Lion - hearted , Henry the Fifth

不过 , 在人名后的尊称或学术头衔前可加逗号 : Mr . John Lee , Senior ; Mr . John Lee , Ph . D .

15 . 用在较小部分和较大部分之间 :

—用在街名、房间或公寓号码 , 城镇名、州名及国名之间 (但门牌和街名之间不用) :

138 Liberty Street , Room 408 , Fresno , California , USA

—用在日期中 (但月份和日期之间不用) :

Sunday , July 6 , 1960 .

—用在数字中 :

6742856135 (=six billion...two million...six thousand...)

654321 (4=4 thousand) (但在 654321 这个数字中 , 4=4)

—用来代替 of :

President Do , Far East University

16 . 用在某些词后 , 表示停顿 , 以防止误解 :

Outside , the streets are wet .

Such boys as you , are not to be found elsewhere .

He is eating , mummy .

Ever since , he has been very ill .

Whoever wished to escape , escaped into the jungle .

用在省略句中 :

17 . 和分号一道表示某些重复的词已被省略 : John has one ; Mary , two .

但 : John has one , Mary two .

Reading makes a full man ; conference , a readyman . 但 : Reading makes a full man , conference a ready man . Egyptians give us

agriculture ; Romans , law .

My father takes care of John ; my mother , Mary .

Painters express their feeling by forms and colours , musicians ,
by sounds ; poets , by words .

用在倒装句中 :

18 . 用在句子中倒装部分 (提前的部分) 的后面 :

That man , I have known for many years .

The war is over , I am glad to say .

It is vicious , that dog of yours .

John is a young man , honest , kind and intelligent . 用在信函
中 :

19 . 用在右上角自己的地址及日期中 :

645 Beal Street ,

New York , NY 11109 .

February 16 . 1970 .

用在左上方收信人的地址中 :

Mr . James Read ,

68 St . James Road ,

Hongkong .

用在称呼语中 :

Dear Sirs , (或不加标点) (英式)

Gentlemen : (正式) Dear John , (非正式) (美式) 用在结尾的
客套语中 :

Sincerely yours , (或 Faithfully yours , [美国很少这样说]) David
White .

注 : 在双方地址中每行末尾的逗号或句号均可省略。

· 引号及斜体

A . 引号 (“ ... ”)

1796 1 . 引号可用在直接引语的两头，可以是双引号 “ ... ” (美式) ，也可以是单引号 ‘ ... ’ (英式) :

He said , “ I will do it . ”

His question is “ What can we do ? ”

—可以放在某人讲话的重要部分的两头 :

He can put down the revolt “ in three days ” .

He decides to “ settle accounts ” with his antagonist .

—但不可用在间接引语的两头 :

He asked whether he could do it .

His question is what we can do .

—也不可用在半直接引语的两头 :

He asked , Could he do it ?

His question was (or , What puzzled him was , He thought to himself) , Could he say anything against it ?

—不可用在剧本台词的两头 :

John : Can I do it ?

Mary : Certainly you can .

2 . 注意直接引语被分成两段时，引号及其他标点的用法 :

He said , “ I know that she is right . ” = “ I know , ” he said , “ that she is right . ”

He said , “ I know ; she is right , ” = “ I know , ” he said ; “ she is right . ”

He said , “ I know . She is right . ” = “ I know , ” he said . “ She is right . ”

“ I know . ” He nodded his head . “ She is right . ”

3 . 注意句号和逗号都放在末尾引号的前面，而不是后面 :

“ If I can , ” he said , “ I will do it . ”

—和句号、逗号不同，分号通常放在引号的后面，冒号也如此 :

He thought over the matter , and then he said , “ Let us wait and see ” ; but he ordered his men to act the same night .

—如果句号和逗号不属于所引用的词，而属于整个句子，则应当放在引号外面 :

We don't know who is “ right ” , and who is “ wrong ” .

(不过在美国用法中，常把逗号和句号放在引号前面，如 “ right , ” 及 “ wrong . ”)

They call him “ patriot ” , but we call him “ fanatic ” .

—如果问号属于引述的问句，它应放在引号之内 :

He asked , “ Shall we go this way ? ”

—如果问号不属于引用的话，则应放在引号之外 :

Did he say , “ I will leave very soon ” ?

—惊叹号亦如此：

He exclaimed, "What a fool I am!"

What a fool of him to say. "Even my little finger is more powerful than anything of yours"!

4. 如果摘引三段或更多的文章（或诗歌），必须注意缩行（即每行第一个词要向后缩）。引号只用在每一段的前面，只是最后一段引文末尾要加引号，但引号也可完全省略，如果是诗，要按原来形式排列：

Tell me not in mournful numbers

That life is but a dream.

5. 如果引语内还包含一个引语，整个引语用单引号，里面的引语用双引号（英国用法）：

John said, 'I told him "to look before he leaps".'

6. 谚语、引语、俚语等都可放在引号之内：

"A wise man thinks all that he says, a fool says all that he thinks."

He is "a saint abroad, a devil at home".

Dick is "on the rocks".

He has a mental "inertia".

He likes to eat "chow mein"（炒面）。

—大家熟知的成语不必加引号：

Last but not least, do come tomorrow.

7. 不肯定或讥讽的话可加引号：

He is very "glad" to see me.

He is a "good man" in this village.

8. 值得特别注意的词可加上引号：

Something "in" mind is different from something "on" mind.

To "do" is easy, but to "understand" is hard.

9. 章节、文章、短篇小说或诗歌的题目可以加引号：

"Introduction", "Inside Story of Iran", "Mademoiselle Fifi", "Ode to a nightingale", "Home, Sweet Home".

—但书名、报刊杂志名、长诗、剧本、歌剧、雕像、绘画、电影等的名称宜于用斜体，如 *The Origin of Species*, *The New York Times*, *Newsweek*, *Iliad*, *Hamlet*, *Madame Butterfly*, *The Thinker*, *Pines and Rocks*, *The Great Dictator*

10. 船名、飞机及火车名等可以加引号，也可用斜体：

the "Empress" (or the *Empress*), the "Super Chief" (or the *Super Chief*)

11. 按美国用法，外面用双引号，里面用单引号（参阅5）：

John said "I told him to 'look before he leaps.'" but he didn't listen."

B. 斜体 (abcd)

在上面“引号”一章举出的例子中，在打字稿及手稿中都可在例子

下面画横线，而在印刷时可用斜体：

1. He said, I will do it.
2. I know, he said, that she is right.
5. John said, I told him "to look before he leaps".
6. Dick is on the rocks.
7. He is very glad to see me.
8. Something in mind is different from something on mind.
9. 见 9 中带引号的词。
10. the Empress

但使用外来词时需要特别注意：

a. 尚未吸收入英语的外来词，在印刷时需用斜体，在书写时下面要画线，如 *ab extro*, *accouchement*, *ad interim*, *ad valorem*, *affaire d'honneur*, *anno Domini*, *au courant*, *beaux-arts*, *bon soir*, *bon vivant*, *comme il faut*, *estaminet*, *ex cathedra*, *exempli gratia*, *ex parte*, *ex post facto*, *fin de siècle*, *jeu d'esprit*, *mal de mer*, *non est*, *part pasgu*, *per contra*

b. 已吸收入英语的外来词不需印斜体，如：

aide-de-camp, *aurora borealis*, *bizarre*, *bona fide*, *bric-à*

-
brac, *café*, *chargé d'affaires*, *cliché*, *communiqué*, *crêpe*, *d'écôle*, *d'écris*,
d'écut, *d'écouement*, *depot*, *d'étour*, *dion sum*, *dramatis personae*,
ennui, *entourage*, *fête*, *innuen-do*, *menu*, *motiv*, *naïve*, *orangutan*,
origami, *paddy*, *pa-pertiger*, *plaza*, *rattan*, *sampan*, *samurai*, *sarong*,
savry, *sayonara*, *shinto*, *sierra*, *siesta*, *sukiyaki*, *taijiguan*,
tofu, *wok*, *won ton*, *yin yang*, *Zen*

. 圆括号 ()

1797 圆括号有下面用法：

1. 包含确切的数目：

I saw him two weeks ago (June 16) .

Solomon (960 - 933 B . C .) was a wise king .

I read a chapter on war (pages 23 - 43) in this book .

I owe you fifty thousand dollars (\$ 500000) .

2. 包含表顺序的数词：

I like three subjects : (1) swimming , (2) travelling , and (3) collecting stamps .

3. 下面是一个标示目录段落之一例，来明确指出各节之间的主属关系：

.
A .
 1 .
 a .
 1)
 a)
 1/
 a/

4. 加在具体内容和细节两端：

He lives with his brothers (John , Bob , and Joseph) .

I learn mathematics , geography , history , and literature (essays , short stories , poetry) .

5. 加在补充话语的两端；

He can rent his house (bought last year) to our big family .

—如果补充的话前后加逗号，则在句中显得更重要：

He can rent his house , bought last year , to our big family .

—如果补充的话前后加破折号则显得特别强调：

He can rent his house—bought last year—to our big family .

6. 可加在一个词或一个短语两端：

He sent all his daughters (seven in all) to school . And yet all of them failed in the examination .

—可加在一个句子两端（句子第一个字母大写，末尾有句号）：

He sent all his daughters to school . (He has seven .)

And yet all of them failed in the examination .

—可加在句中之句的两端（这句话第一字母小写，末尾也无句号）：

He married (you can't believe) a girl of twelve .

但这种句子中可带问号：

He married (can you believe ?) a girl of twelve .

. 方括号 ([])

1798 方括号有下面用法：

1. 可括入引语内插入的词，也可括入园括号内的某些词：

He said, " She[Mary]will come tomorrow. "

He bought an American truck (he borrowed money[per - haps from Lee]to buy it) , and he sold it the next day .

2. 用在一段演说词后：

[prolonged applause]

3. [sic] 解释为“原文如此”，放在可疑词句后，表示引用无误：

He knows " twelve " [sic]languages .

4. 可括入国际音符：

because[B!>k& : z] (也可用竖线代替，如 / B!>E& : z /) , 又如 Japanese [?DN\$A+>Q! : L] : (or / ?DN\$A+>Q! : L /)

5. 可用在剧本中，括入表示动作的词：

John : [looks at Mary]I know what you mean , but[turns to Charles]do you know , Charles ?

. 省字号 (')

1799 省字号有以下用法：

1. 构成单数名词的所有格：

professor's ,hour's ;Keats's(or Keats') ,Jones's(or Jones') ;
Moses' , Jesus' , Kansas'

—也可构成复数名词的所有格：

Boys' , ladies' ; children's , women's , geese's

2. 可用在每个名词后表示各自的东西：

Keats's and Byron's poetry , Poe's and Doyle's stories

—也可用在两个名词后表示共有的东西：boys and girls' tennis
court , Lee and Wang's hospital

3. 可用在一个名词短语后面：

the Minister of Foreign Affairs' car , the king of England's
crown , my son-in-law's school , somebody else's hat

4. 在某些专有名词中省字号可以省略：

State teachers college , Merchants Assosiation , Kings Mountain

5. 用来构成字母、数字或某个词的复数（省字号放在 s 前面）：

Five 2's ; two L's ; too many and's

6. 构成某些词的紧缩形式：

It's , 'tis , can't , I'm , you're , I've , we'd , I'll , 'em , e'er
(但 its , hers , yours , ours , whose 中没有省字号)

XIII. 连字号 (-)

1800 连字号有以下用法：

1. 连接单词：

连字号可以用来把两个(或更多)单词连接成合成词,如 sea - blue , left - handed , mother-in-law , 也可把前缀和一个单词连接成派生词,如 ex-star , anti-trade

下面类型的合成词都需加连字号(由 a 到 c 为合成名词, d 到 h 为合形成形容词)：

—a . sick-pay , poor-box , dead-beat , deaf-aid (A + N) two-timer , left-hander , whole-hogger (A + N + er)

b . walk-up , come-on , look-in , stand-by (V + AP)

c . poet-artist , fellow-traveller , Auditor-Treasurer (N + N)

—d . seven-hilled , one-sided , good-natured (A + N + ed)

e . red-hot , deaf-mute , stony-cold (A + A)

f . mild-spoken , private-owned , new-made (A + PaP)

g . god-forsaken , time-honoured , moth-eaten (N + PaP)

h . hand-to-hand , cat-and-dog , matter-of-fact , 2000-dollar-a-year , seven-year-old , good-for-nothing (包含两个以上词的合形成形容词)

但下面这些类型的合成词,虽然表示单一的意思,却不需加连字号(由 a 到 d 为合成名词, e 为合形成形容词)：

—a . moving pictures , sleeping partner , floating bridge (PrP + N)

b . cast iron , scaled orders , Promised Land (PaP + N)

c . cat's eye , sheep's head , priest's hold (Poss . + N)

d . new year , still life , cold cream (A + N)

—e . badly behaved , easily canned , completely furnished (Adv + PaP or A) (但 : well - known artist , well - de - signed bridge , ill - managed school)

下面的合成词甚至需要写成一个词(除 f 为合成动词外,其他都是合成名词)：

—a . huntsman , statesman , kinsman (N + S + man)

b . plaything , daredevil , standpoint (V + N)

c . sickroom , greenhouse , highway , blackboard , hothead (A + N)

d . offset , downfall , overhang (AP + V)

e . breakup , breakthrough , layout , runabout (V + AP)

—f . browbeat , henpeck , daydream (N + V)

在后缀前加连字号是少见的,但在前缀后加连字号却是常有的事,特别是当派生出的词较长时,尤为多见：

a . ante-dawn , anti-feudalism , pseudo-scientist , counter-propaganda , ultra-classical , quasi-legal , co-worker

b . re-cover , re-form , re-turn (这些带 re-的词和下面带 re 的词,在意义上是不相同的 : recover , reform , return .)

c . co-operate , re-entry , pre-exist (包含 “ co-o ” , “ re-e ” , “ pre- e ” 的词要加连字号 , 这是为了防止造成读音上的错误 , 比较 : coöperate , reëntry , preëxist)

d . pro-Communist , anti-Fascist , non-Christian , un-Ameri-can . post-Napoleon , pre-Renaissance , pan-Arabian , Neo-Latin (包含前缀及专有名词的词)

e . fruitless = futile ; sewer = drain ; prayer = worship . fruitless = without fruit ; sew-er = person who sews ; pray-er=person who prays . (后缀前若有连字号 , 整个词可能有特殊意义。)

2 . 分音节 :

一行末尾的一个词如果太长 , 可以分成两部分 , 第一部分留在该行末尾 , 后面加连字号 , 第二部分放在下一行开头。在哪里把词分开是一个麻烦的问题。下面的规律是作者、打字员及排字工应当知道的 :

单音节词不能分 :

good , speak , main , like , frost

双音节词可以分 , 但只能在一个地方分 :

be-cause , sis-ter , pa-per , gar-den

三音节词可以在两个地方分 :

do-mes-tic , for-eign-er , col-lec-tion

四音节词可以在三处地方的任何一处分 :

dic-tion-a-ry , e-lec-tri-cian , e-le-men-tal

五 (六) 音节的词可在四 (五) 处地方的任何一处分。

a . 用连字号把一个词分开的一般规律是把连字号放在一个辅音字母前面 , 如果有两个辅音字母在一起 , 则把连字号放在它们中间 :

be-long , lega-cy , ma-sonry , fu-ture , mo-tive , de-define ; fic-tion , direc-tion , lan-guage , em-pire , sen-tence ; im-mortal , ab-breviate , sup-port , omit-ted , begin-ning , refer-ring

如果下面规则与上面总的规律不一致 , 则遵循下面规则 :

b . 把连字号放在特定的后缀前面 (注意这条规定有时与上面总规律不一致) :

hermit-age , propos-al , assail-ant , utter-ance , church-es , social-ism , fatal-ist , Hitler-ite , divi-sion , transla-tion ; deriv-ative , debat-able , impress-ible , gold-en , fin-er , soon-est , poet-ic , fool-ish , rain-y , boast-ed

c . 把连字号放在特定的前缀后面 :

counter-offensive , dis-enchanted , ex-ample , in-active , inter-act , mis-apply , non-essential , over-act , re-in-force , trans-Atlantic , un-available , under-act

d . 把连字号放在包含一个短元音而以辅音字母结尾的音节后面 :

dé-il , méas-ure , sá-ire , pyŕ-amid , divín-ity , hydró-ide , hón-ey , hów-er

e . 把连字号放在默读 (不发音) 的 e 后面 :

fate-ful , wide-ness , false-hood , arrange-ment .

f. 把连字号放在构成合成词的两个词之间：

show-man , black-board , high-way , house-keeper , fire- side , neck-tie

g. 保留一个词原来的连字号，不在其他地方再加连字号：

self-confident , over-cautious , money-proud , knitting- needle , weather-bitten , father-in-law , good-for-nothing

h. 把 ai , ay , au 等元音看作不可分的，不要在它们之间加连字号：

maid , hay , haul , awl ; meal , meet , receive ; boat , colloid , good , out , owl

例外情况 : na-ive , Ma-ya , Ha-wai , ide-a ; de-odorize , re-enter , co-operate , hero-ic , line-al , Kore-an

i. 把 ia , ie , io 等看作是可以分开的，可在中间加连字号：

seri-al , subsidi-ary ; Ori-ental , expedi-ent ; radi-us ; criteri-on , scorpi-on ; ge-o-graphy , Napole-on , pite- ous ; Ne-apolitan ; gradu-al ; innocu-ous

j. 如果前面有 c , g , s 或 t 等辅音，同时不重读，则 ia , ie , io 等是不可分开的：

musician , conscience , audacious , religious , region ; Persian , hosiery , division ; martial , quotient , nation , crustacea , herbaceous ; gorgeous , pigeon (但 : pite- ous , courte-ons , dute-ous)

k. 把 ch , ph , sh , th 或 ck 看作一个辅音，不要将它分 开：

bach-elor , Mich-aemas ; Gryph-on , Meph-istoph- eles ; cash-ier , ush-er ; meth-od , math-ematics ; rock- et , reck-on

l. 把 cl , fl , gl , pl 和 cr , fr , gr , pr 看作是不可分的，不要在中间加连字号：

de-clare , re-claim ; in-fluence , re-flect ; ea-gle , a- glow ; de-plore , princi-ple ; mi-crobe , de-cree ; in- fringe , de-fray ; a-gree , emi-grant ; de-privé , A-pril

但如果它们前面有一个重读的短元音，它们也可以分开 (参阅 d .) :

d é c- laration . r é c- lamation ; r é f- luent ; ú g- ly ; r é p- lica ; á c- robot , á g- riculture ; d é p- rivation

m. 在一行的末尾或开头，不要只留一个字母。下面的词应留在行末或移行：a-mount , o- mit , e-merge , pian - o , insomni-a n. 在一页的末尾不要把一个词分开。

o. 下面这类词都不宜分：

单音节词：good , hour , strong ; weighed , wished , passed (但 : na-ked , wick-ed , curs-ed ; part-ed , fat-ed , not-ed , goad-ed , hood-ed 这些是双音节词。)

包含字母少于五个的词：idea , abed , only , army

专有名词：Young Men Christian Association , United

States Information Service , UNRRA , Mr . Nigel John- son , Liberty Street ; the Mediterranean Sea

各类数字：December 16 , 1968 ; 11p . m . ; 69 , 745 , 265 dollars ; eleven pounds ten ; £ 5 . 10 ; 6 743 miles

注：上述规律不无少数例外，有疑问时可查字典。

3. 其他各种用法：

a. 数字：

—two hundred and sixty-four pounds (在以 -ty 结尾的+位数和个位数之间应加连字号)

—700-odd pieces

thirty-odd years (但：thirty years odd)

—two-fifths (= $2/5$) of a mile

3-1/2 feet (但：three and a half feet)

— a six-cent tax (但：a tax of six cents)

a 15-percent profit

a five-year guarantee (或 a five years guarantee)

a five-million-dollar project (或 a five million dollars project)

five 20-cent stamps

12 five-gallon cans

—a five-month-old child (但：a child five months old)

a 500-mile-long road

a 16-by-20-in. portrait

—1980-1988 (=from 1980 to 1988, 或 1980-8; 但不要说 from 1980-1988)

between 1980 and 1988 (不要说 between 1980-1988)

January-May 1975

\$ 4- \$ 7 (或 4-7 dollars; 但不要说 \$ 4-7)

14~~¢~~-18~~¢~~ (或 14-18 cents; 但不要说 14-18~~¢~~)

Nos. 5-7; pp. 28-41; chapters 4-8

b. 字母：

a T-shirt an X-ray M-shaped

a T-strap a G-man S-curved

an L-bar a U-turn

c. 标题中的合成词：

A Week in an Out -of-the-Way Area (除冠词及极短的介词外，所有词的第一个字母均需大写。)

Life With My Mother -in -Law

A Hand -to-Mouth Existence

I Am a Stand -In (末尾介词要大写)

d. 有字省略的合成词：

hand- (= hand-made) and machine-made paper

the mid- and later-18th century

English-or French-speaking people

e. 为防止误解加上的连字号：

an American-car seller (= a person who sells American cars), 不同于 an American car-seller (=an American who sells cars)

an old-furniture store. 不同于 an old furniture-store a

dark-room (for developing film) , 不同于 a dark room my father and mother-in-law , 不同于 my father-and mother-in-law

f . 其他用法 :

A-I-D-S v-a-m-p-i-r-e (按字母拼读时要加连字号)

no-o-o-o- nsense ! wha-a-a-t ? (用连字号表示声音拖长)

XIV . 大写 (ABC)

1801 在下面特定情况下的词需大写。(注意:所谓某词需大写,是说某词第一字母需大写。)

1. 关于句子的第一个词

a. 一个句子的第一个词需大写:

Nobody knows why . (特指第一个词 Nobody 中的第一字母 N 需大写)

—直接引语中的第一个词(的第一个字母)需大写:

I said , " Nobody knows why , "

—间接引语中的第一个词不需大写:

I said that nobody knew why .

—插入句子中的部分的第一个词不要大写:

Everyone , he does not know why , hates whatever he says .

—在动词 be 后的完整句子的第一个词要大写:

What astonishes me is : Nobody knows why .

The result was : Two out of the twenty students passed .

The rule is : Start where you are and begin with what you have .

b. 在一系列问题中的每个问题第一个词均需大写:

What is it ? Where does it come from ? How can we get it ?

—如果只在最后一句末有问号,则只有第一个问句的第一个词需大写:

What is it , where does it come from , how can we get it ?

c. 在正式决议中,在 where as 或 resolved 和逗号后, that 一词通常大写:

Whereas , That the sanitary conditions of this city have long been neglected.....

(Be it) Resolved (or Enacted , Ordered) , That an over-all plan be made.....

2. 诗歌每一行的第一个词需大写:

Olympian bards who sang

Divine ideas below ,

Which always find us young

And always keep us so .

但如诗歌以散文的形式排列,原来每行开头的词无需大写:

Olympian bards who sang divine ideas below , which always find us young and always keep us so .

3. 作品的标题:

—除了标题内的 a , the , and , or , to (作为不定式的标记)和四字母以下介词之外,标题中所有的词均需大写,甚至标题头尾的 a , the 等也需大写:

A Billionaire Returned From Abroad (A 在标题头)

The Far East Daily (The 在标题头)

The Life Pictorial

War and Peace

Man to Rule the Earth and the Moon

The Country I live In (In 在标题尾)

不仅在标题中，甚至在专有名词短语中，the, a, and, or, to 及短的介词也不大写，这在 5—16 节例子中可以看出。

在副(小)标题中，要么所有重要词均大写，如：

A. Emphasis by Position

B. Emphasis by Repetition

C. Emphasis by Construction

D. Emphasis by Figures of Speech

要么只将第一个词大写：

A. Emphasis by position

B. Emphasis by repetition

C. Emphasis by construction

D. Emphasis by figures of speech

4. 书信开头的称呼语及末尾的套语：

—称呼语的第一个词及称呼语的末一个词必须大写：

My dear Friend

My dearest Mother

—信末套语仅需将第一个词大写：

Sincerely yours

Respectfully yours

Yours truly

5. 人名：

a. William Shakespeare, John Lin, H. G. Wells, G. B. S.,
FDR

b. 姓氏中的某些成分(如 D', De, Della, Di, Do, L', La, Le,
Van, Von) 通常也需要大写：

Van Dyck (Vandyke), Le Fevre (Lefevre)

c. 绰号：

Shorty, Carrot, Big Mouth, Babyface, Humpy, Spider, Miss
Independence, Longlegs

d. 头衔：

Professor Lee, Bishop William White, Secretary Young, Dr. Chen
(但: John Lee, professor of history; the professor John Lee)
Hon. (or Rev., Rt., Rev.) Thomas Robinson, the Honourable
(or Reverend, Right Reverend) Thomas Robinson

(在 Thomas Robinson 和其头衔之间还可插入 Mr. 或 Dr. 这类词)

John Lee, A. B., LL. D.; Mary Lee, M. D. (在人名后
跟有学术头衔时，人名前面不宜加 Mr., Miss 或 Dr. 这类词。)

John Lee, Sn.; David Lee, Jr. (在 John Lee 或 David Lee
前可加 Mr. 或 Dr.)

e. 下面这样的称号：

the Lion Premier, the Iron Chancellor; Alexander the Great,
Henry the Eighth, Richard the Lion-Hearted, William the conqueror

f. 对某人的亲切的称呼：

Mother , Mummy , Uncle , Chief , Boss

(但： my mother , the uncle , a chief)

g. 对国王、总督、教皇、法官、市长等的尊称：

Her Majesty , Your Excellency , His Holiness , Your Honour ,
Your Worship

6. 神的名称：

God , the Saviour , the Holy Ghost , the Son , Our Father , He ,
His ; (the) Buddha ; Jupiter , Venus , Hades , Cupid , Apollo ;
Veda , Vishnu , Brahma ; Allah , His Prophet ; Thor

7. 某地区出生的人：

Asian , European , African ; Indian , Japanese , Vietnamese ,
Burmese ; Londoner , New Yorker , Texan , Idahoan , Mainer ,
Wisconsinite , Florentine ; Black (or black) , Gipsy (or gipsy) ,
Chicano (or chicano)

8. 某一动物的专名：

Lucky (给一条狗起的名字) , Bucephalus (马名) , Dapple (猪名) ,
Nona (猫名)

9. 人格化动物及事物的名称：

(the) Elephant , (the) Monkey , (the) Wolf ; (the) Wind ,
(the) Sun , (the) Pen , (the) Dustpan ; Peace , Hope , Shame

10. 地名：

Peru , China , Germany ; Guangdong Province , New York State ;
Rhode Island , Fifth Street , Pearl Harbor , Central Park ; Mount
Vernon , Lake Victoria , Cape Moron ; the Arctic Circle , the Pacific
Ocean , the Cape of Good Hope , the Strait of Gibraltar ; the Suez
and Panama canals , the provinces of Guangdong and Guangxi ; North
Korea , Up-per Michigan , Central Asia , Inner Mongolia , Merry
Old England ; The West , the Far East , the Orient , the Southern
Hemisphere , the North Pole

—地名与人名若指某一特定东西则当小写：

bohemian life , brussels sprouts , china , chineser , diesel
engine , dutch windmill , german silver , gothic lettering , india
rubber , jersey , klieg light , london purple , macadam , manila
paper , morocco , panama , paris green , plastic of paris , portland
cement , prussian blue , roman numerals , venetian blinds

—地名及有关的词

-Countries- -Adjectives- -Natives- -Languages-

the Philippines Philippine Filipino Tagalog

Arabia Arabian Arab Arabic

France French Frenchman French

但： Anglicize or anglicize , Americanize or americanize

11. 组织机构名称：

Westminster Cathedral , Washington High School , Scot-land

Yard ; the Navy , the House of Lords , the Supreme Court of the U . S . , the Church of England , the Socialist Party , the Central University , the Standard Oil Company , the Society for Space Travel , the Ministry of Foreign Affairs

—有些政党名称可以大写也可以小写 :

Communist (or communist) , Communism (or communism) , Fascist (or fascist) , Democrat (or democrat) , Socialist (or socialist) , Liberal (or liberal) , Republic (or re-public) , Bolshevik (or bolshevist)

12 . 某些特别东西的名称 :

Jupiter (planet) , Venus , the Great Bear , the Ahnighits meteorite ; Sputnik I , the Columbus Space Shuttle ; Big Ben , the Statue of Liberty , the Liberty Bell , the Stars and Stripes , the Vargas diamond ; the Authorized Version , the New Testam ent , the Koran , the Talmud ; the Pact of Locarno , the Bill of Rights ; a Ford car , a Remington typewriter

—商品名称 , 通常大写 : Ford , Kodak , Pilot , Coke , Kim 有些已成为普通名词的商品名称 , 无需大写 : aspirin , cellophane , vaseline , nylon , photostat , mimeograph

13 . 艺术品的名称 :

Home , Sweet Home ; Ben Hur ; the Last Supper ; St . John the Baptist , Giants of the Earth

14 . 著名事件 (历史上的或现代的) 的名称 :

the Glacial Period , the Ten Commandments , the Sermon on the Mount , the Last Supper , the Passion , the Discovery of America , the Industrial Revolution , the Reign of Terror , the Taiping Rebellion , the Second World War , the Vietnam War , the Cultural Revolution

15 . 时间的名称 :

Sunday , June 24 , 1962 ; June Twenty - Seventh , Nineteen Hundred Sixty - two (用于严肃场合) ; Christmas , All Fools Day ; the Forties ; the Elizabethan Era , the Middle Ages , the Nuclear Age (但 : spring , summer)

16 . 用作专有名词 , 特指某一处某人的普通名词 :

the Colony (= Hongkong) , the Crown ; the States (= the United States of America) , the Army , the House ; the Church , the City (= New York) , the Society , the School , the Department ; the President , the King , the Mayor , the Dean ; Father , Baby , Cook , Boss , Chief

17 . 变成特殊重要的平常词 :

The Here and Now is the essential part of life .

Be a career secretary and Earn More . (广告)

Please send 100 boxes of Butter Cookies . (在商业书信中产品名称常常大写)

18. 某些缩写词：

B.C. , A.D. ; Jr. , Sr. , Eq. ; No. , P.S. , O.K. ,
C.O.D. , I.O.U. ; M.P. , P.O.W. , V.I.P. ; T.B. ,
V.D. ; A.M. , P.M. , MS

19. 学科名称：

He failed in Mathematics(or mathematics) and History
(or history) .

20. 前缀+大写词：

un -English , non-Christian , anti-American , pro-German

21. 事物名称+数词（表示顺序）：

Article , Chapter 10 , Act 3 , Book Four , Room 47